

The Ramakrishna Mission
Institute of Culture Library

Presented by
Dr. R. C. Majumdar

5

10 8617



ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS

ON THE

ORIGIN AND HISTORY

OF

THE PEOPLE OF INDIA,

THEIR RELIGION AND INSTITUTIONS.

COLLECTED, TRANSLATED, AND ILLUSTRATED,

BY

J. MUIR, D.C.L., LL.D.

VOLUME FIRST.

MYTHICAL AND LEGENDARY ACCOUNTS OF THE ORIGIN OF CASTE, WITH AN
ENQUIRY INTO ITS EXISTENCE IN THE VEDIC AGE.

THIRD EDITION.



LONDON:

TRÜBNER & CO., LUDGATE HILL.

1890.

(All rights reserved.)

R M I C LIBRARY	
Acc. No.	108617
Class No.	
Date	26.8.86
St. Card	13
Ches.	49
Cat.	28
Bk. Card	49
Checked	84

Presented by
Mr. P. C. Majumdar

*Na viśeṣho'sti varṇānāṃ sarvaṃ brāhman idaṃ jagat !
Brahmaṇā pūrva-sṛṣṭaṃ hi karmabhir varṇatāṃ gatam !*
Muhābhārata.

"There is no distinction of castes. This world, which, as created by Brāhmā, was at first entirely Brahmanic, has become divided into classes in consequence of men's works."—See pages 138 and 140.

PREFACE.

THE main object which I have proposed to myself in this volume is to collect, translate, and illustrate the principal passages in the different Indian books of the greatest antiquity, as well as in others of comparatively modern composition, which describe the creation of mankind and the origin of classes, or which tend to throw light upon the manner in which the caste system may have arisen.

I have not, however, hesitated to admit, when they fell in my way, such passages explanatory of the cosmogonic or mythological conceptions of the Indians as possess a general interest, although not immediately connected with the chief subject of the book.

Since the first edition appeared my materials have so much increased that the volume has now swelled to more than twice its original bulk. The second and third chapters are almost entirely new.¹ The fourteenth and fifteenth sections of the fourth chapter are entirely so. Even those parts of the book of which the sub-

¹ The contents of these chapters are not, however, absolutely new, but drawn from articles which I have contributed to the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society* since the first edition of the volume appeared.

stance remains the same have been so generally expanded that comparatively little continues without some alteration of greater or less importance.

In order that the reader may learn at once what he may expect to find in the following pages, I shall supply here a fuller and more connected summary of their contents than is furnished by the table which follows this preface.

The Introduction (pp. 1-6) contains a very rapid survey of the sources from which our information on the subject of caste is to be derived, viz. the Vedic hymns, the Brāhmaṇas, the Epic poems, and the Purāṇas, in which the chronological order and the general characteristics of these works are stated.

The first chapter (pp. 1-160) comprehends the mythical accounts of the creation of man and of the origin of castes which are to be found in the Vedic hymns, in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages, in the Rāmāyaṇa, the Mahābhārata, and the Purāṇas. The first section (pp. 7-15) contains a translation of the celebrated hymn called Puruṣa Sūkta, which appears to be the oldest extant authority for attributing a separate origin to the four castes, and a discussion of the question whether the creation there described was intended by its author to convey a literal or an allegorical sense. The second, third, and fourth sections (pp. 15-34) adduce a series of passages from the works standing next in chronological order to the hymns of the Rig-veda, which differ more or less widely from the account of the creation given in the Puruṣa Sūkta, and therefore justify the conclusion

that in the Vedic age no uniform orthodox and authoritative doctrine existed in regard to the origin of castes. In the fifth section (pp. 35–42) the different passages in Manu's Institutes which bear upon the subject are quoted, and shewn to be not altogether in harmony with each other. The sixth section (pp. 43–49) describes the system of great mundane periods called Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, as explained in the Purāṇas, and shews that no traces of these periods are to be found in the hymns of the Rig-veda, and but few in the Brāhmaṇas (compare p. 215 f.). Sections seventh and eighth (pp. 49–107) contain the accounts of the different creations, including that of the castes, and of the primeval state of mankind, which are given in the Vishnu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, together with references (see pp. 52 ff., 68 ff.) to passages in the Brāhmaṇas, which appear to have furnished some of the germs of the various Puranic representations, and a comparison of the details of the latter with each other which proves that in some respects they are mutually irreconcilable (see pp. 65 ff., 102 ff.). The ninth section (pp. 107–114) adduces the accounts of Brahmā's passion for his daughter, which are given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and the Matsya Purāṇa. In the tenth section (pp. 114–122) are embraced such notices connected with the subject of this volume as I have observed in the Rāmāyaṇa. In one of the passages men of all the four castes are said to be the offspring of Manu, a female, the daughter of Daksha, and wife of Kaśyapa. The eleventh section contains a collection of texts from the Mahābhārata and its appendage the Hari-

vaṁśa, in which various and discrepant explanations are given of the existing diversity of castes, one of them representing all the four classes as descendants of Manu Vaivasvata (p. 126), others attributing the distinction of classes to an original and separate creation of each, which, however, is not always described as occurring in the same manner (pp. 128 ff. and 153); whilst others, again, more reasonably, declare the distinction to have arisen out of differences of character and action. This section, as well as the one which precedes it, also embraces accounts of the perfection which prevailed in the first yugas, and of the gradually increasing degeneracy which ensued in those that followed. The twelfth section (pp. 155–158) contains extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which coincide for the most part with those drawn from the other authorities. One text, however, describes mankind as the offspring of Aryaman and Mātṛikā; and another distinctly declares that there was originally but one caste. The thirteenth section (pp. 159 f.) sums up the results of the entire chapter, and asserts the conclusion that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent theory of the origin of caste; but, on the contrary, offer a great variety of explanations, mythical, mystical, and rationalistic, to account for this social phenomenon.

The second chapter (pp. 160–238) treats of the tradition of the descent of the Indian nation from Manu. The first section (pp. 162–181) contains a series of texts from the Rig-veda, which speak of Manu as the progenitor of the race to which the authors of the hymns

belonged, and as the first institutor of religious rites ; and adverts to certain terms employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general or to signify certain tribal divisions. The second section (pp. 181-196) adduces a number of legends and notices regarding Manu from the Brāhmaṇas and other works next in order of antiquity to the hymns of the Rig-veda. The most interesting and important of these legends is that of the deluge, as given in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is afterwards (pp. 216 ff.) compared with the later versions of the same story found in the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata and Agni Purāṇas, which are extracted in the third section (pp. 196-220). Some remarks of M. Burnouf and Professor Weber, on the question whether the legend of a deluge was indigenous in India, or derived from a Semitic source, are noticed in pp. 215 f. The fourth section adduces the legendary accounts of the rise of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, which are found in the Purāṇas ; and quotes a story given in the Mahābhārata about king Vitāhavya, a Kshattriya, being transformed into a Brāhman by the mere word of the sage Bhṛigu.

In the third chapter (pp. 239-295) I have endeavoured to shew what light is thrown by a study of the hymns of the Rig- and Atharva-vedas upon the mutual relations of the different classes of Indian society at the time when those hymns were composed. In the first section (pp. 240-265) the various texts of the Rig-veda in which the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa occur are cited, and an attempt is made to determine the senses in which those

words are there employed. The result of this examination is that in none of the hymns of the Rig-veda, except the Purusha Sūkta, is there any distinct reference to a recognized system of four castes, although the occasional use of the word Brāhmaṇa, which is apparently equivalent to Brāhmā-putra, or "the son of a priest," and other indications seem to justify the conclusion that the priesthood had already become a profession, although it did not yet form an exclusive caste (see pp. 258 f., 263 ff.). The second section (pp. 265–280) is made up of quotations from the hymns of the Rig-veda and various other later works, adduced to shew that persons who according to ancient Indian tradition were not of priestly families were in many instances reputed to be authors of Vedic hymns, and in two cases, at least, are even said to have exercised priestly functions. These two cases are those (1) of Devāpi (pp. 269ff.), and (2) of Viśvāmitra, which is afterwards treated at great length in the fourth chapter. This section concludes with a passage from the Matsya Purāṇa, which not only speaks of the Kshattrīyas Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, as "utterers of Vedic hymns" (*mantra-vādinah*); but also names three Vaiśyas, Bhālanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti, as "composers of hymns" (*mantra-kṛitah*). The third section (pp. 280–289) shews by quotations from the Atharva-veda that at the period when those portions of that collection which are later than the greater part of the Rig-veda were composed, the pretensions of the Brāhmaṇs had been considerably developed. The fourth section (pp. 289–295) gives an account of the opinions expressed by Professor

R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of castes.

The fourth chapter (pp. 296-479) contains a series of legendary illustrations derived from the *Rāmāyana*, the *Mahābhārata*, and the *Purāṇas*, of the struggle which appears to have occurred in the early ages of Indian history between the *Brāhmans* and the *Kshattriyas*, after the former had begun to constitute an exclusive sacerdotal class, but before their rights had become accurately defined by long prescription, and when the members of the ruling caste were still indisposed to admit their pretensions. I need not here state in detail the contents of the first five sections (pp. 296-317) which record various legends descriptive of the ruin which is said to have overtaken different princes by whom the *Brāhmans* were slighted and their claims resisted. The sixth and following sections down to the thirteenth (pp. 317-426) contain, first, such references to the two renowned rivals, *Vasishṭha* and *Viśvāmitra* as are found in the hymns of the *Rig-veda*, and which represent them both as *Vedic* *rishis*; secondly, such notices of them as occur in the *Brāhmanas*, and shew that *Viśvāmitra*, as well as *Vasishṭha*, had officiated as a priest; and, thirdly, a series of legends from the *Rāmāyana* and *Mahābhārata* which describe the repeated struggles for superiority in which they were engaged, and attempt, by a variety of fictions, involving miraculous elements, to explain the manner in which *Viśvāmitra* became a *Brāhman*, and to account for the fact which was so distinctly certified by tradition (see pp. 361 ff.), but appeared so un-

accountable in later ages (see pp. 265 f., 364 ff.), that that famous personage, although notoriously a Kshattriya by birth, had nevertheless exercised sacerdotal functions.² The fourteenth section (pp. 426-430) contains a story from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka, a Rājanya, renowned for his stoical temperament and religious knowledge, who communicated theological instruction to

² As I have omitted in the body of the work to say anything of the views of Signor Angelo de Gubernatis about the purport of the Vedic texts relating to Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, I may state here that this young Italian Sanskritist, in his Essay, entitled "Fonti Vediche dell' Epopea" (see the Rivista Orientale, vol. i. pp. 409 ff., 478 ff.), combats the opinion of Professor Roth that these passages refer to two historical personages, and to real events in which they played a part; and objects that Roth "took no account of the possibility that a legend of the heavens may have been based upon a human foundation" (p. 409). Signor de Gubernatis further observes that the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third Maṇḍala of the R̥g-veda "may perhaps have been recited at a later period in connection with some battle which really occurred, but that the fact which they celebrate seems to be much more ancient, and to be lost in a very remote myth" (p. 410). Viśvāmitra, he considers, is one of the appellations of the sun, and as both the person who bears this name, and Indra are the sons of Kusika, they must be brothers (p. 412). See, however, the remarks in p. 347 f. of this volume on the epithet Kausika as applied to Indra). Sudās, according to Signor de Gubernatis (p. 413), denotes the horse of the sun, or the sun himself, while Vasishṭha is the greatest of the Vasus, and denotes Agni, the solar fire, and means, like Viśvāmitra, the sun (p. 483). Signor de Gubernatis is further of opinion (pp. 414, 478, 479, and 483) that both the 33rd and 53rd hymns of the third, and the 18th hymn of the seventh Maṇḍala are comparatively modern; that the names of Kusikas and Viśvāmitras claimed by the authors of the two former, are fraudulently assumed; while the last (the 18th hymn of the seventh Maṇḍala) was composed by a sacerdotal family who claimed Vasishṭha as its founder. I will only remark that the theory of Signor de Gubernatis appears to me to be an improbable one. But the only point of much importance for my own special purpose is that ancient Indian tradition represents both Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra as real personages, the one of either directly divine, or of sacerdotal descent, and the other of royal lineage. They may, however, have been nothing more than legendary creations, the fictitious eponymi of the families which bore the same name.

some eminent Brāhmans, and became a member of their class. In the fifteenth section (pp. 431-436) two other instances are adduced from the same Brāhmaṇa and from two of the Upanishads, of Kshattriyas who were in possession of truths unknown to the Brāhmans, and who, contrary to the usual rule, became the teachers of the latter. The sixteenth section (pp. 436-440) contains an extract from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa regarding king Viśvantara who, after at first attempting to prevent the Syāparṇa Brāhmans from officiating at his sacrifice, became at length convinced by one of their number of their superior knowledge, and accepted their services. In the seventeenth section (pp. 440-442) a story is told of Matanga, the spurious offspring of a Brāhman woman by a man of inferior caste, who failed, in spite of his severe and protracted austerities, to elevate himself (as Viśvāmitra had done) to the rank of a Brāhman. The eighteenth section (pp. 442-479) contains a series of legends, chiefly from the Mahābhārata, regarding the repeated exterminations of the Kshattriyas by the warlike Brāhman Paraśurāma of the race of Bhṛigu, and the ultimate restoration of the warrior tribe, and a variety of extravagant illustrations of the supernatural power of the Brāhmans, related by the god Vāyu to king Arjuna, who began by denying the superiority of the priests, but was at length compelled to succumb to the overwhelming evidence adduced by his aerial monitor.

In the fifth chapter (pp. 480-488) I have given some account of the opinions entertained by Manu, and the

authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, regarding the origin of the tribes dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, but not comprehended in the Indian caste-system.

The sixth and concluding chapter (pp. 489-504) contains the Puranic accounts of the parts of the earth exterior to Bhāratavarsha, or India, embracing first, the other eight Varshas or divisions of Jambudvīpa, the central continent ; secondly, the circular seas and continents (dvīpas) by which Jambudvīpa is surrounded ; and, thirdly, the remoter portions of the mundane system.

The Appendix (pp. 505-515) contains some supplementary notes.

As in the previous edition, I have been careful to acknowledge in the text and notes of this volume the assistance which I have derived from the writings of the different Sanskrit Scholars who have treated of the same subjects. It will, however, be well to specify here the various publications to which I have been indebted for materials. In 1858, I wrote thus : " It will be seen at once that my greatest obligations are due to Professor H. H. Wilson, whose translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, with abundant and valuable notes, derived chiefly from the other Purāṇas, was almost indispensable to the successful completion of such an attempt as the present." In this second edition also I have had constant occasion to recur to Wilson's important work, now improved and enriched by the additional notes of the editor Dr. Fitz-edward Hall. It is to his edition, so far as it has yet ap-

peared, that my references have been made. I acknowledged at the same time the aid which I had received from M. Langlois' French translation of the Harivaṁśa, and from M. Burnouf's French translation of the first nine books of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, which opened up an easy access to the contents of the original works. A large amount of materials has also been supplied to me, either formerly or for the preparation of the present edition, by Mr. Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays; by Professor C. Lassen's Indian Antiquities; Professor Rudolph Roth's Dissertations on the Literature and History of the Vedas, and contributions to the Journal of the German Oriental Society, and to Weber's Indische Studien, etc.; Professor Weber's numerous articles in the same Journals, and his History of Indian Literature; Professor Max Müller's History of Ancient Sanskrit Literature, Chips from a German Workshop, article on the Funeral rites of the Brāhmins, etc.; Professor Benfey's Glossary of the Sāma Veda, and translations of Vedic hymns; Dr. Haug's text and translation of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa: while much valuable aid has been derived from the written communications with which I have been favoured by Professor Aufrecht, as well as from his Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. I am also indebted to Professor Müller for pointing out two texts which will be found in the Appendix, and to Professor Goldstücker for copying for me two passages of Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's Mīmamsā-vārttika, which are printed in the same place, and for making some corrections in my translations of them.

I formerly observed that at the same time my own researches had “enabled me to collect a good many texts which I had not found elsewhere adduced;” and the same remark applies to a considerable portion of the new matter which has been adduced in the present edition.

CONTENTS.

PAGES.

v.—xvi. PREFACE.

1—6. INTRODUCTION, CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF
THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

7—160. CHAPTER I.—MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF
MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

7— 15. SECT. I. Ninetieth hymn of the tenth Book of the Rig-
veda Sanhitā, called Purusha-Sūkta, or the hymn to
Purusha.

15— 16. SECT. II. Quotation from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1,
1, 4 ff.

17— 22. SECT. III. Citations from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, the
Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vāyasaneyi Sanhitā, and the
Atharva-veda.

22— 34. SECT. IV. Further quotations from the Taittirīya Brāh-
maṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Śatapatha
Brāhmaṇa.

35— 42. SECT. V. Manu's account of the origin of castes.

43— 49. SECT. VI. Account of the system of yugas, manvantaras,
and kalpas, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa and other
authorities.

49— 73. SECT. VII. Account of the different creations, including
that of the castes, according to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, with
some passages from the Brāhmaṇas, containing the germs
of the Puranic statements.

74—107. SECT. VIII. Account of the different creations, including
that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya
Purāṇas.

PAGES.	
107—114.	SECT. IX. Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.
114—122.	SECT. X. Quotations from the Rāmāyaṇa on the creation, and on the origin of castes.
122—155.	SECT. XI. Quotations from the Mahābhārata and Hari-vaṁśa on the same subjects, and on the four yugas.
155—158.	SECT. XII. Citations from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa on the creation and on the origin of castes.
159—160.	SECT. XIII. Results of this chapter.
161—238.	CHAPTER II. — TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.
162—181.	SECT. I. On Manu as the progenitor of the Āryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites, according to the hymns of the Rig-veda
181—196.	SECT. II. Legend of Manu and the deluge from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, and other notices regarding Manu from the Śatapatha, Aitareya, and Taittirīya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittirīya Sanhitā, and the Chāndogya Upanishad.
196—220.	SECT. III. Extracts from the Mahābhārata and the Matsya, Bhāgavata, and Agni Purāṇas regarding Manu, and the deluge; and comparison of the versions of this legend adduced in this and the preceding section.
220—238.	SECT. IV. Legendary accounts of the origin of castes among the descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.
239—295.	CHAPTER III. — ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF INDIAN SOCIETY, ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG- AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.
240—265.	SECT. I. On the signification of the words brāhmān and brāhmaṇa, etc., in the Rig-veda.
265—280.	SECT. II. Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata and other works, to show that according to ancient Indian tradition persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.
280—289.	SECT. III. Texts from the Atharva-veda, illustrating the progress of Brahmanical pretensions.
289—295.	SECT. IV. Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.

- PAGES.
- 296—400. CHAPTER IV.—EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRĀHMANANS AND THE KSHATTRIYAS.
- 296—298. SECT. I. Manu's summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.
- 298—306. SECT. II. Legend of Veṇa.
- 306—307. SECT. III. Legend of Purūravas.
- 307—315. SECT. IV. Story of Nahusha.
- 316—317. SECT. V. Story of Nimi.
- 317—337. SECT. VI. Vasishṭha, according to the Rig-veda and later works.
- 337—371. SECT. VII. Viśvāmitra, according to the Rig-veda, Aitareya Brāhmaṇa and later authorities; earlier and later relations of priestly families and the other classes.
- 371—375. SECT. VIIa. Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?
- 375—378. SECT. VIII. Story of Trisanku.
- 379—388. SECT. IX. Legend of Hariśchandra.
- 388—397. SECT. X. Contest of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, and entrance of the latter into the Brāhman caste, according to the Mahābhārata.
- 397—411. SECT. XI. The same legend, and those of Trisanku, and Ambarisha, according to the Rāmāyana, with a further story about Viśvāmitra from the Mahābhārata.
- 411—414. SECT. XII. Other accounts from the Mahābhārata of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman.
- 414—426. SECT. XIII. Legend of Saudāsa, and further story of the rivalry of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra, according to the Mahābhārata, with an extract from the Rāja Taranginī.
- 426—430. SECT. XIV. Story from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhman, with extracts from the Mahābhārata about the same prince.
- 431—436. SECT. XV. Other instances in which Brāhmanas are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshatriyas.
- 436—440. SECT. XVI. Story of king Viśvantara and the Syāparṇa Brāhmanas.
- 440—442. SECT. XVII. Story of Matanga, who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhman.

442—479.	SECT. XVIII. Legend of the Brāhman Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas, according to the Mahābhārata and the Bhāgavata Purāna, with a series of narratives from the former work illustrating the superhuman power of the Brāhmins.
480—488.	CHAPTER V. RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU, THE MAHĀBHĀRATA, AND THE PURĀNAS.
489—504.	CHAPTER VI. PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.
505—516.	APPENDIX, CONTAINING SUPPLEMENTARY NOTES.
517—532.	INDEX.

ORIGINAL SANSKRIT TEXTS.

PART FIRST.

INTRODUCTION

CONTAINING A PRELIMINARY SURVEY OF THE SOURCES OF INFORMATION.

I PROPOSE in the present volume to give some account of the traditions, legends, and mythical narratives which the different classes of ancient Indian writings contain regarding the origin of mankind, and the classes or castes into which the Hindus have long been distributed. In order to ascertain whether the opinions which have prevailed in India on these subjects have continued fixed and uniform from the earliest period, or whether they have varied from age to age, and if so, what modifications they have undergone, it is necessary that we should first of all determine the chronological order of the various works from which our information is to be drawn. This task of classification can, as far as regards its great outlines, be easily accomplished. Although we cannot discover sufficient grounds for fixing with any precision the dates of these different books, we are perfectly able to settle the order in which the most important of those which are to form the basis of this investigation were composed. From a comparison of these several literary records, it will be found that the Hindus, like all other civilized nations, have passed through various stages of development,—social, moral, religious, and intellectual. The ideas and beliefs which are exhibited in their oldest documents, are not the same as those which we encounter in their later writings.

The principal books to which we must look for information on the subjects of our enquiry are the Vedas, including the Brāhmaṇas and Upanishads, the Sūtras, the Institutes of Manu, and the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. Of these different classes of works, the Vedas are allowed by all competent enquirers to be by far the most ancient.

There are, as every student of Indian literature is aware, four Vedas,—the Rig-veda, the Sāma-veda, the Yajur-veda, and the Atharva-veda. Each of the collections of works known as a Veda consists of two parts, which are called its *mantra* and its *brāhmaṇa*.¹ The Mantras are either metrical hymns, or prose forms of prayer. The Rig-veda and the Sāmaveda consist only of mantras of the former description. The Brāhmaṇas contain regulations regarding the employment of the mantras, and the celebration of the various rites of sacrifice, and also embrace certain treatises called Āraṇyakas, and others called Upanishads or Vedāntas (so called from their being the concluding portions of each Veda), which expound the mystical sense of some of the ceremonies, and discuss the nature of the godhead, and the means of acquiring religious knowledge with a view to final liberation.

The part of each Veda which contains the mantras, or hymns, is called its Sanhitā.² Thus the Rig-veda Sanhitā means the collection of hymns belonging to the Rig-veda. Of the four collections of hymns, that belonging to the last-mentioned Veda, which contains no less than 1,017 of these compositions, is by far the most important for historical purposes. Next in value must be reckoned those hymns of the Atharva-veda, which are peculiar to that collection, another portion of which, however, is borrowed, in most cases, verbatim, from the Rig-veda.³

¹ Śāyana says in his commentary on the Rigveda (vol. p. i. p. 4): *Mantra-brāhmaṇātmanokam tvevādushṭam lakṣaṇam | ata eva Āpastambo yajna-paribhāṣāyām evaṭha 'mantra-brāhmaṇayor veda-nāmadheyam'* | "The definition (of the Veda) as a book composed of *mantra* and *brāhmaṇa*, is unobjectionable. Hence Āpastamba says in the Yajnaparibhāṣā, 'Mantra and Brāhmaṇa have the name of Veda.'"

² This definition applies to all the Sanhitās, except that of the Taittirīya, or Black Yajur, Veda, in which Mantra and Brāhmaṇa are combined. But even this Sanhitā had a separate Brāhmaṇa connected with it. See Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 350, and Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, p. 83. The general character of the Vājasaneyi and Atharva Sanhitās is not affected by the fact that the last section of the former is an Upanishad, and that the fifteenth book of the latter has something of the nature of a Brāhmaṇa.

³ For further information on the Vedas, reference may be made to Professor Max Müller's *Ancient Sanskrit Literature*, *passim*, and also to vols. ii. iii. and iv. of the present work.

From this succinct account of the contents of the Vedas, it is clear that the Mantras must constitute their most ancient portions, since the Brāhmanas, which regulate the employment of the hymns, of necessity pre-suppose the earlier existence of the latter. On this subject the commentator on the Taittiriya, or Black Yajur-veda, Sanhitā thus expresses himself (p. 9 of the Calcutta edition):—

Yadyapi mantrabrāhmaṇātmake vedas tathāpi brāhmaṇasya mantra-vyākṛhāna-rūpatrād mantrā evādaṁ samāmnātāḥ | “Although the Veda is formed both of Mantra and Brāhmaṇa, yet as the Brāhmaṇa consists of an explanation of the Mantras, it is the latter which were at first recorded.”⁴

The priority of the hymns to the Brāhmanas is accordingly attested by the constant quotations from the former which are found in the latter.⁵ Another proof that the hymns are far older than any other portion of Indian literature is to be found in the character of their language. They are composed in an ancient dialect of the Sanskrit, containing many words of which the sense was no longer known with certainty in the age of Yaska, the author of the Nirukta,⁶ and many grammatical forms which had become obsolete in the time of the great grammarian Pāṇini, who refers to them as peculiar to the hymns (*chhandas*).⁷ A third argument in favour of the greater antiquity of the mantras is supplied by the fact that the gods whom they represent as the most prominent objects of adoration, such as Indra and Varuṇa, occupy but a subordinate position in the Itihāsas and Purāṇas, whilst others, viz., Viṣṇu and Rudra, though by no means the most important deities of the hymns, are exalted to the first rank, and assume a different character, in the Puranic pantheon.⁸

⁴ See also the passage quoted from the Nirukta in p. 174 of the 2nd vol. of this work, and that cited from Sāyana in p. 195 of the same vol. Compare the following passage of the Muṇḍaka Upaniṣad, i. 2, 1 : *Tad etat satyam mantreshu karmāṇi tavayo yāny apasāyams tāni tretāyām bahudhā santatāni* | “This is true: the rites which the rishis saw (i.e. discovered by revelation) in the hymns—these rites were in great variety celebrated in the Tretā (age).”

⁵ See vol. ii. of this work, p. 195, and the article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 316 ff.

⁶ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 178 ff, and my article on the “Interpretation of the Veda” in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. ii. new series, pp. 323 ff.

⁷ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 216 ff.

⁸ See vol. ii. of this work, 212 ff, and vol. iv. 1, 2, and *passim*.

On all these grounds it may be confidently concluded that the mantras, or hymns, of the Rig-veda are by far the most ancient remains of Indian literature. The hymns themselves are of different periods, some being older, and some more recent. This is shown not only by the nature of the case,—as it is not to be supposed that the whole of the contents of such a large national collection as the Rig-veda Saṁhitā should have been composed by the men of one, or even two, generations,—but also by the frequent references which occur in the mantras themselves to older rishis, or poets, and to older hymns.⁹ It is, therefore, quite possible that a period of several centuries may have intervened between the composition of the oldest and that of the most recent of these poems. But if so, it is also quite conceivable that in this interval considerable changes may have taken place in the religious ideas and ceremonies, and in the social and ecclesiastical institutions of the people among whom these hymns were produced, and that some traces of these changes may be visible on comparing the different hymns with each other.

No sufficient data exist for determining with exactness the period at which the hymns were composed. Professor Müller divides them into two classes, the Mantras or more recent hymns, which he supposes may have been produced between 1000 and 800 years,—and the older hymns, to which he applies the name of Chhandas, and which he conceives may have been composed between 1200 and 1000 years,—before the Christian era. Other scholars are of opinion that they may be even older (see Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, p. 572, and the Preface to the 4th Vol. of the same author's edition of the Rig-veda, pp. iv.-xiii). This view is shared by Dr. Haug, who thus writes in his introduction to the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, p. 47: "We do not hesitate, therefore, to assign the composition of the bulk of the Brāhmaṇas to the years 1400-1200 B.C.; for the Saṁhitā we require a period of *at least* 500-600 years, with an interval of about two hundred years between the end of the proper Brāhmaṇa period. Thus we obtain for the bulk of Saṁhitā the space from 1400-2000; the oldest hymns and sacrificial formulas may be a few hundred years more ancient still, so that we would fix the very commencement of Vedic literature between 2000-2400 B.C."

⁹ See vol. ii. of this work, pp. 206 ff., and vol. iii. pp. 116 ff., 121 ff.

Next in order of time to the most recent of the hymns come, of course, the Brāhmaṇas. Of these (1) the Aitareya and Sāṅkhiyana are connected with the Rig-veda; (2) the Tāṇḍya, the Panchaviṃśa and the Chhāndogya with the Sāma-veda; (3) the Taittirīya with the Taittirīya or Black Yajur-veda; (4) the Śatapatha with the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā or White Yajur-veda; and (5) the Gopatha with the Atharva-veda.¹⁰ These works, written in prose, prescribe, as I have already intimated, the manner in which the Mantras are to be used and the various rites of sacrifice to be celebrated. They also expound the mystical signification of some of the ceremonies, and adduce a variety of legends to illustrate the origin and efficacy of some of the ritual prescriptions. That in order of age the Brāhmaṇas stand next to the Mantras is proved by their simple, antiquated, and tautological style, as well as by the character of their language, which, though approaching more nearly than that of the hymns, to classical or Pāṇinian Sanskrit, is yet distinguished by certain archaisms both of vocabulary and of grammatical form which are unknown to the Itihāsas and Purāṇas.¹¹ The most recent portions of the Brāhmaṇas are the Aranyakas and Upanishads, of which the character and contents have been already summarily indicated. The remaining works which form the basis of our investigations come under the designation of Smṛiti, as distinguished from that of Śruti, which is applied to the Mantras, Brāhmaṇas, Aranyakas, and Upanishads.

The term Smṛiti includes (1) the Vedāṅgas, such as the Nirukta of Yāska, (2) the Śūtras or aphorisms, *śrauta* and *grihya*, or sacrificial and domestic, etc., (3) the Institutes of Manu, (4) the Itihāsas and Purāṇas. To the class of Itihāsas belong (1) the Rāmāyaṇa (said to be the work of Valmiki), which contains an account in great part, at least, fabulous, of the adventures of Rāma, and the Mahābhārata, which describes the wars and adventures of the Kurus and Pāṇḍus, and embraces also a great variety of episodes and numerous mythological narratives, as well as religious, philosophical, and political discussions, which are interwoven with, or interpolated in, the framework of the poem. This

¹⁰ For further details on these Brāhmaṇas, the reader may consult Professor Max Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 345 ff.; Professor Weber's *Indische Literaturgeschichte*, and *Indische Studien*; and Dr. Haug's *Aitareya Brahmana*.

¹¹ See, for example, the *S. P. Br.* xi. 5, 1, 15; and the *Taitt. Sanhitā*, ii. 2, 10, 2, and ii. 6, 7, 1.

work is said to be the production of Vyāsa, but its great bulk, its almost encyclopædic character, and the discrepancies in doctrine which are observable between its different parts, lead inevitably to the conclusion that it is not the composition of a single author, but has received large additions from a succession of writers, who wished to obtain currency and authority for their several opinions by introducing them into this great and venerated repository of national tradition.¹²

The Purāṇas are commonly said to be eighteen in number, in addition to certain inferior works of the same description called Upapurāṇas. For an account of these books and a summary of their contents, I must refer to the late Professor H. H. Wilson's introduction to his translation of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.¹³

In treating the several topics which are to be handled in this volume, I propose in each case to adduce, first, any texts bearing upon it which may be found in the hymns of the R̥g-veda; next, those in the Brāhmaṇas and their appendages; and, lastly, those occurring in any of the different classes of works coming under the designation of Smṛiti. By this means we shall learn what conceptions or opinions were entertained on each subject by the oldest Indian authors, and what were the various modifications to which these ideas were subjected by their successors.

¹² On the Rāmāyaṇa and Mahābhārata, see Professor Monier Williams's "Indian Epic Poetry," which contains a careful analysis of the leading narrative of each of the poems.

¹³ See also the same author's analyses of the contents of the Vishṇu, Vāyu, Agni, and Brāhma-vaivarta Purāṇas in the "Gleanings of Science," published in Calcutta, and those of the Brāhma and Pādma Purāṇas in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, No. ix (1838) and No. x, (1839).

CHAPTER I.

MYTHICAL ACCOUNTS OF THE CREATION OF MAN, AND OF THE ORIGIN OF THE FOUR CASTES.

It will be seen from the different texts to be adduced in this chapter, that from a very early period the Indian writers have propounded a great variety of speculations regarding the origin of mankind, and of the classes or castes into which they found their own community divided. The most commonly received of these explanations is the fable which represents the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, to have been separately created from the head, the breast or arms, the thighs, and the feet of the Creator. Of this mythical account no trace is to be found in any of the hymns of the Rīg-veda, except one, the Purusha Sūkta.

Although for reasons which will be presently stated, I esteem it probable that this hymn belongs to the most recent portion of the Rīg-veda, it will be convenient to adduce and to discuss it first, along with certain other texts from the Brāhmaṇas, Itihāsas, and Purāṇas, which professedly treat of the origin of mankind and of caste, before we proceed to examine the older parts of the hymn-collection, with the view of ascertaining what opinion the authors of them appear to have entertained in regard to the earliest history of their race, and to the grounds of those relations which they found subsisting between the different classes of society contemporary with themselves.

SECT. I.—*90th Hymn of the 10th Book of the Rīg-veda Sanhitā, called
Purusha Sūkta, or the hymn to Purusha.*

This celebrated hymn contains, as far as we know, the oldest extant passage which makes mention of the fourfold origin of the Hindu race.

In order to appreciate the character of this passage, we must consider it in connection with its context. I therefore quote the whole of the hymn :¹⁴

R. V. x. 90. 1. *Sahasra-śīrṣhā Puruṣaḥ sahasrākṣaḥ sahasra-pāt | sa bhūmim viśvato vṛitvā atyatiśṭhad daśaṅgulam |* 2. *Puruṣaḥ evedaṁ sarvaṁ yad bhūtāṁ yachcha bhāryam | utāmṛitatasyeśāno yad annenātirohati |* 3. *Etāvān asya mahimā ato jyāyāṁścha Pārushaḥ | pādo 'sya viśvā bhūtāni tripād asyāmṛitaṁ divi |* 4. *Tripād ūrdhva ud ait Pūrushaḥ pādo 'syabhavarat punaḥ | tato viśvā vyākṛāmat sāsanānaśane abhi |* 5. *tasmād Virāḥ ajāyata Virājo adhi Pārushaḥ | sa jūto aty arichyata paśchād bhūmim atho puraḥ |* 6. *Yat Puruṣeṇa haviṣhā devāḥ yajnam atavrata | vasanto asyāsīd ājyam grīṣmaḥ idhmaḥ śaraḥ haviḥ |* 7. *Taṁ yajnam barhiṣhi praukshan Puruṣaṁ jātum agrataḥ | tena devāḥ ayajanta sādhyāḥ rishayaḥ cha ye |* 8. *Tasmād yajnat sarvabhūtaḥ sambhṛitaṁ prishadājyam | paśūn tāṁś chakre vāyavyān āraṇyān grāmyāś cha ye |* 9. *Tasmād yajnat sarvabhūtaḥ rishayaḥ sāmāni jajñire | chhandāṁsi jajñire tasmād yajus tasmād ajāyata |* 10. *Tasmād āsvā ajāyanta ye ke cha ubhayaḥ | gāvo ha jajñire tasmāt tasmāj jātāḥ ajāyāḥ |* 11. *Yat Puruṣaṁ vi adadhuh katidhā vi akalpayan | mukham kim asya kau bāhū kā ūrū pādā uchyete |* 12. *Brāhmaṇo 'sya mukham āsīd bāhū rājanyaḥ kṛitāḥ | ūrū tad asya yad vaiśyaḥ padbhyāṁ śūdro ajāyata |* 13. *chandramāḥ manaso jūtaś chakṣhoḥ sūryo ajāyata | mukhād Indrāś cha Agnīś cha prāṇād Vāyur ajāyata |* 14. *Nābhyaḥ āsīd antarikṣam śīrṣhe dyauḥ samavartata | padbhyāṁ bhūmir diśaḥ śrotrāt tathā lokān akalpayan |* 15. *Saptāsyāsan paridhayaś triḥ sapta samidhaḥ kṛitāḥ | devāḥ yad yajnam tanvānāḥ abadhnan Puruṣam paśum |* 16. *Yajnena yajnaṁ ayajanta devāḥ tāni dharmāni pratha-*

¹⁴ The Puruṣa Sūkta is also found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā of the White Yajur-veda (31. 1-16) and in the Atharva-veda (19. 6. 1 ff.) See Colebrooke's Miscellaneous Essays, i. 167 f., and note in p. 309 (or pp. 104, and 197, of Messrs. Williams and Norgate's edition); Burnouf's Bhāgavata Purāṇa, vol. i. Preface, pp. cxxiii. ff.; Wilson's Preface to his translation of the Rīgveda, vol. i. p. xlv.; Professor Roth's remarks in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, i. pp. 78 f.; Müller in Bunsen's Philosophy of Univ. History, vol. i. p. 344; Müller's Anc. Sank. Lit., pp. 570 f.; Professor Weber's translation in Indische Studien ix. p. 5; and my own translation, notes and remarks in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 353 ff., and for 1866, pp. 282 f.

mām āsan | te ha nākam mahimānaḥ sachanta yatra pūrve sādhyāḥ santi devāḥ |

"1. Purusha has a thousand heads,¹⁵ a thousand eyes, a thousand feet. On every side enveloping¹⁶ the earth, he overpassed¹⁷ (it) by a space of ten fingers. 2. Purusha himself is this whole (universe), whatever has been and whatever shall be. He is also the lord of immortality, since (or, when) by food he expands,¹⁸ 3. Such is his greatness, and Purusha is superior to this. All existences are a quarter of him; and three-fourths of him are that which is immortal in the sky.¹⁹ 4. With three quarters Purusha mounted upwards. A quarter of him was again produced here. He was then diffused everywhere over things which eat and things which do not eat. 5. From him was born Virāj, and from Virāj, Purusha.²⁰ When born, he extended beyond the earth, both behind and before. 6. When the gods performed a sacrifice with Purusha as the oblation, the spring was its butter, the summer its fuel, and the autumn its (accompanying) offering. 7. This victim, Purusha, born in the beginning, they immolated on

¹⁵ The Atharva-veda (xix. 6, 1) reads *sahasra-bāhuḥ*, "having a thousand arms," the transcriber, perhaps, taking the verse literally, and considering that a being in human form, if he had a thousand eyes and a thousand feet, ought only to have five hundred heads, and not a thousand as in the text of the Rīg-veda.

¹⁶ For *ṛitvā* in the R. V. the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, 31. 1, reads *ṣṛitvā*, which seems to mean nearly the same.

¹⁷ The word is *atyatishṭhat*. Compare the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 6, 1, 1, and *atishṭhātāvāṇaḥ* in S' P. B. iv. 5, 4, 1, 2. Professor Weber renders *atyatishṭhat* "occupies" (Indische Studien, ix. 5).

¹⁸ The sense of this is obscure. Instead of *yad annenātirohati*, the A. V. reads *yad anyenābhavat saha*, ("that which," or, "since he) was with another."

¹⁹ Compare A. V. x. 8, 7: *ardhena viśvam bhuvanam jajāna yad asya ardham kva tad babhūva*: "with the half he produced the whole world; what became of the (other) half of him?" See also *ibid.* v. 13.

²⁰ This sentence is illustrated by R. V. x. 72, 5, where it is said, *Aditer Dakṣo ajāyata Dakṣād u Aditiḥ pari* | "Aditi was born from Dakṣa and Dakṣa from Aditi"—a text on which Yāska remarks (Nirukta, xi. 23): *tat katham upapadyeta | samāna-janmānau syātām iti | api vā deva-dharmena itaretara-janmānau syātām itaretatara-prakṛiti* | "how can this be possible? They may have had a common birth; or, conformably with their nature as deities, they may have been produced from one another, and possess the properties of one another." Compare A. V. 13. 4. 29 ff., where Indra is said to have been produced from a great many other gods, or entities, and they reciprocally from him. In regard to Virāj, compare the notes on the verse before us in my article on the "Progress of the Vedic religion," etc., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 354.

the sacrificial grass. With him the gods, the Sādhyas,²¹ and the rishis sacrificed. 8. From that universal sacrifice were provided curds and butter. It formed those aerial²² (creatures) and animals both wild and tame. 9. From that universal sacrifice sprang the rich and sāmān verses, the metres, and the yajush. 10. From it sprang horses, and all animals with two rows of teeth; kine sprang from it; from it goats and sheep. 11. When (the gods) divided Purusha, into how many parts did they cut him up? what was his mouth? what arms (had he)? what (two objects) are said (to have been) his thighs and feet? 12. The Brāhman was his mouth;²³ the Rājanya was made his arms; the being (called) the Vaiśya, he was his thighs;²⁴ the Sūdra sprang from his feet. 13. The moon sprang from his soul (*manas*), the sun from his eye, Indra and Agni from his mouth, and Vāyu from his breath.²⁵ 14. From his navel arose the air, from his head the sky, from his feet the earth, from his ear the (four) quarters: in this manner (the gods) formed the worlds. 15. When the gods, performing sacrifice, bound Purusha as a victim, there were seven sticks (stuck up) for it

²¹ See on the Sādhyas, Professor Weber's note, Ind. St. ix. 6 f., and the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note.

²² See, however, Vāj. Sanh. xiv. 30, to be quoted below.

²³ Compare the Kaushitaki Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, ii. 9: *atha paurṇamāsyām pṛvarastūch chandramasam dṛṣṭvānūnam upatishtheta clayā eva āperitā* "soma rājñsi vishvakshano pancha mukho'si prajāpatiḥ | brāhmaṇas te ekam mukham | tena mukhena rājño'tsi | tena mukhena mīm annūdam kuru | rājū te ekam mukham | tena mukhena viśvo'tsi | tena mukhena mīm annūdam kuru | śyenas te ekam mukhaḥ" "ityādi | which is thus translated by Mr. Cowell: "Next on the day of the full moon let him in this same way adore the moon when it is seen in front of him (saying), 'thou art Soma, the brilliant, the wise, the five-mouthed, the lord of creatures. The Brāhman is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest kings, with that mouth make me to eat food. The king is one mouth of thine, with that mouth thou eatest common men, with that mouth make me to eat food. The hawk is one mouth of thine,' etc. The fourth mouth is fire, and the fifth is in the moon itself. I should prefer to render the words *soma rājñsi*, 'thou art king Soma,'—'king' being a frequent designation of this god in the Brāhmaṇas. See also M. Bh. iii. 12,962, where Vishnu is introduced as saying in the same mystical way: *Brahma vaktram bhujau kshatram ūrū me śāśvatitvīḥ viśaḥ | pādau sūdrūḥ bhavantime vikramaṇa kramaṇa cha* | "The Brāhman is my mouth; the Kshattria is my arms; the Viśas are my thighs; these Sūdras with their vigour and rapidity are my feet."

²⁴ Instead of *ūrū*, "thighs," the Atharva-veda, xix. 6, 6, reads *madhyam*, "middle."

²⁵ The Vāj. S. xxxi. 13, has a different and singular reading of the last half verse: *śrotṛn vāyuscha prṇas cha mukhād agnir ajāyata* | "From his ear came Vāyu and Prāṇa (breath) and from his mouth Agni."

(around the fire), and thrice seven pieces of fuel were made. 16. With sacrifice the gods performed the sacrifice. These were the earliest rites. These great powers have sought the sky, where are the former Sādhyas, gods."²⁰

I have above (p. 7) intimated an opinion that this hymn does not belong to the most ancient portion of the Rig-veda. This view is, however, controverted by Dr. Haug, who, in his tract on "the origin of Brāhmanism" (published at Poona in 1863), p. 5, writes as follows: "The few scholars who have been engaged in the study of the Vedas unanimously regard this hymn as a very late production of Vedic poetry; but there is no sufficient evidence to prove that. On the contrary, reasons might be adduced to shew that it is even old. The mystical character of the hymn is no proof at all of its late origin. Such allegorical hymns are to be met with in every book of the collection of the mantras, which goes by the name of Rig-veda samhitā. The Rishis, who were the authors of these hymns, delighted in such speculations. They chiefly were suggested to them by the sacrificial rites, which they daily were performing. According to the position which is assigned to it in the Yajur-veda (where it is found among the formulas referring to the human sacrifice), the hymn appears to have been used at the human sacrifices. That, at the earliest period of the Vedic time, human sacrifices were quite common with the Brahmans, can be proved beyond any doubt. But the more eminent and distinguished among their leaders soon abandoned the practice as revolting to human feelings. The form of the sacrifice, however, seems to have been kept for a long time; for the ritual required at that occasion is actually in the Yajur-veda; but they only tied men of different castes and classes to the sacrificial posts, and released them afterwards, sacrificing animals instead of them."

If it could be satisfactorily shewn that this hymn, in the same form as we now possess it, existed contemporaneously with the barbarous practice of human sacrifices which Dr. Haug believes to have at one time prevailed in India, we should, no doubt, have in this circumstance a strong proof of its antiquity. But if it was merely adopted as a part of the ceremonial at a later period, when the immolation of human

²⁰ This verse occurs also in R. V. i. 164. 50, and is quoted in Nirukta, xii. 14. See the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 395, note, already referred to.

beings had ceased to be otherwise than formal and nominal, and animals were substituted as the actual victims, the evidence of its remote antiquity is greatly weakened.

If we now compare the *Purusha Sūkta* with the two hymns (162 and 163) of the first Mandala of the *Rig-veda*, it will, I think, be apparent that the first is not adapted to be used at a literal human sacrifice in the same manner as the last two are to be employed at the immolation of a horse. There are, no doubt, some mystical passages in the second of these two hymns, as in verse 3, where the horse is identified with Yama, Āditya, and Trita; and "in the last section of the *Taittirīya Yajur-veda* the various parts of the horse's body are described as divisions of time and portions of the universe: 'morning is his head; the sun his eye; the air his breath; the moon his ear,'" etc. (Colebrooke's *Essays*, i. 62).²⁷ But the persons who officiate at the sacrifice, as referred to in these hymns, are ordinary priests of the ancient Indian ritual,—the *hotṛi*, *adhvaryu*, *āyayaj*, etc. (i. 162, 5); and details are given of the actual slaughter of the animal (i. 162, 11). The *Purusha Sūkta*, however does not contain the same indications of the literal immolation of a human victim. In it the sacrifice is not offered to the gods, but by the gods (verses 6, 7, 15, 16); no human priests are mentioned; the division of the victim (v. 11) must be regarded, like its slaughter (v. 7), as the work of the deities only. And the *Purusha* mentioned in the hymn could not well have been regarded as an ordinary man, as he is identified with the universe (v. 2), and he himself, or his immolation, is represented as the source of the creation (vv. 8, 10, 13, 14), and of the *Vedas* (v. 9).

As compared with by far the largest part of the hymns of the *Rig-veda*, the *Purusha Sūkta* has every character of modernness both in its diction and ideas. I have already observed that the hymns which we find in this collection are of very different periods. This, I believe, is not disputed.²⁸ The authors themselves, as we have seen, speak of newer and older hymns. So many as a thousand compositions of this description could scarcely have been produced within a very short space of time, and there is no reason to suppose that the literary activity of the ancient Hindus

²⁷ Compare the commencement of the *Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad*.

²⁸ See Dr. Haug's own remarks (quoted above, p. 4) on the period when the hymns were composed.

was confined to the period immediately preceding the collection of the hymns. But if we are to recognize any difference of age, what hymns can we more reasonably suppose to be the oldest than those which are at once archaic in language and style, and naive and simple in the character of their conceptions? and, on the other hand, what compositions can more properly be set down as the most recent than those which manifest an advance in speculative ideas, while their language approaches to the modern Sanskrit? These latter conditions seem to be fulfilled in the Purusha Sūkta, as well as in hymns x. 71 and 72, x. 81 and 82, x. 121, and x. 129.

On this subject Mr. Colebrooke states his opinion as follows (Miscellaneous Essays i. 309, note): "That remarkable hymn (the Purusha Sūkta) is in language, metre, and style, very different from the rest of the prayers with which it is associated. It has a decidedly more modern tone; and must have been composed after the Sanscrit language had been refined, and its grammar and rhythm perfected. The internal evidence which it furnishes serves to demonstrate the important fact that the compilation of the Vedas, in their present arrangement, took place after the Sanscrit tongue had advanced from the rustic and irregular dialect in which the multitude of hymns and prayers of the Veda was composed, to the polished and sonorous language in which the mythological poems, sacred and profane (*purāṇas* and *cāryas*), have been written."

Professor Max Müller expresses himself in a similar sense (Anc. Sansk. Lit., p. 570 f.): "There can be little doubt, for instance, that the 90th hymn of the 10th book . . . is modern both in its character and in its diction. It is full of allusions to the sacrificial ceremonials, it uses technical philosophical terms, it mentions the three seasons in the order of Vasanta, spring; Grishma, summer; and Śarad, autumn; it contains the only passage in the Rig-veda where the four castes are enumerated. The evidence of language for the modern date of this composition is equally strong. Grishma, for instance, the name for the hot season, does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda; and Vasanta also, the name of spring, does not belong to the earliest vocabulary of the Vedic poets. It occurs but once more in the Rig-veda (x. 161. 4), in a passage where the three seasons are mentioned in the order of Śarad, autumn; Hemanta, winter; and Vasanta, spring."

Professor Weber (Indische Studien, ix. 3) concurs in this view. He observes: "That the Purusha Sūkta, considered as a hymn of the Rig-veda, is among the latest portions of that collection, is clearly perceptible from its contents. The fact that the Sāma-sanhitā has not adopted any verso from it, is not without importance (compare what I have remarked in my Academical Prelections, p. 63). The Naigeya school, indeed, appears (although it is not quite certain),²⁹ to have extracted the first five verses in the seventh prapāṭhaka of the first Archika, which is peculiar to it."

We shall see in the following chapter that the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs but rarely in the Rig-veda Sanhitā, while *brahman*, "a priest," from which the former is derived, is of constant occurrence. From this circumstance also, it may be reasonably concluded that the hymns in which the derivative occurs are among the latest. The same remark may be made of the word *vaiśya*, as compared with *viś*.³⁰

Mr. Colebrooke's opinion of the character of the Purusha Sūkta is given in the following passage of his "Miscellaneous Essays" (vol. i. p. 161, note; or p. 105 of Williams & Norgate's ed. of 1858); "I think it unnecessary to quote from the commentary the explanation of this curious passage of the Vedas as it is there given, because it does not really elucidate the sense; the allegory is for the most part sufficiently obvious.

In his tract on "on the origin of Brahmanism," p. 4, Dr. Haug thus remarks on verses 11 and 12: "Now, according to this passage, which is the most ancient and authoritative we have on the origin of Brahmanism, and caste in general, the Brahman has not come from the mouth of this primary being, the Purusha, but the mouth of the latter became the Brahmanical caste, that is to say, was transformed into it. The passage has, no doubt, an allegorical sense. Mouth is the seat of speech. The allegory thus points out that the Brahmans are teachers and instructors of mankind. The arms are the seat of strength. If the two

²⁹ See on this subject Weber's foot-note, p. 3.

³⁰ Professor Aufrecht informs me that the word *vaiśya* does not occur in any other hymn of the Rig-veda but the Purusha Sūkta; only once in the Atharva-veda, v. 17, 9; and not at all in the Vaj. Sanh., except in the Purusha Sūkta. The same scholar remarks, as another proof of the comparatively late date of the Purusha Sūkta, that it is the only hymn which refers to the four different kinds of Vedic compositions *rich, samān, chandas, and yajush*.

arms of the Purusha are said to have been made a Kshattriya (warrior), that means, then, that the Kshattriyas have to carry arms to defend the empire. That the thighs of the Purusha were transformed into the Vaiśya means that, as the lower parts of the body are the principal repository of food taken, the Vaiśya caste is destined to provide food for the others. The creation of the Shudra from the feet of the Purusha, indicates that he is destined to be a servant to the others, just as the foot serves the other parts of the body as a firm support."

But whether the writer of the hymn intended it to be understood allegorically or not, it conveys no distinct idea of the manner in which he supposed the four castes to have originated. It is, indeed, said that the S'ndra sprang from Purusha's feet; but as regards the three superior castes and the members with which they are respectively connected, it is not quite clear which (*i.e.*, the castes or the members) are to be taken as the subjects and which as the predicates, and consequently, whether we are to suppose verse 12 to declare that the three castes were the three members, or, conversely, that the three members were, or became, the three castes.

But whatever may be the sense of the passage, it is impossible to receive it as enunciating any fixed doctrine of the writers of what is called the Vedic age in regard to the origin of the four castes; since we find, if not in the mantras or hymns, at least in the Brāhmaṇas (which, as we have seen in page 2, are esteemed by orthodox Indian writers as being equally with the hymns a part of the Veda), not only (1) texts which agree with the Purusha Sūkta, but also (2) various other and discrepant accounts of the manner in which these classes were separately formed, as well as (3) third a class of narratives of the creation, in which the production of the human race is described without allusion to any primordial distinction of castes.

To the first of these classes (*viz.*, that of texts which coincide more or less exactly with the Purusha Sūkta) belongs the following passage from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā.

SECT. II.—*Quotation from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā*, vii. 1. 1. 4 ff.

*Prajāpatiṛ akūmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa mukhatas trirītaṁ nir-
aminīta | tam Agnir devatā 'nvasūyata gāyatrī chhandro rathanāram*

sāma brāhmaṇo manushyānām ajaḥ paśūnīm | tasmāt te mukhyāḥ mukhato hy asṛijyanta | uraso bāhubhyām panchadaśam niramimīta | tam Indro devatā 'nvasṛijyata trishṭup chhando bṛihat sāma rājanyo manushyānām aviḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te vīryāvanto vīryād hy asṛijyanta | madhyataḥ sapṭadaśam niramimīta | tam Viśvedevāḥ devatāḥ anvasṛijyanta jagatī chhando vairūpam sāma vaiśyo manushyānām gāvaḥ paśūnām | tasmāt te ūdyā annadhānād hy asṛijyanta | tasmād bhūyānso 'nyebhyah | bhūyishthāḥ hi devatāḥ anvasṛijyanta | pataḥ ekaviṃśam niramimīta | tam anuṣṭup chhando 'nvasṛijyata vairājam sāma śūdro manushyānām āśvaḥ paśūnīm | tasmāt tau bhūta-saṅkrāmināv āśvaś cha śūdraś cha | tasmāt śūdro yagne 'navakṛipto na hi devatāḥ anvasṛijyanta | tasmāt pādāv upajīyataḥ | patto hy asṛijyetām |

“Prajāpati desired, ‘may I propagate.’ He formed the Trivṛt (*stoma*) from his mouth. After it were produced the deity Agni, the metre Gāyatrī, the Sāman (called) Rathantara, of men the Brāhmaṇ, of beasts the goats. Hence they are the chief (*mukhyāḥ*), because they were created from the mouth (*mukhataḥ*). From (his) breast, from (his) arms, he formed the Panchadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created the god Indra, the Trishṭubh metre, the Sāman (called) Bṛihat, of men the Rājanya, of beasts the sheep. Hence they are vigorous, because they were created from vigour. From (his) middle he formed the Sapṭadaśa (*stoma*). After it were created the gods (called) the Viśvedevas, the Jagatī metre, the Sāman called the Vairūpa, of men the Vaiśya, of beasts kine. Hence they are to be eaten, because they were created from the receptacle of food. Wherefore they are more numerous than others, for the most numerous deities were created after (the Sapṭadaśa). From his foot he formed the Ekaviṃśa (*stoma*). After it were created the Anuṣṭubh metre, the Sāman called Vairāja, of men the Śūdra, of beasts the horse. Hence these two, both the horse and the Śūdra, are transporters of (other) creatures. Hence (too) the Śūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, because no deities were created after (the Ekaviṃśa). Hence (too) these two subsist by their feet, for they were created from the foot.”

SECT. III.—*Citations from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, the Vājasaneyi Saṁhitā, and the Atharva-veda.*

The following texts belong to the second class—*i.e.*, that of those which recognize a distinct origination of the castes, but describe their creation differently from the Puruṣa Sūkta :

S. P. Br. ii. 1, 4, 11 ff.—“*Bhūr*” *iti vai Prajāpatir imām ajanayata “bhuraḥ” ity antariksham “sva” iti divam | etāvad vai idam sarvaṁ yāvad ime lokāḥ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate | “bhūr” iti vai Prajāpatir brahma ajanayata “bhuraḥ” iti kshatram “sva” iti viśam | etāvad vai idam sarvaṁ yāvad brahma kshatram viṣ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate | “bhūr” iti vai Prajāpatir ātmānam ajanayata “bhuraḥ” iti prajān “sva” iti paśūn | etāvad vai idam sarvaṁ yāvad ātmā prajāḥ paśavaḥ | sarveṇa eva ādhīyate |*

“(Uttering) ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated this earth. (Uttering) ‘bhuvah,’ he generated the air, and (uttering) ‘svah,’ he generated the sky. This universe is co-extensive with these worlds. (The fire) is placed with the whole. Saying ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated the Brahman; (saying) ‘bhuvah,’ he generated the Kshattra; (and saying) ‘svah,’ he generated the Viś. “All this world is so much as the Brahman, Kshattra, and Viś. The fire is placed with the whole. (Saying) ‘bhūh,’ Prajāpati generated himself; (saying) ‘bhuvah,’ he generated offspring; (saying) ‘svah,’ he generated animals. This world is so much as self, offspring, and animals. (The fire) is placed with the whole.”

Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2 —*Sarvaṁ hedam brahmaṇā haiva śṛiṣṭam | rīgḥhyo jātam vaiśyam varṇam āhuḥ | yajurvedam kshattriyasyāhur yonim | sāmavedo brāhmaṇānām prasūtiḥ | pūrve pūrvebhyo vacha etad āhuḥ |*

“This entire (universe) has been created by Brahma. Men say that the Vaiśya class was produced from rich-verses. They say that the Yajur-veda is the womb from which the Kshattriya was born. The Sāma-veda is the source from which the Brāhmins sprang. This word the ancients declared to the ancients.”

To complete his account of the derivation of the castes from the

Vedas, the author had only to add that the Sūdras had sprung from the Atharvāṅgīrasas (the Atharva-veda); but he perhaps considered that to assign such an origin to the servile order would have been to do it too great an honour.

Vājasaneyya Sanhitā, xiv. 28 ff. (= Taittirīya Sanhitā, iv. 3, 10, 1).—*ekayā asturata prajāḥ adhiyanta Prajāpatiḥ adhipatiḥ āsit | tisribhir asturata brahma asṛijyanta Brahmanāspatiḥ adhipatiḥ āsit | pañcabhir asturata bhūtāny asṛijyanta Bhūtānāmpatiḥ adhipatiḥ āsit | saptabhir asturata sapta ṛishayo 'sṛijyanta Dhātā adhipatiḥ āsit | navabhir asturata pitaro 'sṛijyanta Aditir adhipatny āsit | ekādaśabhir asturata pitaro 'sṛijyanta ārtavāḥ adhipatayaḥ āsan | trayodaśabhir asturata māsā asṛijyanta samvatsaro 'dhipatiḥ āsit | pañchadaśabhir asturata kṣattram asṛijyanta Indro 'adhipatiḥ āsit | saptaśabhir asturata paśavo 'sṛijyanta Bṛihaspatiḥ adhipatiḥ āsit | naradaśabhir asturata śūdrāryāḥ asṛijetām chorātre adhipatnī āstām | ekaviṃśatyā asturata ekaśaphūḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Varuṇo 'dhipatiḥ āsit | trayaviṃśatyā asturata kṣudrāḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Pūshā adhipatiḥ āsit | panchaviṃśatyā asturata aranyāḥ paśavo 'sṛijyanta Vāyur adhipatiḥ āsit | saptaṁśatyā asturata dyāvā-prithivī vyaitām | Vasavo Rudrā Adityāḥ anuryūyan | to eva adhipatayaḥ āsan | navaviṃśatyā asturata vanaspatayo 'sṛijyanta Somo 'dhipatiḥ āsit | ekatrimśatā asturata prajā asṛijyanta yavās cha ayavās cha adhipatayaḥ āsan | trayastrimśatā asturata bhūtāny aśūmyan Prajāpatiḥ Parameshthī adhipatiḥ āsit |*

"He lauded with one. Living beings were formed: Prajāpati was the ruler. He lauded with three: the Brahman (Brāhman) was created: Brahmanaspati was the ruler. He lauded with five: existing things were created: Bhūtānāmpati was the ruler. He lauded with seven: the seven rishis were created: Dhātṛi was the ruler. He lauded with nine: the Fathers were created: Aditi was the ruler. He lauded with eleven: the seasons were created: the Ārtavas were the rulers. He lauded with thirteen: the months were created: the year was the ruler. He lauded with fifteen: the Kṣattrā (the Kṣattrīya) was created: Indra was the ruler. He lauded with seventeen: animals were created: Bṛihaspati was the ruler. He lauded with nineteen: the Sūdra and the Arya (Vaiśya) were created: day and night were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-one: animals with undivided hoofs were created: Varuṇa was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-three:

small animals were created: Pūshan was the ruler. He lauded with twenty-five: wild animals were created: Vāyu was the ruler (compare R.V. x. 90, 8). He lauded with twenty-seven: heaven and earth separated: Vasus, Rudras, and Ādityas separated after them: they were the rulers. He lauded with twenty-nine: trees were created: Soma was the ruler. He lauded with thirty-one: living beings were created: The first and second halves of the month³¹ were the rulers. He lauded with thirty-one: existing things were tranquillized: Prajāpati Parameshthīn was the ruler." This passage is explained in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa viii. 4, 3, 1 ff.

The following text is of a somewhat mystical description; but appears to intimate a distinction in nature between the different castes corresponding to that of the gods with whom they are associated:

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 23 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, i. 4, 11 ff. (p. 235).—*Brahma vai idam agre āsīt ekam eva* | *tad ekaṁ san na vyabhavat* | | *tat śreyo rūpam aty asṛijata kshattraṁ yāny etāni devatrā kshattrāṇi* | *Indro Varuṇaḥ Somo Rudraḥ Parjanya Yamo Mrityur Īśānah iti* | *tasmāt kshattrāt param nāsti* | *tasmād brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyād adhastād upāste rājāsūye kshattre eva tad yaso dadhāti* | *sā eśhā kshattrasya yonir yad brahma* | *tasmād yadyapi rājā paramatām gachhati brahma eva antataḥ upaniśrayati svām yonim* | *yah u ha enaṁ hinasti svām sa yonim ṛickhati* | *sa pāpiyān bhavati yathā śreyānsam hiṁsiteṁ* | 24. *Sa na eva vyabhavat* | *sa viśam asṛijata yāny etāni deva-jātāni gaṇaśaḥ ākhyāyante vasavo rudrāḥ ādityāḥ viśvedevāḥ marutaḥ iti* | 25. *Sa na eva vyabhavat* | *sa śaudram varṇam asṛijata pūshanam* | *iyaṁ vai pūshā iyaṁ hi idam sarvaṁ pushyati yad idaṁ kincha* | 26. *Sa na eva vyabhavat* | *tat śreyo rūpam aty asṛijata dharmam* | *tad etat kshattrasya kshattrāṁ yad dharmāḥ* | *tasmād dharmāt paraṁ nāsti* | *atho abaliyān baliyānsam āsan-sate dharmena yathā rājā evam* | *yo vai sa dharmāḥ satyaṁ vai tat* | *tasmāt satyaṁ vadantam āhur "dharmam vadati" iti* | *dharmāṁ vā*

³¹ The Taittiriya Sanhitā reads *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* (instead of *yāvāḥ* and *ayāvāḥ* as in the Vājasaneyī Sanhitā) and in another passage, v. 3, 4, 5 (as I learn from Prof. Aufrecht), explains these terms to mean respectively months and half months (*prāṇi vai yāvāḥ arthamāsiḥ ayāvāḥ*), whilst the commentator on the V. S. understands them to mean the first and second halves of the month, in accordance with the S. P. B. viii. 4, 3, 18, and viii. 4, 2, 11 (*pūrvapakṣā vai yāvāḥ aparapakṣa ayāvāḥ* | *te hi idaṁ sarvaṁ yuvate chāyuvate cha*) | Prof. Aufrecht also points out that *yava* is explained in Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, iv. 11, 8, as equivalent to *yavamayan apūpam*, "a cake of barley."

avadantam "satyam vadati" iti | etad hy eva etad ubhayam bhavati |
 27. *Tad etad brahma kshattram viś śūdraḥ | tad Agniṇā eva deveshu*
brahmābhavad brāhmaṇo manushyeshu kshattriyena kshattriyo vaiśyena
vaiśyah śūdreṇa śūdraḥ | tasmād Agnāv eva deveshu lokam ichhante
brāhmaṇe manushyeshu | etābhyāṃ hi rūpabhyāṃ brahma abhavat |

23. "Brahma (here, according to the commentator, existing in the form of Agni, and representing the Brāhman caste³²) was formerly this (universe), one only. Being one, it did not develope. It energetically created an excellent form, the Kshattria, viz., those among the gods who are powers (*kshattrāṇi*), Indra, Varuṇa, Soma, Rudra, Parjanya, Yama, Mṛityu, Īśāna. Hence nothing is superior to the Kshattria. Therefore the Brāhman sits below the Kshattriya at the rājasūya-sacrifice; he confers that glory on the Kshattria (the royal power).³³ This, the Brahma, is the source of the Kshattria. Hence, although the king attains supremacy, he at the end resorts to the Brahma as his source. Whoever destroys him (the Brāhman) destroys his own source. He becomes most miserable, as one who has injured a superior. 24. He did not develope. He created the Viś—viz., those classes of gods who are designated by troops, Vasus, Rudras, Ādityas, Viśvedevas, Maruts. 25. He did not develope. He created the Sūdra class, Pūshan. This earth is Pūshan: for she nourishes all that exists. 26. He did not develope. He energetically created an excellent form, Justice (*Dharma*). This is the ruler (*kshattria*) of the ruler (*kshattria*), namely, Justice. Hence nothing is superior to justice. Therefore the weaker seeks (to overcome) the stronger by justice, as by a king. This justice is truth. In consequence they say of a man who speaks truth, 'he speaks

³² *Atra yad ūtma-sabdenoktaṃ sraśṭṛi Brahma tad Agniṇ śṛiṣṭvā agre Agni-rūpāpannam Brāhmaṇa-jyoti-abhinānavad usmīn vākye Brahma-sabdenābhidhīyate |*

³³ This rendering of the last few words is suggested by Professor Aufrecht. The commentators understand them to mean that the Brāhman gives the king their own glory (that of being a Brāhman): and they refer to a formula by which at the rājasūya-sacrifice the king, after addressing the priest as Brāhman, is addressed in return with the word "Thou, king, art a Brāhman" (*tvam rājan brahmāsi*), etc. See the Taittiriya Saṃhitā i. 8, 16, 1, where the commentator remarks. "As in common life domestic priests and others, sitting below a king seated on his throne after his return from conquering a foreign territory, address him with many benedictions and eulogies, so here too service is presented. By this benedictory service the power of cursing and showing kindness existing in the Brāhman is transferred to the king." Reference is then made to the passage before us, as noticing this custom.

justice;’ or of a man who is uttering justice, ‘he speaks truth.’ For this is both of these. 27. This is the Brahma, Kshattria, Viś, and Sūdra. Through Agni it became Brahma among the gods, the Brāhman among men, through the (divine) Kshattriya a (human) Kshattriya, through the (divine) Vaiśya a (human) Vaiśya, through the (divine) Sūdra a (human) Sūdra. Wherefore it is in Agni among the gods and in a Brāhman among men, that they seek after an abode.”

Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, i. 2, 6, 7.—*Dairyo vai varṇo brāhmaṇaḥ | asuryyo śūdraḥ.* “The Brāhman caste is sprung from the gods; the Sūdra from the Asuras.”

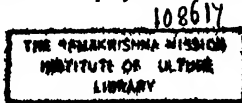
Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 2, 3, 9.—*Kāman eva dāru-pātrena duhyāt | śūdraḥ eva na duhyāt | asato vai esha sambhūto yat śūdraḥ | ahavir eva tad ity āhur yat śūdro dogdhi iti | agnihotraṁ eva na duhyāt śūdraḥ | tad hi na utpunanti | yadā khalu vai pavitram atyeti atha tad havir iti |* “Let him at his will milk out with a wooden dish. But let not a Sūdra milk it out. For this Sūdra has sprung from non-existence. They say that that which a Sūdra milks out is no oblation. Let not a Sūdra milk out the Agnihotra. For they do not purify that. When that passes beyond the filter, then it is an oblation.”

Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 1.—*Brāhmaṇo jajne prathamō daśaśṛṅho daśa-yah | sa somam prathamah papau sa chakārārasaṁ viśam |* “The Brāhman was born the first, with ten heads and ten faces. He first drank the soma; he made poison powerless.”

As the description (which is, perhaps, a fragment of a longer account), stops short here, we are left in the dark as to the author’s ideas about the creation of the other castes. It would have interested us to know how many heads and faces he would have assigned to the other three castes. The student of Indian poetry is aware that the giant Ravana is represented in the Rāmāyaṇa both as a Brāhman and as having ten heads.

As implying a separate origination of the Rājanya caste, the following text also may find a place here:

Taittiriya Sanhitā, ii. 4, 13, 1.—*Devā vai rājanyāḥ jūyamānād abibhayaḥ | tam antur eva santāṁ dāimnā ’paumbhan | sa vai esho ’podbho jūyate yad rājanyo | yad vai esho ’napodbho jūyeta vrittrān ghaṁś charet | yañ kāmayeta rājanyam “anapodbho jūyeta vrittrān ghaṁś charet” iti tasmai etam aindrā-bārhaspatyañ charuṁ nirvapet | aindro vai rājanyo*



brahma Bṛihaspatiḥ | brahmaṇā eva enaṁ dāmno 'pombhanād muñchati | hiraṇmayaṁ dāma dakṣiṇā sūkṣhād eva enaṁ daṁno 'pombhanād muñchati | "The gods were afraid of the Rājanya when he was in the womb. They bound him with bonds when he was in the womb. Consequently this Rājanya is born bound. If he were born unbound he would go on slaying his enemies. In regard to whatever Rājanya any one desires that he should be born unbound, and should go on slaying his enemies, let him offer for him this Aindra-Bārhaspatya oblation. A Rājanya has the character of Indra, and a Brahman is Bṛihaspati. It is through the Brahman that anyone releases the Rājanya from his bond. The golden bond, a gift, manifestly releases from the bond that fetters him."

In the following text of the Atharva-veda, xv. 8, 1, a new account is given of the origin of the Rājanyas:

So 'rajyata tato rājanyo 'jāyata |

"He (the Vrātya) became filled with passion: thence sprang the Rājanya."

And in the following paragraph (A. V. xv. 9, 1 ff) we have the same origin ascribed to the Brāhman also:

Tad yasya evaṁ vidvān vrātyo rājno 'līlhir grihān āgachhet śreyāṁsam enam ātmano mānayet | tathā kṣhatrāya nārīśchate tathā rāṣṭrāya nārīśchate | ato vai brahma cha kṣhatraṁ cha udatiśṭhatām | te abrūtām "kam praviśāva" iti |

"Let the king to whose house the Vrātya who knows this, comes as a guest, cause him to be respected as superior to himself. So doing he does no injury to his royal rank, or to his realm. From him arose the Brahman (Brāhman) and the Kshattra (Kshattriya). They said, 'Into whom shall we enter,' etc."

SECT. IV.—*Further Quotations from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, Sanhitā, and Āraṇyaka, and from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa.*

The following passages belong to the third of the classes above adverted to, as in the descriptions they give of the creation, while they refer to the formation of men, they are silent on the subject of any separate origination of castes:

Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 1.—*Prajāpati akāmayata "prajāyeya"*
iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa haritaḥ śyāvo 'bhavat |
tasmāt strī antarvatnī harinī sati śyāvā bhavati | sa vijāyamāno garbhena
atāmyat | sa tāntaḥ kṛishṇa-śyāvo 'bhavat | tasmāt tāntaḥ kṛishṇaḥ
śyāvo bhavati | tasya asur eva ajivat | 2. Tena asunā asurān asṛijata | tad
asurānam asuratvaṁ | ya evam asurānām asuratvaṁ veda asunām eva
bhavati | na enam asur jahāti | so 'surān sṛishṭvā pitā iva amanyata |
tad anu pitṛin asṛijata | tat pitṛinām pitṛitvam | ya evam pitṛinām
pitṛitvam veda pitā iva eva svānām bhavati (3) yanty asya pitaro haram |
sa pitṛin sṛishṭvā 'manasyat | tad anu manushyān asṛijata | tad manu-
shyānām manushyatvam | yaḥ evam manushyānām manushyatvaṁ veda
manusvī eva bhavati na enam manur jahāti | tasmai manushyān sṛi-
jānūya divā devatrā abhavat | tad anu devān asṛijata | tad devānām
devatvam | ya evam devānām devatvaṁ veda divā ha eva asya devatrā
bhavati | tāni vai ctāni chatvāri ambhānī devāḥ manushyāḥ pitaro
'surāḥ | teshu sarveshu ambho nabhaḥ iva bhavati |

"Prajāpati desired, 'may I propagate.' He practised austerities. He became pregnant. He became yellow-brown.³⁴ Hence a woman when pregnant, being yellow, becomes brown. Being pregnant with a foetus, he became exhausted. Being exhausted, he became blackish-brown. Hence an exhausted person becomes blackish-brown. His breath became alive. 2. With that breath (*asu*) he created Asuras. Therein consists the Asura-nature of Asuras. He who thus knows this Asura-nature of Asūras becomes a man possessing breath. Breath does not forsake him. Having created the Asuras, he regarded himself as a father. After that he created the Fathers (Pitṛis). That constitutes the fatherhood of the Fathers. He who thus knows the fatherhood of the Fathers, becomes as a father of his own: (3) the Fathers resort to his oblation. Having created the Fathers, he reflected. After that he created men. That constitutes the manhood of men. He who knows the manhood of men, becomes intelligent. Mind³⁵ does not forsake him. To him, when he was creating men, day appeared in the heavens. After that he created the gods. This constitutes the godhead of the gods. To him who thus knows the godhead of the gods, day appears in

³⁴ *Nṛta-śveta-miśra-varṇaḥ*, "of a mixed blue and white colour," says the Commentator.

³⁵ *Manuḥ* = *manana-śaktiḥ*, "the power of thinking." Comm.

the heavens. These are the four streams,³⁰ viz., gods, men, Fathers, and Asuras. In all of these water is like the air."

Satapatha Brahmana, vii. 5, 2, 6.—*Prajāpatir vai idam agre āsīd ekaḥ eva | so 'kāmayaṭa "annam srijeya prajāyeya" iti | sa prāṇebhyaḥ eva adhi paśūn nīramīmīta manasaḥ puruṣam cakṣuṣho 'śvam prāṇād gām śrotrādarim vācho 'jam | tad yad enān prāṇebhya 'dhi nīramīmīta tasmād āhuḥ "prāṇāḥ paśavaḥ" iti | mano vai prāṇānām prathamam | tad yad manasaḥ puruṣam nīramīmīta tasmād āhuḥ "puruṣaḥ prathamāḥ paśūnām vīryavattamaḥ" iti | mano vai sarve prāṇāḥ | manasi hi sarve prāṇāḥ pratishṭhulāḥ | tad yad manasaḥ puruṣam nīramīmīta tasmād āhuḥ "puruṣaḥ sarve paśavaḥ" iti | puruṣasya hy ete sarve bharanti |*

"Prajapati was formerly this (universe), one only. He desired, 'let me create food, and be propagated.' He formed animals from his breaths, a MAN from his soul, a horse from his eye, a bull from his breath, a sheep from his ear, a goat from his voice. Since he formed animals from his breaths, therefore men say, 'the breaths are animals.' The soul is the first of the breaths. Since he formed a man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is the first of the animals, and the strongest.' The soul is all the breaths; for all the breaths depend upon the soul. Since he formed man from his soul, therefore they say, 'man is all the animals;' for all these are man's."

S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, p. 125).—*Ātmā eva idam agre āsīt puruṣa-vidhaḥ | so 'nuvīkṣhya na anyad ātmano 'paśyat | "so 'ham asmi" ity agre vyāharat | tato 'hañ-nāmā abharat | tasmād apy etarhy āmantrito "'ham ayaṃ" ity eva agre ukteṭa atha anyad nāna prabrūte yad asya bhavati | 2. Sa yat pūrvo 'smāt sarvasmāt sarvān pāpmanaḥ aśhat tasmāt puruṣaḥ | ośhati ha vai sa tān yo 'smāt pūrvaṃ bubhūṣati yaḥ evaṃ veda | 3. So 'bibhet | tasmād ekāki bibheti |*

³⁰ The Commentary not very satisfactorily explains this as meaning, "All these four abodes of the gods, etc., are like waters—i.e., suited to yield enjoyment, as ponds, rivers, etc., are fit for bathing, drinking," etc. The phrase is repeated in the Vishnu Purāṇa, i. 5 (vol. i., p. 79, of Dr. Hall's edition); and in his note Professor Wilson says *ambhūmī* "is also a peculiar and probably a mystic term." It is explained in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as will be seen further on. The last words of the quotation from the Brāhmaṇa are obscure. In another passage of the same work (iii. 8, 13, 1, 2) the terms *ambhas*, *nabhas*, and *mahas*, are declared to denote respectively "earth," "air," and "sky" (. . . *ayam vai loko 'mbhūmī . . . antarikṣam vai nabhūmī . . . asau vai loko mahānī*).

*sa ha ayam ikshānchakre yad "mad anyad nāsti kasmād nu bibhemi" iti | tataḥ eva asya bhayaṁ vīyāya | kasmād hy abheshyat | dvitīyād vai bhayam bhavati | 4. Sa vai naiva reme | tasmād ekāki na ramate | sa dvitīyam aichhat | sa ha etāvaṁ āsa yathā strī-pumāṁsau samparishvaktau | 5. Sa imam eva ātmānam dredhā 'patayāt | tataḥ patih patnī cha abhavatām | tasmād "idam ardharrigalam iva sraḥ" iti ha sma āha Yājñavalkyaḥ | tasmād ākūśaḥ striyā pūryato eva | tām samabharat | tato manushyāḥ ajāyanta | 6. Sā u ha iyaṁ ikshānchakre "kathāṁ nu mā ātmanaḥ eva janayitvā sambharati hanta tiro 'sūni" iti | 7. Sā gaur abhavat vṛishabhāḥ itaras tām sam eva abhavat | tato gaurāḥ ajāyanta | 8. Vāḍavā itarā abhavad āśvaprishāḥ itarāḥ gardabhī itarā gardabhāḥ itaras tām sam eva abhavat | tataḥ ekaśapham ajāyata | 9. Ajā itarā abhavad vataḥ itarāḥ arir itarā meshaḥ itarāḥ | tām sam eva abhavat tato 'jvāyo 'jāyanta | evam eva yad idāṁ kīñcha mīlunam ā pipplikā-bhyas tat sarvam asṛjata |*³⁷

"This universe was formerly soul only, in the form of Purusha. Looking closely, he saw nothing but himself (or soul). He first said, 'This is I.' Then he became one having the name of I. Hence even now a man, when called, first says, 'this is I,' and then declares the other name which he has. 2. Inasmuch as he, before (*pūrvāḥ*) all this, burnt up (*aushat*) all sins, he (is called) *purusha*. The man who knows this burns up the person who wishes to be before him. 3. He was afraid. Hence a man when alone is afraid. This (being) considered that 'there is no other thing but myself: of what am I afraid?' Then his fear departed. For why should he have feared? It is of a second person that people are afraid. 4. He did not enjoy happiness. Hence a person when alone does not enjoy happiness. He desired a second. He was so much as a man and a woman when locked in embrace. 5. He caused this same self to fall asunder into two parts. Thence arose a husband and a wife.³⁸ Hence Yājñavalkya has said that 'this one's self is like the half³⁹ of a split pea.' Hence the void is filled up by

³⁷ This passage has been already translated by Mr. Colebrooke, *Essays* i. 64, as well as by Dr. Roer, in the *Bibliotheca Indica*.

³⁸ Manu and S'atārūpā, according to the Commentator.

³⁹ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 3, 6. *Ātho arditko vai esha ātmano yat patnī* | "Now a wife is the half of one's self;" and *ibid.* iii. 3, 3, 1 : *Ayajno vai esha yo 'patnīkaḥ | na prajāḥ prajāyeraṇ* | "The man who has no wife is unfit to sacrifice. No children will be born to him." We must not, however, suppose from these passages that the

woman.⁴⁰ He cohabited with her. From them MEN were born. 6. She reflected, 'how does he, after having produced me from himself, cohabit with me? Ah! let me disappear.' 7. She became a cow, and the other a bull; and he cohabited with her. From them kine were produced. 8. The one became a mare, the other a stallion, the one a she-ass, the other a male-ass. He cohabited with her. From them the class of animals with undivided hoofs was produced. The one became a she-goat, the other a he-goat, the one a ewe, the other a ram. He cohabited with her. From them goats and sheep were produced. In this manner pairs of all creatures whatsoever, down to ants, were created."

The next passage describes men as descendants of Vivasvat, or the Sun, without specifying any distinction of classes:

Taittirīya Sanhitā vi. 5, 6, 1 f.—*Aditiḥ putrakāmā sādhyebhyo devēbhyo brahmaudanam apachat | tasyai uchchheshanam adaduh | tat prāśnāt sā reto 'dhatta | tasyai chatevārah Adityāḥ ajāyanta | sā devīyam apachat | sā manyata "uchchheshanād me ime 'jāta | yad agre prāśishyāmi ito me vasyāmsō janishyante" iti | sā 'gre prāśnāt sā reto 'dhatta tasyai vyridham āṇḍam ajāyata | sā Adityebhyaḥ eva trīṇyam apachat "bhogāya me idam śrāntam asto" iti | te 'bruvan "carāṁ eṇāmahai yo 'to jāyātai asmakāṁ sa eko 'sat | yo 'sya prajāyām ṛidhyātai asmakam bhogāya bhavād" iti | tato Vivasvān Adityo 'jāyata | tasya vai iyaṁ prajā yad manushyāḥ | tāsū ekaḥ eva ṛiddho yo yajate sa devānām bhogāya bhavati |*

"Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation for the gods the Sādhyas. They gave her the remnant of it. This she ate. She conceived seed. Four Adityas were born to her. She cooked a second (oblation). She reflected, 'from the remains of the oblation these sons have been born to me. If I shall eat (the oblation) first, more brilliant

estimation in which women were held by the authors of the Brāhmaṇas was very high, as there are other texts in which they are spoken of disparagingly; such as the following: Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 8, 2.—*Sa sono nātishthata strībhyo grihyanūyāḥ | tam ghrītaṁ vajraṁ kṛtvā 'ghnan tam nirindriyam bhūtam agrihnan | tasmāt striyo nirindriyā adāyūdīr api pūpāt pūṁsa upastīlarum vadanti |* "Soma did not abide, when being poured out to women. Making that butter a thunderbolt they smote it. They poured it out when it had become powerless. Hence women, powerless, and portionless, speak more humbly than even a poor man." (Compare the quotation in the Commentary on the Taitt. Sanhitā, Vol. i. p. 996.) Taitt. Sanh. vi. 5, 10, 3. *Tasmāt striyāṁ jātām parāyanti ut pumāṁsam haranti |* "Hence they reject a female (child) when born, and take up a male." (Compare Nirukta, iii. 4.)

⁴⁰ Compare Taitt. Br. iii. 3, 10, 4. *Prajāyā hi manushyāḥ pūrṇaḥ*, "For by offspring a man is completed."

(sons) will be born to me. She ate it first; she conceived seed; an imperfect egg was produced from her. She cooked a third (oblation) for the Ādityas, (repeating the formula) 'may this religious toil have been undergone for my enjoyment.' The Ādityas said, 'Let us choose a boon: let any one who is produced from this be ours only; let anyone of his progeny who is prosperous be for us a source of enjoyment.' In consequence the Āditya Vivasvat was born. This is his progeny, namely MEN.⁴¹ Among them he alone who sacrifices is prosperous, and becomes a cause of enjoyment to the gods."⁴²

The passages next following do not specify separately the creation of men (who must, however, be understood as included along with other beings under the designation *prajāh*, "offspring," or "creatures,") and therefore afford less distinct evidence that their authors did not hold the fourfold origin of mankind.

The first of these extracts is especially interesting, both on account of its own tenor, and because (along with Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 1 ff. quoted in p. 23) it contains the germ of one of the Puranic accounts of the creation which will be adduced in a subsequent section.

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 1 ff.—*Idam vai agre naiva kinchana āsit | na dyaur āsīd na prithivī na antariksham | tad asad eva sad mano 'kuruta "syām" iti | tad atapyata | tasmāt tapanād dhūmo 'jāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata tasmāt tapanād Agnir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | 2. Tasmāt tapanāj jyotir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād archir ajāyata | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād marīchayo 'jāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tasmāt tapanād udārāḥ ajāyanta | tad bhūyo 'tapyata | tad abhram eva*

⁴¹ Compare Taitt. Br. i. 8, 8, 1. *Ādityāḥ vai prajāḥ*, "Creatures are descended from Aditi."

⁴² This story is told also, but with more detail of names and somewhat differently, in Taitt. Br. i. 1, 9, 10 ff. *Aditiḥ putrakāmā sādhyebhyo devēbhyo brahmaudānam apachat | tasyai uchehsheshanam adaduh | tat prūṣnūt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Dhātū cha Aryamā cha ajāyetām | sū dvitīyam apachat tasyai uchehsheshanam adaduh | tat prūṣnūt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Mitrāḥ cha Varuṇaḥ cha ajāyetām | sū tṛtīyam apachat | tasyai uchehsheshanam adaduh | tat prūṣnūt | sū reto 'dhatta | tasyai Amśaścha Bhagaś cha ajāyetām | sū chaturtham apachat | tasyai uchehsheshanam adaduh | tat prūṣnūt | sū reto 'dhatta tasyai Indras cha Vivasvātś cha ajāyetām | "Aditi, desirous of sons, cooked a Brahmaudana oblation to the gods the Sādhyas. They gave her the remnant of it. She ate it. She conceived seed. Dhātṛi and Aryaman were born to her." She does the same thing a second time, when she bears Mitra and Varuṇa,—a third time, when she bears Amśa and Bhaga,—and a fourth time, when she bears Indra and Vivasvat.*

samahanyata | tad vastim abhinat | 3. Sa samudro 'bhavat | tasmāt samudrasya na pibanti | prajananam eva hi manyante | tasmāt paśor jāyamānād āpah purastād yanti | tad daśahotā anvasriyata | Prajāpatir vai daśahotā | yaḥ evaṁ tapaso vīryyam vidvāns tapyate bhavaty eva | tad vai idam āpah salilam āsīt | so 'rodīt Prajāpatih (4) "sa kasmā ajñi yady asyāpratishṭhāyāḥ" iti | yad apso avāpadyata sā prithivy abhavat | yad ūyamṛishṭa tad antariksham abhavat | yad ūrdhvam udamṛishṭa sā dyaur abhavat | yad arodīt tad anayoḥ rodastram | 5. Yaḥ evaṁ veda na asya gṛihe rudanti | etad vai eśhām lokānām janma | ya evam eśhām lokānām janma veda na eśhu lokesho ārttim ārchhati | sa imām pratishṭhām avindata | sa imām pratishṭhām vittrā akāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa jaghanād asurān asrijata | 6. Tebhyo mṛinmaye pātre 'nman aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | sā tamisrā 'bhavat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa prajananād eva prajāḥ asrijata | tasmād imāḥ bhūyishṭhāḥ | prajananād hy enāḥ asrijata | 7. Tābhyo dārumaye pātre payo 'duhat | yā asya sā tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | sa jyotsnā 'bhavat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa upapakshābhyām eva rītūn asrijata | tebhyo rajate pātre ghrītam aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āsīt (8) tām apāhata | so 'ho-rātrayoḥ sandhir abhavat | so 'kāmayata "prajāyeya" iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | so 'ntarvān abhavat | sa mukhād derān asrijata | tebhyo harite pātre somam aduhat | yā asya sā tanūr āsīt tām apāhata | tad ahar abhavat | 9. Ete vai Prajāpater dohāḥ | ya evaṁ veda duhe eva prajāḥ | "divā vai no 'bhūd" iti tad devānām devatram | ya evaṁ devānām devatram veda devavān eva bhavati | etad vai aho-rātrānām janma | ya evam aho-rātrānām janma veda na aho-rātreshu ārttim ārchhati | 10. Asato 'dhi mano 'sriyata | manaḥ Prajāpatim asrijata | Prajāpatih prajāḥ asrijata | tad vai idam manasy eva paramam pratishṭhitam yadidam kiñcha | tad etat svasasyasām nāma Brahma | vyuchhanti vyuchhanti asmai vasyasī vyuchhanti prajāyate prajāyā paśubhiḥ pra parameshṭhino mātṛām āpnoti ya evaṁ veda |

"At first this (universe) was not anything. There was neither sky, nor earth, nor air. Being non-existent, it resolved 'let me be.' It became fervent.⁴³ From that fervour smoke was produced. It again

⁴³ The word thus rendered is *atapyata*, which has the sense of "being heated" as well as "practising austere abstraction." I have purposely given an equivocal rendering, which may bear either sense.

became fervent. From that fervour fire was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour light was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour flame was produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour rays were produced. It again became fervent. From that fervour blazes⁴⁴ were produced. It again became fervent. It became condensed like a cloud. It clove its bladder. That became the sea. Hence men do not drink of the sea. For they regard it as like the place of generation. Hence water issues forth before an animal when it is being born. After that the Daśahotṛi (a particular formula) was created. Prajāpati is the Daśahotṛi. That man succeeds, who thus knowing the power of austere abstraction (or fervour), practises it. This was then water, fluid. Prajāpati wept, (exclaiming), (4) 'For what purpose have I been born, if (I have been born) from this which forms no support?'⁴⁵ That which fell⁴⁶ into the waters became the earth. That which he wiped away, became the air. That which he wiped away, upwards, became the sky. From the circumstance that he wept (*arodit*), these two regions have the name of *rodasī*, (worlds). 5. They do not weep in the house of the man who knows this. This was the birth of these worlds. He who thus knows the birth of these worlds, incurs no suffering in these worlds. He obtained this (earth as a) basis. Having obtained (this earth as a) basis, he desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created Asuras from his abdomen. 6. To them he milked out food in an earthen dish. He cast off that body of his. It became darkness.⁴⁷ He desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised

⁴⁴ Such is the sense the commentator gives to the word *udārūh*, which he makes = *aleana-jvālāh*. Professor Roth (s. v.) explains the word as meaning "fogs."

⁴⁵ This is the mode of rendering suggested to me by Professor Aufrecht. After "if" the Commentator supplies the words—"from this non-existing earth I can create no living creature."

⁴⁶ "Prajāpati's tears," etc., according to the commentator.

⁴⁷ Compare S. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 8: *Alho yo 'yam avān prūṇas tena asurūn asṛjyata | to imān eva prithivīm abhipadya asṛjyanta | tasmai sasṛjānūya tamaḥ iva āsa | 9. So 'et "pṛṇmān vai asṛkṣhi yasmai me sasṛjānūya tamaḥ iva abhūd" iti | tāms tataḥ eva pṛṇmānā 'vidhyat | tataḥ eva te parābhavunn ityādi |* "Then he created the Asuras from this lower breath of his. It was only after reaching this earth that they were created. On him, as he continued to create, darkness fell. 9. He understood, 'I have created misery, since darkness has fallen upon me as I was creating.' Then he pierced them with misery, and they in consequence succumbed," etc. The word rendered in the text by "cast off" is applied in Taitt. Saṁh. i. 5, 4, 1, to serpents

austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created living beings (*prajāh*) from his organ of generation. Hence they are the most numerous because he created them from his generative organ. 8. To them he milked out milk in a wooden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became moon-light. He desired, 'May I be propagated. He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the seasons from his armpits. To them he milked out butter in a silver dish. He cast off that body of his. It became the period which connects day and night. He desired, 'May I be propagated.' He practised austere fervour. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his mouth.⁴⁸ To them he milked out Soma in a golden dish. He cast off that body of his. It became day. 9. These are Prajāpati's milkings. He who thus knows milks out offspring. 'Day (*divā*) has come to us:' this (exclamation expresses) the godhead of the gods. He who thus knows the godhead of the gods, obtains the gods. This is the birth of days and nights. He who thus knows the birth of days and nights, incurs no suffering in the days and nights. 10. Mind (or soul, *manus*,) was created from the non-existent. Mind created Prajāpati. Prajāpati created offspring. All this, whatever exists, rests absolutely on mind. This is that Brahman called Svovasyasa.⁴⁹ For the man who thus knows, (Ushas), dawning, dawning, dawns more and more bright; he becomes prolific in offspring, and (rich) in cattle; he obtains the rank of Parameshthin."

108617

S. P. Br. vi. 1, 2, 11.—*Attho āhuḥ* | "*Prajāpatir eva imān lokān
śrīṣṭvā prithivyām pratyatishṭhat* | *tasmai imāḥ ośadhayo 'mam apa-
chyanta* | *tad āśnāt* | *sa garbhī abhavat* | *sa ūrdhvebhyāḥ eva prāṇebhyo
devān asṛjata* | *ye 'vāñchaḥ prāṇās tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ*" *iti* | *yata-
mathū 'srijata tathā 'srijata* | *Prajāpatir eva idaṁ sarvaṁ asṛjata
yad idaṁ kiñcha* |

"Wherefore they say, 'Prajāpati, having created these worlds, was shedding their old skins (*sarpūḥ vai jiryanto 'manyanta* . . . *tato vai te jīrṇās tanūr apūḥnata*).

⁴⁸ Compare S'. P. Br. xi. 1, 6, 7, quoted in the 4th Vol. of this work, p. 22 f.

⁴⁹ The Commentator explains this word to mean "that which each succeeding day becomes transcendently excellent (*uttarottara-dīne vasiyo 'tiśayena śreshṭham*). Here, he says, the highest and absolute Brahman is not meant, but mind, which has the form of Brahman, and, by means of the series of its volitions, is every successive moment more and more world-creating" (*sankalpa-paramparayā pratikṣhaṇam uttarottarā-dhika-jagat-sraṣṭritvād ūdrig-Brahma-rūpatvād manuḥ pradastam* |

supported upon the earth. For him these herbs were cooked as food. That (food) he ate. He became pregnant. He created the gods from his upper vital airs, and mortal offspring from his lower vital airs. In whatever way he created, so he created. But Prajāpati created all this, whatever exists.”

S. P. Br. x. 1, 3, 1.—*Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛjata | sa ūrdhvebhyaḥ eva prāṇebhyaḥ devān asṛjata | ye 'rāñchah prāṇas tebhyo martyāḥ prajāḥ | atha ūrdhram eva mṛityum prajābhyo 'tlāram asṛjata |*

“Prajāpati created living beings. From his upper vital airs he created the gods; from his lower vital airs mortal creatures. Afterwards he created death a devourer of creatures.”

Taitt. Ar. i. 23, 1.—*Āpo vai idam āsan salilam eva | sa Prajāpatir ekaḥ pushkara-parṇe samabharat | tasya antar manasi kāmāḥ samavartata “idam sṛjeyam” iti | tasmād yad puruṣo manasā 'bhigachhati tad vācā vadati tat karmāṇā karolī | tad eśhā 'bhyanūktā “kāmāḥ tad agre samavartatādhi | manaso relapṛathamān yad āsit | 2. Sato bandhum asati niravindan hṛdi pratishya karayo manūṣhā” iti | upa evaṁ tad upanamati yat-kīno bhavati yaḥ evaṁ veda | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa tapas taptrā śarīram adhānuta | tasya yad māmśam āsit tato 'rṇāḥ Ketavo Vātaraśanāḥ pishayaḥ udatishtan | 3. Ye nakhās te Vaiḥkhanasāḥ | ye bālās te Bālakhilyāḥ | yo rasaḥ so 'pām antarataḥ kūrman bhūtam sarpaṇtam tam abravīt “mama vai traṇ-māmśā samabhūt” | 4. “na” ity abravīt “pūrvam eva aham iha āsam” iti | tat puruṣasya puruṣatvam iti | sa “sahasra-śīrṣhā puruṣaḥ sahasrākṣaḥ sahasra-pād” bhūtvā udatishtat | tam abravīt “tvam ve (sic. me or vai?) pūrvam samabhūt tvam idam pūrvāḥ kurushva” iti | sa itaḥ ādāya apo (5) 'ñjulīnā purastād upādadhāt “evā hy eva” iti | tataḥ Adityaḥ udatishtat | sū prācī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur dakṣiṇataḥ upādadhāt “evā hy Agne” iti | tato vai Agnir udatishtat | sū dakṣiṇā dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketuḥ pāścād upādadhāt “evā hi Vāyo” iti | 6. Tato Vāyur udatishtat | sū pratichī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur uttarataḥ upādadhāt “evā hi Indra” iti | tato vai Indrah udatishtat | sū utichī dik | atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur madhye upādadhāt “evā hi Pūṣhā” iti | tato vai Pūṣhā udatishtat | sū iyam dik | 7. Atha Aruṇaḥ Ketur upariṣṭād upādadhāt “evā hi devāḥ” iti | tato deva-manuṣhyāḥ pitaro gandharvāṣarasasā cha udatishtan | sū ūrdhva dik | yaḥ vipruṣo vi parāpatan tūbhyo 'surāḥ rakṣāṁsi piśachūścha udatishtan | tasmāt te parābhavan viprudbhyo 'hi samabhavan | taa*

eshū bhyanūktā (8) “*āpo ha yad bṛihatir garbham āyan dakṣham dadhānāḥ janayantīḥ śrayambhūm | tataḥ ime 'dhyasriḥyanta sargāḥ | adbhyo vai idam samabhūt | tasmād idam sarvam Brahma śrayambho*” *iti | tasmād idam sarvaṁ sīthilam iva adhruram iva abharat | Prajāpatir vāva tat | ātmanā ātmānāṁ vidhāya tad eva anuprāśat | tad eṣhā 'bhyanūktā* (9) “*vidhāya lokān vidhāya bhūtāni vidhāya sarvāḥ pradīśo dīśascha | Prajāpatir prathamajāḥ rītasya ātmanā 'tmānam abhisāṁvireśa*” *iti |*

“This was water, fluid. Prajāpati alone was produced on a lotus-leaf. Within, in his mind, desire arose, ‘Let me create this.’ Hence whatever a man aims at in his mind, he declares by speech, and performs by act.⁵⁰ Hence this verse has been uttered, ‘Desire formerly arose in it, which was the primal germ of mind, (2) (and which) sages, searching with their intellect, have discovered in the heart as the bond between the existent and the non-existent’ (R. V. x. 129, 4). That of which he is desirous comes to the man who thus knows. He practised austere fervour. Having practised austere fervour, he shook his body. From its flesh the rishis (called) Aruṇas, Ketus, and Vātaraśanas⁵¹ arose. 3. His nails became the Vaikhānasas, his hairs the Bālakhilyas. The fluid (of his body became) a tortoise moving amid the waters.⁵² He said to him, ‘Thou hast sprung from my skin and flesh.’⁵³ 4. ‘No,’ replied the tortoise, ‘I was here before.’ In that (in his having been ‘before’ *pūram*) consists the manhood of a man (*puruṣa*). Becoming ‘a man (*puruṣa*) with a thousand heads, a thousand eyes, a thousand feet’

⁵⁰ Compare Taitt. S. vi. 3, 10, 4, (quoted by Roth. s. v. *abhiḡam*) *yad vai hṛdayena abhiḡachhati taj jīvaḥ yā vndati |*

⁵¹ They are mentioned again in Taitt. Ār. i. 24, 4. See Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexicon s.v. Ketu (where the Aruṇa Ketus are stated to be a sort of superior beings or demons); Artharva-veda, xi. 10, 2; Weber's Indische Studien, ii. 177; and the verse of the M. Bh. xii. 774 : *Aruṇāḥ Ketavās chaiva svādhīryena divaṁ gatāḥ |* “By sacred study the Aruṇas and Ketus have ascended to heaven.”

⁵² The Sanskrit scholar will observe that the text here is rather obscure. It is either corrupt, elliptical, or grammatically irregular.

⁵³ Here the Sanskrit, if it be not corrupt, must be irregular and incorrect. On the style of the Āraṇyakas, see Mr. F. B. Cowell's Preface to the Kaushītaki Upanishad, p. viii., where it is remarked : “The Āraṇyakas appear to belong to a class of Sanskrit writings, whose history has not yet been thoroughly investigated. Their style, if we may judge from that of the Taittirīya and Kaushītaki, is full of strange solecisms which sometimes half remind us of the gāthās of the Lalita Vistara. The present Upanishad has many peculiar forms, some of which are common to both recensions, while others appear only in one. Such are : *nishincha*, in p. 10; *praiti* for *prayanti*, in p. 51; *sāmveśyan*, in p. 56; *veti* for *vyeti*, in p. 78; *aduḥham*, in p. 89, etc

(R. V. x. 90, 1), he arose. Prajāpati said to him, 'Thou wert produced before me: do thou first make this.' He took water from this (5) in the cavity of his two hands, and placed it on the east, repeating the text, 'so be it, o Sun.'⁶⁴ From thence the sun arose. That was the eastern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the south, saying, 'so be it,' o Agni.' Thence Agni arose. That was the southern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the west, saying 'so be it, o Vāyu.' 6. Thence arose Vāyu. That was the western quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) to the north, saying 'so be it, o Indra.' Thence arose Indra. That is the northern quarter. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) in the centre, saying 'so be it, o Pūshan.' Thence arose Pūshan. That is this quarter. 7. Then Aruṇa Ketu placed (the water) above, saying 'so be it, o gods.' Thence arose gods, MEN, fathers, Gandharvas and Apsarases. That is the upper quarter. From the drops which fell apart arose the Asuras, Rakshases, and Piśāchas. Therefore they perished, because they were produced from drops. Hence this text has been uttered; (8) 'when the great waters became pregnant, containing wisdom, and generating Svayambhū, from them were created these creations. All this was produced from the waters. Therefore all this is Brahma Svayambhu.' Hence all this was as it were loose, as it were unsteady. Prajāpati was that. Having made himself through himself, he entered into that. Wherefore this verse has been uttered; (9) 'Having formed the world, having formed existing things and all intermediate quarters and quarters, Prajāpati, the firstborn of the ceremonial, entered into himself with himself.'"

From an examination of the legends contained in the Brāhmaṇas, of which some specimens have just been given, it appears (1) that they are generally, if not always, adduced, or invented, with the view of showing the origin, or illustrating the efficacy, of some particular ceremony which the writer wished to explain or recommend; (2) that the accounts which they supply of Prajāpati's creative operations are

⁶⁴ The formula is in the original *evā hy eva*. The Commentator says that the first word means "objects of desire to be obtained," and that the second *eva* signifies "the moving (Sun);" the sense of the entire formula being, "Thou, o Sun, art thyself all objects of desire." The six formulas here introduced had previously occurred at the close of a preceding section, i. 20, 1.

various and even inconsistent; and (3) that they are the sources of many of the details which are found in a modified form in the cosmogonies of the Purāṇas.

When we discover in the most ancient Indian writings such different and even discrepant accounts of the origin of man, all put forth with equal positiveness, it is impossible to imagine that any uniform explanation of the diversity of castes could have been received at the period when they were composed, or to regard any of the texts which have been cited as more orthodox and authoritative than the rest. Even, therefore, if we should suppose that the author of the Puruṣa Sūkta meant to represent the four castes as having literally sprung from separate parts of Puruṣa's body, it is evident that the same idea was not always or even generally adopted by those who followed him, as a revealed truth in which they were bound to acquiesce. In fact, nothing is clearer than that in all these cosmogonies, the writers, while generally assuming certain prevalent ideas as the basis of their descriptions, gave the freest scope to their individual fancy in the invention of details. In such circumstances, perfect coincidence cannot be expected in the narratives.

We shall hereafter see that the Puranic writers reproduce some of these discrepancies in the traditions which descended to them from earlier generations, and add many new inconsistencies of their own, which they themselves, or their commentators, endeavour to explain away by the assumption that the accounts so differing relate to the occurrences of different Kalpas or Manvantaras (great mundane periods). But of a belief in any such Kalpas or Manvantaras no trace is to be found in the hymns or Brāhmaṇas: and, as we shall hereafter see, they must be held to be the inventions of a later age. The real explanation of these differences in the Brāhmaṇas is that the writers did not consider themselves (as their successors held them) to be infallibly inspired, and consequently were not at all studious to avoid in their narratives the appearance of inconsistency with the accounts of their predecessors.

SECT. V.—*Manu's Account of the Origin of Castes.*

I shall first quote a few verses from the beginning of Manu's account of the creation :

i. 8. *So 'bhidyāya śarīrāt svāt sisrikshur vividhāḥ prajāḥ | apa era sasarpādau tāsu vijam avāsrījat | 9. Tad aṇḍam abhavad haimaṇi sahas-rāṇiṣu-sama-prabham | tasmin jānye svayam Brahmā sarva-loka-pitā-mahaḥ | 10. Āpo nūrā iti proktāḥ āpo vai narasūnavaḥ | tāḥ yad asyāyanam pūrnam tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛitah | 11. Yat tat kāraṇam avyaktam nityam sad-asadātmakam | tad-viśiṣṭaḥ sa puruṣo lok-Brahmeti kirttyate | 12. Tasminn aṇḍe sa bhagavān uśutrā parivate saram | svayam ecātmano dhyānāt tad aṇḍam akaroḍ dvividhā |*⁵⁵

"8. He (the self-existent) having felt desire,⁵⁶ and willing to create various living beings from his own body, first created the waters, and threw into them a seed. 9. That seed became a golden egg, of lustre equal to the sun; in it he himself was born as Brahmā, the parent of all the worlds. 10. The waters are called *nārāḥ*, for they are sprung from *Nara*; and as they were his first sphere of motion (*ayana*=path), he is therefore called *Nārāyaṇa*.⁵⁷ 11. Produced from the imperceptible, eternal, existent and non-existent, cause, that male (*puruṣa*) is celebrated in the world as Brahmā. 12. After dwelling for a year in the egg, the glorious being, himself, by his own contemplation, split it in twain."

After a description of various other preparatory creative acts (vv. 13–30) the author proceeds in vv. 31 ff. to inform us how the four castes were produced :

i. 31. *Lokānām tu vīriddhyartham mukhabūhūru-pādataḥ | brāhmaṇāṃ kṣattriyaṇāṃ vaiśyaṇāṃ śūdraṇāṃ cha niravarttayāt | 32. Dvidhā krit-vātmano deham ardhena puruṣo 'bhavat | ardhena nārī tasyāṃ sa Virājaṇaḥ asṛjāt prabhuḥ | 33. Tapas taptrā 'srījad yaṇ tu sa svayam puruṣo*

⁵⁵ The ideas in this passage are derived (with modifications expressive of the theories current in the author's own age) from the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, xi. 1, 6, 1 ff. (see vol. iv. of this work, p. 21 f.); or from some other similar account in another Brāhmaṇa.

⁵⁶ See S. P. Br. i. 7, 4, 1: *Prajūpatir ha vai svām duhitaram abhidadhyau.*

⁵⁷ In the M. Bh. iii. 12952, Krishna says: *apām nārāḥ iti purā sanjñā-karma śṛitam mayā | tena Nārāyaṇo py ukto mama tat to ayanam sadā |* "The name of *nārāḥ* was formerly assigned by me to the waters: hence I am also called *Nārāyaṇa*, for there has always been my sphere of motion."

Virāṭ | tañ mūn vittūsyā sarvasyā sraṣṭārañ devīja-sattamūḥ | 34. Aham prajāḥ sisṛikṣhus tu tapas taptvā suduścaram | patin prajānām asṛijam maharṣin ādilo duśa | 35. Marichim Atryangirasau Pulastyam Pulahañ Kratum | Prachetasam Vasishṭhañ cha Bhṛiguṃ Nāradaṃ eva cha | 36. Eto Manūṃs tu sapṭānyān asṛijam bhūritejasaḥ | devān devanikāyānūś cha maharṣīmūś chāmitaujasaḥ | 37. Yaksha-rakṣaḥ-piśā-chañś cha gandharvāpsarasas 'surān | nāgān sarpān suparṇānś cha pī-ṭrīnānś cha prithaggaṇān | 38. Vidyuto 'śani-meghānś cha rohitendra-dhaṇūmīś cha | ulkā nirghāta-ketūnś cha jyotiṃśky uchchāraçhāni cha | 39. Kinnarān cānarān matsyān riviḍhānś cha riḥanganān | paśūn mṛigān manushyānś cha vyalānś chobhayatodataḥ | 40. Kṛimikiṭa-putaṅgānś cha yūkā-makṣhika-matkuṇam | sarvañ cha daṃśa-maśakam sthāvarañ cha prithagvidham | 41. Eram etair idaṃ sarvaṃ man-niyogād mahātma-bhiḥ | yathākarma tapo-yogāt sṛiṣṭaṃ sthāvara-jaṅgamam |

31. "That the worlds might be peopled, he caused the Brāhman, the Kshattriya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra to issue from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet."⁵⁸ 32. Having divided his own body into two parts, the lord (Brahmā) became, with the half a male (purusha), and with the half, a female; and in her he created Virāj⁵⁹ 33. Know, O most excellent twice-born men, that I, whom that male, (purusha)⁶⁰ Virāj, himself created, am the creator of all this world. 34. Desiring to produce living creatures, I performed very arduous devotion, and first created ten Maharshis (great rishis), lords of living beings, (35) viz., Marichi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Prachetas, Vasishṭha, Bhṛigu, and Nārada.⁶¹ 36 They, endowed with

⁵⁸ On this Kullūka the Commentator remarks: *Daityū cha śaktyū mukhādibhyo brāhmaṇādi-nirmūṇam Brahmano na visankaṇyaṃ śruti-siddhatevāt* | "It is not to be doubted that, by his divine power, Brahmā formed the Brāhman and the other castes from his mouth and other members, since it is proved by the Veda. He then quotes the 12th verse of the Purusha Sūkta.

⁵⁹ See the Purusha Sūkta, verse 5.

⁶⁰ It will be observed that Manu applies this term *purusha* to three beings, *first* to Brahmā (v. 11), *second* to the male formed by Brahmā from the half of his own body (v. 32), and *third* to Virāj, the offspring of the male and female halves of Brahmā's body (v. 33). It will be noticed that this story of Brahmā dividing his body is borrowed from the passage of the S. P. Br. xiv. 4, 2, 1, quoted above.

⁶¹ In the Rāmāyana, ii. 110, 2 ff., a different account is given of the origin of the world, in which no reference is made to Manu Svāyambhuva. The order of the creation there described is as follows: First everything was water. Then Brahmā Svāyambhū, with the deities, came into existence—Brahmā being said to have sprung

great energy, created⁶² other seven Manus, gods, and abodes of gods, and Maharshis of boundless might; (37) Yakshas, Rakshases, Piśāchas, Gandharvas, Apsarases, Asuras, Nāgas, Serpents, great Birds, and the different classes of Pitris; (38) lightnings, thunderbolts, clouds, Indra's bows unbent and bent, meteors, portentous atmospheric sounds, comets, and various luminaries; (39) Kinnaras, apes, fishes, different sorts of birds, cattle, deer, MEN, beasts with two rows of teeth; (40) small and large reptiles, moths, lice, flies, fleas, all gadflies and gnats, and motionless things of different sorts. 41. Thus by my appointment, and by the force of devotion, WAS ALL THIS WORLD BOTH MOTIONLESS AND MOVING, created by those great beings, according to the (previous) actions of each creature."

The different portions of the preceding narrative of the creation of the human species are not easily reconcileable with each other. For it is first stated in verse 31, that men of the four castes proceeded separately from different parts of Brahmā's body,—prior (as it would appear) (1) to the division of that body into two parts and to the successive production (2) of Virāj, (3) Manu, and (4) the Maharshis, who formed all existing creatures. And yet we are told in verse 39, that MEN were among the beings called into existence by those Maharshis, and in verse 41, that the entire MOVING as well as motionless world was their work. It is not said that the men created by the Maharshis were distinct from those composing the four castes, and we must, therefore, assume that the latter also are included under the general appellation of men. But if men of the four castes had been already produced before the formation of all living creatures by the Maharshis, what necessity existed for the men of these castes being a second time called into being as a part of that later creation? It is possible that this

from the æther (*ākāśa*). Brahmā, with his sons, created the world. From Brahmā sprang Marichi; from Marichi, Kaśyapa; from Kaśyapa, Vivasvat; and from Vivasvat, Manu Vaivasvata. The original of this passage is quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, p. 29 ff.

⁶² These great rishis seem to be the beings denoted by the word *viśvasrijaḥ*, "creators of the universe," in the verse of Manu (xii. 50), which will be quoted below. Reference to rishis, or to seven rishis, as "formers of existing things" (*bhūta-kṛitāḥ*), is also found in the Atharvaveda, vi. 108, 4; vi. 133, 4, 5; xi. 1, 1, 3, 24; xii. 1, 39; and the word *bhūtakṛitāḥ*, without the addition of rishis, is found in the same work iii. 28, 1; iv. 35, 2, and xix. 16, 2.

allegation of the separate creation of castes may have been engrafted as an after-thought on the other account.⁶³

After other details, regarding the propagation, nature, etc. of created things (vv. 42-50), the re-absorption of Brahmā into the Supreme Spirit, and his alternations of sleep and repose, etc. (vv. 50-57), Manu proceeds:

58. *Idaṁ śāstraṁ tu kṛtvā 'sau mām eva svayam āditaḥ | vidhivad grāhayāmāsa Marichyādīnāṁ tv aham munīn |* 59. *Etad vo 'yam Bhriguḥ śāstraṁ śrāvayishyaty aśeshataḥ | etad hi matto 'dhijage sarvām eṣo 'kṣhilam munib |* 60. *Tatas tathā sa tenokto maharshir Manunā Bhriguḥ | tān abravīd rishīn sarvān prītātmā "śrūyatām" iti |* 61. *Svāyambhuvasyāsya Manoḥ śaḍ-vaṁśyā Manavo 'pare | śṛiṣṭarantaḥ prajāḥ svāḥ svāḥ mahātmāno maharjasaḥ |* 62. *Svārochishaḥ chauntamiḥ cha Tāmaso Raivatas tathā | Chākshushaḥ cha mahūtejā Vivasvat-suta eva cha |* 63. *Svāyambhuvādyāḥ saptaite Manavo bhāritejasaḥ | sva sva 'ntare sarvām idam utpādyāpūṣ charācharam |*

58. "Having formed this Scripture, he (Brahmā) himself in the beginning caused me to comprehend it according to rule; as I did to Marichi and the other munis. 59. This Bhrigu will give you to hear this scripture in its entirety; for this muni learned the whole from me. 60. Then that Maharshi (great rishi), Bhrigu being so addressed by Manu, with pleasure addressed all those rishis, saying, 'Let it be heard.' 61. 'From this Manu Svāyambhuva sprang other Manus in six successive generations, great and glorious, who respectively created living beings of their own,—(62) viz., Svārochisha, Antami, Tāmasa, Raivata, Chākshusha, and the mighty son of Vivasvat. 63. These seven⁶⁴ Manus of great power, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have each in his own period (*antara*) produced and possessed the world.' "

⁶³ In the same way it may be observed that in v. 22 Brahmā is said to have formed the subtle class of living gods whose essence is to act, and of the Sādhyas (*karmāmanūm cha devānūm so 'rjīat prāṇinām prabhuḥ | sādhyānūm cha gaṇān sūkṣmam*), and in v. 25, to have "called into existence this creation, desiring to form these living beings" (*śṛiṣṭīm asarja chaivemā^m sraṣṭum icchanaṁ imāḥ prajāḥ*). But if the gods and all other creatures already existed, any such further account of their production by the Maharshis, as is given in verse 36, seems to be not only superfluous but contradictory.

⁶⁴ It will be observed that here Svāyambhuva is included in the seven Manus, although in verse 36 (see above) it is said that the ten Maharshis, who had themselves been created by Svāyambhuva (vv. 34 f.), produced seven other Manus.

After some preliminary explanations regarding the divisions of time as reckoned by men and gods, etc. (vv. 61-78), the author proceeds to tell us how long each of these Manus reigns :

79. *Yat prāk dvādaśa-sāhasram uditān daivikaṇ yugam | tad ekasaptati-guṇam manvantaram ihochyate |* 80. *Manvantarāṇy asankhyāni sargaḥ saṁhāra eva cha | krīḍann ivaitat kurute Parameshṭhī punaḥ punaḥ |*

"The age (*yuga*) of the gods mentioned before, consisting of twelve thousand (years), when multiplied by seventy-one, is here called a manvantara. 80. There are innumerable manvantaras, creations and destructions. The Supreme Being performs this again and again, as if in sport."

A more detailed account of these great mundane periods will be given in the next section, when I come to take up the Vishṇu Purana. Meanwhile it may be remarked that the present manvantara is that of the last of the Manus above enumerated, or Manu Vaivasvata, who, according to verse 63, must have created the existing world. But if such be the case, it does not appear why the creation of Manu Svāyambhuva, with which the present race of mortals can have little to do, should have been by preference related to the rishis in vv. 33 ff. It must, however, be observed that in v. 33 Manu Svāyambhuva described himself as the former of "this" (*i.e.*, the existing) universe, and there is no doubt that the whole code of laws prescribed in the sequel of the work is intended by the author to be observed by the existing race of Indians (see verses 102 ff. of the first book). We must, therefore, suppose that the creations of the later Manus are substantially identical with that of the first; or that there is some confusion or inconsistency in the accounts which I have cited. Perhaps both suppositions may be correct.

In vv. 81-86, the four Yugas (or great ages of the world) the Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, their gradual deterioration, and the special duties peculiar to each, are described.⁶⁵

⁶⁵ In v. 86 these predominant duties are said to be austere fervour in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā, sacrifice in the Dvāpara, and liberality alone in the Kali (*tapas param Kṛita-yuge tretāyām jñānam uchyate | dvāpare yajnam evāhur dānam ekam kalau yuge*). This, as remarked in Weber's Indische Studien, 282 f., note, is not quite in conformity with the view of the Munda Upanishad, i. 2, 1, which states :

At verse 87, Bhṛigu recurs to the four castes:

87. *Sarvasyāsya tu sargasya gupty-artham sa mahādyutiḥ | mukha-bāhūru-paj-jūnām prithak karmāny akalpayat |*

"For the preservation of this whole creation, that glorious being (Brahmā) ordained separate functions for those who sprang from his mouth, his arms, his thighs, and his feet."

These functions are then detailed (vv. 88-92). In verse 93, the grounds of the Brāhman's pre-eminence are stated:

93. *Uttamāṅgobhavaj jyaishṭhyād brahmanaś chaiva dhāraṇāt | sarvasyaivāsya sargasya dharmato brāhmaṇaḥ prabhuḥ |* 94. *Tuṁ hi svayambhūḥ sād āsyāt tapas taptvā 'dilo 'srijat |*

Since the Brahman sprang from the most excellent organ, since he is the first-born and possesses the Veda, he is by nature the lord of this whole creation. Him, the self-existent (Brahmā) after exercising fervid abstraction, formed at the first from his own mouth."

But as there are grades of excellence among created things, and among men themselves (96), so are there also among Brahman:

97. *Brāhmaṇeshu cha vidvāṁso vidvatsu kṛita-buddhayaḥ | kṛita-buddhishu karttārāḥ karttṛishu brahma-vedīnaḥ |*

"Among Brāhman the learned are the most excellent, among the learned the resolute, among the resolute those who act, and among them who act they who possess divine knowledge."

In a subsequent part of the work (xii. 40 ff.) we find men in general, the castes, and indeed all existing things, from Brahmā downwards, classified according to their participation in different degrees in the three *guṇas*, or qualities (*sattva*, "goodness," *rajas*, "passion," and *tamas*, "darkness").

39. *Yena yāṁs tu guṇenaishāṁ saṁsārān pratipadyate | tām samāsena vakshyāmi sarvasyāsya yathākramam |* 40. *Devatvaṁ sūttvikā yānti manushyatvaṁ cha rājasūḥ | tiryaktevaṁ tāmasā nityam ity eṣhā tri-*

tat etat satyam mantreshu karmāṇi kavayo yūny apaśyaṁs tūni tretāyām bahudhū santatini | ["This is true: the rites which sages beheld in the hymns, are in great variety celebrated in the Tretā." In the same way the M. Bh. iii. v. 11,248, says that sacrifices and rites prevail in the Tretā (*tato yajñāḥ pravartante dharmāḥ cha eviḍdhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyām ityādi*). See also M. Bh. xii. 13,090. The word *kṛita*, as the name of the first yuga is thus explained in a previous verse of the former of these two passages (11,235): *kṛitam eva na karttavyaṁ tasmin kāle yugottame |* "In the time of that most excellent *Yuga* (everything) has been done, (and does) not (remain) to be done."

vidhā gatiḥ | . . . 43. *Īstinaś cha turangās cha śūdrā mlechhās cha garhitāḥ* | *siṃhā vyāghrā varāhās cha madhyamā tāmasī gatiḥ* | . . . 46. *Rājānaḥ kṣhattriyaś chaiva rājnaś chaiva purohitāḥ* | *vāda-yuddha-pradhānāś cha madhyamā rājasi gatiḥ* | . . . 48. *Tāpasā ya-tayo viprā yo cha vaimānikā gaṇāḥ* | *nakṣatrāṇi cha daityāś cha prathamā sāttvikī gatiḥ* | 49. *Yajvāna rishayo devā vedā jyotiṃshi vatsarāḥ* | *pitaras chaiva sūdhyaś cha dvitīya sāttvikī gatiḥ* | 50. *Brah-mā viśvasṛijo dharmo mahān avyaktam eva cha* | *uttamān sāttvikīm etān gatiṃ āhur maṇishinaḥ* |

"39. I shall now declare succinctly in order the states which the soul reaches by means of each of these qualities. 40. Souls endowed with the *sattva* quality attain to godhead; those having the *rajas* quality become men; whilst those characterized by *tamas* always become beasts—such is the threefold destination . . . 43. Elephants, horses, Sūdras and contemptible Mlechhas, lions, tigers, and boars form the middle dark condition . . . 46. Kings, Kshatriyas, a king's priests (*purohitāḥ*), and men whose chief occupation is the war of words, compose the middle condition of passion . . . 48. Devotees, ascetics, Brāhmins, the deities borne on aerial cars, constellations, and Daityas, constitute the lowest condition of goodness. 49. Sacrificing priests, rishis, gods, the vodas, the celestial luminaries, years, the fathers, the Sādhyas, form the second condition of goodness. 50. Brah-mā, the creators,⁶⁰ righteousness, the Great One (*mahat*), the Unapparent One (*avyakta*), compose the highest condition of goodness."

⁶⁰ These "creators" (*viśvasṛijāḥ*) are thus mentioned in Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2. *Ādāraṃ Agniṃ chinvānūḥ pūrve viśvasṛijo 'mrilāḥ* | *śutaṃ varsha-sahasraṇi dikṣhātūḥ satraṃ ūsata* | 3. *tapah ūśīd grihapatir Brahma brahmū 'bhavāt svayam* | *satyaṃ ha hotaishūm āśīd yad viśvasṛija ūsata* | *amṛitam ebhya ndagūyat sahasraṃ parivat-sarān* | *bhūtān ha prastotaishūm āśīd bhaviṣhyat prati chāharat* | *prāno adhvaryur abhavad idaṃ suraṃ sishāsātūm* | . . . 7. *Viśvasṛijāḥ prathamāḥ satraṃ ūsata* | . . . | *tato ha jānye bhuvanasya gopāḥ hiraṃyagāḥ śakunir Brahma nūna* | *yena sūrya tapati tejaseddhāḥ* | . . . 8. *Etana vai viśvasṛijāḥ idaṃ visvam asṛijanta* | *yad visvam asṛijanta tasmād viśvasṛijāḥ* | *viśvam enān anu prajāyate* | "2. The ancient and immortal creators of the universe, keeping fire kindled till they saw the new moon, and consecrated, were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years. 3. Austere fervour was the householder; Prayer itself (*brahma*) was the brahmā priest; Truth was their hotri, when the creators were so occupied. Immortality was their udgātṛi for a thousand years. The Past was their prastotṛi, the Future their pratihartrī; Breath was the adhvaryu, whilst they were seeking to obtain all this." After a good deal more of this allegory, the author proceeds in para.: 7. "These first

It will be observed that the different parts of this account of the mode in which the three qualities are distributed, are not quite in harmony. From v. 40 it would appear that all souls having the quality of passion become men; and yet we find from vv. 43, 48, and 49, that Sūdras belong to the *tāmasa* class, and Brāhmins, of different descriptions, to two of the *Sāttvika* grades. According to the rule enunciated in v. 40, the latter ought to have been born as gods.

It is, further, remarkable that in this enumeration Sūdras are found in the same category with Mlechhas (v. 43), that the Vaiśyas are not accommodated with a position in any of the classes, that Kshattriyas and kings' domestic priests, who are of course Brāhmins, and others (who must be Brāhmins) fond of disputation on learned questions⁶⁷ (though not stated to be heretical) are ranked together as "passionate" (v. 46), while other Brāhmins of different characters are placed in two of the higher grades, Brāhmins simply so called (*viprāḥ*) being regarded as "good" in the lowest degree (v. 48), and sacrificing priests (*yajvrāṇaḥ*) sharing with rishis, gods, the vedas, etc., the honour of the middle condition of goodness. It is not clear whether the devotees, and ascetics, mentioned in v. 48, belong to the same caste as the Brāhmins with whom they are associated, or may also be men of the inferior classes. Nor is it evident for what reason the sacrificing priests (*yajvrāṇaḥ*), specified in v. 49, are so much more highly estimated than the king's priests (*rājnaḥ purohitāḥ*) in v. 46, since the latter also officiate at sacrifices. The honourable position assigned to Daityas in the lowest class of "good" beings (v. 48) is also deserving of notice. We shall see in the following chapter that the Purāṇas variously describe mankind as belonging entirely to the "passionate" class (see v. 40, above) and as characterized by the three other "qualities," according to their caste.

creators were engaged in sacrifice . . . Thence was born the preserver of the world, the golden bird called Brahma, by whom the sun glows, kindled with light. . . . 8. . . . Through this the creators created this universe. As they created the universe, they are called *vis'vasrijaḥ*. . . Everything is created after them." See above the reference made to *ṛishayo bhūta-kṛitāḥ* in p. 37. The allegory in this extract from the Taitt. Br. resembles in its character that in the sixth verse of the Puruṣa Sūkta.

⁶⁷ *S'ārstārthakalāha-priyās cha* | Comm.

SECT. VI.—*Account of the System of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and other authorities.*

I shall in the next section adduce the description given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa of the creation of living creatures, and the origin of the four castes, after first supplying in the present some explanation of the great mundane periods, the *Yugas*, *Manvantaras*, *Kalpas*, etc.

The computations of these great periods are stated in the third chapter of the first book, and in the first chapter of the sixth book, and are clearly explained by Professor Wilson in his notes to page 50 of his translation.

One year of mortals is equal to one day of the gods.⁶⁸

12,000 divine years are equal to a period of four Yugas, which is thus made up, viz.:

Kṛita Yuga with its mornings and evenings.....	4,800	divine years
Tretā Yuga " " " " " " " "3,600	" "
Dvāpara Yuga " " " " " " " "2,400	" "
Kali Yuga " " " " " " " "1,200	" "

making... 12,000 divine years.⁶⁹

As a day of the gods is = to one year of mortals, the 12,000 divine years must be multiplied by 360, the assumed number of days in a year, to give the number of the years of mortals in this great period of four yugas, thus: 12,000 divine years \times 360 = 4,320,000 years of mortals.* 1000 of these periods of 12,000 divine, or 4,320,000 human, years—i.e., 4,320,000,000 human years are = 1 day of Brahmā,⁷⁰ and his night is of the same duration. Within that period of a day of Brahmā, 14 Manus reign,⁷¹ and a Manvantara, or period of Manu,

⁶⁸ Vishṇu P. vi. 1, 4 *ahorātram pitṛyūm tu mūso 'hṛas tridivaukasam* | See also Manu i. 66 and 67. The Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, two, states: *ekam vai etad devānām ahar yat saivatsarah* | "This period of a year is one day of the gods."

⁶⁹ i. 3, 10. *Divyair varsha-sahasraistu kṛita-tretādi-sanjñitam* | *chaturyugam dvēdaśabhis tad-vibhāgam nibodha me* | 11. *chatvāri trīṇi dve chaikam kṛitādiṣhu yathākramam* | *divyūbdnūm sahasrūni yugesho āhur purūveidāḥ* | 12. *Tat-pramāṇaiḥ śataiḥ sandhyā pūrvā tatṛbhiḥkṛiyate* | *sandhyāṁśakāś cha tat-tulyo yugasyānantaro hi saḥ* | 13. *Sandhyā-sandhyāṁśayor antar yaḥ kūlo muni-sattana* | *yugākhyaḥ sa tu vijñeyah kṛita-tretādi-sanjñitah* |

⁷⁰ V. P. i. 3, 14. *Kṛitām tretū dvāparaś cha katiś chaiva chaturyugam* | *proch-yate tat-sahasraṁ cha Brahmano divasam mune* | See also Manu i. 72.

⁷¹ V. P. i. 3, 15. *Brahmano divase brahman Manavaś cha chaturdaśa* | *bhavanti* |

It will be observed that the different parts of this account of the mode in which the three qualities are distributed, are not quite in harmony. From v. 40 it would appear that all souls having the quality of passion become men; and yet we find from vv. 43, 48, and 49, that Sūdras belong to the *tāmasa* class, and Brāhmanas, of different descriptions, to two of the *Sāttvika* grades. According to the rule enunciated in v. 40, the latter ought to have been born as gods.

It is, further, remarkable that in this enumeration Sūdras are found in the same category with Mlechhas (v. 43), that the Vaiśyas are not accommodated with a position in any of the classes, that Kshattriyas and kings' domestic priests, who are of course Brāhmanas, and others (who must be Brāhmanas) fond of disputation on learned questions⁶⁷ (though not stated to be heretical) are ranked together as "passionate" (v. 46), while other Brāhmanas of different characters are placed in two of the higher grades, Brāhmanas simply so called (*viprāṇḥ*) being regarded as "good" in the lowest degree (v. 48), and sacrificing priests (*yajrāṇḥ*) sharing with rishis, gods, the vedas, etc., the honour of the middle condition of goodness. It is not clear whether the devotees, and ascetics, mentioned in v. 48, belong to the same caste as the Brāhmanas with whom they are associated, or may also be men of the inferior classes. Nor is it evident for what reason the sacrificing priests (*yajrāṇḥ*), specified in v. 49, are so much more highly estimated than the king's priests (*rājnaḥ purohitāḥ*) in v. 46, since the latter also officiate at sacrifices. The honourable position assigned to Daityas in the lowest class of "good" beings (v. 48) is also deserving of notice. We shall see in the following chapter that the Purānas variously describe mankind as belonging entirely to the "passionate" class (see v. 40, above) and as characterized by the three other "qualities," according to their caste.

creators were engaged in sacrifice . . . Thence was born the preserver of the world, the golden bird called Brahma, by whom the sun glows, kindled with light. . . . 8. . . . Through this the creators created this universe. As they created the universe, they are called *viśvasrijaḥ*. . . Everything is created after them." See above the reference made to *ṛishayo bhūta-kṛitāḥ* in p. 37. The allegory in this extract from the Taitt. Br. resembles in its character that in the sixth verse of the Purusha Sūkta.

⁶⁷ *Śāstūrthakalaha-priyūś cha* | Comm.

SECT. VI.—*Account of the System of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, according to the Vishnu Purāna, and other authorities.*

I shall in the next section adduce the description given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa of the creation of living creatures, and the origin of the four castes, after first supplying in the present some explanation of the great mundane periods, the *Yugas*, *Manvantaras*, *Kalpas*, etc.

The computations of these great periods are stated in the third chapter of the first book, and in the first chapter of the sixth book, and are clearly explained by Professor Wilson in his notes to page 50 of his translation.

One year of mortals is equal to one day of the gods.⁶⁸

12,000 divine years are equal to a period of four Yugas, which is thus made up, viz. :

Kṛita Yuga with its mornings and evenings.....	4,800	divine years
Tretā Yuga " " " "	3,600	" "
Dvāpara Yuga " " " "	2,400	" "
Kali Yuga " " " "	1,200	" "

making... 12,000 divine years.⁶⁹

As a day of the gods is = to one year of mortals, the 12,000 divine years must be multiplied by 360, the assumed number of days in a year, to give the number of the years of mortals in this great period of four yugas, thus: 12,000 divine years \times 360 = 4,320,000 years of mortals.⁶ 1000 of these periods of 12,000 divine, or 4,320,000 human, years—*i.e.*, 4,320,000,000 human years are = 1 day of Brahmā,⁷⁰ and his night is of the same duration. Within that period of a day of Brahmā, 14 Manus reign.⁷¹ and a Manvantara, or period of Manu,

⁶⁸ Vishnu P. vi. 1, 4 *ahorūtram pīrñmām tu nūso 'bdas tridivaukasūm* | See also Manu i. 66 and 67. The Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, too, states: *ekāñ vai etad devūnām ahar yat sañvatsarah* | "This period of a year is one day of the gods."

⁶⁹ i. 3, 10. *Dievair varsha-sahasraistu kṛita-treṭādi-sañjñitam | chaturyugmā dvādasasṁhi tad-vibhinnā nibodha me |* 1. *chaturvī trīṇi dve chaikam kṛitāḍṇaḥ yuglūkharām | dievīddhinām sahasraṇi yugesho āhur purvivedh |* 2. *trai-pañcāṣṭhā sataḥ sandhyā pūrva tatrābhihṛityale | sandhyāṁsakṣi cha tat-tulyo yugayāmanataro hi saḥ |* 3. *Sandhyā-sandhyāṁśeyor antar yaḥ kūlo muni-sattama | yuglūkhyāḥ sa tu vjneyaḥ kṛita-treṭādi-sañjñitā |*

⁷⁰ V. P. i. 3, 14. *Kṛitāṃ tretā dvāparaś cha kalis chaiva chaturyugam | prochyate tat-sahasraṃ cha Brahmano divasam mune |* See also Manu i. 72.

⁷¹ V. P. i. 3, 15. *Brahmano divase brahman Manavaś cha chaturdaśa | bhavanti |*

is consequently = the 14th part of a day of Brahmā. In the present Kalpa (= a day of Brahmā) six Manus, of whom Svāyambhuva was the first, have already passed away, the present Manu being Vāivasvata.⁷² In each Manvantara seven rishis, certain deities, an Indra, a Manu, and the kings, his sons, are created and perish.⁷³ A thousand of the systems of 4 Yugas, as has been before explained, occur coincidently with these 14 Manvantaras; and consequently about 71 systems of 4 Yugas elapse during each Manvantara, and measure the lives of the Manu and the deities of the period.⁷⁴ At the close of this day of Brahmā a collapse (*pratisancharah*) of the universe takes place, which lasts through a night of Brahmā, equal in duration to his day, during which period the three worlds are converted into one great ocean, when the lotus-born god,⁷⁵ expanded by his deglutition of the universe, and contemplated by the yogis and gods in Janaloka, sleeps on the serpent Śeṣha. At the end of that night he awakes and creates anew.⁷⁶

A year of Brahmā is composed of the proper number of such days and nights; and 100 such years constitute his whole life. The period of his life is called *Para*, and the half of it *Parārdha*, or the half of a *Para*. One Parārdha, or half of Brahmā's existence, has now expired, terminating with the great Kalpa, called the Pādma Kalpa. The now existing Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, called Vārāha (or that of the boar), is the first of the second Parārdha of Brahmā's existence.⁷⁷ The

⁷² This is stated by Manu i. 62 ff. (see above), as well as in the third book of the V. P. i. 3, which gives the names in the same order: *Svāyambhuvo Manuḥ pūrvḥ Manuḥ Svārochishas tathā | Auttamis Tāmasas chaiva Ravvatas Chūksushas tathā | śhaḍ eṭe Manavo 'tītūḥ sūnṛpātān tu Raveḥ sutāḥ | Vāivasvato 'yañ yasyaitat sapta-mān varitlate 'ntaram |*

⁷³ V. P. i. 3, 16. *Saptarshayaḥ surāḥ S'akro Manus tat-sūnavo nṛpāḥ | ekakūle hi spijyante sanhrityante cha pūrvavat |*

⁷⁴ Ibid ver. 17. *Chaturyugānām sankhyūtū sādhiḥ hy eka saptatīḥ | manvantaram Manoh kūlāḥ swadīnīm cha sattama |* See also Manu i. 79.

⁷⁵ The birth of Prajāpati on a lotus-leaf is mentioned in the Taitt. Ārany. i. 23, 1, quoted above, p. 32.

⁷⁶ Ibid 20. *Chaturdaśa-guṇo hy eṣha kūlo brāhman ahaḥ smṛitam | brāhmo naitm-jiko nūma tasyānte pratisancharah |* . . . 22. *Ekūrṇave tu trailokyē Brahmū Nārāyaṇātmaḥ | bhogi-bhāgyūgataḥ śete trailokya-grāsa-vṛṇhitaḥ |* 23. *Janasthair yogibhir devaiḥ chūṭyamāno 'hja-sambhavaḥ | tat-pramāṇām hi tām rātrīm tadante sṛjate punaḥ |* See also V. P. i. 2, 59-62, as translated by Wilson, vol. i. p. 41.

⁷⁷ Ibid ver. 24. *Evam tu Brahmano varsham evaṁ varsha-śatām cha tat | śatam hi tasya varshānām param āyur mahātmanah |* 25. *Ekam asya vyatītam tu parārdham Brahmano 'nagha | tasyānte 'bhūd mahākūlpaḥ Pādmanḥ ity abhiwīśrutaḥ | devītyasya*

dissolution, which occurs at the end of each Kalpa, or day of Brahmā, is called *naimittika*, incidental, occasional, or contingent. (See Wilson's Vishṇu Purana, vol. i. of Dr. Hall's edition, p. 52, with the editor's note; and vol. ii. p. 269. For an account of the other dissolutions of the universe I refer to the same work, vol. i. p. 113, and to pp. 630-633 of the original 4to. edition.)

Of this elaborate system of Yugas, Manvantaras, and Kalpas, of enormous duration, no traces are found in the hymns of the Rig-veda. Their authors were, indeed, familiar with the word *Yuga*,⁷⁸ which frequently occurs in the sense of age, generation, or tribe. Thus in i. 139, 8; iii. 26, 3; vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5; x. 94, 12, the phrase *yuge yuge*⁷⁹ means "in every age." In iii. 33, 8; x. 10, 10, we have *uttarā yugāni*, "future ages," and in x. 72, 1, *uttare yuge*, "in a later age;" in vii. 70, 4, *pūrveṇi yugāni*, "former ages,"⁸⁰ and in i. 184, 3, *yuga jñanā*, "past ages." In i. 92, 11; i. 103, 4; i. 115, 2; i. 124, 2; i. 144, 4;⁸¹ ii. 2, 2; v. 52, 4; vi. 16, 23; vii. 9, 4; viii. 46, 12; viii. 51, 9; ix. 12, 7;⁸² x. 27, 19; x. 140, 6⁸³ (in all of which places, except i. 115, 2, the word is combined with *manushyā*, *mānushā*, *manushah*, or *janānām*), *yuga* seems to denote "generations" of men, or *parārdhasya varttamānasya vai devja | Varūhah iti kalpo 'yam prathamah parikalpitah |*

⁷⁸ In Professor Willson's Dictionary three senses are assigned to *yuga* (neuter) (1) a pair; (2) an age as the Kṛita, Tretā, etc.; (3) a lustre, or period of five years. When used as masculine the word means, according to the same authority, (1) a yoke; (2) a measure of four cubits, etc.; (3) a particular drug.

⁷⁹ Sāyana, on iii. 36, 3, explains it by *pratidinam*, "every day;" on vi. 8, 5; vi. 15, 8; vi. 36, 5, by *kāle kāle*, "at every time."

⁸⁰ Sāyana takes the phrase for former "couples of husbands and wives," *mithunāni jāyāpatirupāni*.

⁸¹ In i. 92, 11 and i. 124, 2, Ushas (the Dawn) is spoken of as, *praminatī manushyā yugāni*, "wearing away human terms of existence, or generations." In commenting on the former text Sāyana explains *yugāni* as equivalent to *kṛita-tretādini*, "the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages," whilst in explaining the second, he takes the same word as signifying *yugopalakṣhitān nimeshādī-kūṭivayavān*, "the seconds and other component parts of time indicated by the word," or as equivalent to *yugmāni*, "the conjunctions of men,"—since the dawn scatters abroad to their several occupations men who had been previously congregated together!" In his note on i. 144, 4, he gives an option of two different senses: *manoh sambhondhīni yugāni jāyāpati-rupāni hotradhvaryu-rupāni vā |* "couples consisting of husband and wife, or of the hotṛi and adhvaryu priests."

⁸² This verse, ix. 12, 7, is also found in Sāma V. ii. 552, where, however, *yujū* is substituted for *yugā*.

⁸³ This verse occurs also in Sāma V. ii. 1171, and Vaj. S. xii. 111.

rather, in some places, "tribes" of men. In v. 73, 3, the phrase *nāhushā yugū* must have a similar meaning. In i. 158, 6, it is said that the rishi Dīrghatamas became worn out in the tenth *yuga*; on which Professor Wilson remarks (R. V. vol. ii. 104, note): "The scholiast understands *yuga* in its ordinary interpretation; but the *yuga* of five years is perhaps intended, a lustrum, which would be nothing marvellous." Professor Aufrecht proposes to render, "in the tenth stage of life." The first passage of the Rig-veda, in which there is any indication of a considerable mundane period being denoted, is x. 72, 2f., where "a first," or, "an earlier age (*yuga*) of the gods" is mentioned (*devānām pūrye yuge; devānām prathame yuge*) when "the existent sprang from the non-existent" (*asataḥ sad ajāyata*); but no allusion is made to its length. In the same indefinite way reference is made in x. 97, 1, to certain "plants which were produced before the gods,—three ages (*yugas*) earlier" (*yāḥ ośadhīḥ pūrvāḥ jātāḥ devebhyas tri-yugam purā*). In one verse of the Atharva-veda, however, the word *yuga* is so employed as to lead to the supposition that a period of very long duration is intended. It is there said, viii. 2, 21: *śatām te ayutaṁ hāyanām dre yuge trīni chatvāri kṛinmaḥ* | "we allot to thee a hundred, ten thousand, years, two, three, four ages (*yugas*)."⁶⁴ As we may with probability assume that the periods here mentioned proceed in the ascending scale of duration, two *yugas*, and perhaps even one *yuga*, must be supposed to exceed 10,000 years.

The earliest comparison between divine and human periods of duration of which I am aware is found in the text of the Taitt. Br. quoted above in a note to p. 43: "A year is one day of the gods."⁶⁵ But so far as that passage itself shows, there is no reason to imagine that the statement it contains was anything more than an isolated idea, or that the conception had, at the time when the Brāhmaṇas were compiled, been developed, and a system of immense mundane periods, whether

⁶⁴ For the context of this line see Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, page 42.

⁶⁵ An analogous idea is found in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa xiv. 7, 1, 33 ff. (= Brihadāranyaka Upanishad pp. 817 ff. of Cal. ed.) *atha ye śatam mamushyānām ānandāḥ sa ekah pitṛīnām jītolokūnām ānandāḥ* | "now a hundred pleasures of men are one pleasure of the Pitṛis who have conquered the worlds." And so on in the same way: a hundred pleasures of the Pitṛis equalling one pleasure of the Karmadevas (or gods who have become so by works); a hundred pleasures of the latter equalling one pleasure of the gods who were born such, etc.

human or divine, had been elaborated. That, however, the authors of the Brāhmanas were becoming familiar with the idea of extravagantly large numbers is clear from the passage in the Taitt. Br. iii. 12, 9, 2, quoted above, p. 41, in the note on Manu xii. 50, where it is said that the creators were engaged in a sacrifice for 100,000 years.

Professor Roth is of opinion (see his remarks under the word *Kṛita* in his Lexicon) that according to the earlier conception stated in Manu i. 69, and the Mahābhārata (iii. 826 ff.), the four Yugas—*Kṛita*, *Tretā*, *Dvāpara*, and *Kali*, with their mornings and evenings, consisted respectively of no more than 4,800; 3,600; 2,400; and 1,200 ordinary years of mortals; and that it was the commentators on Manu, and the compilers of the Purāṇas, who first converted the years of which they were made up into divine years. The verse of Manu to which Professor Roth refers (i. 69), and the one which follows, are certainly quite silent about the years composing the *Kṛita* age being divine years:

*Chaturvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varshāṇāṃ tu kṛitāṃ yugam | tasya tārach
ekhatī sandhyā sandhyāṃśchaścha tathāvidhaḥ | 70. Itareshu sasandhyeshu
sasandhyāṃśeshu cha trishu | ekāpāyena varṭtante sahasrāṇi śatāni cha |*
“They say that four thousand years compose the *kṛita* yuga, with as many hundred years for its morning and the same for its evening. 70. In the other three yugas, with their mornings and evenings, the thousands and hundreds are diminished successively by one.”

Verse 71 is as follows: *Yad etat parisankhyātām ādāv eva chatur-
yugam | etad dvādaśa-sahasraṃ devānāṃ yugam uchyate |* which, as explained by Medhātithi, may be thus rendered: “Twelve thousand of these periods of four yugas, as above reckoned, are called a Yuga of the gods.” Medhātithi’s words, as quoted by Kullūka, are these: *Chaturyugair eva dvādaśa-sahasra-sankhyair divyam yugam |* “A divine Yuga is formed by four yugas to the number of twelve thousand.” Kullūka, however, says that his predecessor’s explanation is mistaken, and must not be adopted (*Medhātithiher bhramo nūdarṭtavyaḥ*). His own opinion is that the system of yugas mentioned in vv. 69 and 71 are identical, both being made up of divine years. According to this view, we must translate v. 71 as follows: “The period of four yugas, consisting of twelve thousand years, which has been reckoned above, is called a Yuga of the gods.” This certainly appears to be the

preferable translation, and it is confirmed by the tenor of verso 79. Verse 71, however, may represent a later stage of opinion, as it is not found in the following passage of the Mahābhārata, where the previous verse (69) is repeated, and verse 70 is expanded into three verses, though without any alteration of the sense:

M. Bh. iii 12826 ff. — *Ādīto manuṣya-vyāghra kṛtsnasya jagataḥ kṣhaye | chatvāry āhuḥ sahasrāṇi varṣhānām tat kṛtām yugam | tasya tārachchhatī sandhyā sandhyāṁścha tathāvūdhaḥ |*

"In the beginning, after the destruction of the entire universe, they say that there are four thousand years: that is the Kṛta Yuga, which has a morning of as many hundred years, and an evening of the same duration." And then, after enumerating in like manner the other three Yugas with their respective thousands and hundreds successively diminished by one, the speaker (the sage Mārkaṇḍeya) proceeds in verse 12831: *Eṣhā dvādaśasahrī yugāḥyā parikṛtītā | etat sahasraparyantam aho brāhman udāhṛtam |* "This period of twelve thousand years is known by the appellation of the Yugas. A period extending to a thousand of these is called a day of Brahmā."

Nowhere, certainly, in this passage is any mention made of the years being divine years.

The earliest known text in which the names of the four Yugas are found is a verse occurring in the story of Sunahṣepha in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 15: *Kaliḥ śayāno bharatī sanjihānas tu dvāparaḥ | uttiṣṭhaṁś tretā bhavati kṛtām sampadyate charan |* "A man while lying is the Kali; moving himself, he is the Dvāpara; rising, he is the Tretā; walking, he becomes the Kṛta."⁶⁶ But this brief allusion leaves us

⁶⁶ This verse has been already translated no less than six times; twice into German by Weber and Roth (Ind. Stud. i. 286 and 460), once into Latin by Streiter (see Ind. Stud. ix. 315), and thrice into English, by Wilson (Journ. R. A. S. for 1851, p. 99), Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 412), and Haug (Ait. Br. ii. 461). All these authors, except the last, concur in considering the verse as referring to the four Yugas. Dr. Haug, however, has the following note: "Sāyana does not give any explanation of this important passage, where the names of the Yugas are mentioned for the first time. These four names are, as is well known from other sources, . . . names of dice, used at gambling. The meaning of this Gāthā is, There is every success to be hoped; for the unluckiest die, the Kali is lying, two others are slowly moving and half fallen, but the luckiest, the Kṛta, is in full motion. The position of dice here given is indicative of a fair chance of winning the game." Both Dr. Haug's translation and note are criticised by Professor Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 319). Of the following verses, which occur in Manu ix. 301 f., the second is a paraphrase of that in the Aitareya Brāh-

quite in the dark as to the duration which was assigned to these *yugas* in the age when the *Brāhmaṇa* was compiled.

SECT. VII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa.*

I commence with the following general account of the cosmogony of the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, extracted from Professor Wilson's Preface to his translation of that work, vol. i. p. xciii. :

"The first book of the six, into which the work is divided, is occupied chiefly with the details of creation, primary (*sarga*), and secondary (*pralīsarga*); the first explains how the universe proceeds from *Prakṛiti*, or eternal crude matter;⁸⁷ the second, in what manner the forms of things are developed from the elementary substances previously evolved, or how they re-appear after their temporary destruction.⁸⁸ Both these creations are periodical; but the termination of the first occurs only at the end of the life of *Brahmā*, when not only all the gods and all other forms are annihilated, but the elements are again merged into primary substance, besides which only one spiritual being exists. The latter takes place at the end of every *Kalpa* or day of *Brahmā*, and affects only the forms of inferior creatures and lower worlds, leaving the substances of the universe entire, and sages and gods unharmed."⁸⁹

mana : Kṛitam tretā-yugaṃ chaiva dvāparam kalir eva cha | rājno vṛittāni sarvāṇi rūpā hi yugam uchyate | 302. *Kālīḥ prasupto bhavati sa jāgrat dvāparam yugam | karmasv abhyudayatas tretā vicarāṃs tu kṛitāṃ yugam |* "301. The *Kṛita*, *Tretā*, *Dvāpara*, and *Kali* *yugas* are all modes of a king's action; for a king is called a *yuga*. 302. While asleep he is the *Kali*; waking he is the *Dvāpara* age; intent upon action he is the *Tretā*, moving about he is the *Kṛita*." The former of these two verses of *Manu* is reproduced nearly verbatim in the *M. Bh.* xii. 3408; and the same idea is expanded in the same book of the same poem, vv. 2674 ff., 2682, 2684, 2686, 2693 ff. The words *kṛita*, *tretā*, *dvāpara*, and *kali*, are found in the *Vāj.-Sanhitā*, xxx. 18, and in the *Taitt. Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 4, 1, 16; but in both places they denote dice, as does also the word *kṛita* in the *Chhāndogya Upan.* iv. 1, 4 (where see the commentary). On the *Yugas* the reader of German may also consult *Weber's Indische Studien*, i. pp. 39, 87 f., 282 ff.

⁸⁷ [See Book i. chapter ii.]

⁸⁸ [See the fourth and following chapters of Book i.]

⁸⁹ See Book i. at the close of chapter vii. p. 113 of vol. i. of Professor Wilson's translation, 2nd edition, and also p. 621 and 630 of the original 4to. edition. As regards,

I proceed with the details of the creation which took place in the Vārāha Kalpa, as described in book i. chapter 4, vv. 2, ff. :

*Atīta-kalpārasāne niśa-suptotthitah prabhuh | sattrodriktas tato
Brahmā śūnyaṁ lokam araikshata | 3. Nārāyaṇaḥ paro 'chintyaḥ
pareśhām api sa prabhuh | Brahma-svarūpi bhavagūṇ anādiḥ sarva-
sambhavaḥ | . . . 6. Toyāntaḥ sa mahiṁ jñātvā jagaty ekārṇave pra-
bhuh | anumānād tad-uddhāraṁ karttu-kāmaḥ prajāpatiḥ | 7. Akarot sa
tanūm anyāṁ kalpādishu yathā purā | matsya-kūrmādikāṁ tadvad
vārāhaṁ rapur āsthitaḥ | 8. Veda-yajñamayāṁ rūpam āśeṣa-jagatuḥ
sthitaḥ | sthitaḥ sthirātmā sarvātmā paramātmā prajāpatiḥ | 9. Jana-
loka-gataiḥ siddhair Saṅkādyaḥ abhishkṛtaḥ | praviveśa tadā toyam
ātmādhāro dharā-dharaḥ | . . . 45. Evaṁ śaṁstūyamānastu para-
mātmā mahādharaḥ | ūjjahāra mahiṁ kṣipraṁ nyastavāṁś cha mahā-
bhāsi | 46. Tasyopari jalaughasya mahatī naur iva sthitā | vītatatatrāt
tu dehasya na mahi yāti samplavam | tataḥ kṣitiṁ samāṁ kṛtvā prithi-
vyāṁ so 'chinod girīn | yathā-vibhāgam bhagavān anādiḥ puruṣottamaḥ
| 47. Prāk-sarga-dagdhan ākṣilān parvatān prithivītale | amoghena
prabhāvena sasarpjāmogha-rāmechhitaḥ | 48. Dhruvī bhāgāṁ tataḥ kṛtvā
sapta-devīpān yathātathā | bhūr-ādyaṁś chaturō lokān pūrvarat sama-
kalpayat | 49. Brahma-rūpadharo decas tato 'sau rajusā 'ṛitaḥ |
chakāra śṛiṣṭiṁ bhagavāṁś chatur-vaktra-dharo Hariḥ | 50. nimitta-
mātram evāsau śṛijyānūṁ sarga-karmāṇām | pradhāna-kāraṇībhūtā
yato vai śṛijya-śaktayaḥ | 51. Nimitta-mātram muktaikam nānyat
kinchid apekshyate | nīyate tapatūṁ śreṣṭha sra-śaktyā vastu vastutām |*

“2. At the end of the past (or Pādma) Kalpa, arising from his night slumber, Brahmā, the lord, endowed predominantly with the quality of goodness, beheld the universe void. 3. He (was) the supreme lord Nārāyaṇa, who cannot even be conceived by other beings, the deity without beginning, the source of all things, existing in the form of Brahmā.” [The verse given in Manu i. 10, regarding the derivation of the word Nārāyaṇa (see above p. 35) is here quoted]. “6. This lord of creatures, discovering by inference,—when the world had become one ocean,—that the earth lay within the waters, and being desirous to raise it up, (7) assumed another body. As formerly, at the beginnings of the Kalpas, he had taken the form of a fish,

however, the statement with which the paragraph concludes, compare vol. i. p. 50, as well as vol. ii. p. 269, of the same work.

a tortoise, and so forth,⁹⁰ (so now) entering the body of a boar (8),—a form composed of the vedas and of sacrifice,—the lord of creatures, who, throughout the entire continuance of the world, remains fixed, the universal soul, the supreme soul, self-sustained, the supporter of the earth (9),—being hymned by Sanaka and the other saints, who had (at the dissolution of the lower worlds) proceeded to Janaloka,—entered the water.” [He is then addressed by the goddess Earth in a hymn of praise, as Vishnu, and as the supreme Brahmā, vv. 10-24. The boar then rises from the lower regions, tossing up the earth with his tusk, and is again lauded by Sanandana and other saints in a second hymn, in the course of which he himself is identified with sacrifice, and his various members with its different instruments and accompaniments, vv. 25-44]. “45. Being thus lauded, the supreme soul, the upholder of the earth, lifted her up quickly and placed her upon the great waters. 46. Resting upon this mass of water, like a vast ship, she does not sink, owing to her expansion. Then, having levelled the earth, the divine eternal Purushottama heaped together mountains according to their divisions. 47. He whose will cannot be frustrated, by his unfailing power, created on the surface of the earth all those mountains which had been burnt up in the former creation. 48. Having then divided the earth, just as it had been, into seven dvīpas, he formed the four worlds Bhūrloka and others as before. 49. Becoming next pervaded with the quality of passion, that divine being Hari, assuming the form of Brahmā, with four faces, effected the creation. 50. But he is merely the instrumental cause of the things to be created and of the creative operations, since the properties of the things to be created arise from Pradhāna as their (material) cause. 51. Excepting an instrumental cause alone, nothing else is required. Every substance (*rastu*) is brought into the state of substance (*vastutā*) by its own inherent power.”⁹¹

⁹⁰ No mention is made in the Brāhmaṇas (as I have already observed) of any such periods as the Kalpas. But here an attempt is made to systematize the different stories scattered through those older works which variously describe the manner in which the creation was effected—with the view, perhaps, of reconciling the discrepancies in those free and artless speculations which offended the critical sense of a later age.

⁹¹ See Professor Wilson's translation of these verses, and the new version proposed by the editor of the second edition, Dr. Hall, p. 66, note. I do not think the phrase

[Before proceeding further with the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, I wish to quote or refer to some passages from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā and Brūhmaṇa and from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which appear to furnish the original germs of the legends of the boar, fish, tortoise, and dwarf incarnations.

The first of these texts is from the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1 ff :

Āpo vai idam agro salīlam āsīt | tasmīn Prajāpatir vāyur bhūtvā acharat | sa imām apaśyat | tañ varāho bhūtvā āharat | tām Viśvakarmā bhūtvā ryamārt | sū aprathata | sū prithirya abharat | tat prithirya prithivītram | tasyām āsrūmyat Prajāpatiḥ | sa devān asṛjāta Vasūn Rudrān Adityān | te devāḥ Prajāpatim abruvan "prajāyāmahai" iti | so 'bravīt "yathā aham yushmāns tapasā asṛikshi evaṁ tapasi prajānanam ichchhadhcam" iti | tebhyo 'gnim āyatanam prāyachhad "etena āyatanena śrāmīyata" iti | te 'gnivā āyatanena āsrāmyan | te saṁvatsare ekām gām asṛjanta |

"This universe was formerly waters, fluid. On it Prajāpati, becoming wind, moved.²² He saw this (earth). Becoming a boar, he took her up. Becoming Viśvakarman, he wiped (the moisture from) her. She extended. She became the extended one (*prithivī*). From this the earth derives her designation as the extended one. In her Prajāpati performed arduous devotion. He created gods, Vasus, Rudras, and Adityas. The gods said to Prajāpati, 'let us be propagated.' He answered, 'As I have created you through austere fervour, so do ye seek after propagation in austere fervour.' He gave them Agni as a resting-place (saying), 'With this as a resting-place perform your devotion.' They (accordingly) performed devotion with Agni as a resting-place. In a year they created one cow, etc."²³

śva-saktyā can be properly rendered, as Dr. Hall does, "by its potency." The reading of the MSS. in v. 50, *pradhāna-kūṇāḍbhūtāḥ* seems to me doubtful, as it would most naturally mean "have become the Pradhāna-cause." I conjecture *pradhāna-kūṇāḍbhūtāḥ*, which gives the sense which seems to be required.

²² It is possible that the idea assigned to the word *Nārāyaṇa* (see *Manu* i. 10, above), "he whose place of movement is the waters," may be connected with this passage. See also *Genesis* i. 2, "And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters."

²³ After having noticed this passage in the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, I became aware that it had been previously translated by Mr. Colebrooke (*Essays* i. 75, or p. 44 of Williams & Norgate's edition). Mr. Colebrooke prefaces his version by remarking, "The pre-

The second passage is from the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, i. 1, 3, 5 ff. *Āpo vai idam agre salilam āsīt | tena Prajāpatiḥ asrāmyat* "katham idam syād" iti | so 'paśyat pushkara-parṇam tishthat | so 'manyata "asti vai tad yasminn idam adhitishthati" iti | sa varāho rūpaṁ kritrā upanyamajjat | sa prithivīm adhaḥ ārchhat | tasyā upahatya udamajjat | tat pushkara-parṇe 'prathayat | yad "aprathata" tat prithivyai prithirīvam | "abhūd vai idam" iti tad bhūmyai bhūmitram | tān diśo 'nu vālah samarahat | tān śarkarābhir adṛimhat |

"This (universe) was formerly water, fluid.⁹⁴ With that (water) Prajāpati practised arduous devotion (saying), 'how shall this (universe) be (developed)?' He beheld a lotus-leaf standing.⁹⁵ He thought, 'there is somewhat on which this (lotus-leaf) rests.' He as a boar—having assumed that form—plunged beneath towards it. He found the earth down below. Breaking off (a portion of) her, he rose to the surface. He then extended it on the lotus-leaf. Inasmuch as he extended it, that is the extension of the extended one (the earth). This became (*abhūt*). From this the earth derives its name of *bhūmī*. The wind carried her, to the four quarters. He strengthened her with gravel, etc., etc.

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 1, 2, 11, has the following reference to the same idea, although here Prajāpati himself is not the boar:

Iyati ha vai iyam agre prithivy āsa prādeśa-mātrī | tām Emūshaḥ iti varāhaḥ ūjjaghāna | so 'syāḥ patiḥ Prajāpatis tena eva enam etan-mithu-nena priyānā dhāmnā samardhayati kṛtsnaṁ karoti |

"Formerly this earth was only so large, of the size of a span. A boar called Emūsha raised her up. Her lord Prajāpati, therefore, prospers him with (the gift of) this pair, the object of his desire, and makes him complete."

Another of the incarnations referred to in the preceding passage of

sent extract was recommended for selection by its allusion to a mythological notion, which apparently gave origin to the story of the *Varāha-avatāra*, and from which an astronomical period, entitled *Calpa*, has perhaps been taken."

⁹⁴ The Commentator gives an alternative explanation, viz., that the word *salila* is the same as *sarira*, according to the text of the Veda, "these worlds are *sarira*" ("ime vai lokāḥ sariram" iti śruteḥ).

⁹⁵ "Supported upon the end of a long stalk" (*dīrghanātūgre 'vasthitam*), according to the Commentator. In a passage from the Taitt. Āranyaka, already quoted (p. 32, above), it is said that Prajāpati himself was born on a lotus-leaf.

the Vishṇu Purāṇa is foreshadowed in the following text from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 5, 1, 5 :

Sa yat kūrmo nāma | etad vai rūpaṁ kṛtvā Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asrijata | yad asrijata akarot tat | yad akarot tasmāt kūrmaḥ | kasyapo vai kūrmaḥ | tasmād āhuḥ "sarvāḥ prajāḥ kasyapyah" iti | sa yah sa kūrmo sau sa Ādityaḥ |

"As to its being called *kūrma* (a tortoise); Prajāpati having taken this form, created offspring. That which he created, he made (*akarot*); since he made, he is (called) *kūrmaḥ*. The word *kasyapa* means tortoise; hence men say all creatures are descendants of Kaśyapa. This tortoise is the same as Āditya."⁹⁶

The oldest version of the story of the fish incarnation, which is to be found in the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1 ff., will be quoted in the next chapter.

For the passages which appear to supply the germ of the dwarf incarnation, the reader may consult the fourth volume of this work, pp. 54-58 and 107 f.

It will have been noticed that in the passage above adduced from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, the word Nārāyaṇa is applied to Vishṇu, and that it is the last named deity who (though in the form of Brahmā) is said to have taken the form of a boar. In the verses formerly cited from Manu (i. 9, 10), however, Nārāyaṇa is an epithet, not of Vishṇu, but of Brahmā; and in the following text, from the Rāmāyaṇa, xi. 110, 3, it is Brahmā who is said to have become a boar :

Sarvaṇ salilam evāsīt prithivī tatra nirmītā | tataḥ samabharad Brahmā svayambhūr daivataiḥ saha⁹⁷ | sa varāhas tato bhūtvā prajāhara vāsundharām ityādi |

"All was water only, and in it the earth was fashioned. Then arose

⁹⁶ With this compare the mention made of a tortoise in the passage cited above, p. 32, from the Taitt. Āranyaka.

⁹⁷ Such is the reading of Schlegel's edition, and of that which was recently printed at Bombay, both of which, no doubt, present the most ancient text of the Rāmāyaṇa. The Gauda recension, however, which deviates widely from the other, and appears to have modified it in conformity with more modern taste and ideas, has here also introduced a various reading in the second of the lines quoted in the text, and identifies Brahmā with Vishṇu in the following manner: *tataḥ samabharad Brahmā svayambhūr Viṣṇur avyayaḥ* | "Then arose Brahmā the self-existent and imperishable Vishṇu."

Brahmā, the self existent, with the deities. He then, becoming a boar, raised up the earth," etc.

I now return to the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.]

The further process of cosmogony is thus described in chapter v. :

Maitreya uvācha | 1. *Yuthā sasārjja devo'sau devarshi-pitri-dānavān | manushya-tiryag-vṛikshādīn bhū-ryoma-salilaukasaḥ |* 2. *Yad-guṇaṁ yat-svabhāvaṁ cha yad-rūpaṁ cha jagad deija | sargādaṁ śṛiṣṭavān Brahmā tad mamāchakshva vistarāt |* *Parāsara uvācha* | 3. *Maitreya kathayāmy esha śṛiṇushva susamāhitaḥ | yuthā sasārjja devo'sau devādīn akhilān vibhūḥ | śṛiṣṭiṁ chintayatas tasya kalpādīshu yathā purā | abuddhi-pūrvakāḥ sargaḥ prādurbhūtas tamomayaḥ |* 4. *Tamo moho mahāmohaś tāmiso hy andha-sāṁjitaḥ | avidyā pancha-parvairiṣā prādurbhūta mahātmanaḥ |* 5. *Panchadhā 'vasthitaḥ sargo dhyāyato 'pratibodhāvān | eahir-anto-'prakāśas cha saṁvṛittātmā nagātmakāḥ |* 6. *Mukhyā nagā yataś choktā mukhya-sargas tatas tv ayaṁ | 7. Tān dṛiṣṭvā 'sādhakāṁ sargam amanyaḥ aparaṁ punaḥ | tasyābhidhyāyataḥ sargas tiryak-srotā⁹⁹ 'bhavarattata |* 8. *Yasmāt tiryak pravṛittaḥ sa tiryak-srotas tataḥ smṛitaḥ |* 9. *Pāśvādayas te vikhyātās tamaḥ-pragāḥ hy ave-dinaḥ | utpatha-grāhinaś chaiva te 'jñāne juṇa-māninaḥ |* 10. *Ahaṁkṛitā akumantā ashtāvimsad-vadhānvitāḥ | antaḥ-prakāśas te sarve ūṛpitās cha parasparam |* 11. *Tam apy asādhakam matvā dhyāyato 'nyas tato 'bhavat | ūrdhvasrotas tritīyas tu sūttvikorddhvam avarattata⁹⁹ |* 12. *Te sukha-pritibahulā bahir antas cha nārṛitāḥ¹⁰⁰ | prakāśā bahir antas cha ūrdhvasroto-bhavāḥ smṛitāḥ |* 13. *Tushty-ātmakas tritīyas tu deva-sargas tu yaḥ smṛitāḥ | tasmīn sargo 'bhavat prītir nishpanne Brahmanas tadā |* 14. *Tuto 'nyaṁ sa tudā dadhyau sādhakāṁ sargam uttamam | asādhakāṁs tu tūn jñātrā mukhya-sargādi-sambhavān |* 15. *Tathā 'bhidhyāyatas tasya satyābhidhyāyinas tataḥ | prādurbhūtas tadā 'vyaktād arvāk-srotas tu sādhakāḥ |* 16. *Yasmād arvāḥ vyavarttanta tato 'rvāk-srotasas tu te | te cha prakāśa-bahulā tamodriktā¹⁰¹ rajo'dhikāḥ | tasmāt te duḥkha-bahulā bhūyo bhūyaś cha kārīnaḥ | prakāśā bahir antas cha manushyū sādhakāḥ tu te | . . .* 23. *Ity ete tu samākhyātā nava sargāḥ Prajā-*

⁹³ *iti sandhir ārsṇaḥ* —Comm.

⁹⁹ The reading of the Vāyu P., in the parallel passage, is *tasyābhidhyāyato nityaṁ sūttvikah samavarattata* | *ūrdhvasrotas tritīyas tu sa chaivordhvaṁ vyavasthitaḥ* | The combination *sūttvikorddhvam* in the text of the Vishṇu P. must be *ārsha*.

¹⁰⁰ For *nārṛitāḥ* the Vāyu P. reads *saṁvṛitāḥ*.

¹⁰¹ *Iti sandhir ārsṇaḥ* | Comm. But there is a form *tama*. The Vāyu P. has *tamaḥ-saktāḥ*.

*pateh | prākṛitā vaikṛitāś chaiva jagato mūla-hetavaḥ | sṛjato jagadīśa-
sya kim anyach chhrotum icchasi | Maitreya uvācha | 24. Saṁkṣhepāt
kathitāḥ sargo devādīnāṁ trayā munē | vistarāch chhrotum icchāmi
tratto munivaroṭṭama | Parāśara uvācha | karmabhir bhāvitaḥ pūrvaiḥ
kṣalākṣulais tu tāḥ | khyātyā tayā hy anirmuktāḥ saṁhāre hy upa-
saṁhṛitāḥ | 25. Sthāvarāntāḥ surādyaścha prajā brahmaṁś chaturvi-
dhāḥ | Brahmaṇaḥ kuretaḥ sṛṣṭīm jajñire mānasīs tu tāḥ | 26. Tato
devāsupitiṛiṇ mānushāṁś cha chatusṭayam | sisṛikṣur ambhāṁsy
etāni sram ātmānam ayyuyujat | 27. Yuktātmanas tamomātrā vdriktā
'bhūt Prajāpateḥ | sisṛikṣor jaghanāt pūrram asurāḥ jajñire tataḥ |
28. Utsarja tatas tām tu tamo-mātrātmikām tanum | sū tu tyaktā
tanus tena Maitreyābhūd vibhāvari | 29. Sisṛikṣur anya-deha-sthāḥ
pṛitīm āpa tataḥ surāḥ | sattvadrīktāḥ samudbhūtāḥ mukhato Brah-
maṇodviḥja | 30. Tyaktā sū 'pi tanus tena sattva-prāyam abhād dinam |
tato hi balīno rātrāv asurā devatā divā | 31. Sattvamātrātmikām eva
tato 'nyām jagṛiḥe tanum | pīṭirād manyamānasya pītaras tasya
jajñire | 32. Utsarja pīṭin sṛṣṭrā tatas tām api sa prabhūḥ | sū
chotsṛṣṭiḥ 'bharat sandhyā dina-naktāntara-sthiliḥ | 33. Rajo-mātrāt-
mikām anyām jagṛiḥe sa tanuṁ tataḥ | rajo-mātrokṭā jātā manushyā
drīja-sattoma | tām apy āsū sa tatyāja tanum ādyāḥ Prajāpatih |
jyotsnā samubhavat sū 'pi prāk-sandhyā yā 'bhīdhiyate | 34. Jyotsno-
dgume tu balīno manushyāḥ pītaras tathā | Maitreya sandhyā-samaye
tusmād ete bhavanti vai | 35. Jyotsnā-rātry-ahavā sandhyā chatvāry
etāni vai vibhōḥ | Brahmaṇas tu sarvāṇi triguṇāḥ srayāṇi cha |
36. Rajo-mātrātmikām eva tato 'nyām jagṛiḥe tanum | tataḥ kṣud
Brahmaṇo jātā jajñe kopas tayā tataḥ | 37. Kṣud-kṣmān andhakāre
'tha so 'sṛjad bhagavāṁś tataḥ | Vīrūpāḥ śmuśrūtā jātās te 'bhyudhā-
vāṁś tataḥ prabhū | 38. "Maivam bho rakshyatām esha" yair uktaṁ
rakṣasīs tu te | āchūḥ "khādāma" ity anye ye te yakṣās tu yakṣhamāt |*

"Maitreya said: 1. Tell me in detail how at the beginning of the creation that deity Brahmā formed the gods, rishis, fathers, dānavas, men, beasts, trees, etc., dwelling respectively on the earth, in the sky, and in the water; 2. and with what qualities, with what nature, and of what form he made the world. Parāśara replied: 3. I declare to thee, Maitreya, how that deity created the gods and all other beings; listen with attention. While he was meditating on creation, as at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas, there appeared an insentient crea-

tion, composed of gloom (*tamas*). 4. Gloom, illusion, great illusion, darkness, and what is called utter darkness—such was the five-fold ignorance, which was manifested from that great Being, 5. as he was meditating—an insensible creation,¹⁰² under five conditions, devoid of feeling either without or within,¹⁰³ closed up, motionless. 6. And since motionless objects are called the primary objects, this is called the primary (*mukhya*) creation.¹⁰⁴ 7. Beholding this creation to be ineffective, he again contemplated another. As he was desiring it the brute (*tiryaksrotas*) creation came forth. 8. Since (in its natural functions) it acts horizontally it is called Tiryaksrotas. 9. The (creatures composing it) are known as cattle, etc., distinguished mainly by darkness (*tamas*) ignorant, following irregular courses,¹⁰⁵ while in a state of ignorance having a conceit of knowledge, (10) self-regarding, self-esteeming, affected by the twenty-eight kinds of defects, endowed with inward feeling, and mutually closed. 11. As Brahmā, regarding this creation also as ineffective, was again meditating, another creation, the third, or *ūrdhvasrotas*, which was good, rose upward. 12. They (the creatures belonging to this creation) abounding in happiness and satisfaction, being unclosed both without and within, and possessed both of external and internal feeling, are called the offspring of the *Ūrdhvasrotas* creation. 13. This third creation, known as that of the gods, was one full of enjoyment. When it was completed, Brahmā was pleased. 14. He then contemplated another creation, effective and most excellent, since he regarded as ineffective the beings sprung from the primary and other creations. 15. While he, whose will is efficacious, was so desiring, the *Arvaksrotas*, an effective creation, was manifested.¹⁰⁶ 16. They

1890 A.D.

¹⁰² The Vāyu P. here inserts an additional line, *sarvatas tamasū chaiva dīpaḥ kumbha-vad ūveritah* | “and covered on all sides with darkness, as a lamp by a jar.”

¹⁰³ *Yahir-anto 'prakūśascha* appears to be the true reading, as the Commentator renders the last word by *prakṛiṣṭa-juṇa-sūnyah*, “devoid of knowledge.” But if this be the correct reading, it is ungrammatical, as *antah* and *aparakūśa* would properly make *antar-aparakūśa*, not *anto 'prakūśa*. But the Purāṇas have many forms which are irregular (*ārsha*, “peculiar to the rishis,” “vedic,” or “antiquated” as the Commentators style them). The Taylor MS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa reads in the parallel passage *bahir-antah-prakūśascha*.

¹⁰⁴ See Dr. Hall's note, p. 70 on Professor Wilson's translation; and also the passage quoted above p. 16 from the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4, where the word *mukhya* is otherwise applied and explained.

¹⁰⁵ *Bhakṣhyūdi-vivekah-hīnūh* | “Making no distinction in food, etc., etc.” Comm.

¹⁰⁶ Compare M. Bh. xiv. 1038.

(the creatures belonging to it) are called Arvāksrotas, because (in their natural functions) they acted downwardly. And they abound in sensation (*prakāśa*) and are full of darkness (*tamas*) with a preponderance of passion (*rajas*). Hence they endure much suffering, and are constantly active, with both outward and inward feeling. These beings were men, and effective."¹⁰⁷

In the next following verses, 17–22, the names of the different creations, described in the first part of this section, and in the second chapter of the first book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, are recapitulated, and two others, the Anugraha and the Kaumāra, are noticed, but not explained.¹⁰⁸

The speaker Parāśara then adds: "23. Thus have the nine creations of Prajāpati, both Prakṛita and Vaikṛita, the radical causes of the world, been recounted. What else dost thou desire to hear regarding the creative lord of the world? Maitreya replies: 24. By thee, most excellent Muni, the creation of the gods and other beings has been summarily narrated: I desire to hear it from thee in detail. Parāśara rejoins: Called into (renewed) existence in consequence of former actions, good or bad, and unliberated from that destination when they were absorbed at the (former) dissolution of the world, (25) the four descriptions of creatures, beginning with things immovable and ending with gods, were produced, o Brāhman, from Brahmā when he was creating, and they sprang from his mind. 26. Being then desirous to create these streams (*ambhūmāsi*)¹⁰⁹—the four classes of Gods, Asuras, Fathers, and Men, he concentrated himself. 27. Prajāpati, thus concentrated, received a body, which was formed of the quality of gloom (*tamas*); and as he desired to create, Asuras were first produced from his groin. 28. He then abandoned that body formed entirely of gloom; which when abandoned by him became night. 29. Desiring to create, when he had occupied another body, Brahmā experienced pleasure; and then gods, full of the quality of goodness, sprang from his mouth. 30. That body

¹⁰⁷ The Vāyu P. adds here: *Lakṣhaṇāḥ tūrakadyajñeṣu aśtādānū cha vyavasthītāḥ | siddhātmanō manusjās te gandharva-saha-dharmīṇaḥ | ity eṣa tajasaḥ sargo hy arvāksrotūḥ prakīrtitaḥ* | "Constituted with preservative(?) characteristics, and in an eightfold manner. These were men perfect in their essence, and in nature equal to Gandharvas. This was the lustrous creation known as Arvāksrotas."

¹⁰⁸ See Dr. Hall's edition of Wilson's V. P. pp. 32 ff.; and pp. 74 ff.

¹⁰⁹ This word is borrowed from the passage of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 8, 3, quoted above, p. 23. Most of the particulars in the rest of the narrative are imitated from another passage of the same Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 9, 5 ff., also quoted above, p. 28.

also, being abandoned by him, became day, which is almost entirely good. Hence the Asuras are powerful by night¹¹⁰ and the gods by day. 31. He then assumed another body formed of pure goodness; and the Fathers were born from him, when he was regarding himself as a father.¹¹¹ 32. The Lord, after creating the Fathers, abandoned that body also; which, when so abandoned, became twilight, existing between day and night. 33. He next took another body entirely formed of passion; and men, in whom passion is violent, were produced. The primeval Prajapati speedily discarded this body also, which became faint light (*jyotsnā*), which is called early twilight. 34. Hence, at the appearance of this faint light, men are strong, while the fathers are strong at evening-twilight. 35. Morning-twilight, night, day, and evening-twilight, these are the four bodies of Brahmā, and the receptacles of the three qualities. 36. Brahmā next took another body entirely formed of passion, from which sprang hunger, and through it anger was produced. 37. The Divine Being then in darkness created beings emaciated with hunger, which, hideous of aspect, and with long beards, rushed against the lord. 38. Those who said, 'Let him not be preserved' (*rakshyatām*) were called Rākshasas, whilst those others who cried, 'Let us eat (him)' were called Yakshas from 'eating' (*yakshanāt*).¹¹²

It is not necessary for my purpose that I should quote at length the conclusion of the section. It may suffice to say that verses 39 to 51 describe the creation of serpents from Brahmā's hair; of Bhūtas; of Gandharvas; of birds (*vayāmsi*) from the creator's life (*vayas*), of sheep from his breast, of goats from his mouth, of kine from his belly and sides, and of horses,¹¹³ elephants, and other animals from his feet; of plants from his hairs; of the different metres and vedas from his eastern, southern, western, and northern mouths. Verses 52 ff. contain a recapitulation of the creative operations, with some statement of the

¹¹⁰ In the Rāmāyana, Sundara Kāṇḍa 82, 13 f. (Gorresio's edit.) we read: *Rakshasām rajanī-kūlaḥ sañyugeshu prasasyate* | 14. *Tasmād rājan nīṣa-yuddhe jayo 'smākañ na sañsayaḥ* | "Night is the approved time for the Rakshases to fight. We should therefore undoubtedly conquer in a nocturnal conflict."

¹¹¹ This idea also is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 8, 2.

¹¹² See Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 83, and Dr. Hall's note.

¹¹³ See the passage from the Taitt. Saṁh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. quoted above, p. 16, where the same origin is ascribed to horses.

principles according to which they were conducted. Of these verses I quote only the following: 55. *Teshāṁ ye yāni karmāṇi prāk-sṛṣṭhyāṁ pratipeditre | tāny eva pratipadyante sṛjyamānāḥ punaḥ punaḥ | . . .* 60. *Yathārtāv ṛitu-lingāni nānārūpāni paryaye | dṛśyante tāni tānyeva tathā bhāva-yugādishu |* 61. *Karoty evaṁvidhāṁ sṛṣṭim kalpādaṁ sa punaḥ punaḥ | sisṛikshāsakti-yukto 'sau sṛjya-śakti-prachoditah* "These creatures, as they are reproduced time after time, discharge the same functions as they had fulfilled in the previous creation . . . 60. Just as, in each season of the year, all the various characteristics of that season are perceived, on its recurrence, to be the very same as they had been before; so too are the beings produced at the beginnings of the ages"¹⁴ 61. Possessing both the will and the ability to create, and impelled by the powers inherent in the things to be created, the deity produces again and again a creation of the very same description at the beginning of every Kalpa."

The sixth section of the same book of the V. P., of which I shall cite the larger portion, professes to give a more detailed account of the creation of mankind.

V. P. i. 6, 1. *Maitreya uvācha | Arrūksrotas tu kathito bhavatā yas tu mānushaḥ | brahman vistarato brūhi Brahmā tam asṛjād yathā |* 2. *Yathā cha varṇān asṛjād yad-guṇāṁś cha mahāmune | yachecha teshāṁ smṛitāṁ kurma viprādīnaṁ tad uchyatām |* *Parāśura uvācha |* 3. *Sat-yābhidhyāyinas tasya sisṛikshor Brahmano jagat | ajāyanta dejasreshṭha sattvodriktā mukhāt prajāḥ |* 4. *Vakshaso rajasodriktāḥ tathā 'nyā Brahmano 'bhavan | rajasā tamasā chaiva samudriktāḥ talhorutaḥ |* 5. *Pad-bhyām anyāḥ prajā Brahmā sasurjja dviija-sattama | tamuḥ-pradhānās tūḥ sarvāś chāturvāṇyam idaṁ tataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyaḥ vaiśyaḥ śūdrāścha deija-sattama | pādurū-cakshuḥ-sthalato mukhotaś cha samud-gatāḥ |* 6. *Yajna-nishpattaye sarcam etad Brahmā chakāru vai | chāturvāṇyam mukābhāga yajna-sādhanam uttamam |* 7. *Yajnair āpyāyitā devā vṛṣṭy-utsargena vai prajāḥ | āpyāyayante dharmu-jna yājñāḥ kalyāṇa-hetavaḥ |* 8. *Nishpadyante narais tais tu sva-karmā-bhiratuiḥ sadā | viruddhācharanāpetuiḥ sadbhiḥ sanmārga-gāmibhiḥ |* 9. *Scargāpavargau mānushyāt prāpnuvanti narā mune | yach chābhīru-chitām sthānaṁ tad yānti manujā deija |* 10. *Prajās tūḥ Brahmanā sṛṣṭvās chāturvāṇya-ryavasthitau | samyak śraddhā-samāchāra-pra-*

¹⁴ Verses similar to this occur in Manu i. 30; and in the Mahābhārata xii. 8550 f.

vaṇā muni-sattama | 11. *Yathechhā-vāsa-niratāḥ sarvābādha-vitarjitāḥ* |
śuddhāntaḥ-karaṇāḥ śuddhāḥ sarvānuśṭhāna-nirmalāḥ | 14.¹¹⁵ *Sud-*
dhe cha tāsām manasi śuddhe 'ntaḥ-saṁsthite Haraṇ | *śuddha-jñānam*
prapaśyanti Viśhv-ākhyam yena tatpadam | 15. *Tataḥ kālātmaḥ yo*
'sau sa chūṁśaḥ kathito Hareḥ | *sa pātayaty agho ghoram alpam alpāpa-*
sārarat | 16. *Adharma-vīja-bhūtaṁ tu tamo-lobha-samudbharam* | *pra-*
jāsu tāsu Maitreya rāgādikum asūdhakam | 17. *Tataḥ sū sahajā siddhis*
tāsām nātira jāyate | *rasollāsādayaś chānyāḥ siddhayaḥ 'śṭau bhavanti*
yāḥ | 18. *Tāsu kṣhīṇāsu āśeśāsu varddhamāno cha pātuke* | *drandvādi-*
bhava-duḥkṛtāḥ tā bhavanti tataḥ prajāḥ | 19. *Tato durgāni tās cha-*
krur vārka-hyam pūratam audakam | *kṛtīmāṇ cha tathā durgam pura-*
karṇakādi yat | 20. *Grihāṇi cha yuthānyāyāṁ teshu chakruḥ purā-*
dishu | *śītātapaḍi-bādhānām prasamāya mahāmata* | 21. *Pratikāram*
imāṁ kṛitrā śītādes tāḥ prajāḥ punaḥ | *vārttopāyaṁ tatas chakrur*
hasta-siddhāṁ cha karma-jam | . . . 26. *Grāmyāranyāḥ smṛitā hy etā*
oshadhyāḥ cha chaturdaśa | *yajna-nishpallaye yajnas tathā* "sām hetur
uttamaḥ | 27. *Etāḥ cha saha yajnena prajānāṁ karāṇam param* |
parūpara-vidāḥ prājñās tato yajnaṁ vitanvate | 28. *Ahany ahany*
anushṭhānam yajnaṇām munisattama | *upakāra-karam puṁsām kriya-*
mānāḥ cha śānti-dam | 29. *Teshāṁ tu kāla-sṛishṭo 'sau pāpa-vindur*
mahāmata | *chetassu varṇidhe chakrus to na yajneshu mānasam* | 30.
Veda-vādāṁs tathā devān yajnakarmādikaṁ cha yat | *tat sarvaṁ nīn-*
damānās to yajna-ryāsedha-kārināḥ | 31. *Pracṛitti-mārga-vyuchchitti-*
kāriṇo veda-nindakāḥ | *durātmāno durāchārā babhūvuh kuṭilāśayāḥ* |
 32. *Saṁsiddhāyāṁ tu vārttāyām prajāḥ sṛishṭvā Prajāpatiḥ* | *maryā-*
dām sthāpayāmāsa yuthā-sthānam yuthā-guṇam | 34. *Varnāṇām āsra-*
mānāṁ cha dharmān dharmā-bhṛitāṁ vara | *lokāṁs sarva-varnānāṁ*
samyug dharmānupālīnām | 35. *Prajāpatyam brāhmaṇānāṁ smṛitām*
sthānāṁ kriyāvatām | *sthānam aindruṁ kṣhatṛiyānāṁ sangrāmesho*
anivarttīnām | 36. *Vaiśyānām mārutam sthānāṁ sva-dharmam anu-*
varttīnām | *gāndharvaṁ śūdra-jātīnām paricharyāsu varttīnām* | .

"Maitreya says: 1. You have described to me the Arvāksrotas, or human, creation: declare to me, o Brahman, in detail the manner in which Brahmā formed it. 2. Tell me how, and with what qualities, he created the castes, and what are traditionally reputed to be the

¹¹⁵ There are no verses numbered 12 and 13, the MSS. passing from the 11th to the 14th.

functions of the Brāhmanas and others. Parāśara replies : 3. When, true to his design, Brahmā became desirous to create the world, creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) prevailed sprang from his mouth ; (4) others in whom passion (*rajas*) predominated came from his breast ; others in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) were strong, proceeded from his thighs ; (5) others he created from his feet, whose chief characteristic was darkness. Of these was composed the system of four castes, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, who had respectively issued from his mouth, breast, thighs, and feet. 6. Brahmā formed this¹¹⁶ entire fourfold institution of classes for the performance of sacrifice, of which it is an excellent instrument. 7. Nourished by sacrifices, the gods nourish mankind by discharging rain. Sacrifices, the causes of prosperity, (8) are constantly celebrated by virtuous men, devoted to their duties, who avoid wrong observances, and walk in the right path. 9. Men, in consequence of their humanity, obtain heaven and final liberation ; and they proceed to the world which they desire. 10. These creatures formed by Brahmā in the condition of the four castes, (were) perfectly inclined to conduct springing from religious faith, (11) loving to dwell wherever they pleased, free from all sufferings, pure in heart, pure, spotless in all observances. 14. And in their pure minds,—the pure Hari dwelling within them,—(there existed) pure knowledge whereby they beheld his highest station, called (that of) Viṣṇu.¹¹⁷ 15. Afterwards that which is described as the portion of Hari consisting of Time¹¹⁸ infused into those beings direful sin, in the form of desire and the like, ineffective (of man's end), small in amount, but gradually increasing in force, (16) the seed of unrighteousness, and sprung from darkness and cupidity. 17. Thenceforward their innate perfectness was but slightly evolved : and as all the other eight perfections called *rasollāsa* and the rest (18) declined, and sin increased, these creatures (mankind) were afflicted with suffering arising

¹¹⁶ How does this agree with the statements made in the Taitt. Sanh. vii. 1, 1, 4 ff. as quoted above, p. 16, and in the Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 3, 9, p. 21, that the Sūdra is incapacitated for sacrifice, and that anything he milks out is no oblation ?

¹¹⁷ This alludes to an expression in the Rig-veda, i. 22, 20. See the 4th vol. of this work, p. 54.

¹¹⁸ In regard to *Kāla*, "Time," see Wilson's V. P. vol. i. p. 18 f., and the passages from the Atharva-veda, extracted in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 380 ff.

out of the pairs (of susceptibilities to pleasure and pain, etc., etc.) 19. They then constructed fastnesses among trees, on hills, or amid waters, as well as artificial fortresses, towns, villages, etc. 20. And in these towns, etc., they built houses on the proper plan, in order to counteract cold, heat, and other discomforts. 21. Having thus provided against cold, etc., they devised methods of livelihood depending upon labour, and executed by their hands." The kinds of grain which they cultivated are next described in the following verses 22 to 25. The text then proceeds, verse 26: "These are declared to be the fourteen kinds of grain, cultivated and wild, fitted for sacrifice; and sacrifice is an eminent cause of their existence. 27. These, too, along with sacrifice, are the most efficacious sources of progeny. Hence those who understand cause and effect celebrate sacrifices. 28. Their daily performance is beneficial to men, and delivers from sins committed. 29. But that drop of sin which had been created by time increased in men's hearts, and they disregarded sacrifice. 30. Reviling the Vedas, and the prescriptions of the Vedas, the gods, and all sacrificial rites, etc., obstructing oblations, (31) and cutting off the path of activity,"¹¹⁹ they became malignant, vicious, and perverse in their designs. 32. The means of subsistence being provided, Prajāpati, having created living beings, established a distinction according to their position and qualities (see verses 3 to 5 above), (and fixed) the duties of the castes and orders, and the worlds (to be attained after death) by all the castes which perfectly fulfilled their duties. 33. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (future) abode of those Brāhmins who are assiduous in religious rites; the realm of Indra the abode of those Kshatriyas who turn not back in battle; (34) that of the Maruts the abode of those Vaiśyas who fulfil their duties; and that of the Gandharvas the abode of the men of Śūdra race who abide in their vocation of service." In the remaining verses of the chapter (35 to 39) the realms of blessedness destined for the reception of more eminent saints are briefly noticed, as well as the infernal regions, to which the wicked are doomed.

¹¹⁹ *Pravṛtti-mūrga-vyuechhitti-kṛināḥ*. The Commentator ascribes this to the human race being no longer sufficiently propagated, for he adds the explanation: *yajñānamuḥkṛtānāṃ devair avarṣaṇāṃ annābhūvena prajā-eriddher asiddheḥ* | "because population did not increase from the want of food caused by the gods ceasing to send rain in consequence of the non-celebration of sacrifice."

At the beginning of the seventh section, without any further enquiry on the part of Maitreya, Parāśara proceeds as follows :

V. P. i. 7, 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajñire mānasth prajāḥ | tach-*
chharīra-samutpannair karyais taiḥ kārānair saha | 2. *Kṣhetrajñāḥ*
samavarttanta gūtrebhyas tasya dhīmataḥ | te sarve samavarttanta ye
mayā prāg udāhṛitāḥ ! 3. *Devādyaḥ sthāvarāntās cha traigunya-*
vishaye sthitāḥ | eram bhūtāni spṛṣṭāni charāṇi sthāvarāṇi cha | 4.
Yadā 'sya tāḥ prajāḥ sarvā va vyavarddhanta dhīmataḥ | athānyān
mānasān putrān sadṛśān ātmāno 'srījat | 5. *Bhrīgum Pulastyam Pu-*
laham Kratum Angirasaṁ tathā | Marichīm Dakṣam Atriṁ cha Vasish-
ṭham chaiva mānasān | nara brahmāna ity ete purāṇe nīśchayaṁ gatāḥ |
 6. *Sanandanūdayo ye cha purāṇā spṛṣṭās tu Vedhasā | na te lokeshv*
asṛjanta nirapekshūḥ prajāsu te | sarve te chāgata-juṇā vīla-rāgā
vinatsarāḥ | 7. *Tesv eram nirapeksheshu loka-spṛṣṭau mahātmanaḥ |*
Brahmaṇo 'bhūt mahākrodhas trailokya-dāhana-kṣamaḥ | 8. *Tasya*
krodhāt samudbhūta-jeālā-mālā-viḍipitam | Brahmaṇo 'bhūt tadā sarvāṁ
trailokyam akhilam mune | 9. *Bhrūkuṭi-kuṭilāt tasya lalāṭāt krodha-*
dīpitāt | samutpannas tadā Rudro madhyāhnūrka-sama-prabhāḥ | ardhā-
nārī-nara-vapuḥ prachandō 'tīsarīrārān | vibhujātmānam ity uktrā tam
Brahmā 'ntardadhe punaḥ | 10. *Tathokto 'sau dvidhā strītram puruṣat-*
vāṁ tathā 'karot | bibheda puruṣtvāṁ cha daśadhā chaikadhā cha saḥ |
 11. *Saumyāsaumyais tathā śāntōśāntair strītrāṁ cha sa prabhūḥ | bi-*
bheda bahudhā devaḥ svarūpair asitair sitair | 12. *Tato Brahmā "tma-*
sambhūtam pūrvaṁ svāyambhuvam prabhum | ātmānam eva kṛitarān pra-
jāpālam Manuṁ devja | 13. *Satarūpāṁ cha tān nārīm tapo-nīrdhūta-*
kalmashām | svāyambhuvo Manur devaḥ patnyarthuṁ jagrihe vibhūḥ |
 14. *Tasmāch cha puruṣāt devī Satarūpī vyajāyata | Priyavratottāna-*
pādaḥ Prasūtyākūti-sanjnitam | kanyā-drayāṁ cha dharmaja-rūpau-
dārya-guṇānritam | 15. *Dadau Prasūtiṁ Dakṣhāyāthākūtiṁ Ruchayo*
purā ityādi |

“1. Then from him, as he was desiring, there were born mental sons with effects and causes¹²⁰ derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits sprang from the limbs of that wise Being. All those creatures sprang forth which have been already described by me, (3) beginning

¹²⁰ The Commentator explains these words *karyais taiḥ kārānair saha* to mean “bodies and senses.”

with gods and ending with motionless objects, and existing in the condition of the three qualities. Thus were created beings moving and stationary. 4. When none of these creatures of the Wise Being multiplied, he next formed other, mental, sons like to himself, (5) Bhṛigu, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Angiras, Marichi, Daksha, Atri, and Vasishṭha, all born from his mind. These are the nine Brahmās who have been determined in the Purāṇas. 6. But Sanandana and the others who had been previously created by Vedhas (Brahmā) had no regard for the worlds, and were indifferent to offspring. They had all attained to knowledge, were freed from desire, and devoid of envy. 7. As they were thus indifferent about the creation of the world, great wrath, sufficient to burn up the three worlds, arose in the mighty Brahmā. 8. The three worlds became entirely illuminated by the wreath of flame which sprang from his anger. 9. Then from his forehead, wrinkled by frowns and inflamed by fury, arose Rudra, luminous as the midday sun, with a body half male and half female, fiery, and huge in bulk. After saying to him, 'Divide thyself,' Brahmā vanished. 10. Being so addressed, Rudra severed himself into two, into a male and a female form. The god next divided his male body into eleven parts, (11) beautiful and hideous, gentle and ungentle; and his female figure into numerous portions with appearances black and white. 12. Brahmā then made the lord Svāyambhuva, who had formerly sprung from himself, and was none other than himself, to be Manu the protector of creatures. 13. The god Manu Svāyambhuva took for his wife the female Satarūpā, who by austere fervour had become freed from all defilement. 14. To that Male the goddess Satarūpā bore Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, and two daughters called Prasūti and Ākūti, distinguished by the qualities of beauty and magnanimity. 15. He of old gave Prasūti in marriage to Daksha, and Ākūti to Ruchi."

From a comparison of the preceding narratives of the creation of mankind, extracted from the fifth and sixth chapters of the First Book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, it will be seen that the details given in the different accounts are not consistent with each other. It is first of all stated in the fifth chapter (verse 16) that the arvāksrotas, or human creation was characterized by the qualities of darkness and passion. In the second account (verse 33) we are told that Brahmā assumed a body composed of passion, from which men, in whom that quality is power-

ful, were produced.¹²¹ In neither of these narratives is the slightest allusion made to there having been any primeval and congenital distinction of classes. In the third statement given in the sixth chapter (verses 3 to 5) the human race is said to have been the result of a four-fold creation; and the four castes, produced from different parts of the creator's body, are declared to have been each especially characterized by different qualities (*gūṇas*), viz., those who issued from his mouth by goodness (*sattva*), those who proceeded from his breast by passion (*rajas*), those who were produced from his thighs by both passion and darkness (*tanu*), and those who sprang from his feet by darkness. In the sequel of this account, however, no mention is made of any differences of conduct arising from innate diversities of disposition having been manifested in the earliest age by the members of the different classes. On the contrary, they are described (verses 10 ff.) in language applicable to a state of perfection which was universal and uniform, as full of faith, pure-hearted and devout. In like manner the declension in purity and goodness which ensued is not represented as peculiar to any of the classes, but as common to all. So far, therefore, the different castes seem, according to this account, to have been undistinguished by any variety of mental or moral constitution. And it is not until after the deterioration of the entire race has been related, that we are told (in verses 32 f.) that the separate duties of the several castes were fixed in accordance with their position and qualities. This sketch of the moral and religious history of mankind, in the earliest period, is thus deficient in failing to explain how beings, who were originally formed with very different ethical characters, should have been all equally excellent during their period of perfection, and have also experienced an uniform process of decline.

In regard to the variation between the two narratives of the creation found in the fifth chapter of the Vishnu Purāṇa, Professor Wilson remarks as follows in a note to vol. i. p. 80: "These reiterated, and not always very congruous, accounts of the creation are explained by the Purāṇas as referring to different Kalpas or renovations of the world, and therefore involving no incompatibility. A better reason for their appearance

¹²¹ Compare the passage given above at the close of Sect. V. pp. 41 ff., from Manu xii. 39 ff. and the remarks thereon.

is the probability that they have been borrowed from different original authorities."¹²²

As regards the first of these explanations of the discrepancies in question, it must be observed that it is inapplicable to the case before us, as the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa itself says nothing of the different accounts of the creation having reference to different Kalpas: and in absence of any intimation to the contrary we must naturally assume that the various portions of the consecutive narration in the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh chapters, which are connected with each other by a series of questions and answers, must all have reference to the creation which took place at the commencement of the existing or Vāruha Kalpa, as stated in the opening verse of the fourth chapter. Professor Wilson's supposition that the various and discrepant accounts "have been borrowed from different original authorities" appears to have probability in its favour. I am unable to point out the source from which the first description of the creation, in the early part of the fifth chapter, verses 1 to 23, has been derived. But the second account, given in verses 26 to 35, has evidently drawn many of its details from the passages of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa ii. 2, 9, 5-9, and ii. 3, 8, 2 f., and Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa xi. 1, 6, 6 ff. which I have quoted above. And it is possible that the references which are found in the former of these descriptions in the Vishṇu Purāṇa to different portions of the creation

¹²² The discrepancies between current legends on different subjects are occasionally noticed in the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. Thus in the eighth chapter of the first book, v. 12, Maitreya, who had been told by Parāśara that S'rī was the daughter of Bhṛigu and Khyāti, enquires: *Kshirābhdhau S'rīḥ puṇolpanmā śrūyate'mṛita-manthane | Bhṛigoh Khyātīyām samutpannety etad āha katham bhavāt |* "It is reported that S'rī was produced in the ocean of milk when ambrosia was churned. How do you say that she was born to Bhṛigu by Khyāti?" He receives for answer: 13. *Nityaiva sū jagan-mātā Viṣṇoḥ S'rīr anapāyini* (another MS. reads *anayāy nī*) *yathā sarvagato Viṣṇus tathāiveyam dvijottama |* "S'rī, the mother of the world, and wife of Viṣṇu, is eternal and undecaying" (or, according to the other reading, "is the eternal follower of Viṣṇu"). "As he is omnipresent, so is she," and so on. The case of Dakṣha will be noticed further on in the text. On the method resorted to by the Commentators in cases of this description Professor Wilson observes in a note to p. 203 (4to. edition), "other calculations occur, the incompatibility of which is said, by the Commentators on our text and on that of the Bhāgavata, to arise from reference being made to different Kalpas; and they quote the same stanza to this effect: *Kvachit kvachit purāṇeshu virodho ydi lakshyate | kalpa-bheda dibhis tatra virodhaḥ sādhir ishyate |* 'Whenever any contradictions in different Purāṇas are observed, they are ascribed by the pious to differences of Kalpas and the like.'"

being ineffective may have been suggested by some of the other details in the Brāhmaṇas, which I shall now proceed to cite. At all events some of the latter appear to have given rise to the statement in the fourth verse of the seventh chapter of the Viṣṇu P. that the creatures formed by Brahmā did not multiply, as well as to various particulars in the narratives which will be quoted below from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas. The Brāhmaṇas describe the creative operations of Prajāpati as having been attended with intense effort, and often followed by great exhaustion; and not only so, but they represent many of these attempts to bring living creatures of various kinds into existence, to sustain them after they were produced, and to ensure their propagation, as having been either altogether abortive, or only partially successful. The following quotations will afford illustrations of these different points:

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 10, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asṛijata | sa ririchāno 'manyata | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa ātman vīryam apaśyat tad avaraddhata |*

"Prajāpati created living beings. He felt himself emptied. He performed austere abstraction. He perceived vigour in himself. It increased, etc."

Taitt. Br. i. 2, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ sṛishṭvā vṛitto¹²³ 'śayat | tām derāḥ bhūtānām rasaṁ tejaḥ sambhṛitya tena evam abhishajyan "mahān avavartti" iti |*

"Prajāpati after creating living beings lay exhausted. The gods, collecting the essence and vigour of existing things, cured him thereby, saying he has become great, etc."

Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 6, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ sṛishṭvā vyasraṁsata | sa hṛidayam bhūto 'śayat |*

"Prajāpati, after creating living beings, was paralysed. Becoming a heart, he slept."

S. P. Br. iii. 9, 1, 1. *Prajāpatir vai prajāḥ sasṛijāno ririchānaḥ ira manyata | tasmāt parāchyah prajāḥ āsuh | na asya prajāḥ śṛiye 'nnādyāya jajñire | 2. Sa aikshata "arikshy aham asmai (? yasmai) u kāmāya asṛikshi na me sa kāmāḥ samārdhi parāchyō mat-prajāḥ abhūvan na me prajāḥ śṛiye 'nnādyāya asthishata" iti | 3. Sa aikshata Prajāpatiḥ "kathān nu punar ātmānam āpyādyeya upa mā prajāḥ samāvartterāṁs tishṭheran me prajāḥ śṛiye annādyāya" iti | so 'rchhan śrāmyamś cha-*

¹²³ *Srūtaḥ*—Comm.

chūra prajā-kūmaḥ | sa etām ekādaśinīm apaśyat | sa ekādaśinyā ishṭvā Prajāpatiḥ punar ātmānam āpyāyayata upa enam prajāḥ samāvarttanta atishṭhanta asya prajāḥ śriye 'nnādyāya sa vasiyān eva ishṭvā 'bhavat |

“Prajāpati when creating living beings felt himself as it were emptied. The living creatures went away from him. They were not produced so as to prosper and to eat food. 2. He considered: ‘I have become emptied: the object for which I created them has not been fulfilled: they have gone away, and have not gained prosperity and food.’ 3. He considered: ‘how can I again replenish myself; and how shall my creatures return to me, and acquire prosperity and food?’ Desirous of progeny, he went on worshipping and performing religious rites. He beheld this Ekādaśinī (Eleven); and sacrificing with it, he again replenished himself; his creatures returned to him, and gained prosperity and food. Having sacrificed, he became more brilliant.”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 2, 2. *So 'yañ sañvatsaraḥ Prajāpatiḥ sarvāni bhūtāni sasṛijo yach cha prāni yach cha aprāṇam ubhayān deva-manuṣhyān | sa sarvāni bhūtāni śṛishṭvā ririchāna iva mene | sa mṛityor bibhiyānchakūra |* 2. *Sa ha ikṣhānchakre “kathañ nva aham imāni sarvāni bhūtāni punar ātmann āvapeya punar ātman dadhīya kathañ nva aham eva eṣhām sarveṣhām bhūtānām punar ātmā syām” iti |*

“This Year, (who is) Prajāpati, created all beings, both those which breathe and those that are without breath, both gods and men. Having created all beings he felt himself as it were emptied. He was afraid of death. 2. He reflected, ‘How can I again unite all these beings with myself, again place them in myself? How can I alone be again the soul of all these beings?’”

S. P. Br. x. 4, 4, 1. *Prajāpatiḥ vai prajāḥ sṛijamānam pāpmā mṛityur abhiparijaghāna | sa tapo 'tapyata sahasrañ sañvatsarān pāpmānān vijihāsan |*

“Misery, death, smote Prajāpati, as he was creating living beings. He performed austere abstraction for a thousand years, with the view of shaking off misery.”

S. P. Br. ii. 5, 1, 1. *Prajāpatir ha vai idam agre ekaḥ eva āsa | sa aikṣhata “kathañ nu prajāyeya” iti | so 'śrāmyat sa tapo 'tapyata | sa prajāḥ sṛijata | tāḥ asya prajāḥ śṛishṭāḥ parābabbhūruḥ | tāni imāni rayāṁsi | tasmād dvipādo vayasāni |* 2. *Sa aikṣhata Prajāpatiḥ | “yathā*

*nv eva purā eko 'bhūram evam u nv eva apy etarhy eka eva asmi" iti | sa
driti'yāḥ sasrije | tāḥ asya parā eva babbhūruḥ | tad idam kshudraṁ sari-
sripaṁ yad anyat sarpebhyaḥ | tritīyāḥ sasrije ity āhus tāḥ asya parā eva
babbhūruḥ | te ime sarpāḥ . . . | 3 So 'reḥhan śrāmyan Prajāpatir
ikṣhānchakre "kathaṁ nu me prajāḥ śriṣṭūḥ parābharanti" iti | sa ha
etad eva dadarśa "anaśanatayā vai me prajāḥ parābharanti" iti | sa
ātmanaḥ eva agre stanayoḥ payu āpyāyuyānchakre | sa prajāḥ asrijata |
tāḥ asya prajāḥ śriṣṭūḥ stanāv eva abhipadya tās tataḥ sambabbhūruḥ |
tāḥ imāḥ aparābhūtāḥ |*

"1. Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He reflected, 'How can I be propagated?' He toiled in religious rites, and practised austere fervour. He created living beings. After being created by him they perished. They were these birds. Man is the thing nearest to Prajāpati. This being, man, is two-footed. Hence birds are two-footed creatures. Prajāpati reflected, 'As I was formerly but one, so am I now also only one.' He created a second set of living beings. They also perished. This was the class of small reptiles other than serpents. They say he created a third set of beings, which also perished. They were these serpents . . . 3. Worshipping and toiling in religious rites, Prajāpati reflected, 'How is it that my creatures perish after they have been formed?' He perceived this, 'they perish from want of food.' In his own presence he caused milk to be supplied to breasts. He created living beings, which resorting to the breasts were then preserved. These are the creatures which did not perish."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 2, 1. *Vaiśradevena vai Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ
śriṣṭūḥ na prajāyanta | so 'gnir akūmayata "aham imāḥ prajānāyeyam"
iti | sa Prajāpataye śucham adadhāt | so 'śochat prajāṁ ichhamānaḥ |
tasmād yaṁ cha prajā bhunakti yaṁ cha na tāv ubhau śochataḥ prajāṁ
ichhamānau | tāv Agnim apy asrijat | tā Agnir adhyait (2) Soma
reto 'dadhāt Savitā prajānayat | Sarasvatī vācām adadhāt | Pushā
'poshayat | te vai ete triḥ saṁvatsarasya prayujyante ye devāḥ puṣṭi-
putayaḥ | saṁvatsaro vai Prajāpatiḥ | saṁvatsareṇa eva asmai prajāḥ
prajānayat | tāḥ prajāḥ jātāḥ Maruto 'ghnan "asmān api na prāyuk-
shata" iti | 3. Sa etam Prajāpatir mūrtaṁ saptaśatāpūlam apaśyat |
taṁ niravapat | tato vai prajābhyo 'kalpata | . . . sa Prajāpatir aśochat
"yūḥ pūrvūḥ prajāḥ asṛikṣi Marutas tāḥ avadhikṣuḥ katham aparāḥ*

srījeya" iti | tasya śukhma āṇḍam bhūtaṁ niravarttata | tad vyudaharat | tad aposhayat | tat prajāyata |

"Prajāpati formed living creatures by the vaiśvadeva (offering to the Viśvedevas). Being created they did not propagate. Agni desired 'let me beget these creatures.' He imparted grief to Prajāpati. He grieved, desiring offspring. Hence he whom offspring blesses, and he whom it does not bless, both of them grieve, desiring progeny. Among them he created Agni also. Agni desired (?) them. Soma infused seed. Savitṛi begot them. Sarasvatī infused into them speech. Pūshan nourished them. These (gods) who are lords of nourishment are employed thrice in the year. Prajāpati is the Year. It was through the year that he generated offspring for him. The Maruts killed those creatures when they had been born, saying 'they have not employed us also. 3. Prajāpati saw this Māruta oblation in seven platters. He offered it. In consequence of it he became capable of producing offspring . . . Prajāpati lamented, (saying) 'the Maruts have slain the former living beings whom I created. How can I create others?' His vigour sprang forth in the shape of an egg. He took it up. He cherished it. It became productive."

Taitt. Br. iii. 10, 9, 1. *Prajāpatir devān asrījata | te pāpmanā sanditāḥ ajāyanta | tām ryadyat |*

"Prajāpati created gods. They were born bound by misery. He released them."

Taitt. Br. ii. 7, 9, 1. *Prajāpatih prajāḥ asrījata | tāḥ asmāt śṛiṣṭūḥ parācchir āyan | sa etam Prajāpatir odanam apaśyat | so 'nnam bhūto 'tishṭhat | tāḥ anyatra annādyam avitrā Prajāpatim prajāḥ upāvartanta |*

"Prajāpati created living beings. They went away from him. He beheld this odana. He was turned into food. Having found food nowhere else, they returned to him."

Taitt. Br. i. 6, 4, 1. *Prajāpatih Savitā bhūtvā prajāḥ asrījata | tā enam atyamanyanta | ta asmād apākrāman | tā Varuṇo bhūtvā prajāḥ Varuṇena agrāhayaḥ | tāḥ prajāḥ Varuṇa-grihitāḥ Prajāpatim punar upādāvan nātham ichhamānāḥ |*

"Prajāpati, becoming Savitṛi, created living beings. They disregarded him, and went away from him. Becoming Varuṇa he caused Varuṇa to seize them. Being seized by Varuṇa, they again ran to Prajāpati, desiring help."

Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 1, 1. *Tato vai sa (Prajāpatiḥ) prajāḥ asrijata | tāḥ asmat eṣiṣṭā apākrāman |*

“Prajāpati then created living beings. They went away from him.”

I have perhaps quoted too many of these stories, which are all similar in character. But I was desirous to afford some idea of their number as well as of their tenor.

As regards the legend of Satarūpā, referred to in the seventh chapter of the first book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, I shall make some further remarks in a future section, quoting a more detailed account given in the Matsya Purāṇa.

Of the two sons of Manu Svāyambhuva and Satarūpā, the name of the second, Uttānapāda, seems to have been suggested by the appearance of the word Uttānapad in Rig-veda x. 72, 3, 4, as the designation (nowhere else traceable, I believe) of one of the intermediate agents in the creation.¹²⁴ A Priyavrata is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa vii. 34, and also in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa x. 3, 5, 14, (where he has the patronymic of Rauhiṇyana) but in both these texts he appears rather in the light of a religious teacher, who had lived not very long before the age of the author, than as a personage belonging to a very remote antiquity. Dakṣa also, who appears in this seventh chapter as one of the mindborn sons of Brahmā, is named in R. V. ii. 27, 1, as one of the Ādityas, and in the other hymn of the R. V. just alluded to, x. 72, vv. 4 and 5, he is noticed as being both the son and the father of the goddess Aditi. In the S. P. ii. 4, 4, he is identified with Prajāpati.¹²⁵ In regard to his origin various legends are discoverable in the Purāṇas. Besides the passage before us, there are others in the V. P. in which he is mentioned. In iv. 1, 5, it is said that he sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā, and that Aditi was his daughter (*Brahmanascha dakṣiṇāṅguṣṭha-janmā Dakṣaḥ | Prajāpater Dakṣasyāpy Aditiḥ*). In another place, V. P. i. 15, 52, it is said that Dakṣa, although formerly the son of Brahmā, was born to the ten Prachetasas by Mārīśhū (*Daśabhyas tu Prachetobhyo Mārīśhāyām Prajāpatiḥ | jāno Dakṣo mahābhāgo yaḥ pūrvam Brahmano 'bhavat |*). This double pa-

¹²⁴ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 f.

¹²⁵ See the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 10 ff. 24, 101; Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 72 ff.; Roth in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, vi. 75.

rentage of Daksha appears to Maitreya, one of the interlocutors in the Purāṇa, to require explanation, and he accordingly enquires of his informant, vv. 60 ff.: *Anguṣṭhūd dakṣiṇad Dakṣaḥ pūrvaṁ jātaḥ śrutam mayā | katham Prāchetaso bhūyaḥ sa sambhūto mahāmune | eṣha me saṁśayo brahman sumahān hṛidi varttate | yad dauhitraś cha somasya punaḥ śgaśuratām gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | utpattiś cha nirodhaś cha nityau bhūteṣu vai mune | ṛishayo 'tra na muhyanti ye chānye dirya-chakshuṣaḥ | 61. Yuge yuge bhavanty ete Dakṣādya muni-sattama | punaś chaiva nirudhyante vidvāṁs tatra na muhyati | 62. Kānīṣṭhyaṁ jyaishṭhyam apy eṣhām pūrvaṁ nābhūd dvijottama | tapa eva garīyo 'bhūt prabhāvaś chaiva kāraṇam |*

“60. I have heard that Daksha was formerly born from the right thumb of Brahmā. How was he again produced as the son of the Prachetases? This great doubt arises in my mind; and also (the question) how he, who was the daughter's son of Soma,¹²⁶ afterwards became his father-in-law. Parāśara answered: Both birth and destruction are perpetual among all creatures. Rishis, and others who have celestial insight, are not bewildered by this. In every age Daksha and the rest are born and are again destroyed: a wise man is not bewildered by this. Formerly, too, there was neither juniority nor seniority: austere fervour was the chief thing, and power was the cause (of distinction).”

The reader who desires further information regarding the part played by Daksha, whether as a progenitor of allegorical beings, or as a creator, may compare the accounts given in the sequel of the seventh and in the eleventh chapters of Book I. of the V. P. (pp. 108 ff. and 152 ff.) with that to be found in the fifteenth chapter (vol. ii. pp. 10 ff.).

I will merely add, in reference to Akūti, the second daughter of Manu Svāyambhuva and Sutarūpā, that the word is found in the Rig-veda with the signification of “will” or “design;” but appears to be personified in a passage of the Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 12, 9, 5 (the context of which has been cited above, p. 41), where it is said: *Irā patnī viśvasṛjām ākūtir apinaḍ haviḥ* | “Irā (Idā) was the wife of the creators. Akūti kneaded the oblation.”

¹²⁶ See Wilson's V. P., vol. ii. p. 2, at the top.

SECT. VIII.—*Account of the different creations, including that of the castes, according to the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas.*

I now proceed to extract from the Vāyu and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas the accounts which they supply of the creation, and which are to the same effect as those which have been quoted from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, although with many varieties of detail.

I shall first adduce a passage from the fifth chapter of the Vāyu (which to some extent runs parallel with the second chapter of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa¹²⁷), on account of its containing a different account from that generally given of the triad of gods who correspond to the triad of qualities (*guṇas*).

Vāyu Purāṇa, chapter v. verse 11. *Ahar-mukhe pravṛtite cha paraḥ prakṛiti-sambhavaḥ | kṣobhayāmāsa yogena pareṇa paramēśvaraḥ | 12. Pradhānam puruṣam chaira praviśyāṇḍam Maheśvaraḥ | 13. Pradhānāt kṣobhayāmānāt tu rajo vai samacarttata | rajaḥ pravarttakām tatra vījesho api yathā jalam | 14. Guṇa-raishamyam āsāḍya prasūyante hy adhiṣṭhitāḥ | guṇebhyaḥ kṣobhayāmānebhyaḥ trayo devā vijāpnire | 15. Āśritāḥ¹²⁸ paramā guhyāḥ sarvātmānaḥ śarīrināḥ | rajo Brahmā tamo hy Agniḥ sattram Viṣṇur ajāyata | 16. Rajaḥ-prakāśako Brahmā sraś-ṭritena vyavasthitāḥ | tamah-prakāśako 'gnis tu kālātrena vyavasthitāḥ | 17. Sattra-prakāśako Viṣṇur audāsīnye vyavasthitāḥ | ete eva trayo lokā ete eva trayo guṇāḥ | 18. Ete eva trayo vedū ete eva trayo 'gnayaḥ | parasparāśritāḥ hy ete parasparam anuvratāḥ | 19. Paraspāreṇa varttante dhārayanti parasparam | anyonya-mithunā hy ete hy anyonyam upajīrināḥ | 20. Kṣaṇam viyogo na hy eśān na tyajanti parasparam | Īśvaro hi paro devo Viṣṇus tu mahataḥ paraḥ | 21. Brahmā tu rajosa-driktāḥ sargāyeha pravarttate | paraścha puruṣo jneyaḥ prakṛitiścha parā smṛitā |*

“11, 12. At the beginning of the day, the supreme Lord Maheśvara, sprung from Prakṛiti, entering the egg, agitated with extreme intentness both Pradhāna (= Prakṛiti) and Puruṣa. 13. From

¹²⁷ See pp. 27 and 41 f. of Wilson's V. P. vol. i.

¹²⁸ The Gaikowar MS. of the India office, No. 2102, reads *āsthitāḥ*, instead of *āśritāḥ*, the reading of the Taylor MS.

Pradhāna, when agitated, the quality of passion (*rajas*) arose, which was there a stimulating cause, as water is in seeds. 14. When an inequality in the Guṇas arises, then (the deities) who preside over them are generated. From the Guṇas thus agitated there sprang three gods (15), indwelling, supreme, mysterious, animating all things, embodied. The rajas quality was born as Brahmā, the tamas as Agni,¹²⁹ the sattva as Viṣṇu. 16. Brahmā, the manifestor of rajas, acts in the character of creator; Agni, the manifestor of tamas, acts in the capacity of time; 17. Viṣṇu, the manifestor of sattva, abides in a condition of indifference. These deities are the three worlds, the three qualities, (18) the three Vedas, the three fires; they are mutually dependent, mutually devoted. 19. They exist through each other, and uphold each other; they are twin-parts of one another, they subsist through one another. 20. They are not for a moment separated; they never abandon one another. Īśvara (Mahādeva) is the supreme god; and Viṣṇu is superior to Mahat (the principle of intelligence); while Brahmā, filled with rajas, engages in creation. Puruṣa is to be regarded as supreme, as Prakṛiti is also declared to be."

The sixth section of the Vāyu P., from which the next quotation will be made, corresponds to the fourth of the Viṣṇu P. quoted above.

1. *Āpo hy agre samabhavan nashte 'gnau prithivī-tale | sāntarālaika-line 'smin nashte sthāvara-jangame |* 2. *Ekārṇave tadā tasmin na prajñāyata kinchana | tadā sa bhagavān Brahmā sahasrūkṣaḥ sahasra-pāt |* 3. *Sahasra-śīrṣhā Puruṣo rukma-varṇo hy atindriyaḥ | Brahmā Nārāyaṇākhyāḥ sa sushvāpa salile tadā |* 4. *Sattvodrekāt prabuddhas tu śūnyam lokam udikṣhya saḥ | imam chodāharanty atra ślokan Nārāyaṇam prati |* 5. *Āpo nārā vai tanavaḥ¹³⁰ ity apām nūma śūśrūma | apsu śete cha yat tasmāt tena Nārāyaṇaḥ smṛitah |* 6. *Tulyaṁ yuga-sahasrasya naiśam kalam upāsya saḥ | śarvāry-ante prakurute brahmatvam sarga-kāraṇāt |* 7. *Brahmā tu salile tasmin vāyur bhūtvā tadā 'charat | niśāyām iva khadyotiḥ prāvṛt-kāle tatas tataḥ |* 8. *Tatas tu salile tasmin vijnāyāntargatām mahīm | anumānād asammūḍho bhūmer uddharanam prati !*

¹²⁹ The Mār. P. chap. 46, verse 18, has the same line, but substitutes Rudra for Agni, thus: *Rajo Brahmā tamo Rudro Viṣṇuḥ sattvaṁ jagat-patīḥ |* The two are often identified. See Vol. IV. of this work, 282 ff.

¹³⁰ See Wilson's Viṣṇu Purāṇa, p. 57, with the translator's and editor's notes. Verses 1 to 6 are repeated towards the close of the 7th section of the Vāyu P. with variations.

9. *Akarot sa tanuṃ hy anyām kalpādishu yathā purā | tato mahātmā manasā dīryaṃ rūpam achintayat |* 10. *Salilenāplutām bhūmim dṛiṣtvā sa tu samantataḥ | “kim nu rūpam mahat kṛitvā uddhareyam aham mahīm” |* 11. *Jala-kṛiḍā-suruchiram vārāhaṃ rūpam asmarat | adhrishyaṃ sarva-bhūtānām vāṇmayam dharma-sanjñitam |*

“1. When fire had perished from the earth, and this entire world motionless and moving, together with all intermediate things, had been dissolved into one mass, and had been destroyed—waters first were produced. As the world formed at that time but one ocean, nothing could be distinguished. Then the divine Brahmā, Purusha, with a thousand eyes, a thousand feet, (3) a thousand heads, of golden hue, beyond the reach of the senses—Brahmā, called Nārāyaṇa, slept on the water. 4. But awaking in consequence of the predominance (in him) of the sattva quality, and beholding the world a void—: Here they quote a verse regarding Nārāyaṇa: 5. ‘The waters are the bodies of Nara: such is the name we have heard given to them; and because he sleeps upon them, he is called Nārāyaṇa.’ 6. Having so continued for a nocturnal period equal to a thousand Yugas, at the end of the night he takes the character of Brahmā in order to create. 7. Brahmā then becoming Vāyu (wind) moved upon that water,¹³¹ hither and thither, like a firefly at night in the rainy season. 8. Discovering then by inference that the earth lay within the waters, but unbewildered, (9) he took, for the purpose of raising it up, another body, as he had done at the beginnings of the (previous) Kalpas. Then that Great Being devised a celestial form. 10. Perceiving the earth to be entirely covered with water, (and asking himself) ‘what great shape shall I assume in order that I may raise it up?’—he thought upon the form of a boar, brilliant from aquatic play, invincible by all creatures, formed of speech, and bearing the name of righteousness.”

The body of the boar is then described in detail, and afterwards the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, and the restoration of its former shape, divisions, etc.¹³²—the substance of the account being

¹³¹ This statement, which is not in the corresponding passage of the Vishṇu P., is evidently borrowed, along with other particulars, from the text of the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vii. 1, 5, 1, quoted above p. 52.

¹³² Following the passage of the Taittirīya Sanhitā, quoted above, the writer in one verse ascribes to Brahmā as Viśvakarman the arrangement of the earth, *talas teshu viśirṇeshu lokodadhi-girishu atha | Viśvakarmū vibhajato kalpādishu pumaḥ pumaḥ |*

much the same, but the particulars different from those of the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

Then follows a description of the creation coinciding in all essential points¹³³ with that quoted above, p. 55, from the beginning of the fifth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The further account of the creation, however, corresponding to that which I have quoted from the next part of the same chapter of that Purāṇa, is not found in the same position in the Vāyu Purāṇa,¹³⁴ but is placed at the beginning of the ninth chapter, two others, entitled *Pratisandhi-kīrtana* and *Chaturāśrama-vibhāga*, being interposed as the seventh and eighth. With the view, however, of facilitating comparison between the various cosmogonies described in the two works, I shall preserve the order of the accounts as found in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and place the details given in the ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa before those supplied in the eighth.

The ninth chapter of the Vāyu Purāṇa, which is fuller in its details than the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, begins thus, without any specific reference to the contents of the preceding chapter :

Sūta uvācha | 1. *Tato 'bhidhyāyatas tasya jajñire mānasīḥ prajāḥ | tach-chharīra-samutpannaiḥ kūr्याis taiḥ kūrānaiḥ saha* | 2. *Kshe-trajāṇāḥ samavartanta gūtrebhyas tasya dhīmataḥ | tato devāsura-pīṭrīn mānavāṃ cha chatuṣṭayam* | 3. *Sisrikshur ambhāmśy etāni svātmanā samayūyujat | yuktātmanas tatas tasya tamomātrā svayambhuvāḥ* | 4. *Tam abhidhyāyataḥ sargam prayatno 'bhūt Prajūpateḥ | tato 'sya jaghanāt pūrvam asurā jajñire sūtāḥ* | 5. *Asuḥ prāṇaḥ smṛito vipraīś taj-janmānas tato 'surāḥ | yayā śriṣṭāsuras tanvā tām tanuṃ sa vyapohata*¹³⁵ | 6. *Sū 'pavidhā tanus tena sadyo rātrir ajāyata | sū tamo-bahulā yasmāt tato rātris triyāmikā* | 7. *Ācṛitās tamasā rātrau prajāś tasmāt svapanty uta | dṛiṣṭvā 'surāṃś tu devesas tanum anyām apadyata* | 8. *Avyaktūṃ sattva-bahulāṃ tatas tām so 'bhyayūyujat | tatas tām yunjatas tasya priyam āsit prabhoḥ kila* | 9. *Tato mukhe samutpannā divyatas tasya devatāḥ | yato 'sya divyato jātus tena devāḥ*

¹³³ This is also the case with the details given in the Märk. P. xlvii. 15-27 and ff.

¹³⁴ The Märk. P. however observes the same order as the Vishṇu P.

¹³⁵ The reading in the passage of the Taitt. Br. ii. 2, 9, 6, from which this narrative is borrowed (see above, p. 28), is *apāhata*,—which, however, does not prove that that verb with *vi* prefixed should necessarily be the true reading here; as the Taylor and Gaikowar MSS. have *vyapohata* throughout, and in one place *vyapohat*.

prakīrtitāḥ | 10. *Dhātur divīti yaḥ proktaḥ kṛidyām sa vibhāryate | tasmāt* (? *yasmāt*) *tanvām tu divyāyām jajñire tena devatāḥ* | 11. *Devūn śṛiṣṭṛā 'tha devāsas tanum anyām apadyata | sattva-mātrātmikān devas tato 'nyām so 'bhyapadyata*¹³⁶ | 12. *Pitṛivad manyamānas tām putrān prādhyāyata prabhuḥ | pitaro hy upapakṣābhyām*¹³⁷ *rātry-ahnor antara 'sṛijāt* | 13. *Tasmāt te pitaro devāḥ putratvaṁ tena teshu tat | yayā śṛiṣṭās tu pituras tām tanuṁ sa vyapohata* | 14. *Sā 'paviddhā tanus tena sadyaḥ sandhyā prajāyata | tasmād ahas tu devānām rātrir yā sā "surī smṛitā* | 15. *Tayor mudhyo tu vai paitrī yā tanuḥ sā garī-yasī | tasmād devāsuraḥ sarve ṛishayo manavas tathā* | 16. *Te yuktās tām upāsante rātry-ahnor*¹³⁸ *madhyamām tanum | tato 'nyām sa punar Brahmā tanuṁ vai pratyapadyata* | 17. *Rajo-mātrātmikām yām tu manasā so 'sṛijāt prabhuḥ | rajaḥ-prāyān tataḥ so 'tha mānasān asṛijāt sūtān* | 18. *Manasas tu tatas tasya mānasā jajñire prajāḥ | drīṣṭṛā punaḥ prajāś chāpi svām tanuṁ tām apohata* | 19. *Sā 'paviddhā tanus tena jyotsnā sadyas tv ajāyata | tasmād bhavanti saṁhrīṣṭā jyotsnāyām udbhavḥ prajāḥ* | 20. *Ity etās tanavas tena vyapaviddhā mahatmanā | sadyo rātry-ahanī chāiva sandhyā jyotsnā cha jajñire* | 21. *Jyotsnā sandhyā tathā 'haścha sattva-mātrātmikān svayam | tamo-mātrātmikā rātrīḥ sā vai tasmāt triyāmikā* | 22. *Tasmād devā divya-tanvā*¹³⁹ *drīṣṭ-tāḥ śṛiṣṭā mukhāt tu vai | yasmāt teshām divā janma balinas tena te divā* | 23. *Tanvā yad asurān rātrau jaghanād asṛijāt punaḥ | prāṇebhyo rātri-janmāno hy asahyā nīśi tena te* | 24. *Ēlāny evam bhaviṣyānām derānām asuraḥ saha | pīṭṛinām mānavānām cha ctitūnūgateshu vai* | 25. *Manrantareshu sarveshu nīmīṭṭāni bharanti hi | jyotsnā rātry-ahanī sandhyā chatvāry ambhāṁsi tāni vai* | 26. *Bhānti yasmāt tato 'mbhāṁsi bhā-śabdo 'yam manīṣibhiḥ | ryāpti-dīptiyām nigadīto pumāṁś chāha Prajāpatiḥ* | 27. *So 'mbhāṁsy etāni drīṣṭvā tu deva-dānava-mānavān | pitṛīnś chaivāsṛijāt so 'nyān ātmāno vīvidhān punaḥ* | 28. *Tām utsṛijya tanuṁ kṛitsnām tato 'nyām asṛijāt prabhuḥ | mūrtilīm rajas-tama-prāyām punar evābhyayūyujāt* | 29. *Andhakāre kṣudhāviṣṭas tato 'nyām sṛijate punaḥ | tena śṛiṣṭāḥ kṣudhātmanas te 'mbhāṁsy ādātum udyatāḥ* | 30. *"Ambhāṁsy etāni rakṣhāma" uktavantaścha teshu ye | rākṣasās te smṛitāḥ loka krodhātmanāo mīśācharāḥ* |

¹³⁶ This line is omitted in the Gaikowar MS.

¹³⁷ The Gaikowar MS. seems to read *upapōrtvābhyām*.

¹³⁸ The Gaikowar MS. reads *Brahmaṇo madhyamām tanum*.

¹³⁹ The Gaikowar MS. reads *divī tanvā*.

“Sūta says: 1. Then, as he was desiring, there sprang from him mind-born sons, with those effects and causes derived from his body. 2. Embodied spirits were produced from the bodies of that wise Being. 3. Then willing to create these four streams (*ambhāmsi*) gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, he fixed his spirit in abstraction. As Svayambhū was thus fixed in abstraction, a body consisting of nothing but darkness (invested him). 4. While desiring this creation, Prajāpati put forth an effort. Then Asuras were first produced as sons from his groin. 5. *Asu* is declared by Brahmins to mean breath. From it these beings were produced; hence they are *Asuras*.¹⁴⁰ He cast aside the body with which the Asuras were created. 6. Being cast away by him, that body immediately became night. Inasmuch as darkness predominated in it, night consists of three watches. 7. Hence, being enveloped in darkness, all creatures sleep at night. Beholding the Asuras, however, the Lord of gods took another body, (8) imperceptible, and having a predominance of goodness, which he then fixed in abstraction. While he continued thus to fix it, he experienced pleasure. 9. Then as he was sporting, gods were produced in his mouth. As they were born from him, while he was sporting (*dīvyataḥ*), they are known as Devas (gods). 10. The root *div* is understood in the sense of sporting. As they were born in a sportive (*dīvyā*)¹⁴¹ body, they are called Devatās. 11. Having created the deities, the Lord of gods then took another body, consisting entirely of goodness (*sattra*). 12. Regarding himself as a father, he thought upon these sons: he created Fathers (*Pitris*) from his armpits in the interval between night and day. 13. Hence these Fathers are gods: therefore that sonship belongs to them. He cast aside the body with which the Fathers were created. 14. Being cast away by him, it straightway became twilight. Hence day belongs to the gods, and night is said to belong to the Asuras. 15. The body intermediate between them, which is that of the Fathers, is the most important. Hence gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men (16) worship intently this intermediate body of Brahmā. He then took again another body. But from that body, composed altogether of passion (*rajas*),

¹⁴⁰ This statement, which is not found in the parallel passage of the Vishnu Purāṇa, is borrowed from Taitt. Br. ii. 3, 3, 2, quoted above.

¹⁴¹ *Dīvyā* properly means “celestial.” But from the play of words in the passage, the writer may intend it to have here the sense of “sportive.”

which he created by his mind, he formed mind-born¹⁴² sons who had almost entirely a passionate character. 18. Then from his mind sprang mind-born sons. Beholding again his creatures, he cast away that body of his. 19. Being thrown off by him it straightway became morning twilight. Hence living beings are gladdened by the rise of early twilight. 20. Such were the bodies which, when cast aside by the Great Being, became immediately night and day, twilight and early twilight. 21. Early twilight, twilight, and day have all the character of pure goodness. Night has entirely the character of darkness (*tamas*); and hence it consists of three watches. 22. Hence the gods are beheld with a celestial body, and they were created from the mouth. As they were created during the day, they are strong during that period. 23. Inasmuch as he created the Asuras from his groin at night, they, having been born from his breath, during the night, are unconquerable during that season. 24, 25. Thus these four streams, early twilight, night, day, and twilight, are the causes of gods, Asuras, Fathers, and men, in all the Manvantaras that are past, as well as in those that are to come. 26. As these (streams) shine, they are called *ambhāṁsi*. This root *bhā* is used by the intelligent in the senses of pervading and shining, and the Male, Prajāpati, declares (the fact). 27. Having beheld these streams (*ambhāṁsi*), gods, Dānavas, men, and fathers, he again created various others from himself. 28. Abandoning that entire body, the lord created another, a form consisting almost entirely of passion and darkness, and again fixed it in abstraction. 29. Being possessed with hunger in the darkness, he then created another. The hungry beings formed by him were bent on seizing the streams (*ambhāṁsi*). 30. Those of them, who said 'let us preserve (*rakshāma*) these streams,' are known in the world as Rākshasas, wrathful, and prowling about at night."

This description is followed by an account of the further creation corresponding with that given in the same sequence in the Vishṇu Purāṇa; and the rest of the chapter is occupied with other details which it is not necessary that I should notice. I therefore proceed to make some quotations from the eighth chapter, entitled *Chaturāśramavibhāga*, or "the distribution into four orders," which corresponds, in

¹⁴² *Mānasān*. We might expect here however, *mānavān* or *mānuṣhān*, "human," in conformity with the parallel passages both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 56), and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, xlviii. 11.

its general contents, with the sixth chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, book i., but is of far greater length, and, in fact, extremely prolix, as well as confused, full of repetitions, and not always very intelligible.

The chapter immediately preceding (*i.e.* the seventh), entitled *Pratīsandhi-kīrttanam*, ends with the words: "I shall now declare to you the present Kalpa; understand." Sūta accordingly proceeds at the opening of the eighth chapter to repeat some verses, which have been already quoted from the beginning of the sixth chapter, descriptive of Brahmā's sleep during the night after the universe had been dissolved, and to recapitulate briefly the elevation of the earth from beneath the waters, its reconstruction, and the institution of Yugas. At verse 22 the narrative proceeds:

Kalpasyādau kṛitayuge prathame so 'srijat prajāḥ | 23. Prāg uktā yā mayā tubhyam pūrva-kāle prajāḥ tu tāḥ | tasmin samvarttamāne tu kalpe dagdhās tadā 'gninā | 24. Aprāptā yās tapo-lokaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāśritāḥ | pravarttati punaḥ sarge vījārthaṁ tā bhavanti hi | 25. Vījārthena sthitās tatra punaḥ sargasya kāraṇāt | talas tāḥ sṛjyamānās tu santānārtham bhavanti hi | 26. Dharmārtha-kāma-mokṣhāṇāṁ iha tāḥ sūdhikāḥ smṛitāḥ | devās cha pitarāśchaiva ṛishayo manavaḥ tathā | 27. Tatas te tapasū yuktāḥ sthānāny āpūrayanti hi | Brahmanō mānasās te vai siddhātmāno bhavanti hi | 28. Ye saṅgādvēsha-yuktena karmaṇā te divaṁ gatāḥ | āvarttamānā iha te sambharanti yuge yuge | 29. Svakarma-phala-śeṣheṇa khyātyā chaiva tathātmikā (? tathātmakāḥ) | sambhavanti janūḥ lokāt karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt | 30. Āśayaḥ kāraṇāṁ tatra boddhavyāṁ karmaṇā tu saḥ | taiḥ karmabhis tu jāyante janūḥ lokāt śubhāśubhaiḥ | 31. Gṛihṇanti te śarīrāṇi nānā-rūpāṇi yonishu | devād-yyiḥ sthāvarāntās cha utpadyante parasparam (? paramparam) | 32. Teshāṁ ye yāni karmāṇi prāk-ṛishṭau pratipedire | tāny eva pratipadyante sṛjyamānāḥ punaḥ punaḥ | 33. Itisrāhiṁsre mṛidu-krāre dharma-mādharṇe ṛitānṛite | tadbhāvitāḥ prapadyante tasmāt tat tasya rochate | 34. Kalpeshu āsan vyatīteshu rūpa-nāmāni yāni cha | tāny evānūgate kāle prāyasaḥ pratipedire | 35. Tasmāt tu nāma-rūpāṇi tāny eva prctipedi-re | punaḥ punas te kalpeshu jāyante nāma-rūpataḥ | 36. Tataḥ sarge hy avashṭabdhe sisṛikṣhor Brahmanas tu vai | 37.¹⁴³ Prajās tā dhyāyatas

¹⁴³ The narrative in the 49th chapter of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa (verses 3-13) begins at this verse, the 37th of the Vāyu Purāṇa, and coincides, though with verbal differences, with what follows down to verse 47. After that there is more variation.

*tasya satyābhidhyāyinas tadā | mīthunānām sahasram tu so 'srijad vai mukhāt tadā | 38. Janās te hy upapadyante sattvrodriktāḥ suchetasāḥ*¹⁴⁴ | *sahasram anyad vakshasto mīthunānām sasarja ha | 39. Te sarve rajaso-driktāḥ śuśhmiṇaś cāpy aśuśhmiṇaḥ*¹⁴⁵ | *śriṣṭvā sahasram anyat tu dvandvānām ārutaḥ pumaḥ | 40. Rajas-tamobhyām udriktā ihāśīlās tu te smṛitāḥ | padbhyām sahasram anyat tu mīthunānām sasarja ha | 41. Udriktās tamasā sarve niḥśrikā hy alpa-tejasāḥ | tato vai harṣhamānās te dvandvotpannās tu prāṇināḥ | 42. Anyonya-hṛichhayāviṣṭā maitṥunāyopachakramuḥ | tataḥprabhṛiti kalpe 'smin maitṥunotpattir uchyate | 43. Māsi māsy ārttvaṁ yat tu na tadā 'sīt tu yoshitām*¹⁴⁶ | *tasmāt tadā na sushruṭ sevitaṛ api maitṥunaiḥ | 44. Ayusho 'nte prasūyante mīthunāy eva tāḥ sakṛit | kuṇṭhakaḥ kuṇṭhikaś chaiva utpadyante munūshatām*¹⁴⁷ | *45. Tataḥ prabhṛiti kalpe 'smin mīthunānām hi sambhavaḥ | dhyāne tu manasā tāsām prajānām jāyate sakṛit | 46. Śabdādī-vishayaḥ suddhaḥ pratyekam pañcha-lakṣaṇaḥ | ity evam mānasī*¹⁴⁸ | *pūrvam prāk-śriṣṭīr yā Prajāpateḥ | 47. Tasyānvavāye sambhūtā yair idam pūritāṁ jagat | sarīṭ-saraḥ-samudrāṁś cha sevante parvatān api | 48. Tadā nātyanta-śītoṣṇā yuge tasmin charanti vai | prīḥvī-rasodbhavaṁ nāma āhṛaṁ hy āharanti vai*¹⁴⁹ | *49. Tāḥ prajāḥ kāma-chāriṇyo mānasīm siddhim āsthitāḥ | dharmādharmau na tāv āstām nirviśeśāḥ prajāḥ tu tāḥ | 50. Tulyam āyuh sukhaṁ rūpaṁ tāsām tasmin kṛite yuge | dharmādharmau na tāv āstām kalpādaḥ tu kṛite yuge | 51. Scena evenādhi-kāreṇa jāyire te kṛite yuge | chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varṣhānām divya-sankhyayā | 52. Ādyāṁ kṛita-yugam prāhuḥ sandhyānām tu chatuḥśatam | tataḥ sahasrasas tāsa prajāsu pratthitāsv api | 53.*¹⁵⁰ | *Na tāsām pratighāto 'sti na dvandvān nāpi cha klamaḥ | parvatodadhi-sevinyo hy aniketāśrayās tu tāḥ | 54. Viśokāḥ sattva-bahulāḥ hy ekānta-sukhitāḥ prajāḥ | tāḥ vai nishkāma-chāriṇyo nityam mudita-mānasāḥ | 55. Paśa-*

¹⁴⁴ For *suchetasāḥ* the Märk. P. reads *sutejasāḥ*.

¹⁴⁵ For *aśuśhmiṇaḥ* the Märk. P. reads *amarśhmiṇaḥ*, "irascible."

¹⁴⁶ I have corrected this line from the Märkandeya Purāṇa, 49, 9 b. The reading of the MSS. of the Vāyu Purāṇa cannot be correct. It appears to be: *māse māse 'rttvaṁ yat tad tadāśīd hi yoshitām* | The negative particle seems to be indispensable here.

¹⁴⁷ This half verse is not found in the Märk. P.

¹⁴⁸ The Märk. P. has *mānushī*, "human," instead of *mānasī*, "mental."

¹⁴⁹ This verse is not in the Märk. P.; and after this point the verses which are common to both Purāṇas do not occur in the same places.

¹⁵⁰ Verses 53-56 coincide generally with verses 14-18 of the Märk. P.

vaḥ pakshiṇaś chaiva na tadāsan sarisripāḥ | nodbhijjū nārakaś¹⁵¹ chaiva
te hy adharma-prasūtayaḥ | 56. Na mūla-phala-pushpaṁ cha nārttavan
ṛitavo na cha | sarva-kāma-sukhaḥ kālo nātyarthaṁ hy ushna-śitatā¹⁵² |
57. Manobhilashitāḥ kāmās tāsām sarvatra sarvadā | uttiṣṭhanti pṛithiv-
yām vai tābhīr dhyātā rasolvanāḥ | 58. Balavarṇa-karī tāsām siddhiḥ
sā roga-nāsinī | asaṁskāryyaiḥ śarīraiś cha prajāś tūḥ sthirayauvanāḥ |
59. Tāsām viśuddhāt sankalpāj jāyante mithunāḥ prajāḥ | samam janma
cha rūpaṁ cha mriyante chaiva tūḥ samam | 60. Tadā satyam alobhaś
cha kṣamaś tushṭiḥ sukhaṁ damaḥ | nirviśeshās tu tūḥ sarvā rūpāyuh-
śīla-cheshṭitaiḥ | 61. Abuddhipūrvakam vṛittam prajānām jāyate svayam |
aprarvṛittih kṛita-yuge karmānoḥ śubhapūpayoḥ | 62. Varnāśrama-rya-
vasthāś cha na tadā "sam na sankarāḥ | anichhādresha-yuktās te vartta-
yanti parasparam | 63. Tulya-rūpāyushaḥ sarvāḥ adhamottama-varj-
itāḥ¹⁵³ | suka-prāyā hy aśokāś cha udṇadyante kṛite yuge | 64. Nitya-
prahrishṭa-manaso mahāsattvā mahābalāḥ | lābhālābhau na tāsū āstām
mitrāmitre priyāpriye | 65. Manasā vishayaś tāsām nirīhānām pravart-
tate | na lipsanti hi tā'nyoyaṁ nānugrihṇanti chaiva hi | 66. Dhyānam
paraṁ kṛita-yuge tretāyām jñānam uchyaṭe | pravṛittāṁ dvāpare yajnaṁ
dānam kali-yuge varam | 67. Sattvaṁ kṛitaṁ rajas tretā dvāparaṁ tu
rajas-tamaḥ | kalau tamaś tu vijñeyam yuga-vṛitta-vaśena tu | 68. Kūlaḥ
kṛite yuge tv esha tasya sankhyām nibodhata | chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi var-
shānām tat kṛitaṁ yugam | 69. Sandhyāṁśau tasya divyāni śatāny
aśṭau cha sankhyayā | tadā tāsām babhūvāyur na cha kleśa-vipat-
tayaḥ¹⁵⁴ | 70. Tatśḥ kṛitayuge tasmin sandhyāṁśe hi gate tu vai | pādā-
vaśiṣṭho bhavati yuga-dharmas tu sarvaśḥ | 71. Sandhyūyām apy atitā-
yām anta-kāle yugasya vai | pādāśas chāvaśiṣṭe tu sandhyū-dharmo
yugasya tu | 72. Evaṁ kṛite tu niḥśeshe siddhis tv antardadhe tadā |
tasyām cha siddhau bhrashṭāyām mūnasyām abhavat tataḥ | 73. Siddhir

¹⁵¹ The Mürk. P. has *nakrāḥ*, "crocodiles," in its enumeration.

¹⁵² The Mürk. P. here inserts some other lines, 186-21a, instead of 57 and 58a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁵³ The Mürk. P. inserts here the following verses: 24. *Chatvāri tu sahasrāṇi varshānām mūnushāṇi tu | āyuh-pramāṇām jīvanti na cha kleśād vipattayaḥ | 25. Kvaचित् क्वाचित् पुनश्च सा भूत कश्चित् भृगुयेना सर्वाशः | कालेना गच्छतु नृसाम उपयन्ति यत्तु प्रजोः | 26. Tathā tūḥ kramasāḥ nūśām jagmuḥ sarvatra siddhayaḥ | tāsū sarvāṁ nashīṣu nabhasaḥ prachyutū narāḥ (latūḥ in one MS.) | prāyāśaḥ kalpa-erikṣhās te sambhūtā griha-samsthītāḥ |*

¹⁵⁴ Instead of *babhūvāyuh*, etc., the Gaikowar MS. has *prayuktāni na cha kleśo babhūva ha |*

*anyā yugo tasmiṁś tretāyām antare kṛitā | sargādau yā mayā 'śhṭau tu
 mūnasyo vai prakirtitāḥ | 74. Aṣṭau tāḥ krama-yogena siddhayo yānti
 sankshayam | kalpādau mānasī hy ekā siddhir bhavati sā kṛite | 75.
 Manvantareṣu sarveṣu chatur-yuga-vibhāgaśaḥ | varnāśramūchāra-kṛitāḥ
 karma-siddhodbhavaḥ (karma-siddhyudbhavaḥ?) smṛitāḥ | 76. Sandhyā
 kṛitasya pādena sandhyā pādena chāmśataḥ | kṛita-sandhyāmśakā hy ete
 trīṁś trin pādān paraspāram | 77. Irasanti yuga-dharmāḥ te tapāḥ-
 śrūta-balāyushaiḥ | tataḥ kṛitāmśe kṣhīne tu babhūva tad-anantaram |
 78. Tretā-yugam amanyanta kṛitāmśam ṛishi-sattamāḥ | tasmiṁ kṣhīne
 kṛitāmśe tu tach-chhiṣṭāsu prajāsu iha | 79. Kalpādau sampravrīṭtāyās
 tretāyāḥ pramukhe tadā | prajāsyati tadā siddhiḥ kāla-yogena nānyathā |
 80. Tasyām siddhau prajāśṭayām anyā siddhir avartata | apām sau-
 kshmye pratigata tadā meghātmanā tu vai | 81. Meghebhyaḥ śtanayitnu-
 bhyaḥ pravṛittān ṛishi-sarjjanam | sakṛid eva tayā ṛishiṭyā saṁyukto
 pṛithivī-tale | 82. Prādūrāsāṁś tadā tāsām vṛikṣhū tu griha-saṁsthī-
 tāḥ¹⁵⁵ | sarva-pratyupabhogas tu tāsām tebhyaḥ prajāyate | 83. Vart-
 tayanti hi tebhyaḥ tās tretā-yuga-mukhe prajāḥ | tataḥ kālena mahatā
 tāsām eva viparyayāt | 84. Rūgalobhātmano bhāvas tadā hy ākasmiko
 'bhavat | yat tad bhavati nārīṇām jīvitānte tad ārtaram | 85. Tadā tad
 vai na bhavati punar yuga-bālena tu | tāsām punaḥ pravṛitte tu māse mūse
 tad ārtaram (-ve?) | 86. Tatas tenāira yogena varttatām maitihne tadā |
 tāsām tāt-kāla-bhāritvād māsi māsy upayachhatām | 87. Akāle hy ārttatot-
 pattir garbhotpattir ajāyata | viparyyayena tāsām tu tena kālena bhāvinā |
 88. Prajāsyanti tataḥ sarve vṛikṣhāḥ te grihasaṁsthītāḥ | tatas tesku
 prajāśṭeṣu vibhṛūtā vyākulendriyāḥ | 89. Abhidhyāyanti tām siddhiṁ
 satyābhidhyāyinas tadā | prādurbabhūvus tāsām tu vṛikṣhāḥ te griha-
 saṁsthītāḥ | 90.¹⁵⁶ Vastrāṇi cha prasūyante phaleṣu ābharāṇāni cha |
 tesu eva jāyate tāsām gandha-varṇa-rasānvitam | 91. Amākshikam ma-
 hāvīryam puṭake puṭake madhu | tena tā varttayanti sma mukhe tretā-
 yugasya vai | 92. Iṛiṣṭa-tuṣṭās tayā siddhyā prajā vai vigata-jvarāḥ |
 punaḥ kālāntareṇaiva punar lobhāvṛitāḥ tu tāḥ | 93. Vṛikṣhāṁś tām
 paryagṛihṇanta madhu chāmākshikam balāt | tāsām tenāpacharena punar
 lobha-kṛitena vai | 94. Prajāśṭā madhunā sūrdham kalpa-vṛikṣhāḥ kva-*

¹⁵⁵ Verses 27-35 of the Märk. P. correspond more or less to this and the following verses down to 98.

¹⁵⁶ This and the following verses correspond more or less closely to the Märk. P. 30 ff.

chit kvachit | tasyām evālpa-śiṣṭyām sandhyā-kūla-vaśat tadā | 95. varttatām tu tadā tāsām dvandvāny abhyutthitāni tu | śitavātātapaś tīvrais tatas tūh duḥkhitā bhrīṣam | 96. Dvandvais tūh pīdyamānās tu chakrur āvaranāni cha | kṛitvā dvandva-pratikāram nikelāni hi bhejire | 97. Pūrvam¹⁵⁷ nikāma-chārās te aniketāśrayā bhrīṣam | yathā-yogyān yathā-prīti niketesho avasan punaḥ | 98. Maru-dhanvasu nimneshu parvateshu darīṣhu cha¹⁵⁷ | samśrayanti cha durgāni dhanvānam śāśvatodukam | 99. Yathā-yogaṁ yathā-kāmaṁ sameshu viśhameshu cha | ārabdhās te niketā vai karttuṁ śitoshṇa-pūranam | 100. Tatas tā mūpayāmāsuḥ khetāni cha purāṇi cha | grāmāṁś chaiva yathā-bhāgaṁ tathāivāntaḥ-purāṇi cha | . . . 123.¹⁵⁸ Kṛiteshu teshu sthāneshu punaś chakrur grīhāni cha | yathā cha pūrvam āsan vai eṛikshās tu grīha-saṁsthitāḥ | 124. Tathā karttuṁ samārabdhāś chintayitrā punaḥ punaḥ | vṛiddhāś chaiva gatāḥ śākhā natāś chaivāparā gatāḥ | 125. Ata ūrdhvam gatās chānyā enam tiryaggatāḥ parāḥ | buddhyā 'nvishya tathā 'nyā yā eṛiksha-śākhā yathā gatāḥ | 126. Tathā kṛitās tu taiḥ śākhās tasmāch chhātās tu tūḥ smṛitāḥ | evam prasiddhāḥ śākhābhyāḥ śālās chaiva grīhāni cha | 127. Tasmāt tā vai smṛitāḥ śālāḥ śālātvaṁ chaiva tūsu tat | prasīdati manas tūsu manāḥ prāsādayamās cha tūḥ | 128. Tasmād grīhāni śālās cha prāsādās chaiva sanjnitāḥ | kṛitvā dvandvopaghātāms tām vārttopāyam achintayan | 129.¹⁵⁹ Nashṭeshu madhūnā sūradhān kalpa-eṛiksheshu vai tadā | viśhāda-vyākulās tā vai prajāś trishṇū-kṣudhānvitāḥ | 130. Tataḥ prādurbabhau tāsām siddhis tretā-yuge punaḥ | vārttārtha-sādhikā hy anyā eṛiṣṭis tāsām hi kāmataḥ | 131. Tāsām eṛiṣṭy-udakānīha yāni nimnair gatāni tu | eṛiṣṭyā nimnā(?) nirabhavan srotāḥ-khātāni ninnagāḥ | 132. Evaṁ nadyaḥ pravṛittās tu dvitīye eṛiṣṭi-sarjane | ye purustād apām stokū āpannāḥ prithivītale | 133. Apām bhūmeś cha saṁyogād ośhadhyas tūsu chābhavan | pushpa-mūlaphalīnyas tv ośhadhyas tūḥ prajājnire | 134. Aphāla-kṛiṣṭās chānuptā grāmyāranyaś chaturdaśa | ritu-pushpa-phalāśchaiva eṛikshāḥ gulmāś cha jājnire | 135. Prādurbhavaś cha tretāyām ādyo 'yam aushadhāsyā tu | tenaushadhena varttante prajāś tretāyuge tadā | 136. Tataḥ punar abhūt tāsām rūgo lobhāś cha sarvaśaḥ | avāśyam-

¹⁵⁷ I have corrected this line from Märk. P. xlix. 35.

¹⁵⁸ Verses 52-54 of the Märk. P. correspond in substance to verses 123-128 of the Vāyu P.

¹⁵⁹ Verses 55-62 of the Märk. P. correspond to verses 129-137 of the Vāyu P.

*bhāvinā 'rthēna tretā-yuga-vaśena tu | 137. Tatas tāḥ paryagrihṇanta
 nadīḥ kṣhetrāṇi parvatān | crikṣhān gulmaushadhiś chaiva prasahya tu
 yathā-balam | 138. Siddhātmanās tu ye pūrvam vyākhyātāḥ prāk kṛito
 mayā | Brahmano mānasās te vai utpannā ye janād iha | 139. Sāntās
 cha śuśmīnās chaiva karmino duḥkṣīnās tadā | tataḥ pravarttamānās te
 tretāyām jajñire punaḥ | 140. Brāhmaṇāḥ kṣhattriya vaiśyāḥ śūdrā
 drohijanās tathā | bhāvitāḥ pūrva-jātishu karmabhiś cha śubhāśubhaiḥ |
 141. Itas tebhyo 'balā ye tu śatyāśilā hy ahimsakāḥ | vīta-lobhā jītāt-
 māno nivasanti sma tesku vai | 142. Pratigrihṇanti kurvanti tebhyaś
 chānye 'lpa-tejasaḥ | evaṁ vipratipanneshu prapanneshu parasparam |
 143. Tena doṣeṇa teshāṁ tū ośadhyo mishatām tadā¹⁶⁰ | pranaśtā kriya-
 mānā vai muṣṭībhyām sikatā yathā | 144.¹⁶¹ Agrasād bhūr yuga-balād
 grāmyūraṇyās chaturdaśa | phalam grihṇanti pushpāiścha phalaiḥ patrāiḥ
 punaḥ punaḥ | 145.¹⁶² Tatas tāsu pranaśtāsu vibhrāntās tāḥ prajāś
 tadā | Svayambhūvam prabhuṁ jūgmuḥ kṣudhāviṣṭāḥ prajāpatiṁ | 146.
 vṛitty-artham abhīlīpsantaḥ ādau tretā-yugasya tu | Brahmā Svayambhūr
 bhagavān jñātvā tāsām manīṣitam | 147. Yuktam pratyakṣa-dṛṣṭeṇa
 darśanena vicāryya cha | grastāḥ prithivya ośadhyo jñātvā pratyaduhat
 punaḥ | 148. Kṛtvā vatsaṁ sumerum tu dudoha prithivīm imām | dugdhe-
 yaṁ gauś tadā tena vijāni prithivī-tale | 149. Jajñire tāni vijāni grāmyā-
 raṇyās tu tāḥ punaḥ | ośadhyāḥ phala-pākāntāḥ śaṇa-saptadaśās tu tāḥ |
 . . . 155. Utpannāḥ prathamāḥ hy etā ādau tretā-yugasya tu | 156.
 Aphāla-kṛiṣṭā ośadhyo grāmyūraṇyās tu sarvaśaḥ | crikṣhā gulma-
 latā-vallyo vīrudhas trīṇa-jātayaḥ | 157. Mūlaiḥ phalaiś cha rohinyo
 'grihṇan pushpāiś cha yāḥ phalam | prithvī dugdhā tu vijāni yāni pūr-
 vaṁ Svayambhuvā | 158. Ritu-pushpa-phalās tū vai ośadhyo jajñire to
 iha |¹⁶³ yadū prasriṣṭā ośadyo na prarohanti tāḥ punaḥ | 159. Tataḥ
 sa tāsām vṛitty-artham vārttopāyaṁ cakūra ha | Brahmā Svayambhūr
 bhagavān hasta-siddhāṁ tu karma-jam | 160. Tataḥ-prabhṛity athau-
 shadhyāḥ kṛiṣṭa-pachyās tū jajñire | saṁsiddhāyām tu vārttāyām tatas
 tāsām Svayambhuvāḥ | 161. Maryādāḥ sthāpayāmāsa yathārabdhāḥ
 parasparam |¹⁶⁴ ye vai parigrīhītūras tāsām āsan badhātmakāḥ | 162.
 Itareṣāṁ kṛta-trūṇān sthāpayāmāsa kṣhattriyaṁ | upatīṣṭhanti ye tūn*

¹⁶⁰ Mārķ. P. verse 63a.

¹⁶¹ Mārķ. P. verse 68b.

¹⁶² Verses 64-67 of the Mārķ. P. correspond to verses 145-149 of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶³ Verses 73-75 of the Mārķ. P. correspond to verses 158b-160a of the Vāyu P.

¹⁶⁴ This with all what follows down to verse 171 is omitted in the Mārķ. P.

vai yāvanto nirbhayās tathā | 163. *Satyam brahma yathā bhūtam bruvanto brāhmaṇas tu te | ye chānyo 'py abalās teshām vaiśasaṁ karma saṁsthitāḥ* | 164. *Kināsū nāśayanti sma prithiriyām prāg atandritāḥ | vaiśyān eva tu tān āhuḥ kināsūn vṛitti-sādhakān* | 165. *Śochantas cha dravantas cha paricharyyāsu ye ratāḥ | nistejaso 'lpa-vīryyās cha śūdrān tān abravīt tu saḥ* | 166. *Teshām karmāṇi dharmāṁś cha Brahmā 'nuvyadadhāt prabhuḥ | saṁsthitau prakṛitāyām tu chāturvarnyasya sarvasaḥ* | 167. *Punaḥ prajāś tu tā mohāt tān dharmān nānvapālayan | varṇa-dharmair ajīvantyo vyarudhyanta parasparam* | 168. *Brahmā tam artham buddhva tu yāthātathyena vai prabhuḥ | kshattriyānām balam daṇḍam yuddhaṁ ājvam ādiśat* | 169. *Yajānūdhyananam chaiva tṛitriyāṁ cha parigraham | brāhmaṇānām vibhuś teshām karmāṇy etāny athādiśat* | 170. *Pāsupālyāṁ vāṇijyāṁ cha krishiṁ chaiva viśūṁ dadau | śilpājīvam bhṛitīṁ chaiva śūdrāṇām vyadadhāt prabhuḥ* | 171. *Sāmānyāni tu karmāṇi brahma-kshattri-viśūṁ punaḥ | yajānūdhyananāṁ dānam sāmānyāni tu tesku vai* | 172. *Karmājīvaṁ tato datvā tebhyaś chaiva parasparam | lokāntareṣu sthānāni teshām siddhyāy¹⁶⁵ adāt prabhuḥ* | 173.¹⁶⁶ *Prājāpatyāṁ brāhmaṇānām smṛitāṁ sthānāṁ kriyāvatām | sthānāṁ aindraṁ kshattriyāṇām sangrāmeṣu apalāyinām* | 174. *Vaiśyānām mārutaṁ sthānāṁ va-dharmam upajīvinām | gāndharvaṁ śūdra-jātīnām pratichāreṇa (parichāreṇa?) tishṭhatām* | 175. *Sthānāny etāni varṇānām vyasyāchāravatām evayam | tataḥ sthiteshu varṇeṣu sthūpayāmāsa chūśramān* | 176. *Gṛihastham brahmachāritvaṁ vanaprastham saṁnikṣhukam | āśramāṁś chāturo 'hy etān pūrvam asthāpayat prabhuḥ* | 177. *Varṇa-karmāṇi ye kechit teshām iha na kurvate | kṛita-karmakṣitiḥ(?) prāhur āśrama-sthāna-vāsinaḥ* | 178. *Brahmā tān sthūpayāmāsa āśramān nāma nāmataḥ | nirdeśārthaṁ tatas teshām Brahmā dharmān prābhūshata* | 179. *Prasthūnāni cha teshām vai yamāṁścha niyamāṁś cha ha | chāturvarnyāt-makaḥ pūrvam gṛihasthas to āśramaḥ smṛitaḥ* | 180. *Trāyāṇām āśramāṇāṁ cha pratishṭhā yonir eva cha | yathākramam pravakṣhyāmi yamāś cha niyamāś cha taiḥ* | . . . 190. *Vedāḥ sāṅgās cha yajñās cha vratāni niyamāś cha ye* | 191. *Na siddhyanti prādushtāsyā bhūradoshe upagate | bahiḥ-karmāṇi sarvāni prasiddhyanti (na siddhyanti?) kadūchana* |

¹⁶⁵ I conjecture *siddhyāy adāt* to be the proper reading. The MSS. have *siddhyā-dadāt*, or *siddhyādadāt*, etc.

¹⁶⁶ Verses 173 f. are found in the Mürk. P. verscs 77 f.; but all that follows down to verse 193 is omitted there

192. *Antar-bhāva-pradushṭasya kurvato 'hi parākramāt | sarvasvām api yo dadyāt kaluṣeṇāntarātmanā |* 193. *Nu tena dharmā-bhāk sa syād bhāva eva hi kṛāṇam |* 199. *Evaṁ varṇāśramāṇāṁ vai prati-bhūge kṛite tadā |* 200. *Yadā 'sya na vyavardhanta prajā varṇāśramat-mikāḥ | tato 'nyā mānasīḥ so 'tha tretā-madhye 'erijāt prajāḥ |* 201. *Āt-manas tāḥ śārīrāchcha tulyāś chaivātmanā tu vai | tasmin tretā-yuge prāpte madhyam prāpte kramēṇa tu |* 202. *Tato 'nyā manasīḥ tatra pra-jāḥ srasṭum prachakrame | tataḥ satva-rajodriktāḥ prajāḥ so 'thāsrijāt prabhuḥ |* 203. *Dharmārtha-kāma-mokṣhāṇāṁ vārttāyāś chaiva sūdhī-kūḥ | devāś cha pitarāś chaiva ṛishayo manavaś talhū |* 204. *Yugōnu-rūpā dharmēṇa yair imā vichitāḥ prajāḥ | upasthite tadā tasmin prajā-dharme (-sarge?) Svayambhuvāḥ |* 205. *Abhidadhyau prajāḥ sarvā nānā-rūpāś tu mānasīḥ | pūrvoktā yā mayā tubhyaṁ jana-lokaṁ samāśritāḥ |* 206. *Kalpe 'tite tu tā hy āsan devādyaś tu prajā iha | dhyāyatas tasya tāḥ sarvāḥ sambhūty-artham upasthitāḥ |* 207. *Manvantara-kramēṇcha ka-nishṭhe prathame matūḥ | khyātyā 'nubandhais tais tais tu savārthair iha bhāvītāḥ |* 208. *Kuśalākuśala-prāyaiḥ karmabhis taiḥ sadā prajāḥ | tat-karma-phala-śeṣeṇa upasthitāḥ prajājnire |* 209. *Devāsura-pitṛi-traiś tu paśu-pakṣhi-sarīripaiḥ | epikṣha-nāraka-kiṭatvaiś tais tair bhā-vair upasthitāḥ | ādhīnārtham prajānāṁ cha ātmanā vai vinirmame |*

"22. At the beginning of the Kalpa, in the first Kṛita age, he created those living beings (23) which I have formerly described to thee; but in the olden time, at the close of the Kalpa, those crea-tures were burnt up by fire. 24. Those of them who did not reach the Tapoloka took refuge in the Janaloka; and when the creation again commences, they form its seed. 25. Existing there as a seed for the sake of another creation, they then, as they are created, are produced with a view to progeny. 26. These are declared to accom-plish, in the present state (the four ends of human life, viz.), duty, the acquisition of wealth, the gratification of love, and the attain-ment of final liberation, — both gods, Fathers, Rishis, and Manus. 27. They, then, filled with austere fervour, replenish (all) places. These are the mental sons of Bruhmā, perfect in their nature. 28. Those who ascended to the sky by works characterized by devotion to external objects, but not by hatred, return to this world and are born in every age. 29. As the result of their works, and of their destination, (returning) from the Janaloka, they are born of the same character (as

before), in consequence of the (previous) deeds by which they are bound.¹⁰⁷ 30. It is to be understood that the cause of this is their tendency (or fate), which itself is the result of works. In consequence of these works, good or bad, they return from Janaloka and are born, (31) and receive various bodies in (different) wombs. They are produced again and again in all states, from that of gods to that of motionless substances. 32. These creatures, as they are born time after time, receive the same functions as they had obtained in each previous creation. 33. Destructiveness and undestructiveness, mildness and cruelty, righteousness and unrighteousness, truth and falsehood—actuated by such dispositions as these, they obtain (their several conditions); and hence particular actions are agreeable to particular creatures. 34. And in succeeding periods they for the most part obtain the forms and the names which they had in the past Kalpas. 35. Hence they obtain the same names and forms. In the different Kalpas they are born with the same name and form. 36. Afterwards, when the creation had been suspended, as Brahmā was desirous to create, (37) and, fixed in his design, was meditating upon offspring,—he created from his mouth a thousand couples of living beings, (38) who were born with an abundance of goodness (*sattva*) and full of intelligence.¹⁰⁸ He then created another thousand couples from his breast: (39) they all abounded in passion (*rajas*) and were both vigorous and destitute of vigour.¹⁰⁹ After creating from his thighs another thousand pairs, (40) in whom both passion and darkness (*tamas*) prevailed, and who are described as active,—he formed from his feet yet another thousand couples (41) who were all full of darkness, inglorious, and of little vigour. Then the creatures sprung from the couples (or thus produced in couples) rejoicing, (42) and filled with mutual love, began to cohabit. From that period sexual intercourse is said to have arisen in this Kalpa. 43. But at that time women had no monthly discharge: and they consequently bore no children, although cohabit-

¹⁰⁷ *Karma-saṁśaya-bandhanāt*. I am unable to state the sense of *saṁśaya* in this compound.

¹⁰⁸ *Suchetasah*. The reading of the Märk. P. *sutejasah*, "full of vigour," is recommended, as an epithet of the Brāhmins, by its being in opposition to *alpa-tejasah*, "of little vigour," which is applied to the Sūdras a few lines below.

¹⁰⁹ The reading of the Märk. P. *amarśinah*, "irascible," gives a better sense than *aśuśminah*, "devoid of vigour," which the Vāyu P. has.

ation was practised. 44. At the end of their lives they once bore twins. Weak-minded boys and girls were produced when (their parents) were on the point of death. 45. From that period commenced, in this Kalpa, the birth of twins; and such offspring was once only born to these creatures by a mental effort, in meditation (46),—(offspring which was) receptive (?) of sound and the other objects of sense, pure, and in every case distinguished by five marks. Such was formerly the early mental creation of Prajapāti. 47. Those creatures by whom the world was replenished, born as the descendants of this stock, frequented rivers, lakes, seas, and mountains. 48. In that ago (*yuga*) they lived unaffected by excessive cold or heat, and appropriated the food which was produced from the essences of the earth. 49. They acted according to their pleasure, existing in a state of mental perfection. They were characterized neither by righteousness nor unrighteousness; were marked by no distinctions. 50. In that Kṛita yuga, in the beginning of the Kalpa, their age, happiness, and form were alike: they were neither righteous nor unrighteous. 51. In the Kṛita ago they were produced each with authority over himself. Four thousand years, according to the calculation of the gods, (52) and four hundred years for each of the morning and evening twilights, are said to form the first, or Kṛita, age.¹⁷⁰ Then, although these creatures were multiplied by thousands, (53) they suffered no impediment, no susceptibility to the pairs of opposites (pleasure and pain, cold and heat, etc.) and no fatigue. They frequented mountains and seas, and did not dwell in houses. 54. They never sorrowed, were full of goodness (*sattva*), and supremely happy; acted from no impulse of desire,¹⁷¹ and lived in continual delight. 55. There were at that time no beasts, birds, reptiles, or plants,¹⁷² (for these things are produced by unrighteousness),¹⁷³ (56) no roots, fruits,

¹⁷⁰ The first of the verses, which will be quoted below, in a note on verse 63, from the Märk. P., seems to be more in place than the description of the Kṛita age given here, of which the substance is repeated in verses 68 and 69.

¹⁷¹ Perhaps we should read here *nīkūma-chāriṇyo* instead of *nīshkūma*:- if so, the sense will be, "they moved about at will."

¹⁷² The text adds here *nīrakūḥ* or *narakūḥ*, which may mean "hellish creatures."

¹⁷³ This, although agreeing with what is said further on in verses 82, 133, and 165, does not seem in consonance with what is stated in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, verse 45, where it is declared: *oshadhyaḥ phala-mūlīnyo romaḥkṛitya tasya jānīre | tretā-yuga-mukhe Brahmā kalpasyūdaḥ dvijottama | śriṣṭvā paśu-oshadhīḥ samyag yuyuja sa tadā 'dhvare* | "Plants bearing roots and fruits sprang from his hairs. At the com-

flowers, productions of the seasons, nor seasons. The time brought with it every object of desire and every enjoyment. There was no excess of heat or cold. 57. The things which these people desired sprang up from the earth everywhere and always, when thought of, and had a powerful relish. 58. That perfection of theirs both produced strength and beauty, and annihilated disease. With bodies, which needed no decoration, they enjoyed perpetual youth. 59. From their pure will alone twin children were produced. Their form was the same. They were born and died together. 60. Then truth, contentment, patience, satisfaction, happiness, and self-command prevailed. They were all without distinction in respect of form, term of life, disposition and actions. 61. The means of subsistence were produced spontaneously without forethought on their parts. In the Kṛita age they engaged in no works which were either virtuous or sinful. 62. And there were then no distinctions of castes or orders, and no mixture of castes. Men acted towards each other without any feeling of love or hatred. 63. In the Kṛita age they were born alike in form and duration of life, without any distinction of lower and higher,¹⁷⁴ with abundant happiness, free from grief, (64) with hearts continually exulting, great in dignity

commencement of the Tretā age Brahmā—having at the beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants—employed them in sacrifice.” Although the order of the words renders the sense in some degree uncertain, it appears to be that which Prof. Wilson assigns in his translation (i. 84), “Brahmā, having created, in the commencement of the Kalpa, various [animals and] plants, employed them in sacrifices in the beginning of the Tretā age.” This interpretation is supported by the Commentator, who remarks: *Tad evaṁ kalpasyaūdāv eva paśūn ośadhīś' cha śṛiṣṭvā 'nantaram tīlā-yuga-mukhe prūpte satī samyag grāmyāṇāṃ-vyasthūyā tadā 'dhvare sūnatayā (samyaktayā ?) yuyojā kṛita-yuge yajnasūpravaritṭeḥ* | “Having then thus at the very beginning of the Kalpa created animals and plants, he afterwards, when the commencement of the Tretā age arrived, employed them properly, according to the distinction of domestic and wild, in sacrifice,—since sacrifice did not prevail in the Kṛita age.” This agrees with the course of the preceding narrative which makes no allusion to plants and animals having been produced in a different Yuga from the other beings whose creation had been previously described. (See Wilson i. 82-84.) The parallel passage in the Vāyu P. x. 44-46, is confused.

¹⁷⁴ The Mārķ. P. xlix. 24 inserts here the following lines: “They lived for four thousand years of mortals, as the measure of their existence, and suffered no calamities from distress. 25. In some places the earth again enjoyed prosperity in every respect. As through lapse of time the creatures were destroyed, so too those perfections everywhere gradually perished. 26. When they had all been destroyed, creeping-plants fell from the sky, which had nearly the character of Kalpa-trees (*i.e.* trees which yield all that is desired), and resembled houses.”

and in force. There existed among them no such things as gain or loss, friendship or enmity, liking or dislike. 65. It was through the mind (alone, *i.e.* without passion?) that these disinterested beings acted towards each other. They neither desired anything from one another; nor shewed any kindness to each other.¹⁷⁵ Contemplation is declared to be supreme in the Kṛita age, knowledge in the Tretā; sacrifice began in the Dvāpara; liberality is the highest merit in the Kali. 67. The Kṛita age is goodness (*sattra*), the Tretā is passion (*rajas*), the Dvāpara is passion and darkness (*tamas*), in the Kali it is to be understood that darkness (prevails), according to the necessary course of these ages. 68. The following is the time in the Kṛita age: understand its amount. Four thousand years constitute the Kṛita; (69) and its twilights endure for eight hundred divine years. Then their life was (so long?)¹⁷⁶ and no distresses or calamities befel them. 70. Afterwards, when the twilight in the Kṛita was gone, the righteousness peculiar to that age was in all respects reduced to a quarter (of its original sum). 71. When further the twilight had passed, at the close of the Yuga, and the righteousness peculiar to the twilight had been reduced to a quarter, (72) and when the Kṛita had thus come altogether to an end,—then perfection vanished. When this mental perfection had been destroyed, there arose (73) another perfection formed in the period of the Tretā age. The eight mental perfections, which I declared (to have existed) at the creation, (74) were gradually extinguished. At the beginning of the Kalpa mental perfection alone (existed), viz., that which existed in the Kṛita age. 75. In all the Manvantaras there is declared to arise a perfection proceeding from works, produced by the discharge of the duties belonging to castes and orders, according to the fourfold division of Yugas. 76. The (morning) twilight (deteriorates) by a quarter of the (entire) Kṛita,—and the evening twilight by (another) quarter;—(thus) the Kṛita, the morning twilight, and the evening

¹⁷⁵ This representation of the condition of mankind during the Kṛita age, the period of ideal goodness, was no doubt sketched in conformity with the opinions which prevailed at the period when the Purāṇa was compiled; when dispassion was regarded as the highest state of perfection.

¹⁷⁶ It would seem as if the writer here meant to state that the period of life was that which in the verse of the Mār. P. (xlix. 24), quoted in the note on verse 63, it is declared to have been. But the expression here is, from some cause or other, imperfect.

twilight (together) deteriorate successively to the extent of three quarters, in the duties peculiar to the Yuga, and in austere fervour, sacred knowledge, strength, and length of life.¹⁷⁷ Then after the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (78) the Tretā age succeeded,—(which) the most excellent rishis regarded as the evening of the Kṛita. But when the evening of the Kṛita had died out, (79) from the influence of time, and for no other reason, perfection disappeared from among the creatures who survived at the commencement of the Tretā age which ensued at the beginning of the Kalpa. 80. When that perfection had perished, another perfection arose. The subtle form of water having returned in the form of cloud (to the sky),¹⁷⁸ (81) rain began to be discharged from the thundering clouds. The earth having once received that rain, (82) trees resembling houses¹⁷⁹ were provided for these creatures. From them all means of enjoyment were produced. 83. Men derived their subsistence from them at the beginning of the Tretā. Subsequently, after a great length of time, owing to their ill fortune, (84) the passions of desire and covetousness arose in their hearts uncaused. The monthly discharge, which occurred at the end of women's lives, (85) did not then take place: but as it commenced again, owing to the force of the age (*yuga*), (86) and as the couples, in consequence of it, began to cohabit, and approached each other monthly, from necessity occasioned by the time,—(87) an unseasonable^{179a} production of the monthly discharge, and of pregnancy ensued. Then through their misfortune, and owing to that fated time, (88) all those house-like trees perished. When these had been destroyed, men disturbed and agitated, (89) but genuine in their desire, longed after that perfection (which they had lost). Then those house-like trees appeared to them; (90) and among their fruits yielded clothes and jewels. On these trees too, in the hollow of every leaf, there was produced, (91) without the aid of bees, honey of great potency, having scent, colour, and flavour. By this means they subsisted at the beginning of the Tretā, (92) delighted with this per-

¹⁷⁷ Such is the only sense I can extract from these rather obscure lines.

¹⁷⁸ Such is the only sense of the words here rendered which occurs to me.

¹⁷⁹ *Gṛiha-saṁsthītāḥ*. Professor Wilson, in his Dictionary, gives "like, resembling," among the meanings of *saṁsthita*.

^{179a} Instead of *ākāle*, "out of season," Professor Aufrecht suggests *ākāle*, "in season," as the proper reading.

fection and free from trouble. Again, through the lapse of time, becoming greedy, (93) they seized by force those trees, and that honey produced without bees. And then, owing to that misconduct of theirs, occasioned by cupidity, (94) the Kalpa trees, together with their honey, were in some places destroyed. As but little of it¹⁸⁰ remained, owing to the effects of the period of twilight, (95) the pairs (of opposites, as pleasure and pain, etc.) arose in men when existing (in this state); and they became greatly distressed by sharp cold winds, and heats. 96. Being thus afflicted by these opposites, they adopted means of shelter: and to counteract the opposites they resorted to houses. 97. Formerly they had moved about at their will, and had not dwelt at all in houses: but subsequently they abode in dwellings, as they found suitable and pleasant, (98) in barren deserts, in valleys, on mountains, in caves; and took refuge in fortresses,—(in a) desert with perpetual water.¹⁸¹ 99. As a protection against cold and heat they began to construct houses on even and uneven places, according to opportunity and at their pleasure. 100. They then measured out towns, cities, villages, and private apartments, according to the distribution of each.” [The following verses 101–107 give an account of the different measures of length and breadth, which is followed, in verses 108–122, by a description of the various kinds of fortresses, towns, and villages, their shapes and sizes, and of roads. The author then proceeds in verse 123:] “These places having been made, they next constructed houses; and as formerly trees existed, formed like houses,¹⁸² (124) so did they (now) begin to erect them, after repeated consideration. (Some) boughs are spread out, others are bent down, (125) others rise upwards, while others again stretch horizontally. After examining thus by reflection how the different boughs of trees branch out, (126) they constructed in like manner the apartments (*śākhāḥ*) (of their houses): hence they

¹⁸⁰ “Perfection” seems to be here intended. If so, it would seem as if this line had been separated from its proper context.

¹⁸¹ *Dhanvānam sūvatodakam*. Perhaps we should read here with the Märk. P. xlix. 35, *vṛkṣhyam pūrvaṭam audakam* “(fortresses) protected by trees, built on mountains, or surrounded by water.”

¹⁸² Whatever may be thought of this rendering of the phrase, *vṛkṣhāḥ grihasaṁsthitaḥ*, the Märk. P. (xlix. 62), at least, is quite clear: *grihākārā yathā pūrvaṁ teshāṁ ānā mahīrūhāḥ | tathā saṁsmṛitya tat sarvaṁ chakrur veśmāni tāḥ prajāḥ |* “As they had formerly had trees with the shape of houses, so recalling all that to mind, these people built their dwellings.”

are called rooms (*śālāḥ*).¹⁸³ In this way rooms and houses derive their appellation from branches. 127. Hence rooms are called *śālā*, and in that their character as rooms (*śālātṛam*) consists. And inasmuch as the mind takes pleasure in them, and as they have gladdened (*prāsādayan*), the mind, (128) houses, rooms, and palaces are termed respectively *griha*, *śālā*, and *prāsāda*. Having adopted these means of defence against the 'opposites,' they devised methods of subsistence. 129. The kalpa-trees having been destroyed along with their honey, those creatures, afflicted with thirst and hunger, became disquieted by dejection. 130. Then again another perfection arose for them in the Tretā age,—which fulfilled the purpose of subsistence,—viz., rain at their pleasure. 131. The rain-water, which flowed into the hollows, burst out in the form of springs, water-courses, and rivers,¹⁸⁴ through the rain. 132. Thus at the second fall of rain rivers began to flow. When the drops of water first reached the ground, then (133) from the conjunction of the waters and the earth plants sprang up among them, which bore both flowers, roots, and fruits. 134. Fourteen kinds of plants, cultivated and wild, were produced without ploughing or sowing, as well as trees and shrubs which bore flowers and fruit at the proper season. 135. This was the first appearance of plants in the Tretā age, and by them men subsisted at that period. 136. Then there again arose among them, universally, desire and cupidity, through a necessary process, and as a result of the Tretā age. 137. They then appropriated to themselves, by force and violence, rivers, fields, hills, trees, shrubs, and plants. 138. Those perfect beings, who were described by me as existing formerly in the Kṛita, —the mind-born children of Brahmā, who had been produced in this world when they came from the Janaloka,—(139) who were (some) tranquil, (some) fiery, (some) active, and (others) distressed,—were again born in the Tretā, (140) as Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and injurious men, governed by the good and bad actions (performed) in former births. 141. Then those who were weaker than they, being truthful and innocent, dwelt among them, free from cupidity, and self-restrained; (142) whilst

¹⁸³ The reasoning here does not seem very cogent, as the two words *śālāḥ* and *śālā* do not appear to have any close connection. But such unsuccessful attempts at etymology are frequent in Sanskrit works.

¹⁸⁴ The text here does not seem to be in a satisfactory state. The Calc. edition of the Mārkaṇḍeya P. reads *ṛiṣṭyāvaruuddhair abhavat*, etc.

others, less glorious than they, took and did.¹⁸⁵ When they had thus become opposed to each other,—(143) through their misconduct, while they struggled together, the plants were destroyed, being seized with their fists like gravel. 144. Then the earth swallowed up the fourteen kinds of cultivated and wild plants, in consequence of the influence exerted by the Yuga: for men had seized again and again the fruit, together with the flowers and leaves. 145. After the plants had perished, the famished people, becoming bewildered, repaired to Svayambhū the lord of creatures, (146) in the beginning of the Tretā age, seeking the means of subsistence.¹⁸⁶ Learning what they desired, (147) and determining by intuition what was proper to be done, the Lord Brahmā Svayambhū, knowing that the plants had been swallowed up by the earth, milked them back. 148. Taking Sumeru as a calf, he milked this earth. When this earth (or cow)¹⁸⁷ was milked by him, roots were

¹⁸⁵ It is difficult to extract any satisfactory sense out of this line.

¹⁸⁶ The S. P. Br. ii. 4, 2, 1, also speaks of different classes of creatures applying to the creator for food: *Prajāpatiṁ vai bhūṭīny upāsīdan | prajāḥ vai bhūṭīni |* “*vi no dāhehi yathā jīvāma*” *iti | tato devū yajnopavitāno bhūtā dakṣiṇāṁ jīvuv āchya upāsīdan | tām abravīd “yajno vo ’nnam amṛtatvaṁ va ūrg vaḥ sūryo vo jyotir” iti |* 2. *Atha enam pitarāḥ prūchīnāvītinaḥ savyaṁ jīvu āchya upāsīdan | tām abravīd “mūsi mūsi vo ’śanūm sradhū vo manojavo vaś chandramā vo jyotir” iti |* 3. *Atha enam manushyāḥ prācīṇāḥ upasthān kṛtvā upāsīdan | tām abravīd “sūyam prātar vo ’śanam prajāḥ vo mṛityur vo ’gnir vo jyotir” iti |* 4. *Atha enam paśavaḥ upāsīdan | tebhyaḥ svaisham eva chakūra “yadū eva yūyam kadūcha labhādhevi yadi kūle yady anūkūle atha eva ānūtha” iti | tasmād ete yadū kadūcha labhante yadi kūle yacy anūkūle atha eva ānanti |* 5. *Atha ha enam śas’vad apy asurūḥ upasēdur ity āhuk | tebhyaḥ tamaś cha mūyātū cha pradādū | asty aha eva usura-mūyā itī iva | parābhūtā ha tv eva tūḥ prajāḥ | tūḥ mūḥ prajāḥ tathaiva upajīvanti yathaiva ābhyaḥ Prajāpati adadūt |* “All beings resorted to Prajāpati,—(creatures are beings),—(saying) ‘provide for us that we may live.’ Then the gods, wearing the sacrificial cord, and bending the right knee, approached him. To them he said, ‘let sacrifice be your food, your immortality your strength, the sun your light.’ 2. Then the Fathers, wearing the sacrificial cord on their right shoulders, and bending the left knee, approached him. To them he said, ‘you shall eat monthly, your oblation (*sradhā*) shall be your rapidity of thought, the moon your light.’ 3. Then men, clothed, and inclining their bodies, approached him. To them he said, ‘ye shall eat morning and evening, your off-spring shall be your death, Agni your light.’ 4. Then cattle repaired to him. To them he accorded their desire, (saying), ‘Whosoever ye find anything, whether at the proper season or not, eat it.’ Hence whenever they find anything, whether at the proper season or not, they eat it. 5. Then they say that the Asuras again and again resorted to him. To them he gave darkness (*tamaś*) and illusion. There is, indeed, such a thing as the illusion, as it were, of the Asuras. But those creatures succumbed. These creatures subsist in the very manner which Prajāpati allotted to them.”

¹⁸⁷ *Gauh* means both.

produced again in the ground,—(149) those plants, whereof hemp is the seventeenth, which end with the ripening of fruits.” [The plants fit for domestic use, and for sacrifice are then enumerated in verses 150–155.] “155. All these plants, domestic and wild, were for the first time¹⁵⁸ produced at the beginning of the Tretā age, (156) without cultivation, trees, shrubs, and the various sorts of creepers and grasses, both those which produce roots as their fruits, and those which bear fruit after flowering. The seeds for which the earth was formerly milked by Svayambhū (158) now became plants bearing flowers and fruits in their season. When these plants, though created, did not afterwards grow, (159) the divine Brahṁā Svayambhū devised for the people means of subsistence depending on labour effected by their hands. 160. From that time forward the plants were produced and ripened through cultivation. The means of subsistence having been provided, Svayambhū (161) established divisions among them according to their tendencies.¹⁵⁹ Those of them who were rapacious, and destructive, (162) he ordained to be Kshatriyas, protectors of the others.¹⁶⁰ As many men as attended on these, fearless, (163) speaking truth and propounding sacred knowledge (*brahma*) with exactness, (were made) Brāhmanas. Those others of them who had previously been feeble, engaged in the work of slaughter,¹⁶¹ who, as cultivators (*kīnāsūh*), had been destructive, and were active in connection with the ground, were called Vaiśyas, husbandmen (*kīnāsān*), providers of subsistence. 165. And he designated as Sūdras those who grieved (*śochantaḥ*), and ran (*dravantaḥ*),¹⁶² who were addicted to menial tasks, inglorious and feeble.

¹⁵⁸ See the note on verse 55, above.

¹⁵⁹ *Yathūrarakabhāḥ*. The Mār. P. has *yathā-nyāyān yathā-guṇam*, “according to fitness and their qualities.”

¹⁶⁰ *Itareshān kṛta-trāṇān*. The M. Bh. xii. 2247, thus explains the word Kshatriya: *brāhmaṇānān kṣata-trāṇāt tataḥ kṣattriya uchyate* | “(a king) is called Kshatriya because he protects Brāhmanas from injuries.”

¹⁶¹ *Vaiśasān karma*. The former word has the senses of (1) “hindrance, impediment,” and (2) “slaughter,” assigned to it in Wilson’s Dictionary.

¹⁶² The reader who is familiar with the etymologies given in Yaska’s Nirukta, or in Professor Wilson’s Dictionary on Indian authority, will not be surprised at the absurdity of the attempts made here by the Purāṇa-writer to explain the origin of the words Kshatriya, Vaiśya and Sūdra. To account for the last of these names he combines the roots *śuch*, “to grieve,” and *dru*, “to run,” dropping, however, of necessity the last letter (*ch*) of the former. The word *kṣattriya* is really derived from *kṣattrā*, “royal power;” and *vaiśya* comes from *viś*, “people,” and means “a man of the people.”

166. Brahmā determined the respective functions and duties of all these persons. But after the system of the four castes had been in all respects established, (167) those men from infatuation did not fulfil their several duties. Not living conformably to those class-duties, they came into mutual conflict. 168. Having become aware of this fact, precisely as it stood, the Lord Brahmā prescribed force, criminal justice, and war, as the profession of the Kshattriyas. 169. He then appointed these, viz., the duty of officiating at sacrifices, sacred study, and the receipt of presents, to be the functions of Brāhmans. 170. The care of cattle, traffic, and agriculture, he allotted as the work of the Vaiśyas; and the practice of the mechanical arts, and service, he assigned as that of the Sūdras. 171. The duties common to Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas were the offering of sacrifice, study, and liberality. 172. Having distributed to the classes their respective functions and occupations, the Lord then allotted to them abodes in other worlds for their perfection. 173. The world of Prajāpati is declared to be the (destined) abode of Brāhmans practising rites; Indra's world that of Kshattriyas who do not flee in battle; (174) the world of the Maruts that of Vaiśyas who fulfil their proper duty; the world of the Gandharvas that of men of Sūdra birth who abide in the work of service. 175. Having allotted these as the future abodes of (the men of the different) classes, who should be correct in their conduct, he ordained orders (*āśramas*) in the classes which had been established. 176. The Lord formerly instituted the four orders of householder, religious student, dweller in the woods, and mendicant. 177. To those of them who do not in this world perform the duties of their castes, the men who dwell in hermitages apply the appellation of 'destroyer of works.' 178. Brahmā established these orders by name, and in explanation of them he declared their duties, (179) their methods of procedure, and their various rites. First of all there is the order of householder, which belongs to all the four classes, (180) and is the foundation and source of the other three orders. I shall declare them in order with their several observances." [The following verses 181-189, which detail these duties, need not be cited here. I shall, however, quote verses 190 ff. for their excellent moral tone.] "190. The Vedas, with their appendages, sacrifices, fasts, and ceremonies, (191) avail not to a depraved man, when his disposition has become corrupted. All external rites are

fruitless (192) to one who is inwardly debased, however energetically he may perform them. A man who bestows even the whole of his substance with a defiled heart will thereby acquire no merit—of which a good disposition is the only cause.” [After giving some further particulars about the celestial abodes of the righteous, verses 194–198, the writer proceeds:] “199. When—after the division into castes and orders had thus been made—(200) the people living under that system did not multiply, Brahmā formed other mind-born creatures in the middle of the Tretā (201) from his own body and resembling himself. When the Tretā age had arrived, and had gradually reached its middle, (202) the Lord then began to form other mind-born creatures. He next formed creatures in whom goodness (*sattva*) and passion (*rajas*) predominated, (203) and who were capable of attaining (the four objects of human pursuit) righteousness, wealth, love, and final liberation, together with the means of subsistence. Gods, too, and Fathers, and Rishis, and Manus (were formed), (204) by whom these creatures were classified (?) according to their natures in conformity with the Yuga. When this character(?) of his offspring had been attained, Brahmā (205) longed after mental offspring of all kinds and of various forms. Those creatures, whom I described to you as having taken refuge in Janaloka, (206) at the end of the Kalpa, all these arrived here, when he thought upon them, in order to be reproduced in the form of gods and other beings. 207. According to the course of the Manvantaras the least were esteemed the first (?), being swayed by destiny, and by connections and circumstances of every description. 208. These creatures were always born, under the controuling influence of, and as a recompence for their good or bad deeds. 209. He by himself formed those creatures which arrived in their several characters of gods, asuras, fathers, cattle, birds, reptiles, trees, and insects, in order that they might be subjected (anew) to the condition of creatures.”¹²³

The substance of the curious speculations on the origin and primeval condition of mankind contained in the preceding passage may be stated as follows: In verses 22–34 we are told that the creatures, who at the close of the preceding Kalpa had been driven by the mundane conflagration to Janaloka, now formed the seed of the new creation, which took place in the Kṛita Yuga, at the commencement of the present

¹²³ I confess that I have had great difficulty in attaching any sense to the last words.

Kalpa. These were mind-born sons of Brahmā, perfect in nature, and they peopled the world. As a rule, we are informed, those beings who have formerly been elevated from the earth to higher regions, return again and again to this world, and, as a result of their previous works, are born in every age, in every possible variety of condition, exhibiting the same dispositions and fulfilling the same functions as in their former states of existence. It is next stated, verses 35-40, that when creation had, in some way not explained, come to a stand-still, four classes of human beings, consisting each of a thousand pairs of males and females, characterized respectively by different qualities, physical and moral, were produced from different members of the Creator's body.¹⁹⁴ These creatures sought to propagate the race, but abortively, for the reason specified (43). Children however were produced by mental effort (45 and 59), and in considerable numbers (52). The state of physical happiness, absolute and universal equality, moral perfection, and complete dispassion, in which mankind then existed, is depicted (48-65). The means of subsistence and enjoyment, which they are said to have drawn from the earth (48 and 57), were not of the ordinary kind, as we are informed (55 f.) that neither animals nor plants, which are the products of unrighteousness, existed at that period. No division into castes or orders prevailed during that age of perfection (62). A gradual declension, however, had been going on, and at the end of the Kṛita Yuga, the perfection peculiar to it had altogether disappeared (70-79). Another kind of perfection, peculiar to the Tretā, however, subsequently arose (73 and 80), and in the different Yugas there has existed a perfection springing from the performance of the duties belonging to each caste and order (75). The perfection described as prevailing in the Tretā was of a physical kind, consisting in the production of rain and the growth of trees, shaped like houses, which at the same time yielded the materials of all sorts of enjoyments (80-82). Passion, however, in its various forms began to take the place of the previous dispassion (84). The constitution of women, which had formerly incapacitated them for effective impregnation, became ultimately so modified as to ensure the successful propagation of the species, which

¹⁹⁴ This statement agrees with that in the Märk. P. xlix. 3 ff. but differs from that already given from the Vishnu P. in so far as the latter does not specify the numbers created, or say anything about pairs being formed.

accordingly proceeded (84-87).¹⁰⁸ We have then the destruction, and subsequent reproduction of the trees, formed like houses, described (88-91). These trees now produced clothes and jewels, as well as honey without bees, and enabled mankind to live in happiness and enjoyment. Again, however, the trees disappeared in consequence of the cupidity which led to their misuse (92-94). The absence of perfection occasioned suffering of various kinds, from moral as well as physical causes, and men were now driven to construct houses, which they had hitherto found unnecessary (96-99 and 123), and to congregate in towns and cities (100). Their houses were built after the model furnished by trees (123-128). The hunger and thirst which men endured from the loss of the trees which had formerly yielded all the means of subsistence and enjoyment, were relieved by means of a new perfection which appeared in the shape of rain, and the streams thereby generated, and by the growth of plants, which now sprang up for the first time as a result of the conjunction of water and earth (130-135 and 155). Desire and cupidity, however, now again arose and led to acts of violent appropriation (136 f.). At this juncture the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, of different dispositions, who had formerly existed in the Kṛita age, were reproduced in the Trētā as Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and destructive men, as a result of their actions in their former existence (138-140). But in consequence of their dissensions and rapacity, the earth swallowed up all the existing plants (142-144). Under the pressure of the distress thus occasioned the inhabitants of the earth resorted to Brahmā, who milked the earth, through the medium of mount Sumeru acting as a calf, and recovered the plants which had disappeared (145-149). As, however, these plants did not propagate themselves spontaneously, Brahmā introduced agriculture (158-160). Having thus provided the means of subsistence, he divided the people into classes according to their characteristics (160-165). But as these classes did not perform their several duties, and came into mutual conflict, Brahmā prescribed their respective functions with greater precision (166-171); and assigned the future celestial abodes which the members of each class might attain by their fulfilment (172-174). He then ordained the four orders of householder, religious

¹⁰⁸ It is not quite clear, however, what is intended by the word *akāle*, "out of season," in verse 87. See the emendation proposed above in the note on that verse.

student, etc. (175-190). After a few verses in praise of moral purity (190-193), the abodes and destinies of the eminently righteous are set forth (194-199). Just when we had arrived at a point in the narrative, from which we might have imagined that it had only to be carried on further to afford us a sufficient explanation of the state of things existing up to the present age, we are suddenly arrested (199-202) by being informed that the people distributed according to the system of castes and orders did not multiply, and are introduced to a new mind-born creation, which took place in the Tretā age, to remedy this failure. We are next told (203) of what appears to be another creation of beings endowed with goodness and passion. And, finally, a yet further re-incorporation of previously existing souls is described as having taken place (205-209). It would thus seem that after all we are left without any account of the origin of the system of castes which prevailed when the Purāṇa was compiled. The only suppositions on which this conclusion can be avoided are either (1) that the cessation in the increase of the generation alluded to in verse 200, which led to the new creation, was not universal, that the race then existing did not entirely die out, but that the old blood was re-invigorated by that of the newly created beings; or (2) that the other set of creatures, mentioned in verse 203, as characterized by goodness and passion, were the progenitors of the present race of men. On these points, however, the text throws no light.

The preceding account of the creation of mankind and of the vicissitudes and deterioration of society, is in some places obscure and confused, and its several parts do not appear to be consistent with each other. At the outset the writer describes the creation of four thousand pairs of human beings, of whom each separate set of one thousand is distinguished by widely different innate characters, the first class having the quality of goodness, the second that of passion, the third those of passion and darkness, and the fourth that of darkness. Nevertheless (as in the parallel passage of the Vishṇu Purāṇa) we cannot find in the narrative the least trace of those inherent differences of character having for a long time manifested themselves by producing dissimilarity either of moral conduct or of physical condition; for the perfection, which is described as existing in the Kṛita age, is spoken of as if it was universal; and not only is no distinction alluded to as prevailing at this period between

the component parts of society, but we are expressly told that no castes or orders then existed. The deterioration also, which ensued towards the end of the Kṛita age, is described as general, and not peculiar to any class. How is this complete uniformity, first of perfection, and afterwards of declension, which, for anything that appears to the contrary, is predicated of the descendants of the whole of the four thousand pairs, to be reconciled with the assertion that each thousand of those pairs was characterized by different innate qualities? The difficulty is not removed by saying that the writer supposed that these inherent varieties of character existed in a latent or dormant state in the different classes, and were afterwards developed in their descendants; for he distinctly declares (verse 54) in general terms that mankind were at that period *sattva-bahulāḥ*, *i.e.* "possessed the quality of goodness in abundance;" and in the earlier part of the subsequent narrative no allusion is made to the different qualities at first ascribed to the four sets of a thousand pairs being separately developed in the members of the four classes respectively. In verse 74, indeed, it appears to be assumed that the division into castes had existed from the creation; for we there find an assertion that in "all the Manvantaras, according to the division of the four yugas," (including apparently the Kṛita) "there is declared to have existed a perfection effected by the observances of the castes and orders, and arising from the fulfilment of works;" but how is this to be reconciled with the express statement of verses 60 and 61, that "in the Kṛita age no works were performed which were either virtuous or sinful," and that "there then existed neither distinctions of caste or order, nor any mixture of castes?" In the Tretā age the state of deterioration continued, but no reference is made of any separation of classes till we come to verse 138, where it is said that the beings who in the Kṛita age had existed as the perfect mind-born sons of Brahmā, were now, as a consequence of their former actions, recalled into human existence, and in conformity with their previous characters as calm, fiery, laborious, or depressed, became Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, Sūdras, and men of violence. These creatures, after they had been furnished with the means of subsistence, were eventually divided into classes, according to their varieties of disposition, character, and occupation; and as at first they did not fulfil their proper duties, but encroached upon each others'

provinces, their functions were afterwards more stringently defined and the means of enforcing obedience were provided. Here it is intimated that different sets of beings were born as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, on account of the different qualities which they had manifested in a previous existence, and that in conformity with those same characteristics they were afterwards formally distributed into castes. This description is therefore so far consistent with itself. The difference of caste is made to depend upon the dispositions of the soul. But how are we to reconcile this postulation of different characters formerly exhibited with the description given in the previous part of the narrative, where we are informed that, in the earlier parts, at least, of the Kṛita age, all men were alike perfect, and that no actions were performed which were either virtuous or vicious? If such was the case at that period, how could the beings who then existed have manifested those differences of disposition and character which are asserted to have been the causes of their being subsequently reborn as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Sūdras, and Vaiśyas? It may be admitted that the differences of character, which are attributed in the Purāṇa to the four primeval sets of a thousand pairs of human beings, correspond to those qualities which are described as having subsequently given rise to the division into castes; but the assertion of such a state of uniform and universal perfection, as is said to have intervened between the creation of mankind and the realization of caste, seems incompatible with the existence of any such original distinctions of a moral character.

As regards this entire account when compared with the other two descriptions of the creation given in the previous part of this section, the same remarks are applicable as have been made in the last section, p. 65 f., on the corresponding passages from the Vishṇu Purāṇa.

The chapter which I have just translated and examined, is followed immediately by the one of which I have already in a preceding page quoted the commencement, descriptive of the creation of Asuras, Gods, Fathers, etc., from the different bodies assumed and cast off successively by Brahmā.

I shall now give an extract from the following, or tenth chapter, in which the legend of Satarūpā is related.

Sāta uvācha | 1. *Evambhūteshu lokeshu Brahmanā loka-karttrīṇā*¹⁹⁶ |

¹⁹⁶ This form *karttrīṇā* (one which, as is well known, may be optionally employed in

yadā tāḥ na pravarttante prajāḥ kenāpi hetunā | 2. *Tamo-mātrāṛṇito Brahmā tadā-prabhṛiti duḥkṛitāḥ* | *tataḥ sa vidadhe buddhim arthanishchaya-gāminīm* | 3. *Athātmani samasrākṣhīt tamo-mātrāṁ nijātmikām* | *rajaḥ-sattvam parājitya varttamānaṁ sa dharmataḥ* | 4. *Tapyate tena duḥkṛhena śokaṁ chakre jagat-patiḥ* | *tamas tu vyanuḥat tasmād rojas tach cha samūvṛṇot* | 5. *Tat tamaḥ pratinuttaṁ vai mithunaṁ samvyajāyata* | *adharmaś churaṇāj jāgne hiṁsā śokād ajāyata* | 6. *Tatas tasmīn samudbhūte mīthune charaṇātmani* | *tulaś cha bhagavān āsīt prītiśchainam aśīśriyat* | 7. *Svām tanuṁ sa tato Brahmā tām apohad abhāsvarām* | *dvidhā 'karot sa tuṁ deham ardhena puruṣo 'bhavat* | 8. *Ardhena nārī sā tasya Sutarūpā vyajāyata* | *prākṛitām bhūta-dhātṛm tām kāmād vai spīṣṭavān vibhuḥ* | 9. *Sā divam prīthivīm chaiva mahimnā vyāpya dhīṣṭhitā* | *Brahmaṇaḥ sā tanuḥ pūrvā divam āvṛitya tiṣṭhati* | 10. *Yā to ardhāt sṛijate nārī S'atarūpā vyajāyata* | *sā devī niyataṁ taptrā tapaḥ parama-duścharam* | *bharttāram dīptayaśasam Puruṣam pratyapadyata* | 11. *Sa vai Svāyambhuvaḥ pūrvam Puruṣo Manur uchyate* | *tasyaikasaptati-yugam Manvanta-ram ihochyate* | 12. *Labdhvā tu puruṣaḥ patnīm Sutarūpām ayoṇijām* | *tayā sa ramate sārddham tasmāt sā Ratir uchyate* | 13. *Prathamāḥ samprayogaḥ sa kalpāduu samavarttata* | *Virājam asṛijad Brahmā so 'bhavat Puruṣo Virāt* | 14. *Sa samrāt māsarūpāt tu vairājas tu Manuḥ smṛituh* | *sa vairājaḥ prajā-sargaḥ sa sarge puruṣo Manuḥ* | 15. *Vairājāt puruṣād vīrāch chhatarūpā vyajāyata* | *Priyavratottānapāduu putrau putracatūm-varau* |

"1. When the worlds had thus been formed by Brahmā their creator, but the creatures, for some reason did not engage in action,¹⁹⁷ (2) Brahmā, enveloped in gloom, and thenceforward dejected, formed a resolution tending to ascertain the fact. 3. He then created in himself (a body) of his own, formed of pure gloom (*tamas*), having overpowered the passion (*rajas*) and goodness (*sattva*) which existed (in him) naturally. 4. The Lord of the world was afflicted with that suffering, and la-

the neuter, but not in the masculine) is here used for metrical reasons. Such irregularities are, as we have seen, designated by the Commentators as *ārsha*. It is unlikely that Brahman should be here used in a neuter sense.

¹⁹⁷ The true reading here may be *pravarddhante*, in which case the sense will be "did not multiply." Compare the parallel passage in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 7, 4, p. 64.

mented.¹⁹⁸ He then dispelled the gloom, and covered over the passion. 5. The gloom, when scattered, was formed into a pair.¹⁹⁹ Unrighteousness arose from activity (?), and mischief sprang from sorrow. 6. That active (?) pair having been produced, he became glorious (?) and pleasure took possession of him. 7. Brahmā after that cast off that body of his, which was devoid of lustre, and divided his person into two parts; with the half he became a male (*puruṣha*) (8) and with the half a female: it was Satarūpā who was so produced to him. Under the impulse of lust he created her a material supporter of beings. 9. By her magnitude she pervaded both heaven and earth. That former body of Brahmā invests the sky. 10. This divine female Satarūpā, who was born to him from his half, as he was creating, by incessantly practising austere fervour of a highly arduous description, acquired for herself as a husband a Male (*puruṣha*) of glorious renown. He is called of old the Male, Manu Svāyambhuva; and his period (*manvantara*) is declared to extend to seventy-one Yugas. 12. This Male, having obtained for his wife, Satarūpā, not sprung from any womb, lived in dalliance with her (*ramate*); and from this she is called Rati (the female personification of sexual love). 13. This was the first cohabitation practised in the beginning of the Kalpa. Brahmā created Virāj; he was the Male, Virāj. 14. He is the sovereign (*saṃrāj*), from his having the form of a month; and Manu is known as the son of Virāj.²⁰⁰ This creation of living beings is called that of Virāj. In this creation Manu is the male. 15. Satarūpā bore to the heroic Puruṣha, son of Virāj, two sons, Priyavrata and Uttānapāda, the most eminent of those who have sons." This is followed by a further genealogy, into which I will not enter.

By comparing this account with the one extracted above, p. 64 f. from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 7, 1 ff., it will be seen that while it makes no allusion to the production of Rudra, as related in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (which, as well as the birth of the mental sons of Brahmā, the Vāyu Purāṇa had described in the preceding chapter, verses 67-83), it is somewhat fuller in regard to the legend of Satarūpā; and although it

¹⁹⁸ With this account of Brahmā's dejection and grief the accounts quoted above pp. 68 ff. from the Brāhmaṇas may be compared.

¹⁹⁹ Compare the narrative of the Vishṇu Purāṇa i. 7, 9 ff. quoted in p. 64 f.

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes, above, p. 36.

does not allow that Brahmā cohabited with his daughter, and assigns to her another husband, Manu Svāyambhūva, it describes the creator as having been actuated by carnal desire in generating her. I shall give further illustrations of this story in the next section.

SECT. IX.—*Legend of Brahmā and his daughter, according to the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and of Satarūpā, according to the Matsya Purāṇa.*

The story which forms the subject of the present section is noticed at some length in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 38–46, where one of the oldest passages in which it is related, is quoted from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 7, 4, 1 ff., together with one of a comparatively late age from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iii. 12, 28 ff. As however the legend, though repulsive in its character, is not without interest as illustrating the opinions which Indian mythologists have entertained regarding their deities, I shall quote two other texts in which it is narrated.

The first, from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 33, has, no doubt (along with the passage of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa just referred to, and another from the same work, xiv. 4, 2, 1 ff., quoted above, in p. 24 ff.), furnished the ideas which are expanded in the later versions of the story. It is as follows :

Prajāpatir vai svām duhitaram abhyadhyāyat | Divam ity anye āhur Ushasam ity anye | tām ṛiṣyo bhūtvā rohitām bhūtām abhyait | tam devā apaśyan | “akṛitām vai Prajāpatiḥ karoti” iti | te tam aicchhan yaḥ enam āriṣhyati | etam anyonyasmin na avindan | teshām yā eva ghoratamās tanvaḥ āsaṁs tāḥ ekadhā samabharan | tāḥ sambhṛitāḥ esha devo 'bhavat | tad asya etad bhūtavan-nāma | bhavati vai sa yo 'sya etad evaṁ nāma veda | tam devā abruvann “ayaṁ vai Prajāpatir akṛitam akar imam vidhya” iti | sa “tathā” ity abravīt | “sa vai vo varam vrinai” iti | “vrinīṣva” iti | sa etam eva varam avṛinīta paśunām ādhipatyam | tad asya etat paśuman-nāma | paśumān bhavati yo 'sya etad evaṁ nāma veda | tam abhyāyatya avidhyat | sa viddhaḥ ūrddhvo udapṛāpataḥ ityādi²⁰¹ |

²⁰¹ See the translation of this passage given by Dr. Haug in his Aitareya Brāhmaṇa

“Prajāpati lusted after his own daughter. Some call her the Sky, others Ushas. Becoming a buck, he approached her after she had become a doe. The gods saw him; (and said) Prajāpati does a deed which was never done (before).²⁰² They sought some one who should take vengeance on him. Such a person they did not find among themselves. They then gathered together their most dreadful bodies. These when combined formed this god (Rudra). Hence (arises) his name connected with Bhūta (*Bhūtapati*). That man flourishes²⁰³ who thus knows this name of his. The gods said to him, ‘This Prajāpati has done a deed which was never done before: pierce him.’ He replied, ‘so be it,’ (adding), ‘let me ask a boon of you.’ They rejoined, ‘ask.’ He asked for this boon, viz., lordship over cattle. Hence arises his name connected with Paśu (*Paśupati*). He who thus knows his name, becomes the owner of cattle. He then attacked (Prajāpati) and pierced him. He, when pierced, soared upwards,” etc. etc.

The second passage I proposed to cite is from the Matsya Purāṇa, chapter iii. verses 32 ff.: *Etad tattvātmakeṣu kṛtvā jagad dvedhā ajjanat* | 33. *Sāvitṛm loka-siddhyartham hṛidi kṛtvā samāsthitaḥ | tataḥ sanjapatas tasya bhitrā deham akalmaṣam* | 34. *strī-rūpam arddham akaroḍ arddham puruṣa-rūparat | Satarūpā cha sā khyātā Sāvitṛi cha nigadyate* | 35. *Sarasvaty atha Gāyatri Brahmāṇi cha parantapa* | *tataḥ sa Brahmadevās tām ātmajām ity akalpayat* | 36. *Dṛiṣṭvā tām vyathitas tāvat kāma-vāṇardito vibhuḥ* | “*aho rūpam aho rūpam*” *ity uvācha tadā ’vyayaḥ* | 37. *Tato Vṛsisishṭha-pramukhā “bhaginim” iti chukruśuḥ | Brahmā na kinchid dadṛise tan-mukhālokanād ṛite* | 38. “*Aho rūpam aho rūpam*” *iti āha punaḥ punaḥ | tataḥ prajānāma-namrāṇ tām punas tām abhyalokayat* | 39. *Atha praduḥkṣiṇām chakre sā pitur varavarninī | putrehhyo lajjitasyāṣya tad-rūpāloka-nechhayā* | 40. *Āvirbhūtam tato vaktram dakṣiṇam pāṇḍu-gaṇḍavat* |

vol. ii. pp. 218 ff.; and the remarks on this translation by Professor Weber, Indische Studien, ix. 217 ff.; and also Professor Roth’s explanation of the word *bhūtavat* in his Lexicon.

²⁰² This seems to be imitated in the line of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa iii. 12, 30, quoted in vol. iv. of this work, p. 40: *naitat pūrvaiḥ kṛtān tvad ye na karishyanti chāpare* | “This was never done by those before thee, nor will those after thee do it.”

²⁰³ *Bhavati*. In the Brāhmaṇas this verb has frequently the sense of prospering, as opposed to *parābhavati*, “he perishes.” See Böthlingk and Roth’s Lexicon, s. v., and the passages there referred to.

vismaya-sphurad-oshthañ cha pāschātyam udagāt tataḥ | 41. Chatur-
 thum abhavat pāschād vāmañ kāma-śarāturam | tato 'nyad abhavat
 tasya kāmāturatayā tathā | 42. Utpatantyās tadā "kāśe ālokena kutū-
 halāt | śrīṣṭy-arthañ yat kṛitam tena tapah paramadūrunam | 43. Tat
 sarvam nāśam agamat sva-sutopagamechhuyā | tenāśu²⁰⁴ vaktram abhavat
 panchamañ tasya dhīmatuḥ | 44. Āvirbhavaj jaṭābhīṣha tad vaktranchā-
 vrīṇot prabhuḥ | tatas tūn abravīd Brahmā putrān ātma-samudbhavān |
 45. "Prajāḥ sṛjadjhvam abhitaḥ sa-devāsura-mānushāḥ" | evam uktās
 tataḥ sarve sasṛjūr vividhāḥ prajāḥ | 46. Gāteshu teshu sṛṣṭyartham
 praṇūmāvanatām imām | upayame sa viśvātmā S'atarūpām aninditām |
 47. Sambabhūva tayā sūrdham alikāmāturo vibhuḥ | salajjāñ chakame
 devaḥ kamalodara-mandire | 48. Yāvad abda-satañ diryañ yathā 'nyah
 prākṛito janaḥ | tataḥ kālēna mahatā tasyāḥ putro 'bhavad Manuḥ | 49.
 Svāyambhūva iti khyātāḥ sa Virāḍ iti naḥ śrutam | tad-rūpa-guṇa-sāmā-
 nyād adhipūrusa uchyate | 50. Vairāja yatra te jātāḥ bahavaḥ saṁśīta-
 vrataḥ | Svāyambhūvā mahābhāgāḥ sapta sapta tathā 'pare | 51. Svā-
 rochishādyaḥ sarve te Brahma-tulya-svarūpinaḥ | Auttami-pramukhās
 tadvad yeshāñ tvañ saptamo 'dhunā | (Adhyāya. 4.) Manur uvācha |
 1. Aho kashṭatarañ chaitad angajāgamañ vibhoḥ | Kathaṁ na dosham
 agamat karmaṇā tena Padmajaḥ | 2. Parasparañcha sambandhaḥ sago-
 trāṇām abhūt katham | vaicāhikas tat-sulānām chhīndi me saṁśayañ
 vibho | Matsya uvācha | 3. Divyeyam ādi-sṛṣṭis tu rajo-guṇa-samud-
 bhavā | atīndriyendriyā tadvad atīndriya-śarīrikā | 4. Divya-tejomayī
 bhūpa divya-jñāna-samudbhavā | na chānyair abhitaḥ śakyā jñātuñ vai
 māṁsa-chakshushā | 5. Yathā bhujangāḥ sarpāṇām ākāśe sarva-pakshi-
 ṇām | vidanti mārgān divyānāñ divyā eva na mānavāḥ | 6. Kūryā-
 kāryena devāścha śubhāśubha-phala-pradāḥ | yasmāt tasmād na rājendra
 tad-vichāro nṛiṇāñ śubhaḥ | 7. Anyacheha sarva-devānām adhishṭhātū
 chaturmukhaḥ | gāyatrī Brahmanas tadvad anga-bhūtā nigadyate | 8.
 Amūrta-mūrttimad vōpi mīthunancha prachakshate | Viranchir yatra
 bhagavāns tatra devī Sarasvatī | 9 Bhārati yatra yatraiva tatra tatra
 Prajāpatiḥ | yathātapena rahitā chhāyā vai (? na) drīṣyate kvachit |
 10. Gāyatrī Brahmanāḥ pārśvam tathuiva na vimunchati | veda-rāṣīḥ
 smṛito Brahmā Sāvitrī tad-adhishṭhātū | 11. Tasmād na kashchid doshaḥ
 syāt Sāvitrī-gamane vibhoḥ | tathāpi lejjāvanataḥ Prajāpatir abhāt purā |
 12. Sva-sutopagamād Brāhmā śasāpa Kusumāyudham | yasmād mamāpi

²⁰⁴ Instead of *tenāśu* the Gaikowar MS. reads *tenordhva*.

bhavatā manah saṁkshobhitāṁ śaraiḥ | 13. *Tasmāt tvad-deham achirād Rudro bhasmīkarishyati* | *tataḥ prasādayāmāsa Kāmādevas Chaturmukham* | 14. “*Na mām akūṛaṇaṁ śaptuṁ tvam ihūrhasi mām ava* | *aham evaṁ-vidhaḥ śṛiṣṭas tvayaiva chaturānana* | 15. *Indriya-kṣobha-janakaḥ sarveśhām eva dehinām* | *strī-puṁsor avichāreṇa mayā sarvatra sarvadā* | 16. *Kṣobhyam manah prayatnena tvayaivoktam purā vibho* | *tasmād anaparādheṇa tvayā śaptas tathā vibho* | 17. *Kuru prasādam bhagavan sra-śarirūptaye punaḥ* | *Brahmā uvācha* | 18. *Vaivasvate 'ntare prāpte Yādavānaya-sambharaḥ* | *Rāmo nōma yadā martyo mat-sattva-balam āsritaḥ* | 19. *Aratiryāsura-dhvaṁsi Dvārakām adhicitṣyati* | *tad-dhātus tat-samaścha* ²⁰⁶ *traṁ tadā putratvam eśhyasi ityādi* |

“32. Having thus formed the universe, consisting of the principles, he generated a twofold creation, (33) having, with a view to the completion of the world, placed and kept Sāvitṛī in his heart. Then as he was muttering prayers, he divided his spotless body (34) and gave to the half the form of a woman, and to the half that of a male. (This female) is called Satarūpā, Sāvitṛī, (35) Sarasvatī, Gāyatrī, and Brahmāṇī. Brahmā then took her for his daughter. 36. Beholding her, the imperishable deity, distressed, tortured with the arrows of love, exclaimed, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ 37. Then (his sons) headed by Vasishṭha, cried aloud, ‘(our) sister.’ Brahmā saw nothing else, looking only at her face; (38) and exclaimed again and again, ‘o what beauty! o what beauty!’ He then again gazed upon her, as she bend forward in obeisance. 39. The fair woman then made a circuit round her father. As on account of his sons he felt ashamed; from his desire of gazing on her beauty (40) there appeared (on his head) a southern face with pale cheeks; and there was afterwards manifested a western face with lips quivering with astonishment. 41. A fourth was subsequently formed, beautiful, disquieted by the arrows of love. Then another was produced from the disturbing influence of the same passion, (42) and from eagerness in gazing after her as she rose upwards in the sky. That austere fervour, extremely dreadful, which Brahmā had practised with a view to creation, (43) was entirely lost through his desire to approach his daughter (carnally). Through this was produced speedily the fifth face (or, according to one MS., the upper,

²⁰⁶ Such appears to be the reading of the Gaikowar MS. The original reading of the Taylor MS. has been erased, and another substituted, *tatas tat-samaye tvam cha*.

the fifth face) of the wise deity, (44) which appeared with matted hair, and which he covered up. Brahmā then said to the sons who had sprung from him, (45) 'create living beings everywhere, gods, asuras, and men.' They, being thus addressed, created beings of various kinds. 46. When they had gone away for the purpose of creating, he, who is the universe, took for his wife the unblamed Satarūpā. 47. Sickened with love, he cohabited with her: like any ordinary being, he loved her,—though she was full of shame—embowered in the hollow of a lotus, (48) for a hundred years of the gods. A long time after, a son was born to her, Manu (49) called Svāyambhuva, who, as we have heard, is Virāj. From their community of form and qualities he is called Adhipūruṣa.²⁰⁶ 50. From him were sprung those numerous Vairājas, steadfast in religious observances, those seven glorious sons of Svāyambhū, and those other seven Manus, (51) beginning with Svārochisha and Autami, in form equal to Brahmā, of whom thou²⁰⁷ art now the seventh. (4th chapter) 1. Manu says: 'Ah! this is most afflicting, this entrance of love into the god. How was it that the lotus-born did not incur guilt by that act? 2. And how did a matrimonial connection take place between persons of the same family who were sprung from him? Solve this doubt of mine, o Lord. The Fish replied: 3. This primeval creation was celestial, produced from the quality of passion (*rajas*); it had senses removed beyond the cognizance of sense, and bodies of the same description, (4) was possessed of celestial energy, derived from celestial knowledge, and cannot be perfectly perceived by others with the eye of flesh. 5. Just as serpents know the path of serpents, and (beings living) in the sky know the path of all sorts of birds, so too the celestials alone, and not men, know the way of celestials. 6. And since it is the gods who award the recompence, favourable or unfavourable, according as good or bad deeds have been done,—it is not good for men to examine this (question). 7. Furthermore, the four-faced (Brahmā) is the ruler of all the gods, and in like manner the Gāyatrī is declared to be a member of Brahmā. 8. And, as

²⁰⁶ Compare the Puruṣa Sūkta, above p. 8, in the fifth verse of which the words *Virūjo adhi pūruṣaḥ* occur. If the last two words are combined they give the name in the text.

²⁰⁷ This account is given by the deity represented as incarnate in a Fish, to Manu Vaivasvata.

they say, there is a pair consisting of the formless, and of that which has form. Wherever the divine Viranchi (Brahmā) is, there is also the goddess Sarasvatī. 9. Wherever Bhārati (a name of Sarasvatī) is, there is also Prajāpati. Just as shadow is nowhere seen without sunshine, (10) so Gāyatrī never forsakes the side of Brahmā. He is called the collected Veda, and Sāvitrī rests upon him; (11) there can therefore be no fault in his approaching her. Nevertheless, Brahmā, the lord of creatures, was bowed down with shame, (12) because he had approached his own daughter, and cursed Kusumāyudha²⁰⁸ (Kāma), (in these words) 'As even my mind has been agitated by thy arrows, Rudra shall speedily reduce thy body to ashes.' Kāmadeva then propitiated the four-faced deity, saying, (14) 'Thou oughtest not to curse me without cause: preserve me. It is by thee thyself that I have been created with such a character, (15) an agitator of the organs of sense of all embodied creatures. The minds both of men and women must always and everywhere (16) be energetically stirred up by me without hesitation: this thou thyself hast formerly declared. It is therefore without any fault of mine that I have been thus cursed by thee. 17. Be gracious, lord, that I may recover my body.' Brahmā answered: 18. 'When the Vaivasvata Manvantara shall have arrived, a mortal, named Rāma, sprung from the Yādava race, deriving force from my essence, (19) and, becoming incarnate as a destroyer of Asuras, shall inhabit Dvārakā. Thou shalt then become a son of his substance and like to him," etc.

The narrator of this legend does not hesitate to depict in the strongest colours (though without the least approach to grossness) the helpless subjection of Brahmā to the influence of sexual desire. This illicit indulgence was regarded by the authors of the Śatapatha and Aitareya Brāhmaṇas as in the highest degree scandalous, and they do not attempt to palliate its enormity by any mystical explanation, such as that which we find in the Matsya Purāṇa. Whether this apology proceeded from the original narrator, or from a later writer of a more sensitive disposition, who perceived its inconsistency with any elevated idea of the superior powers, is difficult to say. It is quite possible that the same writer who gave his fancy scope in describing the unbecoming scene, of which the substance had been handed down in works regarded

²⁰⁸ The word means "He whose weapons are flowers."

as authoritative, may also have thought it necessary to discover some device for counteracting the scandal. On the other hand, the original writer seems to cut himself off from the privilege of resorting to any mystical refinements to explain away the offence, by having in the first instance represented Brahmā's indulgence as on a level with that of ordinary beings. And even after the apology has been concluded, we are still told that Brahmā could not help feeling ashamed of what he had done. *The writer of the explanation ought to have perceived that if his defence was of any value, the deity for whom he was apologizing had no ground for humiliation. But he did not venture to expunge the popular features of the story. The grounds on which the apology proceeds are partly of the same character as those which the writer of the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assumes in the passage (x. 33, 27 ff.) which is given in the fourth volume of this work, pp. 42 f., viz., that the gods are not to be judged on the same principles as men,—that “the celestials have laws of their own” (*sunt superis sua jura*). The Bhāgavata Purāṇa has, however, different measures for Brahmā and for Kṛishṇa; for whilst the adultery of the latter is defended in the verses just referred to, no desire is shown to vindicate the former in the other passage, iii. 12, 28 ff., adduced in the same volume, page 40.

As regards the details of the story according to the different Purāṇas, I may observe that while the Vishṇu, the Vāyu (see above, pp. 65, and 106), and the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, xl. 13 f., represent Sutarūpā as the wife of Manu Svāyambhuva, the Matsya Purāṇa, as we have just seen, declares her to have been the spouse of Brahmā himself, and the mother of Manu Svāyambhuva.²⁰⁰ This is repeated in the twenty-sixth verse of the fourth chapter :

*Yā sū dehārdḍha-sambhūtā Gāyatri brahma-vādinī | jananī yā Manor devī Satarūpā Satendriyā | 27. Ratir Manas Tapo Buddhir mahad-ādi-samudbhavā*²¹⁰ | *tataḥ sa Satarūpāyām saptāpatyāny aḥjanat | 28. Ye Marichyādayaḥ putrāḥ mānasās tasya dhīmataḥ | teskām ayam abhūt lokaḥ sarva-jnānātmaḥ purā | 29. Tuto 'sṛjād Vāmadevam triśūla-vara-dhārinam | Sanatkumāraṁcha vibhum pūrveshām api pūrvajam | 30.*

²⁰⁰ Compare the account given in Manu's Institutes (above, p. 36), which does not coincide in all particulars with any of the Purāṇas here quoted.

²¹⁰ In this line the original readings are in several places erased in the Taylor MS. I have endeavoured to restore it with the help of the Gaikowar MS.

*Vāmadevaś tu bhagavān asrijād mukhalo dvijān | rājanyān asrijād bāhvor.
Viś-śūdrāv ūru-pādāyoh | 35. Svāyambhuvo Manur dhīmāns
tapas taptvā suduścharam | patnīm avāpa rūpādhyām Anantām nāma
nāmataḥ | Priyavratottānapādau Manus tasyām ajñjanat |*

"She who was produced from the half of his body, Gāyatri the declarer of sacred science, she who was the mother of Manu, the goddess Satarūpā (*i.e.* having a hundred forms), Śatendriyā (*i.e.* having a hundred senses), (27) (was also) Rati, Mind, Austere Fervour, Intellect, sprung from Mahat and the other principles. He then begot upon Satarūpā seven sons. 28. This world, composed of all knowledge, sprang from Marīchi, and the others who were the mind-born sons of that wise Being. He next created Vāmadeva (Mahādeva), the wielder of the excellent trident, and the lord Sanatkumāra, born before the earliest. 30. Then the divine Vāmadeva created Brāhmins from his mouth, Rājanyas from his breast, the Viś and the Śūdra from his thighs and feet." [After describing in the following verses some other creations of Vāmadeva, the writer proceeds in verse 35:] "The wise Manu Svāyambhuva, having practised austere fervour of the most arduous kind, obtained a beautiful wife named Anantā. On her he begot Priyavrata and Uttānapāda."

Having made Manu the son of Satarūpā, the writer was obliged to give him another female for a wife, as we see he has here done.

It will be observed that in this passage Vāmadeva—and not Brahmā, as in the other Purāṇas—is described as the creator of the four castes.

SECT. X.—*Quotations from the Rāmāyaṇa on the Creation, and on the Origin of Castes.*

The substance of the first of the following passages has already been stated above in a note on page 36. Part of it is also quoted in p. 54, and it is more fully cited in the fourth volume of this work, p. 29, but for facility of reference I repeat it here.

Rāmāyaṇa (Bombay edition) ii. 110, 1. *Kruddham ajnāya Rāmaṁ tu
Vasiṣṭhaḥ pratyuvācha ha | Jābālir api jānīte lokasyāsya gatāgatim |
2. Nivarttayitu-kāmas tu tvām etad vākyam abravīt | imām loka-samut-*

*ṣṣattīm loka-nātha nibodha me | 3. Sarvaṁ salīlam evāsīt prithivī tatra
nirmītā | tataḥ samabhavat Brahmā Svayambhūr daivataiḥ saha | 4. Sa
varāhas tato bhūtā prejjahūra vasundharām | asrijach cha jagat sarvaṁ
saha putraiḥ kṛitātmaḥ | 5. Ākāṣaprabhavo Brahmā śāśvato nitya
avyayaḥ | tasmād Marīchiḥ sanjajne Marīcheḥ Kaśyapaḥ sutaḥ | 6. Vivas-
vān Kaśyapāj jagne Manur Vairasvataḥ svayam | sa tu prajāpatiḥ pūr-
vam Ikshvākuḥ tu Manuḥ sutaḥ | 7. Yasyeṣam prathamam dattā samṛid-
dhā Manunā mahī | tam Ikshvākuḥ Ayodhyayām rājānam viddhi pūr-
vakam |*

“1. Perceiving Rāma to be incensed²¹¹ Vasishṭha replied: ‘Jābāli also knows the destruction and renovation of this world. 2. But he spoke as he did from a desire to induce you to return. Learn from me, lord of the earth, this (account of) the origin of the world. 3. The universe was nothing but water. In it the earth was fashioned. Then Brahmā Svayambhū came into existence, with the deities. He next, becoming a boar, raised up the earth, and created the entire world, with the saints his sons. 5. Brahmā, the eternal, unchanging, and undecaying, was produced from the æther (*ākāśa*). From him sprang Marīchi, of whom Kaśyapa was the son. 6. From Kaśyapa sprang Vivasvat: and from him was descended Manu, who was formerly the lord of creatures (*prajāpati*). Ikshvāku²¹² was the son of Manu (7) and to him this prosperous earth was formerly given by his father. Know that this Ikshvāku was the former king in Ayodhyā.”

The account which I next quote does not agree with the last in its details, as, besides representing the Prajāpatis or sons of Brahmā to be seventeen in number, it places Marīchi, Kaśyapa, and Vivasvat in the same rank as contemporaries, while the former narrative declares them to have been respectively father, son, and grandson.

Rāmāyaṇa iii. 14, 5. *Rāmasya vacanaṁ śrutvā kulam ātmānam eva
cha | āchachakṣhe dvijas tasmāi sarva-bhūta-samudbhavam | 6. Pūrva-
kūle mahābāho ye prajāpatayo 'bhuvan | tān me nigadataḥ sarvān āditaḥ
śṛiṇu Rāghava | 7. Kurdaṁaḥ prathamāś teshāṁ Vikṛitāś tad-anan-
taram | S'eshuś cha Saṁśrayāś chaiva Bahuputrāś cha vīryavān | 8.*

²¹¹ On account of a materialistic and immoral argument which had been addressed to him by Jābāli to induce him to disregard his deceased father's arrangements regarding the succession to the throne. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xix. pp. 303 ff.

²¹² The name Ikshvāku occurs in R. V. x. 60, 4. See Professor Max Müller's article in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, pp. 451 and 462.

Sthānuṛ Marīchir Atriś cha Kratuś chaiva mahābalaḥ | Pulastyaś chān-girāś chaiva Prachetāḥ Pulahas tathā | 9. Dakṣo Vivasvān aparo 'rish-ṭanemiś cha Rūghava | Kāśyapaś cha mahatejās teshām āśīch cha paśchi-mah | 10. Prajāpates tu Dakṣasya babhūvur iti viśrutāḥ | śhaṣṭir duhitaro Rāma yaśasvinyo mahāyasāḥ | 11. Kāśyapaḥ pratijagrāha tāsām aṣṭau sumadhyamāḥ | Aditiṁ cha Ditiṁ chaiva Danūm api cha Kālakāṁ | 12. Tāmrāṁ Krodhavaśāṁ chaiva Manuṁ²¹³ chūpy Analām api | tās tu kanyās tataḥ pritaḥ Kāśyapaḥ punar abravīt | 13. Putrāṁs trailokya-bhartrīn vai jānayishyatha mat-samān | Aditis tan-mānāḥ Rāma Ditiścha Danūṛ eva cha | 14. Kālakā cha mahābāho śeṣhās tv amanaso²¹⁴ 'bhavan | Adityāṁ jānīre devās trayastrīṁśad arindama | 15. Ādityā Vasavo Rudrā Āśvinau cha parantapa | . . . 29. Manuṛ manushyān jānayat Kāśyapasya mahātmanaḥ | brāhmaṇān kṣhattriyaṁ vaiśyaṁ śūdrāṁś cha manujarṣhabha | 30. Mukhato brāhmaṇā jātāḥ ura-śāḥ kṣhattriyaś lathā | ūrubhyaṁ jānīre vaiśyaḥ padbhyāṁ śūdrā iti śrutiḥ | 31. Sarvān punya-phalān vṛikṣhān Analā 'pi vyajyāta |

"5. Having heard the words of Rāma, the bird (*Jaṭāyus*) made known to him his own race, and himself, and the origin of all beings. 6. 'Listen while I declare to you from the commencement all the Prajāpatis (lords of creatures) who came into existence in the earliest time. 7. Kardama was the first, then Vikṛta, Sesha, Saṁśraya, the energetic Bahuputra, (8) Sthānu, Marīchi, Atri, the strong Kratu, Pulastya, Angiras, Prachetas, Pulaha, (9) Daksha, then Vivasvat, Arisṭhanemi, and the glorious Kāśyapa, who was the last. 10. The Prajāpati Duksha is famed to have had sixty daughters. 11. Of these Kāśyapa took in marriage eight elegant maidens, Aditi, Diti, Danū, Kālakā, (12) Tāmrā, Krodhavaśā, Manu,²¹³ and Analā. Kāśyapa, pleased, then said

²¹³ *Balām Atibalām api.*—Gorr.

²¹⁴ *Manoratha-hīnūḥ.*—Comm.

²¹⁵ I should have doubted whether Manu could have been the right reading here, but that it occurs again in verse 29, where it is in like manner followed in verse 31 by Analā, so that it would certainly seem that the name Manu is intended to stand for a female, the daughter of Daksha. The Gauḍa recension, followed by Signor Gorresio (iii. 20, 12), adopts an entirely different reading at the end of the line, viz. *Balām Atibalām api*, "Balā and Atibalā," instead of Manu and Analā. I see that Professor Roth s.v. adduces the authority of the Amara Kośha and of the Commentator on Pāṇini for stating that the word sometimes means "the wife of Manu." In the following text of the Mahābhārata i. 2553, also, Manu appears to be the name of a female: *Anavadyām Manuṁ Vāṁśām Asurīm Mūrgaṇapriyām | Anūpām Subhagām Bhūśīm iti Prūdā vyajyāta |* "Prūdā (daughter of Daksha) bore Anavadyā, Manu, Vāṁśā, Asurī, Mūrgaṇapriyā, Anūpā, Subhagā, and Bhūśī.

to these maids, (13) 'ye shall bring forth sons like to me, preservers of the three worlds.' Aditi, Diti, Danū, (14) and Kālakā assented; but the others did not agree. Thirty-three gods were borne by Aditi, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, and the two Aśvins." [The following verses 15-28 detail the offspring of Diti, Danū, Kālakā, Tāmṛā, Krodhavaśā, as well as of Kraunchī, Bhāsī, Syenī, Dhṛitarāshṭrī, and Śukī the daughters of Kālakā, and of the daughters of Krodhavaśā. (Compare the Mahābharata, i. 2620-2635; and Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 72 f.) After this we come upon Manu and the creation of mankind.] "29. Manu, (wife) of Kāśyapa,²¹⁶ produced men, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. 30. 'Brāhmanas were born from the mouth, Kshattriyas from the breast, Vaiśyas from the thighs, and Sūdras from the feet,' so says the Veda. 31. Anālā gave birth to all trees with pure fruits."

It is singular to observe that in this passage, after having represented men of all castes as sprung from Manu, the writer next adds a verse to state, on the authority of the Veda, that the different castes were produced from the different parts of the body out of which they issued. Unless Manu's body be here meant, there is a contradiction between the two statements. If Manu's body is meant, the assertion conflicts with the common account. And if the Manu here mentioned is, as appears from the context, a woman, we should naturally conclude that her offspring was born in the ordinary way; especially as she is said to have been one of the wives of Kāśyapa.

The next passage from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, 74, 8 f., describes the condition of men in the Kṛita age, and the subsequent introduction of the caste system in the Tretā. The description purports to have been occasioned by an incident which had occurred just before. A Brāhman had come to the door of Rāma's palace in Ayodhyā, carrying the body of his dead son,²¹⁷ and bewailing his loss, the blame

²¹⁶ The text reads Kāśyapa, "a descendant of Kāśyapa," who, according to Rām. ii. 110, 6, ought to be Vivasvat. But as it is stated in the preceding part of this passage iii. 14, 11 f. that Manu was one of Kāśyapa's eight wives, we must here read Kāśyapa. The Gauḍa recension reads (iii. 20, 30) *Manur manushyānāṁ cha tathā janayāmāsa Rāghava*, instead of the corresponding line in the Bombay edition.

²¹⁷ The boy is said, in 73, 5, to have been *apṛāpta-yauvanam būlam pancha-varsha-sahasrakam* | "a boy of five thousand years who had not attained to puberty!" The Commentator says that *varsha* here means not a year, but a day (*varsha-śabdō 'tra*

of which (as he was himself unconscious of any fault) he attributed to some misconduct on the part of the king. Rāma in consequence con-
voked his councillors, when the divine sage Nārada spoke as follows :

8. *S'rinu rājan yathā 'kāle prāpto bālasya sankshayaḥ | śrutvā kart-
taryatām rājan kurushva Raghunandana |* 9. *purā kṛta-yuge rājan
brāhmaṇā vai tapasvināḥ |* 10. *Abrahmaṇas tadū rājan na tapasvī ka-
thanchana | tasmīn yuge prajvalite brahmanabhūte tv anāvṛite |* 11. *Amṛi-
tyavas tadā sarve jajñire dīrgha-darśināḥ | tatas tretā-yugaṁ nāma mā-
navānām vapushmatām |* 12. *Kshattriyā yatra jāyante pūrveṇa tapasā
'naitāḥ | viryyeṇa tapasā chaiva te 'dhikāḥ pūrva-janmani | mānavā ye
mahātmānas tatra tretā-yuge yuge |* 13. *Brahma kshattriṇā cha tat sar-
vaṁ yat pūrvam avaraṁ cha yat | yugayor ubhayor asīt sama-vīryya-
samanvitaṁ |* 14. *Apasāntas tu te sarve viśeṣam adhikaṁ tataḥ | sthā-
panāṁ cakrire tatra chāturvārṇyasya sammatam |* 15. *Tasmīn yuge
prajvalite dharmabhūte hy anāvṛite | adharmāḥ pādām ekaṁ tu pātayāt
prithivītale | 19. Pātite tv anṛite tasmīn adharmeṇa mahītale |
śubhāny evācharaḥ lokāḥ satya-dharma-parāyanaḥ |* 20. *Tretā-yuge cha
varttante brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś cha ye | tapo 'tapyanta te sarve śūśra-
hāṁ apare janāḥ |* 21. *Sva-dharmāḥ paramas teshāṁ vaiśya-śūdrāṁ
tadā 'gamat | pūjāṁ cha sarva-varṇinām śūdrāś cakrur viśeṣataḥ |
. . . . 23. Tataḥ pādām adharmaṣya dvītiyam avatārayāt | tato
dvāpara-sankhyā sā yugasya samajāyata |* 24. *Tasmīn dvāpara-sankhye
tu varttamāne yuga-kṣaye | dharmas chānritaṁ chaiva varṣidhe puru-
ṣarshabha |* 25. *Asmīn dvāpara-sankhyāte tapo 'vīśyūn samāviśat |*
tribhyo yugebhyas trīn varṇān kramād vai tapa āviśat | 26. *Tribhyo
yugebhyas trīn varṇān dharmascha pariniśchītaḥ | na śūdro labhate
dharmaṁ yugatas tu nararshabha |* 27. *Iti na-vargo nṛipa-śreṣṭha
tapyate sumahat tapaḥ | bhuvishyachchhūdrayonyām hi tapaś-churyā
kalau yuge |* 28. *adharmāḥ paramo rājan dvāpare śūdra-janmanāḥ |
sa vai vishaya-paryante tara rājan mahātapāḥ |* 29. *Adya tapyati
durbuddhis tena bāla-budho hy ayam |*

Nārada speaks : 8. "Hear, o king, how the boy's untimely death
occurred: and having heard the truth regarding what ought to be

dinoparah),—just as it does in the ritual prescription that a man should perform a
sacrifice lasting a thousand years ("sahasra-saṁvatsaram satram upāśīta" *iti vat*),—
and that thus some interpreters made out the boy's age to be sixteen, and others under
fourteen. But this would be a most unusual mode of reckoning age.

done, do it. 9. Formerly, in the Kṛita age, Brāhmins alone practised austere fervour (*tapas*). 10. None who was not a Brāhman did so in that enlightened age, instinct with divine knowledge (or, with Brahma), unclouded (by darkness). 11. At that period all were born immortal, and far-sighted. Then (came) the Tretā age, the era of embodied men, (12) in which the Kshattriyas were born, distinguished still by their former austere fervour; although those men who were great in the Tretā age had been greater, both in energy and austere fervour, in the former birth. 13. All the Brāhmins and Kshattriyas, both the former and the later, were of equal energy in both Yugas.²¹⁸ 14. But not perceiving any more distinction (between the then existing men) they all²¹⁹ next established the approved system of the four castes. 15. Yet in that enlightened age, instinct with righteousness, unclouded (by darkness), unrighteousness planted one foot upon the earth.” [After some other remarks (verses 16–18), which are in parts obscure, the writer proceeds:] 19. “But, although this falsehood had been planted upon the earth by unrighteousness, the people, devoted to true righteousness, practised salutary observances. 20. Those Brāhmins and Kshattriyas who lived in the Tretā practised austere fervour, and the rest of mankind obedience. 21. (The principle that) their own duty was the chief thing pervaded the Vaiśyas and Sūdras among them: and the Sūdras especially paid honour to all the (other) classes. . . . 23. Next the second foot of unrighteousness was planted on the earth, and the number of the Dvāpara (the third yuga) was produced. 24. When this deterioration of the age numbered as the Dvāpara, had come into existence,

²¹⁸ The Commentator says, this means that in the Kṛita age the Brāhmins were superior, and the Kshattriyas inferior (as the latter had not then the prerogative of practising *tapas*), but that in the Tretā both classes were equal (*ubhayor yugayor madhye kṛita-yuge brahma pūrvam tapo-viryūbhyām utkrishṭam kshattriām chūvarām cha tābhyām tapo-viryūbhyām nyūnam āsit | tat sarvam brahma-kshattrā-rūpam ubhayam tretāyām sama-vīrya-samanvītam āsit | kṛite kshattriyūnām tapasy anadhikārāt tadyugiyebhyo brāhmaṇebhyas teshām nyūnatā | tretāyām tu ubhayo rapī tapo-dhikārād ubhāv api tapo-viryūbhyām samau* | But in the previous verse (12) it is said that the Kshattriyas were born in the Tretā distinguished by their former *tapas*. But perhaps they were formerly Brahmins, according to verses 9, 10, and 12.

²¹⁹ Manu and other legislators of that age, according to the Commentator (*Manu-ādityaḥ sarve tātālīkākāḥ dharma-pravarttanādhiḥkṛitāḥ*). He adds that in the Kṛita age all the castes were spontaneously devoted to their several duties, although no fixed system had been prescribed (*kṛite tu vinaiḥ sṭhāpanam svayam eva sarve varṇāḥ sva-sva-dharma-ratāḥ*).

unrighteousness and falsehood increased. 25. In this age, numbered as the Dvāpara, austere fervour entered into the Vaiśyas. Thus in the course of three ages it entered into three castes; (26) and in the three ages righteousness (*dharma*) was established in three castes. But the Sūdra does not attain to righteousness through the (lapse of these three) ages. 27. A man of low caste performs a great act of austere fervour. Such observance will belong to the future race of Sūdras in the Kali age, (28) but is unrighteous in the extreme if practised by that caste in the Dvāpara. On the outskirts of thy territory such a foolish person, of intense fervour, is practising austerities. Hence this slaughter of the boy."

Here then was a clue to the mystery of the young Brāhman's death. A presumptuous Sūdra, paying no regard to the fact that in the age²²⁰ in which he lived the prerogative of practising self-mortification had not yet descended to the humble class to which he belonged, had been guilty of seeking to secure a store of religious merit by its exercise. Rāma mounts his car Pushpaka, makes search in different regions, and at length comes upon a person who was engaged in the manner alleged. The Sūdra, on being questioned, avows his caste, and his desire to conquer for himself the rank of a god by the self-mortification he was undergoing. Rāma instantly cuts off the offender's head. The gods applaud the deed, and a shower of flowers descends from the sky upon the vindicator of righteousness. Having been invited to solicit a boon from the gods, he asks that the Brāhman boy may be resuscitated, and is informed that he was restored to life at the same moment when the Sūdra was slain. (Sections 75 and 76.)²²¹

The following curious account of the creation of mankind, among whom it states that no distinction of class (or colour) originally existed, is given in the Uttara Kānda, xxx. 19 ff., where Brahmā says to Indra:

Amarendra mayā buddhyā prajāḥ sṛjṣhās tathā prabho | eka-varnāḥ sama-bhāṣhā eka-rūpāḥ cha sarvaśaḥ | 20. *Tāsām nāsti viśesho hi darśane lakṣhaṇe 'pi vā | tato 'ham ekāgramanās tāḥ prajāḥ samachintayam |* 21. *So 'ham tāsām viśeshārtham striyam ekām vinirmame | yad yat prajānām pratyangam viśiṣṭam tat tad uddhṛitam |* 22. *Tato mayā*

²²⁰ The Tretā, according to the Commentator.

²²¹ See the Rev. Professor Banerjea's Dialogues on the Hindu philosophy, pp. 44 ff., where attention had previously been drawn to the story.

*rūpa-guṇair ahalyā strī vinirmītā | ḥalam nāmeḥa vairūpyaṁ ḥalyaṁ
tat-prabhavam bhavet | 23. Yasyā na vidyate ḥalyam tenāhalyeti viśrutā |
Ahalyety eva cha mayā tasyā nāma prakīrtitā | 24. Nirmīṭyāṁ cha
devendra tasyāṁ nūryūṁ surarābhā | bhaviṣyati kasyaiṣā mama
chintā tato 'bhavat | 25. Tvaṁ tu 'Sakra tadā nārīm jānīṣhe manasā
prabho | sthānādḥikatayā patnī mamaīṣeti purandara | 26. Sa mayā
nyūsa-bhūtā tu Gautamasya mahātmanaḥ | nyastā bahūni varṣāṇi tena
niryātītā cha ha | 27. Tatas tasya parijñāya mahāsthāiryam mahāmū-
neḥ | jñātvā tapasi siddhiṁ cha patny-arthāṁ sparṣitā tadā | 28. Sa
tayā saha dharmātmanā ramate sma mahāmuniḥ | āsan nīrāsā devās tu
Gautame dattayā tayā | 29. Tvaṁ krudḍhas tv iha kāmātmā gatvā
tasyāśramam muneḥ | dṛiṣṭvānās cha tadā tām strīṁ dīptām agni-
śikhāṁ iva | 30. Sā tvayā dharṣitā 'Sakra kāmārttena samanyunā |
dṛiṣṭas traṁ cha tadā tena āsrame paramarṣiṇā | 31. Tatas krudḍhena
tenāsi śaptuḥ paramatejasā | gato 'si yena devendra daśū-bhāga-vipar-
īyam |*

"19. O chief of the immortals (Indra) all creatures were formed by my will of one class (or colour), with the same speech, and uniform in every respect. 20. There was no distinction between them in appearance, or in characteristic marks. I then intently reflected on these creatures. 21. To distinguish between them I fashioned one woman. Whatever was most excellent in the several members of different creatures was taken from them, (22) and with this (aggregate) I formed a female, faultless in beauty and in all her qualities. *Uḥa* means 'ugliness,' and *halya*, 'what is produced from ugliness.' 23. The woman in whom there is no *halya*, is called *Ahalyā*. And this was her name to which I gave currency. 24. When this female had been fashioned, I anxiously considered to whom she should belong. 25. Thou, Indra, didst, from the eminence of thy rank, determine in thy mind, 'She must be my spouse.' 26. I, however, gave her in trust to the great Gautama; and after having retained her in charge for many years, he restored her. 27. Knowing then the great steadfastness of that distinguished Muni, and the perfection of his austere fervour, I, in due form, gave her to him for his wife. 28. The holy sage lived with her in the enjoyment of connubial love. But the gods were filled with despair when she had been given away to Gautama. 29. And thou, Indra, angry, as well as inflamed with lust, wentest to the Muni's hermitage,

and didst behold that female brilliant as the flame of fire. 30. She was then corrupted by thee who wert tormented by lust, as well as heated by anger.²²² But thou wert then seen by the eminent rishi in the hermitage, (31) and cursed by that glorious being in his indignation. Thou didst in consequence fall into a reverse of condition and fortune," etc., etc.

SECT. XI.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata on the same subjects.*

The first passage which I shall adduce is from the Ādi Parvan, or first book, verses 2517 ff. :

Vaiṣampāyana uvācha | hanta te kathayishyāmi namaskṛitya Svayambhūre | surādīnām ahaṁ samyak lokānām prabharāpyayam | Brahmano mānasāḥ putrāḥ viditāḥ śhaṇ-maharshayaḥ | Marīchir Atry-angirasau Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Marīcheḥ Kaśyapaḥ putraḥ Kaśyapāt tu prajā imāḥ | prajājnire mahābhāgā Dakṣha-kanyās trayodaśa | 2520. Aditir Ditir Danuḥ Kālā Danūyaḥ Sīmḥikā tathā | Krodhā Pradhā cha Vīśvā cha Vinatā Kapilā Munīḥ | Kadrūś cha manujavyāghra Dakṣha-kanyairā Bhārata | etāsūn vīrya-sampannam putra-pautram anantakam |

"Vaiṣampāyana said: I shall, after making obeisance to Svayambhū, relate to thee exactly the production and destruction of the gods and other beings. Six²²³ great rishis are known as the mind-born sons

²²² In regard to this story of Indra and Ahalyā, as well as to that of Brahmā and his daughter, above referred to, see the explanation given by Kumārila Bhattacha, as quoted by Professor Max Müller in his Hist. of Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 529 f. The name of Ahalyā is there allegorically interpreted of the night, to which this name is said to have been given because it is absorbed in the day (*ahani tīyamānatayā*). Indra is the sun.

²²³ Another passage (S'ānti-p. 7569 ff.) raises the number of Brahmā's sons to seven by adding Vasishṭha: *Ekah Svayambhūr bhagavān ūdya Brahmā sanātanaḥ | Brahmanah sapta vai putrā mahātmanah Svayambhuvaḥ | Marīchir Atry-Angirasau Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Vasishṭhascha mahābhāgah sadṛśo vai Svayambhuvā | sapta Brahmāna ily ete purāṇe nīśchayaṁ gatūḥ |* "There is one primeval eternal lord, Brahmā Svayambhū; who had seven great sons, Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Vasishṭha, who was like Svayambhū. These are the seven Brahmas who have been ascertained in the Puranic records." In another part of the same S'āntiparvan, verses 12685 ff., however, the Prajāpatis are increased to twenty-one: *Brahmā Sthānūr Manur Dakṣho Bhṛiguḥ Dharmas tathā Yamaḥ | Marīchir Angirā 'trīścha Pulastyaḥ Pulahaḥ Kratuḥ | Vasishṭhaḥ Parameshṭhī cha Vīśvasūn Soma eva cha | Kardamaś chūpi yaḥ proktaḥ Krodho Vikṛita eva cha | ekaviṁśatir utpannās te prajāpatayaḥ smṛitāḥ |* "There are reputed to have been twenty-one Prajāpatis produced, viz. Brahmā, Sthānu, Manu, Dakṣha, Bhṛigu, Dharmā, Yama, Marīchi,

of Brahmā, viz., Marīchi, Atri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, and Kratu. Kaśyapa was the son of Marīchi; and from Kaśyapa sprang these creatures. There were born to Daksha thirteen daughters of eminent rank, (2520) Aditi, Diti, Danu, Kālā, Danāyu, Sīmīhikā, Krodhā, Pradhā, Viśvā, Vinatā, Kapilā, and Muni.²²⁴ Kadrū also was of the number. These daughters had valorous sons and grandsons innumerable."

Daksha, however, had other daughters, as we learn further on in verses 2574 ff., where the manner of his own birth also is related :

*Dakshas tv ajāyatāṅgushthād dakṣiṇād bhagavān ṛṣiḥ | Brahmaṇaḥ
prithivīpālā śāntātmā sumahātāpāḥ | vāmād ajāyatāṅgushthād bhūryā
tasya mahātmanah | tasyām panchāsatam kanyāḥ sa evājanayad muniḥ |
. . . . 2577. Dadau cha daśa Dharmāya saptaviṃsatim Indre | dityena
vidhina rājan Kaśyapāya trayodaśa | 2581. Paitāmahaḥ Manu
devas tasya putrah prajāpatiḥ | tasyāṣṭau Vasarah putrās teshām rak-
shyāni vistarām | 2595. Stanaṁ tu dakṣiṇam bhūtvā Brah-
maṇo nara-vigrahaḥ | nissṛito bhagavān Dharmah sarva-loka-sukhāvahaḥ |
trayaḥ tasya varāḥ putrāḥ sarva-bhūta-manoharāḥ | S'amaḥ Kāmāḥ cha
Harshaḥ cha tejasaḥ loka-dhārīṇaḥ | 2610. Ārushī tu Manoh
kanyā tasya patnī manīṣiṇaḥ | 2614. Deau putrau Brahmaṇas
tv anyau yayos tiṣṭhāti lakṣaṇam | loka Dhātū Vidhātū cha yau sthītau
Manunū saha | tayor eva svasū devī Lakṣmī padma-grīhī śubhā | tasyās
tu mūnasāḥ putrās turagāḥ vyoma-chārīṇaḥ | 2617. Prajñām
annakāmānām anyonya-paribhukṣaṇāt | Adharmas tatra sanjātāḥ sarva-
bhūta-vināśakāḥ | tasyāpi Nirṛitir bhūryā nirṛitā yena Rākṣasāḥ |
ghorās tasyās trayah putrāḥ pāpa-karma-ratāḥ sadā | Bhayo Mahā-
bhayaḥ chaiva Mṛityur bhūtāntakas tathā | na tasya bhūryā putro vā
kaśchid asty antako hi saḥ |*

Angiras, Atri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasīṣṭha, Parameshthīn, Vivasvat, Soma, the person called Kardama, Krodha, and Vikṛita." (Here, however, only twenty names are specified including Brahmā himself.) Compare this list with those quoted above, p. 116, from the Rāmāyaṇa, iii. 14, 7 ff., from Manu in p. 36, and from the Vishṇu P. in p. 65.

²²⁴ That Muni is a name, and not an epithet, is shown (1) by the fact that we have otherwise only twelve names; and (2) by her descendants, both gods and gandharvas, being afterwards enumerated in verses 2550 ff. (*ity ete deva-gandharvā Maameyāḥ parikīrtitāḥ*). Kapilā, another of the thirteen daughters of Daksha is said to have been the mother of Ambrosia, Brūhmans, kine, Gandharvas and Apsarasas (*amṛtām brūhmaṇā gāvo gandharvāpsarasas tathā | apatgam kupilāyās tu purāṇe parikīrtitām |*).

"2574. Daksha, the glorious rishi, tranquil in spirit, and great in austere fervour, sprang from the right thumb of Brahmā.²²⁵ From the left thumb sprang that great Muni's wife, on whom he begot fifty²²⁶ daughters. Of these he gave ten to Dharma, twenty-seven to Indu (Soma),²²⁷ and according to the celestial system, thirteen to Kaśyapa." I proceed with some other details given in the verses I have extracted : 2581. "Pitāmaha's descendant, Manu, the god and the lord of creatures, was his (it does not clearly appear whose) son. The eight Vāsus, whom I shall detail, were his sons. 2595. Dividing the right breast of Brahmā, the glorious Dharma (Righteousness), issued in a human form, bringing happiness to all people. He had three eminent sons, Soma, Kāma, and Harsha (Tranquillity, Love, and Joy), who are the delight of all creatures, and by their might support the world. 2610. Arushī, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of that sage (Chyavana, son of Bhrigu). 2614. There are two other sons of Brahmā, whose mark remains in the world, Dhātṛi,²²⁸ and Vidhātṛi, who remained with Manu. Their sister was the beautiful goddess Lakshmi,²²⁹ whose home is in the lotus. Her mind-born sons are the steeds who move in the sky. 2617. When the creatures who were desirous of food, had devoured one another, Adharma (Unrighteousness) was produced, the destroyer of all beings. His wife was Nirṛiti, and hence the Rākshasas are called Nairṛitas, or the offspring of Nirṛiti. She had three dreadful sons, continually addicted to evil deeds, Bhaya Mahābhaya (Fear and Terror) and Mṛityu (Death) the ender of beings. He has neither wife, nor any son, for he is the ender."²³⁰

The next passage gives a different account of the origin of Daksha; and describes the descent of mankind from Manu :

Adip. 3128. *Tejobhir uditāḥ sarve maharshi-sama-tejasaḥ | daśa Pra-*

²²⁵ See above, p. 72 f. The Matsya P. also states that Daksha sprang from Brahmā's right thumb, Dharma from his nipple, Kāma from his heart, etc.

²²⁶ The passage of the Rāmāyana, quoted above, p. 116, affirms that they were sixty in number. Compare Wilson's Vishnu P. vol. i. pp. 109 ff., and vol. ii. pp. 19 ff.

²²⁷ The Taitt. Sanhitā, ii. 3, 5, 1, says Prajāpati had thirty-three daughters, whom he gave to King Soma (*Prajāpates trayastriṃśad dukitara āsan | tāḥ Somāya rūjns dadāt*).

²²⁸ Dhātṛi had been previously mentioned, in verse 2523, as one of the sons of Aditi. See also Wilson's Vishnu P. ii. 152.

²²⁹ See Wilson's Vishnu P. i. pp. 109, 118 ff., 144 ff. and 152.

²³⁰ The Vishnu P. (Wilson, i. 112) says he had five children.

*chetasaḥ putrāḥ santaḥ punya-jaṇūḥ smṛitāḥ | mukhojenāgninā yais te
pūrvam dagdhā mahaujasah | tebhyaḥ Prāchetaso jajne Dakṣho Dakṣhād
imāḥ prajāḥ | sambhūtāḥ puruṣa-vyāghra sa hi loka-pitāmahaḥ |
Vīriṇyā saha sangamya Dakṣaḥ Prāchetaso munīḥ | ātma-tulyān aja-
nayat sahasraṁ śamsitā-vratān | sahasra-sankhyān sambhūtān Dakṣa-
putrāṁś cha Nāradaḥ | mokṣam adhyāpayāmāsa sāṅkhyā-jaṇānam anu-
tamam | tataḥ panchāśataṁ kanyāḥ putrikāḥ abhisandadhe | Prajāpatiḥ
prajāḥ Dakṣaḥ sisṛīkṣur Janamejaya | dadau cha daśa Dharmāya
Kāśyapāya trayodaśa | kālasya nayane yuktāḥ saptaviṁśatim Indre |
3135. Trayodaśānām patnīnām yā tu Dakṣhāyaṇī varā | Mārīchaḥ
Kāśyapas tasyām Ādityān samajijñat | Indrādīn vīryya-sampannān
Vīrasvantaṁ athāpi cha | Vīrasvataḥ suto jajne Yamo Vairasvataḥ pra-
bhuh | Mārtaṇḍasya Manur dhīmān ajāyata sutaḥ prabhuh | Yamaś
chāpi suto jajne khyātas tasyānujāḥ prabhuh | dharmātmā sa Manur
dhīmān yatra vaṁśaḥ pratishṭhitāḥ | Manor vaṁśo mānavānām tato 'yam
prathito 'bhavat | brahma-kṣattrādayas tasmād Manor jātās tu mānavāḥ |
tato 'bhavad mahārāja brahma kṣattrēṇa sangatam | 3140. Brāhmaṇā
mānavas teshāṁ sāṅgam vedam adhārayan | Venam Dhṛiṣṇuṁ Narish-
yantam Nābhāgeksheṣākum eva cha | Kārūṣham atha S'āryatiṁ tathā
chaivāśṭamīm Ilām | Prishadhraṁ naramam prāhuḥ kṣattrā-dharma-
parāyaṇam | Nābhūgārishṭa-daśamān Manoh putrān prachakṣate | pan-
chāśat tu Manoh putrās tathāivānye 'bhavan kṣhitau | anyonya-bhedāt te
sarve vīneśur iti naḥ śrutam | Purūraras tato vidvān Ilāyaṁ samapad-
yata | sā vai tasyābhavad mātā pitā chaiveti naḥ śrutam |*

“3128. Born all with splendour, like that of great rishis, the ten sons of Prachetas are reputed to have been virtuous and holy; and by them the glorious beings²³¹ were formerly burnt up by fire springing from their mouths. From them was born Daksha Prāchetasa;²³² and from Daksha, the Parent of the world (were produced), these creatures. Cohabiting with Vīriṇī, the Muni Daksha begot a thousand sons like himself, famous

²³¹ “Trees and plants,” according to the Commentator (*mahūprabhūvā vṛkṣkau-
śadhayāḥ*). Compare Wilson's Vishnu P. ii. p. 1.

²³² The same account of Daksha's birth is given in the S'āntip. 7573: *Dasānūn
tanayas tv eko Dakṣho nūna prajāpatiḥ | tasya dve nūmanī loka Dakṣaḥ Ka iti cho-
chate* | “These ten Prachetas had one son called Daksha, the lord of creatures. He
is commonly called by two names, Daksha and Ka.” (Compare vol. iv. of this work,
p. 13, note 30, and p. 24; and the S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, vii. 4, 1, 19, and ii. 4, 4, 1,
there quoted.) The following verse 7574 tells us that Kāśyapa also had two names,
the other being Arishṭanemi. See Rām. iii. 14, 9, quoted above.

for their religious observances, to whom Nārada taught the doctrine of final liberation, the unequalled knowledge of the Sāṅkhya. Desirous of creating offspring, the Prajāpati Dakṣa next formed fifty daughters, of whom he gave ten to Dharma, thirteen to Kaśyapa, and twenty-seven, devoted to the regulation of time,²³³ to Indu (Soma). . . . 3135. On Dākshāyaṇī,²³⁴ the most excellent of his thirteen wives, Kaśyapa, the son of Marichi, begot the Ādityas, headed by Indra and distinguished by their energy, and also Vivasvat.²³⁵ To Vivasvat was born a son, the mighty Yama Vaivasvata. To Mārtanḍa (*i.e.* Vivasvat, the Sun) was born the wise and mighty Manu, and also the renowned Yama, his (Manu's) younger brother. Righteous was this wise Manu, on whom a race was founded. Hence this (family) of men became known as the race of Manu. Brāhmanas, Kshatriyas, and other men sprang from this Manu. From him, o king, came the Brāhman conjoined with the Kshatriya. 3140. Among them the Brāhmanas, children of Manu, held the Veda with the Vedāṅgas. The children of Manu are said to have been Vena, Dhriṣṇu, Narishyanta, Nābhāga, Ikshvāku, Kārusha, Śaryāti, Ilā the eight, Prishadra the ninth, who was addicted to the duties of a Kshatriya, and Nābhāgarishṭa the tenth. Manu had also fifty other sons; but they all, as we have heard, perished in consequence of mutual dissensions. Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, we heard, was both his mother and his father."

The tradition, followed in this passage, which assigns to all the castes one common ancestor, removed by several stages from the creator, is, of course, in conflict with the account which assigns to them a fourfold descent from the body of Brahmā himself.

The Śāntiparvan, verses 27.9 ff., contains an account of the origin of castes which has evidently proceeded from an extreme assertor of the dignity of the Brahmanical order. The description given of the prerogatives of the priestly class is precisely in the style, and partly in almost the identical words, of the most extravagant declarations of

²³³ This phrase *kālasya nayane yuklāh* had previously occurred in verse 2580, where it is followed by the words *sarvāṇi nakshatra-yoginyo loka-yūtrā-vidhānataḥ* | "all identified with the lunar asterisms, and appointed to regulate the life of men." See also Vishnu P. i. 15, 56, and Professor Wilson's translation ii. p. 10, note 1, and p. 28, note 1.

²³⁴ *i.e.* Aditi. See verses 2520, 2522, and 2600 of this same book.

²³⁵ The account in the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, 5 ff., agrees with this in making Kaśyapa son of Marichi, and father of Vivasvat.

Manu (i. 99 f.) on the same subject. In other places, however, the **Mahābhārata** contains explanations of a very different character regarding the origin of the distinctions, social and professional, which prevailed at the period of its composition. A comparison of these various passages will afford an illustration of the fact already intimated in p. 6,²³⁰ that this gigantic poem is made up of heterogeneous elements, the products of different ages, and representing widely different dogmatical tendencies, the later portions having been introduced by successive editors of the work to support their own particular views, without any regard to their inconsistency with its earlier contents. In fact, a work so vast, the unaided compilation of which would have taxed all the powers of a Didymus Chalkenterus, could scarcely have been created in any other way than that of gradual accretion. And some supposition of this kind is certainly necessary in order to explain such discrepancies as will be found between the passages I have to quote, of which the three first are the productions of believers (real or pretended) in the existence of a natural distinction between their own Brahmanical order and the other classes of the community, while two of those which follow, viz., in pp. 134 and 139, have emanated from fair and moderate writers who had rational views of the essential unity of mankind, and of the superiority of moral and religious character to any factitious divisions of a social description.

In the first passage, **Bhīṣma**, the great uncle of the **Pāndus**, when describing to **Yudhiṣṭhira** the duties of kings, introduces one of those ancient stories which are so frequently appealed to in the **Mahābhārata**. Without a minute study of the poem it would be difficult to say whether these are ever based on old traditions, or are anything more than mere vehicles invented to convey the individual views of the writers who narrate them. **Bhīṣma** says, **Sāntiparvan**, 27:19 :

*Ya eva tu sato rakshed asatāś cha nivarttayet | sa eva rājñā kartavyo
rājan rāja-purohitaḥ | 2750. Atrāpy udāharantīmam itihāsam purā-
tanam | Purūravaśa Atiśasya saṁvādām Mātariśvanaḥ | Purūravā uvācha |
Kutaḥ svid brāhmaṇo jāta varṇāś chāpi kutaś trayāḥ | kasmāccha bhavati
īreṣṭhas taṁ me vyākhyātum arhasi | Mātariścovācha | Brahmaṇo mu-
kutaḥ sriṣṭho brāhmaṇo rāja-sattama | bāhubhyāṁ kṣhatrīyaḥ sriṣṭha
vṛubhyāṁ vaiśya eva cha | varṇānām parichāryyārtham trayāṇām Bha-*

²³⁰ See also the fourth volume of this work, pp. 141 ff. and 152.

ratarshabha | *varnaś caturthaś sambhūtaś padbhyām śūdro vinirmītaś* | *brāhmaṇo jāyamāno hi prithivyaṁ anijāyate*²³⁷ | *iśvaraḥ sarva-bhūtānāṁ dharma-koshasya guptaye* | 2755. *Ataḥ prithivyā yantāram kṣattriyaṁ daṇḍa-dhārṇaḥ* | *dvītyaṁ Daṇḍam akarot prajānāṁ anutriptaye* | *vaiśyas tu dhana-dhūnyena trīṇ varjān bibhṛiyād imān* | *śūdro hy etān pari-chared iti Brahmūnuśāsanam* | *Aila uvācha* | *dvījasya kṣattrabandhor vā kasyeyam prithivī bharet* | *dharmaṭṭhaḥ saha viltena samyag Vāyo pra-chakshva me* | *Ṛṣur uvācha* | *viprasya sarvaṁ evaitad yat kinchij jagati-gatam* | *jyeshṭhenābhijānencha tad dharma-kūśalā viduḥ* | *svam eca brāhmaṇo bhunkte svam vaste svam dadāti cha* | *guruḥ hi sarva-varjānāṁ jyeshṭhaś śreṣṭhaś cha vai dvijaḥ* | 2760. *Paṭy-abhāre yathaiva strī deraram kurute patim* | *esha te prathamāḥ kalpaḥ ūpady anyo bhaved ataḥ* |

"2749. The king should appoint to be his royal priest²³⁸ a man who will protect the good, and restrain the wicked. 2750. On this subject they relate this following ancient story of a conversation between Purūravas the son of Ilā, and Mātariśvan (Vāyu, the Wind-god). Purūravas said: You must explain to me whence the Brāhmaṇa, and whence the (other) three castes were produced, and whence the superiority (of the first) arises. Mātariśvan answered: The Brāhmaṇa was created from Brahmā's mouth, the Kṣattriya from his arms, the Vaiśya from his thighs, while for the purpose of serving these three

²³⁷ Manu, i. 99, has *adhi jāyate*.

²³⁸ *Rāja-purohitaḥ*. The king's priest (*rāja-purohitaḥ*) is here represented as one who should be a confidential and virtuous minister of state. Such is not, however, the character always assigned to this class of persons. In Manu xii. 46, quoted above (p. 41f.), the purohita is placed in a lower class than other Brāhmins. And in the following verse (4527) of the Anuśūsanaparvan, taken from a story in which the Rishis utter maledictions against anyone who should have stolen certain lotus roots, part of the curse spoken by Viśvāmitra is as follows: *varshūcharo'stu bhṛitako rūjnas' chāstu purohitaḥ* | *ayājyaśya bhavato riteḥ viśa-stānyam karoti yaḥ* | "Let the man who steals lotus roots be a hireling trafficker in rain incantations (?) and the domestic priest of a king, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhmaṇa should officiate." Again, in verse 4579, the same person says: *karotu bhṛitako'varshūm rūjnas' chāstu purohitaḥ* | *riteḥ astu hy ayājyaśya yas te harati pushkaram* | "Let him who steals thy lotus perform as a hireling incantations to cause drought, and be a king's domestic priest, and the priest of one for whom no Brāhmaṇa should officiate." I have had partly to guess at the sense of the words *varshūcharaḥ* and *avarsham*. The Commentator does not explain the former; and interprets the latter (for which the Edinburgh MS. reads *avarshūh*) by *ṛishitī-mibandham*, "causing drought." He adds, *papishṭhāḥ eva avarshāt*, "those who cause drought are most wicked."

castes was produced the fourth class, the Sūdra, fashioned from his feet. The Brāhman, as soon as born, becomes the lord of all beings upon the earth, for the purpose of protecting the treasure of righteousness. 2755. Then (the creator) constituted the Kshattriya the controulor of the earth, a second Yama to bear the rod, for the satisfaction of the people. And it was Brahmā's ordinance that the Vaiśya should sustain these three classes with money and grain, and that the Sūdra should serve them. The son of Ilā then enquired: Tell me, Vāyu, to whom the earth, with its wealth, rightfully belongs, to the Brāhman or the Kshattriya? Vāyu replied: All this, whatever exists in the world, is the Brāhman's property²³⁰ by right of primogeniture: this is known to those who are skilled in the laws of duty. It is his own which the Brāhman eats, puts on, and bestows. He is the chief of all the castes, the first-born and the most excellent. Just as a woman when she has lost her (first) husband, takes her brother in law for a second; so the Brāhman is thy first resource in calamity; afterwards another may arise."

A great deal is shortly afterwards added about the advantages of concord between Brāhmans and Kshattriyas. Such verses as the following (2802): "From the dissensions of Brāhmans and Kshattriyas the people incur intolerable suffering" (*mīlho bhedād brāhmaṇa-kshattriyānām prajā duḥkhaṁ dussahaṁ chāviśanti*) afford tolerably clear evidence that the interests of these two classes must frequently have clashed.

In the same strain as the preceding passage is the following :

Vanaparvan, 13436. *Nādhyaṇanād yājanād vā anyasmād vā pratigrahāt | dosho bhavati viprānām jvalitāgni-samā dvijāḥ | durvedā vā suvedā vā prākṛitāḥ saṁskṛitās tathā | brāhmaṇā nūramantaryā bhasmachannā ivāgnayaḥ | yathā śmaśāne dīptaṇyāḥ pāvako naiva dushyati | evaṁ vidvān avidvān vā brāhmaṇo daivatam mahat | prākūraiś cha puradwāraiḥ prāsūdaiś cha prithag-vidhaiḥ | nagarāṇi na śobhante kināni brāhmaṇottamaiḥ | vedādhyā vr̥tita-sampannā jñānavantas tapasvinaḥ | yatra tiṣṭhanti vai viprās tan-nāma nagaraṁ nṛipa | vraje vā py athavā*

²³⁰ Kullūka, the Commentator on Manu (i. 100), is obliged to admit that this is only spoken in a panegyric or hyperbolical way, and that property is here used in a figurative sense, since theft is afterwards predicated by Manu of Brāhmans as well as others ("svam" *iti stutyā uchyaṭe | svam iva svam na tu svam eva | brāhmaṇasyāpi Manuḥ steyasya vakshyamānatvāt*).

'*raṇye yatra santi bahu-śrutāḥ | tat tad nagaram ity āhuḥ pārtha tirthaṁ cha tad bhavet |*

"No blame accrues to Brāhmins from teaching or sacrificing, or from receiving money in any other way: Brāhmins are like flaming fire. Whether ill or well versed in the Veda, whether untrained or accomplished, Brāhmins must never be despised, like fires covered by ashes. Just as fire does not lose its purity by blazing even in a cemetery, so too, whether learned or unlearned, a Brāhmin is a great deity. Cities are not rendered magnificent by ramparts, gates, or palaces of various kinds, if they are destitute of excellent Brāhmins. 13440. The place where Brāhmins, rich in the Veda, perfect in their conduct, and austere fervid, reside, is (really) a city (*nagara*). Wherever there are men abounding in Vedic lore, whether it be a cattle-pen, or a forest, that is called a city, and that will be a sacred locality."

The following verses from the Anuśāsanap. 2160 ff. are even more extreme in their character, and are, in fact, perfectly sublime in their insolence:

*Brāhmaṇānām paribharād asurāḥ salile śayāḥ | brāhmaṇānām prasā-
dāch cha devāḥ svarga-nivāsinaḥ | aśakyam śraśṭum ākāśam achālyo
himavān giriḥ | adhāryyā setunā Gangā durjayā brāhmaṇā bhuvi | na
brāhmaṇa-virodhena sakyā śāstum rasundharā | brāhmaṇā hi mahātmanō
devānām api devatāḥ | tān pūjyasva satatām dānena paricharyyayā |
yadāchhasi mahīm bhoktum imām sāgara-mekhalām |*

"Through the prowess of the Brāhmins the Asūras were prostrated on the waters; by the favour of the Brāhmins the gods inhabit heaven. The ether cannot be created; the mountain Himavat cannot be shaken; the Gangā cannot be stemmed by a dam; the Brāhmins cannot be conquered by any one upon earth. The world cannot be ruled in opposition to the Brāhmins; for the mighty Brāhmins are the deities even of the gods. If thou desire to possess the sea-girt earth, honour them continually with gifts and with service."

The next passage seems to be self-contradictory, as it appears to set out with the supposition that the distinction of castes arose after the creation; while it goes on to assert the separate origin of the four classes:

Sāntiparvan, 10861. *Janaka uvācha | varṇo viśeṣha-varṇānām ma-
hārṣhe kena jāyate | etad ichhāmy ahaṁ jñātum tad brūhi vadatām vara |
yad etaj jāyate 'patyaṁ sa evāyam iti śrutiḥ | katham brāhmaṇato jāto.*

*viśeṣa grahaṇām gataḥ | Parāśara uvācha | Exam etad mahārāja yena
jātāḥ sa eva saḥ | tapasas tv apakarṣheṇa jātigrahaṇatām gataḥ | sukshe-
trāchecha' surijūch cha puṇyo bhavati sambhavaḥ | ato 'nyatarato kīṇād
avaro nāma jāyate | 10865. Vuktrād bhujābhyām ūrubhyām padbhyām
chaivātha jajñire | sṛijataḥ Prajāpater lokān iti dharmavido viduḥ | mu-
khaḥ brāhmaṇās tāta bāhujāḥ kṣhatṛiyāḥ smṛitāḥ | ūrujāḥ dhanino
rājan pādajāḥ parichārakāḥ | chaturṇām eva varṇānām āgamāḥ puru-
ṣaḥśabha | ato 'nye vyatiriktā ye te vai sankarajāḥ smṛitāḥ |
10870. Janaka uvācha | Brahmanaikeṇa jātānām nānātrāṇi gotratāḥ
katham | bahūniha hi loke vai gotrāṇi muni sattama | yatra tatra katham
jātāḥ svayonim (? svayonim) munayo gatāḥ | śuddha-yonau samutpannā
svayonau cha tathā 'pare | Parāśara uvācha | rājan naitad bhared grāhyam
apakṛiṣṭeṇa janmanā | matātmanāṁ samutpattis tapasā bhāvilatmanām |
utpādya putrān munayo nṛpate yatra tatra ha | svenaiva tapasā teshām
ṛishitram pradadhuh punaḥ | . . . 10876. Ete svām prakṛitīm prāptā
Vaiśeṣa tapasośrayāt | pratishṭhitā veda-vido damena tapusaiva hi |*

"Janaka asks: 10861. How, o great rishi, does the caste of the separate classes arise? Tell me, as I desire to know. According to the Veda, the offspring which is born (to any one) is the very man himself. How does offspring born of a Brāhmaṇ fall into distinct classes? Parāśara replied: It is just as you say, o great king. A son is the very same as he by whom he was begotten; but from decline of austere fervour, (men) have become included under different classes. And from good soil and good seed a pure production arises, whilst from those which are different and faulty springs an inferior production. Those acquainted with duty know that men were born from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Prajāpati when he was creating the worlds. The Brāhman sprang from his mouth, the Kṣhatṛiyas from his arms, the merchants from his thighs, and the servants from his feet. The scriptural tradition speaks only of four classes. The men not included in these are declared to have sprung from a mixture (of the four). . . . 10870. Janaka asked: How is there a difference in race between men sprung from one and the same Brahmā? for there are now many races in the world. How have Munis born anywhere (indiscriminately) entered into a good family; some of them having sprung from a pure source and others from an inferior stock? Parāśara replied: It would not be credible that noble-minded men, whose souls

had been perfected by austere fervour, should have been the offspring of a degraded birth. Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour." The speaker then names a number of sages (10876) "famed for their acquaintance with the Veda, and for their self-command and austere fervour," as "having all attained to their respective conditions by practising the latter observance."

In the latter verses the speaker appears to admit, at the very moment that he denies, the degraded origin of some of the renowned saints of Indian antiquity. What else is the meaning of the verse, "Munis who had begotten sons in an indiscriminate way conferred on them the position of rishis by their own austere fervour?" No doubt it is intended to represent those as exceptional times: but while we refuse to admit this assumption, we may find some reason to suppose that the irregularities, as they were afterwards considered to be, which this assumption was intended to explain away, were really samples of the state of things which commonly prevailed in earlier ages.

The next extract declares that there is a natural distinction between the Brāhmanas and the other castes; and appears to intimate that the barrier so constituted can only be overpassed when the soul re-appears in another body in another birth:

Anuśāsana-parva, 6570. *Deva uvācha | Brāhmanyam̐ devi duṣṭapṛap-
yam̐ nisargād brāhmaṇaḥ śubhe | kṣattriyo vaiśyaśūdrau vā nisargād
iti me matiḥ | karmanā duṣkṛiteneha sthānād bhraṣyati vai dvijaḥ |
jyeshṭham varṇam anuprāpya tasmād rakṣeta vai dvijaḥ | sthito brāh-
maṇa-dharmena brāhmanyam upajīvati | kṣattriyo vā 'tha vaiśyo vā
brahmabhūyam sa gachhati | yas tu brahmatvam utśṛijya kṣātraṁ
dharmaṁ nishevate | brāhmanyāt sa paribhṛaṣṭaḥ kṣātra-yonau prajā-
yate | vaiśya-karma cha yo vipro lobha-moha-vyapāśrayaḥ | brāhmanyam̐
durlabham pṛāpya karoty alpa-matiḥ sadā | sa dvijo vaiśyatām eti vaiśyo
vā śūdratām iyat | sva-dharmāt prachyuto vipras tataḥ śūdratvam āp-
nute | . . . 6590. Ebbis tu karmabhir devi śubhair ācharitais tathā |
śūdro brāhmaṇatām yāti vaiśyaḥ kṣattriyatām vrajet | śūdra-karmāṇi
sarvāṇi yathānyāyam yathāvidhi | śuśrūṣhām paricharyam̐ cha jyeshṭhe
varṇe prayatnataḥ | kuryād ityādi |*

Mahādeva says: 6570. "Brāhmanhood, o fair goddess, is difficult to

be attained. A man, whether he be a Brāhman, Kshattriya, Vaiśya, or Sūdra, is such by nature; this is my opinion. By evil deeds a twice-born man falls from his position. Then let a twice-born man who has attained to the highest caste, keep it. The Kshattriya, or Vaiśya, who lives in the condition of a Brāhman, by practising the duties of one, attains to Brāhmanhood. But he who abandons the state of a Brāhman and practises the duty of a Kshattriya, falls from Brāhmanhood and is born in a Kshattriya womb. And the foolish Brāhman, who, having attained that Brāhmanhood which is so hard to get, follows the profession of a Vaiśya, under the influence of cupidity and delusion, falls into the condition of a Vaiśya. (In like manner) a Vaiśya may sink into the state of a Sūdra. A Brāhman who falls away from his own duty becomes afterwards a Sūdra. . . . 6590. But by practising the following good works, o goddess, a Sūdra becomes a Brāhman, and a Vaiśya becomes a Kshattriya: Let him actively perform all the functions of a Sūdra according to propriety and rule, i.e. obedience and service to the highest caste," etc.

The next passage is the first of those which I have already noted, as in spirit and tenor very different from the preceding. The conversation which it records arose as follows: Yudhishtira found his brother Bhīmasena caught in the coils of a serpent, which, it turned out, was no other than the famous king Nārāsha, who by his sacrifices, austerities, etc., had formerly raised himself to the sovereignty of the three worlds; but had been reduced to the condition in which he was now seen, as a punishment for his pride and contempt of the Brāhmins. He promises to let Bhīmasena go, if Yudhishtira will answer certain questions. Yudhishtira agrees, and remarks that the serpent was acquainted with whatever a Brāhman ought to know. Whereupon the Serpent proceeds:

Vana-parva, verses 12493 ff : *Sarpa uvācha | brāhmaṇaḥ ko bhaved rājan vedyam kiṁ cha Yudhishtira |* (12470. *Bravīhy atimatim tvām hi vīkyaḥ anumīmāhe | Yudhishtira uvācha | satyam dānam kṣamā śīlam anṛisamsyam tapo ghrīṇā | drīśyam yatra nāgendra sa brāhmaṇaḥ iti smṛitiḥ | vedyam sarpa param Brahma nirduḥkham asukham cha yat | yatra gatvā na śochanti bhavataḥ kiṁ vivakṣitam , Sarpa uvācha | chāturtvarṇyam pramāṇam cha satyam cha brahma chaiva hi | Sūreshv api cha satyam cha dānam ātrodha va cha | anṛisamsyam ahimsā cha ghrīṇā chaiva Yudhishtira | vedyam yach chātura nirduḥkham asukham cha na-*

rādhipa | tābhyāṁ hinam padaṁ chānyad na tad astīti lakshaye | Yudhishthira uvācha | 12475. Sūdre tu yad bhavel lakshma dvije tach cha na vidyate | na vai śūdro bhaved chhūdro brāhmaṇo na cha brāhmaṇah | yatrailat lakshyate sarpa vṛttam sa brāhmaṇah smṛitah | yatraitad na bhavet sarpa tam śūdrām iti nirdūṣet | yat punar bhavatā proktam na vedyāṁ vidyatīti cha | tābhyāṁ hinam ato 'nyatra padaṁ nāstīti ched api | evam etad matam sarpa tābhyāṁ hināṁ na vidyate | yathā śītoṣṇayor madhye bhaved noshṇāṁ na śītatā | evam vai sukha-duḥkṛābhyāṁ hināṁ nāsti padaṁ krachit | eṣā mama matiḥ sarpa yathā vā manyate bhavān | Sarpa uvācha | 12480. Yadi te vṛttato rājan brāhmaṇaḥ prasamīkṣitah | vṛthā jātis tadā "yushman kṛitir yāvad na vidyate | Yudhishthira uvācha | jātir atra mahāsarpa manushyatve mahāmate | sankarāt sarva-varṇānāṁ duḥparīkṣhyeti me matiḥ | sarve sarvāṣv apatyāni janayanti sadā narāḥ | vāṁ maithunam atho janma maraṇāṁ cha samam nṛṇāṁ | idam ārsham pramāṇāṁ cha "ye ya-jāmahe" ity api | tasmāch chhīlam pradhāneshṭhāṁ vidur ye tattva-darśinaḥ | "prōṇ nābhi-varddhanāt puṁso jāta-karma vidhiyate" | "tadā 'sya mātā sūcitṛi pitā tv āchāryya uchyate" | 12485. "Tārach chhūdra-samo hy eṣha yāvad vede na jāyate" | tasminn evam mati-decidhe Manuḥ Svāyambhuvo 'bravīt | kṛita-kṛityāḥ punar varṇā yadi vṛttāṁ na vidyate | sankaras tatra nūgendra balavān prasamīkṣitah | yatredānīm mahāsarpa samskrītaṁ vṛttam iṣhyate | tam brāhmaṇam aham pūrvam uktavān bhujagottama |

"12469. The Serpent said: Who may be a Brāhmaṇ, and what is the thing to be known, o Yudhishthira;—tell me, since by thy words I infer thee to be a person of extreme intelligence. Yudhishthira replied: 12470. The Smṛiti declares, o chief of Serpents, that he is a Brāhmaṇ, in whom truth, liberality, patience, virtue, innocence, austere fervour, and compassion are seen. And the thing to be known is the supreme Brahma, free from pain, as well as from pleasure,—to whom, when men have attained, they no longer sorrow. What is your opinion? The Serpent replied: The Veda (*brahma*) is beneficial to all the four castes and is authoritative and true.²⁴⁰ And so we find in

²⁴⁰ Such is the sense assigned by the Commentator to this line, the drift of which is not very clear. The comment runs thus: *Sarpas tu brāhmaṇa-padena jāti-mātram vivakṣitvā sūdre tal lakṣaṇāṁ vyabhichārayati "chāturvāṇyam" iti sūddhena | chaturvāṇyāṁ varṇānāṁ hitam | satyam pramāṇam cha dharmā-vyapasthāpakam brahma veduḥ | sūdrāchāra-smṛiter api veda-mūlakatoṭ sarvo 'py āchārādīḥ śruti-mūlakaḥ*

Sūdras also truth, liberality, calmness, innocence, harmlessness, and compassion. And as for the thing to be known, which is free from pain and pleasure, I perceive that there is no other thing free from these two influences. Yudhishtira rejoined: 12475. The qualities characteristic of a Sūdra do not exist in a Brāhman (nor *vice versé*). (Were it otherwise) the Sūdra would not be a Sūdra, nor the Brāhman a Brāhman.²⁴¹ The person in whom this regulated practice is perceived is declared to be a Brāhman; and the man, in whom it is absent, should be designated as a Sūdra. And as to what you say further, that there is nothing other than this (Brahma) to be known, which is free from the susceptibilities in question; this is also (my own) opinion, that there is nothing free from them. Just as between cold and heat there can be neither heat nor cold, so there is nothing free from the feeling of pleasure and pain. Such is my view; or how do you consider? The Serpent remarked: 12480. If a man is regarded by you as being a Brāhman only in consequence of his conduct, then birth is vain until action is shown. Yudhishtira replied: O most sapient Serpent, birth is difficult to be discriminated in the present condition

ity arthaḥ | evaṁ cha satyūdikāṁ yadi sūdre 'py asti tarhi so 'pi brāhmaṇa eva syād iti āha "sūdreshv api" iti | "The serpent, however, understanding by the term Brāhman mere birth, shows in a sloka and a half that Yudhishtira's definition fails by being applicable also to a Sūdra. *Chāturvarnya* means 'beneficial to the four castes.' (Such is the Veda), which is also 'true' and 'authoritative,' as establishing what is duty. Inasmuch as the Smṛiti which prescribes a Sūdra's conduct is itself founded on the Veda; all conduct, etc., is based on the Veda. And so if (the characters of) truth, etc., are found also in a Sūdra, he too must be a Brāhman—such is his argument in the words 'In Sūdras also.' According to this explanation the connection between the first line and the second and third may be as follows: The Veda is beneficial to all the castes, and therefore Sūdras also, having the advantage of its guidance, although at second hand, may practise all the virtues you enumerate; but would you therefore call them Brāhman?"

²⁴¹ This verse is not very lucid; but the sense may be that which I have assigned. The Commentator says: *Itarā tu brāhmaṇa-pādāna brāhma-vidāṁ vivakṣhītvā sūdrāṇāṁ api brāhmaṇātvaṁ abhyupagāmya pariharati "Sūdre tv" iti | Sūdra-lakṣhya-kāmūdikāṁ na brāhmaṇe 'sti na brāhmaṇa-lakṣhya-sāmūdikāṁ sūdre 'sti ity arthaḥ | sūdro 'pi sāmūdy-upeto brāhmaṇaḥ | brāhmaṇo 'pi kāmūdy-upetaḥ sūdra eva ity arthaḥ |* "The other (Yudhishtira), however, understanding by the word Brāhman one who knows the Veda (or, Brahma), and conceding the fact of a Sūdra's Brāhmanhood, obviates by the words 'but in a Sūdra,' etc. (the objection thence drawn). The qualities, lust, etc., distinctive of a Sūdra, do not exist in a Brāhman, nor do the qualities tranquillity, etc., characteristic of a Brāhman exist in a Sūdra. A Sūdra distinguished by the latter is a Brāhman; while a Brāhman characterized by lust, etc., is a Sūdra."

of humanity, on account of the confusion of all castes.²⁴³ All (sorts of)

²⁴³ In the tenth vol. of his *Indische Studien*, p. 83, Professor Weber adduces some curious evidence of the little confidence entertained in ancient times by the Indians in the chastity of their women. He refers to the following passages: (1) *Nidāna Sūtra*, iii. 8. *Uchekāvacha-charaṇūḥ striyo bhavanti | saha deva-sūkshe cha mamushya-sūkshe cha yeshūṃ putro vakshye teshūṃ putro bhavishyāmi | yūnścha putrān vakshye te me putrāḥ bhavishyanti* | "Women are irregular in their conduct. Of whatsoever men, I, taking gods and men to witness, shall declare myself to be the son, I shall be their son; and they whom I shall name as my sons shall be so." (2) *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*, iii. 2, 1, 40. *Atha yad "brāhmaṇaḥ" ityāha | anaddhā iva vai asya atoh purū jñnam bhavati | idam hy āhuḥ "rakshāṃsi yoshitam anusachante tad uta rakshāṃsi eva reta ādadhāti iti | atha atra addhā jñyate yo brāhmaṇo yo yajñāj jñyate | tasmād api rājanyaṃ vā vaiśyaṃ vā "brāhmaṇaḥ" ity eva brūyāt | brāhmaṇo hi jñyate yo yajñāj jñyate | tasmād āhuḥ "na savana-kṛtāṃ hanyad enasv ha eva savana-kṛtā" iti* | "Now as regards what he says ' (this) Brāhmaṇa (has been consecrated) : ' before this his birth is uncertain. For they say this that 'Rakshases follow after women, and therefore that it is Rakshases who inject seed into them.' " (Compare what it said of the Gandharvas in *Atharva V.* iv. 37, 11, 12, and *Journ. Roy. As Soc.* for 1865, p. 301.) So then he is certainly born who is born from sacred science (*brahma*) and from sacrifice. Wherefore also let him address a Rājanya or a Vaiśya as 'Brāhmaṇa,' for he is born from sacred science (*brāhma*), and consequently a Brāhmaṇa who is born from sacrifice. Hence they say 'let no one slay an offerer of a libation, for he incurs (the) sin (of Brahmanicide?) by so doing.' " (3) On the next passage of the *S. P. Br.* ii. 5, 2, 20, Professor Weber remarks that it is assumed that the wife of the person offering the *Varuṇa* *pragūsa* must have one or more paramours: *Atha pratipras'hūtā pratiparavī | sa putrūṃ udāneśhyān prichhati 'kena jñireṇa Comm.) charasi' iti | Varuṇyaṃ vai etat strī karoti yad anyasya saty anyena charati | atha "na id me 'utah-sālpū juhuvad" iti tasmāt prichhati | niruktaṃ vai enoh kanīyo bhavati | satyam hi bhuvati | tasmād vā iva prichhati | sū yad na pratijñvīta jñitūbhyo ha asyati tad ahitaṃ syāt* | "The *pratiprasthātrī* (one of the priests) returns. Being about to bring forward the wife, he asks her, 'with what (paramour) dost thou keep company?' For it is an offence incurring punishment from *Varuṇa* that being the wife of one man she keeps company with another. He enquires 'in order that she may not sacrifice with me while she feels an inward pang.' For a sin when declared becomes less: for it is not attended with falsehood. Therefore he enquires. If she does not confess, it will be ill for her relations." (This passage is explained in *Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras*, v. 5, 6-11.) (4) *S. P. Br.* i. 3, 2, 21. *Tad u ha uvācha Yajñavalkyo "yathādishṭam patnyūḥ astu | kas tad ādriyeta yat paramuṣā vā patnī syāt"* | "Yajñavalkya said this (in opposition to the doctrine of some other teachers): 'let the prescribed rule be followed regarding a wife. Who would mind his wife consorting with other men?' " The last clause has reference to the consequence which the other teachers said would follow from adopting the course they disapproved, viz., that the wife of the man who did so would become an adulteress. (5) *Taitt. S.* v. 6, 8, 3. *Na agnīṃ chitvā rāmān upeyād "ayonau reto dhasyāmi" iti | na devīyaṃ chitvā 'nyasya striyam upeyāt | na trītiyaṃ chitvā kanchana upeyāt | reto vai etad nidhatte yad agnīṃ chinute | yad upeyād retasā vyridhyeta* | "Let not a man, according to the Commentator, (considering) that in doing so, he would be discharging seed into an improper place. Let no man, after a second time preparing the fire-

men are continually begetting children on all (sorts of) women. The speech, the mode of propagation, the birth, the death of all mankind are alike. The text which follows is Vedic and authoritative: 'We who (are called upon) we recite the text.'²⁴³ Hence those men who have an insight into truth know that virtuous character is the thing chiefly to be desired. 'The natal rites of a male are enjoined to be performed before the section of the umbilical cord (Manu, ii. 29). Then Sāvitrī (the Gāyatrī, Manu ii. 77) becomes his mother and his

altar, approach another man's wife. Let no man, after a third time preparing the fire-altar, approach any woman: for in preparing the fire-altar he is discharging seed. Should he approach (a woman in these forbidden cases) he will miscarry with his seed." This prohibition of adultery in a certain case, seems to prove that it was no uncommon occurrence, and is calculated, as Professor Weber remarks, to throw great doubt on the purity of blood in the old Indian families.

²⁴³ To explain the last elliptical expression I will quote part of the Commentator's remarks on the beginning of Yudhishtira's reply: *Vāgādānam iva maithunasyāpi sādharanyā jātir durjneyā | tathā chā śrutiḥ "na chaitad vidmo brāhmaṇāḥ smo vayam abrahmaṇāḥ vā" iti brāhmaṇya-samsāyāṁ upanyasyati | nanu jṭy-anīśchaye katham "brāhmaṇo 'ham" ityādy abhināna-purassaram yāgīdau pravartteta ity ādankyūha "idam ūrsham" iti | atra "ye yajāmahe" ity anena cha ye vayanāḥ smo brāhmaṇāḥ anye vā te vayan yajāmahe iti brāhmaṇye 'navadhūraṇāṁ darśitam | mantra-lingam api "ya evāsmi sa san yaje" iti | . . . Tasmād āchāra eva brāhmaṇya-nīśchayahetur veda-prāmāṇyād ity upasāñharati |* "As the mode of propagation is common to all the castes, just as speech, etc. are, birth is difficult to be determined. And accordingly, by the words: 'We know not this, whether we are Brāhmins or no Brāhmins,' the Veda signifies a doubt as to Brāhmanhood. Then, having raised the difficulty 'how, if birth is undetermined, can a man engage in sacrifice, etc., with the previous consciousness that he is a Brāhmin, etc.?' the author answers in the words 'this text is Vedic, etc.' It is both shewn by the words 'we who . . . recite,' (which mean) 'we, whoever we are,—Brāhmins or others,—we recite,' that the fact of Brāhmanhood is unascertained; and this is also a characteristic of the formula, 'whosoever I am, being he who I am, I recite.'" The comment concludes: "Hence he briefly infers from the authoritative character of the Veda, that conduct is the cause of certainty in regard to Brāhmanhood." Prof. Aufrecht has pointed out to me that the words *ye yajāmahe* occur in S'. P. Br. i. 5, 2, 16, and in Taitt. S. i. 16, 11, 1. The Commentator on the last-named passage refers in explanation of them to As'valāyana's S'ranta Sūtras, i. 6, 4 f., where it is said that these two words constitute the formula called *āguḥ*, which comes in at the beginning of all the *yājyā* which are unaccompanied by any *anuyāja*. The Commentator interprets the two words thus: *sarve "ye" vayanāḥ hotāro 'dhvaryuṇā "yaja" iti pre-shitās te vayan "yajāmahe" yājyām yajāmaḥ |* "All we hotri priests who are called upon by the *adhvaryu* by the word 'recite,' we recite, i.e. repeat the *yājyā*." (See Haug's Ait. Br. ii. p. 133, and note 11.) Prof. Aufrecht thinks the words in the Commentator's note *ya evāsmi sa san yaje* may be a free adaptation of Atharva V. vi. 123, 3, 4. It does not appear from what source the words *na chaitad vidmaḥ* etc. are derived.

religious teacher his father (Manu, ii. 170, 225). 12485. Until he is born in the Veda, he is on a level with a Sūdra' (Manu, ii. 172);—so, in this diversity of opinions did Manu Svāyambhuva declare. The castes (though they have done nothing) will have done all they need do,²⁴⁴ if no fixed rules of conduct are observed. In such a case there is considered to be a gross confusion of castes. I have already declared that he is a Brāhman in whom purity of conduct is recognized."

The next passage from the Śāntiparvan, verses 6930 ff., is even more explicit than the last in denying any natural distinction between the people of the different castes:

Bhṛigur uvācha | Asṛijad brāhmaṇān evam pūrvam Brahmā prajāpatin | ātma-tejo 'bhiniṣṛjittān bhāskarāgni-sama-prabhān | tataḥ satyaṁ cha dharmaṁ cha tapo brahma cha śūsvatam | āchāram chaiva śaucaṁ cha svargyā vidadh prabhūḥ | dera-dānava-gandharvā daityāsura-mahoragāḥ | yaksha-rākshasa-nāgāś cha piśāchā manujās tathā | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriya vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś cha dvija-sattama | ye chānye bhūta-saṅghānām varṇāś tāmś chāpi nirmame | brāhmaṇānām sito varṇaḥ kshattriyānām cha lohitaḥ | vaiśyānām pītako varṇaḥ śūdrāṇām asitas tathā | 6935. Bharadrāja uvācha | Chāturvarnyasya varṇena yadi varṇo vibhidhyate | sarveśhām khalu varṇānām dṛśyate varṇa-sankarāḥ | kāmāḥ krodho bhāgyaṁ lobhāḥ śokaś chintā kshudhā śramāḥ | sarveśhām naḥ²⁴⁵ prabhavati kasmād varṇo vibhidhyate | sveda-mūtra-purīṣhāni śleshmā pittaṁ sa-sonitam | tanuḥ ksharati sarveśhām kasmād varṇo vibhajyate | jangamānām asaṁkhyeyāḥ sthūvarānām cha jātayāḥ | teshām vidiḥa-varṇānām kuto varṇa-viniśchayaḥ | Bhṛigur uvācha | Na viśesho 'sti varṇānām sarvam brāhmaṇam idaṁ jagat | Brahmaṇā pūrva ṛṣiṣṭām hi karmabhir varṇatām gatam | 6940. Kāma-bhoga-priyās tikṣhṇāḥ krodhanāḥ priya-sāhasāḥ |

²⁴⁴ The Commentator thus explains the word *kṛita-kṛitya*: *Kṛita-kṛityāḥ. sūdra-tulyāḥ | toḥi cha smṛitiḥ "na sūdre pītakaṁ kinchid na cha saṁskāram arhati" iti teshām saṁskārānarhatva-niṣpāpātvaibhidhāt kṛita-kṛityatvam darsayati | tadat trivṛṇāṁkū api syur ity arthah*! "*Kṛita kṛityāḥ* (lit. having done what was to be done) means, like Sūdras; so the Smṛiti (when it says), 'No sin exists in a Sūdra, nor is he fit for purificatory rites,' shews, by declaring the unfitness of this class for such rites, and its freedom from sin, that it has the character of *kṛita-kṛityatva*, i.e. of having done all it had to do. And such (in the event supposed) would be the case with men of the three (upper) classes also."

²⁴⁵ The Calcutta edition reads *na*, "not," which cannot be right. The MS. in the Library of the Edinburgh University has *naḥ*, "of us."

tyakta-svadharmā raktāṅgās te dvijāḥ kṣattratām gatāḥ | gobhyo vrittīm samāsthāya pītāḥ kṛishy-upajīvinaḥ | sva-dharmān nānutishṭhanti te dvijā vaiśyatām gatāḥ | hiṁsāṅṛita-priyā lubdhāḥ sarva-karmopajirinaḥ | kṛishṇāḥ śauca-paribhrasṭās te dvijāḥ śūdratām gatāḥ | ity etaiḥ karma-bhīr vyastā dvijū varṇāntaraṁ gātāḥ | dharmo yajna-kriyā teshām nityaṁ na pratishidhyate | ity ete chaturō varṇā yeshām brāhmī sarasvatī | vīhitā Brāhmaṇā pūrvaṁ lobhāt tv ajñānātām gātāḥ | 6945. *Brāhmaṇā brahma-tantra-sthūḥ²⁴⁶ tapas teshām na naśyati | brahma dhārayatām nityaṁ vratāni nīyamāṁs tathā | brahma chaiva paraṁ śṛiṣṭiṁ ye na jānanti te 'dvijāḥ | teshām bahuvīdhāḥ tv anyas tatra tatra hi jātayaḥ | piśūchā rūkṣasāḥ pretā vivīdhā mlecchā-jātayaḥ | prānashṭa-jnāna-vijñānāḥ svachhandāchāra-cheshṭitāḥ | prajā brāhmaṇa-saṁskārāḥ sva-karma-kṛita-niśchayāḥ | ṛishibhiḥ svena tapasā śṛijjante chāpare paraiḥ | ādi-deva-samudbhūtā brahma-mūlā 'kṣaya 'vyajā | sā śṛiṣṭir mānasī nāma dharmā-tantra-parāyaṇā |* 6950. *Bharadvāja uvācha | Brāhmaṇāḥ kena bhavati kṣattriyo vā dvijottama | vaiśyāḥ śūdrāḥ cha viprarshe tad brāhi vadatām vara | Bhṛigu uvācha | Jata-karmādibhīr yas tu saṁskārāḥ saṁskṛitāḥ śuchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ śaṭsu karmasv avasthitaḥ | śaucachāra-sthitaḥ samyag vighasāṣī guru-priyāḥ | nitya-vratī satyaparaḥ sa vai brāhmaṇa uchyate | satyaṁ dānam athādroha āṇṛisāṁsyaṁ trapū ghṛiṇā | tapas cha dṛiśyate yatra sa brāhmaṇa iti smṛitaḥ | kṣattrajaṁ sevate karma vedādhyayana-sangataḥ | dānā-dāna-ratir yas tu sa vai kṣattriya uchyate |* 6955. *Viśaty āśu paśubhyaś cha kṛishy-ādāna-ratīḥ śuchiḥ | vedādhyayana-sampannaḥ sa vaiśyāḥ iti sanjñitūḥ | sarva-bhākshya-ratir nityaṁ sarva-karma-karo 'śuchiḥ | tyakta-vedas tv anūchāraḥ sa vai śūdraḥ iti smṛitaḥ | śūdre chaitad bhavel lakshyaṁ devje tach cha na vidyate | sa vai śūdro bhavech chhūdro brāhmaṇo brāhmaṇo na cha |*

“Bhṛigu replied : 6930. ‘Brahmā thus formerly created the Prajā-patis, Brahmanic,²⁴⁷ penetrated by his own energy, and in splendour equalling the sun and fire. Tho lord then formed truth, righteousness, justere fervour, and the eternal veda (or sacred science), virtuous practice, and purity for (the attainment of) heaven. Ho also formed the gods, Dānavas, Gandharvas, Daityas, Asuras, Mahoragas, Yakshas,

²⁴⁶ *Brāhma-tantram* = *vedoktānushṭhānam* | Comm.

²⁴⁷ *Brāhmaṇān*, “Brāhmans,” is the word employed. It may mean here “sons of Brahmanā.”

Rākshasas, Nāgas, Piśāchas, and men, Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, as well as all other classes (*varṇāḥ*) of beings. The colour (*varṇa*) of the Brāhmanas was white; that of the Kshattriyas red; that of the Vaiśyas yellow, and that of the Sūdras black.’²⁴⁸ 6935. Bharaḍvāja here rejoins: ‘If the caste (*varṇa*) of the four classes is distinguished by their colour (*varṇa*), then a confusion of all the castes is observable. Desire, anger, fear, cupidity, grief, apprehension, hunger, fatigue, prevail over us all: by what, then, is caste discriminated? Sweat, urine, excrement, phlegm, bile, and blood (are common to all); the bodies of all decay: by what then is caste discriminated? There are innumerable kinds of things moving and stationary: how is the class (*varṇa*) of these various objects to be determined?’ Bhṛigu replies: ‘There is no difference of castes:’²⁴⁹ this world, having been at first created by Brahmā entirely Brahmanic,²⁵⁰

²⁴⁸ It is somewhat strange, as Professor Weber remarks in a note to p. 215 of his German translation of the Vajra Sūkti, that in the passage of the Kūthaka Brāhmaṇa xi. 6, which he there quotes, a white colour is ascribed to the Vaiśya and a dark hue to the Rājanya. The words are these: *Yach chhuklānām (brīhīnīm) ādityebhyo nir-vapati tasmūch chhukla iva vaiśyo jūyate | yat krishṇīm vārunīm tasmūd dhūmra iva rājanyaḥ* | “Since the Vaiśya offers an oblation of white (rice) to the Ādityas, he is born as it were white; and as the Vāruṇa oblation is of black (rice) the Rājanya is as it were dusky.”

²⁴⁹ Compare with this the words attributed in S’antiparvan, verses 2819 ff., to King Muchukunda, who had been reproached by the god Kuvera with trusting for victory to the aid of his domestic priest instead of to his own prowess: *Muchukundas tataḥ kruddhah pratyuvācha Dhaneśvaram | nyāya-pūrvam asainṣabdhām asambhrāntam idān vacchaḥ | brahma kshattram idān śriṣṭam cka-yoni svayambhuvā | prithag-bala-vidhūnān tanna lokam paripālayet | topo-mantra-balam nityam brāhmaṇeshu pratishṭhitam | astra-bāhu-balam nityam kshattriyesu pratishṭhitam | tūbhyām sambhūya kurtvāyam prajānām paripālanaḥ* | “Muchukunda then, incensed, addressed to the Lord of riches these reasonable words, which did not partake of his anger or excitement: ‘Brāhmanas and Kshattriyas were created by Brahmā from the same womb (or source) with different forces appointed to them: this cannot (neither of these separate forces can) protect the world. The force of austere fervour and of sacred texts abides constantly in the Brāhmanas; and that of weapons and their own arms in the Kshattriyas. By these two forces combined the people must be protected.”

²⁵⁰ *Brāhmanam* is the word employed. That it is to be understood in the sense of “Brāhmanical” appears from the following lines in which the word *devīnāḥ* must be taken in the special signification of Brāhmanas and not of “twice born men” (who may be either Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, or Vaiśyas) in general. The Brāhman is considered to have been formed of the essence of Brahmā, and to represent the original type of perfect humanity as it existed at the creation. The Commentator takes the word *brāhmanam* as = *brāhmaṇa-jātīmat*, “having the caste of Brāhmanas;” and he explains the different colours mentioned in the next verses as follows: red (*rakta*)

became (afterwards) separated into castes in consequence of works. 6940. Those Brāhmanas (*lit.* twice-born men), who were fond of sensual pleasure, fiery, irascible, prone to violence, who had forsaken their duty, and were red-limbed, fell into the condition of Kshattriyas. Those Brāhmanas, who derived their livelihood from kine, who were yellow, who subsisted by agriculture, and who neglected to practise their duties, entered into the state of Vaiśyas. Those Brāhmanas, who were addicted to mischief and falsehood, who were covetous, who lived by all kinds of work, who were black and had fallen from purity, sank into the condition of Sūdras. Being separated from each other by these works, the Brāhmanas became divided into different castes. Duty and the rites of sacrifice have not been always forbidden to (any of) them. Such are the four classes for whom the Brahmanic²⁵¹ Sarasvatī was at first designed by Brahmā, but who through their cupidity fell into ignorance. 6945. Brāhmanas live agreeably to the prescriptions of the Veda; while they continually hold fast the Veda, and observances, and ceremonies, their austere fervour (*tapas*) does not perish. And sacred science was created the highest thing: they who are ignorant of it are no twice-born men. Of these there are various other classes in different places, Piśāchas, Rākshasas, Pretas, various tribes of Mlechhas, who have lost all knowledge sacred and profane, and practise whatever observances they please. And different sorts of creatures with the purificatory rites of Brāhmanas, and discerning their own duties, are created by different rishis through their own austere fervour. This creation, sprung from the primal god, having its root in Brahma, undecaying, imperishable, is called the mind-born creation, and is devoted to the prescriptions of duty.' 6950. Bharadvāja again enquires: 'What is that in virtue of which a man is a Brāhman, a Kshattriya,

means "formed of the quality of passion" (*rajo-guṇa-maya*); yellow (*pīta*) "formed of the qualities of passion and darkness" (*rajas-tamo-maya*), and black (*kṛishṇa* or *asita*) "formed of darkness only" (*kevala-tanomaya*).

²⁵¹ *Brāhmi*. This word is thus interpreted by the Commentator: *vedamayī | chatur-ṇīm api eṣṇānām Brahmaṇā pūrvam vikṛitā | lobha-doshena tu ajñānatām tamo-bhāvaṁ gatūḥ sūdrāḥ anadhikāriṇo vede jātāḥ* | "Sarasvatī, consisting of the Veda, was formerly designed by Brahmā for all the four castes: but the Sūdras having through cupidity fallen into 'ignorance,' i.e. a condition of darkness, lost their right to the Veda." See *Indische Studien*, ii. 194, note, where Professor Weber understands this passage to import that in ancient times the Sūdras spoke the language of the Āryas.

a Vaiśya, or a Sūdra; tell me, o most eloquent Brahman rishi.' Bhṛigu replies: 'He who is pure, consecrated by the natal and other ceremonies, who has completely studied the Veda, lives in the practice of the six ceremonies, performs perfectly the rites of purification, who eats the remains of oblations, is attached to his religious teacher, is constant in religious observances, and devoted to truth,—is called a Brāhman. 6953. He in whom are seen truth, liberality, inoffensiveness, harmlessness, modesty, compassion, and austere fervour,—is declared to be a Brāhman. He who practises the duty arising out of the kingly office, who is addicted to the study of the Veda, and who delights in giving and receiving,²⁵²—is called a Kshattriya. 6955. He who readily occupies himself with cattle,²⁵³ who is devoted to agriculture and acquisition, who is pure, and is perfect in the study of the Veda,—is denominated a Vaiśya. 6956. He who is habitually addicted to all kinds of food, performs all kinds of work, who is unclean, who has abandoned the Veda, and does not practise pure observances,—is traditionally called a Sūdra. And this (which I have stated) is the mark of a Sūdra, and it is not found in a Brāhman: (such) a Sūdra will remain a Sūdra, while the Brāhman (who so acts) will be no Brāhman.'²⁵⁴

The passage next to be quoted recognizes, indeed, the existence of castes in the Kṛita age, but represents the members of them all as having been perfect in their character and condition, and as not differing from one another in any essential respects. °

It is related in the Vanaparvan that Bhīmasena, one of the Pāndus,

²⁵² *Dānam viprebhyaḥ | ādānam prajābhyaḥ*, "Giving to Brāhmins, receiving from his subjects."—Comm.

²⁵³ *Paśūn viñijyaya upayogināḥ upalabdhvā viśati pratishṭhām labhate* | "Who perceiving cattle to be useful for trade, 'enters,' obtains a basis (or his operations)." —Comm. As we have seen above p. 97, these etymologies are frequently far-fetched and absurd.

²⁵⁴ On this verse the Commentator annotates as follows: *śrīat satyāndi-aaptakam deva trawarṇike | dharma eva varṇa-vibhāge kṛāṇaṁ na jāti arthaḥ* | "These seven virtues, beginning with truth (mentioned in verse 6953), exist in the twice-born man of the first three classes. The sense is that righteousness, and not birth, is the cause of the division into classes." This explanation is not very lucid. But the sense seems to be that the seven good qualities referred to are the proper characteristics of the three upper castes, while the defects specified in verse 6956 are the proper distinctive marks of the Sūdras. Thus the Sūdra who has the four defects will remain a Sūdra, but a Brāhman who has them will be no Brāhman.

in the course of a conversation with his brother²⁵⁵ Hanūmat the monkey chief, had requested information on the subject of the Yugas and their characteristics. Hanūmat's reply is given in verses 11234 ff. :

Kṛitaṁ nāma yugaṁ tāta yatra dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ | kṛitaṁ ēva na karttavyaṁ tasmīn kāle yugottame | na tatra dharmāḥ śīdanti kṣhiyante na cha vai prajāḥ | tataḥ kṛita-yugam nāma kālena guṇatāṁ gatam | deva-dānava-gandharva-yakṣa-rākṣasa-pannagāḥ | nāsan kṛita-yuge tāta tadā na kṛaya-vikṛayaḥ²⁵⁶ | na sāma-ṛig-yajur-varṇāḥ²⁵⁷ kriyā nāśich cha mānavi | abhidhyāya phalaṁ tatra dharmāḥ saṁnyāsa eva cha | na tasmīn yuga-saṁsarge vyūdhayo nendriya-kṣayaḥ | nāsūyā nāpi ruditam na darpo nāpi vaikṛitaṁ²⁵⁸ | na vighrahaḥ²⁵⁹ kutas tandrī na dresho na cha puiśunam | 11240. Na bhayaṁ nāpi santāpo na chershyā na cha matsarah | tataḥ paramakam Brahma sā gatir yoginām parā | ātmā cha sarva-bhūtānām śuklo Nārāyaṇas tadā | brāhmaṇāḥ kṣattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrāścha kṛita-lakṣhaṇāḥ | kṛite yuge samabhavan sa-karma-niratāḥ prajāḥ | samāśrayaṁ samāchāraṁ sama-jñānaṁ cha keralam | tadā hi samakarmāṇo varṇā dharmān avāpnurān | eka-deva-sadā-yuktāḥ eka-mantra-vidhi-kriyāḥ | prithagdharmās tv eka-vedā dharmam ekam anuvratāḥ | chāturaśramya-yuktena karmaṇā kāla-yoginā | 11245. Akāma-phala-saṁyogāt prāpnuranti parām gatim | ātma-yoga-samāyukto dharmo 'yaṁ kṛita-lakṣhaṇāḥ | kṛite yuge chatuṣpādās chāturvārṇasya śāśvataḥ | etat kṛita-yugaṁ nāma traiguṇya-parivarjṇam | tretām api nibodhu traṁ tasmīn sattram pravarttate | pādēna hrāsate dharmo raktatām yāti chāchyutaḥ | satya-pravṛtṭiś cha āurāḥ kriyā-dharma-parāyaṇāḥ | tato yajñāḥ pravarttante dharmāścha vividhāḥ kriyāḥ | tretāyām bhāva-saṅkalpāḥ kriyā-dāna-phalopagāḥ | prachalanti na vai dharmāt topo-dāna-pari-yaṇāḥ | 11250. Sva-dharma-sṭhāḥ kriyāvaranto narāḥ tretā-yuge 'bhavan | dvāpare tu yuge dharmo dvibhāgaḥ pravarttate | Viṣṇur vai pītātām yāti chaturdhā veda eva cha | tato 'nye cha chatur-vedās tri-vedās cha tathā pare | dvī-vedās chuika vetās chūpy aṅgicāś cha tathā pare | evaṁ śāstreshu bhīnneṣu bahudhā nīyate kriyā | topo-dāna-pravṛtṭiś cha rājasi bhavati prajā | eka-vedasya chājñānūd vedās te bahavaḥ

²⁵⁵ Both were sons of Vāyu. See verses 11134, 11169 f. and 11176 f. of this same book. The Rāmīyaṇa is mentioned in verse 11177.

²⁵⁶ The MS. in the Edinburgh University Library reads as the last pāda: *dānū-dhanyana-viśramāḥ*.

²⁵⁷ The Edinburgh MS. reads *vedāḥ* instead *varṇāḥ*.

²⁵⁸ *Kopaṭam*—Comm.

²⁵⁹ *Vairam*—Comm.

*kṛitūḥ | sattrasya cheha vibhiraṁśāt satye²⁰⁰ kaśchid avasthitaḥ | sattvāt
prachyavamānānāṁ vyādhyo bahavo 'bhavan | 11255. Kāmās chopadrā-
vāśchaiva tadā vai daiva-kāritūḥ | yair ardyamānāḥ subhṛīṣaṁ tapas
tapyanti mānavaḥ | kāmā-kāmāḥ svarga-kāmā yajnāṁś tanvanti chāpare |
evaṁ drūparam āsādyā prajāḥ kṣhiyanty adharmataḥ | pūdenaikena Kaun-
teya dharmāḥ kali-yuge sthitaḥ | tāmasaṁ yugam āsādyā kṛishṇo bhavati
Keśavaḥ | vedāchārāḥ prasūmyanti dharma-yajña-kriyās tathā | īlayo vyā-
dhayas trandrī doṣhāḥ krodhādāyās tathā | upadravās cha varṭtante
ādhyah kṣudh bhayam tathā | yugeshv āvarṭtamāneṣu dharmo vyāvart-
tate punaḥ | dharme vyāvarttamāne tu loko vyāvarttate punaḥ | loko
kṣhiṇe kṣhayaṁ yānti bhāvā loka-pravarttakāḥ | yuga-kṣhaya-kṛitā dhar-
māḥ prārthanāni vikurvate | etat kaliyugaṁ nāma achirād yat pravart-
tate | yugānuvarttanāṁ tv etat kurvanti chirajīvināḥ |*

"11234. The Kṛita is that ago in which righteousness is eternal. In the time of that most excellent of Yugas (everything) had been done (*kṛita*), and nothing (remained) to be done. Duties did not then languish, nor did the people decline. Afterwards, through (the influence of) time, this yuga fell into a state of inferiority.²⁰¹ In that age there were neither Gods,²⁰² Dānavas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Rākshasas, nor Pannagas; no buying or selling went on; the Vedas were not classed²⁰³ as Sāman, Rīch, and Yajush; no efforts were made by men:²⁰⁴ the fruit (of the earth was obtained) by their mere wish: righteousness and abandonment of the world (prevailed).

²⁰⁰ The Edinburgh MS. reads *sattve* instead of *satye*.

²⁰¹ In thus rendering, I follow the Commentator, whose gloss is this: *Mukh-
yam apy amukhyatām gataṁ* | "although the chief, it fell into inferiority." In
Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexicon this line is quoted under the word *gunatā*, to which the
sense of "superiority, excellence," is assigned.

²⁰² Compare with this the verses of the Vāyu Purāṇa quoted in p. 90, which state
that in the Kṛita age there were neither plants nor animals; which are the products
of unrighteousness.

²⁰³ I do not venture to translate "there was then no [division of the Veda into]
Sāman, Rīch, and Yajush, nor any castes," (1) because the Edinburgh MS. reads
vedāḥ instead of *varṇāḥ*, and the Commentator does not allude to the word *varṇāḥ*; and
(2) castes (*varṇāḥ*) are referred to below (verses 11242 f.) as existing, though without
much distinction of character. The Commentator explains: *trayī-dharmasya chitta-
śuddhy-arthatvāt tasyās cha tadānīm evabhāvatvāt na sāmānīny āsan* | "As the ob-
ject of the triple veda is purity of heart, and as that existed naturally at that period,
there were no (divisions of) Sāman, etc."

²⁰⁴ I follow the Commentator whose gloss is: "*Mānavī kriyā*" *kṛishy-ādya-āram-
bha-bhūta* | *kintu* "abhidhyāya phalam," *sankalpād eva sarvam sampadyate* |

No disease or decline of the organs of sense arose through the influence of the age; there was no malice, weeping, pride, or deceit; no contention, and how could there be any lassitude? no hatred, cruelty, (11240) fear, affliction, jealousy, or envy. Hence the supreme Brahma was the transcendent resort of those Yogins. Then Nārāyaṇa, the soul of all beings, was white.²⁶⁵ Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras possessed the characteristics of the Kṛita.²⁶⁶ In that age were born creatures devoted to their duties. They were alike in the object of their trust, in observances and in their knowledge. At that period the castes, alike in their functions, fulfilled their duties, were unceasingly devoted to one deity, and used one formula (*mantra*), one rule, and one rite. Though they had separate duties, they had but one Veda, and practised one duty.²⁶⁷ By works connected with the four orders, and dependent on conjunctures of time,²⁶⁸ (11245) but unaffected by desire, or (hope of) reward, they attained to supreme felicity. This complete and eternal righteousness of the four castes during the Kṛita was marked by the character of that age and sought after union with the supreme soul. The Kṛita age was free from the three qualities.²⁶⁹ Understand now the Tretā, in which sacrifice commenced,²⁷⁰ righteousness decreased by a fourth, Vishnu became red;

²⁶⁵ In versé 12981 of this same Vanaparvan the god says of himself: *śvetaḥ kṛita-yuge varṇaḥ pītaḥ tretāyuge mama | rakto dvāparam āsādyā kṛishṇaḥ kali-yuge tathā* | "My colour in the Kṛita age is white, in the Tretā yellow, when I reach the Dvāpara it is red, and in the Kali black."

²⁶⁶ The Commentator's gloss is: *kṛitāni svataḥ siddhāni lakṣaṇāni sāmo dāmas tapa ity-ādāni yeshān te* | "They were men whose characteristics, tranquillity, etc., were effected, spontaneously accomplished." On versé 11245 he explains the same term *kṛita-lakṣaṇaḥ* by *kṛita-yuga-sūchakaḥ*, "indicative of the Kṛita age."

²⁶⁷ The different clauses of this line can only be reconciled on the supposition that the general principle of duty, and the details of the duties are distinguished. *Dharma* is the word used in both parts of the versé for "duty."

²⁶⁸ *Kāla-yoginā*. The Commentator explains: *kālo darśādih | tad-yuktēna* | "connected with time, i.e. the appearance of the new moon, etc."

²⁶⁹ And yet we are told in the Vāyu P. that the creation itself proceeded from the influence of the quality of passion (see above, p. 75), and that the four castes when originally produced were characterized in different ways by the three qualities, pp. 62 and 89

²⁷⁰ Compare S'ānti-parva, 13088. *Idam kṛita-yugaṁ nāma kālāḥ śreshṭhāḥ pravartitāḥ | ahimsyā yajna-pasavo yuge'smin na tad anyathā | chatuspāt sakalo dharmo bhavishyaty atra vai surāḥ | tatas tretā-yugaṁ nāma trayi yatra bhavishyati | prakṣitā yatra pasavo badham prāpsyanti vai makhe* | "This Kṛita age is the most excellent of periods: then victims are not allowed to be slaughtered; complete and

and men adhered to truth, and were devoted to a righteousness dependent on ceremonies. Then sacrifices prevailed, with holy acts and a variety of rites. In the Tretā men acted with an object in view, seeking after reward for their rites and their gifts, and no longer disposed to austerities and to liberality from (a simple feeling of) duty. 11250. In this age, however, they were devoted to their own duties, and to religious ceremonies. In the Dvāpara age righteousness was diminished by two quarters, Vishṇu became yellow, and the Veda fourfold. Some studied four Vedas, others three, others two, others one, and some none at all.²⁷¹ The scriptures being thus divided, ceremonies were celebrated in a great variety of ways; and the people being occupied with austerity and the bestowal of gifts, became full of passion (*rājasī*). Owing to ignorance of the one Veda, Vedas were multiplied. And now from the decline of goodness (*sattva*) few only adhered to truth. When men had fallen away from goodness, many diseases, (11255) desires and calamities, caused by destiny, assailed them, by which they were severely afflicted, and driven to practice austerities. Others desiring enjoyments and heavenly bliss, offered sacrifices. Thus, when they had reached the Dvāpara, men declined through unrighteousness. In the Kali righteousness remained to the extent of one-fourth only. Arrived in that age of darkness, Vishṇu became black: practices enjoined by the Vedas, works of righteousness, and rites of sacrifice, ceased. Calamities, diseases, fatigue, faults, such as anger, etc., distresses, anxiety, hunger, fear, prevailed. As the ages revolve, righteousness again declines. When this takes place, the people also decline. When they decay, the impulses which actuate them also decay. The practices generated by this declension of the Yugas frustrate men's aims. Such is the Kali Yuga which has existed for a short time. Those who are long-lived act in conformity with the character of the age."

The next passage from the same book (the Vana-parvan) does not make any allusion to the Yugas, but depicts the primeval perfection of mankind with some traits peculiar to itself, and then goes on to describe their decline. Mārkaṇḍeya is the speaker.

perfect righteousness will prevail. Next is the Tretā in which the triple veda will come into existence; and animals will be slain in sacrifice." See note 65, page 39, above.

²⁷¹ The Commentator explains *anṛichas* ("without the Rig-veda") by *kṛita kṛitāṅh*. On the sense of the latter word see above.

12619. *Nirmalanī śarīrāni viśuddhāni śarīrīṇām | śasara dharmatantrāni pūrvoṭpannāḥ Prajāpatiḥ | amogha-phala-sankalpāḥ suvratāḥ satyavādīnaḥ | brahma-bhūtā narāḥ puṇyāḥ purāṇāḥ kuru-sattama | sarve devaiḥ samāḥ yānti svachhandena nabhas-talam | tataś cha punar āyānti sarve svachchanda-chārīṇāḥ | svachchanda-maraṇās chūsan narāḥ svachchanda-chārīṇāḥ | alpa-bādhā nirātankāḥ siddhārthā nirupadravāḥ | drash-ṭūro deva-saṅghānām rishīṇām cha mahātmanām | pratyakṣhāḥ sarva-dharmānām dāntā vigata-maḥsarāḥ | āsan varsha-sahasrīyās tathā putra-sahasrīṇāḥ | 12625. Tataḥ kālāntare 'nyasmin prithivī-tala-chārīṇāḥ | kāmā-krodhādhikibhūtās te māyū-ryājopajīvīṇāḥ | lobha-mohābhibhūtās te saktā dehais tato narāḥ | āśubhaiḥ karmabhiḥ pāpās tiryāṇ-niraya-gāmināḥ |*

"The first-born Prajāpati formed the bodies of corporeal creatures pure, spotless, and obedient to duty. The holy men of old were not frustrated in the results at which they aimed; they were religious, truth-speaking, and partook of Brahma's nature. Being all like gods they ascended to the sky and returned at will. They died too when they desired, suffered few annoyances, were free from disease, accomplished all their objects, and endured no oppression. Self-subdued and free from envy, they beheld the gods²⁷³ and the mighty rishis, and had an intuitive perception of all duties.²⁷³ They lived for a thousand years, and had each a thousand sons. Then at a later period of time, the in-

²⁷³ See the passage from S'ankara's Commentary on the Brahma Sūtras i. 3, 32, in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 49 f., and note 49 in p. 95; and S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, ii. 3, 4, 4, *ubhayaḥ ha vai idam agre saha āsur devāś cha manushyāś cha | tad yad ha sma manushyāṇām na bhavati tad ha devān yāchante "idam vai no nāsti idam no 'stv" iti | te tasyai eva yāchayīyai deveshena devāś tirobhūtā "na id hinasāni na id deśhaya 'sāni" iti |* "Gods and men, together, were both originally (component parts of) this world. Whatever men had not they asked from the gods, saying, 'We have not this; let us have it.' From dislike of this solicitation the gods disappeared, (saying each of them) 'let me not hurt (them), let me not be hateful.'" Compare also the passage of the S. P. Br. iii. 6, 2, 26, referred to by Professor Weber in Indische Studien, x. 168: *Te ha sma ete ubhaya deva-manushyāḥ pitarāḥ sampibante | sū eśhā sampā | te ha sma drīśyamānī eva purā sampibante uta etarhy adrīśyamānāḥ |* "Both gods, men, and fathers drink together. This is their symposium. Formerly they drank together visibly: now they do so unseen." Compare also Plato, Philobus, 18: *Kal oi mēn palαιοι, κρείττορες ἡμῶν καὶ ἐγγυτέρω θεῶν ἀκούοντες, ταυτὴν φημὴν παρέδοσαν,* "And the ancients who were better than ourselves, and dwelt nearer to the gods, have handed down this tradition."

²⁷³ Compare the passage of the Nirukta, i. 20, beginning, *śākṣāt-kṛta-dharmāṇa rishayo baddhēnuḥ*, quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, p. 174.

habitants of the earth became subject to desire and anger, and subsisted by deceit and fraud. Governed by cupidity and delusion, devoted to carnal pursuits, sinful men by their evil deeds walked in crooked paths leading to hell," etc., etc.

At the end of the chapter of the Bhīshmaparvan, entitled *Jambū-khaṇḍa-nirmāṇa*, there is a paragraph in which Sanjaya gives an account of the four yugas in Bhāratavarsha (Hindustan), and of the condition of mankind during each of those periods. After stating the names and order of the yugas, the speaker proceeds :

389. *Chatevri tu sahasrāṇi varshāṇām Kuru-sattama | āyuh-sankhyā kṛta-yuge sankhyatā rāja-sattama | tathā trīṇi sahasrāṇi tretāyām manujādhipa | dve sahasre dvāpare cha bhuvi tishṭhanti sāmpratam | na pramāṇa-sthitiṛ hy asti tishye 'smiṇ Bharatarshabha | garbha-sthās cha mriyante cha tathā jātā mriyanti cha | mahābalā mahāsattvāḥ prajā-guṇa-samanvitāḥ | prajāyante cha jātās cha śataśo 'tha sahasraśaḥ | jātāḥ kṛta-yuge rājan dhaninaḥ priya-darśinaḥ | prajāyante cha jātās cha munayo vai tapodhanāḥ | mahotsāhāḥ mahātmanō dhārmikāḥ satya-vādināḥ | priyadarśanā vapuṣhmanto mahācīryā dhanurdharāḥ | varārhā yudhi jāyante kṣhattriyaḥ śūra-sattamāḥ | tretāyām kṣhattriya rājan sarve vai chakravartināḥ | āyushmanto mahāvīrā dhanurdhara-varā yudhi | jāyante kṣhattriya vīrās tretāyām vasa-vartināḥ | sarve varṇā mahārāja jāyante dvāpare sati | mahotsāhā vīryavantaḥ paraspara-jayaishinaḥ | tejasā 'lpena saṁyuktāḥ krodhanāḥ puruṣhā nriṇa | lubdhā anṛitakās chaiva tishye jāyanti Bhārata | īrṣhā mānas tathā krodhō māyū 'sūyā tathaira cha | tishye bhavati bhūtānām rāgo lobhaś cha Bhārata | sankshepo vart-rājan dvāpare 'smiṇ narādhipa |*

"389. Four thousand years are specified as the duration of life in the Kṛta age,²⁷⁴ three thousand in the Tretā, and two thousand form the period at present established on earth in the Dvāpara. There is no fixed measure in the Tishya (Kali): embryos die in the womb, as well as children after their birth. Men of great strength, goodness, wisdom, and virtue were born, and born too in hundreds and thousands. In the Kṛta age men were produced opulent and beautiful, as well as munis rich in austere fervour. Energetic, mighty, righteous, voracious, beautiful, well-formed, valorous, bow-carrying, (395) heroic Kshattriya,

²⁷⁴ See above, p. 91, note 174.

distinguished in battle, were born.²⁷⁵ In the Tretā all sovereigns were Kshatriyas. Heroic Kshatriyas were born in the Tretā, long-lived, great warriors, carrying bows in the fight, and living subject to authority. During the Dvāpara all castes are produced, energetic, valorous, striving for victory over one another. In the Tishya age are born men of little vigour, irascible, covetous, and mendacious. During that period, envy, pride, anger, delusion, ill-will, desire, and cupidity prevail among all beings. During this Dvāpara age there is some restriction.”

As it is here stated that men of all castes were born in the Dvāpara, while Brāhmins and Kshatriyas only are spoken of as previously existing, it is to be presumed that the writer intends to intimate that no Vaiśyas or Sūdras existed during the Kṛita and Tretā ages. This accords with the account given in the passage quoted above from the Uttara Kānda of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74, as well as with other texts which will be quoted below.

The following verses might be taken for a rationalistic explanation of the traditions regarding the yugas; but may be intended as nothing more than a hyperbolical expression of the good or bad effects of a king's more or less active discharge of his duties:

Sānti-parva, 2674. *Kūlo vā kāraṇaṁ rājño rājā vā kāla-kāraṇam | iti te saṁśayo mā bhūd rājā kālasya kāraṇam | daṇḍa-nītyāṁ yadā rājā samyak kārtsnyena varttate | tadā kṛita-yugam nāma kāla-sṛiṣṭam pravarttate | . . . 2682. Daṇḍa-nītyāṁ yadā rājā trīṇ aṁśān anuvarttate | chaturtham aṁśam ulsṛjya tadā tretā pravarttate | . . . 2684. Ardhaṁ tyaktvā yadā rājā nīty-artham anuvarttate | tatas tu dvāparaṁ nāma sa kālaḥ sampravarttate | . . . 2686. Daṇḍa-nītim parityajya yadā kārtsnyena bhūmipah | prajāḥ klīśnāty ayogena pravartteta tadā kaliḥ | . . . 2693. Rājā kṛita-yuga-sraśṭā tretāyā dvāparasya cha | yugasya cha chaturthasya rājā bhavati kāraṇam |*

“2674. The time is either the cause of the king, or the king is the cause of the time. Do not doubt (which of these alternatives is true): the king is the cause of the time. When a king occupies himself fully in criminal justice, then the Kṛita age, brought into existence by time,

²⁷⁵ It does not appear clearly whether we are to suppose them to have been produced in the Kṛita, or in the Tretā, as in the passage of the Rāmāyaṇa, quoted in page 119.

prevails." [Then follows a description of the results of such good government: righteousness alone is practised; prosperity reigns; the seasons are pleasant and salubrious; longevity is universal; no widows are seen; and the earth yields her increase without cultivation.] "2682. When the king practises criminal justice only to the extent of three parts, abandoning the fourth, then the Tretā prevails." [Then evil is introduced to the extent of a fourth, and the earth has to be tilled.] "2684. When the king administers justice with the omission of a half, then the period called the Dvāpara prevails." [Then evil is increased to a half, and the earth even when tilled yields only half her produce.] "2686. When, relinquishing criminal law altogether, the king actively oppresses his subjects, then the Kali age prevails." [Then the state of things, which existed in the Kṛita age, is nearly reversed.] "2693. The king is the creator of the Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara ages, and the cause also of the fourth yuga."

The next extract is on the same subject of the duties of a king, and on the yugas as forms of his action (see Manu, ix. 301, quoted above, p. 49):

Sānti-parvan, 3406. *Karma śūdre kṛishir vaiśye daṇḍa-nītiś cha rājani | brahmacharyyam tapo mantrāḥ satyaṁ chāpi drījātishu | teshāṁ yaś kshattriyo veda vastrāṇām iva śodhanam*²²⁰ | śīla-doshān vinirharttum sa pilā sa prajāpatiḥ | kṛitaṁ tretā dvāparaṁ cha kaliś Bharatarshabha | rāja-vṛittāṇi sarvāṇi rājaiva yugam uchyate | chāturvarṇyaṁ tathā vedās chāturāśramyaṁ eva cha | sarvaṁ pramukhyate hy' etad yadā rājā pramādyati |

"3406. Labour (should be found) in a Sūdra, agriculture in a Vaiśya, criminal justice in a King, continence, austere fervour, and the use of sacred texts in a Brāhman. The Kshattriya, who knows how to separate their good and bad qualities, (as (a washerman) understands the cleansing of clothes), is a father and lord of his subjects. The Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali, are all modes of a King's action. It is a King who is called by the name of Yuga. The four castes, the Vedas, and the four orders, are all thrown into disorder when the king is regardless."

²²⁰ This comparison is more fully expressed in a preceding verse (3404): *Yo na jānāti nirhartuṁ vastrāṇām rajako malam | raktānām vā śodhayitūṁ yathā nāsti tathaiiva* 3404 |

In two of the preceding passages different colours are represented as characteristic either of particular castes (Sānti-p. verses 6934 ff.), or of particular yugas (Vana-p. verses 11241 ff.). Colours (though not ranked in the same order of goodness) are similarly connected with moral and physical conditions in verses 10058 ff. of the Sāntiparvan, of which I shall offer a few specimens :

Shaḍ jīva-varṇāḥ paramam pramāṇaṁ kṛishṇo dhūmro nīlam athāsya madhyam | raktam punaḥ sahyataraṁ sukhaṁ tu hāridra-varṇam susu-khaṁ cha śuklam | parantu śuklam vimalaṁ viśokaṁ gata-klamāṁ siddhyati dānavendra | gatvā tu yoni-prabhavāni daitya sahasraśaḥ siddhim upaiti jīvaḥ | 10060. . . . Gatih punar varṇa-kṛitā prajānām varṇas tathā kālā-kṛito 'surendra | . . . 10062. Kṛishṇasya varṇasya gatir nikṛishṭā sa sajate narake pachyamānaḥ |

"10058. Six colours of living creatures are of principal importance, black, dusky, and blue which lies between them; then red is more tolerable, yellow is happiness, and white is extreme happiness. White is perfect, being exempted from stain, sorrow, and exhaustion; (possessed of it) a being going through (various) births, arrives at perfection in a thousand forms. 10060. . . . Thus destination is caused by colour, and colour is caused by time. . . . 10062. The destination of the black colour is bad. When it has produced its results, it clings to hell."

The next passage, from the Harivaṁśa, assigns to each of the four castes a separate origin, but at the same time gives an explanation of their diversity which differs from any that we have yet encountered: unless, indeed, any one is prepared to maintain that the four principles, out of which the castes are here represented to have arisen, are respectively identical with the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Brahmā! This passage, however, corresponds with one of those already quoted in associating different colours with the several castes. The question with which the passage opens refers to an account which had been given in the preceding section (verses 11799 ff.) of the creation of Bhṛigu and Angiras, to both of whom the epithet "progenitor of Brāhmans" (*brahma-vaṁśa-kara*) is applied. No mention is made there of Kshattriyas or any other castes. M. Langlois, the French translator of the Harivaṁśa, remarks that the distinction between the age of the Brāhmans and that of the Kshattriyas is an unusual one, and receives

no explanation in the context. But in two of the passages which have been quoted above (1) from the Uttara Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyaṇa, chapter 74 (p. 119), and (2) from the Bhīṣma-parva of the Mahābhārata, verses 393 ff. (p. 149), I think we find indications that the Kṛita Yuga was regarded as an age in which Brāhman alone existed, and that Kṣhattriya only began to be born in the Tretā.

Harivaṁśa, 11808. *Janameya uvācha | Śrutam brahma-yugam brahman yugānām prathamam yugam | kṣhatrasyaṇi yugam brahman śrotum ichhāmi tattvataḥ | sasaṁskṣhepaṁ savistarāṁ niyamaiḥ bahubhiḥ chitam | upāya-jñaiḥ cha kuthitaṁ kratubhiḥ chopasobhitam | Vaiśampāyana uvācha |* 11810. *Etat te kathayishyāmi yajña-karmabhir architam | dāna-dharmaiḥ cha vīdhaiḥ prajābhir upasobhitam | te 'ngushṭha-mātrā munayaḥ ādattāḥ sūrya-raśmibhiḥ | mokṣa-prāptena vidhinā nirābādheṇa karmanā | pravṛtite chāpravṛtite cha nityam Brahma-parāyanāḥ | parāyanasya sangamyā Brahmanas tu mahipate | śrī-ṛittāḥ pāvanāḥ chaiva brāhmaṇāḥ cha mahipate | chārīta-brahmacharyyāḥ cha brahmanjñānena bodhitāḥ | pūrṇe yuga-sahasrānte prabhūre pralayāṁ gatāḥ | brāhmaṇā ṛittā-sampannā jñāna-siddhāḥ samāhitāḥ |* 11815. *Īyatirik-tendriyo Viṣṇur yogātmā brahma-sambhavaḥ | Dakṣaḥ prajāpatir bhātvā sṛjate vipulāḥ prajāḥ | akṣarād brāhmaṇāḥ saumyāḥ kṣharāt kṣhattriya-bāndhavāḥ | vaiśyā vikārataḥ chaiva śūdrā dhūma-vikārataḥ | śveta-lohitakair varṇaiḥ pitair nilaiḥ cha brāhmaṇāḥ | abhinirvartitāḥ varṇāḥ chintayānena Viṣṇunā | tato varṇatram āpannāḥ prajā loke chaturvidhāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kṣhattriya vaiśyāḥ śūdrāḥ chaiva mahipate | eka-lingāḥ prithag-dharmā dvipādāḥ paramādibhūtāḥ | yātānayaḥ 'bhisampannā gati-jnāḥ sarva-karmasu | trayāṇāṁ varṇa-jātānāṁ veda-proktāḥ kriyāḥ smṛitāḥ | tena brāhmaṇa-yogena vaiṣṇaveṇa mahipate | prajñayā tejasā yogāt tasmāt Prācetasah prabhūḥ | Viṣṇur eva mahāyogī karmāṇām antaraṁ gataḥ | tato nirvāṇa-sambhūtāḥ śūdrāḥ karma-vivarjitāḥ | tasmād nūrahanti saṁskāram na hy atra brahma vidyate | yathā 'gnau dhūma-saṅghāto hy aranyā mathyamānayaḥ | prādurbhūto visarpanvai nopayujyati karmani | evaṁ śūdrā visarpanto bhuvi kūrṣṇyena janmanā | na saṁskṛitena* 277 *dharmena veda-proktena karmanā |*

"Janamejaya says: 11808. I have heard, o Brāhman, the (description of the) Brahma Yuga, the first of the ages. I desire also to be accurately informed, both summarily and in detail, about the age of the

277 The printed text reads *nāsaṁskṛitena*; but *na saṁskṛitena* seems necessary.

Kshattriyas, with its numerous observances, illustrated as it was by sacrifices, and described as it has been by men skilled in the art of narration. Vaiśampāyana replied: 11810. I shall describe to you that age revered for its sacrifices and distinguished for its various works of liberality, as well as for its people. Those Munis of the size of a thumb had been absorbed by the sun's rays. Following a rule of life leading to final emancipation, practising unobstructed ceremonies, both in action and in abstinence from action constantly intent upon Brahma, united to Brahma as the highest object,—Brāhmins glorious and sanctified in their conduct, leading a life of continence, disciplined by the knowledge of Brahma,—Brāhmins complete in their observances, perfect in knowledge, and contemplative,—when at the end of a thousand yugas, their majesty was full, these Munis became involved in the dissolution of the world. 11815. Then Viṣṇu sprung from Brahma, removed beyond the sphere of sense, absorbed in contemplation, became the Prajāpati Dakṣha, and formed numerous creatures. The Brāhmins, beautiful (or, dear to Soma),²⁷⁸ were formed from an imperishable (*akṣara*), the Kshattriyas from a perishable (*kṣara*), element, the Vaiśyas from alteration, the Sūdras from a modification of smoke. While Viṣṇu was thinking upon the castes (*varṇān*), Brāhmins were formed with white, red, yellow, and blue colours (*varṇaiḥ*).²⁷⁹ Hence in the world men have become divided into castes, being of four descriptions, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, one in form, distinct in their duties, two-footed, very wonderful, full of energy(?), skilled in expedients in all their occupations. 11820. Rites are declared to be prescribed by the Vedas for the three (highest) castes. By that contemplation practised by the being sprung from Brahma (see v. 11815)—by that practised in his character as Viṣṇu,—the Lord Prācīnetaṣa (Dakṣha), *i.e.* Viṣṇu the great contemplator (*yogin*), passed through his wisdom and energy from that state of meditation into the sphere of works.²⁸⁰ Next the Sūdras, produced from extinction, are destitute

²⁷⁸ In verse 11802, we read *abhiśhikṣya tu Somān cha yauvarājyaḥ Pītūmahāḥ | brāhmaṇānān cha rājānān sūdevatān rajanī-charam* | “Brahmā also inaugurated Soma as the heir to the kingdom, as the king of the Brāhmins who walks eternally through the night.”

²⁷⁹ This play upon the two senses of the word *varṇa* will be noticed.

²⁸⁰ I do not profess to be certain that I have succeeded in discovering the proper meaning of this last sentence.

of rites. Hence they are not entitled to be admitted to the purificatory ceremonies, nor does sacred science belong to them. Just as the cloud of smoke which rises from the fire on the friction of the fuel, and is dissipated, is of no service in the sacrificial rite, so too the Sūdras wandering over the earth, are altogether (useless for purposes of sacrifice) owing to their birth, their mode of life devoid of purity and their want of the observances prescribed in the Veda."

The next extract gives an account at variance with all that precedes, as it does not assign to all the Brāhmans themselves the same origin, but describes the various kinds of officiating priests as having been formed from different members of Vishṇu's body :

Harivanuśa, 11355. *Evam ekārṇave bhūte sete loke mahādyutiḥ | prachhādyā salilāṁ sarvāṁ Harir Nārāyaṇaḥ prabhuḥ | mahato rajaso madhye mahūrṇara-samasya vai | virajasko mahābāhur aksharam brāhmaṇaṁ viduḥ | ātma-rūpa-prakāśena tapasū saṁvṛitaḥ prabhuḥ | trikam āchhādyā kālāṁ tu tataḥ sushvāpa sas tadā | puruṣho yajna ity evaṁ yat param parikīrtitam | yach chānyut puruṣākhyāṁ tu tat sarvam puruṣhottamaḥ | ye cha yajnaparā viprā ritejā iti sanjñitāḥ | ātma-dehāt purā bhūtā yajnebhyaḥ śrūyatām tadā |* 11360. *Brahmāṇam paramaṁ vaktṛād udgatāraṁ cha sāma-gāṁ | hotāraṁ atha chādhearyyūṁ bāhubhyām asrijat prabhuḥ | brāhmāṇo brāhmaṇatvāch cha prastotāraṁ cha sarvasaḥ | tam maitravaruṇam śriṣṭvā pratishṭhātāraṁ eva cha | udarāt pratiharttāraṁ potāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | achhāvākam atkerubhyām neshṭāraṁ chaiva Bhārata | pāṇibhyām athachhāgnīdhram brahmanyāṁ chaiva yajniyam | grāvāṇam atha bāhubhyām unnetāraṁ cha yājñikam | evam evaisha bhagavān shodāśaitān jagatpatiḥ | pravaktṛin sarva-yajnanām ritevjō 'srijad uttamān | tad esha vai yajnamayaḥ puruṣho veda-saṁjñitāḥ | vedāś cha tanmayāḥ sarve sāṅgopanishada-kriyāḥ |*

Vaisampāyana said : 1135. "Thus the glorious Lord Hari Nārāyaṇa, covering the entire waters, slept on (the world) which had become one sea, in the midst of the vast expanse of fluid²⁸¹ (*rajas*), resembling a mighty ocean, himself free from passion (*virajaskah*), with mighty arms.—Brāhmans know him as the undecaying. Invested through austere fervour with the light of his own form, and clothed with triple time (past, present, and future), the Lord then slept. Puruṣhottama

²⁸¹ *Rajas* is said in two places of the Nirukta, iv. 19, and x. 44, to have the sense of "water."

(Vishṇu) is whatever is declared to be the highest, Purusha the sacrifice, and everything else which is known by the name of Purusha. Hear how the Brāhman devoted to sacrifice, and called *ṛitvijes*, were formerly produced by him from his own body for offering sacrifices. 11360. The Lord created from his mouth the brāhman, who is the chief, and the udgātrī, who chaunts the Sāman; from his arms the hotṛī and the adhvaryu. He then . . . ²⁸² created the prastotṛī, the maitrāvraṇa, and the pratishṭhātrī; from his belly the pratihartṛī and the potṛī, from his thighs the achhāvāka and the neshṭṛī, from his hands the agnidhra and the sacrificial brahmanya, from his arms the grāvan and the sacrificial unnetṛī. Thus did the divine Lord of the world create these sixteen excellent *ṛitvijes*, the utterers of all sacrifices. Therefore this Purusha is formed of sacrifice and is called the Veda; and all the Vedas with the Vedāngas, Upanishads, and ceremonies, are formed of his essence."

SECT. XII.—*Extracts from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa on the same subject.*

I will conclude my quotations from the Purāṇas on the subject of the origin of mankind and of castes with a few passages from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. The first extract reproduces some of the ideas of the Purusha Sūkta²⁸³ more closely than any of the Puranic accounts yet given.

ii. 5, 34. *Varsha-ṣṭṛga-sahasrānte tad aṇḍam udake śayam | kāla-karma-svabhūva-stho jīvo 'jīvam ajīvayat |* 35. *Sa eva Purushas tasmād aṇḍam nirbhedyā nirgataḥ | sahasroro-anghri-bāhu-akṣaḥ sahasrānana-śīrshavān |* 36. *Yasyehūvayavair lokān kalpayanti manīṣināḥ | kṛty-*

²⁸² I am unable to make a proper sense out of the words *brahmaṇo brāhmaṇatvūch cha*, which, however, as I learn from Dr. FitzEdward Hall, are found (with only a difference of long and short vowels) in the best MSS. to which he has access, as well as in the Bombay edition. One of the sixteen priests, the Brāhmaṇūchhaṇsin, is not found in the enumeration, and his name may therefore have stood at the beginning of the line. Instead of the inept reading *sarvasaḥ*, at the end, the author may perhaps have written *vakṣasaḥ*, "from his chest," as, indeed, one MS. reads in the next line. The Bombay edition reads *prishṭhāt*, "from the back," instead of *śīrṣṭvā*.

²⁸³ M. Burnouf remarks in the Preface to the first vol. of his edition of the Bhāgavata, pp. cxxii. ff., on the manner in which its author has gone back to Vedic sources for his materials. The same thing is noticed by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. 286, note.

ādibhir adhaḥ sapta saptordhvaṁ jaghanādibhiḥ | 37. *Purushasya mukham brahma kshatram etasya bāhvaḥ* | *ūrur vaiśyo bhagavataḥ padbhyāṁ sūdro rya jāyatu* | 38. *Bhūlokaḥ kalpitah padbhyām bhuvarloko 'sya nābhitaḥ* | *hṛidū svarloka urasū maharloko mahātmanah* |

"34. At the end of many thousand years the living soul which resides in time, action, and natural quality gave life to that lifeless egg floating on the water. 35. Purusha then having burst the egg, issued from it with a thousand thighs, feet, arms, eyes, faces, and heads. 36. With his members the sages fashion the worlds, the seven lower worlds with his loins, etc., and the seven upper worlds with his groin, etc. 37. The Brāhman (was) the mouth of Purusha, the Kshattriya his arms, the Vaiśya was born from the thighs, the Sūdra from the feet of the divine being. The earth was formed from his feet, the air from his navel; the heaven by the heart, and the maharloka by the breast of the mighty one."

In the following verse the figurative character of the representation is manifest :

ii. 1, 37. *Brahmānanaṁ kshattri-bhujō mahātmā vid-ūrur anghri-śrita-kṛishṇa-varṇaḥ* |

"The Brāhman is his mouth; he is Kshattriya-armed, that great One, Vaiśya-thighed, and has the black caste abiding in his feet."

The next passage is more in accord with the ordinary representation, though here, too, the mystical view is introduced at the close :

iii. 22, 2. *Brahmā 'srijat sva-mukhato yushmān ātma-parīpsayā* | *chhandomayas tapo-vidyā-yoga-yuktān alampaṭān* | 3. *Tat-trāṇyā-srijach chāsmān doḥ-sahasrāt sahasra-pāt* | *hṛidayāṁ tasya hi brahma kshattram angam prachakshate* |

"Brahmā, who is formed of the Veda (*chhandas*), with a view to the recognition of himself, created you (the Brāhmans) who are characterized by austere fervour, science, devotion and chastity, from his mouth. For their protection he, the thousand-footed, created us (the Kshattriyas) from his thousand arms: for they declare the Brāhman to be his heart, and the Kshattriya his body."

iii. 6, 29 ff. contains another reference to the production of the castes :

29. *Mukhato 'varttatu brahma Purushasya Kurūdvaha* | *yastūn-mukhatvād varṇānām mukhyo 'bhūd brāhmaṇo guruḥ* | 30. *Bāhubhyo 'varttatu kshattriṇāṁ kshattriyas tad-anurrtatūḥ* | *yo jātas trāyato varṇān*

pauruṣaḥ kaṇṭaka-kṣatāt | 31. *Viśo 'vartanta tasyorvor loka-vṛtti-karīr vibhoḥ* | *vaiśyas tad-udbhavo vṛttān nṛiṇām yaḥ samavarttayāt* | 32. *Padbhyām bhagavato jajne śuśrūṣhū dharmā-siddhaye* | *tasyām jātuh purā śūdro yad-vṛtityā tushyate Hariḥ* | 33. *Ete varṇāḥ sva-dharmena yujanti sva-guruṁ Hariṁ* | *śraddhaya* "tma-viśuddhyartham yaj jātāḥ saha vṛttibhiḥ |

"29. From the mouth of Puruṣa, o descendant of Kuru, issued divine knowledge (*brahma*), and the Brāhman, who through his production from the mouth became the chief of the castes and the preceptor. 30. From his arms issued kingly power (*kṣattrā*), and the Kṣattriya devoted to that function, who, springing from Puruṣa, as soon as born defends the castes from the injury of enemies. 31. From the thighs of the Lord issued the arts,²⁸⁴ affording subsistence to the world; and from them was produced the Vaiśya who provided the maintenance of mankind. 32. From the feet of the divine Being sprang service for the fulfilment of duty. In it the Sūdra was formerly born, with whose function Hari is well satisfied. By fulfilling their own duties, with faith, for the purification of their souls, these castes worship Hari their parent, from whom they have sprung together with their functions."

In viii. 5, 41, we find the following:

Viśro mukhād brahma cha yasya guhyaṁ rājanya āsīd bhujayor balam cha | *ūrvor viḍ oḥ 'nghrir aveda-śūdrau prasīdatām naḥ sa mahā-vibhūtiḥ* |

"May that Being of great glory be gracious to us, from whose mouth sprang the Brāhman and the mysterious Veda, from whose arms came the Rājanya and force, from whose thighs issued the Viś and energy, and whose foot is no-veda (*aveda*) and the Sūdra."

The same work gives the following very brief account of the *Arvāk-srotas* creation, which is described with somewhat more detail in the passages extracted above from the Vishṇu and Vāyu Purāṇas:

iii. 20, 25. *Arvāk-srotas tu navamaḥ kṣattrar eka-vidho nṛiṇām* | *rajo 'dhikāḥ karma-parāḥ duḥkhe cha sukha-māninaḥ* |

²⁸⁴ The word so rendered is *viśaḥ*, which in the hymns of the Rig-veda has always the sense of "people." Here, however, it seems to have the sense assigned in the text, if one may judge from the analogy of the following verse, in which the Sūdra is said to be produced from his special function, *śuśrūṣhā*, "service." The Commentator explains *viśaḥ* = *kṛṣhy-ādi-vyavasāyāḥ*, "the professions of agriculture," etc.

"The Arvaksrotas creation was of one description,²⁸⁵ viz., of men, in whom the quality of passion abounded, who were addicted to works, and imagined that in pain they experienced pleasure."

In vi. 6, 40, a new account is given of the origin of mankind. We are there told :

Aryamno Mātrikā patnī tayoś Charṣaṇayaḥ sūtāḥ | yatra vai mānushā jātir Bruhmaṇā chopakalpītā |

"The wife of Aryaman (the son of Aditi) was Mātrikā. The Charṣaṇis were the sons of this pair, and among them the race of men was formed by Brahmā." The word *charṣaṇi* signifies "men," or "people" in the Veda.

In the following verse (which forms part of the legend of Purūravas, quoted in the 3rd vol. of this work, pp. 27 ff.) it is declared that in the Kṛita age there was only one caste :

ix. 14, 48. *Eka eva purā vedāḥ prajāvaḥ sarva-rāṇmayāḥ | devo Nārāyaṇo nānya eko'gnir varṇa eva cha | Purūravasa evāsīt trayī tretā-mukhe nṛipa |*

"There was formerly but one Veda, the *prajāva* (the monosyllable *Om*), the essence of all speech; only one god, Nārāyaṇa, one Agni, and (one) caste. From Purūravas came the triple Veda, in the beginning of the Tretā."

Some of the Commentator's remarks on this text will be found in vol. iii. p. 29. He says the one caste was called "Hansa" (*varṇas cha eka eva haṁso nāma*), and concludes his note by remarking : "The meaning is this: In the Kṛita age when the quality of goodness predominated in men, they were almost all absorbed in meditation; but in the Tretā, when passion prevailed, the method of works was manifested by the division of the Vedas, etc."

²⁸⁵ The Sāṅkhya Kārikā, 53, says: *ashṭa-vikalpo daivas tairgyagonyas cha pañchadhā bhavati mānushyas chaika-vidhaḥ samāsato bhautikaḥ sargaḥ*; which is thus translated by Mr. Colebrooke (in Wilson's Sāṅkhya Kārikā, p. 164): "The divine kind is of eight sorts; the grovelling is five-fold; mankind is single in its class. This, briefly, is the world of living beings." The Commentator Gaudapāda shortly explains the words *mānushyas chaika-vidhaḥ* by *mānushayonir ekaiva*, "the source of production of mankind is one only." Vijnāna Bhikṣhu, the Commentator on the Sāṅkhya Pravachana, iii. 46, paraphrases the same words thus, *mānushya-sargas chaika-prakāraḥ*, "the human creation is of one sort."

SECT. XIII.—*Results of this Chapter.*

The details which I have supplied in the course of this chapter must have rendered it abundantly evident that the sacred books of the Hindus contain no uniform or consistent account of the origin of castes; but, on the contrary, present the greatest varieties of speculation on this subject. Explanations mystical, mythical, and rationalistic, are all offered in turn; and the freest scope is given by the individual writers to fanciful and arbitrary conjecture.

First: we have the set of accounts in which the four castes are said to have sprung from progenitors who were separately created; but in regard to the manner of their creation we find the greatest diversity of statement. The most common story is that the castes issued from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet of Purusha, or Brahmā. The oldest extant passage in which this idea occurs, and from which all the later myths of a similar tenor have no doubt been borrowed, is, as we have seen, to be found in the Purusha Sūkta; but it is doubtful whether, in the form in which it is there presented, this representation is anything more than an allegory. In some of the texts which I have quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, traces of the same allegorical character may be perceived; but in Manu and the Puranas the mystical import of the Vedic text disappears, and the figurative narration is hardened into a literal statement of fact. In other passages, where a separate origin is assigned to the castes, they are variously said to have sprung from the words Bhūh, Bhuvah, Svah; from different Vedas; from different sets of prayers; from the gods, and the asuras; from nonentity (pp. 17–21), and from the imperishable, the perishable, and other principles (Harivamśa, 11816). In the chapters of the Viṣṇu, Vāyu, and Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇas, where castes are described as coeval with the creation, and as having been naturally distinguished by different guṇas, or qualities, involving varieties of moral character, we are nevertheless allowed to infer that those qualities exerted no influence on the classes in whom they were inherent, as the condition of the whole race during the Kṛita age is described as one of uniform perfection and happiness; while the actual separation into castes did

not take place, according to the Vāyu Purāṇa, until men had become deteriorated in the Tretā age.

Second: in various passages from the Brāhmanas, Epic poems, and Puranas, the creation of mankind is, as we have seen, described without the least allusion to any separate production of the progenitors of the four castes (pp. 23-27, and elsewhere). And whilst in the chapters where they relate the distinct formation of the castes, the Puranas, as has been observed, assign different natural dispositions to each class, they elsewhere represent all mankind as being at the creation uniformly distinguished by the quality of passion. In one of the texts I have quoted (p. 26 f.) men are said to be the offspring of Vivasvat; in another his son Manu is said to be their progenitor; whilst in a third they are said to be descended from a female of the same name. The passage which declares Manu to have been the father of the human race explicitly affirms that men of all the four castes were descended from him. In another remarkable text the Mahābhārata categorically asserts that originally there was no distinction of classes, the existing distribution having arisen out of differences of character and occupation. Similarly, the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in one place informs us that in the Kṛita age there was but one caste; and this view appears also to be taken in some passages which I have adduced from the Epic poems.

In these circumstances we may fairly conclude that the separate origination of the four castes was far from being an article of belief universally received by Indian antiquity.

I shall now proceed to enquire what opinion the writers of the older Vedic hymns appear to have entertained in regard to the origin of the race to which they themselves belonged.

CHAPTER II.

TRADITION OF THE DESCENT OF THE INDIAN RACE FROM MANU.¹

It appears from the considerations urged in the preceding chapter that in all probability the Purusha Sūkta belongs to the most recent portion of the Rig-veda Sanhitā, and that it is at least doubtful whether the verse in which it connects the four castes with the different members of the creator's body is not allegorical. And we have seen that even if that representation is to be taken as a literal account of the creation of the different classes, it cannot, in the face of many other statements of a different tenor, and of great antiquity, be regarded as expressing the fixed belief of the writers of the period immediately succeeding the collection of the hymns in regard to the origin of the social divisions which prevailed in their own time. But the notions entertained of the origin of caste at the date of the Purusha Sūkta, whatever they may have been, will afford no criterion of the state of opinion on the same subject in an earlier age; and it therefore remains to enquire whether those hymns of the Rig-veda, which appear to be the most ancient, contain either (1) any tradition regarding the origin of mankind, or of the Indian tribes; or (2) any allusion to the existence, in the community contemporary with their composition, of separate classes corresponding to those afterwards known as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; and if they embrace any reference of the latter kind, whether they afford any explanation of the manner in which these orders of men came to occupy their respective positions

¹ On the subjects treated in this chapter compare my article in the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xx. for 1863, pp. 406 ff., where a reference is made to the other writers who had previously treated of them, such as M. Nève, Mythe des Ribhavas, etc.

in society. We shall find on examination that the hymns supply some information on both these branches of enquiry.

Numerous references are undoubtedly to be found in all parts of the hymn-collection to a variety of ranks, classes, and professions; of which an account will be given in the next chapter; but no hint is anywhere discoverable, except in the single text of the Purusha Sūkta, of those classes being distinguished from each other by any original difference of race. If, however, the early Vedic Indians had all along believed in the quadruple production of their nation from the different members of Purusha, one might naturally have expected to find allusions to such a variety of birth running through the hymns. But nothing, I repeat, of this kind is to be traced. On the contrary it appears from a considerable number of passages that at least the superior ranks of the community were regarded as being of one stock, the Aryan, and as having one common ancestor. This chapter will therefore embrace, First, the texts which are found in the hymns regarding the origin of the Indian tribes, and the history of their progenitor, and Secondly those passages which occur in the Brāhmanas, and other later works in which the statements of the early Vedic poets on these subjects are re-echoed or developed.

SECT. I.—*Manu as the progenitor of the Āryan Indians and the institutor of religious rites according to the Hymns of the Rig-veda.*

In this section I shall first quote the texts which allude to Manu as father (which must of course be understood to designate him as the actual human progenitor of the authors of the hymns, and of the bulk of the people to whom they addressed themselves); and then adduce those which speak of him as the institutor of religious rites, or as the object of divine protection.

(1) The following texts are of the first class :

i. 80, 16. *Yām Atharvā Manuṣh pitā Dadhyañ dhiyam atmata | tasmin brahmāṇi pūrvathā Indre ukthā samagmata |*

“Prayers and hymns were formerly congregated in that Indra, in the ceremony which Atharvan, father Manu, and Dadhyanch celebrated.”²

² This verse is quoted in the Nirukta, xii. 34, where the words *Manuṣh pitā*,

i. 114, 2. *Yat śaṁ cha yoś cha Manur āyeje pitā tad aśyāma tadv Rudra praṇītishu* |

“Whatever prosperity or succour father Manu obtained by sacrifice, may we gain all that under thy guidance, O Rudra.”

ii. 33, 13. *Yā vo bhesajā Marutaḥ śuklīni yā śantunā ṛṣishano yā mayobhū | yāni Manur avṛṇīta pitā naḥ tā śaṁ cha yoś cha Rudrasya vaśmi* |

“Those pure remedies of yours, O Maruts, those which are most auspicious, ye vigorous gods, those which are beneficent, those which our³ father Manu chose, those, and the blessing and succour of Rudra, I desire.”

viii. 52, 1 (Śāma-veda, i. 355). *Sa pūrvyo mahānām vena kratubhir ānaje | yasya drūrā Manuḥ pitā deveshu dhiyaḥ ānaje* |

“That ancient friend hath been equipped with the powers of the mighty (gods). Father Manu has prepared hymns to him, as portals of access to the gods.”⁴

“father Manu,” are explained as meaning *Manuścha pitā mūnavānām*, “Manu the father of men.” Sāyana, the Commentator on the Rig-veda, interprets them as meaning *sarvāsām prajānām pitṛbhiḥ Manuścha*, “Manu the father of all creatures.” In R.V., x. 82, 3, the words “our father and generator” (*yo naḥ pitā janitā*), are applied to Visvakarman, the creator of the universe. The word “father” in the R.V. is often applied to Dyaus, the Sky, and “mother” to the Earth, as in vi. 51 5. (Compare Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1864, pp. 55 ff.) But in these passages it is not necessary to suppose that the words are employed in any other than a figurative sense; although in a hymn to the Earth in the Atharva-veda, xii. 1, we find the following verse (the 15th): *Tvaj-jūtas tvayi charanti martyās tram bibhāḥ śi dvīpadas tram chatuspadah | tavame prithivī pancha-mūnavāḥ yebhyo jyotir amṛitam martyebhyaḥ udyan sūryo rāśmibhir ātanoti* | “Mortals born of thee live on thee: thou supportest both bipeds and quadrupeds. Thine, o Earth, are these five races of men, these mortals on whom the sun rising, sheds undying light with his rays;”—where it might almost appear as if the poet meant to represent mankind as actually generated by the earth. Brihaspati (iv. 50, 6; vi. 73, 1) and the other gods, as Indra, are called “father,” or compared to fathers (vii. 52, 3); as are Rudra, vi. 49, 10; and the Rishi, R.V., x. 81, 1; x. 82, 1, 3, 4. S. P. Br., i. 5, 3, 2, has *Prajāpataṁ pitari*; and Taitt. Br. iii. 9, 22, 1, *Prajāpatim pitaram*. In both the last places Prajāpati is referred to as the father of the gods.

³ It is to be observed that while in the two preceding passages Manu is styled merely “father Manu,” he is here called “our father Manu” (*Manuḥ pitā naḥ*).

⁴ I am indebted to Professor Aufrecht for the above translation of this, to me, obscure verse. Sāyana explains it thus: *Sa pūrvyo mukhyo mahānām prajānām yojanānām kratubhir nimistabhūtair venaḥ kantas teshām haviḥ kāmāyamunāḥ ānaje ūgaohhati | yasyendrasya dvārā dvārāni prōtyupayāni dhiyaḥ karmaṇi deveshu eteshu madhye pitā sarveshām pālako Manur ānaje prūpa | ānajiḥ prōpti-*

The sense of the next text is less clear, but it appears at least to allude to the common designation of Manu as a father:

x. 100, 5. *Yajno Manuḥ pramatir naḥ pitā hi kam* |

"Sacrifice is Manu, our protecting father."

The following verse, according to the Commentator at least, speaks of the *paternal* or *ancestral* path of Manu. Professor Aufrecht thinks it need not mean more than the ancestral human path:

viii. 30. 3. *Tē naḥ trādhrām te arata te u no adhi rochāta* | *mā naḥ pathaṇḥ pitryāḥ mātaryāḥ adhi dūram naiṣṭha parāvataḥ* |

"Do ye (gods) deliver, protect, and intercede for us; do not lead us far away from the paternal path of Manu."⁵

As in the preceding passages Manu is spoken of as the progenitor of the worshippers, so in the following the same persons may perhaps be spoken of as his descendants, although it is also true that the phrases employed may be merely equivalent to "children of men."

i. 68, 4. *Hotā nishatto Manor apatyē sa chit nu āsām patiḥ rayinām* |

"He (Agni) who abides among the offspring of Manu as the invoker (of the gods), is even the lord of these riches."⁶

karmā | "This chief one, in consequence of the rites of the venerable sacrificers, desiring their oblation, comes,—he (Indra) as means of attaining whom Manu the preserver of all has obtained rites among these gods." Professor Benfey renders the verse, where it occurs in the Sāma-veda, thus: "He is the chief of the rich, through works the dear one enlightens him, whose doors father Manu has, and illuminates observances towards the gods." From Prof. Benfey's note to the passage (p. 230) it appears that the Commentator on the Sāma-veda explains *ānaje* by *vyaktīkaroti ūt-mānam*, "makes himself distinct" (herein differing from Sāyana), Manu by *jñātā sarvasya* = *Indraḥ*, "the knower of all, Indra," and *ānaje*, where it occurs the second time, by *āgamayati*, "causes to come." Such are the differences of opinion regarding the interpretation of some parts of the hymns.

⁵ On this verse Sāyana comments thus: *Sarveshām Manuḥ pitā tataḥ āgatāt* | *parāvataḥ* | *pitā Manuḥ dūram mūrgam cakre* | *tasmāt patho mūrgāt no asmān mā naiṣṭha mā nayata* | *apanayanām mā kuruta ity arthaḥ* | *sarvadā brahmacharyyāgni-hotrādī-karmāṇi yeṇa mūrgena bhuvanti tam eva asmān nayata* | *kiṁtū dūram ya etad-vyatirikto viprakṛiṣṭo mārgo 'sti tasmād adhi adhikam ity arthaḥ asmān apanayata* | "'Of Manu' means, come from Manu who is the father of all. 'Distant:' Father Manu journeyed along a distant path. Do not lead us away from that path. Lead us along that path in which continence, the agnihotra sacrifice, and other duties have always been practised. But lead us away from the distant path which is different from that."

⁶ The Commentator here explains "the offspring of Manu" as offspring or creatures in the form of worshippers (*yajamāna-svarūpāyām prajūyām*); and adds that according to a Brāhmaṇa "creatures are sprung from Manu" (*"Mānavyo hi prajāḥ"*)

iii. 3, 6. *Agnir devebhir manushaścha jantubhis tanvāno yajnam puru-
peśasam dhiyā* |

"Agni, together with the gods, and the children (*jantubhiḥ*) of Manush, celebrating a multiform sacrifice with hymns," etc.

In the following texts reference is made to the *people* of Manu, the word for "people" being *viś*, from which *vaiśya*, "a man of the people," is derived :

iv. 37, 1. *Upa no Vājāḥ adhvaram Ribhukshāḥ devāḥ yāta pathibhir
derayānāḥ | yathā yajnam manusho vikshu āsu dadhidve ranvāḥ sudine-
shu ahnām* |

"Ye gods, Vājas, and Ribhukshans, come to our sacrifice by the path travelled by the gods, that ye, pleasing deities, may institute a sacrifice among these people of Manush (*Manusho vikshu*) on auspicious days."

vi. 14, 2. *Agnim hotāram īlate yajneshu manusho viśaḥ* |

"The people of Manush praise in the sacrifices Agni the invoker."

viii. 23, 13. *Yad vai ā viśpatiḥ śitāḥ supṛito manusho viśi | viśvā id
Agniḥ prati rakshāṁsi sedhati* |

"Whenever Agni, lord of the people,⁷ kindled, abides gratified among the people of Manush, he repels all Rakshases."

(2.) From the preceding texts it appears that the authors of the hymns regarded Manu as the progenitor of their race. But (as is clear from many other passages) they also looked upon him as the first person by whom the sacrificial fire had been kindled, and as the institutor of the ceremonial of worship; though the tradition is not always consistent on this subject. In one of the verses already quoted (i. 80, 16) Manu is mentioned in this way, along with Atharvan and

iti hi brāhmaṇam). Yūska (Nir. iii. 7) gives the following derivations of the word *manushya*, "man:" *Manushyūḥ kasmāt | matvā karmāni śiṅyanti | manasyamānena śṛiṣṭāḥ . . . | Manor apatyam Manusho vā* | "From what are men (named)? Because after reflection they sew together works; (or) because they were created by one who reflected (or, according to Durga, "rejoiced") . . . (or) because they are the offspring of Manu, or Manush."

⁷ *Viśpati*. Compare vi. 48, 8, where it is said: *viśvāsām grihapatir viśām asi tvam Agne māmushīnam* | "Agni, thou art the master of the house of all human people (or, people sprung from Manush);" and x. 80, 6, *Agnim viśaḥ īlate māmushīr yūḥ Agnim Manusho Nahusho vi jātāḥ* | "Human people (or, people descended from Manush) praise Agni: (people) sprung from Manush, from Nahush, (praise) Agni." Or if *manushaḥ* be the nom. plur. the last clause will run thus. "men sprung from Nahush (praise) Agni."

Dadhyanah, as having celebrated religious rites in ancient times. The following further passages refer to him as a kindler of fire, and offerer of oblations :

i. 36, 19. *Ni tvām Agne Manur dadhe jyotir janāya śaśvate* |

“Manu has placed (or ordained) thee, Agni, a light to all the people.”

i. 76, 5. *Yathā viprasya Manusho havirbhir devān ayajāḥ kavibhiḥ kaviḥ saṇ | eva hotaḥ satyatara tram adya Agne mandrayā juhvā yajasca* |

“As thou, thyself a sage, didst, with the sages, worship the gods with the oblations of the wise Manush, so to-day, Agni, most true invoker, worship them with a cheerful flame.”

v. 45, 6. *Ā ita dhiyam kṛṇavāma sakhūyah . . . yayā Manur Viśi-
śipram jigāya . . .*

“Come, friends, let us perform the prayer . . . whereby Manu conquered Viśiśipra . . .

viii. 10, 2. *Yad vā yajnam Manave sammīnikshathur eva it Kūṇvasya bodhatam* |

“Or if ye (Āśvins) sprinkled the sacrifice for Manu, think in like manner of the descendant of Kanva.”

ix. 96, 11. *Tryāḥ hi naḥ pitarah Soma pūrve karmāṇi chakruḥ pavamānu dhīrāḥ | . . . 12. Yathā apavathāḥ Manave vajodhāḥ anitrahā varivoid harishmān | eva pavasra . . .*

“For through thee, O pure Soma, our early fathers, who were wise, performed their rites . . . 12. As thou didst flow clear for Manu, thou upholder of life, destroyer of foes, possessor of wealth, rich in oblations, so (now) flow clear.” . . .

x. 63, 7. *Yebhyo hotrām prathamām āyeja Manuḥ samiddhāgnir manasā sapta hotribhiḥ | tā Ādityā abhayaḥ śarma yachkata . . .*

“O ye Ādityas, to whom Manu, when he had kindled fire, presented along with seven hotri priests the first oblation with a prayer, bestow on us secure protection.”

x. 69, 3. *Yat te Manur yaḍ anikam Sumitrah samādhe Agne tad idam navīyah* ⁸ |

⁸ The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa (i. 4, 2, 5) thus explains the words *devedāho Manvid-dhah* :—*Manviddhah iti | Manur hy etam agre aindha | tasmād āha “Manviddhah” iti | “The gods formerly kindled it (fire) : hence it is called ‘god-kindled.’ Manu formerly kindled it : and hence it is called ‘kindled by Manu.’”* The Āitareya Brāhmaṇa (ii. 34), however, explains the word *Manv-iddhah* from the fact that “*men kindle it*” (*īman hi manushyā indhate*).

"That lustre of thine which Manu, which Sumitra, kindled is this same which is now renewed."

In conformity with the preceding texts, the following may be understood as declaring that the sacrificial fire had been first kindled by Manu :

i. 13, 4 (= S.V. ii. 700). *Agne sukhatame rathe devān ṛṣitaḥ ā vaha | asi hotā Manurhitaḥ |*

"O Agni, lauded, bring the gods hither in a most pleasant chariot. Thou art the invoker (of the gods) placed by Manush."⁹

i. 14, 11. *Team hotā Manurhito 'gne yajneshu sīdasi | saḥ imam no adhvaram yaja |*

"Thou, Agni, the invoker placed by Manush, art present at the sacrifices: do thou present this our oblation." (See also R.V. iii. 2, 15.)

vi. 16, 9. *Team hotā Manurhitaḥ . . .*

"Thou art the invoker placed by Manush"

viii. 19, 21. *Īḷe girā Manurhitam yam devā dātām aratim nī erire | yajishṭham havya-vāhanam |*

"With a hymn I laud that adorable bearer of oblations placed by Manush,¹⁰ whom the gods have sent as a ministering messenger."

⁹ The compound word which I have here rendered "placed by Manush" is in the original *Manur-hita*. Professor Aufrecht would render it "given to man," and quotes i. 36, 10, in support of this view. The sense I have given is supported by i. 36, 19, where the same root, *dhū*, from which *hita* (originally *dhita*) comes, is used, joined with the particle *nī*. The same participle *hita* is used in vi. 16, 1, where it is said: *Team Agne yajñnām hotā sarveśhām hitaḥ | devebhīr mīnushe jane |* "Thou, Agni, hast been placed, or ordained, among the race of Manush by the gods as the invoker at all sacrifices." The fact that Agni is here said to have been placed by the gods among the race of Manush does not forbid us to suppose that there are other passages in which, either inconsistently, or from a different point of view, Agni may have been said to be placed by Manu. The compound *manur-hita* occurs also in the following texts, where, however, it has probably the sense of "good for man," viz.: i. 106, 5. *Bṛihaspate sadam id naḥ sugaṁ kṛdhi saṁ yor yat te manur-hitam tad imāhe |* "Bṛihaspati, do us always good: we desire that blessing and protection of thine which is good for man." (Sāyana says that here *manur-hitam* means either "placed in thee by Manu, i.e., Brahmā," or, "favourable to man." Benfey, in loco, renders "destined for man.") vi. 70, 2. *Rājanī asya bhuvanasya rodasi asme retāḥ sinhataṁ yad manur-hitam |* "Heaven and earth, ruling over this world, drop on us that seed which is good for man." x. 26, 5. *Ṛishiḥ sa yo manur-hitaḥ |* "He (Pūshan) who is a rishi kind to men," etc. Professor Roth s.v. gives only the latter sense.

¹⁰ Though the word *manur-hita* is here interpreted by Sāyana as meaning "placed by Manu Prajāpati who sacrificed," it might also signify "friendly to men," as Agni is also said to have been sent by the gods.

viii. 34, 8. *Ā tvā hotā Manurhito devatrā rakshad idyaḥ* |

“May the adorable invoker placed by Manu bring thee (Indra) hither among the gods,” etc.

There is also a class of passages in which the example of Manush may be referred to by the phrase *manush-vat*, “like Manush,” or, “as in the case of Manush.”¹¹ Thus in i. 44, 11, it is said:

Ni tvā yajnasya sādhanam Agne hotāram ṛitrijam manushvad deva dhīmahi . . . |

“Divine Agni, we, like Manush, place thee, the accomplisher of the sacrifice, the invoker, the priest,” etc.

v. 21, 1. *Manushvat tvā ni dhīmahi Manushvat sam idhīmahi* | *Agne Manushvad Angiro devām devayate yaja* |

“Agni, we place thee like Manush, we kindle thee like Manush. Agni, Angiras, worship the gods like Manush, for him who adores them.”

vii. 2, 3. *Manushvad Agnim Manunā samiddham sam adhvarāya sadam in mahema* |

“Let us, like Manush, continually invoke to the sacrifice Agni who was kindled by Manu.”

viii. 27, 7. *Suta-somāso Varuṇa havāmahe Manushvad iddhāgnayaḥ* |

“We invoke thee, Varuṇa, having poured out soma, and having kindled fire, like Manush.”

viii. 43, 13. *Uta tvā Bhṛigurat suche Manushvad Agne āhuta* | *Angirastad havāmahe* | . . . 27. *Yam tvā janāsa indhete Manushvad Angirastama* | *Agne sa bodhi me vachāḥ* |

“Like Bhṛigu, like Manush, like Angiras, we invoke thee, bright Agni, who hast been invoked. . . . 27. Agni, most like to Angiras, whom men kindle like Manush, attend to my words.”

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 5, 1, 7, explains thus the word *Manush-vat*:¹²—*Manur ha vai agre yajnena ije | tad anukṛitya imāḥ prajāḥ ya-*

¹¹ I should observe that Prof. Aufrecht thinks the phrase—except perhaps with the single exception of viii. 43, 13—means “amongst men.” Prof. Roth gives only the sense “like men,” “as among, or for, men.”

¹² The same work in the same passage thus explains the phrase *Bharata-vat*. “He bears (*bharati*) the oblation to the gods; wherefore men say, Bharata (or ‘the bearer’) is Agni. Or, he is called Bharata (the ‘sustainer’) because, being breath, he sustains these creatures.” This phrase may, however, refer to the example of King Bharata. See Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 5, 4, 14.

janto | *tasmād āha* “*Manush-vad*” *iti* | “*Manor yajnaḥ*” *iti u vai āhuḥ* | *tasmād vā iva āhur* “*Manushvad*” *iti* | “Manu formerly sacrificed with a sacrifice. Imitating this, these creatures sacrifice. He therefore says, *Manushvat*, ‘like Manu.’ Or, they say ‘like Manu,’ because men speak of the sacrifice as being Manu’s.”

It must, however, be admitted that Manu is not always spoken of in the hymns of the first, or only, kindler of fire or celebrator of religious rites. In i. 80, 16, already quoted, Atharvan and Dadhyanch are specified along with him as having offered sacrifice in early times.

In the following verses Atharvan is mentioned as having generated fire :

vi. 16, 13. *Imam tu tyam Atharva-vad Agnim mathanti vedhasaḥ* |

“The wise draw forth this Agni, as Atharvan did.”

vi. 16, 13 (= S. V. i. 9; Vāj. Sanh. xi. 32). *Tvām Agne pushkarūd adhy Atharvā nir amanthata . . .* | 14. *Tam u tvā Dadhyañū ṛishiḥ putraḥ idhe Atharvaṇaḥ* |

“Agni, Atharvan drew thee forth from the lotus leaf,” etc. 14.

“Thce the rishi Dadhyanch, son of Atharvan, kindled,” etc.

[In the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā, the first of these verses is immediately preceded by the following words (xi. 32): *Atharvā tvā prathamō nir amanthad Agne* | “Atharvan was the first who drew thee forth, Agni.”]

Again it is said in the Rig-veda, x. 21, 5. *Agnir jūto Atharvaṇā vidad viśvāni kāryā* • | *bhuvad dūto Vivasvataḥ* | “Agni, produced by Atharvan, knows all wisdom, and has become the messenger of Vivasvat.”

In i. 83, 5, Atharvan is mentioned as the earliest institutor of sacrifice : *Yajnair Atharvā prathamāḥ pathas tute tataḥ sūryo vratapāḥ venaḥ ājani* | “Atharvan was the first who by sacrifices opened up paths ; then the friendly Sun, the upholder of ordinances, was produced,” etc. : so too in x. 92, 10. *Yajnair Atharvā prathamō vi dhārayad devā dakṣhair Bhṛigavaḥ sam chikitrire* | “Atharvan, the first, established (all things) with sacrifices. The divine Bhṛigus co-operated with their powers.”¹³

¹³ These two texts might, though not very probably, be understood to mean not that Atharvan was the first to employ sacrifice, but to use it for the purpose referred to in the context.

The next texts speak of the Bhrigus as the institutors of sacrifice by fire :

i. 58, 6. *Dadhus tvā Bhrigavo mānusheshv ā rayim na chārum suhavam janebhyah | hotāram Agne |*

“The Bhrigus have placed thee, o Agni, among men, as an invoker, like a beautiful treasure, and easily invoked for men,” etc.

ii. 4, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthe dvitā adadhur Bhrigavo vikshu Āyoh |*

“Worshipping him (Agni) in the receptacle of waters, the Bhrigus placed him among the people of Āyu.”

x. 46, 2. *Imam vidhanto apām sadasthi paśum na nashṭam padair anu gman | gulū chatantam usījo namobhir ichhanto dhīrā Bhrigavo avindan |*

“Worshipping him in the receptacle of waters, and desiring him with prostrations, the wise and longing Bhrigus followed him with their steps, like a beast who had been lost, and found him lurking in concealment”¹⁴ (i. 65, 1).

In other places, the gods, as well as different sages, are mentioned as introducing or practising worship by fire, or as bringing down the sacred flame from heaven :

i. 36, 10. *Yam tvā devāso manave dadhur iha yajishṭham havyavāhana | yam Kaṇvo Medhyātithir dhanaspritam yam Vṛishā yam Upastutaḥ |*

“Thou, o bearer of oblations, whom the gods placed here as an object of adoration to man (or Manu); whom Kaṇva, whom Medhyātithi, whom Vṛishan, whom Upastuta (have placed) a bringer of wealth,” etc. Compare vi. 16, 1, quoted above, p. 167, note 9.

iii. 5, 10. *Yadi Bhrigubhyah pari Mātariśvā guhā santam havyavāham samidhe |*

“When Mātariśvan kindled for the Bhrigus Agni, the bearer of oblations, who was in concealment.”

x. 46, 9. *Dyāvā yam Agnim prithivī janishṭām ūpas Tvashṭā Bhrigavo yam sahoḥhiḥ | ileniyam prathamam Mātariśvā devās tatakshur manave yajatram |*

“Mātariśvan and the gods have made, as the first adorable object of worship to man (or Manu), that Agni whom heaven and earth, whom

¹⁴ In the following passages also the Bhrigus are mentioned as connected with the worship of Agni: i. 71, 4; i. 127, 7; i. 143, 4; iii. 2, 4; iv. 7, 1; vi. 15, 2; viii. 43, 13; viii. 91, 4; x. 122, 5.

the waters, whom Tvashtri, whom the Bhrigus, have generated by their powers."

In the 8th verse the Āyus, and in the 10th the gods, as well as men, are said to have placed Agni.

In i. 60, 1; i. 93, 6; i. 148, 1; iii. 2, 13; iii. 5, 10; iii. 9, 5; vi. 8, 4, Māturiśvan is again spoken of as the bringer or generator of fire. (Compare note 1, in p. 416, of my article "On Manu the progenitor of the Āryan Indians," in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, vol. xx. for 1863.)

But to return to Manu. Although the distinction of having been the first to kindle fire is thus, in various passages, ascribed to Atharvan or the Bhrigus, this does not disprove the fact that in other places, it is, somewhat inconsistently, assigned to Manu; and none of these other personages is ever brought forward as disputing with Manu the honour of having been the progenitor of the Āryan race. In this respect the Vedic tradition exhibits no variation, except that Yama also seems in some places to be represented as the first man. (See my article in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1865, pp. 287 ff., and especially the words of the Atharva-veda, xviii. 3, 14. *Yo mamāra prathamamarttyānām* | "Who (Yama) died first of men.")

(III.) The following passages describe Manu as being the object of special favour or intervention on the part of some of the gods:

i. 112, 16. *Yābhīr narā Sayave yābhīr Atraye yābhīr purā Manave gātum īshathuḥ* | *yābhīr śārīr ājatam Syūmarasmaye tābhīr u shu ūtibhīr Aśvinā gatam* | 18. . . . *Yābhīr Manum śāram īshā samāvatam* |

"Come, Aśvins, with those succours, whereby, o heroes, ye effected deliverance for Sayu, for Atri, and formerly for Manu, whereby ye shot arrows for Syūmarasmi. 18. . . . whereby ye preserved the hero Manu with food."¹⁵

viii. 15, 5. *Yena jyotiṃśhi Āyave Manave cha viveditha* | *mandāno asya barhiṣho vi rājasi* |

"Exulting in this (exhilaration), wherewith thou didst make known the luminaries to Āyu, and to Manu, thou art lord of the sacrificial grass."

¹⁵ This passage, as far as it concerns Manu, is thus explained by Śāyaṇa: "And with those succours, whereby ye made a path, a road which was the cause of escape from poverty, by sowing barley and other kinds of grain, etc., for Manu, the royal ishhi of that name; according to another text" (i. 117, 21).

When compared with the preceding verse it seems not improbable that the following text may refer to the same tradition, and that instead of *Vāyave* we should read *Āyave* :

vii. 91, 1. *Kuvid anga namasū ye vṛidhāsah purā devā anavadyāsah āsan | te Vāyave (Āyave?) Manave bādhitāya avāsayan Ushasam Sūryena |*

“Certainly those gods who were magnified by worship were of old faultless. They displayed the dawn with the sun to Vāyu (Āyu ?), to Manu when distressed.

There is also a reference to the sky being displayed to Manu in the following verse, unless the word (*manu*) is to be there taken as an epithet of Purūravas, which does not seem a probable supposition :

i. 31, 4. *Tam Agno Manave dyām avāsayaḥ Purūravase sukrīṭe sukṛittaraḥ |*

“Thou, Agni, didst display the sky to Manu, to the beneficent Purūravas, (thyself) more beneficent.”

If Manu be taken for a proper name in vii. 91, 1, it may reasonably be understood in the same way in vi. 49, 13, where the person referred is similarly spoken of as distressed :

vi. 49, 13. *Yo rajāṁśi viname pārthivāni tris chid Vishṇur Manave bādhitāya |*

“Vishṇu who thrice measured the terrestrial regions for Manu when distressed.”

And in that case the word Manu may perhaps also be taken to denote a person in vii. 100, 4, *Vichakrame prithivīm esha etām kshetrāya Vishṇur Manave dasāsyān |* “This Vishṇu strode over this earth, bestowing it on Manu for an abode.” Although here the general sense of “man” would make an equally good sense.

I may introduce here another text in which, from its conjunction with other proper names, it must be held that the word Manu denotes a person.

i. 139, 9. *Dadhyañ ha me janusham pūrvo Angirāḥ Priyamedhaḥ Kaṇvo Atrir Manur vidus te me pūrve Manur viduḥ |*

“Dadhyanh, the ancient Angiras, Priyamedha, Kaṇva, Atri, Manu, know my (Paruchhepa’s?) birth; they, my predecessors, Manu, know it.”

There are, as we have seen, some passages in the hymns in which it is doubtful whether the words *manu* and *manush* denote an

individual, or stand for man in general; and there are also texts in which the latter sense is clearly the only one that can be assigned. Such are the following :

(1.) *Manu* in the singular :

i. 130, 5. . . . *Dhenur iva manave viśvadohaso janāya viśvadohasaḥ* |

“All-productive as a cow to *man*, all-productive to a person.”

v. 2, 12. *Barhishmate manave śarma yaṁsad havishmate manave śarma yaṁsat* |

“That he may bestow protection on the *man* who sacrifices, on the *man* who offers oblations.”

viii. 47, 4. *Manor viśvasya gha id ime Ādityāḥ rūya īsate* |

“These Ādityas are lords of every *man*’s riches”

(2.) *Manu* in the plural :

viii. 18, 22. *Ye chid hi mṛityubandhavaḥ Ādityāḥ manavaḥ smasi* |
pra su naḥ āgur jīvasa tirelana |

“O ye Ādityas, prolong the days of us who are *men* who are of kin to death, that we may live.”

x. 91, 9. *Yad devayanto dadhati prayāṁsi te havishmanto manavo vṛikta-barhishāḥ* |

“When these pious *men* sacrificing, and spreading the sacrificial grass, offer thee oblations.”

(3.) *Manush* in the singular :

i. 167, 7. *Guhā charantī manusho na yoshū* |

“Like the wife of a *man* moving secretly.”

vii. 70, 2. . . . *atāpi gharmo manusho durone* |

“Fire has been kindled in the *man*’s abode.”

The same phrase *manusho durone* occurs also in viii. 76, 2; x. 40, 13; x. 104, 4; x. 110, 1. In x. 99, 7, we find the words *druhvāṁ manusha*, “against the injurious man.”

(4.) *Manush* in the plural :

iv. 6, 11. *Hotāram Agnim manusho nishedur namasyanta usijah saṁsam āyoh* |

“*Men* offering worship, and eager, attend upon Agni the invoker, the object of *man*’s (or *Āyu*’s) praises.”

In the following passages, if the word *Manu* is not to be understood as denoting a person, the progenitor of men, it seems, at all events, to designate his descendants, the favoured race to which the authors of

the hymns believed themselves to belong, and appears to be in some cases at least nearly synonymous with Ārya, the name by which they called men of their own stock and religion, in contradistinction to the Dasyus, a term by which we are either to understand hostile demons, or the rude aboriginal tribes :

i. 130, 8. *Indraḥ samatsu yajamānam āryam prārad viśreshu satamūtir ājishu . . . | manave śasad avratān tvacham kṛishnām arandhayat* |¹⁶

"Indra who bestows a hundred succours in all conflicts . . . has preserved the Ārya in the fights. Chastising the lawless, he has subjected the black skin to the man (*manave*)."

Compare i. 117, 21, where instead of *manu*, or *manush*, the word *manusha* is employed :

Yarām ṛpikena Āśvinā vapantā iṣham dūhantā manushāya dasrū | abhi dasyum bakureṇu dhamantā uru jyotiś chakrathur āryāya |

"Sowing barley with the wolf, ye, o potent Āsvin; milking out food for man (*manusha*), blowing away the Dasyu with the thunder-bolt(?), have made a broad light for the Ārya." ¹⁷

i. 175, 3. *Tam hi śuraḥ sanitā chodayo manusho ratham | sahāvān dasyum avratam oshaḥ pātram nu śochishā* |

"Thou, a hero, a benefactor, hast impelled the chariot of man : victorious, thou hast burnt up the rite-less Dasyu, as a vessel is consumed by a blaze."

ii. 20, 6. *Sa ha śruta Indro nāma deva ūrdhvo bhuvad manushe dasmatamaḥ | ava priyam arśasānasya sahāvān śiro bhavad dāsasya svadhāvān | 7. Sa vṛittrahā Indraḥ kṛishnayonīḥ purandaro dāsīr airayad vi | ajanayad manave kshām apaścha satrū śaṁsam yajamānasya tūlot* |

"The god renowned as Indra hath arisen most mighty for the sake of man. Violent, self-reliant, he has smitten down the dear head of the destructive Dāsa. 7. Indra, the slayer of Vṛittra, the destroyer of cities, has scattered the Dasyu (hosts) sprung from a black womb. He

¹⁶ A similar opposition between the word *āyu*, "man," and *dasyu* is to be noted in the following passage, vi. 14, 3: *nūnā hi Agne avase spardhante rāyo aryaḥ | tūrvanto dasyum āyavo vṛataih śikshanto avratam* | "In various ways, o Agni, the riches of the enemy emulously hasten to the help (of thy worshippers). The men destroy the Dasyu, and seek by rites to overcome the riteless."

¹⁷ See Prof. Roth's explanation of this passage as given in a note to the article on Manu the progenitor of the Aryan Indians, *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xx. p. 418.

has produced for *man* the earth¹⁸ and the waters; he has perfectly fulfilled the aspiration of his worshipper."

vi. 21, 11. *Nu me ā vācam upa yāhi vidvān viśvebhiḥ sūno sahaso yajatraiḥ | ye agnijihrvāḥ ṛitasāpah āsur ye manum chakrur uparam dasāya |*

"Do thou, o wise god, son of strength, approach my hymn with all the adorable (deities), who were fire-tongued, rite-frequenting, and made *man* superior to the Dāsa."

viii. 87, 5. *Abhi hi satya somapāḥ ubhe babbhūtha rodasī | Indrāsi surato vṛidhaḥ patir divaḥ |* 6. *Tram hi śasvatīnām Indra darta purām asi | hantā dasyor manor vṛidhaḥ patir divaḥ |*

"5. For thou, o true soma-drinker, hast overcome both worlds. Indra, thou art the prosperer of him who makes libations, the lord of the sky. 6. Thou, Indra, art the destroyer of all the cities, the slayer of the Dasyu, the prosperer of *man*, the lord of the sky."

ix. 92, 5. *Tan nu satyam paramānasya astu yatra viśve kūravah sañ-nasanta | jyotiṛ yad ahne akrīṇod u lokam prāvud manum dasyavo kar abhikam |*

"Let this be the true (abode) of the pure god (Soma) where all the sages have assembled; since he has made light and space for the day, has protected man, and repelled the Dasyu."

x. 49, 7. *Yad mā sāvo manushaḥ āka nirṇije vṛidhaḥ kṛiṣhe dāsān kṛit-vyam hathaiḥ |*

"When the libation of *man* calls me to splendour, I tear in pieces (?) with blows the vigorous Dāsa."

x. 73, 7. *Tram jaghantha Namuchim makhasyum dāsam kṛiṇvāṇaḥ ṛishaye vimūyam | tvam chakartha manave syonān paṭho devatrā anjasū īva yānān |*

"Thou hast slain the lusty Namuchi, making the Dāsa bereft of magic against the rishi: thou made for man beautiful paths leading as it were straightway to the gods."

It is to be observed that in none of these passages is the Brahmanical, or any other, caste singled out as having been the special object of divine protection. Men, or Āryas, are the favourites of the gods. And

¹⁸ In iv. 26, 7, Indra says: "*Aham bhūmim adadām āryōya aham vṛiaḥṭim dā-sushe martyāya* | "I gave the earth to the Ārya; I gave rain to the sacrificing mortal."

even in such hymns as R.V. i. 112; i. 116; i. 117; i. 119, etc., where the Aśvins are celebrated as having interposed for the deliverance of many of their worshippers, whose names are there specified, we are nowhere informed that any of these were Brāhmins, although reference is often made to their being rishis.¹⁹

There is one other text of considerable interest and importance, R.V. iii. 34, 9, which, although it is unconnected with Manu, may be here cited, as it connects the word *ārya* with the term *varṇa*, "colour," which in later times came to signify "caste," as applied to the Brāhmins and other classes. It is this:

*Sasānūtyān uta sūryaṁ sasāna Indrah sasāna purubhojasān gām |
hiraṇyayam uta bhogaṁ sasāna hatvī dasyūn pra āryaṁ varṇam āvat |*

"Indra bestowed horses, he bestowed the sun, he bestowed the many-nourishing cow, he bestowed golden wealth: having slain the Dasyu, he protected the Āryan colour."

It is to be observed that here the word *varṇa* is used in the singular. Thus all the persons coming under the designation of Ārya, are included under one class or colour, not several.²⁰

We shall see in the next chapter that, irrespective of the verse of the Puruṣa Sūkta, there are in the Rig-veda Sanhitā a few texts in which the Brāhmins are mentioned alone of all the four castes, without any distinct reference being found anywhere to the second class as Rājanyas, or Kshattriyas, or to the third and fourth as Vaiśyas and Sūdras.

In the mean time I shall advert to some other phrases which are employed in the hymns, either to denote mankind in general, or to signify certain national or tribal divisions. The most important of these is that of the "five tribes," who are frequently referred to under the appellations of *pancha-kṛishṭayah*, *pancha-kshitayah*, *pancha-kshitayo mānushyayah* (vii. 97, 1), *pancha-charshanayah*, *pancha-janūḥ*, *pāṇchajanyū viś* (viii. 52, 7), *pancha bhūma* (vii. 69, 2), *pancha jātū* (vi. 61, 12).²¹

¹⁹ See Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 7 ff.

²⁰ Sayana, indeed, interprets the word *āryam varṇam* by *uttamam varṇaṁ traivarṇikam* | "the most excellent class consisting of the three upper castes;" but he of course explains according to the ideas of his own age. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, Kūṇva Sūkhū (Adhvya Kūṇḍa, i. 6) it is stated that the upper three castes only were Āryas and fit to offer sacrifice (*ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaiśyo vā te hi yajniyāḥ*) see Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 281.

²¹ In iii. 49, 1, mention is made not of the five tribes, but of *all* the tribes: *S'ama*

Some of these terms are occasionally used of the gods, as in x. 53, 4 : *urjāda uta yaṁniyāsah panchajanā mama hotraṁ jushadhvam* | “Ye five tribes who eat (sacrificial) food, and are worthy of adoration, receive my oblation with favour.”²²

On this verse Yāska remarks, Nirukta, iii. 8 : “*Gandharvāḥ pitaro devā asurā rakshāṁsi*” *ity eke* | “*chatvāro varṇā nishādaḥ panchamaḥ*” *ity Aupamanyavaḥ* | “Some say the word denotes the Gandharvas, fathers, gods, asuras, and rakshases. Aupamanyava says it denotes the four castes and the Nishādas.”²³

If Aupamanyava was right, the Nishādas also were admissible to the worship of the gods in the Vedic age, as the “five classes” are represented in various texts as votaries of Agni. Such are the following :

vi. 11, 4. *Āyurṇ na yaṁ namasū rātahavyāḥ anjanti suprayasam pancha janāḥ* |

“Agni, whom, abounding in oblations, the five tribes, bringing offerings, honour with prostrations, as if he were a man.”

Sāyaṇa here defines the five tribes as “priests and offerers of sacrifices” (*ritvig-yajamāna-lakṣaṇāḥ*).

ix. 65, 22. *Ye somāsah . . sunvire . .* | 23. *Ye vā janeshu panchasu* |

mahām Indrāṁ yasmin viśvā ū krishṭayaḥ somepāḥ kāmam aryaṇ | “Praise the great Indra, in whom all the tribes drinking soma have obtained their desire.”

²² Compare x. 60, 4. “In whose worship Ikshvāku prospers, wealthy and foc-destroying, like the five tribes in the sky (*divīva pancha krishṭayah*). Sāyaṇa, however, renders “His five tribes (the four castes and the Nishādas) are as (happy as) if in heaven.” Prof. Müller, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 462, renders, “as the five tribes in heaven.”

²³ In his note on this passage in his “Illustrations of the Nirukta,” p. 28, Prof. Roth remarks : “The conception of the five races which originally comprehended all mankind . . . is here transferred to the totality of the divine beings. Hence also arises the diversity of understanding, when the number has to be indicated.” Prof. Roth then quotes part of Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 31, which I give a little more fully from Dr. Haug’s edition : *Pāṇchojanyāṁ vai etad uktham yad vaiśvadevam* | *sarveśāṁ vai etat panchajanānām uktham deva-manushyānām gandharvāpsarasāṁ sarpāṇāṁ cha pitṛāṇāṁ cha* | *eteshāṁ vai etat panchajanānām uktham* | *sarve enam panchajanā viduḥ* | *ā enam panchīyāḥ janatīyāḥ havino gachhanti ya evaṁ veda* | “This Vaiśvadeva uktha belongs to the five classes of beings. It belongs to all the five classes of gods, men, gandharvas and apsaras, serpents, and fathers. To these five classes belongs this uktha. All these five classes know him (who uses it). Those of this five-fold set of beings who are skilled in invocation come to the man who knows this.” See Dr. Haug’s Ait. Br. ii. 214, where it is said that Gandharvas and Apsaras are counted as one class.

“Or those soma-libations which have been poured out . . (23) among the five tribes.”

x. 45, 6. *Vīṭuṁ chid adrim abhinat parūyan janāḥ yad agnim aya-janta pancha* |

“He (Agni), travelling afar, clove even the strong mountain, when the five tribes worshipped Agni.”

vii. 15, 2. *Yāḥ pancha charshanir abhi nishasūda dame dame* | *kavir grihapatir yuvā* |

“The wise and youthful master of the house (Agni) who has taken up his abode among the five tribes in every house.”

In vi. 61, 12, Sarasvati is spoken of as “augmenting or prospering the five tribes” (*pancha jātā vardhayanti*).

In viii. 52, 7, it is said: *Yat pāñchajanyayā viśā Indre ghoshāḥ asrikshata* | “When shouts were uttered to Indra by the people of the five tribes,” etc.

In R.V. i. 117, 3, Atri is styled *ṛishim pāñchajanyam*, “a rishi belonging to the five tribes.” In v. 32, 11, the epithet *satpatiḥ pāñchajanyaḥ*, “the good lord of the five tribes,” is applied to Indra. And in ix. 66, 20, Agni is called the purified rishi, the priest of the five tribes (*pāñchajanyaḥ purohitaḥ*).²⁴

In other passages, however, it is far from clear that the “five races” are intended to be identified with the Aryas, or people of honourable race, to whom the authors of the hymns belonged. Such, perhaps, is the case in the following verse: ii. 2, 10. *Asmīkaṁ dyumnam adhi pancha kṛishṭishu uchchā svar na śusuchita duṣṭaram* | “May our glory shine aloft among the five tribes, like the heaven unsurpassable.” See also vi. 46, 7, to be quoted below.

On the same subject, Professor Roth remarks as follows in his Lexicon under the word *kṛishṭi*: “The phrase *five races* is a designation of all nations, not merely of the Aryyan tribes. It is an ancient enumeration, of the origin of which we find no express explanation in the Vedic texts. We may compare the fact that the cosmical spaces or points of the compass are frequently enumerated as *five*, especially in

²⁴ See Mahābhārata, iii. 14160, as referred to by Roth under *jana*, where the birth of a being of five colours, apparently a form of Agni, is described, who was generated by five rishis, and who was known as the god of the five tribes (*pāñchajanya*) and the producer of five races.

the following text of the A.V. iii. 24, 2: *imā yāḥ pañcha pradīśo mānavīḥ pañcha kṛishṭayāḥ* | 'these five regions; the five tribes sprung from Manu'; among which (regions) we should have here to reckon as the fifth the one lying in the middle (*dhrucā dik*, A.V. iv. 14, 8; xviii. 3, 34), that is, to regard the Aryyas as the central point, and round about them the nations of the four regions of the world. . . . According to the Vedic usage, five cannot be considered as designating an indefinite number."

We cannot therefore regard the use of the term "five races" as affording any evidence of the existence of a rigidly defined caste-system at the period when it was in frequent use. The frequent reference to such a division, which fell into disuse in later times, rather proves the contrary. The caste-system was always a quadruple, not a quintuple, one; and although the Nishādas are added by Aupamanyava as a fifth division of the population, this class was esteemed too degraded to allow us to suppose that they could ever have formed part of a universally recognized five-fold division, of which all the parts appear to be regarded as standing on an equal, or nearly equal, footing.

It is supposed by Dr. Kuhn²⁵ that the "five tribes" are to be identified with the clans whose names are mentioned in the following verse:

i. 108, 8. *Yad Indrāgnī Yadushu Turvaśeshu yad Druhyushu Anushu Pūrushu sthah | atah pari vṛishanāv ā hi yātam athā somasya pibataṁ sutasya* |

"If, o Indra and Āgni, ye are abiding among the Yadus, Turvaśas, Druhyus, Anus, Pūrus,—come hither, vigorous heroes, from all quarters, and drink the Soma which has been poured out."

Although, however, these tribes are often mentioned separately in the Rig-veda, this is either the only, or almost the only, text in which they are all connected with one another. Their identity with the "five classes" is therefore doubtful.

There is another word employed in the Rig-veda to designate a race well known to the authors of the hymns, viz., *naḥush*. We have already met with this term in a verse (x. 80, 6) I have quoted above, where it appears clearly to denote a tribe distinct from the descendants of Manush; and the adjective derived from it occurs in vi. 46, 7 (=

²⁵ See Weber's *Indische Studien*, i. 202, where Dr. Kuhn's paper in the *Hall. Allg. Lit. Z.* for 1846, p. 1086, is referred to.

S.V. i. 262), where also the tribes of Nahush appear to be discriminated from the five tribes, whoever these may be supposed to be. The words are these: *Yad Indra nāhushishv ā ojo nṛimnaṁ cha kṛishṭishu | yad vā pancha kshitinām dyumnam ā bhara satrā viśvāni pauṁsyā |* “Indra, whatever force or vigour exists in the tribes of Nahush, or whatever glory belongs to the five races, bring it (for us); yea all manly energies together.”

Professor Roth (see his *Lexicon*, s. v.) regards the people designated by the word *nahush* as denoting men generally, but with the special sense of stranger, or neighbour, in opposition to members of the speaker's own community; and he explains the words of x. 80, 6, twice referred to above, as signifying “the sons of our own people, and of those who surround us.”

These descendants of Nahush, whoever they may have been, are, however, distinctly spoken of in x. 80, 6 (the passage just adverted to), as worshippers of Agni, and can scarcely, therefore, have been regarded by the Aryas as altogether aliens from their race and worship.

Setting aside, as before, the *Purusha Sūkta*, there are few distinct references in the hymns of the *Rig-veda* to the creation of men, and none at all to the separate creation of castes. The following text ascribes the generation of mankind to Agni, R.V. i. 96, 2: *Sa pūrvayā nividā karyatā āyor imūḥ prajāḥ ajanayad manūnām | vīrasvatā chakṣasā dyām apaś cha devā Agniṁ dhārayan dravinodām |* “By the first nivid, by the wisdom of Āyu, he (Agni) created these children of men; by his gleaming light the earth and the waters: the gods sustained Agni the giver of riches.”²⁸

The *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa* introduces this verse by the following passage, ii. 33: *Prajāpatir vai idam eka eva agre āsa | so 'kāmayata “prajāyeya bhūyān syām” iti | sa tapo 'tapyata | sa vācham ayachhat | sa saṁvatsarasya parastād vyāharad dvādaśa kṛitvāḥ | dvādaśapadā vai eśhā nivit | etām vūta tām nividaṁ vyāharat | tām sarvāni bhūtāny anvasṛijyanta | tad etad rishih paśyann abhyanūvacha “sa pūrvayā” ityādina |* “Prajāpati alone was formerly this universe. He desired ‘may I be propagated, and multiplied.’ He practised austere fervour. He suppressed his voice. After a year he spoke twelve times. This nivid

²⁸ See Dr. Haug's translation in his *Ait. Br.* ii. 143; and Benfey's German version in his *Orient und Occident*, ii. 512.

consists of twelve words. This nivid he uttered. After it all beings were created. Beholding this the rishi uttered this verse, 'by the first nivid,' etc.

The generation of "creatures" (*prajāḥ*) is ascribed in various texts to different gods, in iii. 55, 19⁷ to Tvashtṛi Savitṛi; in ix. 86, 28 to Soma; in viii. 85, 6 (*ya imā jajāna viśvā jātāni*) to Indra. In x. 54, 3 Indra is said to have "generated the father and mother (heaven and earth) from his own body" (*yan mātaraṁ cha pitarāṁ cha sākam ajanayathās tarvaḥ svāyāḥ*); while Viśvakarman, who in x. 81, 2, 3 is said to have generated heaven and earth, is also in x. 82, 3 called "our father and generator" (*yo naḥ pitā janitā*). All these passages are, however, too vague to afford us any insight into the ideas of their authors regarding the creation of the human race.

SECT. II.—*Legends and Notices regarding Manu from the Satapatha, Aitareya, and Taittiriya Brāhmaṇas, the Taittiriya Saṁhitā, and the Chhāndogya Upanishad.*

The first passage which I adduce contains the very important legend of the deluge, which has already been quoted in the 2nd vol. of this work, pp. 324 ff., and which has also been rendered into English by Professor Max Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 425 ff.) and by Professor M. Williams (Ind. Epic Poetry, p. 34), as well as into German by its earliest translator, Professor Weber, in the year 1849 (Ind. Studien, i. 163 f.).

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, i. 8, 1, 1. *Manavo ha vai prātār avanegyam udakam ājāhrur yathā idam pāṇibhyām avanejanūya āharanti | evaṁ tasya avanenijānasya matsyaḥ pāṇi āpede | 2. Sa ha asmai vācham uvāda "bibhṛihi mā pārayishyāmi tvā" iti | "kasmād mā pārayishyasi" iti | "aughaḥ imāḥ sarvāḥ prajāḥ nirvodhā tatas tvā pārayitāsmi" iti | "Katham te bhṛitir" iti | 3. Sa ha uvācha "yāvad vai kshullakāḥ bhavāmo bahvi vai nas tāvad nāshṭrā bhavaty uta matsya eva matsyam gilati | kumbhyām mā agre bibharāsi | sa yadā tām ativardhā atha karshām khātva tasyām mā bibharāsi | sa yadā tām ativardhā atha mā samudram abhyavaharāsi | tarhi vai atināshṭro bhavitāsmi" iti | 4. Śaśvad²⁸ ha*

²⁷ Perhaps, however, we are to understand Tvashtṛi's function of aiding in procreation to be here referred to.

²⁸ *Śaśvat-śabdo 'tra sāmāthyāt kshipra-vachanaḥ.*—Comm.

jhasha²⁹ āsa sa hi jyesht̥ham³⁰ vardhate | “atha itithim samām tad aughaḥ āgantā tad mā nāvam upakalpya upāsūsdī | sa aughe utthite nāvam āpadyāsai tatas tvā pārāyilāsmi” iti | 5. Tam eram bhṛitvā samudram abhyavajjhāra | sa yatithim tat samām paridideśa tatithim samām nāvam upakalpya upāsūnchakre | sa aughe utthite nāvam āpede | tam sa matsyaḥ upanyāpupluve | tasya śṛinge nāvaḥ pūsaṁ pratimumocha | tena etam uttaram girim³¹ atidudrūva³² | 6. Sa ha urūcha “apīparam vai tvā vṛikṣhe nāvam pratibadhnīṣva | taṁ tu tvā mā girau santam udakam antaśchhait-sīd yāvad yāvad udakam samavūyāt tāvat tāvad anavasarpāsi” iti | Sa ha tāvat tāvad eva anavasasarpa | tad api etad uttarasya girer “Manor avasarpānam” iti | augho ha tāḥ sarrāḥ prajāḥ niruvāha atha iha Manur era ekaḥ pariśīśiṣhe | 7. Saḥ archan śrāmyaṁś chachāra prajākūmaḥ | tatra api pāka-yajnena ṛje | sa ghṛitam dadhi masto āmikshām ity apsu juhuvānchakāra | tataḥ saṁvatsare yoshit sambabhūva | sū ha pīḍamānū³³ iva udeyāya | tasyai ha sma ghṛitaṁ pade santīṣṭhate | tayā Mitṛā-Va-runaṁ sanjagmāte | 8. Tūṁ ha ūchatuḥ “kū asi” iti | “Manor duhitā” iti | “āvayor brāhva” iti | “na” iti ha urūcha “yāḥ eva mām ajījanata tasya eva aham asmi” iti | tasyām apitvam³⁴ īṣṭe | tad vā jajnuṁ tad vā na jajnāv³⁵ atī tu eva iyāya | sū Manuṁ ūjagāma | 9. Tūṁ ha Manur urūcha “kū asi” iti | “tara duhitā” iti | “katham bhagavati mama duhitā” iti | “yāḥ amūr apsu ūhutīr ahaushīr ghṛitaṁ dadhi masto āmikshām tato mām ajījanathūḥ | sū āśīr asmi tām mā yajne avakalpayā | yajne ched vai mā atakalpayīśhyasi bahuh prajāyā paśubhir bha-vīśhyasi yām u mayā kūncha āśīṣham āśīśīśhyase sū te sarvā samardhi-shyate” iti | tām etad madhye yajnasya arākalpayat | madhyaṁ hi etad yajnasya yad antarā prayājānuyājān | 10. Tayā archan śrāmyaṁś chachāra prajākūmaḥ | tayā imām prajātim prajājne yā iyam Manuḥ prajātiḥ | yām u enayā kūncha āśīṣham āśīṣta sū asmai sarvā samār-dhyata | sū eṣhā nidūnena yad Idā | sa yo ha eram vidvān Idāyā cha-rati etām ha eva prajātim prajāyate yām Manuḥ prajāyata | yām u enayā kūncha āśīṣham āśīṣta sū asmai sarvā samṛidhyate |

“1. In the morning they brought to Manu water for washing, as

²⁹ Jhasha mahā-matsyaḥ.—Comm.

³⁰ Jyesht̥ham vṛiddhatamam.—Comm.

³¹ Uttaram girim Hinavantam.—Comm.

³² Some MSS. read adhīdudrūva.

³³ Pīḍamānū . . . ghṛita-prabhavatvāt ghṛitam sravanti susnighdhā udakūḍ ut-thitā.—Comm.

³⁴ Apitvam bhāgaḥ | tam prūrthitavantau.—Comm.

³⁵ Prājñūlavatī cha na cha prājñūlavatī.—Comm.

men are in the habit of bringing it to wash with the hands. As he was thus washing, a fish³⁶ came into his hands, (2) (which spake to him) 'preserve me; I shall save thee.' (Manu enquired) 'From what wilt thou save me?' (The fish replied) 'A flood shall sweep away all these creatures;³⁷ from it I will rescue thee.' (Manu asked) 'How (shall) thy preservation (be effected)?' 3. The fish said: 'So long as we are small, we are in great peril, for fish devours fish; thou shalt preserve me first in a jar. When I grow too large for the jar, then thou shalt dig a trench, and preserve me in that. When I grow too large for the trench, then thou shalt carry me away to the ocean. I shall then be beyond the reach of danger.' 4. Straightway he became a large fish; for he waxes to the utmost. (He said) 'Now in such and such a year, then the flood will come; thou shalt, therefore, construct a ship, and resort to me; thou shalt embark in the ship when the flood rises, and I shall deliver thee from it.' 5. Having thus preserved the fish, Manu carried him away to the sea. Then in the same year which the fish had enjoined, he constructed a ship and resorted to him. When the flood rose, Manu embarked in the ship. The fish swam towards him. He fastened the cable of the ship to the fish's horn. By this means he passed over³⁸ this northern mountain.³⁹ 6. The fish said, 'I have delivered thee; fasten the ship to a tree. But lest the water should cut thee off whilst thou art on the mountain, as much as the water subsides, so much shalt thou descend after it.' He accordingly descended after it as much (as it subsided). Wherefore also this, viz., 'Manu's descent' is (the name) of the northern mountain. Now the flood had swept away all these creatures; so Manu alone was left here. 7. Desirous of offspring, he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites. Among these he also sacrificed with the *pāka* offering. He cast clarified butter, thickened milk, whey and curds, as an oblation into the waters. Thence in a year a woman was produced. She rose

³⁶ *Bhāvino* 'rthasya *śiddhyarthaṁ devatā eva matsya-rūpeṇa ājagāma* | "To accomplish what was to follow, it was a deity which came in the form of a fish."—Comm.

³⁷ *Aughaḥ udaka-sanghātāḥ | sa imāḥ Bharatavarsha-nivāsīnāḥ prajāḥ niḥśeṣaṁ vodhū | desāntaram prāpayitā* | "The flood will entirely carry these creatures abiding in Bharatavarsha;—will convey them to another country."—Comm.—I do not see why the verb *nirvodhā* should have the sense here assigned to it: at all events we are afterwards told that Manu alone was left after the flood.

³⁸ Or, if *adhidudrāva* be the true reading, "he hastened to."

³⁹ The Himavat or Himālaya, according to the Commentator.

up as it were unctuous.⁴⁰ Clarified butter adheres to her steps. Mitra and Varuṇa met her. They said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Manu's daughter,' (she replied). 'Say (thou art) ours,' (they rejoined). 'No,' she said, 'I am his who begot me.' They desired a share in her. She promised that, or she did not promise that; but passed onward. She came to Manu. 9. Manu said to her, 'Who art thou?' 'Thy daughter,' she replied. 'How, glorious one,' asked Manu, '(art thou) my daughter?' 'Thou hast generated me,' she said, 'from those oblations, butter, thick milk, whey and curds, which thou didst cast into the waters. I am a benediction. Apply me in the sacrifice. If thou wilt employ me in the sacrifice, thou shalt abound in offspring and cattle. Whatever benediction thou wilt ask through me, shall accrue to thee.' He (accordingly) introduced her (as) that (which comes in) the middle of the sacrifice; for that is the middle of the sacrifice which (comes) between the introductory and concluding forms. 10. With her he lived worshipping and toiling in arduous religious rites, desirous of offspring. With her he begot⁴¹ this offspring which is this offspring of Manu.⁴² Whatever benediction he asked with her, was all vouchsafed to him. This is essentially that which is Idā. Whosoever, knowing this, lives with Idā, begets this offspring which Manu begot. Whatever benediction he asks with her, is all vouchsafed to him."

⁴⁰ Such is the rendering of *pibdamānū* given by the Commentator, who is followed by Professors Weber and Muller. Professor Roth in his *Lexicon*, s. v., explains it by "firm," i.e. "the woman arose solid out of the fluid mass."

⁴¹ I should observe that the same verb (*prajāne*) by which the generative act of Manu is here described, is in other passages of the same Brāhmaṇa (ii. 2, 4, 1; ii. 5, 1, 1; vi. 1, 1, 8; vi. 1, 3, 1; vii. 5, 2, 6; xi. 5, 8, 1) applied in another tense to the god Prajāpati, of whom it is said that he considered how he should beget progeny (*sa aikṣhata 'katham nu prajīgya*). (Compare xi. 1, 6, 1.) In other parts of the same work, however, it is said that Prajāpati created (*asṛijata*) the waters (vi. 1, 1, 9), or creatures (*prajāṇ asṛijata*, vii. 4, 3, 5; x. 2, 2, 1); and the fact of the word "beget" being applied to Prajāpati, either in a figurative, or anthropomorphic sense, does not authorize us to suppose that the author of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, in the passage before us (the legend of the deluge), intended to represent Manu as the creator of the human race, and not as their progenitor in the natural sense. (In R.V. ii. 33, 1; vi. 70, 3, we find the phrase *prajāyemahi prajābhīḥ | pra prajābhīr jāyate* | "let us beget children." "he begets children.")

⁴² Compare Taitt. Sanhitā, v. 1, 5, 6. "S'ivo bhava prajābhīyām" ity āha prajābhīya eva enam śanayati | "mānushībhīyas tvām angirah" ity āha mānavo hi prajāṇ | "He says, 'be auspicious to the twain offspring;'" for he pacifies him from (injuring) the offspring. He says, '(We pacify) thee from (injuring) the human offspring, Angiras.' For creatures are descended from Manu."

From this interesting legend we learn that, according to its author's belief, Manu was not the creator of mankind, as some later accounts considered him to have been, but himself belonged to an earlier race of living beings, which was entirely destroyed by the deluge which is described. The legend regards him as a representative of his generation, who, for some reason, perhaps his superior wisdom, or sanctity, or position, was selected out of the crowd of ordinary mortals to be rescued from the impending destruction. That he was regarded as a mere man, and not as a being of a superior order, is shown by the fact of his requiring the aid of a higher power to preserve him. A supernatural fish, apparently some divine person, conceived as taking the form of a creature which would be perfectly secure and at home in the midst of the raging waters, undertook to deliver him, and guided the ship on which he was directed to embark, through all dangers to its destined haven. No one but Manu took refuge in the ship, for he alone, the story expressly records, was preserved, while all the other living beings were overwhelmed. Finding himself the sole survivor when the waters subsided, he became desirous of progeny; and with intense devotion performed certain religious rites in the hope of realizing his wish through their efficacy. As a result of his oblations, a woman arose from the waters into which they had been cast. A male and a female now existed, the destined parents of a new race of men who sprang from their union, — a union the fruitfulness of which was assured by their assiduous practice of sacred ceremonies. From Manu and Idā, we are expressly told, the race known as that of Manu, *i.e.* the race of men, was produced. The legend says nothing whatever of this race being originally characterized by any distinction of castes, or about four sons, the ancestors of Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras being born to Manu and Idā. We must therefore suppose that the author of the legend intends to represent the early race of mankind, or at least the first inhabitants of Bharata-varsha, as descended from one common progenitor without any original varieties of caste, however different the professions and social position of their descendants afterwards became. We are consequently entitled to regard this legend of the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa as at variance with the common fable regarding the separate origin of the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras.

The following are some other passages in which Manu and Iḍā are both referred to :

Taitt. S. ii. 6, 7, 1. *Manuḥ prithivyāḥ yajniyam aichhat | sa ghrītaṁ nishiktam avindat | so 'bravīt "ko 'sya īśvaro yajne 'pi karttor" iti | tāv abrutām Mitrā-Varuṇau "gor eva ācām īśvarau karttoḥ evaḥ" iti | tau tato gām samairayatām | sā yatra yatra nyakrūmat tato ghrītam apīḍyata | tasmād ghrītapadī uchryate | tad asyai janma | . . . 3. Iḍām upahvayate | paśavo vai Iḍā | paśūn eva upahvayate | chatvīr upahvayate | chatuṣhpādo hi paśavaḥ | "Mānavī" ity āha | Manur hy etām agre 'paśyat | "ghrītapadī" ity āha | yad eva asyai padād ghrītam apīḍyata tasmād evam āha | "Maitrāvaruṇī" ity āha | Mitrāvaruṇau hy enām samairayatām |*

"Manu sought whatever upon earth was fit for sacrifice. He found butter poured out. He said, 'Who has power to employ this in sacrifice also?' Mitra and Varuṇa replied, 'We two have power to employ the cow.' They then sent forth the cow. Wherever she went forth, butter was pressed out. Hence she is called the 'butter-footed.' This is her birth . . . 3. He calls upon Iḍā. Animals are Iḍā. He calls upon animals. He calls upon them four times. For animals are four-footed. He says 'Mānavī.' For Manu first saw her. He says 'Butter-footed.' He says so, because butter was pressed from her foot. He says 'Maitrāvaruṇī.' For Mitra and Varuṇa sent her forth." (Comp. Taitt. Br. iii. 7, 5, 6.)

Taitt. Br. i. 1, 4, 4. *Iḍā vai Mānavī yajnānukāśiny⁴⁵ āsit | sū 'śrinod "Asurā agnim adadhate" iti . . . | 6. Sū 'bravīt Iḍā Manum "tathā vai aham tava agnim ādhāsyāmi yathā pra prajayā paśubhir mithunair janishyase praty asmin loka sthāsyasi abhi suvargam lokam jeshyasi" iti | gārhapatyam agre ādadhāt | . . . gārhapatyena eva asmai prajām paśūn prajānayat |*

"Iḍā, the daughter of Manu, was a revealer of sacrifice. She heard, 'the Asuras are placing fire.' . . . 6. Iḍā said to Manu, 'I shall so place thy fire that thou shalt increase in offspring, cattle, and twins; thou shalt be firmly established in this world, and shalt conquer the heavenly world.'⁴⁶ She first placed the gārhapatya fire. It was

⁴⁵ *Yajna-tatva-prakāśana-samarthā*.—Comm.

⁴⁶ Compare the Kūthaka Br. viii. 4, quoted in Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 463, where Iḍā is said to have promised to Manu: *tathā te Agnim ādhāsyāmi yathā ma-*

through the gārhapatya that she produced for him offspring and cattle."

Taitt. S. i. 7. 1, 3. *Sarveṇa vai yajnena devāḥ suvargaṁ lokam āyan | pākayajnena Manur asrāmyat | sū Idā Manum upāvarṭtata | tām devāsurāḥ vyahvayanta pratichīm devāḥ parāchīm Asurāḥ | sū devān upāvarṭtata |*

"The gods arrived at the heavenly world by the whole sacrifice. Manu worshipped with the *pākayajna*. That *Idā* came to Manu. The gods and asuras called her away in different directions, the gods in front, the asuras behind. She came to the gods."

The following texts refer to Manu alone, as a celebrator of religious ceremonies :

Taitt. S. ii. 5, 9, 1. "*Agne mahān asi*" *ity āha | mahān hy esha yad Agniḥ | "brāhmaṇa" ity āha | brāhmaṇo hy esha | "bhārata" ity āha | esha hi devebhyo haryam bharati | "daveddha" ity āha | devāḥ hy etam aindhata | "Manviddha" ity āha | Manur hy etam uttaro devebhyāḥ aindha |*

"He says, 'Agni, thou art great.' For this Agni is great. He says, 'o Brāhman.' For he is a Brāhman. He says, 'o Bhārata.' For he bears the oblation to the gods. He says, 'kindled by the gods.' For the gods kindled him. He says, 'kindled by Manu.' For Manu kindled him after the gods."

Taitt. S. vi. 2, 5, 2 f. *Trivratō vai Manur asīd divratā asurā ekavratā devāḥ | prātar madhyandine sāyaṁ tad Manor vratam āsīt pākayajnasya rūpam pushtyai | prātāścha sāyāṁcha asurāṇām nirmadhyam kṣudhā rūpam | tatas te parābhavan | madhyandine madhyarātre devānām tatas te bhavan suvargaṁ lokam āyan |*

"Manu performed three rites; the asuras two, the gods one. Manu's rite was in the morning, at noon, and in the evening, the form of a *pākayajna* for nourishment. That of the asuras was in the morning and evening, without any midday rite, a form of hunger. Hence they perished. That of the gods was at midday and midnight. Hence they prospered, and arrived at the heavenly world."

Taitt. S. vii. 5, 15, 3. *Etayā (i.e. abhijityā) vai Indram devāḥ ayūjayan | tasmād "Indrasavaḥ" | etayā Manum manushyāḥ | tasmād "Manu-savaḥ" |*

nushyā devān upaprajanishyante | "I will so place Agni for thee, than men shall be born among the gods."

yathā Indro devānām yathā Manur manushyānām eva bhavati yaḥ evaṁ vidvān etayā ishtyū yajate |

“With this (*abhijīti*) the gods sacrificed for Indra. Hence it is called ‘Indra-sava.’ Men sacrificed with it for Manu. Hence it is called ‘Manu-sava.’ As Indra is among gods, and Manu among men, so he becomes who thus knowing sacrifices with this oblation.”

In Taitt. S. ii. 2, 10, 2, we find nearly the words which Kullūka quotes on Manu’s Institutes, i. 1: *Yad vai kincha Manur avadat tad bheshajam* | “Whatever Manu said was a remedy.”

In Śatapatha Br. vi. 6, 1, 19, Manu is called a Prajāpati: “*Prajāpataye Manave svāhā*” *iti* | *Prajāpatir vai Manuḥ* | *sa hi idam sarvam amanuta* | *Prajāpatir vai etad agre karma akarot* | “Svāhā to Manu the lord of creatures. Manu is a lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) for he thought (*amanuta*) all this. The lord of creatures (*prajā-pati*) formerly did all this work.”

The following story in its different versions also connects Manu with religious observances and represents him as very devout:

S. P. Br. i. 1, 4, 14 ff. *Manor ha vai rishabhah āsa* | *tasminn asura-ghnī śāpatna-ghnī vāk pravishṭā āsa* | *tasya ha sma śvasathūd ravathūd asura-rākshasāni mṛidyamānāni yanti* | *te ha asurāḥ samūdīre* “*pāpāni vata no ’yam rishabhah sachate kathaṁ no imāṁ dubhruyāma*” *iti* | “*Kīlātākūḥ*” *iti ha asura-brahmāv āsatuh* | *tau ha ūchatuh* “*śraddhā-devo vai Manuḥ* | *āvām nu vedāva*” *iti* | *tau ha āgatya ūchatur* “*Mano yājayāva tvā*” *iti* | “*kena*” *iti* | “*anena rishabhena*” *iti* | “*tathā*” *iti* | *tasya ālabdhasya sū vāg apachakrāma* | *sū Manor eva jāyām Mānūvim praviveśa* | *tasyai ha sma yatra vadantyai śrinvantī tato ha sma eva asura-rākshasāni mṛidyamānāni yanti* | *te ha asurāḥ samūdīre* “*īto vai naḥ pāpīyah sachate bhūyo hi mānuḥ vāg vadati*” *iti* | *Kīlātākūḥ ha eva ūchatuh* “*śraddhā-devo vai Manur āvām nu eva vedāva*” *iti* | *tau ha āgatya ūchatur* “*Mano yājayāva tvā*” *iti* | “*kena*” *iti* | “*enayā eva jāyayā*” *iti* | “*tathā*” *iti* | *tasyai ālabdhāyāi sū vāg apachakrāma* | *sū yajnam eva yajna-pātrāni praviveśa* | *tato ha enām na śekutur nirhantum* | *sū eṣhā asura-ghnī vāg udvadati* | *sa yasya ha evaṁ vidushah etām atra vācham pratyudvādayanti pūṣpīyāṁso ha eva asya śāpatnāḥ bhavanti* |

“Manu had a bull. Into it an Asura-slaying, enemy-slaying voice had entered. In consequence of this (bull’s) snorting and bellowing, Asuras and Rakshasas were continually destroyed. Then the Asuras

said : 'This bull, alas, does us mischief; how shall we overcome him?' Now there were two priests of the Asuras called Kilāta and Akuli. They said: 'Manu is a devout believer: let us make trial of him.' They went and said to him, 'let us sacrifice for thee.' 'With what (victim)?' he asked. 'With this bull,' they replied. 'Be it so,' he answered. When it had been slaughtered, the voice departed out of it, and entered into Manu's wife Manāvī. Wherever they hear her speaking, the Asuras and Rākshasas continue to be destroyed in consequence of her voice. The Asuras said: 'She does us yet more mischief; for the human voice speaks more.' Kilāta and Akuli said, 'Manu is a devout believer: let us make trial of him.' They came and said to him, 'Manu, let us sacrifice for thee.' 'With what (victim)?' he asked. 'With this (thy) wife,' they replied. 'Be it so,' he answered. When she had been slaughtered the voice departed out of her and entered into the sacrifice and the sacrificial vessels. Thence they were unable to expel it. This is the Asura-slaying voice which speaks out (when the two stones are struck with the *śamyā*, as a part of the ceremonial). Wretched become the enemies of that man for whom, when he knows this, they cause this voice here to reverberate."

Taitt. Br. iii. 2, 5, 9. *Manoḥ śraddhā-devasya yajamānasya asura-ghnī vāg yajnāyudhesu praviṣṭā āsīt | te 'surāḥ yāvanto yajnāyudhānām udradatām upāśṛiṅvans te parābharan |*

"An asura-slaying voice had entered into the sacrificial implements of the devout believer and sacrificer Manu. The Asuras, as many as heard the sacrificial implements sounding, were overcome."

Kūṭhaka Br. ii. 30, 1.⁴⁵ *Manor vai kapālāny āsan | tair gūrato yāvato 'surān abhyupādadhāt te parābharan | atha tarhi Trishṭhā-varātrī⁴⁶ āstām asura-brahmau | tā asurāḥ abruvann "imāni śaṣṭ kapālāni yāche-thām" iti | tau prataritvānā abhiprāpadyetām "Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra" iti | "kiṁkāmau śhaṣṭ" ity abravīt | "imāni nau kapālāni deḥ" iti | tāny ābhyām adadāt | tāny aranyām parāhṛitya samapīnśṭūm | tad Manor gāvo 'bhivṛyatishṭhanta | tāni ṛishabhaḥ samaleṣṭ | tasya ruvato yāvanto 'surāḥ upāśṛiṅvans te parābharan |*

⁴⁵ Extracted from Weber's Indische Studien, iii. 461 f. A translation of this, as well as of the next passage, is given by Prof. Weber in the Journal of the German Oriental Society, vol. xviii. 284 ff.

⁴⁶ Roth in his Lexicon s. v. reads *Trishṭhā-varātrī*.

tau prātaritvānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra” iti | “kīmkāmau sthaḥ” ity abravīt | “anena tvā ṛishabheṇa yājayāva” iti | tat patnīm yajur vadantīm pratyapadyata | tasyāḥ dyām vāg ātishṭhat | tasyāḥ vadantyaḥ yāvanto ’surāḥ upāśṛiṅvaṁs te parābhavan | tasmād naktaṁ strī chandratarāṁ vadati | tau prātaritvānā abhiprāpadyetām “Vāyave Agne Vāyave Indra” iti | “kīmkāmau sthaḥ” ity abravīt. | “anayā tvā patnyā yājayava” iti | sā paryagnikṛitā āsīt | atha Indro ’chāyad “Manvam śraddhādevam Trishṭhācarātṛi asura-brahmau jāyayā vyardhayatam” iti | sa āgachhat | so ’bravīt “ābhyām tvā yājayāni” iti | “na” ity abravīt “na vai aham anayor īśe” iti | atithipatir vāra atither īśe” ity abravīt | tā asmai prāyaśchhat | sa prativśo vediṁ kurvan āsta | tā aprīśchhatām “ko ’si” iti | “brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “katamo brāhmaṇaḥ” iti | “kin brāhmaṇasya pitarām kin u prīchhasi mātaram | śrutaṁ ched asmin vedyam sa pitā sa pitāmahaḥ” iti | tā arittām “Indro vai” iti | tau prāpatatām | tayor yāḥ prakṣhaṇīr āpaḥ āsaṁs tābhir anuvīśijya śirše āśchhinat | tau vṛishāś cha yavāśhāś cha abhavātām | tasmāt tau varsheshu śuśhyataḥ | adbhīr hi hatau | tām paryagnikṛitām udīśrijat | tayā ’rdhnōt | tāḥ imāḥ Mānavyāḥ prajāḥ | yat paryagni-kṛitam pātnīvatam utśrijati yām eva Manur ṛiddhim ārdhnōt tām ṛiddhnōti |

“Manu had platters. All the Asuras, against whom he laid out the sacrifice with these were destroyed. Now Trishṭha and Varūtri were at that time the priests of the Asuras. The Asuras said to them, ‘ask for these six platters.’ These two arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Give us these platters,’ they replied. He gave them to them. Taking them they smashed them in the forest. Then Manu’s cattle were standing round. The bull licked the platters. As many Asuras as heard him bellowing were destroyed. The two Asura priests came as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ enquired Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with this bull,’ they answered. He then came to his wife who was uttering a yajush. Her voice reached to the sky. As many Asuras as heard her speaking were destroyed. Hence a woman speaks more pleasantly by night. The two Asura priests arrived as morning guests, repeating the formula, ‘To Vāyu, o Agni, to Vāyu, o Indra.’ ‘What do you desire?’ asked Manu. ‘Let us sacrifice for thee with

this thy wife (as the victim),' they replied. The fire was carried round her. Then Indra perceived, 'Trishṭha and Varūtri, the two Asura priests are depriving the devout believer Manu of his wife.' He came and said (to Manu), 'Let me sacrifice for thee with these two Asura priests (for victims).' 'No,' answered Manu, 'I am not their master.' 'The host is master of the guest,' rejoined Indra. Manu then gave them to him. (Standing) near them he was making an altar. They asked 'Who art thou?' 'A Brāhman,' he replied. 'What (class of) Brāhman,' they enquired. He rejoined (with a verse), 'Why askest thou the father or the mother of a Brāhman? If Vedic tradition is to be discovered in him, that is his father, that his grandfather.' They knew, 'this is Indra.' They fled. He threw after them the water which was there for consecration, and therewith cut off their heads. They became, (the one) a *vrishā*, (the other) a *yurūsha* plant. Hence these (two plants) wither in the rains, because they were killed with water. He released her (Manu's wife) after the fire had been carried round her. By her he prospered. These are the creatures sprung from Manu. Whenever a man releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnīvata, after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered."

Compare with this a passage of the Taitt. Sanh. vi. 6, 6, 1. *Indraḥ patniyā Manum ayājayat | tām paryagnikṛitām udasrijat | tayā Manur ārdhnot | yat paryagnikṛitam pātnivatam utsrijati yām eva Manur riddhim ārdhnot tām eva yajamāna riddhoti |*

"Indra was sacrificing for Manu with his wife (as the victim). He released her after the fire had been carried round her. By her Manu prospered. Whenever the worshipper releases the victim offered to Agni Pātnīvata after fire has been carried round it, he prospers with the same prosperity with which Manu prospered."

I quote the following passages also from the interest which they possess as relating to a personage so ancient and venerable as Manu is reputed to be:

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, v. 14. *Nābhānedishṭhām vai Mānavam brahma-charyyam vasantam bhrātaro nirabhajan | so 'bravīd etya "kim mahyam abhākta" iti | "etam eva nishṭhāvam avavādītāram" ity abruvan | tas-mād ha apy etarhi pītaram putrāḥ "nishṭhāvo 'vavādītā" ity eva ūcha-kshate | sa pītaram etya abravīt "tvām ha vūva mahyam tata abhākskur"*

iti | tam pitā 'bravīd "mā putraka tad ādṛiṭhāḥ | Angiraso vai ime svargāya lokāya satram āsato | te shashṭham shashṭham eva ahar āgatya muhyanti | tām ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hani sāmsaya | teshām yat sahasraṁ satra-pariveshaṇam tat te svar yanto dāsyanti" iti | "tathā" iti | tām upait "pratigrihṇīta Mānavam samedhasaḥ" iti | tam abruvan "kiṁ-kāmo vadasi" iti | "idam eva vaḥ shashṭham ahaḥ prajñāpayāni" ity abravīd "atha yad vai etat sahasraṁ satra-pariveshaṇam tad me svar yanto datṭa" iti | "tathā" iti | tām ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hany aśaṁsayat | tato vai te pra yajnam ajānan pra svargaṁ lokam | tad yad ete sūkte shashṭhe 'hani sāmsati yajnasya prajñātyai svargasya lokasya anukhyāt-yai | tam svar yanto 'bruvann "etat te brāhmaṇa sahasram" iti | tad enaṁ samākurvāṇam puruṣaḥ kṛṣṇaśa-vāsy uttarataḥ upothāya abravīd "mama vai idam mama vai vāstuham" iti | so 'bravīd "mahyaṁ vai idam adur" iti | tam abravīt "tad vai nau tara eva pitari praśnaḥ" iti | sa pitaram ait | tam pitā 'bravīd "nam te putraka adur" iti | "adur eva me" ity abravīt "tat tu me puruṣaḥ kṛṣṇaśa-vāsy uttarataḥ upo-datishṭhat 'mama vai idaṁ mama vai vāstuham' iti ādita" iti | tam pitā 'bravīt "tasya eva putraka | tat tūhyam sa dāsyati" iti | sa punar etya abravīt "tara ha tvā kila bhagaraḥ idam iti me pitā āha" iti | so 'bravīt "tad aham tūhyam eva dadāmi yaḥ eva satyam avāḍīr" iti | tasmād evaṁ viduṣā satyam eva vadīlaryam | sa eṣa sahasra-saṁir man-tro yad nābhānedishṭham | upa enam sahasraṁ namati pra shashṭhena ahnū svargaṁ lokam jñāti yaḥ evaṁ veda" 47

"The brothers of Nābhānedishṭha disinherited him whilst he was living in the state of a Brahmachārin. Coming (to them) he said: 'What share have you given to me?' They replied, '(we have given thee) this judge and divider (as thy share).' In consequence sons even now speak of their father as the 'judge and divider.' He came to his father and said, 'Father, they have given thee to me as my share.' His father answered, 'Do not, my son, care about that. These Angirases are performing a sacrifice in order to (secure) the heavenly world; but as often as they come to the sixth day (of the ceremony) they become perplexed. Make them recite these two hymns (R.V. x. 61 and 62) on the sixth day; and when they are going to heaven, they will give

⁴⁷ This passage has been already translated into German by Prof. R. Roth, Journal of the German Oriental Society, vi. 244, and into English by Prof. Max Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 423 f., and by Dr. M. Haug in his Ait. Br. vol. ii. p. 341 f.

thee that provision of a thousand ⁴⁸ which has been made for the sacrifice.' He said, 'So be it.' He approached them, saying, 'Receive me, the son of Manu, ye sages.' They replied, 'With what object dost thou speak?' He said, 'Let me make known to you this sixth day; and then you shall give me this sacrificial provision of a thousand, when ye are going to heaven.' 'Let it be so,' they answered. He made them repeat these two hymns on the sixth day. They then knew the sacrifice, and the heavenly world. Hence when any one repeats these two hymns on the sixth day, it is with a view to a knowledge of the sacrifice, and to the revelation of the heavenly world. When they were going to the heavenly world, they said to him, 'This thousand, o Brahman,⁴⁹ is thine.' As he was collecting (the thousand) a man in dark clothing rose up before him from the north, and said, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.' Nābhānedishṭha replied: 'But they have given it to me.' (The man) rejoined: 'It belongs to (one of) us; let thy father be asked.' He went to his father, who enquired: 'Have they not given thee (the thousand), my son?' 'They did give it to me,' he replied, 'but a man in dark clothes rose up before me from the north, and took it from me, saying, 'This is mine; what remains on the spot is mine.'" His father said: 'It is his; but he will give it to thee.' He returned, and said (to the man): 'This is thine, reverend sir, so my father says.' (The man) replied: 'I will give it to thee, who hast spoken the truth.' Wherefore one who has this knowledge should speak only truth. That is a hymn which bestows a thousand, that Nābhānedishṭha hymn. A thousand falls to his lot, he knows the heavenly world on the sixth day—the man who knows this."

Taittirīya Sanhitā, iii. 1, 9, 4. *Manuḥ putrebhyo dāyaṁ vyabhajat | sa Nābhānedishṭham brahmacharyam vasantam nirabhajat | sa āgachhat | so 'bravīt "kathā mā nirabhag" iti | "na tvā nirabhāksham" ity abravīt "Angirasaḥ imo satram āsate te suvargam lokam na prajñanti | tebhyaḥ idam brāhmaṇam brūhi | te suvargam lokam yanto ye eśhām paśavas tāṁs te dāsyanti" iti | tad ebhyo 'bravīt | te suvargam*

⁴⁸ See R.V. x. 62, 7.

⁴⁹ The application of this title to Nābhānedishṭha is to be remarked, as his father Manu is recorded in the Puranic legends as ancestor of the solar race of kings. See the passage from the M. Bh. i. 3135 ff., quoted above, p. 126.

lokam yanto ye eshām paśavaḥ āsāṁs tān asmai adaduh | tam paśubhiḥ charantam yajna-vāstau Rudraḥ āgachhat | so 'bravīt "mama vai ime paśavaḥ" iti | "adur vai mahyam imān" ity abravīt | "na vai tasya te īśate" ity abravīt | "yad yajnavāstau kīyato mama vai tad" iti | tas-mād yājnavāstau na abhyavetyam | so 'bravīt | "yajne mānūhaja atha te paśūn na abhimaṁsyē" iti | tasmai etam manthinaḥ saṁsrāvam ajuhot | tato vai tasya Rudro paśūn na abhyamanyata | yatra etam eva vidvān manthinaḥ saṁsrāvam juhōti na tatra Rudraḥ paśūn abhimanyate |

"Manu divided his property among his sons. He disinherited his son Nābhānedishṭha who was living as a Brahmachārin. He came and said, 'How hast thou disinherited me?' 'I have not disinherited thee,' replied (his father); 'these Angirasas are celebrating a sacrifice; they do not know the heavenly world; declare to them this Brāhmaṇa; and when they are going to heaven, they will give thee the cattle they have.' He declared the Brāhmaṇa to them, and when they were going to heaven they gave him the cattle they had. Rudra came to him as he was on the place of sacrifice employed with the cattle and said: 'These are my cattle.' 'But,' replied Nābhānedishṭha, 'they have given them to me.' 'They have not power to do so; that which is left on the place of sacrifice is mine,' answered Rudra. Hence the place of sacrifice must not be approached. (Rudra further) said: 'Give me a share in the sacrifice, and I shall not injure thy cattle.' He offered him this libation of soma and flour. Then Rudra did not injure his cattle. Whenever any one knows this libation of soma and flour and offers it up, Rudra does not injure his cattle."⁵⁰

A passage, quoted above, p. 26 f., from the Taittirīya Sanhitā, vi. 5,

⁵⁰ The reader who knows German, and wishes to see an able discussion of the question, whether the legend of Nābhānedishṭha, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, has any real connection with the two hymns of the Rig-veda (x. 61 and 62) which are referred to in it, and whether it contains any reminiscence, or symbolical representation, of ancient historical events, may consult Prof. Roth's paper on the subject, in the 6th vol. of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, pp. 243 ff. The learned writer settles both questions in the negative, maintaining that the legend is manufactured out of certain misinterpreted allusions in the hymns, with the view of asserting the superiority of priestly knowledge to earthly power and worldly wealth, and that there never existed either a Nābhānedishṭha or a Manu. The object which I have in view in the collection of these texts does not require that I should express any opinion on these points. I only seek to ascertain what were the traditions received by the most ancient Indian writers themselves regarding the origin of their race, and not what was the historical value of those traditions.

6, 1 ff., may perhaps also be considered as affirming the descent of men from Manu when it declares them to be the offspring of Vivasvat; since the latter is regarded as the father of Manu.

In the Chhândogya Upanishad, iii. 11, 4 (p. 178 of Bibliotheca Indica, vol. iii.) the following reference to Manu occurs:

Tad ha etad Brahmā Prajāpataye Prajāpatir Manave Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ | tad ha etad Uddālakūya Aruṇaye putrāya jyeshṭhāya pitā brahma provācha |

“This (doctrine) Brahmā declared to Prajāpati, Prajāpati to Manu, Manu to (his) offspring. This sacred truth was declared to his eldest son Uddālaka Aruṇi by his father.”

The first half of this passage is repeated in viii. 15, 1, of the same work (p. 625).

In his commentary on the former of the two passages, Śankara Āchāryya gives this explanation:

Brahmā Hiranyagarbho Virāje Prajāpataye uvācha | so 'pi Manave | Manur Ikshvākv-ādibhyaḥ prajābhyaḥ provācha |

“Brahmā Hiranyagarbha declared it to the Prajāpati Virāj; he to Manu; and Manu declared it to his descendants Ikshvāku and the rest.”

In his note on the second passage, viii. 15, 1, he varies somewhat in his explanation of the personages by whom the doctrine was transmitted:

Brahmā Hiranyagarbhaḥ Paramēśvaro vā tad-dvāreṇa Prajāpataye Kaśyapāya uvācha | asāv api Manave sva-putrāya | Manuḥ prajābhyaḥ |

“Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, or the supreme Lord (Paramēśvara) through his instrumentality, declared it to the Prajāpati Kaśyapa; he to his son Manu; Manu to his descendants.”

In these two passages of the Chhândogya Upanishad Brahmā is distinguished from Prajāpati, and Prajāpati from Manu, who again is said to have handed down the doctrine, not to any one person in particular, but “to the offspring,” or “descendants” (*prajābhyaḥ*), apparently his own descendants. This Upanishad therefore seems to coincide in the doctrine of the hymns, and of the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, that Manu was the progenitor of mankind. The Commentator, it will have been noticed, in one place declares that Prajāpati is identifiable with Virāj, and again that Kaśyapa is to be understood under that appellation. Virāj and Kaśyapa are not, however, generally regarded as the same.

Nor is Kaśyapa commonly considered to be Manu's father. In the passages from the Rāmāyaṇa, ii. 110, and Mahābhārata, quoted above, pp. 115 and 126, Kaśyapa is said to be the father of Vivasvat, and he again of Manu.

However this may be, as Manu is said to have handed down the sacred tradition to his descendants, we must suppose that those descendants included the whole of the progenitors of the Aryan Indians who were worthy of being made the depositaries of such a tradition; and must therefore conclude that the Chhândogya Upanishad agrees with the passage quoted above, p. 126, from the Mahābhārata, in recognizing Manu as the progenitor of the Brāhmins, as well as the other castes.

SECT. III.—*Extracts from the Mahābhārata regarding Manu.*

I have already adduced in the preceding chapter, page 126, an important passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan verses 3128 ff., in which Manu Vaivasvata is expressly declared to have been the progenitor of mankind including the four castes. A legend of the deluge, corresponding to the one which has been adduced from the Śatapatha Brāhmana, in the last section, is also to be found in the Vana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, and although it does not represent Manu as the parent from whom the human race was reproduced, but as the creator by whom the world was renewed, after the flood, I shall extract the entire text. Its style of narration is tedious, when compared with the quaint brevity of the Brāhmana; but I shall condense it as much as possible in the translation. It begins thus, verse 12747 :

*Mārkaṇḍeya uvācha | Vivastataḥ suto rājan maharshiḥ supṛatāpavān |
babhūva nara-śārdūla Prajāpati-sama-dyutiḥ | ojasū tejasā lakṣmīyū
tapasā cha viśeshataḥ | atichakrāma pitaram Manuḥ svaṁ cha pitāmaham |
ārdhakra-bāhur viśālāyām Budaryām sa narādhipaḥ | eka-pāda-sthitas
tīvram chachāra sumahat tapaḥ | 12750. Avāk-śirās tathā chāpi netrair
animishair dṛiḍham | so 'tapyata tapo ghorāṁ varshāṇām ayutaṁ tadā |
taṁ kadūchit tapasyantam ādrachīraṁ jaṭā-dharam | Chirīṇi-tīram
āgamy matsyo vachanam abravīt | " bhagavan kṣudra-matsyo 'smi bala-
vadbhyo bhayam mama | matsyebhyo hi tato mān tvam trātum arhasi su-
vrata | durbalam balavanto hi matsyam matsyā viśeshataḥ | āsvadanti sudā
vṛittir vīhitā naḥ sanātani | tasmād bhayaughād mahato majjantam mān
viśeshataḥ | trātum arhasi karttvasmi kṛite pratikṛitaṁ tava " | 12755.*

Sa matsya-vachanañ śrutvā kṛipayā 'bhipariplutaḥ | Manur Vaivasvato 'grihnāt tam matsyañ pāṇinā śrayam | udakāntam upāniya matsyañ Vaivasvato Manuḥ | alinjire prākshipat tam chandrāmśu - sadṛśa-prabho | sa tatra vavridhe rūjan matsyaḥ parama-satkṛitaḥ | putravat svikarot tasmai Manur bhāvam viśeshataḥ | atha kālena mahatā sa matsyaḥ sumahān abhūt | alinjire yathā chaiva nāsau samabhravat kila | atha matsyo Manuḥ dṛishṭvā punar evābhyabhāshata | "bhagavan sādhu me 'dyānyat sthānaṁ sampratipādaya" | 12760. Uddhṛityalinjirāt tasmāt tataḥ sa bhagavān Manuḥ | tam matsyam ananyad vāpim mahatīm sa Manus tadā | tatra tam prākshipach chāpi Manuḥ para-puranjaya | athāvarddhata matsyaḥ sa punar varsha-gaṇān bahūn | dvī-yojanāyatā vāpi vistrītā chāpi yojanam | tasyām nāsau samabhravat matsyo rājīva-lochanah | vicheshṭitūṁ cha Kūnteya matsyo rūpyām viśūmpate | Manuḥ matsyas tato dṛishṭvā punar evābhyabhāshata | "naya mām bhagavan sādhu samudra-mahishīm priyām | Gangāṁ tatra nivatsyāmi yathā vā tāta mānyase | 12765. Nidēse hi mayā tubhyaṁ sthātavyam anasūyatā | vṛiddhir hi paramā prāptā trat-kṛito hi mayā 'nagha" | evam ukto Manur matsyam anayaḥ bhagavān vaś | nadīm Gangāṁ tatra chainam śrayam prākshipad achyutaḥ | sa tatra vavridhe matsyaḥ kanehit kīlam arindama | tataḥ punar Manuḥ dṛishṭvā matsyo vachunam abravīt | "Gangāyām na hi śaknoṁi bṛihatvāch cheshṭitum prabho | samudraṁ naya mām āsu prasīda bhagarann" iti | uddhṛitya Gangā-salikūt tato matsyam Manuḥ śrayam | samudram anayat pārtha tatra chainam avāṣṭjat | 12770. Sumahān api matsyas tu sa Manur nayatas tadā | āsīt yatheshṭa-hāryyaśchu spursā-gandha-sukhaścha vai | yadā samudro prakshipat sa matsyo Manuḥ tadā | tato enam idaṁ vākyaṁ smayamāna ivābravīt | "bhagavan hi kṛitā rakṣā trayā sarvā viśeshataḥ | prāpta-kālāṁ tu yat kuryyām trayā tuch chhṛīyatām mama | achirād bhagavan bhaumam idaṁ sthāvara-jangamam | sarvaṁ eva mahābhāga pralayaṁ vai gamishyati | samprakṣhālana-kālo 'yaṁ lokānāṁ samupasthitaḥ | tasmāt tvām bodhayāmy adya yat te hitam anuttamam | trasānāṁ sthāvarānāṁ cha yach chengam yach cha nengatī | tasya sarvasya samprāptaḥ kālāḥ parama-dāruṇāḥ | nauś cha kūrayitavyā te dridhā yukta-vaṭārakā | tatra saptarshibhiḥ sarddham āruketḥā mahāmuno | vijāni chaiva sarvāṇi yathoktāni dvijaḥ purā | tasyām ārohayer nāvi susanguptāni bhāgaśah | nau-sthāś cha mām pratikṣethās tato muni-jana-priya | āgamishyāmy ahaṁ śṛṅgi vijne-

yas tena tūpasa | *evam etat trayā kūr्याm āprishṭo 'si vrajāmy aham* |
 tā na śakyā mahatyo vai āpas tarttum mayā vinā | 12780. Nābhi-
 śankyam idaṁ chāpi vachanam me trayā vibho" | "evaṁ karishye"
 iti taṁ sa matsyam pratyabhūshata | jagmatuś cha yathākāmam anu-
 jñāpya parasparam | tato Manur mahārāja yathoktam matsyakena ha |
 vījāny ādāya sarvāni sāgaram pupluve tadā | naukayā śubhayā vīra
 mahormināṁ arindama | chinlayāmūsa cha Manuḥ tam matsyam pri-
 thivīpate | sa cha tach-chintitaṁ jñatvā matsyaḥ parapurānjaya | śringī
 tatrājagāmāsu tadā Bharata-sattama | taṁ drishṭvā manuja-vyāghra
 Manur matsyaṁ jalārṇave | 12785. Śringinaṁ taṁ yathoktēna rūpenā-
 drim ivochhrītam | vaṭārakamayam pāśam atha matsyasya mūrdhani |
 Manur manuja-śārdūla tasmin śringe nyaveśayat | saṁnyatas tena pāśena
 matsyaḥ para-purānjaya | regena mahatā nācam prakarṣat lavaṇām-
 bhasi | sa cha tāṁs tārāyan nūrā samudram manujeśvara | nṛṣīyamānam
 ivormibhir garjamānam ivāmbhasā | kṣobhyanmūnā mahāvātaiḥ sū naus
 tasmin mahodadhau | ghūrṇate chapaleva strī mattā para-purānjaya |
 naiva bhūmir na cha dīśaḥ pradīśo vā chakūṣire | 12790. Sarvaṁ ām-
 bhasam evāṁsī khaṁ dyaus cha narapungava | evambhūte tadā loke sankule
 Bharatarshabha | adṛṣyanta saptarshayaḥ Manur matsyas tathāiva cha |
 evam bahūn varsha-gaṇān tāṁ nācam so 'tha matsyakāḥ | chakarṣhātāndrito
 rājā tasmin salīla-sanchaye | tato Himavataḥ śringaṁ yat param Bharatar-
 shabha | tatrākarṣhat tato nācam sa matsyaḥ Kurunandana | athābravīt
 tadā matsyas tūn rishīn prahasanaṁ śanaiḥ | "asmin Himavataḥ śringe nūrāṁ
 baddhūta mūchiram" | sū baddhū tatra tais tūrṇam ṣishibhir Bharatarsha-
 bha | 12795. Naur matsyasya vachāḥ śrutvā śringe Himavatas tadā | tach
 cha Naubandhanaṁ nūma śringam Himavataḥ param | khyātam adyāpi
 Kaunteya tad viddhi Bharatarshabha | athābravīt anismishas tūn rishīn
 sa hitas tadā | "aham Prajāpatir Brahmā yat-param nādhigamyate |
 matsya-rūpena yūnyaṁ cha mayā 'smād mokṣitū bhayāt | Manuṁ cha
 prajāḥ sarvāḥ sa-devāsura-mōnushāḥ | srashtavyāḥ sarva-lokās cha yach
 chengāṁ yach cha nengati | tapasū chāpi tīrēna pratibhā 'sya bhavish-
 yati | mat-prasūdat prajā-sarge na cha moham gamishyati" | 12800. Ity
 uktvā vachanam matsyaḥ kṣānenādarsanaṁ gataḥ | srashtu-kāmāḥ prajāś
 chāpi Manur Vaivastataḥ svayam | pramūḍho 'bhūt prajā-sarge tapas tepe
 mahat tataḥ | tapasū mahatā yuktaḥ so 'tha srashtum prachakrame | sar-
 vāḥ prajā Manuḥ sākṣhād yathāvad Bharatarshabha | ity etad matsyakam
 nāma purāṇam parikīrtitam |

"12747. Mārkaṇḍeya said: There was a great rishi Manu, son of Vivasvat, majestic, in lustre equal to Prajāpati. In energy, fiery vigour, prosperity, and austere fervour he surpassed both his father and his grandfather. Standing with uplifted arm, on one foot, on the spacious Badari, he practised intense austere fervour. 12750. This direful exercise he performed, with his head downwards,⁵¹ and with unwinking eyes, for 10,000 years. Once, when, clad in dripping rags, with matted hair, he was so engaged, a fish came to him on the banks of the Chirīṇī, and spake: 'Lord, I am a small fish; I dread the stronger ones, and from them you must save me. For the stronger fish devour the weaker; this has been immemorially ordained as our means of subsistence. Deliver me from this flood of apprehension in which I am sinking, and I will requite the deed.' 12755. Hearing this, Manu, filled with compassion, took the fish in his hand, and bringing him to the water threw him into a jar bright as a moon-beam. In it the fish, being excellently tended, grew; for Manu treated him like a son. After a long time he became very large, and could not be contained in the jar. Then, seeing Manu, he said again: 'In order that I may thrive, remove me elsewhere.' 12760. Manu then took him out of the jar, brought him to a large pond, and threw him in. There he continued to grow for very many years. Although the pond was two *yojanas* long, and one *yojana* broad, the lotus-eyed fish found in it no room to move; and again said to Manu: 'Take me to Gangā, the dear queen of the ocean-monarch; in her I shall dwell; or do as thou thinkest best, (12765) for I must contentedly submit to thy authority, as through thee I have exceedingly increased.' Manu accordingly took the fish and threw him into the river Gangā. There he waxed for some time, when he again said to Manu: 'From my great bulk I cannot move in the Gangā; be gracious and remove me quickly to the ocean.' Manu took him out of the Gangā; and cast him into the sea. 12770. Although so huge, the fish was easily borne, and pleasant to touch and smell, as Manu carried him. When he had been thrown into the ocean he said to Manu: 'Groat lord, thou hast in every way preserved me: now hear from me what thou must do when tho

⁵¹ He could not have stood on one foot and with his head downwards (if this means standing on his head) at one and the same time. The text may mean that these attitudes were successively adopted

time arrives. Soon shall all these terrestrial objects, both fixed and moving, be dissolved. The time for the purification of the worlds has now arrived. I therefore inform thee what is for thy greatest good. 12775. The period dreadful for the universe, moving and fixed, has come. Make for thyself a strong ship, with a cable attached; embark in it with the seven rishis, and stow in it, carefully preserved and assorted, all the seeds which have been described of old by Brāhmanas.²² When embarked in the ship, look out for me: I shall come recognizable by my horn. So shalt thou do; I greet thee and depart. These great waters cannot be crossed over without me. 12780. Distrust not my word.' Manu replied, 'I shall do as thou hast said.' After taking mutual leave they departed each on his own way. Manu then, as enjoined, taking with him the seeds, floated on the billowy ocean in the beautiful ship. He then thought on the fish, which, knowing his desire, arrived with all speed, distinguished by a horn. When Manu saw the horned leviathan, lofty as a mountain, he fastened the ship's cable to the horn. Being thus attached, the fish dragged the ship with great rapidity, transporting it across the briny ocean which seemed to dance with its waves and thunder with its waters. Tossed by the tempests, the ship whirled like a reeling and intoxicated woman. Neither the earth, nor the quarters of the world appeared; (12790) there was nothing but water, air, and sky. In the world thus confounded, the seven rishis, Manu, and the fish were beheld. So, for very many years, the fish, unwearied, drew the ship over the waters; and brought it at length to the highest peak of Himavat. He then, smiling gently, said to the rishis, 'Bind the ship without delay to this peak.' They did so accordingly. 12795. And that highest peak of Himavat is still known by the name of Naubandhana ('the Binding of the Ship'). The friendly fish (or god, *animisha*) then said to the rishis, 'I am the Prajāpati Brahmā, than whom nothing higher can be reached. In the form of a fish I have delivered you from this great danger. Manu shall create all living beings, gods, asuras, MEN, with all worlds, and all things moving and fixed. By my favour and through severe austere fervour, he shall attain perfect insight into his creative work, and shall not be-

²² The S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa is silent as to these seeds, as well as to the seven rishis; but it is possible that the reference here made to them may have been borrowed from some other ancient source.

come bewildered.' 12800. Having thus spoken, the fish in an instant disappeared. Manu, desirous to call creatures into existence and bewildered in his work, performed a great act of austere fervour; and then began visibly to create all living beings. This which I have narrated is known as the Mātsyaka Purāṇa (or 'Legend of the Fish')."

It will be observed that towards the close of this narrative it is stated that Manu (not Brahmā himself) was the creator of Men, as well of gods and asūras; and that no reference is made to the formation of separate castes.

The commentators seem disinclined to take this legend in its literal sense. We shall see below what reason the scholiast on the Bhāgavata Purāṇa assigns for this procedure. The following are some of the remarks of the Commentator Nīlakaṇṭha on the above passage of the Mahābhārata :

"*Manuḥ*" *manute ity abhimānāt* mako 'hankāro Manuḥ | *viśeṣeṇa* *vaste āchhādayati chit-prakāśam iti viveka-jñānam tad-vān vivasvān māyāṁ tīsvaraḥ* "māyinaṁ tu mahēsvaram" *iti śruteḥ | tasya Vivasvatasya charitam sancharanam* | "*avidyā-nāśe saty avidyako* 'hankāraḥ kathañ sancharati | *nahi tantu-dāhe paṭas tishṭhati*" *ity ākshepaḥ* | . . . *atra para-brahmaṇa eva rūpāntaram matsyākhyo jīvaḥ* | *so 'hankāreṇa Manunā uttarottara-śreṣṭheshu alinjirādi-rūpeṣhu sthūla-deheṣhu tapo-balād nīpātyate* | *sa cha samudrākhye vairāje dehe nīpātitaḥ cha kalpānte avidyā-nāśa-rūpe saty api dādha-(dagdha?) -paṭa-nyāyena anuvarttamānam ahankāraṁ saptarshi-saṁjñakaiḥ prānādibhiḥ vija-saṁjñaiḥ prārabdha-karmabhiḥ cha sahitam charama-deha-nāvy ārūḍham vāsanū-varatrayā jīva-matsyena pralaya-kāle 'py ūhyamānam meru-śrīṅga same 'chale bhavato (Ilīmad-?) rūpe sadvāsanayā labdhāspadān vilīnam amulakṣhya jīva-matsyo 'darśanam prāptaḥ* | *atī-vilīno hy ahankāro jīvatvam naśyati* | *sa punar nirasta-jīva-bhāvo 'hankāro brahma-rūpatām āpunno yathā pūrvam vāsanayā jagat srijati* | *nashṭe 'py avidyākhye kāraṇe saṁsāra-bhūta-lakṣhaṇaṁ kāryaṁ chakra-bhramam iva kanchit kūlam anuvarttate ity adhyāya-tātparyam* | *akṣharārthas tv ityādi* |

"'Manu,' that which imagines, denotes the consciousness of self (*ahankāra*), consisting in the idea that objects refer to one's self (*abhimāna*).³³ 'Vivasvat' is he who possesses the discriminating knowledge that (such and such a thing) obscures the light of the mind, i.e.

³³ See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, vol. i. 212.

he is the Illuder, Īśvara, for the Veda⁵⁴ speaks of 'Mahāśvara the Illuder.' It is the 'history,' the action, of this son of Vivasvat, that is related. It is objected, 'how can Ahankāra, which arises from ignorance, operate when ignorance is destroyed?' for when the threads are burnt the cloth no longer remains' . . . Here the embodied soul, called in this passage a 'Fish,' is only another form of the supreme Brahma. This 'Fish' is thrown by 'Manu,' who is Ahankāra, through the power of austere fervour, into gross bodies, here represented by 'a jar,' 'a pond,' etc., which gradually rise in excellence. Being at last cast into the body of Virāj, called 'the ocean,' although 'the close of the Kalpa' means the destruction of ignorance, still the embodied soul denoted by the 'Fish,' contemplating Ahankāra still remaining like the ashes of burnt cloth, then entering, along with the breath and other vital airs named 'the seven rishis,' and the works of a former birth designated as 'seeds,' into the ship which signifies its last body, and then borne along even in the period of dissolution by the embodied soul itself symbolized as a 'Fish,' by means of the 'rope' of the remaining consciousness of past perceptions (*vāsanā*), obtaining at length through a consciousness of former perceptions, which were pure (*sad-vāsanā*), a resting-place on a mountain like the peak of Meru, represented by the Himavat(?), and finally dissolved;—the embodied soul under the figure of a 'Fish' having contemplated all this,—vanishes. For when Ahankāra has become entirely dissolved, the state of the embodied soul ceases. Then Ahankāra, after the state of the embodied soul has been dispelled, obtains the condition of Brahma; but by its consciousness of past perceptions creates the world as before. Even when the cause called ignorance has been destroyed, the effect in the shape of the semblance of the world continues for some time, like the revolution of a wheel. Such is signification of the section."

According to this allegorical interpretation "Vivasvat," father of Manu, represents Īśvara, the Illuder. "Manu" is Ahankāra, or self-consciousness. The "Fish" is the embodied soul, which fancies itself to be, but is not, distinct from the Supreme spirit. Ahankāra, denoted by 'Manu,' places the embodied soul, symbolized by the "Fish," in a variety of bodies gradually increasing in excellence, which are signified

⁵⁴ The words are taken from one of the Upanishads, to which, at the time of correcting this sheet, I am unable to give the necessary reference.

by the "jar," "pond," "Gangā," and "ocean." Although the end of the Kalpa means the removal of ignorance, still Ahankāra continues for a time; and along with the "seven rishis," who stand for the vital airs, and the "seeds," which are former works, embarks on the "ship," which is its last body, and is drawn over the ocean by the embodied soul by means of a "rope," which signifies the consciousness of former perceptions. Ahankāra at length finds a resting-place, denoted by Mount Himavat; and when it has been destroyed, the embodied soul vanishes. Ahankāra, however, passes into the form of Brahma, and, through the operation of the cause explained by the Commentator, creates the world anew.

It is scarcely necessary to remark that the narrator of the legend himself appears to have had no idea of making it the vehicle of any Vedantic allegory such as is here propounded.

The following is another version of the same legend from the Matsya Purāṇa:

i. 12.⁵⁵ *Purā rājā Manur nāma chīrnavān vipulān tapaḥ | putre rāj-yaṁ samūropya kṣamāvān Ravi-nandanāḥ |* 13. *Malayasyaika-dēse tu sarvātmaṅga-saṁyutaḥ | sama-duḥkha-sukho vīraḥ prāptavān yogam uttamam |* 14. *Vachanaṁ⁵⁶ varadaś chāsya varshāyuta-śute gate | "va-raṁ vṛṇīṣhva" provācha prītātmā Kamalāsanaḥ |* 15. *Evam ukto 'bra-vīd rājā praṇamya sa Pitāmaham | "ekam evāham ichhāmi tvatto varam anuttamam |* 16. *Bhūta-grāmasya sarvasya sthāvarasya charasya cha | bhareyaṁ rakṣaṇāyāṁ pralaye samupasthitē |* 17. *"Evam astv" iti viśrātmā tatruivāntaradhīyata | pushpa-vṛṣṭiś cha mahatī khāt papāta surārpiṭā |* 18. *Kadāchid āsrame tasya kurvataḥ pītri-tarpanam | pa-pāta pānyor upari śaphari jala-saṁyuta |* 19. *Dṛṣṭvā tach-chhaphari-rūpaṁ sa dayātur mahipatiḥ | rakṣaṇāyākarod yatnaṁ sa tasmin ka-rakodare |* 20. *Ahorātreṇa chaikena shoḍaśaṅgula-viśṛitaḥ | so 'bhavad matsya-rūpeṇa "pāhi pāhīti" chābravit |* 21. *Sa tam ādāya maṇike prākṣhipaj jala-chāriṇam | tatrapī chaikarātreṇa hasta-trayam avarddhata |* 22. *Punaḥ prāhārttanādēna Sahasrakiraṇātmajam | sa matsyaḥ "pāhi pāhīti" "tvān ahaṁ śaraṇaṁ gataḥ" |* 23. *Tataḥ sa kūpe tum mat-syam prāhiṇoḍ Ravi-nandanāḥ | yadā na mātī tatrapī kūpe matsyaḥ*

⁵⁵ This passage is extracted in Professor Aufrecht's Catalogue of the Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. p. 347.

⁵⁶ The Taylor MS. reads *babhūva*, instead of *vachanam*.

sarovare | 24. Kshiptaḥ sa prithutām āgāt punar yojana-sammitām |
 tatpāpy āha punar dīnaḥ “pāhi pāhi nṛipottama” | 25. Tataḥ sa
 Mamunā kshipto Gangāyām apy avarādhata | yadā tadā samudre tam
 prākshipad medinīpatiḥ | 26. Yadā samudram akhilaṁ vyāpyāsau
 samavasthitaḥ | tadā prāha Manur bhitaḥ “ko 'pi tvam asurelaraḥ |
 27. Athavā Vāsudevas tvam anya īdṛik katham bhavet | yojanāyuta-
 viṁśatyā kasya tulyam bhaved vapuḥ | 28. Jñātas tvam matsya-rū-
 pena mām khedayasi Keśava | Hṛishikeśa jagannātha jagad-dhāma
 namo 'stu te” | 29. Eram uktaḥ sa bhagavān matsya-rūpī Janārdanaḥ |
 “sādhu sādhu” iti chorācha “samyag jñātūn teyā 'nagha | 30. Achire-
 naiva kālina medinī medinīpate | bhavishyati jale magnā sā-saila-rana-
 kūnanā” | 31. Naur iyaṁ sarva-devānām nikāyena vinirmilā | mahā-jīva-
 nikāyasya rakṣaṇārtham mahīpate | 32. Scedāyādajodbhijā jīvā ye cha
 jīvā jarāyujāḥ | asyaṁ nidhāya sarvāṁs tūn anarthāt⁵⁷ pūhi surrata |
 33. Yugānta-vātūbbhiatā yadā chalati naur nṛipa | śṛinge 'smīn mama
 rājendra tademām samyamishyasi | 34. Tato layānte sarvasya śhāvarasya
 charasya cha | prajāpatis tvam bhavitā jagataḥ prithivī-pate | 35. Evaṁ
 kṛite mahārāja⁵⁸ sarvajño dhṛitīmān ṛishiḥ | manvantarādhipas chāpi
 deva-pūjyo bhavishyasi | 36. Adhyāya ii. Sūta uvācha | 1. Eram ukto
 Manus tena paprachhūsura-sūdanam | varshair kiyaḍbhīr bhagavan bhavish-
 yaty antara-kshayaḥ | 2. Sattvāni cha kathaṁ nātha rakṣishye Madhu-
 sūdana | trayā saha punar yogaḥ kathaṁ vā bhavitā mama | 3. Sṛi-matsya
 uvācha | adya-prabhṛity anūṛiṣṭīr bhavishyati mahātale | yūvad varsha-
 śataṁ sāgram durbhikṣaṁ narakāvaham | 4. Tato 'lpa-sattva-kshayaḍā
 vcsamayajḥ sapta dāruṇāḥ | sapta-sapter bhavishyanti prataptāngāra-var-
 shinaḥ | 5. Aurrānalo 'pi vikṛitīm gamishyati yuga-kshaye | vishūgnis
 chāpi pātūlāt sankarṣaṇa-mukha-chyutaḥ | 6. Bhavasyāpi lalūtōthas
 tṛitīya-nayanānalaḥ | jagad dagdhaṁ tathā kshobhaṁ gamishyati mahā-
 mate | 7. Evaṁ dagdhā mahi sarvā yadā syād bhasma-sannibhā⁵⁹ | akāśam
 ushmaṇā taplam bhavishyati parantapa | 8. Tataḥ sa-deva-nakṣhatraṁ
 jagad yūsyati sankshayam | saṁvartto bhīmanūdas cha dronaś chaṇḍo⁶⁰ ba-
 lūhakaḥ | 9. Vidyutpatākaḥ śonāmbuḥ saptaite laya-vāridāḥ | agni-pra-
 sceda-sambhātāḥ plāvayishyanti medinīm | 10. Samudrāḥ kshobham āgatyā

⁵⁷ Instead of *anarthāt* the Taylor MS. reads *anūthm*.

⁵⁸ The Taylor MS. reads here *evaṁ kṛita-yugasyādaḥ*.

⁵⁹ *Kūrma-sannibhā* | Taylor MS.

⁶⁰ The Taylor and Gailowar MSS. have *chandro*.

chaitatena vyavasthitāḥ | etad ekārnavaṁ sarvam karishyanti jagat-tra-
yam | 11. Divyān nācam⁶¹ imān grihya sarva-vījāni sarvasaḥ | āropya
rajirā yogena mat-prayuktena suvata | 12. Sānyanya nācam nach-
chhṛinge mat-prabhāvābhirakshitāḥ | ekaḥ sthāsyaśi deveshu dagdhesho api
parantapa | 13. Soma-sūryāo aham Brahmā chatur-loka-samanvitaḥ |
Narmadā cha nadiḥ punyā Mārkaṇḍeḥ mahān ṛishiḥ | 14. Bhavo vedāḥ
purāṇān cha vidyābhiḥ sarvato vṛitam | trayā sārddham idaṁ sarvaṁ
sthāsyaṭy antara-sankshaye | 15. Eṣam ekārnave jāte Chākshushāntara-
sankshaye | vedān pracarttayishyāmi tat-sargādan mahipate | 16. Sūta
uvācha | Eṣam uktvā sa bhagavānś talraivāntaradhīyata | Manur apy
āsthitō yogaṁ Vāsudeva-prasādaḥ | 17. Athābhūch cha tathā-bhūtaḥ
samplavaḥ pūrva-sūchitāḥ | kāle yathokte sanjāte Vāsudeva-mukhodyate |
18. Śṛingī prādurbabhūcūtha matsya-rūpī Janārdanaḥ | Ananto rajju-
rūpeṇa Manoh pārścam upāgamat | 19. Bhūta-sangān samākṛishya yoge-
nāropya dharmavit | bhujanga-rajirā matsyasya śṛinge nācam ayojayat |
20. Uparyy upasthitas tasyāḥ pragipaty Janārdanam | ābhūta-samplare
tasmīn atīte yoga-śāyinaḥ | 21. Prishṭena Manunā proktam purāṇam
matsyarūpiṇā | tad idānīm pravakshyāmi śṛiṇudheam ṛishi-sattamāḥ |

“12. Formerly a heroic king called Manu, the patient son of the Sun, endowed with all good qualities, indifferent to pain and pleasure, after investing his son with the royal authority, practised intense austere fervour, (13) in a certain region of Malaya (Malabar), and attained to transcendent union with the Deity (*yoga*). 14. When a million years had elapsed, Brāhmā became pleased and disposed to bestow a boon, which he desired Manu to choose. 15. Bowing before the father of the world the monarch said, ‘I desire of thee this one incomparable boon, that when the dissolution of the universe arrives I may have power to preserve all existing things, whether moving or stationary.’ 17. ‘So be it,’ said the Soul of all things, and vanished on the spot; when a great shower of flowers, thrown down by the gods, fell from the sky. 18. Once as, in his hermitage, Manu offered the oblation to the Manes, there fell, upon his hands, along with some water, a Sūpharī fish (a carp), (19) which the kind-hearted king perceiving, strove to preserve in his water-jar. 20. In one day and night the fish grew to the size of sixteen fingers, and cried, ‘preserve me, preserve me.’ 21. Manu then took and threw him into a large pitcher, where in one night he

⁶¹ The Taylor MS. reads *veda-nācam*, “the ship of the Vedas.”

increased three cubits, (22) and again cried, with the voice of one distressed, to the son of Vivasvat, 'preserve me, preserve me, I have sought refuge with thee.' 23. Manu next put him into a well, and when he could not be contained even in that, (24) he was thrown into a lake, where he attained to the size of a *yojana*; but still cried in humble tones, 'preserve me, preserve me.' 25. When, after being flung into the *Gangā* he increased there also, the king threw him into the ocean. 26. When he filled the entire ocean, Manu said, in terror, 'Thou art some god, (27) or thou art *Vāsudeva*; how can any one else be like this? Whose body could equal 200,000 *yojanas*? 28. Thou art recognised under this form of a fish, and thou tormentest me, *Keśava*; reverence be to thee, *Hrishikeśa*, lord of the world, abode of the universe!' 29. Thus addressed, the divine *Janārdana*, in the form of a fish, replied: 'Thou hast well spoken, and hast rightly known me. 30. In a short time the earth with its mountains, groves, and forests, shall be submerged in the waters. 31. This ship has been constructed by the company of all the gods⁶² for the preservation of the vast host of living creatures. 32. Embarking in it all living creatures, both those engendered from moisture and from eggs, as well as the viviparous, and plants, preserve them from calamity. 33. When driven by the blasts at the end of the *yuga*, the ship is swept along, thou shalt bind it to this horn of mine. 34. Then at the close of the dissolution thou shalt be the *Prajāpati* (lord of creatures) of this world, fixed and moving. 35. When this shall have been done,⁶³ thou, the omniscient, patient rishi, and lord of the *Manvantara*, shalt be an object of worship to the gods.' 2nd *Adhyāya*: "1. *Sūta* said: Being thus addressed, Manu asked the slayer of the *Asura*, 'In how many years shall the (existing) *Manvantara* come to an end? 2. And how shall I preserve the living creatures? or how shall I meet again with thee?' The fish answered: 'From this day forward a drought shall visit the earth for a hundred years and more, with a tormenting famine. 4. Then the seven direful rays of the son, of little power, destructive, shall rain burning charcoal. 5. At the close of the *yuga* the submarine fire shall burst forth,

⁶² The reading of the Taylor MS. here is partially erased; but it may have been *sarva-vedīnām*, "of all the Vedas." Compare the various reading in verse 11 of the next *adhyāya*.

⁶³ According to the reading of the Taylor MS. we should have to substitute the words, "Thus at the beginning of the *Kṛita* age, thou" etc.

while the poisonous flame issuing from the mouth of Sankarshana (shall blaze) from Pātāla, and the fire from Mahādeva's third eye shall issue from his forehead. Thus kindled the world shall become confounded. 7. When, consumed in this manner, the earth shall become like ashes, the æther too shall be scorched with heat. 8. Then the world, together with the gods and planets, shall be destroyed. The seven clouds of the period of dissolution, called Saṁvartta, Bhīmanāda, Droṇa, Chāṇḍa, Balāhaka, (9) Vidyutpatāka, and Soṇāmbu, produced from the steam of the fire, shall inundate the earth. 10. The seas agitated, and joined together, shall reduce these entire three worlds to one ocean. 11. Taking this celestial ship, embarking on it all the seeds, and through contemplation fixed on me fastening it by a rope (12) to my horn, thou alone shalt remain, protected by my power, when even the gods are burnt up. 13. The sun and moon, I Brahmā with the four worlds, the holy river Narmadā,⁶⁴ the great rishi Mārkaṇḍeya, (14) Mahādeva, the Vedas, the Purāṇa with the sciences,—these shall remain with thee at the close of the Manvantara. 15. The world having thus become one ocean at the end of the Chākshusha manvantara, I shall give currency to the Vedas at the commencement of thy creation.' 16. Sūta continued: Having thus spoken, the divine Being vanished on the spot; while Manu fell into a state of contemplation (*yoga*) induced by the favour of Vāsudeva. 17. When the time announced by Vāsudeva had arrived, the predicted deluge took place in that very manner. Then Janārdana appeared in the form of a horned-fish; (the serpent) Ananta came to Manu in the shape of a rope. 19. Then he who was skilled in duty (*i.e.* Manu) drew towards himself all creatures by contemplation (*yoga*) and stowed them in the ship, which he then attached to the fish's horn by the serpent-rope, (20) as he stood upon the ship, and after he had made obeisance to Janārdana. 21. I shall now declare the Purāṇa which, in answer to an enquiry from Manu, was uttered by the deity in the form of the fish, as he lay in a sleep of contemplation till the end of the universal inundation: Listen." The Matsya Purāṇa gives us no further information here about the progress and results of the deluge; and this narrative does not appear to be ever afterwards resumed.

⁶⁴ In the opinion of this writer, therefore, the Narmadā (Nerbudda) must have been a holier stream than the Gaṅgā: otherwise we should have expected him to select the latter as the river to be preserved at the dissolution.

The Bhāgavata P. viii. 24, 7, gives the same story with variations as follows :

Āsīd atita-kalpānto brāhma naimittiko layaḥ | samudropaplutās tatra lokā bhūr-ūdayo nṛpa | 8. *Kālenāgata-nidrasya Dhātuh śīṣayishor bali | mukhato nissṛitān vedān Itayagrīvo 'ntike 'harat |* 9. *Jnātva tad dāna-cendrasya Itayagrīvasya cheshṭitam | dadhūra śapharī-rūpam bhagavān Itar īścarah |* 10. *Tatra rāja-ṛishih kashchid nūmnā Satyavrato mahān | Nārāyaṇa-paro 'tapyat tapaḥ sa salilāsanaḥ |* 11. *Yo 'sāv asmin mahākalpe tanayaḥ sa Vīrasvataḥ | Śrāddhadeva iti khyāto manutve Itarīnā 'rpitah |* 12. *Ekadhā Kṛitamālāyām kurvato jala-tarpanam | tasyānjaly-udake kachich chhaphary ekā 'bhyapadyata |* 13. *Satyavratto 'njali-gatām saha toyena Bhūrata | utsasarja nadi-toye śapharīm Dravīdścarah | tam āha sātikaruṇam mahākāruṇikam nṛipam | yādobhyo jñāti-ghātibhyo dīnām mām dīnavatsala | kathaṁ visṛjase rājan bhītām asmin sarj-jale |* 32. *Saptame 'dyatanād ārdhham ahany etad arindama | nimanakshyaty apyayāmbhodhau trailokyam bhūr-bhuvādikam |* 33. *Trilokyām liyamānāyām saṁvarttām bhāsi vai tadā | upasthāsyati nauḥ kachid viśālā tām mayeritā |* 34. *Tām tūcad oshadhīḥ sarvā vijāny uchchāvachāni cha | saptarshibhiḥ paricṛitah sarva-sattoparīnkhitah |* 45. *Āruhya vṛihatīm nūcam vicharishyasy aviklaraḥ | ekārnave nirālōka ṛishīnām eva varehasā |* 36. *Dadhūyamānām tām nūcam samīreṇa baliyasā | upasthitasya me śṛinge nibadhnīhi mahāhinā |* 37. *Ahaṁ tām ṛishibhiḥ sākām sahanīvam udānvati | vikarshan vicharishyāmi yāvad Brāhmī niśū prabho |* 41. *Tataḥ samudraḥ udvelah sarvataḥ plāvayan mahīm | vardhamāno mahāmeghair varshadbhiḥ samadṛīsyata |* 42. *Dhyāyan bhagavad-ādeśam dadṛīse nūvam āgatām | tām āruroha viprendrair ādāyaushadhi-vīrudhaḥ |* 43. *Tam āchur munayaḥ prītā rājan dhyāyasva Keśavam | sa vai naḥ sankatād asmād avitā saṁ vidhāsyati |* 44. *So 'nudhyātas tato rājñā prādūrāsīd mahārṇave | eka-śṛingadhara matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanaḥ |* 45. *Nibadhya nūvam tach-chhṛinge yathokto Itarīnā purā | varatreṇāhinā tushṭas tushṭāva Madhusūdanam |* 54. *Ity uktavantaṁ nṛpatim bhagavān Ādipūruṣah | matasya-rūpī mahāmbhodhau viharaṁs tattvam abravīt |* 55. *Purāṇa-saṁhitām divyām Sinkhya-Yoga-kriyāvatīm | Satyavratasya rājarsheḥ ātma-tattvam asāṁśayam aśeshataḥ |* 56. *Āsraushīd ṛishibhiḥ sākam ātma-tattvam asāṁśayam | nāry āsīno bhagavatā proktam brahma sanātanam |* 57. *Atita-pralayāpūye utthitūya sa Vedhase | hatvāśuraṁ Itayagrīvaṁ vedān prat-*

*gūharad Hariḥ | 58. Sa tu Satyavrato rājā jñāna-vijnāna-saṁyutaḥ |
Vishnoḥ prasādāt kalpe 'smin āsīt Vaivasvato Manuḥ |*

"7. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional⁶⁵ dissolution of the universe arising from Brahmā's nocturnal repose; in which the Bhūloka and other worlds were submerged in the ocean. 8. When the creator, desirous of rest, had under the influence of time been overcome by sleep, the strong Mayagrīva coming near, carried off the Vedas which had issued from his mouth. 9. Discovering this deed of the prince of the Dānavas, the divine Hari, the Lord, took the form of a Sapharī fish. 10. At that time a certain great royal rishi, called Satyavrata, who was devoted to Nārāyaṇa, practised austere fervour, subsisting on water. 11. He was the same who in the present great Kalpa is the son of Visvasvat, called Srāddhadeva,⁶⁶ and was appointed by Hari to the office of Manu. 12. Once, as in the river Kṛitāmālā he was offering the oblation of water to the Pitris, a Sapharī fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands. 13. The lord of Dravida, Satyavrata, cast the fish in his hands with the water into the river. 14. The fish very piteously cried to the merciful king, 'Why dost thou abandon me poor and terrified to the monsters who destroy their kindred in this river?' " [Satyavrata then took the fish from the river, placed it in his waterpot, and as it grew larger and larger, threw it successively into a larger vessel, a pond, various lakes, and at length into the sea. The fish objects to be left there on the plea that it would be devoured; but Manu replies that it can be no real fish, but Vishṇu himself; and with various expressions of devotion enquires why he had assumed this disguise, verses 15-31.] The god replies: 32. "On the seventh day after this the three worlds Bhūloka, etc., shall sink beneath the ocean of the dissolution. 33. When the universe is dissolved in that ocean, a large ship, sent by me, shall come to thee. 34. Taking with thee the plants and various seeds, surrounded by the seven rishis, and attended by all existences, (35) thou shalt embark on the great ship, and shalt without alarm move over the one dark ocean, by the sole light of the rishis. When the ship shall be vehemently shaken by

⁶⁵ *Naimittika*. See above p. 45.

⁶⁶ Manu is called Srāddhadeva in the Mahābhārata also, S'āntip. 4507. In the Brāhmaṇas, however, he receives the appellation, or epithet, not of *Srāddhadeva*, but of *Srāddhādeva*. See above, p. 188 ff.

the tempestuous wind, fasten it by the great serpent to my horn—for I shall come near. 37. So long as the night of Brahmā lasts, I shall draw thee with the rishis and the ship over the ocean.” [The god then disappears after promising that Satyavrata shall practically know his greatness and experience his kindness, and Satyavrata awaits the predicted events, verses 38–40.] 41. “Then the sea, augmenting as the great clouds poured down their waters, was seen overflowing its shores and everywhere inundating the earth. 42. Meditating on the injunctions of the deity, Satyavrata beheld the arrival of the ship, on which he embarked with the Brāhmins, taking along with him the various kinds of plants. 43. Delighted, the Munis said to him, ‘meditate on Keśava; he will deliver us from this danger, and grant us prosperity.’ 44. Accordingly when the king had meditated on him, there appeared on the ocean a golden fish, with one horn, a million yojanas long. 45. Binding the ship to his horn with the serpent for a rope, as he had been before commanded by Hari, Satyavrata lauded Madhusūdana.” [Verses 46–53 contain the hymn.] 54. When the king had thus spoken, the divine primeval Male, in the form of a fish, moving on the vast ocean declared to him the truth; (55) the celestial collection of Puranas, with the Sāṅkhya, Yoga, the ceremonial, and the mystery of the soul. 56. Seated on the ship with the rishis, Satyavrata heard the true doctrine of the soul, of the eternal Brahmā, declared by the god. 57. When Brahmā arose at the end of the past dissolution, Hari restored to him the Vedas, after slaying Hayagrīva. 58. And King Satyavrata, master of all knowledge, sacred and profane, became, by the favour of Viṣṇu, the son of Vivasvat, the Manu in this Kalpa.”

Before adducing the remarks of the commentator Śrīdhara Svāmīn on the passage last cited from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, I shall quote one more version of the same legend from the Agni Purāṇa.⁶⁷ It is not of any great consequence, as, though more condensed, it coincides in purport with that in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa: which of the two has bor-

⁶⁷ This has been copied by Professor Aufrecht from a MS. of the Agni Purāṇa, belonging to the Royal Asiatic Society of London. I am informed by Prof. Aufrecht that the East India Office Library has two MSS. of the Vahni Purāṇa, which (although Vahni is, in later Sanskrit, synonymous with Agni) differ entirely in their contents from the Agni Purāṇa.

rowed from the other, or whether both are derived from a common source, I am unable to say.

Vasishṭha uvācha | 1. *Matsyādi-rūpīṇaṁ Viṣṇum brūhi sargādi-kāranam* | *purāṇam brahma chāgneyaṁ yathā Viṣṇoḥ purā śrutam* | *Agnir uvācha* | 2. *Matsyāvatāraṁ vakshye 'haṁ Vasishṭha śrinu vai* | *Īareḥ* | *avatāra-kriyāṁ duṣṭa-nashṭyai sat-pālanāya hi* | 3. *Āsīd atita-kalpānte brāhma naimittiko layaḥ* | *sanudropaplutās tatra lokā bhūrādikā mune* | 4. *Manur Vāivasvatas tepe tapo vai bhukti-muktaye* | *ekadā Kṛitāmūlāyāṁ kurvato jala-tarpanam* | 5. *Tasyānjaly-udake matsyaḥ svalpa eko* | *bhyapadyata* | *kshēptu-kūmaṁ jale prāha* "na mām kshipa narottama | 6. *Grahādibhyo bhayam me 'tra*" | *tach chhruvā kalāḥ 'kshipat* | *Manuṁ vṛiddhaḥ punar matsyaḥ prāha taṁ* "dehi me vṛihat" | 7. *Tasya tad vachanaṁ śrūtā rājā 'tha vandane 'kshipat* | *tatra vṛiddho 'bravīd bhūpam* "prithu dehi padam nama" | 8. *Sarovare punaḥ kshipto varṛidhe tat-pramāṇavān* | *ūche* "dehi vṛihat sthānam" | *prākshipach chāmbudhau tataḥ* | 9. *Lakṣha-yojana-vistīrṇaḥ kṣhaṇa-mātrena so 'bhavat* | *matsyaṁ tam adbhutaṁ dṛiṣṭvā vismitaḥ prābravīd Manuḥ* | 10. "Ko bhavān nanu vai Viṣṇur Nārāyaṇa namo 'stu te | māyayā mohayasi mām kimarthaṁ cha Janārdana" | 11. *Manur-ukto*⁶⁸ | *'bravīd matsyo Manuṁ vai pālāne ratam* | *avatīrṇo bhārāyāsya jagato duṣṭa-nashṭaye* | 12. "Saptame divase tv abdhiḥ plāvayishyati vai jagat | upasthitāyāṁ nāvi tvāṁ vijadīni vidhūya cha | 13. Saptarshibhiḥ paricṛito nīṣāṁ brāhmīṁ charishyasi | upasthitasya me śṛinge nibadhnīhi mahāhina" | 14. *Ity uktvā 'ntardadhe matsyo Manuḥ kālā-pratikṣhakaḥ* | *stītaḥ samudra udvela nāvam āruke tadā* | 15. *Eka-śṛiṅga-dhara matsyo haimo niyuta-yojanaḥ* | *nāvam babandha tach-chhṛiṅge matsyākhyāṁ cha purāṇakam* | 16. *Sūśrūva matsyāt pāpa-ghnaṁ sa-śrutam śrutibhiḥ śrutam (?)* | *brahma-veda-praharttāraṁ Hayagrivāṁ cha dānavam* | 17. *Avadhīd veda-mantrādyān pālāyāmāsa Keśavaḥ* |

"Vasishṭha said : 1. Declare to me Viṣṇu, the cause of the creation, in the form of a Fish and his other incarnations; and the Puranic revelation of Agni, as it was originally heard from Viṣṇu. Agni replied : 2. Hear, o Vasishṭha, I shall relate to thee the Fish-incarnation of Viṣṇu, and his acts when so incarnate for the destruction of

⁶⁸ Professor Aufrecht's transcript has this reading *Manur-ukto*; which I have retained, although I was not aware that *Manus* was commonly used for *Manu*, except in the Vedic period.

the wicked, and protection of the good. 3. At the close of the past Kalpa there occurred an occasional dissolution of the universe caused by Brahmā's sleep, when the Bhūloka and other worlds were inundated by the ocean. 4. Manu, the son of Vivasvat, practised austere fervour for the sake of worldly enjoyment as well as final liberation. Once, when he was offering the libation of water to the Pitris in the river Kṛitamālā, (5) a small fish came into the water in the hollow of his hands, and said to him when he sought to cast it into the stream, 'Do not throw me in, (6) for I am afraid of alligators and other monsters which are here.' On hearing this Manu threw it into a jar. Again, when grown, the Fish said to him, 'Provide me a large place.' 7. Manu then cast it into a larger vessel (?). When it increased there, it said to the king, 'Give me a wide space.' 8. When, after being thrown into a pond, it became as large as its receptacle, and cried out for greater room, he flung it into the sea. 9. In a moment it became a hundred thousand yojanas in bulk. Beholding the wonderful Fish, Manu said in astonishment: (10) 'Who art thou? Art thou Viṣṇu? Adoration be paid to thee, o Nārāyaṇa. Why, o Janārdana, dost thou bewilder me by thy illusion?' 11. The Fish, which had become incarnate for the welfare of this world and the destruction of the wicked, when so addressed, replied to Manu, who had been intent upon its preservation: (12) 'Seven days after this the ocean shall inundate the world. A ship shall come to thee, in which thou shalt place the seeds, (13) and accompanied by the rishis shalt sail during the night of Brahmā. Bind it with the great serpent to my horn, when I arrive. 14. Having thus spoken the Fish vanished. Manu awaited the promised period, and embarked on the ship when the sea overflowed its shores. 15. (There appeared) a golden Fish, a million yojanas long, with one horn, to which Manu attached the ship, (16) and heard from the Fish the Matsya Purāṇa, which takes away sin, together with the Veda. Keśava then slew the Dānava Hayagrīva who had snatched away the Vedas, and preserved its mantras and other portions."

The following is Śrīdhara's comment, before referred to, on the legend of the deluge, as told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa. These remarks have been well translated and explained in the preface to the 3rd volume of his edition of this Purāṇa (pp. xxxviii ff.) by M. Burnouf, whose elaborate discussion of the legend extends from p. xxiii to p. liv.

Atra idaṁ chintyaṁ "kim ayam mahāpralayo dainandino vā" iti | tatra tāvad "brāhma layaḥ" (v. 7) iti "yo 'sāv asmin mahā-kalpe" (v. 11) iti cha ukter "mahāpralayaḥ" iti prāptaṁ "na" iti brūmaḥ | mahāpralaye prithivy-ādīnāṁ avasheshasambhavād "yāvad brāhmī niśa" (v. 37) ity-ādy-ukti- virodhāc cha | ato "dainandana" iti yuktam | na cha etad api sangachhate | saṁvarttakair anūvriṣṭy-ādibhir vinā akasmād eva "saptaye 'hani trailokyāṁ nimankshyati" (v. 32) iti matsyokter anupapatteḥ | yathoktam prathama-skandhe "rūpam" (i. 3, 15) ity ādi tad api tadā durghaṭam | na hi pralaya-dvaye 'pi "mahimayyāṁ nāry" ūrohaḥ sambhavati na cha Chākshusha-manvantare pralayo 'sti | tathā, cha sati saptamo Manur Vaivasvataḥ ity api durghaṭam syāt | "tvaṁ tāvad oshadhiḥ sarvāḥ" (viii. 24, 34) ity-ādi-nirdeśo 'pi na sangachhate | na hi tadā oshadhy-ādīnāṁ sattvānāṁ cha avasheshāḥ sambhavati | tasmād anyathā varnyate | naivāyaṁ vāstavaḥ ko 'pi pralayaḥ | kintu Satyavratasya jñānopadeśaya āvirbhūto bhagavān vairāgyārtham akasmāt pralayaṁ iva darśayāmāsa yathā 'sminn eva Vaivasvata-manvantare Mārkaṇḍeyāya darśitavān | tad-apekshayā eva cha "mahā-kalpe 'sminn" iti viśeṣhaṇāṁ sangachhate | tathā cha "tataḥ samudraḥ udvelaḥ sarvataḥ samādriśyata" (v. 41) iti tasyaiva yathā darśanam uktam ity eṣā dik |

"Here we have to consider whether this was a great dissolution of the universe, or one of those which occur at the close of each day of Brahmā. If it be supposed from the expressions 'a dissolution proceeding from Brahmā' (v. 7), and 'he is the same who in this Mahā-kalpa' (v. 11), that it was a great dissolution, we reply,—no; because in a great dissolution the earth and other worlds cannot possibly remain in existence, and because this would be opposed to the words 'so long as the night of Brahmā lasts' (v. 37). Hence it might appear that it must be one of the dissolutions which occur at the end of a day of Brahmā. But this also is impossible, because it would be at variance with the Fish's words that 'the three worlds should be submerged on the seventh day,' (v. 32) suddenly, without the drought and other calamities which precede a dissolution. What is stated in the first book (iii. 15), 'at the deluge, in the Chākshusha Manvantara, he took the form of a Fish, and preserved Manu Vaivasvata, whom he placed in a ship formed of the earth,'⁶⁹ would also in that case be inconceivable; for

⁶⁹ Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3. 16. *Rūpam sa jagrīhe mātṛyaṁ Chākshushodadhi-sam-
plave | nāry āropya mahimayyāṁ apād Vaivasvatam Manum |* On this passage also

(1.) in neither of the two dissolutions could any one be placed 'in a ship in the form of the earth' (as the earth is submerged in the one case and altogether destroyed in the other); (2.) there is no dissolution of the world in the Chākshusha Manvantara; (3.) in the case supposed the existence of a seventh Manu, the son of Vivasvat would be impossible (for the fourteen Manus succeed each other in one Kalpa without the intervention of any dissolution). And in that case the command to take 'all the plants into the ship' (viii. 24, 34), would be inconceivable, since no plants or other such substances are left at such a period. Such being the fact, the narrative must be otherwise explained. It was in fact no real dissolution which is here related. But the deity, who appeared to teach Satyavrata knowledge, shewed him suddenly the semblance of a dissolution to instil into him dispassion, just as in the Vaivasvata Manvantara he shewed to Mārkaṇḍeya. And if referred to this, the words 'in this Māhakaḷpa' will be conceivable. And consequently the words 'Then the sea was beheld overflowing its shores on every side' are spoken with reference to what Satyavrata saw (in the vision). Such is an indication of the purport of the Section."

S'rīdhara Svāmin here reasons only upon the data supplied by the particular version of the story which he found before him in the Bhāgavata, and does not seem to have extended his researches so far as to ascertain whether the legend might not exhibit some variations as narrated in other Puranas. If he had turned to the Matsya Purāṇa he would have found that one of his objections, viz., that drawn from the absence of any reference to the calamities supposed to precede a dissolution, did not apply to the account there given; since that narrative expressly asserts that these premonitory signs were manifested. Others of his objections apply no doubt to the other narratives as well as to that in the Bhāgavata. According to the ordinary Puranic theory (see above, pp. 43 ff.) fourteen Manus exist in each Kalpa, and one succeeds another without the intervention of any *pralaya* or dissolution. It is obviously inconsistent with this theory to represent such a dissolution S'rīdhara remarks: *Yadyapi manvantarāvasāno pralayo nāsti tathāpi kenachit kautukena Satyavratāya māyā pradarśitā | yathā "akāṇḍe Mārkaṇḍeyāya" iti drashyavyam* | "Although there is no dissolution at the end of a Manvantara, yet, through a certain sport an illusion was shown to Satyavrata, as in the other passage where it is said 'Suddenly to Mārkaṇḍeya,' etc."

as taking place either during the life of any of the Manus, or after his disappearance. It is even doubtful, or more than doubtful (Wilson's Vish. P. i. p. 50 f. and p. 44, above) whether one Manu can exist contemporaneously with another, and yet, according to the Matsya and Agni Purāṇas (see above, pp. 205 ff., 211 f.) Manu Vaivasvata is said to have lived during his predecessor's period, although the Bhāgavata avoids this difficulty by making Satyavrata the hero of the story and by representing him as being born again as Manu Vaivasvata at the beginning of the next Manvantara. (M. Burnouf's Preface above referred to may be consulted for further remarks on this subject.) The authors of the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas do not, however, appear to have been so sensitively alive to inconsistencies of this description as Śrīdhara. Perhaps the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras may not have been so clearly defined, or so generally current, when the older parts, at least of the Mahābhārata, were composed, as at a later period.⁷⁰ And even the Puranic writers may not have cared very much to preserve a strict congruity in all that they wrote. In fact they may have had no great faith in the authority of speculations so arbitrary and artificial as those relating to the great mundane periods to which I refer,—speculations which were derived from no higher source than previous writers of their own class. The case, however, was different with the Commentators, who lived at a later period, and who seem to have regarded the established doctrine regarding Kalpas and Manvantaras as an article of faith.

There is, however, no doubt that, for the reasons above assigned, this legend of a Flood, such as is described in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas, does not fit into the system of Kalpas and Manvantaras. But what is the inference which we ought to draw from this circumstance? M. Burnouf believes (1.) that the theory of great mundane periods and periodical dissolutions of the universe was received in India from very early times (Bhāg. P. iii. Pref. p. xliii.) and (2) that it was older than the legend of a deluge, as, although the latter may have been derived from ancient tradition, the style in which it is related in the Mahābhārata and the Purāṇas has nothing of the archaic colouring of the Itihāsas contained in the Brāhmaṇas, and it had not, so far as he knew,

⁷⁰ The Svāyambhuva Manvantara is mentioned in the S'āntip. verse 12658, but no details are given (*kr̥ite yuge mahāvīra pura Svāyambhuve 'ntare*).

been found in any work of the class last named (p. xxvii.), and was not, he anticipated, likely to be discovered there (lii.). The conclusion which he deduces from these premises, and from the absence of any tradition of any great local inundation (pp. xlviii. and li.), is that, although, as related in the *Mahābhārata* and the *Purāṇas*, the legend of the deluge has received in some respects an Indian character (xxxi. ff.; xlv. ff.), it is not in its origin Indian, (li.), but was most probably imported into Hindustan from a Semitic source, whether Hebrew or Assyrian (lii.-liv.). The first of M. Burnouf's premises, regarding the great antiquity of the system of *Kalpas*, *Manvantaras*, and mundane dissolutions, is not borne out by the Vedic hymns, or anything that has yet been found in the *Brāhmaṇas* (see above, pp. 45 ff.). And his anticipation that no reference to a deluge would be discovered in any of the older Indian records has proved incorrect, as is shown by the legend of Manu quoted above (p. 181 ff.) from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*.

Professor Weber, by whom attention was first drawn (in his *Indische Studien*, i. 160 ff.) to this passage, shows how materially it interferes with Burnouf's results. If there is no proof of the great antiquity of the cosmical theory which that great scholar supposes to be inconsistent with the early existence in India of any tradition of a deluge, whilst on the other hand there is distinct evidence that that tradition was actually current there at a much earlier period than he imagined, it is clear that his supposition of its having been introduced into that country from an exclusively Semitic source loses much of its probability.

The explanation by which Śrīdhara endeavours to maintain the consistency of the Puranic narratives and theories seems to be altogether unfounded. There is no appearance of the authors either of the *Bhāgavata*, or *Matsya*, or *Agni Purāṇas* having intended to represent the deluge as a mere vision. They evidently meant this narrative to be taken literally, just as much as anything else that they describe.

I shall now compare the versions of the legend given in the *Mahābhārata* and *Purāṇas* with each other, and with that quoted above from the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa*.

I. The following are the peculiarities of the narrative in the *Satapatha Brāhmaṇa* :

(1.) It makes no reference to any great mundane periods, such as *Kalpas* or *Manvantaras*.

(2.) It does not speak of a dissolution of the world (*pralaya*), but of a flood (*augha*) which swept away all living creatures except Manu.

(3.) It does not fix the number of days or years after which the flood should come.

(4.) It speaks of Manu simply, without assigning to him any patronymic, such as *Vaivasvata*.⁷¹

(5.) It contains no allusion to the locality in which he was when the fish came to him.

(6.) It makes no mention of the fish being thrown into any river.

(7.) It is silent as to Manu being accompanied by any rishis when he embarked on the ship, and as to his taking any seeds along with him.

(8.) It speaks of the ship as having rested on the "Northern mountain," and of a place called "Manu's Descent."

(9.) It does not say anything of any deity being incarnate in the fish.

(10.) It represents *Idā* as produced from Manu's oblation, and as the mother of his offspring, begotten apparently in the natural way.

It is manifest from this abstract, when compared with what follows, that the flood described in the *Brāhmaṇa* is distinguishable in various respects from the dissolution, or *pralaya*, of the later works.

II. The legend as told in the *Mahābhārata* agrees with that of the *S. P. Br.* in some, and differs from it in other particulars :

(1.) It does not specify any *Kalpa* or *Manvantara*.

(2.) It speaks of a dissolution of the universe (*pralaya*), and of the time of its purification by water (*samprakṣhālana-kālaḥ*) having arrived.

(3.) It makes the fish declare that this event should take place speedily (*achirāt*), and alludes to no antecedent calamities.

⁷¹ *Manu Vaivasvata* is however mentioned in *S. P. Br.* xiii. 4, 3, 3. "*Manur Vaivasvato rājā*" *ity āha* | *tasya manushyā viśaḥ* | "He says 'Manu Vaivasvata king.' Men are his subjects." Further on, xiii. 4, 3, 6, Yama Vaivasvata is spoken of as King of the *Pitris*. Compare *R.V.* x. 14, 1; 17, 1. In the *Vāṅkhyā* hymns attached to the *R.V.* iv. 1, Indra is mentioned as drinking Soma in the house of Manu *Vivasvat* (not *Vaivasvata*). In the *Atharva-veda*, viii. 10, 24, Manu *Vaivasvata* is spoken of as the calf of the cow *Virāj* (*tasyā Manur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ*). Yama is similarly spoken of in the preceding verse. In *Vāṅkhyā*, iii. 1, Indra is said to have drunk Soma in Manu *Sāmvaranī*'s house. The connection of the words *Sāvanya* and *Sāvarṇi* with the word *manu*, "man," in *R.V.* x. 68, 8 f. and 11, no doubt gave rise to the idea of a Manu *Sāvarṇi*. See Wilson's *Vishṇu P.* 4to. ed. pp. 266 ff., and Roth's remark in *Journal Germ. Or. Soc.* vi. 245 f., and *R.V.* x. 1', 2.

(4.) It assigns to Manu the patronymic of Vaivasvata, but mentions no other Manu.

(5.) It represents the fish as coming to him when on the banks of the Chirīṅī river.

(6.) It describes the fish as thrown into the Ganges before it was taken to the sea.

(7.) It speaks of Manu as embarking on the ship with the seven rishis, and as taking with him all the seeds described by the Brāhmins.

(8.) It declares that the ship rested on the highest peak of the Himālaya, which was thence called Naubandhana.

(9.) It makes the fish reveal himself as Brahmā Prajāpati.

(10.) It describes Manu not as begetting offspring but as creating all sorts of living beings including MEN.

III. The Matsya Purāṇa agrees in some points, and differs in others from the above details.

(1.) It states that Manu, whom it styles the son of the Sun (*Sahasrakiraṇātmaja*, and *Ravi-nandana*), i.e. Manu Vaivasvata, practised austerity after making over his kingdom to his son (v. 12). One might have supposed that he could only have done this in his own Manvantara; but it is said further on (v. 34 f.) that he was informed by the fish that when the dissolution should come to an end, he should become a Prajāpati and lord of the Manvantara; and he receives a promise that he should be preserved during the dissolution (ii. 12), which, as appears from v. 15, was to take place at the end of the Chākshusha Manvantara. After this he was to create the world anew. We must therefore suppose the writer to have regarded Manu Vaivasvata as existing during the period of his predecessor, but as then occupying the inferior position of a king. This difficulty is, as I have already remarked, avoided in the Bhāgavata, which makes King Satyavrata the hero of the story.

(2.) This Purāṇa speaks of a dissolution (*pralaya*) and yet (i. 15 ff.) represents Manu as asking and receiving from Brahmā as a boon that when that dissolution should arrive, he should be the preserver of all things stationary and moving.

(3.) It states that a hundred years and more would elapse before the dissolution, which was to be preceded by famine and various terrific phenomena.

(4.) It represents Manu as the son of the Sun. See under head (1.).

(5.) It mentions Malaya (Malabar) as the scene of Manu's austerity, and of the apparition of the fish.

(6.) It agrees with the Mahābhārata in describing the fish as thrown into the Ganges, though at so great a distance from Malabar.

(7.) It is silent as to the seven rishis embarking on the ship, but speaks of Manu taking with him all sorts of creatures (living apparently) as well as seeds (chap. ii. v. 11).

(8.) It does not bring the narrative to a conclusion (see above, p. 207), and thus has no opportunity of saying anything of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) It speaks of Janārdana (Vishṇu) as the god who was manifested in the Fish.

(10.) It refers to Manu as about to effect a creation (ii. 15), but also as preserving the existing animals and plants (ch. i. 15 ff., 31 f.; ii. 2, 19).

IV. According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa:

(1.) The event described was an "occasional dissolution" (*naimittiko layah*, see above, p. 45) at the end of a Kalpa (viii. 24, 7); and yet in contradiction with this it had previously been alluded to (i. 3, 15) as occurring at the close of the Chākshusha Manvantara.

(2.) See head (1.).

(3.) The dissolution was to take place after seven days (viii. 24, 32); and no premonitory calamities are referred to.

(4.) The hero of the story is Satyavrata, king of Draviḍa, who was born again in the present *muhākālpā* as the son of Vivasvat (vv. 10, 11, 58).

(5.) The scene of the incidents, with which the narrative begins, was the river Kṛitamālā, in the country of Draviḍa.

(6.) The fish is not thrown into any river after it had been once taken out of the Kṛitamālā, and had grown large.

(7.) Satyavrata is commanded to take with him into the ship the seven rishis, as well as plants, seeds, and all beings (*sarva-sattvopavimhitaḥ*).

(8.) Nothing is said of the place where the ship rested.

(9.) Vishṇu is the deity who took the form of a fish with the view of recovering the Vedas carried away by the Dānava Hayagrīva (vv. 9, 57).

(10.) No mention is made in this chapter of any creation effected by Manu; but in ix. i. an account is given of his descendants.

V. The narrative in the Agni Purāṇa agrees with that in the Bhāgavata, except in its much greater conciseness, and in making Manu Vaivasvata, and not Satyavrata, the hero of the story.

SECT. IV.—*Legendary Accounts of the Origin of Castes among the Descendants of Manu and Atri, according to the Purāṇas.*

We have already seen that it is distinctly affirmed in a passage quoted above (p. 126) from the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 3138 ff., that men of all classes, Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras were descended from Manu, a statement which is clearly at variance with the notion of their having been separately created from different members of Brahmā. This tallies with the account of the origin of castes which is found in those parts of the Purāṇas which profess to record the history of the two royal races, the solar and the lunar, which are said to have sprung from Manu Vaivasvata and Atri.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (which is here written in prose) makes the following statement regarding Manu's descendants :

iv. 1. 4. *Sakala-jagatām anādir ādibhūtaḥ riḡ-yajuh-sāmādimaya-bhagavad-Vishṇumayasya Brahmano mūrttirūpam Hiranyagarbho brahmāṇḍato bhagavān Brahmā prāḡ babhūva | Brahmanās cha dakṣiṇāṅgushṭhajanmā Dakṣaḥ prajāpatiḥ | Dakṣasyāpy Aditiḥ | Aditer Vivasvān | Vivasvato Manuḥ | Manor Ikṣvāku-Nṛiga-Dhṛiṣṭa-Saryāti-Narishyanta-Prāṁśu-Nābhāganedishṭa-Kārūsha-Prishadhṛākhyāḥ putrāḥ babhūvuh | 6. Ishṭīm cha Mitṛa-Varuṇayor Manuḥ putra-kāmas cakāra | 7. Tatrāpahute hotur apachārād Ilā nāma kanyā babhūva | 8. Saiva Mitra-Varuṇa-prasādāt Sudyumno nāma Manoh putro Maitreyāsīt | punaś cha Īsvara-kopāt strī sati Soma-sūnor Budhasya āśrama-samīpe babhrāma | 9. Sānurāḡas cha tasyām Budhaḥ Purūravasam ātmajam utpādyaṁśa | 10. Jāte cha tasminn amita-tejobhiḥ paramarśibhir isṭimayaḥ rūmāyo yajurnayaḥ sāmamāyo 'tharvamayaḥ sarvamāyo manomāyo jñānamāyo 'kinchinmāyo bhagavān yajna-puruṣa-svarūpi Sudyumnasya puṁśtram abhilaṣadbhir yathāvad isṭaḥ | tatprasādād Ilā punar api Sudyumno 'bhavat |*

“Before the mundane egg existed the divine Brahmā Hiranyagarbha, the eternal originator of all worlds, who was the form and essence of Brahmā, who consists of the divine Vishṇu, who again is identical with

the Rik, Yajush, Sāman and Atharva-Vedas. From Brahmā's right thumb⁷² was born the Prajapati Daksha; Daksha had a daughter Aditi; from her was born Vivasvat; and from him sprang Manu. Manu had sons called Ikshvāku, Nṛiga, Dhṛiṣṭa, Saryāti, Narishyanta, Prāṁśu, Nābhāgediṣṭa, Karūsha, and Prishadhra.⁷³ Desirous of a son, Manu sacrificed to Mitra and Varuṇa; but in consequence of a wrong invocation through an irregularity of the hotṛi-priest, a daughter called Ilā was born. Then through the favour of Mitra and Varuṇa she became to Manu a son called Sudyumna. But being again changed into a female through the wrath of Īśvara (Mahādeva) she wandered near the hermitage of Budha the son of Soma (the Moon); who becoming enamoured of her had by her a son called Purūravas. After his birth, the god who is formed of sacrifice, of the Rik, Yajush, Sāman, and Atharva Vedas, of all things, of mind, of nothing,⁷⁴ he who is in the form of the sacrificial Male, was worshipped by the rishis of infinite splendour who desired that Sudyumna should recover his manhood. Through the favour of this god Ilā became again Sudyumna."

Regarding the different sons of Manu the Purāṇas supply the following particulars:

(1.) Prishadhra.—The Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 1, 12:

Prishadhras tu guru-go-badhāc chhādratvam āgamat |

"Prishadhra became a Sūdra in consequence of his having killed his religious preceptor's cow."

On the same subject the Harivaṁśa tells us, verse 659:

Prishadhro himsayitvā tu guror gām Janamejaya | śāpāc chhādratvam āpannah |

"Prishadhra having killed his Guru's cow, became a Sūdra in consequence of his curse."

This story is variously amplified in the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa, section cxii., and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa ix. 2, 3-14. See Professor Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit. p. 351, where the author remarks that

⁷² See above, p. 72 f.

⁷³ Compare with this the list of Manu's sons given in the passage from the M. Bh. Ādip. quoted above, p. 126. Nābhāgediṣṭa (not Nābhāgediṣṭa) is mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, and Taittirīya Saṁhitā (see above, p. 191), and S'aryāti in the S. P. Br. iv. 1, 5, 1. See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1866, p. 11 ff. The Mārka. P. cxi. 3 ff., and the Bhāg. P. ix. 1, 11 ff. treat also of Manu's sons and of the birth of Ilā. See Wilson's Vishṇu P. 4to. ed. pp. 348-58, and Burnouf's Bhāg. P. vol. iii. pref. lxx. ff.

⁷⁴ *Akinchinmayah*, "not consisting of anything."

“the obvious purport of this legend, and of some that follow, is to account for the origin of the different castes from one common ancestor.”

(2.) *Kārūsha*.—The *Vishṇu Purāṇa* says, iv. 1, 13 :

Kārūshāt Kārūshā mahābalāḥ Kshattriyā babhūvuh |

“From *Kārūsha* the *Kārūshas*, *Kshattriyas* of great power, were descended.”

The *Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, ix. 2, 16, says :

*Kārūshāt Mānavād āsan Kārūshāḥ Kshattrā-jātayaḥ | uttarāpatha-
goptūro brahmanyā dharma-ratsalāḥ |*

“From *Kārūsha*, son of *Manu*, came the *Kārūshas* of the *Kshattriya* caste, protectors of the northern region, devout, and lovers of duty.”

(3.) *Nābhāga*.—The *Vishṇu Purāṇa* says, iv. 1, 14 :

Nābhāgo Nedishṭa-putras tu vaiśyatām agamat |

“*Nābhāga*, the son of *Nedishṭa*, became a *Vaiśya*.”

The *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa* says he was the son of *Dishṭa*, and relates how he became a *Vaiśya*, by marrying the daughter of a man of that class (section cxiii. and *Wilson*, p. 352, note). The *Bhāgavata Purāṇa*, ix. 2, 23, says he became a *Vaiśya* in consequence of his works (*Nābhāgo Dishṭa-putro 'nyaḥ karmabhir vaiśyatām gataḥ*). And yet a long list of his descendants is given, and among them occurs *Marutta* who was a *Chakravartin*, or universal monarch (*Vishṇu P.* iv. 1. 15–17; *Bhāg. P.* ix. 2, 23–28; *Mārka. P.* cxxviii.–cxxxii.). He had a grandson called *Dama*, of whom the *Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa* relates that at a *Svayamvara* he was chosen by the daughter of the King of *Daśārṇa* for her husband (cxxxiv. 8), and that when the bride had been seized by three of his rejected rivals (verse 16) she was rescued by him after he had slain one of them and vanquished another (verse 53); that subsequently that same vanquished rival in revenge killed *Dama's* father, who had retired into the wilderness as an ascetic (cxxxv. 18). The *Purāṇa* in one of its recensions ends with the following curious particulars :

*Tatās chakāra tātasya raktenaivodaka-kriyām | āṇṇyam prāpya sa
pituḥ punaḥ prāyāt sva-mandiram | Vapushmataś cha māṇsena piṇḍa-
dānam chakāra ha | brāhmaṇān bhojāyāmāsa rakshaḥ-kula-samuḍbhavān |
evamvidhā hi rājāno babhūvuh sūrya-vamśa-jāḥ | anye 'pi sudhiyaḥ sūra
yajvānaḥ śāstra-kovidāḥ | vedāntam paṭhamānāms tāt na sankhyātum
ihotsahe |*

“*Dama* then (after tearing out the heart of *Vapushmat*) performed

with blood the rites to the manes of his father; and having thus discharged his debt to his parent, he returned home. With the flesh of Vapushmat he formed the oblation which he offered, and fed the Brāhmans who were of Rākshasa descent. Of such character were the kings of the Solar race. There were also others who were wise, brave, priests, and skilled in the scriptures. I am unable here to enumerate those of them who studied the Vedānta.”⁷⁵

The Harivaṁśa (section xi. verse 658) tells us that “two sons of Nābhāgārishṭa, who were Vaiśyas, became Brāhmans” (*Nābhāgārishṭa-putrau deau vaiśyau brāhmaṇatām gatau*).

(4.) Dhṛisṭa.—Of him the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 2, 2 :

Dhṛisṭasyāpi Dhārṣṭakam Kṣhatraṁ samabhavat |

“From Dhṛisṭa sprang the Dhārṣṭaka Kṣhattriya.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 2, 17 :

Dhṛisṭād Dhārṣṭam abhūt Kṣhatram brahma-bhūyam gatam kṣhītau |

“From Dhṛisṭa were descended the Dhārṣṭa Kṣhattriya, who obtained Brāhmanhood⁷⁶ on earth.”

(5.) The last-named Purāṇa enumerates in verses 19 ff. of the same section the descendants of Narishyanta, among whom was Agniveśya, verse 21 :

Tato 'gniveśyo bhagarān Agniḥ svayam abhūt sutaḥ | Kānina iti vikhyāto Jātūkarnyo mahān rishiḥ | tato brahma-kulām jātum Agniveśyāyanam nṛipa | Narishyantānvayaḥ proktaḥ |

“From him (Devadatta) sprang a son Agniveśya, who was the lord Agni himself, and who was also called Kānina and Jātūkarnya the great rishi. From him was descended the Agniveśyāyana race of

⁷⁵ This quotation, which will be partly found in Prof. Wilson's note 22, p. 353, is taken from the section given separately by Prof. Banerjea at the end of his edition of this Purāṇa from a Maithila MS. which differs from that followed in his text (see his Preface, p. 30). In verses 6 f. of section xxxvi. however, of Prof. Banerjea's text, Dama threatens to do something of the same sort as in the other recension he is described to have actually done : 6. *Yad aham tasya raktena dehotthena Vapushmataḥ | na karomi guros triptiṁ tat pravekshye hutūsanam | 7. Tachchhottenodaka-karma tasya tūtasya sankhye vinipātītasya | mūṁsena samyag dvija-bhojanam cha na chet pravekshyāmi hutūsanam tat |* “6. If I do not satiate my father with the blood from Vapushmat's body, then I shall enter the fire. 7. If I do not celebrate with his blood the obsequial rites of my father prostrated in the fray, and feed the Brāhmans with (his) flesh, I shall enter the fire.”

⁷⁶ The Commentator explains *brahma-bhūyam* by *brāhmaṇatvam*, “the state of Brāhmana.”

Brāhmins. The offspring of Narishyanta has been declared." That of Dishta is next taken up.

Some of the names of Manu's sons are repeated in the subsequent narrative. Thus we find a second Prāṇśu named among the descendants of Nābhāga (Wilson, 352). And in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 2, 2, a second Nābhāga is mentioned as follows :

Nābhāgasyātmaḥ Nābhāgas tasya Ambarīśaḥ | Ambarīśasyāpi Virūpo 'bhavat Virūpāt Prishadaśvo jajne tatas cha Rathītaraḥ | tatrāyaṁ ślokaḥ | "ete kshattri-prasūtā vai punas chāngirasaḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathītārāṇāṁ pravarāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ" |

"The son of Nābhāga was Nābhāga; his son was Ambarīśa. From him sprang Virūpa; from him Prishadaśva; and from him Rathītara; regarding whom this verse is current: 'These persons sprung from a Kshattriya, and afterwards called Angirases, were the chief of the Rathītaras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya race.'"⁷⁷

The Bhāgavata thus explains the circumstance, ix. 6, 2 :

Rathītaraśyāprajasya bhāryāyaṁ tantave 'rthitāḥ | Angirā janayā-māsa brahmavarchasinaḥ sūtān | ete kshetre prasūtā vai punas tv Angirasaḥ smṛitāḥ | Rathītārāṇāṁ pravarāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |

"Angiras being solicited for progeny, begot sons possessing Brahmanical glory on the wife of Rathītara who was childless. These persons being born of a (Kshattriya's) wife, but afterwards called descendants of Angiras, were the chief of the Rathītaras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya lineage."

It will be observed that in this last verse the Bhāgavata reads *kshettre prasūtāḥ* "born of the wife (of a Kshattriya)," instead of *kshattri-prasūtāḥ*, "sprung from a Kshattriya," and thus brings this verse into a closer conformity with the one preceding it. Professor Wilson (p. 359, note) considers that the form given to the legend in the Bhāgavata "is an afterthought, not warranted by the memorial verse cited in our text." It is difficult to determine whether or not this may be the case without knowing which of the two readings in that verse is the original one.

(6.) The Vishṇu Purāṇa next proceeds to enumerate the descendants of Ikshvāku son of Manu. The representative of his line in the twenty-first generation was Harita, of whom it is said, iv. 3, 5 :

⁷⁷ See Prof. Wilson's note in p. 359 on this passage.

Ambarishasya Māndhātus tanayasya Yuvanāśvaḥ putro 'bhūt | tasmād Harito yato 'ngiraso Hāritāḥ |

"The son of Ambarisha⁷⁸ son of Māndhātṛi was Yuvanāśva. From him sprang Harita, from whom the Hārita Angirases were descended."

These words are thus paraphrased by the Commentator: "from him sprang the Hārita Angirases, Brāhmins, chief of the family of Harita" (*tasmād Hāritā Angiraso dvijāḥ Harita-gotra-pravarāḥ*).

The Linga Purāṇa, quoted by Prof. Wilson, states the same thing:

Harito Yuvanāśvasya Hāritā yata ātmajāḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakṣhe kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |

"The son of Yuvanāśva was Harita, of whom the Hāritas were sons. They were on the side of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya lineage."

And the Vāyu Purāṇa tells us with some variation:

Harito Yuvanāśvasya Hāritā bhūrayaḥ smṛitāḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ putrāḥ kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ |

"Harita was the son of Yuvanāśva: (after whom) many persons were called Hāritas. These were the sons of Angiras, twice-born men (Brāhmins) of Kshattriya race."

This may mean that they were begotten by Angiras, as is said by the Bhāgavata (see above) to have been the case with Rathītara's sons. In that case, however, as Nābhāga and Ikshvāku were brothers and Rathītara was only the fifth in descent from Nābhāga, whilst Harita was the twenty-first after Ikshvāku,—Angiras (if we suppose one and the same person be meant in both cases) must have lived for sixteen generations!

Such are the remarkable notices given in the Purāṇas of the rise of different castes among the descendants of some of the sons of Manu Vairasvata the legendary head of the solar line of kings. I shall now add some similar particulars connected with the lunar dynasty.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 6, 2 ff.) Atri was the son of Brahmā, and the father of Soma (the moon), whom Brahmā installed as the sovereign of plants, Brāhmins and stars⁷⁹ (*aśeṣhaushadhi-dvija-nakṣatrāṇām ādhipatyē 'bhyasechayat*). After celebrating the rājasūya sacrifice, Soma became intoxicated with pride, and carried off Tārā

⁷⁸ We have already had a person of this name the son of Nābhāga. See above.

⁷⁹ See Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, p. 135 ff.

(Star), the wife of Brihaspati the preceptor of the gods, whom, although admonished and entreated by Brahmā, the gods, and rishis, he refused to restore. Soma's part was taken by Uśanas; and Rudra, who had studied under Angiras, aided Brihaspati (*Angirasaścha sakūśopalabdha-vidyo bhagavān Rudro Brihaspateḥ sūhāyjam akarot*).⁸⁰ A fierce conflict ensued between the two sides, supported respectively by the gods and the Daityas, etc. Brahmā interposed, and compelled Soma to restore Tāra to her husband. She had, however, in the mean time become pregnant, and bore a son Budha (the planet Mercury), of whom, when strongly urged, she acknowledged Soma to be the father. Purūravas, as has been already mentioned, was the son of this Budha by Ilā, the daughter of Manu. The loves of Purūravas and the Apsaras Urvaśī are related in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xi. 5, 1, 1;⁸¹ in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 6, 19 ff.; in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 14;⁸² and in the Harivaṃśa, section 26. The Mahābhārata, Ādip. sect. 75, alludes to Purūravas as having been engaged in a contest with the Brāhmins. This passage will be quoted hereafter. According to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iv. 7, 1, Purūravas had six sons, of whom the eldest was Āyus. Āyus had five sons: Nahusha, Kṣhatravṛddha, Rāmbha, Rājī, and Anēnas. The narrative proceeds (iv. 8, 1):

Kṣhatravṛddhāt Sunahotraḥ⁸³ putro 'bhavat | Kāśa-Leśa-Gṛtsama-dās trayo 'syābhavan | Gṛtsamadasya Saunakaś cāturvarṇya-pravartitayitā 'bhūt | Kāśasya Kāśirājaś tato Dirghatamāḥ putro 'bhavat | Dhanvantariś Dirghatamaso 'bhūt |

"Kṣhatravṛddha had a son Sunahotra, who had three sons, Kāśa, Leśa, and Gṛtsamada. From the last sprang Saunaka, who originated the system of four castes.⁸⁴ Kāśa had a son Kāśirāja, of whom again Dirghatamas was the son, as Dhanvantari was of Dirghatamas."

⁸⁰ This is the only mention I have ever happened to encounter of the great Mahadeva having been at school!

⁸¹ This passage is translated by Professor Müller in the Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 62 f.; and the legend has been formed on the basis of the obscure hymn in the R.V. x. 95, in which the two names of Purūravas and Urvaśī occur as those of the interlocutors in a dialogue.

⁸² A short quotation has been already made from this narrative. See above, p. 168.

⁸³ Both my MSS. read *Sunahotra*. Professor Wilson has *Suhotra*.

⁸⁴ The Commentator explains the words *cāturvarṇya-pravartitayitā* by saying that the four castes were produced among his descendants (*tad-vāṃśe cātvarō varṇā abhavan*). This explanation agrees with the statement of the Vāyu Purāṇa given in the text.

The Vayu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson (V. P. 4to. ed. p. 406), expresses the matter differently, thus :

Putro Gṛitsamadasya cha Sunako yasya Saunakaḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyās chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrās tathaiva cha | etasya vanīse samudbhūtā vichitraiḥ karmabhir dvijāḥ |

“The son of Gṛitsamada was Sunaka, from whom sprang Saunaka. In his family were born Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, twice-born men with various functions.”⁸⁵

In like manner the Harivamśa states in section 29, verse 1520 :

Putro Gṛitsamadasyāpi Sunako yasya Saunakāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyās chaiva vaiśyāḥ śūdrās tathaira cha |

“The son of Gṛitsamada was Sunaka, from whom sprang the Saunakas, Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras.”

Something similar is said of Gṛitsamati (who was the son of a Suhotra, although not the grandson of Kshatratriddha) in a following section, the 32nd of the same work, verse 1732 :

Sa chāpi Vitathāḥ putrān janayāmāsa pancha vai | Suhotraṁ cha Suhotaram Gayāṁ Gargāṁ tathaiva cha | Kāpilāṁ cha mahātmānam Suhotrasya suta-dvayam | Kāsakaḥ cha mahāsattvas tathā Gṛitsamatir nripaḥ | tathā Gṛitsamateḥ putrā brāhmaṇāḥ kshatriyāḥ viśaḥ |

“Vitatha was the father of five sons, Suhotra, Suhotri, Gaya, Garga, and the great Kapila. Suhotra had two sons, the exalted Kāsaka, and King Gṛitsamati. The sons of the latter were Brāhmins, Kshatriyas, and Vaiśyas.”

The Bhagavata Purāṇa, ix. 17, 2 f., has the following notice of Kshatratriddha's descendants :

Kshatratriddha-sutasyāsan Suhotrasyāmañās trayaḥ | Kāśyāḥ Kuśo Gṛitsamadaḥ iti Gṛitsamadād abhūt | S'unako S'aunako yasya baherichaḥ pravaro muniḥ |

“Suhotra, son of Kshatratriddha, had three sons, Kāśya, Kuśa, and Gṛitsamada. From the last sprang Sunaka, and from him Saunaka, the eminent Muni, versed in the Rig-veda.”

⁸⁵ On this Professor Wilson remarks, note, p. 406 : “The existence of but one caste in the age of purity, however incompatible with the legend which ascribes the origin of the four tribes to Brahmā, is everywhere admitted. Their separation is assigned to different individuals, whether accurately to any one may be doubted ; but the notion indicates that the distinction was of a social or political character.”

It is to be observed that this Gṛitsamada, who is here described as belonging to the regal lineage of Purūravas, is the reputed rishi of many hymns in the second Maṇḍala of the Rīg-veda. Regarding him the Commentator Sāyaṇa has the following remarks in his introduction to that Maṇḍala :

Maṇḍala-drashṭā Gṛitsamadah ṛishih | sa cha pūrvam Āngirasa-kule Sunahotrasya putrah san yajna-kāle 'surair grīhitah Indrena mochitah | pāśchāt tad-rachanauaiva Bhṛigu-kule Sunaka-putro Gṛitsamada-nāmā 'bhūt | tathā chānukramanikā "Yah Āngirasaḥ Saunahotro bhūtvā Bhārgavaḥ Saunako 'bharat sa Gṛitsamado dritiṇyam maṇḍalam apaśyaḍ" iti | tathā tasyaiva S'aunakasya rachanam ṛishy-anukramane "tvam Agne" iti | "Gṛitsamadah S'aunako Bhṛigutām gataḥ | S'aunahotro prakṛityā tu yaḥ Āngirasa uchyate" iti | tasmād maṇḍala-drashṭā S'aunako Gṛitsamadah ṛishih |

"The seer (i.e. he who received the revelation) of this Maṇḍala was the rishi Gṛitsamada. He, being formerly the son of Sunahotra in the family of the Āngirasa, was seized by the Asuras at the time of sacrifice and rescued by Indra. Afterwards, by the command of that god, he became the person named Gṛitsamada, son of Sunaka, in the family of Bhṛigu. Thus the Anukramanikā (Index to the Rīg-veda) says of him : 'That Gṛitsamada, who, having been an Āngirasa, and son of Sunahotra, became a Bhārgava and son of Sunaka, saw the second Maṇḍala.' So, too, the same S'aunaka says in his Rishi-anukramana regarding the Maṇḍala beginning with 'Thou, o Agni' :—' Gṛitsamada son of Sunaka who is declared to have been naturally an Āngirasa, and the son of Sunahotra, became a Bhṛigu.' Hence the seer of the Maṇḍala is the rishi Gṛitsamada son of Sunaka."

It will be noticed that (unless we are to suppose a different Gṛitsamada to be intended in each case) there is a discrepancy between the Purāṇas on the one hand, and Sāyaṇa and the Anukramanikā on the other ; as the Purāṇas make Gṛitsamada the son of Sunahotra or Sunahotra, and the father of Sunaka ; whilst the Anukramanikā, followed by Sāyaṇa, represents the same personage as having been, indeed, originally the son of Sunahotra of the race of Angiras, but as having afterwards become, by what process does not appear, the son of Sunaka of the race of Bhṛigu.

In his translation of the Rīg-veda (ii. 207 f.) Professor Wilson refers

to a legend about King Vitahavya in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Ma-hābhārata (verses 1944-2006) which gives a different account of Gṛtsamada's parentage. It begins: *Sṛiṇu rājān yathā rājā Vitahavyo mahāyasaḥ | rājarshir durlabham prāpto brāhmanyam loka-saṅgrāham |* "Hear, o king, how the renowned Vitahavya, the royal rishi, attained the condition of Brāhmanhood venerated by mankind, and so difficult to be acquired." It happened that Divodāsa, King of Kāśī (Benares) was attacked by the sons of Vitahavya, and all his family slain by them in battle. The afflicted monarch thereupon resorted to the sage Bhāradvāja, who performed for him a sacrifice in consequence of which a son named Pratardana was born to him. Pratardana, becoming an accomplished warrior, was sent by his father to take vengeance on the Vitahavyas. They rained upon him showers of arrows and other missiles, "as clouds pour down upon the Himālaya"⁶⁶ (*abhyavarshanta rājānam himacantam ivāmbudāḥ*); but he destroyed them all, and "they lay with their bodies besmeared with blood, like kinsuka-trees"⁶⁷ cut down" (*apātan rudhirārdrāṅgā nīkṛitā iva kiṁśukāḥ*). Vitahavya himself had now to fly to another sage, Bhṛigu, who promised him protection. The avenger Pratardana, however, followed and demanded that the refugee should be delivered up:

Asyedānīm badhād adya bhaviṣyāmy anṛiṇaḥ pītuh | tam uvāca kṛipāviṣṭo Bhṛigur dharma-bhṛitām varaḥ | "nehāsti kṣattriyaḥ kaśchit sarve hime divjātayaḥ" | etat tu vachanaṁ śrutvā Bhṛigos tathyaṁ Pratardanaḥ | pādāv upasprīṣya śanaiḥ prahṛiṣṭo vākyam abravīt | evam apy asmi bhagavan kṛitakṛityo na saṁśayaḥ | tyājito hi mayā jātīm eṣha rājā Bhṛigūdvaḥ | tatas tenābhyunujnāto yayau rājā Pratardanaḥ | yathā-gatam mahārāja muktṛā viśam ivoragaḥ | Bhṛigor vachana-mūtreṇa sa cha brahmarshitām gataḥ | Vitahavyo mahārāja brahmarādītvaṁ eva cha | tasya Gṛtsamadaḥ putro rūpenendra ivāparaḥ | "Sakras tam" iti yo daityair nigrihītaḥ kilābhavat | ṛigvede varttate chāgryā śrutir yasya mahātmanaḥ | yatra Gṛtsamado "brahman" brāhmanaiḥ sa mahīyato | sa brāhmachārī viprarshiḥ śrīmān Gṛtsamado bhavat |

"Pratardana says: 'By the slaughter of this (Vitahavya) I shall

⁶⁶ This simile seems to indicate a familiarity with the manner in which the clouds collect, and discharge their contents on the outer range of the Himālaya.

⁶⁷ The Kinsuka is a tree bearing a red blossom (*Butea frondosa*).

now, to-day, be acquitted of my debt to my father.' Bhṛigu, the most eminent of religious men, filled with compassion, answered: 'There is no Kshattriya here: all these are Brāhmins.' Hearing this true assertion of Bhṛigu, Pratardana was glad, and gently touching the sage's feet, rejoined: 'Even thus, o glorious saint, I have gained my object . . . for I have compelled this King (*i.e.* Rājanya) to relinquish his caste.' King Pratardana then, after receiving the sage's salutations, departed, as he came, like a serpent which has discharged its poison while Vitahavya by the mere word of Bhṛigu became a Brāhman-rishi, and an utterer of the Veda. Gṛtsamada, in form like a second Indra, was his son; he was seized by the Daityas, who said to him, 'Thou art Śakra' (Indra). In the Rig-veda the texts (*śruti*) of this great rishi stand first.⁸⁸ There Gṛtsamada is honoured by the Brāhmins (with the title of) 'Brāhmān.' This illustrious personage was a Brahmachārin, and a Brāhman-rishi."

According to the enumeration of Gṛtsamada's family, which follows here, Sunaka was his descendant in the twelfth generation, and Śaunaka in the thirteenth. The story concludes with these words:

*Evaṁ vipratvāṁ agamad Vitaharyo narādhipaḥ | Bhṛigoḥ prasādāt
rājendra kshattriyaḥ kshattriyarshabha |*

"Thus did King Vitahavya, a Kshattriya, enter into the condition of Brāhmanhood by the favour of Bhṛigu."

In the next chapter we shall again notice Vitahavya among the Kshattriyas who are declared by tradition to have been the authors of Vedic hymns.

King Divodāsa was the sixth in descent from Kāśa brother of Gṛtsamada. Of him the Harivaṁśa states, section 32, verse 789 f.:

*Divodāsasya dāyādo brahmarshir Mitrāyur nṛipaḥ | Maitrāyaṇas
tataḥ Soma Maitreyās tu tataḥ smṛitāḥ | ete vai saṁśrītāḥ pakṣham
kshattropelās tu Bhārgavāḥ |*

"The son of Divodāsa was the King Mitrāyu a Brāhman-rishi. From him sprang Soma Maitrāyaṇa, from whom the Maitreyas received their name. They, being of Kshattriya lineage, adhered as Bhārgavas to the side (of the latter)."

⁸⁸ If I have correctly interpreted this verse, and if by "first" we are to understand first in order, it does not accurately represent the state of the case: as the hymns of Gṛtsamada only appear in the second Maṇḍala.

The twentieth in descent from the same Kāśa, brother of Gṛtsamada, was Bhārgabhūmi, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 8, 9 :

Bhārgasya Bhārgabhūmiḥ | tataś chāturvarnya-pravṛtṭiḥ | ity ete Kāśayo bhūpatayaḥ kathitāḥ |

“The son of Bhārga was Bhārgabhūmi, from whom the four castes originated. Thus have the kings called Kāśis been declared.”

In two passages of the Harivaṁśa, names identical, or nearly so, are found, but with a different progenitor in each case, in reference to which a similar statement is made. The first is in section 29, verse 1596 :

Veṇuhotra-sutaś chāpi Bhargo nāma prajēscaraḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhūmis tu Bhṛigubhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | ete hy Angirasah putrā jātā vaṁśe 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyās trayāḥ putrāḥ⁸⁹ sahasraśaḥ |

“The son of Veṇuhotra was King Bharga. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhṛigubhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhṛigu, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas three (classes of) descendants in thousands.”

The second passage is in the 32nd section, verse 1752 :

Sukumārasya putras tu Satyaketur mahārathaḥ | suto 'bhavad mahatejā rājā parama-dhūmikaḥ | Vatsasya Vatsabhūmis tu Bhārgabhūmis tu Bhārgavāt | ete hy Angirasah putrā jātā vaṁśe 'tha Bhārgave | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyā vaiśyāḥ sūdrāś cha Bharatarshabha |

“The warrior Satyaketu was the son of Sukumāra, and a prince of great lustre and virtue. From Vatsa sprang Vatsabhūmi, and Bhārgabhūmi from Bhārgava. These descendants of Angiras were then born in the family of Bhṛigu, Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas and Sūdras.”

The parallel passage in the Vāyu Purāṇa, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 409, has names which are mostly different :

Veṇuhotra-sutaś chāpi Gārgyo vai nāma viśrutaḥ | Gārgyasya Gārgabhūmis tu Vatsa Vatsasya dhīmataḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāś chaiva trayāḥ putrāḥ sudhūrmikāḥ |

“The son of Veṇuhotra was the renowned Gārgya. Gārgabhūmi was the son of Gārgya; and Vatsa of the wise Vatsa. Brāhmins and Kshattriyas were the virtuous sons of these two.”⁹⁰

⁸⁹ Professor Wilson, p. 410, note, gives *tejoyuktāḥ*, “glorious,” instead of *trayāḥ putrāḥ*, as the reading either of the Brāhma Purāṇa, or of the Harivaṁśa, or both.

⁹⁰ In regard to these passages the reader may consult the remarks of Professor

Another son of Āyus (son of Purūravas) was Rambha, of whom the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 17, 10 :

*Rambhasya Rabhasaḥ putro Gablīraś cakriyas tataḥ | tasya kshettre
brahma jajne śṛṇu vāṁsam Anenasah |*

"The son of Rambha was Rabhasa, from whom sprang Gabhīra and Akriya. From his wife Brāhmans were born : here now the race of Anenas" (another son of Āyus).

Of the same Rambha the Vishṇu Purāṇa says (iv. 9, 8), *Rambhas to anapatyo 'bharat |* "Rambha was childless."

Another son of Āyus, as we have seen, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 1, was Nahusha. He had six sons (V. P. iv. 10, 1), of whom one was Yayāti. The sons of the latter were Yadu, Turvasu, Druhyu, Anu, and Pūru (Ibid. iv. 10, 2).⁹¹ One of these five, Anu, had, as we are told, in the twelfth generation a son called Bali, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 18, 1, relates :

*Hemāt Sutapās tasmād Balir yasya kshettre Dīrghatamasā Anga-
Banga-Kalinga-Suhma-Pundrākhyam Bāleyaṁ kshattram ajanyata |*

"From Hema sprang Sutapas; and from him Bali, on whose wife⁹² Bāleya Kshattriyas (i.e. Kshattriyas of the race of Bali), called Anga, Banga, Kalinga, Suhma, and Pundra were begotten by Dīrghatamas."

Professor Wilson (p. 445, note 12) quotes from the Vāyu Purāṇa a statement regarding the same person that he had "sons who founded the four castes" (*putrān chāturvarnya-karān*); and refers to a passage in the Matsya Purāṇa, in which Bali is said to have obtained from

Wilson, p. 409, note 16, where a commentator (on the Brāhma Purāṇa, or the Hari-vāṁśa) is quoted, who says that in the passage from these works "another son of Vatsa the father of Alarka is specified, viz., Vatsabhūmi; while Bhārgava is the brother of Vatsa; and that (the persons referred to were) Angirases because Gālava belonged to that family, and (were born in the family) of Bhṛigu, because Viśvāmītra belonged to it" (*Vatsasya Alarka-pituh putrāntaram āha "Vatsabhūmī" iti | "Bhūrgavād" Vatsa-bhrātuh | "Angiraso" Gālavasya Angirasatvāt | "Bhūrgave" Viśvāmītrasya Bhūrgavarāt*). The Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 8, 6, says that Vatsa was one of the names of Prataridana, son of Divodāsa, a descendant of Kūsa, and a remote ancestor of Bhārgabhūmi. See however Professor Wilson's note 13, p. 408. It is possible that the resemblance of the word Bhārga to Bhārgava may have occasioned the descendants of the former to be connected with the family of Bhṛigu.

⁹¹ These five names occur together in the plural in a verse of the Rig-veda, i. 109, quoted above, p. 179.

⁹² *Kshettre bhārgayām jātavād Bāleyāḥ |* "They were called descendants of Bali because they were born of his wife."

Brahmā the boon that he should "establish the four fixed castes" (*chaturō niyatān varṇāṁs tvaṁ sthāpayeti*).

The Harivaṁśa gives the following account of Bali, in the course of which the same thing is stated; section 31, verses 1682 ff.:

*Phenāt tu Sutapā jājñe sutaḥ Sutapaso Baliḥ | jāto mānuṣha-yonau tu
sa rājā kāncaneshudhiḥ | mahāyogī sa tu Balir babhūva nṛpatiḥ purā |
putrān utpādayāmāsa pancha vaiśa-karān bhūvi | Angaḥ prathamato
jājñe Vangaḥ Suhmas tathaira cha | Puṇḍraḥ Kalingaś cha tathā Bāle-
yaṁ kṣhatṭram uchyate | Bāleyū brāhmaṇāś chaiva tasya vaiśakara
bhūvi | Bales tu Brahmaṇ datto varaḥ prītena Bhārata | mahāyogitvam
āyus cha kalpasya parimāṇataḥ | sangrāme chāpy ajeyatvaṁ dharma
chaiva pradhānatā | trilokya-darśanaṁ chāpi prādhānyam prasave
tathā | bale chāpratimatvaṁ vai dharma-tattvārtha-darśanam | chaturō
niyatān varṇāṁs tvaṁ cha sthāpayitēti cha | ity ukto vibhūmā rājā Baliḥ
śāntim parāṁ yayau | tasyaite tanayāḥ sarve kṣhetraja muni-pungavāt |
sambhūtā Dirghatapasāḥ Sudeshṇāyām mahaujausāḥ |*

"From Phenā sprang Sutapas; and the son of Sutapas was Bali. He was born of a human mother, this prince with the golden quiver; but King Bali was of old a great yogin. He begot five sons, who were the heads of races upon the earth. Anga was first born, then Vanga, Suhma, Puṇḍra and Kalinga; such are the names of the Kṣhatṭriyas descended from Bali (*Bāleyūḥ*). There were also Bāleya Brāhmans, founders of his race upon the earth. By Brahmā, who was pleased, the boon was granted to Bali that he should be a great yogin, should live the entire length of a Kalpa, should be invincible in battle, should have pre-eminence in virtue, should have the power of beholding the whole three worlds, should have a superiority in begetting progeny, should be unequalled in strength, and should comprehend the essential principles of duty. And being thus addressed by the Lord in these words, 'Thou shalt establish the four regulated castes,' King Bali attained supreme tranquillity. All these sons, the offspring of his wife, were begotten on Sudeshṇā by the glorious muni Dirghatapas."³³

³³ M. Langlois must have found in his MS. a different reading of the last line, as he renders it otherwise. Professor Wilson remarks (V P. pp. 444, note 12): "The Matsya calls Bali the son of Virochana, and *āyu-kalpa-pramāṇikaḥ*, 'existing for a whole Kalpa;' identifying him, therefore, only in a different period and form, with the Bali of the Vāmana Avatāra" (Dwarf-incarnation). (See Wilson's Vishṇu P. p. 265, note, and the Bhāgavata P. ix. sects. 15-23, and other works quoted in the 4th vol. of this work, pp. 116 ff.

Apratiratha is recorded as being a descendant of Pūru (another of Yayāti's sons), in the thirteenth generation (Wilson, p. 448). Of him it is related, Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 19, 2 :

Ṛṭeyoḥ Rantināraḥ putro 'bhūt | Taṁsum Apratirathaṁ Dhruvaṁ cha Rantināraḥ putrān avāpa | Apratirathāt Kaṇvaḥ | tasyāpi Medhātithiḥ | yataḥ Kaṇvāyanā dvijā babbūbhūḥ | Taṁsor Anilas tato Dushyantādyās chatvāraḥ putrā babbūruḥ | Dushyantāch chakravartī Bharato 'bhavat |

“Ṛṭeyu had a son Rantināra, who had Tansu, Apratiratha and Dhruva for his sons. From Apratiratha sprang Kaṇva. His son was Medhātithi; from whom the Kaṇvāyana Brāhmins were descended. From Tansu sprang Anila, who had four sons, Dushyanta, and others. From Dushyanta sprang the emperor Bharata.”

With some variations the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 20, 1 :

Pūror vaṁśam pravakshyāmi yatra jāto 'si Bhārata | yatra rājarshayo vaṁśyā brahma-vaṁśyās cha jajñire | . . . 6. Ṛṭeyoḥ Rantibhāro 'bhūt trayas tasyātmaajā nṛipa | Sumatir Dhruvo 'pratirathaḥ Kaṇvo 'pratirathāmajāḥ | tasya Medhātithis tasmāt Praskaṇvādyā dvijātayaḥ | putro 'bhūt Sumater Raibhyo Dushyantas tat-suto mataḥ |

“I shall declare the race of Pūru from which thou hast sprung, o Bhārata; and in which there have been born royal rishis, and men of Brahmanical family . . . 6. From Ṛṭeyu sprang Rantibhāra; who had three sons, Sumati, Dhruva, and Apratiratha. Kaṇva was the son of the last; and the son of Kaṇva was Medhātithi, from whom the Praskaṇvas and other Brāhmins were descended.”

A little further on, in the chapter of the Vishṇu Purāṇa just quoted (iv. 19, 10), Kaṇva and Medhātithi are mentioned as having had a different parentage from that before assigned, viz., as being the son and grandson of Ajamiḍha, who was a descendant in the ninth generation of Tansu, the brother of Apratiratha :

Ajamiḍhāt Kaṇvaḥ | Kaṇvād Medhātithir yataḥ Kaṇvāyanā dvijāḥ | Ajamiḍhasyānyaḥ putro Bṛihadishuḥ |

“From Ajamiḍha sprang Kaṇva: from Kaṇva Medhātithi, from whom were descended the Kaṇvāyana Brāhmins. Ajamiḍha had another son Bṛihadishu.”⁹⁴

⁹⁴ On this the Commentator remarks: *Ajamiḍhasya Kaṇvādīr eko vaṁśo Bṛihadishu-ādīr aparo vaṁśo Nīlādīr aparāḥ Rikshādīs chūparaḥ |* “Ajamiḍha had one set of descendants, consisting of Kaṇva, etc., a second consisting of Bṛihadishu, etc.,

On this last passage Professor Wilson observes, p. 452, note : "The copies agree in this reading, yet it can scarcely be correct. Kaṇva has already been noticed as the son of Apratiratha." But the compiler of the Purāṇa may here be merely repeating the discordant accounts which he found in the older authorities which he had before him.

Regarding Ajamīdha the Bhāgavata says, ix. 21, 21 :

Ajamīdhasya vaṁśyāḥ syuḥ Priyamedhādayo dvijāḥ | Ajamīdhād Brīhadishuḥ |

"Priyamedha and other Brāhmins were descendants of Ajamīdha. From Ajamīdha sprang Brīhadishu."

The Viṣṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 16) gives the following account of Mudgala, a descendant of Ajamīdha in the seventh generation :

Mudgalāc cha Maudgalyāḥ kṣattropetā dvijātayo bābhruḥ | Mudgalād Bahvaśro Bahraśrād Divodāso 'halyā cha mithunam abhūt | Śaradvato 'halyāyān Sātānando 'bharat |

"From Mudgala were descended the Maudgalya Brāhmins of Kshatriya stock. From Mudgala sprang Bahvaśra; from him again twins, Divodāsa and Ahalyā. Sātānanda was born to Śaradvat⁶⁵ by Ahalyā."

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, ix. 21, 33 f. :

Mudgalād brahma nirṛpitaṁ gotram Maudgalya-sanjñitam | mithunam Mudgalād Bhārmyād Divodāsaḥ pumān abhūt | Ahalyā kanyakā yasyān Sātānandas tu Gautamāt |

"From Mudgala sprang Brāhmins, the family called Maudgalyas. To the same father, who was son of Bharmyaśva, were born twins, Divodāsa, a male, and Ahalyā, a female child, who bore Sātānanda to Gautama."

The words of the Matsya Purāṇa on the same subject, as quoted by Professor Wilson, p. 454, note 50, are :

Mudgalasyāpi Maudgalyāḥ kṣattropetā dvijātāyāḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakṣe saṁsthitaḥ Kaṇva-Mudgalāḥ |

"From Mudgala sprang the Maudgalyas, Brāhmins of Kshatriya stock. These Kaṇva and Mudgalas stood on the side of Angiras."

a third consisting of Nīla, etc., and a fourth consisting of Riksha, etc." The last two sons of Ajamīdha are mentioned further on, Nīla in v. 15, and Riksha in v. 18, of the same chapter of the V. P.

⁶⁵ The Commentator says this is a name of Gautama. Regarding Ahalyā and Gautama see the story extracted above, p. 121, from the Rāmāyana.

The Harivamśa, section 32, verse 1781, thus notices the same family :
*Mudgalasya tu dāyādo Maudgalyaḥ sumahūyaśūḥ | ete sarve mahāt-
 mūno kshattropetā dvijātayaḥ | ete hy Angirasaḥ pakshaṁ saṁśritāḥ
 Kāṇva-Mudgalāḥ | Maudgalyasya suto jyeshtho brahmarshiḥ suma-
 hūyaśūḥ |*

"The renowned Maudgalya was the son of Mudgala. All these great personages were Brāhmins of Kshattriya descent. These Kāṇvas and Mudgalas adhered to the side of Angiras. Maudgalya's eldest son was a celebrated Brahman-rishi."

Regarding Kshemaka, a future descendant of Ajamīdha in the 31st generation, the Vishṇu Purāṇa says, iv. 21, 4 :

*Tato Nīramitras tasmāccha Kshemakaḥ | tatrayaṁ ślokaḥ | "brah-
 ma-kshattrasya yo yonir⁶⁶ vaṁśo rājarshi-satkṛitaḥ | Kshemakam prāpya
 rājānaṁ sa saṁsthām prāpsyate kalau |*

"From him (Khaṇḍapāṇi) shall spring Nīramitra; and from him Kshemaka; regarding whom this verse (is current): 'The race, consecrated by royal rishis, which gave birth to Brāhmins and Kshattriyas, shall terminate in the Kali age, after reaching King Kshemaka.'"

The corresponding verse quoted by Professor Wilson (p. 462, note 24) from the Matsya and Vāyu Purāṇas substitutes *devarshi*, "divine rishis," or "gods and rishis," for the *rājarshi*, "royal rishis," of the Vishṇu Purāṇa. The verse in question is there described as *anuvamśa-śloka'yaṁ gīto vipraiḥ purātanaḥ*, "a genealogical verse sung by ancient Brāhmins."

According to the details given from the Purāṇas in this section several persons, Gṛtsamada, Kāṇva, Medhātithi, and Priyamedha, to whom hymns of the Rig-veda are ascribed by Indian tradition as their rishis, were of Kshattriya descent.

In the line of the same Tansu, brother of Apratiratha, we find in the sixth generation a person named Garga, of whom the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates, iv. 19, 9 :

Gargāt S'iniḥ | tato Gārgyaḥ S'ainyaḥ kshattropetā dvijātayo babhūvuh |

"From Garga sprang S'ini; from them were descended the Gārgyas and Sainyas, Brāhmins of Kshattriya race."⁶⁷

⁶⁶ On this words the Commentator has this note : *Brahmaṇaḥ brāhmaṇasya Kshattrasya kshattriyasya cha yonir⁶⁶ kṛāṇam pūrvam yathoktatvāt |* "'Brahma' and 'Kshattria' stand for Brāhman and Kshattriya. This race is the 'source,' cause (of these), as has been declared above."

⁶⁷ On this the Commentator only remarks : *Tatas tābhyām Gārgyaḥ S'ainyau⁶⁷ cha*

Similarly the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 21, 19, says:

Gargāt Sīnis tato Gārgyaḥ kṣhatrād brahma hy ararttata |

"From Garga sprang Sīni; from them Gārgya, who from a Kshatriya became a Brāhman."⁹⁸

The Vishṇu Purāṇa records a similar circumstance regarding the family of Mahāvīryya, the brother of Garga (iv. 19, 10):

Mahāvīryyād Urukshayo nāma putro 'bhūt | tasya Trayyarūṇa-Puṣkarināu Kapiś cha putra-trayam abhūt | tach cha tritayam api paśchād vipratām upajagāma |

"Mahāvīryya had a son named Urukshaya; who again had three sons, Trayyarūṇa, Puskarin, and Kapi; and these three⁹⁹ afterwards entered into the state of Brāhmans (*i. e.* became such)."

The Bhāgavata states, ix. 21, 19 f.:

Duritakshayo Mahāvīryyāt tasya Trayyārūṇiḥ Kaviḥ | Pushkarārūṇi ity atra ye brāhmaṇa-gatiṁ gatāḥ |

"From Mahāvīryya sprang Duritakshaya. From him were descended Trayyarūṇi, Kavi, and Pushkarārūṇi, who attained to the destination of Brāhmans."¹⁰⁰

According to the Matsya Purāṇa also, as quoted by Professor Wilson (451, note 22), "all these sons of Uruksha (*sic*) attained the state of Brāhmans" (*Urukshataḥ sūtā hy ete sarve brāhmaṇatām gatāḥ*); and in another verse of the same Purāṇa, cited in the same note, it is added: *Kāryānām tu varā hy ete trayāḥ proktā maharshayaḥ | Gargāḥ Sankṛitayaḥ Kāryā kṣhattropastā dvijātayaḥ |* "These three classes of great rishis, viz. the Gargas, Sankṛitis, and Kāryas, Brāhmans of Kshatriya race, are declared to be the most eminent of the Kāryas, or descendants of Kavi." The original Garga was, as we have seen, the brother of Mahāvīryya, the father of Kavi, or Kapi; while, according to the

Garga-vaṁśyāt Sīni-vaṁśyātūch cha samūkhyātāḥ | kṣhattriya eva kenachit kūrāṇa brāhmaṇāś cha babhūvuh | "They were called Gārgyas and Sāinias because they were of the race of Garga and Sīni. Being indeed Kshatriyas they became Brāhmans from some cause or other."

⁹⁸ The Commentator does not say how this happened.

⁹⁹ Unless Professor Wilson's MSS. had a different reading from mine, it must have been by an oversight that he has translated here, "The last of whom became a Brāhman."

¹⁰⁰ On this the Commentator annotates: *Yo atra kṣhatra-vaṁśe brāhmaṇa-gatiṁ brāhmaṇa-rūpatām gatāś te |* "Who in this Kshatriya race attained the destination of Brāhmans,—the form of Brāhmans."

Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 19, 9), and Bhāgavata Purāṇa (ix. 21, 1), Sankṛiti was the son of Nara, another brother of Mahavīryya.

The series of passages just quoted is amply sufficient to prove that according to the traditions received by the compilers of the ancient legendary history of India (traditions so general and undisputed as to prevail over even their strong hierarchical prepossessions), Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and even Vaiśyas and Śūdras, were, at least in many cases, originally descended from one and the same stock. The European critic can have no difficulty in receiving these obscure accounts as true in their literal sense; though the absence of precise historical data may leave him without any other guide than speculation to assist him in determining the process by which a community originally composed for the most part of one uniform element, was broken up into different classes and professions, separated from each other by impassable barriers. On the other hand, the possibility of this common origin of the different castes, though firmly based on tradition, appeared in later times so incredible, or so unpalatable, to some of the compilers of the Purāṇas, that we find them occasionally attempting to explain away the facts which they record, by statements such as we have encountered in the case of the Kings Rathītara and Bāli, that their progeny was begotten upon their wives by the sages Angiras and Dīrghatamas, or Dīrghatapas; or by the introduction of a miraculous element into the story, as we have already seen in one of the legends regarding Gṛtsamada, and as we shall have occasion to notice in a future chapter in the account of Viśvāmītra.

CHAPTER III.

ON THE MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF
INDIAN SOCIETY ACCORDING TO THE HYMNS OF THE RIG-
AND ATHARVA-VEDAS.

In the last chapter I have attempted to shew that in general the authors of the hymns of the Rig-veda regarded the whole of the Aryan people, embracing not only the priests and chiefs, but the middle classes also of the population, as descended from one common father, or ancestor, whom they designate by the name of Manu. This reference to a common progenitor excludes, of course, the supposition that the writers by whom it is made could have had any belief in the myth which became afterwards current among their countrymen, that their nation consisted of four castes, differing naturally in dignity, and separately created by Brahmā.

In that chapter I proposed to leave for further consideration any specific notices which the Rig-veda might contain regarding the different classes of which the society contemporary with its composition was made up. On this consideration I now enter. As that great collection of hymns embodies numerous references, both to the authors themselves and to the other agents in the celebration of divine worship, it may be expected to supply, incidentally or indirectly, at least, some information respecting the opinion which these ministers of religion entertained of themselves, and of the ecclesiastical and civil relations in which they stood to the other sections of the community. I shall now endeavour to shew how far this expectation is justified by an examination of the Rig-veda.

It will be understood, from what I have already (pp. 7 and 11 ff.) written on the subject of that one hymn of the Rig-veda in which the

four castes are distinctly specified, *i.e.* the Purusha Sūkta, that in the enquiry, which I am now about to undertake, I confine myself in the first instance to those hymns which for any reason (see p. 4, above) appear to be the most ancient, leaving out of account until afterwards, all those compositions which, like the one just mentioned, are presumably of a later age.

It will, I think, be found on investigation that not only the older hymns, but the great bulk of the hymns, supply no distinct evidence of the existence of a well defined and developed caste-system at the time when they were composed.

SECT. I.—*On the signification of the words brāhmān, brāhmaṇa, etc., in the Rīg-veda.*

As the Rīg-veda Sanhitā is made up almost entirely of hymns in praise of the gods, it was not to be anticipated that it should furnish any systematic or detailed explanations on the points which form the object of our enquiry. But as was natural in compositions of the early and simple age to which these hymns belong, they do not always confine themselves to matters strictly connected with their principal subject, but indulge in occasional references to the names, families, personal merits, qualifications, relations, circumstances, and fortunes of the poets by whom they were produced, or of their patrons or other contemporaries, or of their predecessors.

I have, in another volume of this work,¹ enquired into the views which the authors of the hymns appear to have held on the subject of their own authorship. The conclusion at which I arrived was, that they did not in general look upon their compositions as divinely inspired, since they frequently speak of them as the productions of their own minds (vol. iii. pp. 128-140). But although this is most commonly the case (and especially, as we may conjecture, in regard to the older hymns), there is no doubt that they also attached a high value to these productions, which they describe as being acceptable to the gods (R.V. v. 45, 4; v. 85, 1; vii. 26, 1, 2; x. 23, 6; x. 54, 6; x. 105,

¹ Original Sanskrit Texts, vol. iii. pp. 116-161.

8), whose activity they stimulated (iii. 34, 1; vii. 19, 11), and whose blessing they drew down. In some of the hymns a supernatural character or insight is claimed for the rishis (i. 179, 2; vii. 76, 4; iii. 53, 9; vii. 33, 11 ff.; vii. 87, 4; vii. 88, 3 ff.; x. 14, 15; x. 62, 4, 5), and a mysterious efficacy is ascribed to their compositions (vol. iii. pp. 173 f.) The rishis called their hymns by various names, as *arka*, *uktha*, *rich*, *gir*, *dhi*, *nītha*, *nivīd*, *mantra*, *mati*, *sūkta*, *stoma*, *vāch*, *vachas*, etc. etc.; and the also applied to them the appellation of *brahma* in numerous passages.² That in the passages in question *brahma* has generally the sense of hymn or prayer is clear from the context of some of them (as in i. 37, 4; viii. 32, 27, where the word is joined with the verb *gāyata*, "sing," and in vi. 69, 7, where the gods are supplicated to hear the *brahma*), as well as from the fact that the poets are said (in i. 62, 13; v. 73, 10; vii. 22, 9; vii. 31, 11; x. 80, 7) to have fashioned or generated the prayer, in the same way as they are said to have fashioned or generated hymns in other texts (as i. 109, 1; v. 2, 11; vii. 15, 4; viii. 77, 4; x. 23, 6; x. 39, 14), where the sense is indisputable; while in other places (iv. 16, 21; v. 29, 15; vi. 17, 13; vi. 50, 6; vii. 61, 6; x. 89, 3) new productions of the poets are spoken of under the appellation of *brahma*.

That *brahma* has the sense of hymn or prayer is also shown by the two following passages. In vii. 26, 1, it is said: *Na somaḥ Indram asuto mamāda na abrahmāṇo maghavānaṁ sūtāsah | tasmai ukthaṁ janaye yaj jujoshad nṛivad navṛyah śrinavad yathā naḥ | 2. Ukthe ukthe somaḥ Indram mamāda nīthe nīthe maghavānūṁ sūtāsah | yad iṁ sabādhaḥ pītaraṁ na putrāḥ samāna-dakṣhāḥ avase havante |* "Soma unless poured out does not exhilarate Indra; nor do libations without hymns (*abrahmāṇaḥ*). I generate for him a hymn (*uktha*) which he will love, so that like a man he may hear our new (production). 2. At each hymn (*uktha*) the soma exhilarates Indra, at each psalm (*nītha*) the libations (exhilarate) Maghavat, when the worshippers united, with one effort, invoke him for help, as sons do a father."³ Again in x. 105, 8, it is

² For a list of these texts and other details which are here omitted, I refer to my article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age," in the Journal of the Roy. As. Soc. for 1866 (from which this section is mostly borrowed).

³ It is clear from the context of this passage that *abrahmāṇaḥ* means "unattended by hymns," and not "without a priest." After saying that soma-libations without

said: *Ava no vṛjina śiśhi ricā vanema anṛicah* | *na abrahmā yajnaḥ rīdhag joshati tve* | "Drive away our calamities. With a hymn (*ricā*) may we slay the men who are hymnless (*anṛicah*). A sacrifice without prayer (*abrahmā*) does not please thee well."

I have said that great virtue is occasionally attributed by the poets to their hymns and prayers; and this is true of those sacred texts when called by the name of *brahma*, as well as when they receive other appellations, such as *mantra*. Thus it is said, iii. 53, 12, *Viśvāmitrasya rakshati brahma idam Bhārataṁ janam* | "This prayer (*brahma*) of Viśvāmitra protects the tribe of Bharata;" v. 40, 6, *Gūḷham sūryaṁ tamasā apavratena turyeṇa brahmaṇā avindat Atriḥ* | "Atri with the fourth prayer (*brahmaṇā*) discovered the sun concealed by unholy darkness;" vi. 75, 19, *Brahma varma mama antaram* | "Prayer (*brahma*) is my protecting armour;" vii. 33, 3, *Eva id nu kam dūśarījñe Sudāsam pravad Indro brahmaṇā vo Vasishṭhāḥ* | "Indra preserved Sudās in the battle of the ten kings through your prayer, o Vasishṭhas." In ii. 23, 1, Brahmanaspati is said to be the "great king of prayers" (*jyeshṭharājam brahmaṇām*) (compare vii. 97, 3), and in verse 2, to be the "generator of prayers" (*janitā brahmaṇām*); whilst in x. 61, 7, prayer is declared to have been generated by the gods (*svādhyo ajanayan brahma devāḥ*). Compare vii. 35, 7.

Brāhmān in the masculine is no doubt derived from the same root as *brāhmān* neuter, and though differing from it in accent⁴ as well as gender, must be presumed to be closely connected with it in signification, just as the English "prayer" in the sense of a petition would be with "prayer," a petitioner, if the word were used in the latter sense. As, then, *brāhmān* in the neuter means a hymn or prayer, *brāhmān* in the masculine must naturally be taken to denote the person who composes or repeats a hymn or prayer. We do not, however, find that the composers of the hymns are in general designated by the word

hymns are unacceptable to Indra, the poet does not add that he is himself a *priest*, or that he is attended by one, but that he generates a hymn; and the same sense is required by what follows in the second verse. Accordingly we find that Sāyaṇa explains *abrahmāṇaḥ* by *stotra-kināḥ*, "destitute of hymns." The same sense is equally appropriate in the next passage cited, x. 105, 8. On iv. 16, 9, where *abrahmā* is an epithet of *dasyu*, "demon," Sāyaṇa understands it to mean "without a priest," but it may mean equally well or better, "without devotion, or prayer."

⁴ In *brāhmān* neuter the accent is on the first syllable; in *brāhmān* masculine on the last.

brāhmān, the name most commonly applied to them being *rishi*, though they are also called *vipra*, *vedhas*, *kavi*, etc. (see vol. iii. of this work, pp. 116 ff.). There are, however, a few texts, such as i. 80, 1; i. 164, 35; ii. 12, 6; ii. 39, 1; v. 31, 4; v. 40, 8; ix. 113, 6, etc., in which the *brāhmān* may or must be understood as referred to in the capacity of author of the hymn he utters. So, too, in ii. 20, 4, and vi. 21, 8, a new composer of hymns seems to be spoken of under the appellation of *nutānasya brāhmānyataḥ*; and in ii. 19, 8, the Gṛitsamadās are referred to both as the fabricators of a new hymn (*manma navīyaḥ*) and as (*brāhmānyāntaḥ*) performing devotion.⁵ In three passages, vii. 28, 2; vii. 70, 5, and x. 89, 16, the *brāhmā* and *brāhmāni*, "prayer" and "prayers," or "hymn" and "hymns," of the rishis are spoken of; and in vii. 22, 9, it is said, "that both the ancient and the recent rishis have generated prayers" (*ye cha pūrve rishayo ye cha nūnāḥ Indra brahmāni janayanta viprāḥ*). In i. 177, 5, we find *brahmāni karoḥ*, "the prayers of the poet." The fact that in various hymns the authors speak of themselves as having received valuable gifts from the princes their patrons, and that they do not there allude to any class of officiating priests as separate from themselves, would also seem to indicate an identity of the poet and priest at that early period.

The term *brahman* must therefore, as we may conclude, have been originally applied (1) to the same persons who are spoken of elsewhere in the hymns as *rishi*, *kavi*, etc., and have denoted devout worshippers and contemplative sages who composed prayers and hymns which they themselves recited in praise of the gods. Afterwards when the ceremonial gradually became more complicated, and a division of sacred functions took place, the word was more ordinarily employed (2) for a minister of public worship, and at length came to signify (3) one particular kind of priest with special duties. I subjoin a translation of the different passages in which the word occurs in the Rig-veda, and I have attempted to classify them according as it seems to bear, in each case, the first, second, or third of the senses just indicated. This, however, is not always an easy task, as in many of these texts there is nothing to fix the meaning of the term with precision, and one signi-

⁵ In another place (x. 96, 5) Indra is said to have been lauded by former worshippers, *pūrvadhīr yājvābhīḥ*, a term usually confined (as *brāhmān* was frequently applied) in after times to the offerers of sacrifice.

fiction easily runs into another, and the same person may be at once the author and the reciter of the hymn.

I. Passages in which *brāhmān* may signify "contemplator, sage, or poet."

(In all these texts I shall leave the word untranslated.)

i. 80, 1. *Itthā hi some id made brahmā chakūra varddhanam* |

"Thus in his exhilaration from soma juice the *brāhmān* has made (or uttered) a magnifying⁶ (hymn)."

i. 164, 34. *Prichhāmi tvā param antam prithivyāḥ prichhāmi yatra bhuvanasya nābhiḥ | prichhāmi tvā vṛishṇo āsvasya retaḥ prichhāmi vāchaḥ pāramāṇi vyoma* | 35. *Iyaṁ veditḥ paro antaḥ prithivyāḥ ayaṁ yajno bhuvanasya nābhiḥ ayaṁ somo vṛishṇo āsvasya reto brahmā ayam vāchaḥ paramāṇi vyoma* |

"I ask thee (what is) the remotest end of the earth; I ask where is the central point of the world; I ask thee (what is) the seed of the vigorous horse; I ask (what is) the highest heaven⁷ of speech. 35. This altar is the remotest end of the earth; this sacrifice is the central point of the world; this soma is the seed of the vigorous horse; this *brāhmān* is the highest heaven of speech."

ii. 12, 6. *Yo radhrasya choditā yaḥ kṛishasya yo brahmaṇo nūdhamānasya kīreḥ* |

"He (Indra) who is the quickener of the sluggish, of the emaciated, of the suppliant *brāhmān* who praises him," etc.

vi. 45, 7. *Brahmāṇam brahma-vāhasam gīrbhāḥ sakhāyam ṛigmiyam | gūṇi na dohaso huve* |

"With hymns I call Indra, the *brāhmān*,—the carrier of prayers (*brāhmā-vāhasam*), the friend who is worthy of praise,—as men do a cow which is to be milked."

vii. 33, 11. *Uta asi Maitravaruṇo Vasishṭha Urvaśyāḥ brahman manaso 'dhi jātāḥ | drapsam skannam brahmaṇā daivyena viśve devāḥ pushkare tvā 'dadanta* |

"And thou, o Vasishṭha, art a son of Mitra and Varuṇa (or a Maitravaruṇa-priest), born, o *brāhmān*, from the soul of Urvaśī. All the

⁶ *Varddhanam* = *vriddhi-karam stotram* (Sūyana).

⁷ Compare R.V. iii. 32, 10; x. 109, 4, below, and the words, the highest heaven of invention."

⁸ Compare R.V. x. 71 and x. 125.

gods placed in the vessel thee, the drop which had fallen through divine contemplation."

viii. 16, 7. *Indro brahmā Indrah ṛishir Indrah puru puruhūtaḥ | mahān mahibhiḥ śachibhiḥ |*

"Indra is a *brāhmān*, Indra is a rishi,⁹ Indra is much and often invoked, great through his mighty powers."

x. 71, 11. (See the translation of the entire hymn below. The sense of *brāhmān* in verse 11 will depend on the meaning assigned to *jāta-vidyā*.)

x. 77, 1. (In this passage, the sense of which is not very clear, the word *brāhmān* appears to be an epithet of the host of Maruts.)

x. 85, 3. *Somam manyate papivān yat sampiṁshanti oshadhim | somam yam brahmāno vidur na tasya aśnāti kaśchana |* 16. *De te chakre Sūrye brahmāno ṛituthā viduḥ | atha ekaṁ chakraṁ yad guhā tad addhātayaḥ id viduḥ |* 34. . . . *Sūryān yo brahmā vidyāt sa id vādhūyam arhati |*

"A man thinks he has drunk soma when they crush the plant (so called). But no one tastes of that which the *brāhmāns* know to be soma (the moon). 16. The *brāhmāns* rightly know, Sūryā, that thou hast two wheels; but it is sages (*addhātayaḥ*) alone who know the one wheel which is hidden. 34. The *brāhmān* who knows Sūryā deserves the bride's garment."¹⁰

x. 107, 6. *Tam eva ṛishiṁ tam u brahmānam āhur yajnanyaṁ sūma-gām uktha-śāsam | sa śukruśya tanvo veda tisraḥ yaḥ prathamō dakṣiṇayā rarādha |*

"They call him a rishi, him a *brāhmān*, reverend, a chanter of Sāma verses (*sūma-gām*), and reciter of *ukthas*,—he knows the three forms of the brilliant (Agni)—the man who first worshipped with a largess."

Even in later times a man belonging to the Kshatriya and Vaiśya castes may perform all the Vedic rites. Any such person, therefore, and consequently a person not a Brāhman might, according to this verse, have been called, though, no doubt, figuratively, a priest (*brahmā*).

⁹ Different deities are called *ṛishi*, *kavi*, etc., in the following texts: v. 29, 1; vi. 14, 2; viii. 6, 41; ix. 96, 18; ix. 107, 7; x. 27, 22; x. 112, 9.

¹⁰ See Dr. Haug's Ait. Br. vol. i. Introduction, p. 20.

x. 117, 7. . . . *Vadun brahmā avadato vaniyan prīnann āpir aprīnantam abhi syāt* |

"A *brāhmān*¹¹ who speaks is more acceptable than one who does not speak: a friend who is liberal excels one who is illiberal."¹²

x. 125, 5. *Yañ kūmaye tañ tam ugrañ kṛiṇoni tam brahmānañ tam ṛishiñ tañ sumedhām* |

"I (says Vāch) make him whom I love formidable, him a *brāhman*, him a rishi, him a sage."

This would seem to prove that sometimes, at least, the *brāhmān* was such not by birth or nature, but by special favour and inspiration of the goddess. In this passage, therefore, the word cannot denote the member of a caste, who would not be dependent on the good will of Vāch for his position.

II. In the passages which follow the word *brāhmān* does not seem to signify so much a "sage or poet," as a "worshipper or priest."

i. 10, 1. *Gāyanti tvā gāyatriṇo archanti arkam arkiṇaḥ | brahmāṇas tvā Satakrato ud vañsam iva yemire* |

"The singers sing thee, the hymnners recite a hymn, the *brāhmāns*, o Satakratu, have raised thee up like a pole."¹³

i. 33, 9. *Amānyamānān abhi manyanūnair nir brahmabhir adhamo dasyum Indra* |

"Thou, Indra, with the believers, didst blow against the unbelievers, with the *brāhmāns* thou didst blow away the Dasyu."¹⁴

i. 101, 5. *Yo viśvasya jagataḥ prānatas patiḥ yo brahmane prathamogāḥ avindat | Indro yo dasyūn adharān avātirat . . .*

"Indra, who is lord of all that moves and breathes, who first found the cows for the *brāhmān*, who hurled down the Dasyu."

i. 108, 7. *Yad Inđrāgnī madathaḥ sve durone yad brahmañi rūjani vā yajatrā | ataḥ pari ṛiṣhañāv ā hi yūtam athā somasya pibatañ sutasya* |

"When, o adorable Indra and Agni, ye are exhilarated in your own

¹¹ The word here seems clearly to indicate an order or profession, as the *silent* priest is still a priest.

¹² See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20. The contexts of the two last passages are given in my article "Miscellaneous Hymns from the R. and A. Vedas," pp. 32 f.

¹³ Compare i. 6, 8; i. 7, 1; viii. 16, 9. See Dr. Haug's remark on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20.

¹⁴ See on this verse the remarks of M. Bréal, Hercule et Cacus, etc. p. 152.

abode, or with a *brāhmān* or a *rājan*,¹⁵ come thence, ye vigorous (deities), and then drink of the poured out soma."¹⁶

i. 158, 6. *Dirghatamāḥ Māmateyo jujurvān daśame yuge | apām arthaṁ yātīnām brahmā bhavati sārathiḥ |*

"Dirghatamas, son of Mamatā, being decrepit in his tenth lustre, (though) a *brāhmān*, becomes the charioteer of (or is borne upon) the waters which are hastening to their goal."

(Professor Aufrecht understands this to mean that Dirghatamas is verging towards his end, and thinks there is a play on the word "charioteer" as an employment not befitting a priest.)

ii. 39, 1. . . . *Ṛṣidhrā iva vṛikṣaṁ nidhimantam aha | brahmāṇā iva vidathe ukthaśāsā . . . |*

"Ye (Aśvins) (cry) like two vultures on a tree which contains their nest; like two *brāhmāns* singing a hymn at a sacrifice."

iv. 50, 7. *Sa id rājā pratijanyāni viśvā śuśmēna tasiḥāv abhi vīryeṇa | Bṛihaspatiṁ yaḥ subhṛitam bibharti valgūyati vandate pūrva-bhājām |*

8. *Sa it kṣeti sudhitaḥ okasi sve tasmai ilā pincate viśvadānīm | tasmai viśaḥ svayam eva namante yasmin brahmā rājani pūrvaḥ eti |* 9. *Apratīto iayati saṁ dhanāni pratijanyāni uta yā sajanyā | avasyave yo varivaḥ kṛiṇoti brahmaṇe rājā tam avanti devāḥ |*

"That king overcomes all hostile powers in force and valour who maintains Bṛihaspati in abundance, who praises and magnifies him as (a deity) enjoying the first distinction. 8. He dwells prosperous in his own palace, to him the earth always yields her increase,"¹⁷ to him the

¹⁵ A distinction of orders or professions appears to be here recognised. But in v. 54, 7, a *rishi* and a *rājan* are distinguished much in the same way as a *brāhmān* and *rājan* are in i. 108, 7: *Sa na jīyate Maruto na hanyate na średhati na vyathate na rishyati | na aśya rāyaḥ upa dasyanti na ūtayaḥ ṛishim vā yaṁ rājānaṁ vā sushūdatha |* "That man, whether rishi or prince, whom ye, o Maruts, support, is neither conquered nor killed, he neither decays nor is distressed, nor is injured; his riches do not decline, nor his supports." Compare v. 14, where it is said: *Yūgaṁ rayim marutaḥ spūṛha-vīraṁ yūyam ṛishim avatha sāma-vipram | yūyam arvantem Bharatūya vōjaṁ yūyaṁ dhattha rājānaṁ śrushṭimantam |* "Ye, o Maruts, give riches with desirable men, ye protect a rishi who is skilled in hymns; ye give a horse and food to Bharata, ye make a king prosperous." In iii. 43, 6, reference is found to Viśvāmitra, or the author, being made by Indra both a prince and a rishi (*kuvid mā gopāṁ karase janasya kuvid rōjānam maghavann ṛijīshin | kuvid mā ṛishim papivūṣaṁ sutasya*).

¹⁶ See on this verse Prof. Benfey's note, *Orient und Occident*, 3, 142.

¹⁷ Compare R.V. v. 37, 4 f.: *Na sa rājā vyathate yasminn Indras tivrām somam pivati go-sakhāyam |* "That king suffers no distress in whose house Indra drinks the pungent soma mixed with milk," etc.

people bow down of themselves,—that king in whose house a *brāhmān* walks first.¹⁸ 9. Unrivalled, he conquers the riches both of his enemies and his kinsmen—the gods preserve the king who bestows wealth on the *brāhmān* who asks his assistance.”¹⁹

iv. 58, 2. *Vayaṁ nāma pra bravāma ghrītasya asmin yajne dhārayāma namobhiḥ | upa brahmā śrinavat śasyamānaṁ chatuḥ-śringo avamīd gau-
raḥ etat |*

“Let us proclaim the name of butter ; let us at this sacrifice hold it (in mind) with prostrations. May the *brāhmān* (Agni?) hear the praise which is chanted. The four-horned bright-coloured (god) has sent this forth.”

v. 29, 3. *Uta brahmāṇo Maruto me asya Indraḥ somasya sushutasya peyāḥ |*

“And, ye Maruts, *brāhmāns*, may Indra drink of this my soma which has been poured out,” etc.

v. 31, 4. *Anavas te ratham āsvāya takṣaḥ Tvashṭā vajram puruhūta dyumantam | brahmāṇaḥ Indram mahayanto arkair avarādhayann Ahaye hantavai u |*

“The men²⁰ have fashioned a car for thy (Indra's) horse, and Tvashṭri a gleaming thunderbolt, o god greatly invoked. The *brāhmāns*, magnifying Indra, have strengthened him for the slaughter of Ahi.”

v. 32, 12. *Evā hi tvām rituthā yātayantam maghā viprebhyo dadatām śrinomi | kiṁ te brahmāṇo grīhate sakhāyo ye tvāyāḥ nidadkuḥ kāmam Indra |*

“I hear of thee thus rightly prospering, and bestowing wealth on, the sages (*viprebhyaḥ*). What, o Indra, do the *brāhmāns*, thy friends, who have reposed their wishes on thee, obtain?”

v. 40, 8. *Grārṇo brahmā yuyjānaḥ saparyan kīrīnā devān namasā upasīkshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakṣur ā adhāt Svarbhānor āpa mā-
yāḥ aghukṣat |*

“Applying the stones (for pressing soma), performing worship, honouring the gods with praise and obeisance, the *brāhmān* Atri placed

¹⁸ Compare viii. 69, 4 ; x. 39, 11 ; x. 107, 5 ; and the word *purohita*, used of a ministering priest as one placed in front. Prof. Aufrecht, however, would translate the last words, “under whose rule the priest receives the first or principal portion.”

¹⁹ See on this passage Roth's article, “On Brahma and the Brāhmāns,” Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. i. 77 ff. See also Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 26.

²⁰ Are the R̥ibhus intended ?

the eye of the sun in the sky, and swept away the magical arts of Svarbhānu."

vii. 7, 5. *Asādi vrito vahnir ājaganvān Agnir brahmā nṛi-shadane vidharttā* |

"The chosen bearer (of oblations), Agni, the *brāhmān*, having arrived, has sat down in a mortal's abode, the upholder."

vii. 42, 1. *Pra brāhmāno Angiraso nakshanta* |

"The *brāhmāns*, the Angirases, have arrived," etc.

viii. 7, 20. *Kva nūnaṁ sudānavo madatha vṛikta-barhiṣhaḥ* | *brahmā ko vaḥ saparyati* |

"Where now, bountiful (Maruts), are ye exhilarated, with the sacrificial grass spread beneath you? What *brāhmān* is serving you?"

viii. 17, 2. *Ā tvā brahma-yujā harī vahatām Indra keśinā* | *upa brahmānī naḥ śṛṇu* | 3. *Brahmāṇas tvā vayaṁ yujā somapāṁ Indra somīnaḥ* | *sutāvanto havāmahe* |

"Thy tawny steeds with flowing manes, yoked by prayer (*brahma-yujā*),²¹ bring thee hither, Indra; listen to our prayers (*brāhmānī*). 3. We *brāhmāns*, offerers of soma, bringing oblations, continually invoke the drinker of soma."

viii. 31, 1. *Yo yajāti yajāte it sunavach cha pachāti cha* | *brahmā id Indrasya chākanat* |

"That *brāhmān* is beloved of Indra who worships, sacrifices, pours out libations, and cooks offerings."

viii. 32, 16. *Na nūnam brahmaṇām ṛṇam prāsūnām asti sunvatām* | *na somo apratū pape* |

"There is not now any debt due by the active *brāhmāns* who pour out libations. Soma has not been drunk without an equivalent."

viii. 33, 19. *Adhaḥ paśyasva mā upari santaram pādakau hara* | *mā te kasa-plakau dṛṣān strī hi brahmā babhūvitha* |

"Look downward, not upward; keep thy feet close together; let them not see those parts which should be covered; thou, a *brāhmān*, hast become a woman."

viii. 45, 39. *Ā te etā vacho-yujā harī grībhṇe sumadrathā* | *yad im brahmabhyaḥ id dadat* |

²¹ Compare viii. 45, 39, below: *brahma-yuj* occurs also in i. 177, 2; iii. 35, 4; viii. 1, 24; viii. 2, 27.

250 MUTUAL RELATIONS OF THE DIFFERENT CLASSES OF SOCIETY

"I seize these thy tawny steeds, yoked by our hymn (*vacho-yujā*)²² to a splendid chariot, since thou didst give (wealth) to the *brāhmāns*.

viii. 53, 7. *Kva sya vṛishabho yuvā tuvi-grīvo anānataḥ | brāhmā kas taṁ saparyati |*

"Where is that vigorous, youthful, large-necked, unconquered (Indra)? What *brāhmān* serves him?

viii. 66, 5. *Abhi Gandharvam atṛinaḍ abudhnesu rajassu ā | Indro brahmabhyāḥ id vridhe |*

"Indra clove the Gandharva in the bottomless mists, for the prosperity of the *brāhmāns*."

viii. 81, 30. *Mo su brāhmā iva tandrayur bhuvo vājūnām pate | matsva sutasya gomataḥ |*

"Be not, o lord of riches (Indra), sluggish like a *brāhmān*.²³ Be exhilarated by the libation mixed with milk."

viii. 85, 5. *Ā yad vajram bāhvor Indra dhatse maḍa-chyutam Ahave hantavai u | pra parvatāḥ anavanta pra brāhmāno abhinakshanta Indram |*

"When, Indra, thou seizest in thine arms the thunderbolt which brings down pride, in order to slay Ahi, the (aerial) hills and the cows utter their voice, and the *brāhmāns* draw near to thee."

ix. 96, 6. *Brahmā devānām padaviḥ kavīnām rishir viprāṇām mahisho mṛigānām | śyeno gridhrāṇām svadhitir vanānām somaḥ pavitram ati eti rebhan |*

"Soma, resounding, overflows the filter, he who is a *brāhmān* among the gods, a leader among poets, a rishi among the wise, a buffalo among wild beasts, a falcon among kites, an axe among the woods."

ix. 112, 1. *Nānānām vai u dhiyo vi vratāni janānām | takṣhā rish-ṭaṁ rutam bhishag brahmā sunvantam ichhati.*

"Various are the thoughts and endeavours of us different men. The carpenter seeks something broken, the doctor a patient, the *brāhmān* some one to offer libations."²⁴

²² Compare viii. 87, 9, *yunjanti harī ishirasya gūthayā urau rathe uruyuge | Indra-vāhā vachoyujā*; i. 7, 2, *vachoyujā*; i. 14, 6, *manoyujā*; vi. 49, 5, *rathe . . . manasā yujīnaḥ*.

²³ Dr. Haug (Intro. to Ait. Br. p. 20) refers to Ait. Br. v. 34, as illustrating this reproach. See p. 376 of his translation. This verse clearly shows that the priests formed a professional body.

²⁴ This verse also distinctly proves that the priesthood already formed a profession. Verse 3 of the same hymn is as follows: "I am a poet, my father a physician, my

ix. 113, 6. *Yatra brahmā pavamāna chhandasyām vūchañ vadan | grāvñā some mahīyate somena ānandañ janayann Indrāya Indo pari srava |*

"O pure Soma, in the place where the *brāhmān*, uttering a metrical hymn, is exalted at the soma sacrifice through (the sound of) the crushing-stone, producing pleasure with soma, o Indu (Soma) flow for Indra."

x. 28, 11. *Tebhyo godhā ayathañ karshad etad ye brahmanāḥ pratipīyanti annatḥ | sime ukshñāḥ avasrīṣṭān adanti svayam balāni tanvaḥ śrīṇānāḥ |* (The word *brahmanāḥ* occurs in this verse, but I am unable to offer any translation, as the sense is not clear.)

x. 71, 11. (See translation of this verse below, where the entire hymn is given.)

x. 85, 29. *Parā dehi śūmulyam brahmanbhyo vi bhaja vasu | . . . 35. Sūryāyāḥ paśya rūpāni tani brahmā tu sundhati |*

"Put away that which requires expiation (?). Distribute money to the *brāhmāns*. . . . 35. Behold the forms of Sūryā. But the *brāhmān* purifies them."

x. 141, 3. *Somañ rājānam avase Agniñ gīrbhir havāmahe | Ādityān Vishṇuñ Sūryam brahmānañ cha Brihaspatiṃ |*

"With hymns we invoke to our aid king Soma, Agni, the Adityas, Vishṇu, Sūrya, and Brihaspati, the *brāhmān*."

III. In the following passages the word *brāhmān* appears to designate the special class of priest so called, in contradistinction to *hotri*, *udgātṛi*, and *adhvaryu*.

ii. 1, 2 (= x. 91, 10). *Tava Agne hotrañ tava potraṃ ritviyañ tava neshṭrañ tvam id agniḥ ritūyataḥ | tava praśūstrañ team adhvaretyasi brahmā cha asi grihapatiś cha no dame | 2. Tvam Agne Indro vṛishabhāḥ satām asi tvam Vishṇur urugāyo namasyaḥ | tvam brahmā rayivīd Brahmanaspati team vidharttaḥ sachase purandhyā |*

"Thine, Agni, is the office of *hotri*, thine the regulated function of *potri*, thine the office of *neshṭri*, thou art the *agnidh* of the pious man, thine is the function of *praśāstṛi*, thou actest as *adhvaryu*, thou art the *brāhmān*, and the lord of the house in our abode. 2. Thou, Agni, art Indra, the chief of the holy, thou art Vishṇu, the wide-stepping, the

mother a grinder of corn" (*kūrur ahoñ tato bhishag upala-prakṣhiñi nānā*). Unfortunately there is nothing further said which could throw light on the relations in which the different professions and classes of society stood to each other.

adorable, thou, o Brahmanaspati, art the *brāhmān*, the possessor of wealth, thou, o sustainer, art associated with the ceremonial."

iv. 9, 3. *Sa sadma pari nīyate hotā mandro divishṭishu | uta potā nī śhidati |* 4. *Uta gnā Agnir adhware uta grihapatir dams | uta brāhmā nī śhidati |*

"He (Agni) is led round the house, a joyous *hotri* at the ceremonies, and sits a *potri*. 4. And Agni is a wife (*i.e.* a mistress of the house) at the sacrifice, and the master of the house in our abode, and he sits a *brāhmān*."

x. 52, 2. *Ahañ hotā nī asīdañ yajīyān viśve devāḥ maruto mā junanti | ahar ahar Aśvinā ādhvaryavañ vām brāhmā samid bhavati sū ahutir vām |*

(Agni says) "I have sat down an adorable *hotri*; all the gods, the Maruts, stimulate me. Day by day, ye Aśvins, I have acted as your *adhvaryu*; the *brāhmān* is he who kindles the fire: this is your invocation."

I shall now bring forward the whole of the texts in which the word *brāhmāna*, which, no doubt, originally meant a son, or descendant, of a *brāhmān*, occurs in the Rig-veda.²⁵ They are the following:

i. 164, 45. *Chatvāri vāk parimitā padāni tāni vidur brāhmaṇāḥ ye manīṣhīṇāḥ | guhā trīṇi nihitā na ingayanti turīyam vācho manushyāḥ vadanti |*

"Speech consists of four defined grades. These are known by those *brāhmans* who are wise. They do not reveal the three which are esoteric. Men speak the fourth grade of speech." •

This text is quoted and commented upon in Nirukta xiii. 9.

vi. 75, 10. *Brāhmaṇāsaḥ pitarāḥ somyāsaḥ śive no dyāvā-prithivī ane-hasā | Pūshā naḥ pātu duriṭād ṛitāvridhaḥ . . . |*

"May the *brāhma*n fathers, drinkers of soma, may the auspicious, the sinless, heaven and earth, may Pūshan, preserve us, who prosper by righteousness, from evil, etc."

²⁵ There are two more texts in which the word *brāhmaṇa* is found, viz. i. 15, 5, and ii. 36, 5, on which see the following note. The word *brahmaputra* (compare Aśv. S' S. ii. 18, 13) "son of a brahman," is found in ii. 43, 2: *Udgātā iva śakune sūma gāyasi brāhmā-putraḥ iva savaneshu śāmsasi |* "Thou, o bird, singest a sūma verse like an *udgātri*; thou singest praises like the son of a *brāhmān* at the libations." (Ind. Stud. ix. 342 ff.) *Vipra*, used in later Sanskrit as synonymous with *Brāhma*n, has in the R.V. the sense of "wise," "sage" assigned by Nigh. 3, 15 (= *medhāvi-nāma*), and in Nir. 10, 19, = *medhāvīnaḥ*. It is often applied as an epithet to the gods.

vii. 103, 1 (= Nirukta 9, 6). *Saṁvatsaram śaśayānāḥ brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chārināḥ | vācham Parjanya-jinvitām pra maṇḍūkāḥ avādishuḥ . . . | 7. Brāhmaṇāso atirātre na some saro na pūrnam abhito vadan-taḥ | saṁvatsarasya tad ahaḥ pari śṣṭha yad maṇḍūkāḥ prāvṛishinam babhūva | 8. Brāhmaṇāsaḥ somino vācham akrata brahma kṛiṇvantaḥ parivatsarinam | adhvaryavo gharmināḥ sisavidūnāḥ āvir bhavanti guhyā na ke chit |*

“After lying quiet for a year, these rite-fulfilling *brāhmans*²⁶ the frogs have (now) uttered their voice, which has been inspired by Parjanya . . . 7. Like *brāhmans* at the Atirātra soma rite, like (those *brāhmans*) speaking round about the full pond (or soma-bowl²⁷), you, frogs, surround (the pond) on this day of the year, which is that of the autumnal rains. 8. These soma-offering *brāhmans* (the frogs) have uttered their voice, performing their annual devotion (*brahma*); these adhvaryu priests sweating with their boiled oblations (or in the hot season) come forth from their retreats like persons who have been concealed.”

x. 16, 6. *Yat te kṛishṇaḥ śakunaḥ ātutoda pipilāḥ sarpaḥ uta vā śvā-vadāḥ | Agniḥ tad viśvād agadām karotu Somaś cha yo brāhmaṇān āviveśa |*

“Whatever part of thee any black bird, or ant, or serpent, or wild beast has mutilated, may Agni cure thee of all that, and Soma who has entered into the *brāhmans*.”²⁸

²⁶ In the Nighantus, iii. 13, these words *brāhmaṇāḥ vrata-chārināḥ* are referred to as conveying the sense of a simile, though they are unaccompanied by a particle of similitude. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 126, Roth thus remarks on this passage: “This is the only place in the first nine mandalas of the R.V. in which the word *Brāhmaṇa* is found with its later sense, whilst the tenth mandala offers a number of instances. This is one of the proofs that many of the hymns in this book were composed considerably later (than the rest of the R.V.). The word *brāhmaṇa* has another signification in i. 15, 5; ii. 36, 5; and vi. 75, 10.” (In the first of these texts, Roth assigns to the word the sense of the Brāhmaṇa’s soma-vessel. See his Lexicon, s.v. It does not appear what meaning he would give to the word in vi. 75, 10. He has in this passage overlooked R.V. i. 164, 45, which, however, is duly adduced in his Lexicon). See Wilson’s translation of the hymn; as also Müller’s, in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 494 f.

²⁷ *Saras*. See R.V. viii. 66, 4, quoted in Nirukta, v. 11, where Yāska says, “The ritualists inform us that at the mid-day oblation there are thirty *uktha* platters destined for one deity, which are then drunk at one draught. These are here called *saras*.” (Compare Roth’s Illustrations on the passage. See also R.V. vi. 17, 11, and viii. 7, 10, with Sāyaṇa’s explanations of all three passages).

²⁸ Compare A.V. vii. 115, 1 f.; xii. 5, 6.

x. 71, 1.²⁹ *Bṛihaspate prathamam vācho agraṃ yat prairata nāmadheyaṃ dadhānāḥ | yad eṣhām śreṣṭhāṃ yad aripṛam aṣīt prenū tad eṣhām nihitāṃ guhā āviḥ |* 2. (= Nirukta iv. 10) *Saktum iva titaunā punanto yatra dhīrāḥ manasā vācham akrata | atra sakhūyaḥ sakhyaṇi jūnate bhadra eṣhām lakṣmīr nihitā adhi vāchi |* 3. *Yajñena vāchaḥ padavīyam āyan tām anv avindann rishishu pravishṭam | tām ābhṛitya vi adadhuḥ purutrā tām sapta rebhūḥ abhi saṃ navanto |* 4. (= Nir. i. 19) *Uta tvaḥ paśyan na dadarśa vācham uta tvaḥ śṛiṇvan na śṛiṇoti enām | uto tvasmai tanvaṃ vi sasre jāyā iva patye usati surāsāḥ |* 5. (= Nir. i. 20) *Uta tvaṃ sakhye sthirapītam āhur na enām hinvanty api vājīneshu | adhenvā charati māyayā eṣha vācham śuśruvān aphalām apushpām |* 6. *Yas tityāja sacchi-vidāṃ sakhūyaṃ na tasya vāchi api bhūgo asti | yad im śṛiṇoti alakaṃ śṛiṇoti na hi praveda sukrītasya panthām |* 7. *Akṣaṇvantaḥ karnavantaḥ sakhūyo manojaveshu asaṃāḥ babhūruḥ | ādaghnūsaḥ upakakṣhūsaḥ u tve hradāḥ iva snātvaḥ u tve dadṛiṣre |* 8. (= Nir. xiii. 13) *Irīdā tashṭeshu manaso javeshu yad brāhmaṇāḥ saṃyajante sakhūyaḥ | atra aha tvaṃ vi jahur vedyābhir ohabrahmaṇo vi charanti u tve |* 9. *Ime ye na arvūṇ na paraś charanti na brāhmaṇāso na sute-karāsaḥ | te ete vācham abhipadya pāpayā sṛiṣe tantraṃ tanvate aprajajnyayaḥ |* 10. *Sarve nandanti yaśasā ūgatena sabhā-sahena sakhyaḥ sakhūyaḥ | kilbiṣa-sprīṭ pitu-śaṇīr hi eṣhām arāṃ hito bhavati vājīnāya |* 11. (= Nir. i. 8) *Ṛichām tvaḥ poṣham āste pupuṣhvān gāyatraṃ tvo gāyati śakvarīshu | brahmā tvo vadati jāta-vidyām yajnasya mātṛām vi mīmīte u tvaḥ |*

“When, o Bṛihaspati, men first sent forth the earliest utterance of speech, giving a name (to things), then all that was treasured within them, most excellent and pure, was disclosed through love. 2. Wherever the wise,—as if cleansing meal with a sieve,—have uttered speech with intelligence, there friends recognize acts of friendliness; good fortune dwells in their speech.³⁰ 3. Through sacrifice they came upon

²⁹ I cannot pretend that I am satisfied with some parts of the translation I have attempted of this very difficult hymn; but I give it such as it is, as the interpretation of the Vedic poems is still to a certain extent tentative. Verses 4 and 5 are explained in Śāyana's Introduction to the Rīg-veda, pp. 30 f. of Müller's edition. I am indebted here, as elsewhere, to Prof. Aufrecht for his suggestions.

³⁰ I quote here, as somewhat akin to this hymn, another from the A.V. vi. 108, being a prayer for wisdom or intelligence: 1. *Tvaṃ no medhe prathamā gobhīr as'vebhīr ā gahi | tvaṃ sūryasya rātmibhis tvaṃ no aśi yajniyā |* 2. *Medhām aham prathamām*

the track of speech, and found her entered into the rishis. Taking, they divided her into many parts :⁸¹ the seven poets celebrate her in concert. 4. And one man, seeing, sees not speech, and another, hearing, hears her not ;⁸² while to a third she discloses her form, as a loving well-dressed wife does to her husband. 5. They say that one man has a sure defence in (her⁸³) friendship ; he is not overcome even in the conflicts (of discussion). But that person consorts with a barren delusion who has listened to speech without fruit or flower. 6. He who abandons a friend who appreciates friendship, has no portion whatever in speech. All that he hears, he hears in vain, for he knows not the path of righteousness. 7. Friends gifted both with eyes and ears have proved unequal in mental efforts. Some have been (as waters) reaching to the face or armpit, while others have been seen like ponds in which one might bathe. 8. When *brāhmans* who are friends strive (?) together in efforts of the mind produced by the heart,⁸⁴ they leave one man behind through their acquirements, whilst others walk about boasting to be *brāhmāṇas*. (This is the sense Professor Aufrecht suggests for the word *ohabrahmāṇaḥ*. Professor Roth *s.v.* thinks it may mean "real priests." The author of Nirukta xiii. 13, explains it as meaning "reasoning priests," or "those of whom reasoning is the sacred science.") 9. The men who range neither near nor far, who are neither (reflecting) *brāhmans* nor yet pious worshippers at libations,—these, having acquired speech, frame their web imperfectly, (like) female

brahmaṇvatīm brahma-jūtām ṛishishṭutūm | prapītūm brahmachūribhir devānūm avase huve | 3. *Yām medhūm Rībhavo vidur yām medhūm asurāḥ viduḥ | ṛishayo bhadrām medhām yām vidus tām mayy ā veśayāmasi |* 4. *Yām ṛishayo bhūta-kṛito medhām medhāvīno viduḥ | tayā mām adya medhayā Agne medhāvinām kṛiṇu |* 5. *Medhūm sūyam medhūm prātār medhūm madhyandinam pari | medhūm sūryasya rāśmibhir vachasā vesa-yāmahe* 1. "Come to us, wisdom, the first, with cows and horses ; (come) thou with the rays of the sun ; thou art to us an object of worship. 2. To (obtain) the succour of the gods, I invoke wisdom the first, full of prayer, inspired by prayer, praised by rishis, imbibed by Brahmachārins. 3 We introduce within me that wisdom which Rībhus know, that wisdom which divine beings (*asurāḥ*) know, that excellent wisdom which rishis know. 4. Make me, o Agni, wise to-day with that wisdom which the wise rishis—the makers of things existing—know. 5. We introduce wisdom in the evening, wisdom in the morning, wisdom at noon, wisdom with the rays of the sun, and with speech" (*vachasā*). Regarding the *ṛishayo bhūtakṛitāḥ* see above, p. 37, note.

⁸¹ Compare x. 125, 3 ; i. 164, 45 ; (x. 90, 11) ; and A.V. xii. 1, 45.

⁸² Compare Isaiah vi. 9, 10 ; and St. Matthew xiii. 14, 15.

⁸³ *Vāk-sakhye*, Yūska.

⁸⁴ Compare i. 171, 2 ; ii. 35, 2 ; vi. 16, 47.

weavers,³⁵ being destitute of skill. 10. All friends rejoice at the arrival of a renowned friend who rules the assembly; for such a one, repelling evil, and bestowing nourishment upon them, is thoroughly prepared for the conflict (of discussion). 11. One man possesses a store of verses (*richām*); a second sings a hymn (*gāyatra*) during (the chanting of) the *śakraris*; one who is a *brāhmān* declares the science of being (*jāta-vidyām*), whilst another prescribes the order of the ceremonial.”³⁶

R V. x. 88, 19 (= Nir. vii. 31). *Yāvan-mātram ushaso na pratikañ suparnyo vasate Mātariśvaḥ | tāvad dadhāti upa yajnam āyan brāhmaṇo hotur avaro nishīdan |*

“As long as the fair-winged Dawns do not array themselves in light, o Mātariśvan, so long the *brāhmaṇ* coming to the sacrifice, keeps (the fire), sitting below the hotṛi-priest.”

(See Professor Roth's translation of this verse in his *Illustrations of the Nirukta*, p. 113).

x. 90, 11 (= A.V. xix. 5, 6; Vaj. S. xxxi.). See above, pp. 8–15.

x. 97, 22. *Oshadhayaḥ saṁvadante Somena saha rājñā | yasmai kṛiṇoti brāhmaṇas tañ rājan parayāmasi |*

“The plants converse with king Soma,³⁷ (and say), for whomsoever a *brāhmaṇ* acts (*kṛiṇoti*, officiates), him, o king, we deliver.”

x. 109, 1. *Te 'evadan prathamāḥ brahma-kilbishe akūpāraḥ salilo Mātariśvā | vīḷuharās tapa ugro mayobhūr āpo devīr prathamajāḥ ṛitena | Soma rājā prathamō brahma-jyān punaḥ prāyachhad ahṛiṇiyamānaḥ | anvartitū Varuṇo Mitraḥ āsīd Agnir hotū hastagṛihya nināya | 3. Hastena eva grāhyaḥ ādhir asyāḥ “brahma-jyā iyam” iti cha id avochan | na dātāya prahye tasthe eshū tathā rāshtrañ gupitañ kshattriyaśya | 4. Devāḥ etasyām avadanta pūrve sapta ṛishayaś tapase ye nisheduḥ | bhīmā jyāu brāhmaṇasya upanītā durdhām dadhāti parama vyoman |*

³⁵ Such is the sense which Prof. Aufrecht thinks may, with probability, be assigned to *sirīś*, a word which occurs only here.

³⁶ According to Yaska (Nir. i. 8), these four persons are respectively the *hotṛi*, *udgātṛi*, *brahmaṇ*, and *adhvaryu* priests. The *brahmaṇ*, he says, being possessed of all science, ought to know everything; and gives utterance to his knowledge as occasion arises for it (*jāte jāte*). See Dr. Haug's remarks on this verse, Ait. Br. Introd. p. 20.

³⁷ Compare *oshadhīḥ Soma-rājñūḥ*, “the plants whose king is Soma,” in verses 18 and 19 of this hymn.

5. *Brahmachāri charati verishad vishah sa devānām bhavati ekam angam | tena jūyām anv avindad Bṛihaspatiḥ Somena nītām juhvaṁ na devāḥ |*
6. *Punar vai devāḥ adaduh punar manushyāḥ uta | rājānāḥ satyaṁ kṛinvānāḥ brahma-jūyām punar daduh |* 7. *Punardāya brahma-jūyām kṛitvī devair nīlībīṣam | ūjam pṛithivyāḥ bhaktvāya urugāyam upāsate |*

"These (deities), the boundless, liquid Mātariśvan (Air), the fiercely-flaming, ardently-burning, beneficent (Fire), and the divine primeval Waters, first through righteousness exclaimed against the outrage on a *brāhmān*. 2. King Soma,³⁸ unenvious, first gave back the *brāhmān*'s wife; Varuna and Mitra were the inviters; Agni, the invoker, brought her, taking her hand. 3. When restored, she had to be received back by the hand, and they then proclaimed aloud, 'This is the *brāhmān*'s wife;' she was not committed to a messenger to be sent:—in this way it is that the kingdom of a ruler (or Kshatriya) remains secured to him.³⁹ 4. Those ancient deities, the Rishis, who sat down to perform austerities, spoke thus of her, 'Terrible is the wife of the *brāhmān*; when approached, she plants confusion in the highest heaven.'⁴⁰ 5. The Brahmachārin⁴¹ (religious student) continues to perform observances. He becomes one member⁴² of the gods. Through him Bṛihaspati obtained his wife, as the gods obtained the ladle which was brought by Soma. 6. The gods gave her back, and men gave her back; kings, performing righteousness, gave back the *brāhmān*'s wife. 7. Giving back the *brāhmān*'s wife, delivering themselves from sin against the gods, (these kings) enjoy the abundance of the earth, and possess a free range of movement."

³⁸ Compare R.V. x. 85, 39 ff. (=A.V. xiv. 2, 2 ff.) *Punaḥ patnīm Agnir adūd āyushā saha varchasā | dirghāyur asyāḥ yaḥ patir jīvīti śaradāḥ śatam |* 40. *Somāḥ prathamō vivide Gandharvō vivide uttarāḥ* (the A.V. reads : *Somasya jūyā prathamam Gandharvas te 'paraḥ patih*) | *tṛtīyo Ayush te patis turīyas te manushyanjāḥ | Somo dadad Gandharvāya Gandharvo dadad Agnaye | rogyūṁ cha putrāṁsi chādūd Agnir mahyam atho imūm |* "Agni gave back the wife with life and splendour : may he who is her husband live to an old age of 100 years! Soma was thy first, the Gandharva was thy second, Agni thy third, husband ; thy fourth is one of human birth. Soma gave her to the Gandharva, the Gandharva to Agni, Agni gave me wealth and sons, and then this woman." The idea contained in this passage may possibly be referred to in the verse before us (x. 109, 2).

³⁹ I am indebted to Prof. Aufrecht for this explanation of the verse.

⁴⁰ See R.V. i. 164, 34, 35, above.

⁴¹ See my paper on the Progress of the Vedic Religion, in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 374 ff. .

⁴² See A.V. x. 7, 1 ff.; 9, 26.

This hymn is repeated in the Atharva-veda with the addition of ten more verses which I shall quote in the next section.

I shall here state summarily the remarks suggested by a perusal of the texts which I have quoted, and the conclusions which they appear to authorize regarding the relation of the Vedic poets and priests to the other classes of the Indian community at the time when the earlier hymns of the Rig-veda were composed.

First: Except in the Purusha Sūkta (translated above in pp. 9 ff.) there is no distinct reference in the hymns to any recognised system of four castes.

Second: In one text (iii. 34, 9, see p. 176) where mention is made of the Āryan "colour," or "race," all the upper classes of the Indian community are comprehended under one designation, as the Kshattriyas and Vaiśyas as well as the Brāhmanas were always in after-times regarded as Āryas (see above, p. 176.)

Third: The term *brāhmāna* occurs only in eight hymns of the Rig-veda, besides the Purusha Sūkta, whilst *brāhmān* occurs in forty-six. The former of these words could not therefore have been in common use at the time when the greater part of the hymns were composed. The term *rājanya* is found only in the Purusha Sūkta; and *kshattriya* in the sense of a person belonging to a royal family, a noble, occurs only in a few places, such as x. 109, 3.⁴⁸ The terms Vaiśya and Sūdra are only found in the Purusha Sūkta, although *viś*, from which the former is derived, is of frequent occurrence in the sense of "people" (see p. 14, above).

Fourth: The word *brāhmān*, as we have seen, appears to have had at first the sense of "sage," "poet;" next, that of "officiating priest;" and ultimately that of a "special description of priest."

Fifth: In some of the texts which have been quoted (particularly i. 108, 7; iv. 50, 8 f.; viii. 7, 20; viii. 45, 39; viii. 53, 7; viii. 81, 30; ix. 112, 1; x. 85, 29) *brāhmān* seems to designate a "priest by profession."

Sixth: In other places the word seems rather to imply something peculiar to the individual, and to denote a person distinguished for

⁴⁸ This text is quoted above. In vii. 104, 13, Kshattriya is perhaps a neuter substantive: *Na vai u Somo vṛjīnam hinoti na kshattriyam mithuyā dhārayantam* | "Soma does not prosper the sinner, nor the man who wields royal power deceitfully."

genius or virtue (x. 107, 6), or elected by special divine favour to receive the gift of inspiration (x. 125, 5).

Seventh : *Brāhmāna* appears to be equivalent to *brāhmā-putra*, "the son of a *brāhman*" (which, as we have seen, occurs in ii. 43, 2), and the employment of such a term seems necessarily to presuppose that, at the time when it began to become current, the function of a *brāhman*, the priesthood, had already become a profession.

The Rig-veda Sanhitā contains a considerable number of texts in which the large gifts of different kinds bestowed by different princes on the authors of the hymns are specified, and these instances of bounty are eulogized.

Of these passages R.V. i. 125 ; i. 126 ; v. 27 ; v. 30, 12 ff. ; v. 61, 10 ; vi. 27, 8 ; vi. 45, 31 ff. ; vi. 47, 22 ff. may be consulted in Prof. Wilson's translation ; and a version of R.V. x. 107, which contains a general encomium on liberality will be found in the article entitled "Miscellaneous Hymns from the Rig- and Atharva-vedas," in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, p. 32 f. The following further texts, which describe the presents given by different princes to the rishis, viz. vii. 18, 22 ff. ; viii. 3, 21 ff. ; viii. 4, 19 ff. ; viii. 5, 37 ff. ; viii. 6, 46 ff. ; viii. 19, 36 f. ; viii. 21, 17 f. ; viii. 24, 29 f. ; viii. 46, 21 ff. ; viii. 54, 10 ff. ; viii. 57, 14 ff. ; x. 33, 4 ff. ; x. 62, 6 ff. ; x. 93, 14 f. are translated in the article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian Society in the Vedic age" in the same Journal for 1866, pp. 272 ff., to which I refer.

On the other hand the hymns of the Rig-veda contain numerous references to persons who, if not hostile, were at least indifferent and inattentive to the system of worship which the rishis professed and inculcated ; and niggardly in their offerings to the gods and their gifts to the priests. The article to which I have just referred contains (pp. 286 ff.) a long list of such passages, from which I extract the following :

i. 84, 7. *Yāḥ ekaḥ id vīdayate vasu marttāya dāśushe | īśāno apratiśh-kutaḥ Indro anga |* 8. *Kadā martyam arādhasam padā kshumpam iva sphurāt | kadā naḥ śuśruvad girāḥ Indro anga |*

"Indra, who alone distributes riches to the sacrificing mortal, is lord and irresistible. 8. When will Indra crush the illiberal man like a bush with his foot? when will he hear our hymns?"

i. 101, 4. . . . *vīṣoś chid Indro yo asunvato vadhaḥ* . . . |

"Indra, who is the slayer of him, however strong, who offers no libations."

i. 122, 9. *Jano yo Mitra-varuṇāv abhidhrug apo na vām sunoti akshṇa-yādhruk* | *svayaṁ sa yakshmaṁ hṛidaye ni dhatte āpa yad im hotrābhir ṛitāvā* |

"The hostile man, the malicious enemy, who pours out no libations to you, o Mitra and Varuṇa, plants fever in his own heart, when the pious man has by his offerings obtained (your blessing)."

i. 125, 7. *Mā prīnanto duritam enaḥ ā aran mā jūrishuḥ sūrayaḥ svratāsaḥ* | *anyas teshāṁ paridhrī astu kaś chid aprīnantam abhi saṁ yantu śokāḥ* |

"Let not the liberal suffer evil or calamity; let not devout sages decay; let them have some further term; let griefs befall the illiberal (*aprīnantam*)."

i. 182, 3. *Kim atra dasrā kṛiṇuthaḥ kim āsāthe jano yaḥ kaśchid ahavir mahiyate* | *ati kramiṣṭam juratam paṇer asum jyotir vipṛāya kṛiṇutaṁ vachasyave* |

"What do ye here, o powerful (Aśvins)? why do ye sit (in the house of) a man who offers no oblation, and (yet) is honoured? Assail, wear away the breath of the niggard, and create light for the sage who desires to extol you."

ii. 23, 4. *Sumātibhir nayasi trāyase janaṁ yas tubhyaṁ dāsād na tam aṁho aśnavat* | *brahma-dvishas tapano manyumī* asi Bṛihaspate mahi tat te mahitvanam* |

"By thy wise leadings thou guidest and protectest the man who worships thee; no calamity can assail him. Thou art the vexer of him who hates devotion (*brahma-dvishaḥ*), and the queller of his wrath: this, o Bṛihaspati, is thy great glory."

iv. 25, 6. . . . *na asushver āpir na sakhā na jāmīr dushprāvyo avahantā id avāchaḥ* | 7. *Na revatā paṇinā sakhyam Indro asunvatā suta-pāḥ saṁ grīṇite* | *ā aya vedaḥ khidati hanti nagnaṁ vi sushvaye paktaye kevalo 'bhūt* |

"Indra is not the relation or friend or kinsman of the man who offers no libations; he is the destroyer of the prostrate irreligious man. 7. Indra, the soma-drinker, accepts not friendship with the wealthy niggard who makes no soma-libations; but robs him of his riches, and

slays him when stripped bare, whilst he is the exclusive patron of the man who pours out soma and cooks oblations."

vi. 44, 11. . . . *jahi asushvīn pra vṛiḥa aprīnataḥ* |

"Slay (o Indra) those who offer no libations; root out the illiberal."

viii. 53, 1. *Ut tvā mandantu stomāḥ kṛiṇushva rādho adriṇaḥ* | *ava brahma-dvisho jahi* | *pādā pañin arādhaso ni badhasva mahān asi* | *na hi tvā kaśchana prati* |

"Let our hymns gladden thee; give us wealth, o thunderer. Slay the haters of devotion. 2. Crush with thy foot the niggards who bestow nothing. Thou art great; no one is comparable to thee."

It seems evident, then, from these texts (and there are many more of the same tenor), that the irreligious man, the *parcus deorum cultor et infrequens*, was by no means a rare character among the Āryas of the Vedic age, and that the priests often found no little difficulty in drawing forth the liberality of their contemporaries towards themselves and in enforcing a due regard to the ceremonials of devotion. And if we consider, on the other hand, that the encomiums on the liberality of different princes to the poets and priests which are contained in the passages to which I before adverted, are the production of the class whose pretensions they represent, and whose dignity they exalt, we shall, no doubt, see reason to conclude that the value of the presents bestowed has been enormously exaggerated, and make some deduction from the impression which these texts are calculated to convey of the estimation in which the priests were held at the time when they were composed. But after every allowance has been made for such considerations, and for the state of feeling indicated by the complaints of irreligion and illiberality of which I have cited specimens, it will remain certain that the *brāhmān*, whether we look upon him as a sage and poet, or as an officiating priest, or in both capacities, was regarded with respect and reverence, and even that his presence had begun to be considered as an important condition of the efficacy of the ceremonial. Thus, as we have already seen, in i. 164, 35, the *brāhmān* is described as the highest heaven of "speech;" in x. 107, 6, a liberal patron is called a rishi and a *brāhmān*, as epithets expressive of the most distinguished eulogy; in x. 125, 5, the goddess Vāch is said to make the man who is the object of her special affection a *brāhmān* and a rishi; in vi. 45 7; vii. 7, 5; viii. 16, 7; and ix. 96, 6, the term *brāhmān* is applied

honorifically to the gods Indra, Agni, and Soma; in iv. 50, 8, 9, great prosperity is declared to attend the prince by whom a *brāhman* is employed, honoured, and succoured; and in iii. 53, 9, 12; v. 2, 6; vii. 32, 2, 3, 5; and vii. 83, 4, the highest efficacy is ascribed to the intervention and intercession of this class of functionaries.

Again, whatever exaggeration we may suppose in the texts which eulogize the liberality of princely patrons, in regard to the value of the presents bestowed, there is no reason to doubt that the ministers of public worship, who possessed the gift of expression and of poetry, who were the depositaries of all sacred science, and who were regarded as the channels of access to the gods, would be largely rewarded and honoured.⁴⁴

⁴⁴ It is to be observed that, in these eulogies of liberality, mention is nowhere made of *Brāhman*s as the recipients of the gifts. In two places, viii. 4, 20, and x. 33, 4, a rishi is mentioned as the receiver. In later works, such as the *S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa*, on the contrary, the presents are distinctly connected with *Brāhman*s. Thus it is said in that work, ii. 2, 2, 6: *Dveṣyāḥ vai devāḥ devāḥ aha eva devāḥ atha ye brāhmaṇāḥ susruvāṁso 'nūchūnūs te manushya-devāḥ | teshāṁ deatā vibhaktāḥ eva yajnaḥ āhutaṃ eva devānām dakṣiṇāḥ manushya-devānām brāhmaṇānām susruvāḥ anūchūnānām | āhutiḥ eva devānāṁ prīṇātī dakṣiṇāḥ manushya-devānām brāhmaṇānām susruvāḥ 'nūchūnānām | te enam ubhaye devāḥ prītāḥ sudhāyām dadhātī |* "Two kinds of gods are gods, viz. the gods (proper), whilst those *Brāhman*s who have the Vedic tradition, and are learned, are the human gods. The worship (*yajna*) of these is divided into two kinds. Oblations constitute the worship offered to the gods, and presents (*dakṣiṇā*) that offered to the human gods, the *Brāhman*s, who possess the Vedic tradition and are learned. It is with oblations that a man gratifies the gods, and with presents that he gratifies the human gods, the *Brāhman*s, who possess the Vedic tradition, and are learned. Both these two kinds of gods, when gratified, place him in a state of happiness" (*sudhāyām*); (or "convey him to the heavenly world," as the expression is varied in the parallel passage of the same work, iv. 3, 4, 4). It is similarly said in the *Taitt. Saṁh.* i. 7, 3, 1: *Parokṣhāṁ vai anye devāḥ iṅyante pratyakṣhām anye | yad yajato ye eva devāḥ parokṣhām iṅyante tān eva tad yajati | yad anvāhāryam āharati ete vai devāḥ pratyakṣhām yad brāhmaṇānām tān eva tena prīṇātī | atho dakṣiṇā eva anyā eṣā | atho yajasya eva chhidram apīdadhātī yad vai yajanya kvāram yad vīśiṣṭam tad anvāhāryena anvāharati | tad anvāhāryasya anvāhāryatvam | devadūtāḥ vai ete yad ṛitoṣo yad anvāhāryam āharati devadūtān eva prīṇātī |* "Some gods are worshipped in their absence, and others in their presence. It is to those gods who are worshipped in their absence that the sacrificer offers the oblation which he presents. And it is these gods who are visible, i.e. the *Brāhman*s, whom he gratifies with the *anvāhārya* (present of cooked rice) which he afterwards brings. Now this *anvāhārya* is the present (*dakṣiṇā*) connected with it (the sacrifice). Then he covers over the faults of the sacrifice. Whatever in it is excessive or defective, that he removes by means of the *anvāhārya*. In this consists the nature of that offering. These officiating priests are the messengers of the gods; and it is the messengers of the gods whom the sacrificer gratifies with this *anvāhārya* gift which he presents."

It is further clear, from some of the texts quoted above (ii. 1, 2; iv. 9, 3; x. 52, 2), as well as i. 162, 5, and from the contents of hymns ii. 36; ii. 37; ii. 43; and x. 124, 1,⁴⁵ that in the later part of the Vedic era, to which these productions are probably to be assigned, the ceremonial of worship had become highly developed and complicated, and that different classes of priests were required for its proper celebration.⁴⁶ It is manifest that considerable skill must have been required for the due performance of these several functions; and as such skill could only be acquired by early instruction and by practice, there can be little doubt that the priesthood must at that period have become a regular profession.⁴⁷ The distinction of king or noble and priest appears to be recognized in i. 108, 7, as well as in iv. 50, 8, 9; whilst in v. 47, 7, 14, a similar distinction is made between king and rishi; and it is noticeable that the verse, in other respects nearly identical, with which the 36th and 37th hymns of the eight maṇḍala respectively conclude, ends in the one hymn with the words, "Thou alone, Indra, didst deliver Trasadasyu in the conflict of men, magnifying prayers" (*brahmāṇi vardhayan*); whilst in the other the last words are, "magnifying (royal) powers" (*kshattrāṇi vardhayan*), as if the former contained a reference to the functions of the priest, and the latter to those of the prince. (Compare viii. 35, 16, 17.)

While, however, there thus appears to be every reason for supposing that towards the close of the Vedic period the priesthood had become a profession, the texts which have been quoted, with the exception of the verse in the Puruṣa Sūkta (x. 90, 12), do not contain anything which necessarily implies that the priests formed an exclusive caste, or, at least, a caste separated from all others by insurmountable barriers, as in later times. There is a wide difference between a profession, or even a hereditary order, and a caste in the fully developed Brahmanical sense.

⁴⁵ See also i. 94, 6, where it is said: "Thou (Agni) art an *adhvaryu*, and the earliest *hotṛi*, a *praśāstrī*, a *potṛi*, and by nature a *purohita*. Knowing all the priestly functions (*ārtvijyā*) wise, thou nourishest us," etc. (*tvam adhvaryur uta hotā 'si pūreyoh praśastā potā janushā purohitaḥ | vidvā vidvān ārtijya dhīra pūshyasy Agne ity ādi*).

⁴⁶ See Prof. Müller's remarks on this subject, Ane. Sansk. Lit. pp. 485 ff.; and Dr. Haug's somewhat different view of the same matter in his Introd. to Ait. Br. pp. 11 ff.

⁴⁷ In regard to the great importance and influence of the priests, see Müller's Ane. Sansk. Lit. pp. 485 ff.

Even in countries where the dignity and exclusive prerogatives of the priesthood are most fully recognized (as in Roman Catholic Europe), the clergy form only a profession, and their ranks may be recruited from all sections of the community. So, too, is it in most countries, even with a hereditary nobility. Plebeians may be ennobled at the will of the sovereign. There is, therefore, no difficulty in supposing that in the Vedic era the Indian priesthood—even if we suppose its members to have been for the most part sprung from priestly families—may have often admitted aspirants to the sacerdotal character from other classes of their countrymen. Even the employment of the word *brāhmaṇa* in the Rig-veda does not disprove this. This term, derived from *brahman*, “priest,” need not, as already intimated, signify anything further than the son or descendant of a priest (the word *brahmaputra*, “son of a priest,” is, as we have seen, actually used in one text),—just as the *rājanya* means nothing more than the descendant of a king or chief (*rājan*), a member of the royal family, or of the nobility.

The paucity of the texts (and those, too, probably of a date comparatively recent) in which the word *brāhmaṇa* occurs, when contrasted with the large number of those in which *brāhmān* is found, seems, as I have already observed, to prove conclusively that the former word was but little employed in the earlier part of the Vedic era, and only came into common use towards its close. In some of these passages (as in vii. 103, 1, 7, 8; x. 88, 19) there is nothing to shew that the Brāhman is alluded to as anything more than a professional priest, and in vii. 103, the comparison of frogs to Brāhmans may seem even to imply a want of respect for the latter and their office.⁴⁸ In other places (i. 164, 45, and x. 71, 8, 9) a distinction appears to be drawn between intelligent and unintelligent Brāhmans, between such as were thoughtful and others who were mere mechanical instruments in carrying on the ceremonial of worship,⁴⁹ which, certainly points to the existence of a sacerdotal class. In another passage (x. 97, 22) the importance of a Brāhman to the proper performance of religious rites appears to be clearly expressed. In x. 109, where the words *brāhmān* (*passim*) and *brāh-*

⁴⁸ See Müller's remarks on this hymn in his *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 494.

⁴⁹ In R.V. viii. 50, 9, it is said: “Whether an unwise or a wise man, o Indra, has offered to thee a hymn, he has gladdened (thee) through his devotion to thee (*avipre vū yad avidhad vipre vū Indra te vacaḥ | sa pra mamandat tvāyā ity ādi*).”

mana (in verse 4) seem to be used interchangeably—the inviolability of Brāhman's wives, the peril of interfering with them, and the blessing attendant on reparation for any outrage committed against them, are referred to in such a way as to shew at once the loftiness of the claim set up by the Brāhman on their own behalf, and to prove that these pretensions were frequently disregarded by the nobles. In x. 16, 6, the Brāhman are spoken of as inspired by Soma, and in vi. 75, 10, the manes of earlier Brāhman are reckoned among those divine beings who have power to protect the suppliant. But in none of these texts is any clear reference made to the Brāhman as constituting an exclusive caste or race, and nothing whatever is said about their being descended from an ancestor distinct from those of the other classes of their countrymen.

SECT. II.—*Quotations from the Rig-veda, the Nirukta, the Mahābhārata, and other works, to shew that according to ancient Indian tradition, persons not of priestly families were authors of Vedic hymns, and exercised priestly functions.*

But in addition to the negative evidence adduced in the preceding section, that during the age to which the greater part of the hymns of the Rig-veda are referable, the system of castes had, to say the least, not yet attained its full development, we find also a considerable amount of proof in the hymns themselves, or in later works, or from a comparison of both, that many of the hymns either were, or from a remote antiquity were believed to be, the productions of authors not of sacerdotal descent; and that some of these persons also acted as priests. The most signal instance of this kind is that of Viśvāmitra; but from the abundance of the materials which exist for its illustration I shall reserve it for the next chapter, where I shall treat of the contests between the Brāhman and the Kshatriyas.

In later times, when none but Brāhman priests were known, it seemed to be an unaccountable, and—as contradicting the exclusive sacerdotal pretensions of the Brāhman—an inconvenient circumstance, that priestly functions should have been recorded as exercised by persons whom tradition represented as Rājanyas; and it therefore became necessary to explain away the historical facts, by inventing miraculous legends to make it appear that these men of the royal order had been

in reality transformed into Brāhmanas, as the reward of their superhuman merits and austerities—an idea of which we shall meet with various illustrations in the sequel. The very existence, however, of such a word as *rājarshi*, or “royal rishi,” proves that Indian tradition recognized as rishis or authors of Vedic hymns persons who were considered to belong to Rājanya families. A number of such are named (though without the epithet of *rājarshi*) in the Anukramaṇikā or index to the Rig-veda; but Sāyaṇa, who quotes that old document, gives them this title. Thus, in the introduction to hymn i. 100, he says: *Atra anukramyate* “*sa yo vṛishā 'ekonā Vārshāgirāḥ Ṛjīrāścāmbarīsha-Sahadeva-Bhayamāna-Surādhasaḥ*” *iti* | *Vṛishāgiro mahārājasya putrabhūtāḥ Ṛjīrāśvādāyaḥ pancha rājarshayaḥ sadehaṁ sūktāṁ dadriṣuḥ* | *atas te asya sūktasya rishayaḥ* | *uktaṁ hy ārshānukramanyām* “*sūktāṁ sa yo vṛishety etat pancha Vārshāgirāḥ viduḥ* | *niryuktāḥ nāmadheyaiḥ svair api 'chaitat tyad' iti richi*” *iti* | “It is said in the Anukramaṇikā, ‘Of this hymn (the rishis) are Rjīrāśva, Ambarīsha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, sons of Vṛishāgir.’ Rjīrāśva and others, sons of King Vṛishāgir, in all five rājarshis, saw this hymn in a bodily form. Hence they are its rishis (or seers). For it is declared in the Ārsha Anukramaṇi: ‘The five sons of Vṛishāgir, who are mentioned by name in the verse beginning “this praise” (the 17th), know this hymn.’” The 17th verse is as follows: *Etat tyat te Indra vṛishne uktaṁ Vārshāgirāḥ abhi grīnanti rādhaḥ* | *Ṛjīrāśvaḥ prashṭibhir Ambarīshaḥ Sahadevo Bhayamānaḥ Surādhaḥ* | “This hymn the Vārshāgiras, Rjīrāśva, with his attendants, and Ambarīsha, Sahadeva, Bhayamāna, and Surādhas, utter to thee, the vigorous, o Indra, as their homage;” on which Sāyaṇa repeats the remark that these persons were rājarshis (*etat uktaṁ stotraṁ rādhaḥ saṁrādhaḥ tat - priti - hetuṁ Vārshāgirāḥ Vṛishāgiro rājnaḥ putrāḥ Ṛjīrāśvādāyo 'bhi grīnanti abhimukhyena vadanti* | . . . *Ṛjīrāśvaḥ etat-sanjno rājarshiḥ prashṭibhiḥ pārśva-sthair anyair rishibhiḥ saha Indram astaut* | *ke te pārśva-sthāḥ* | *Ambarīśvādāyaś chadvāro rājarshayaḥ*). Ambarīsha is also said to be the rishi of ix. 98. Again, “Trasadasyu, son of Purukutsa, a Rājarshi,” is said by Sāyaṇa on R. V. iv. 42, to be the rishi of that hymn (*Purukutsasya putras Trasadasyuh rājarshiḥ* | . . . *atrānukramaṇikā 'mama dvitā' daśa Trasadasyuh Paurukutsayaḥ*). In the 8th and 9th verses Trasadasyu is thus mentioned: *Asmūkam atra pitaras te āsan sapta rishayo Daurgahe badhyamāne* | *te ā*

ayajanta Trasadasyum asyāḥ Indraṁ na vrittraturam arādhadevam | 9. *Purukutsānī hi vām adāśad havyebhir Indra-varuṇā namobhiḥ* | *atha rājānaṁ Trasadasyum asyāḥ vrittrahaṇaṁ dadathur arādhadevam* | 8. "These seven rishis were our fathers. When the son of Durgaha was bound they gained by sacrifice for her (Purukutsānī) a son Trasadasyu, a slayer of foes, like Indra, a demigod. 9. Purukutsānī worshipped you, o Indra and Varuṇa, with salutations and obsecrations; then ye gave her king Trasadasyu, a slayer of enemies, a demigod." I give Sāyaṇa's note on these verses: "*Purukutsasya mahishi Daurgahe bandhana-sthite | patyāv arājakaṁ dṛṣṭvā rāshṭram putrasya lipsayā | yadriḥhayā samāyātān saptarshīn paryapūjayat | te cha prītāḥ punaḥ prochuḥ 'yajendra-varuṇau bhrīṣam' | sū chendra-varuṇāv iṣṭvā Trasadasyum ajījanat | iti hūsam imāṁ jānann rīshir brūte rīchāv iha*" | *atha asmākam atra asminn arājake deśe asyām prithivyaṁ vā pitarāḥ pālayitāraḥ utpādakās te āsann abhavan | ete saptarshayah prasiddhāḥ Daurgahe Durgahasya putre Purukutse badhyamāne dṛḍham pāsair yasmād asyāḥ asyai Purukutsānyai Trasadasyum ayajanta prādūr Indra-Varuṇayor anugrahāt* | " "The queen of Purukutsa, when her husband, the son of Durgaha, was imprisoned, seeing the kingdom to be destitute of a ruler, and desirous of a son, of her own accord paid honour to the seven rishis who had arrived. And they, again, being pleased told her to sacrifice to Indra and Varuṇa. Having done so she bore Trasadasyu. Knowing this story, the rishi utters these two verses;" which Sāyaṇa then explains. Similarly Sāyaṇa says on v. 27: "Tryarūṇa son of Trivṛṣṇa, Trasadasyu son of Purukutsa, and Āsvamedha son of Bharata, these three kings conjoined, are the rishis of this hymn; or Atri is the rishi" (*Atrānukramanikū* | "*Anasvantā śhaṭ Trivṛṣṇa-paurukutsyau deau Tryarūṇa-Transadasyū rājānau Bhārataś cha Āsvamedhaḥ* | . . . 'na ātmā ātmane dadyād' iti sarvāso Atriṁ kechit" . . . *Trivṛṣṇasya putras Tryarūṇaḥ Purukutsasya putras Transadasyur Bharatasya putro 'śvamedhaḥ etc trayo'pi rājānaḥ sambhūya asya sūktasya rishayah* | *yadvā Atriḥ eva rīshih*). The Anukramanikā, however, adds that according to some, as "no one would give gifts to himself, none of the princes mentioned as donors could be the author; but Atri must be the rishi." As the hymn is spoken by a fourth person, in praise of the liberality of these kings, it is clear they cannot well be its authors. And a similar remark applies to iv. 42, 8 f. However, the Hindu tradition, being such as it is, is good proof that kings could, in

conformity with ancient opinion, be rishis. Trasadasyu and Trayarūṇa are also mentioned as the rishis of ix. 110.⁵⁰ The rishis of iv. 43 and iv. 44 are declared by Sāyana, and by the Anukramanikā, to be Purumīlha, and Ajamīlha, sons or descendants of Suhotra (iv. 43, *Atrānukramanikā* 'kaḥ u śaścat' *sapta Purumīlhājāmīlhau Sauhotrau tv Āśvināṁ hi* | iv. 44, *Purumīlhājāmīlhāv eva rishī*). Though these persons are not said by either of these authorities to be kings, yet in the Vishṇu and Bhāgavata Purāṇas the latter is mentioned as being of royal race, and a tribe of Brāhmanas is said to have been descended from him (see above p. 227). In the sixth verse of iv. 44, the descendants of Ajamīlha are said to have come to the worship of the Āsvins (*naro yad vām Āśvinā stomam āvan sadhastutim Ajamīlhāso agman*). The following hymns, also, are said by tradition to have had the undermentioned kings for their rishis, viz.: vi. 15, Vīṭahavya (or Bharadvāja); x. 9, Sindhudvīpa, son of Ambarisha (or Trīśiras, son of Tvashtṛi); x. 75, Sindhuśhit, son of Priyamedha; x. 133, Sudās, son of Pijavana; x. 134, Māndhātṛi, son of Yuvanāśva (see above, p. 225); x. 179, Sibi, son of Uśinara, Pratardana, son of Divodāsa and king of Kāśī (see above, p. 229), and Vasumanas, son of Rohidaśva; and x. 148 is declared to have had Pṛithī Vainya⁵¹ as its rishi. In the fifth verse of that hymn it is said: *S'rudhi havam Indra śūra Pṛithiyāḥ uta stavase Venyasya arkaiḥ* | "Hear, o heroic Indra, the invocation of Pṛithī; and thou art praised by the hymn of Venya." In viii. 9, 10, also, Pṛithī Vainya is mentioned at the same time with three rishis: *Yad vām Kakshivāt uta yad Vyaśvaḥ rishir yad vām Dirghatamāḥ juhāva* | *Pṛithī yad vām Vainyaḥ sadaneshu eva id ato Āśvinā chetayethām* | "Whatever oblation (or invocation) Kakshivat has made to you, or the rishi Vyaśva, or Dirghatamas, or Pṛithī, son of Vena, in the places of

⁵⁰ In the Vishṇu Purāṇa, as we have seen above, p. 237, Trayyārūṇa, Pushkarin, and Kapi are said to have been sons of Urukshaya, and all of them to have become Brāhmanas; and in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, Trayyarūṇi, Pushkarārūṇi, and Kapi are said to have all become Brāhmanas.

⁵¹ The S. P. Br. v. 3, 5, 4, refers to Pṛithī as "first of men who was installed as a king" (*Pṛithī ha vai Vainyo manushyānām prathamō bhishishikhe*). I extract from Dr. Hall's edition of Prof. Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. the following verse, adduced by the editor from the Vāyu Purāṇa about royal rishis: *Mānave Vainave (?) vamsē Aīde vāmśe cha ye nṛpāḥ* | *Aīdī Aikshvākū Nābhāgū jneyā rājārshayaḥ tu te* | "Kings in the race of Manu, Vena (?), and Iḍa, the descendants of Iḍa, Ikshvāku, and Nabhāga are to be known as having been rājārshis."

sacrifice, take notice of that, o Áśvins." Here Sāyaṇa refers to Prithī as "the royal rishi of that name."

From the details I have supplied it is clear that in many cases the evidence is against the supposition that the princes to whom the hymns are ascribed were in reality their authors. The only instances in which the authorship seems to be established by the tenor of the hymns themselves are those of the Vārshagiras, or, at all events, that of Prithī. But, as has been already remarked, the fact that ancient Hindu tradition recognizes royal rishis as the authors of hymns is sufficient to prove that such cases were not unknown. Even if we were to suppose that flattery had any share in the creation of these traditions, it no doubt proceeded upon the belief of those who put them into circulation, that in earlier times the distinction between the priests and other classes was not so sharply defined as in their own day.

I proceed, however, to the case of Devāpi, in which the materials for forming a judgment are more adequate and satisfactory, and prove that he was not merely a rishi but an officiating priest.

In the Anukramaṇikā, R.V. x. 98 is ascribed to him as its author; and Yāska states as follows in the Nirukta, ii. 10:

Tatra itihasam āchakshate | Devāpiś cha Ārshṭishēṇaḥ S'antanuś cha Kauravyau bhrātārau bābhūvatuḥ | sa S'antanuḥ kaṇṇyān abhishechayān-chakre | Devāpis tapaḥ pratipede | tataḥ S'antanoh rājye dvādāsa var-shāni devo na vavarsha | 'tam āchur brāhmaṇāḥ "adharmas trayā charito jyesṭham bhrātaram antarītya abhishechitam | tasmāt te devo na var-shati" iti | sa S'antanur Devāpiṁ śisiksha rājyena | tam uvācha Devā-piḥ "purohitas te 'sūni yūjayāni cha tvā" iti | tasya etad varsha-kāma-sūktam | tasya eshū bhavati |

"Here they relate a story. Devāpi son of Rishṭishēṇa, and Santanu, belonged to the race of Kuru and were brothers. Santanu, who was the younger, caused himself to be installed as king, whilst Devāpi betook himself to austere fervour. Then the god did not rain for twelve years of Santanu's reign. The Brāhmans said to him: 'Thou hast practised unrighteousness in that, passing by thy elder brother, thou hast caused thyself to be installed as king. It is for this reason that the god does not rain.' Santanu then sought to invest Devāpi with the sovereignty; but the latter said to him: 'Let me be thy

purohita and perform sacrifice for thee.' This hymn, expressing a desire of rain, is his. The following verse is part of it."

Yaska then quotes a verse of R.V. x. 98, the whole of which is as follows:

*Bṛihaspate prati me devatām ihi Mitro vā yad Varuṇo vā asi Pūṣhā |
 Ādityair vā yad Vasubhir Marutrān sa Parjanyaṁ S'antanave vṛishkāya |
 2. A devo dāto ajiraś chikiltvān trad Devāpe abhi mām āgachhat | prati-
 chīnaś prati mām ā varṣitsva dadhāmi te dyumatīm vācham āsan | 3.
 Asme dhehi dyumatīm vācham āsan Bṛihaspate anamivām ishirām |
 yayā vṛishṭīm S'antanave vanāva divo drapso madhumān ā viveśa | 4. Ā
 no drapsūḥ madhumanto viśantu Indra dehi adhiratham sahasram | ni
 shīda hotram¹² pītuthā yajasva devān Devāpe harishā saparya | 5. Ārsh-
 ṭiṣheṇo hotram ṛishir nishīdan Devāpir deva-sumatīm chikiltvān | sa utta-
 rasmād adharām samudram apo diryaś asṛijad varshyūḥ abhi | 6. Asmīn
 samudre adhi uttarasmīn āpo devebhir nirṛitāḥ atishthan | tāḥ adravann
 Ārṣṭiṣhenena sṛishṭāḥ Devāpinā preshitāḥ vṛikshinīṣhu | 7. Yad Devā-
 piḥ S'antanave purohito hotrāya vṛitāḥ kṛipayann adidhet | deva-śrutan
 vṛishṭi-vanīm rarāgo Bṛihaspatir vācham asmai ayachhat | 8. Yaṁ tvā
 Devāpiḥ śusūchāno Agne Ārṣṭiṣheṇo manushyaḥ samīdhe | viśrebbhir
 devair anumadyamānaḥ pra Parjanyam iraya vṛishṭimantam | 9. Tvām
 pūrve ṛishayo gīrbhir āyan tvām adhvareshu puruhūta viśve | sahasrāṇi
 adhirathāni asme ā no yajnaṁ rohidaśva upa yāhi | 10. Etāni Agni na-
 vatir nava tee āhulāni adhirathā sahasrā | tebbhir vardhasva tanvaḥ śura
 pūrvir divo no vṛishṭīm ishīto rivīhi | 11. Etāni Agne navatīm sahasrā
 sam pra yachha vṛishṇe Indrāya bhāgam | vidvān pathaḥ rituśo devayā-
 nān apy aulānām divi deveshu dhehi | 12. Agne būdhasva vi mṛidho vi
 durgahā apa amivām apa rakshāṁsi sedha | asmāt samudrād bṛihato divo
 no apām bhūmānam upa naḥ sṛija iha |*

"Approach, Bṛihaspati,¹³ to my worship of the gods, whether thou art Mitra, Varuṇa, Pūshan, or art attended by the Ādityas, Vasus, or Maruts: cause Parjanya to rain for Santanu. 2. The god, a rapid messenger, has become aware, and has come from thee, o Devāpi, to me, (saying) 'approach towards me; I will place a brilliant hymn

¹² Compare R.V. ii. 1, 2.

¹³ It looks as if Agni were here to be understood by Bṛihaspati, see verses 9-12. In R.V. ii. 1, 4 ff. Agni is identified with Varuṇa, Mitra, Aryaman, Amśa, Tvashṭri, Rudra, Pūshan, Savitṛi, Bhaga.

in thy mouth.' 3. Place in our mouth, o Bṛihaspati, a brilliant hymn, powerful, and spirited, whereby we two may solicit rain for Santanu. The drop full of sweetness has descended on us from the sky. 4. May the drops full of sweetness come down upon us: give us, o Indra, a thousand waggon-loads (of them?). Perform the function of a hotṛi, sacrifice in due form, worship the gods with an oblation, o Devāpi. 5. The rishi Devāpi, son of Ṛishṭishēṇa, performing the function of a hotṛi, knowing (how to gain) the goodwill of the gods, has discharged from the upper to the lower ocean those waters of the sky which fall in rain. 6. The waters remained shut up by the gods in this upper ocean: they rushed forth when released by the son of Ṛishṭishēṇa, when discharged by Devāpi into the torrents.⁶⁴ 7. When Devāpi, placed in front of Santanu (as his purohita), chosen for the office of hotṛi, fulfilling his function, kindled (the fire),—then, granting the prayer for rain which was heard by the gods, Bṛihaspati gave him a hymn. 8. Do thou, o Agni, whom the man⁶⁵ Devāpi the son of Ṛishṭishēṇa has inflamed and kindled,—do thou, delighted, with all the gods, send hither the rain-bearing Parjanya. 9. Former rishis have approached thee with their hymns; and all (approach) thee, o god, much-invoked, in their sacrifices: give us thousands of waggon-loads: come, thou who art borne by red horses,⁶⁶ to our sacrifice. 10. These ninety-nine thousands of waggon-loads (of wood and butter?) have been thrown into thee, o Agni, as oblations. Through them grow, hero, to (the bulk of) thy former bodies;⁶⁷ and stimulated, grant us rain from the sky. 11. (Of) these ninety thousands give, o Agni, a share to the vigorous Indra. Knowing the paths which rightly lead to the gods, convey the oblation (?) to the deities in the sky. 12. Overcome, o Agni, our enemies, our calamities; drive away sickness, and rakshases. From this great ocean of the sky discharge upon us an abundance of waters."

The fact of Devāpi being reputed as the author of this hymn, and as the purohita and hotṛi of his brother, seems to have led the legendary writers to invent the story of his becoming a Brāhman, which (as men-

⁶⁴ So the word *mṛikṣhīṇī* is explained in Böhtlingk and Roth's *Lexicon*,

⁶⁵ Or, "descendant of Manush" (*manushya*).

⁶⁶ This is a common epithet of Agni.

⁶⁷ This means, I suppose, "burst forth into vast flames."

tioned by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, i. p. 203) is recorded in the Salya-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2281 ff. where he is there said to have attained this distinction at a certain place of pilgrimage called Prithūdaka; where Sindhudvīpa and Viśvāmītra also were received into the higher caste:

Tatrārṣtīṣheṇaḥ Kauravya brāhmanyam saṁśīta-vrataḥ | tapasū mahatā rājan prāptarān ṛishi-sattamaḥ | Sindhudvīpaś cha rājarshir Devāpiś cha mahātāpāḥ | brāhmanyam labdhavān yatra Viśvāmitras tāthā muniḥ | mahātāpasvī bhagavān ugra-tejāḥ mahātāpāḥ | . . . 2287. Purā kṛita-yuge rajann Ārṣtīṣheṇo dvijottamaḥ | vasan guru-kule nityam nityam adhyayane rataḥ | tasya rājan guru-kule vasato nityam eva cha | samāptim nūgamad vidyā nāpi vedāḥ viśūmpate | sa nirvinṇas tato rājāṁś tapas tepe mahātāpāḥ | tato vai tapasū tena prūpya vedān anuttamanān | sa vidvān veda-yuktas cha siddhas cāpy ṛishi-sattamaḥ | . . . | eram siddhas sa bhagavān Ārṣtīṣheṇaḥ pratāpavān | tasminn eva tadā tīrthe Sindhudvīpaḥ pratāpavān | Devāpiś cha mahārāja brāhmanyam prāptatur mahat |

2281. "There the most excellent rishi Ārṣtīṣheṇa, constant in his observances, obtained Brāhmanhood by great austere fervour; as did also the royal rishi Sindhudvīpa,⁵⁸ and Devāpi great in austere fervour, and the glorious muni Viśvāmītra, of great austere fervour and fiery vigour." Some other particulars of Ārṣtīṣheṇa are given further on: 2287. "Formerly in the Kṛita age the most excellent Brāhman Ārṣtīṣheṇa dwelt constantly in his preceptor's family, devoted to incessant study; but could not complete his mastery of science or of the vedas.⁵⁹ Being in consequence discouraged, he betook himself to intense austere fervour. By this means he acquired the incomparable Vedas, and became learned and perfect. . . . At the same place of pilgrimage the majestic Sindhudvīpa and Devāpi obtained the great distinction of Brāhmanhood."

It will be observed that here Ārṣtīṣheṇa is, in opposition to the authority of the Nirukta, made a distinct person from Devāpi.

⁵⁸ This prince also, as we have seen above, is mentioned among those Rājanyas who composed Vedic hymns.

⁵⁹ The Vedas are here spoken of in the plural, although Ārṣtīṣheṇa is said to have lived in the Kṛita age. But the M. Bh. itself says elsewhere (see above, p. 145) that there was then but one Veda.

In a note to his (French) translation of the Rig-veda, M. Langlois (vol. iv. 502) supposes that the hymn above translated (x. 98), like the Purusha Sūkta, is very much posterior in date to the other hymns in the collection. The names of Devāpi and Sāntanu indicate, he thinks, as the date of its composition, a period not far preceding that of the great war of the Mahābhārata. Professor Weber, on the other hand, considers (Indische Studien, i. 203) that the Sāntanu and Devāpi mentioned in that work (Ādi-parvan, 3750 f.) cannot be the same as the persons alluded to in the Rigveda, because their father was Pratiṭpa, not Rishṭishena; and because he thinks it doubtful whether a prince who preceded the Pāṇḍavas by only two generations could have been named in the Rig-veda, and appear there as an author of hymns.

The verses of the Ādi-parvan just referred to are as follows:

*Pratīpasya trayāḥ putrāḥ jajñire Bharatarshabha | Devāpiḥ S'āntanus
chaiva Vāhlikas mahārathah | Devāpiś cha pravrāja teshām dharmā-
hitepsayā | S'āntanus cha mahīm lebhe Vāhlikas cha mahārathah |*

“Three sons were born to Pratiṭpa, viz. Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika the charioteer. Of these Devāpi, desiring the benefits of religious excellence, became an ascetic; whilst Sāntanu and Vāhlika obtained (the rule of) the earth.”

The Harivaṃśa gives a different story about the same Devāpi, verse 1819:

*Pratiṭpo Bhīmasenāt tu Pratīpasya tu S'āntanuḥ | Devāpir Vāhlikas
chaiva trayāḥ eva mahārathāḥ | . . . 1822. Upādhyāyas tu devānām
Devāpir abhavat muniḥ | Chyavanasya kṛitāḥ putrāḥ iṣṭas chāsīd ma-
hātmanah |*

“Pratiṭpa sprang from Bhīmasena; and Sāntanu, Devāpi, and Vāhlika were the three chariot-driving sons of Pratiṭpa. . . . 1822. Devāpi became a muni, and preceptor of the gods, being the adopted son of Chyavana, by whom he was beloved.”

The Vishṇu Purāṇa (iv. 20, 7 ff.) concurs with the preceding authorities in making Devāpi and Sāntanu to be sons of Pratiṭpa, and descendants of Kuru, and his son Jahnu. It repeats the legend given in the Nirukta of the country of Sāntanu being visited by a drought of twelve years duration, in consequence of his having assumed the royal authority while his elder brother lived. And although, as will be seen, the sequel of the story is widely different from that recorded by the

Nirukta, the earlier incidents in the two narratives are so similar, that it would appear to have been the intention of the Puranic writer to identify the Devāpi and Sāntanu whose history he relates with the persons of the same names, although of different parentage, mentioned in Yaska's work. He may, however, possibly have transferred an older legend to more recent personages. The passage of the Vishnu Purāṇa is as follows:

Rikshād Bhīmasenas tatas cha Dilīpaḥ | Dilīpāt Pratīpas tasyāpi Devāpi Sāntanu- Vāhlika-sanjñās trayāḥ putrāḥ babhūvuh | Devāpir bālāḥ eva aranyaṁ vireṣa | Sāntanūr avanīpatir abhavat | ayaṁ cha tasya ślokaḥ prithivyaṁ gīyate "yaṁ yaṁ karābhyāṁ spṛisati jīrṇaṁ yauvanam eti saḥ | śāntiṁ chāpnoti yenāgryāṁ karmaṇā tena Sāntanuḥ" | tasya Sāntanoḥ rāṣṭre dvādaśa varshāni devo na vavarsha | tataścha aśeṣa-rāṣṭra-vinūṣam avekṣhya asau rājā brāhmaṇaṁ aprichhad "bhoḥ kasmād asmin rāṣṭre devo na varshati | ko mama aparādhaḥ" iti | te tam ūchur "agrajasya te 'rḥā iyaṁ avanis trayā bhujyate parivettā tvam" | ity uktaḥ sa punas tām aprichhat "kim mayā vidheyam" iti | tena tam ūchur "yūvad Devāpir na putanādibhir doṣhair abhiḥhūyate tāvat tasya arhaṁ rājyam | tad alam etena tasmai dīyatām" | ity ukte tasya mantri-pravareṇa Aśmasūriṇā tatra aranye tapasvino veda-vāda-virodha-vaktāraḥ prayojitāḥ | tair ati-rīju-mater mahīpati-putrasya buddhir veda-virodha-mārgānusārīny akriyata | rājā cha Sāntanur dvija-vachanotpanna-parivedana-śokas tām brāhmaṇaṁ agranīkṛitya agraja-rājya-pradūnāya aranyaṁ jagāma | tad-āsramam upagatūḥ cha tam avanīpati-putraṁ Devāpim upatasthuḥ | te brāhmaṇāḥ veda-vādānuvṛiddhāni vachāmsi "rājyam agrajena kartavyam" ity arthavanti tam ūchuḥ | asāv api veda-vāda-virodha-yukti-dūṣhitam aneka-prakāram tām āha | tatas te brāhmaṇāḥ Sāntanum ūchur "āgachha bho rājann alam atra ati-nir-bandhena | praśāntaḥ eva asāv anāvṛiṣṭi-doṣaḥ | patito 'yam anādī-kāla-mahita-veda-vachana-dūṣhaṇochchāraṇāt | patite cha agraje naiva parivetttryan; bhavati" | ity uktaḥ Sāntanuḥ eva-puram āgaty rājyam akarot | veda-vāda-virodhi-vachanochchāraṇa-dūṣhite cha jyeshṭhe 'smin bhrātari tiṣṭhaty api Devāpau akhila-sasya-nishpattaye vavarsha bhagavān Parjanyaḥ |

"From Riksha sprang Bhīmasena; from him Dilīpa; from him Pratīpa, who again had three sons called Devāpi, Sāntanu, and Vāhlika. Devāpi while yet a boy retired to the forest; and Sāntanu became

king. Regarding him this verse is current in the world: 'Every decrepit man whom he touches with his hands becomes young. He is called Sântanu from that work whereby he obtains supreme tranquility (*sânti*).' The god did not rain on the country of this Sântanu for twelve years. Beholding then the ruin of his entire realm, the king enquired of the Brâhmanas: 'Why does not the god rain on this country; what is my offence?' The Brâhmanas replied: 'This earth, which is the right of thy elder brother, is now enjoyed by thee; thou art a *parivettṛi* (one married before his elder brother).'⁶⁰ Receiving this reply, he again asked them: 'What must I do?' They then answered: 'So long as Devâpi does not succumb to declension from orthodoxy and other offences, the royal authority is his by right; to him therefore let it be given without further question.' When they had so said, the king's principal minister Aśmasārīn employed certain ascetics propounding doctrines contrary to the declarations of the Vedas to proceed into the forest, by whom the understanding of the very simple-minded prince (Devâpi) was led to adopt a system at variance with those sacred books. King Sântanu being distressed for his offence in consequence of what the Brâhmanas had said to him, went, preceded by those Brâhmanas, to the forest in order to deliver over the kingdom to his elder brother. Arriving at the hermitage, they came to prince Devâpi. The Brâhmanas addressed to him statements founded on the declarations of the Veda, to the effect that the royal authority should be exercised by the elder brother. He, on his part, expressed to them many things that were vitiated by reasonings contrary to the tenor of the Veda. The Brâhmanas then said to Sântanu, 'Come hither, o king: there is no occasion for any excessive hesitation in this affair: the offence which led to the drought is now removed. Your brother has fallen by uttering a contradiction of the words of the Veda which

⁶⁰ This is illustrated by Manu iii, 171 f.: *Dārāgnihotra-saṃyogaṃ kuruṣv yo 'grāje sthite | parivettā sa vīṇeyah parivittis tu pūrvajāḥ | 172. Parivittih parivettā gṛhā cha parividyate | sarve te narakaṃ gantī dātṛi-gṛhaka-panchamāḥ |* "171. He who, while his elder brother is unwedded, marries a wife with the nuptial fires, is to be known as a *parivettṛi*, and his elder brother as a *parivitti*. 172. The *parivitti*, the *parivettṛi*, the female by whom the offence is committed, he who gives her away, and fifthly the officiating priest, all go to hell." The Indian writers regard the relation of a king to his realm as analogous to that of a husband to his wife. The earth is the king's bride.

have been revered from time without beginning; and when the elder brother has fallen, the younger is no longer chargeable with the offence of *pārivettīya* (i.e. of marrying before his elder brother).’ When he had been so addressed, Śāntanu returned to his capital, and exercised the royal authority. And although his eldest brother Devāpi continued to be degraded by having uttered words opposed to the doctrines of the Veda, the god Parjanya rained in order to produce a harvest of all sorts of grain.’

Can the compiler of the Purāṇa have deviated from the conclusion of this history as found in the Nirukta, and given it a new turn, in order to escape from the conclusion that a Rājanya could officiate as a purohita?

The same story is briefly told in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 14–17.

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, on the other hand, Devāpi’s virtues and orthodoxy are extolled in the highest terms, and his exclusion from the throne is ascribed solely to his being a leper, v. 5054:

*Devāpiḥ tu mahātejās tvag-doshī rāja-sattamaḥ | dhārmikāḥ satya-vādī
cha pituḥ śuśrūṣhaṇo rataḥ | paura-jānapadānām cha sammataḥ sādhu-
saktiritaḥ | sarveshām bāla-vṛiddhānām Devāpir hṛdayaṅgamaḥ | vadān-
yaḥ satyasandhaḥ cha sarva-bhūta-hito rataḥ | varttamānaḥ pituḥ śāstre
brāhmaṇānām tathaiḥ cha | | tam brāhmaṇāḥ cha vṛiddhāḥ cha
paura-jānapadaiḥ saha | sarve nivārayāmāsur Devūper abhisechanam | sa
tach chhṛutvā tu nṛpatir abhisheka-nivāraṇam | ‘āśru-kaṇṭho ’bhavad rājā
paryāśochata chātma-jam | evaṁ vadānyo dharmajñaḥ satyasandhaḥ cha so
’bhavat | priyaḥ prajānām api sa tvag-doshena pradūṣitaḥ | “hinaṅgam
prithivīpālān nābhinandanti devatāḥ” | iti kṛtvā nṛpa-śreṣṭhām pra-
tyaśedhan dvijarshabhūḥ | | nivāritaṁ nṛpaṁ dṛiṣṭvā Devāpiḥ
saṁśṛito vanam |*

“But the glorious Devāpi, a most excellent prince, righteous, veracious, and obedient to his father, was a leper. He was esteemed by the inhabitants both of town and country, honoured by the good, beloved by all, both young and old, eloquent, true to his engagements, devoted to the welfare of all creatures, and conformed to the commands of his father, and of the Brāhmans.” [The king his father grew old and was making preparations for the investiture of his successor; but public opinion was opposed to the devolution of the royal authority on

a leper, however virtuous]. "The Brahmins and aged men, together with the dwellers both in town and country, all restrained him from the investiture of Devāpi. The king, learning their opposition, was choked with tears, and bewailed his son's fate. Thus Devāpi was eloquent, acquainted with duty, true to his promise, and beloved by the people, but vitiated by leprosy. The Brāhmins forbade the king (to make Devāpi his successor), saying, 'the gods do not approve a king who labours under any corporeal defect.' . . . Perceiving that the king (his father) was hindered (from carrying out his wishes) Devāpi retired to the forest."

On the same subject, the Matsya Purāṇa, 49, v. 39 f., states as follows:

*Dilipasya Pratīpastu tasya putrās trayāḥ smṛitāḥ | Devāpiḥ Śāntanuḥ
chaiva Bāhlikas chaiva te trayāḥ | Bāhlikasya tu dāyādāḥ sapta Bāhliś-
varāḥ nṛipāḥ | Devāpis tu apadhvastaḥ prajābhir abhavad muniḥ |
ṛishayaḥ ūchhuḥ | prajābhis tu kimarthaṁ vai apadhvasto janēśvaraḥ |
ke doṣhāḥ rājaputrasya prajābhiḥ samudāhṛitāḥ | Sūta uvācha | kilāsiḍ
rājaputras tu kushī taṁ nābhyapūjayan | ko'rthān vai atra (? vetty
atra) devānāṁ kṣatṛam prati dvijottamāḥ |*

"The son of Dilipa was Pratīpa, of whom three sons are recorded, Devāpi, Śāntanu, and Bāhlika. The sons of the last were the seven Bāhliśvara kings. But the Muni Devāpi was rejected by the people. The rishis enquired: 'why was that prince rejected by the people? what faults were alleged against him?' Sūta replied: 'the prince was leprous, and they paid him no respect. Who knows the designs of the gods towards the Kṣatṛiya race?'"

No more is said of Devāpi in this passage.⁶¹ The Vishṇu Purāṇa has the following further curious particulars regarding him, iv. 24, 44 ff.:

*Devāpiḥ Pauravo rājā Maruś chekshvāku-vaṁśajaḥ | mahāyoga-balo-
petau Kālīpa-grāma-saṁśrayau | kṛite yugo ihāgatya kṣatṛa-prāvart-
takau hi tau | bhaviṣyato Manor vaṁśe vīja-bhūtau vyavasthitau | etena
krama-yogena Manu-putrair vasundharā | kṛita-tretādi-saṁjñāni yugāni
trīṇi bhujyate | Kalau tu vīja-bhūtas te kechit tishṭhanti bhūtale | yathāiva
Devāpi-Marū sāmprataṁ samavasthitau |*

"King Devāpi of the race of Puru,⁶² and Maru of the family of

⁶¹ See Prof. Wilson's note, 4to. ed. p. 458.

⁶² In the twentieth chapter, as we have seen, he is said to be of the race of Kuru.

Ikshvāku, filled with the power of intense contemplation (*mahāyoga*) are abiding in the village of Kalāpa, continuing to exist as seeds in the family of Manu; they shall come hither in the (next) Kṛita age, and re-establish the Kshattriya race. According to this order the earth is enjoyed by the sons of Manu throughout the three ages called Kṛita, Tretā, and Dvāpara. But during the Kali certain persons remain upon earth as seeds (of a future race), as Devāpi and Maru now exist."

According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 22, 17, it is the lunar race, which had perished in the Kali age, that Devāpi is to restore in the future Kṛita (*soma-vamśe kalau naśṭe kṛitāḍau sthāpayiṣhyati*).

I shall quote here from the 132nd section of the Matsya Purāṇa, entitled *Manvantara-varṇanam* (a description of the Manvantaras) some of the particulars about the rishis with which it concludes:

98. *Bhṛiguḥ Kāśyaḥ Prachetās cha Dadhicho hy Atmarān api* |
 99. *Aurvo 'tha Jamadagniś cha Kṛipaḥ Śāradvatas tathā | Ārṣṭiśheṇo*
Yudhājich cha Vṛataharya-Suvarchasau | 100. *Vaiṇaḥ Pṛithur Divodāso*
Brahmāśvo Gṛitsa-Saunakau | ekonaviṃśatir hy ete Bhṛigavo mantra-
kṛittamāḥ | 101. *Angirāḥ Vedhasas chaiva Bharadvājo Bhalandanaḥ |*
Ṛitabādhas tato Gargaḥ Sītīḥ Sankṛitir eva cha | 102. *Gurudhīras cha*
Māndhātā Ambarīśhas tathaiva cha | Yuvanāśvaḥ Puruḥ Kutsaḥ Pra-
dyumnaḥ Sravanasya cha | 103. *Ajamīdho 'tha Haryaścas Tukshapaḥ*
Kavir eva cha | Prishadaśvo Virūpas cha Kanvaś chaivātha Mudgalaḥ |
 104. *Utathyaś cha Śāradvāmś cha tathā Vājaśravā iti | Apaśyo 'tha*
Swritās cha Vāmadevas tathaiva cha | 105. *Ajito Bṛihadukthaś cha*
rishir Dirghatamū api | Kalakṣivāmś cha trayastrīṃśat smṛitā hy Angiraso
carāḥ | 106. *Ete mantra-kṛitāḥ sarvo Kāśyapāmś tu nibodhata | . . .* |
 111. *Viśvāmitras cha Gādheyo Devarājas tathā Balah | tathā vidvān*
Madhuchhandāḥ Rishabhas chāghamarshaṇaḥ | 112. *Aṣṭako Lohitaś*
chaiva Bhṛitakīlaś cha tāv ubhau | Vedāśravāḥ Devarātāḥ Purāṇāśvo
Dhananjayaḥ | 113. *Mithīlaś cha mahātejūḥ Sūlankāyana eva cha | tra-*
yodaśaite vijneyāḥ brahmīkṣṭhāḥ Kauśikāḥ varāḥ | . . . | 115. *Manur*
Vaivasvataś chaiva Iḍo rājā Purāravāḥ | Kshattriyānām varāḥ hy ete
vijneyāḥ mantra-vādīnaḥ | 116. *Bhalandas chaiva Vandyas cha San-*
kirttiś^{as} chaiva te trayaḥ | ete mantra-kṛito jneyāḥ Vaiśyānām pravaraḥ
sadā | 117. *Ity eka-navatiḥ proktāḥ mantrāḥ yaś cha bahiḥ kṛitāḥ |*

^{as} Various readings—*Bhalandakas cha Vāsāscha Saukālāscha*.

*brāhmaṇāḥ kṣattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ ṛishiputrān nibodhata | 118. Ṛishikūṇām
sutāḥ hy ete riśhi-putrāḥ śrutarśhayaḥ |*⁶⁴

"98. Bhṛigu, Kāśya, Prachetas, Dadhīcha, Ātmavat, (99) Aurva, Jamadagni, Kṛipa, Śāradvata, Ārshṭishena, Yudhājīt, Vitahavya, Suvarchas, (100) Vaina, Prithu, Divodāsa, Brahmāśva, Gṛitsa, Saunaka, these are the nineteen⁶⁵ Bhṛigus, composers of hymns. 101. Angiras, Vedhasa, Bṛharadvāja, Bhalandana,⁶⁶ Ṛitabādha, Garga, Siti, Sankṛiti, Gurudhīra,⁶⁷ Māndhātṛi, Ambarīsha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa,⁶⁸ Pradyumna, Śravaṇasya,⁶⁹ Ajamīdha, Haryaśva, Takshapa, Kavi, Pṛishadaśva, Virūpa, Kaṇva, Mudgala, Utathya, Śāradvat, Vājaśravas, Apaśya, Suvitta, Vāmadeva, Ajita, Bṛihaduktha, Dirghatamas, Kakshivat, are recorded as the thirty-three eminent Angirases. These were all composers of hymns. Now learn the Kāśyapas. . . . 111. Viśvāmitra, son of Gādhi, Devarāja, Bala, the wise Madhuchhandas, Ṛishabha, Aghamarshaṇa, (112) Ashtaka, Lohita, Bhṛitakīla, Vedaśravas, Devārāta, Purāṇāśva, Dhananjaya, the glorious (113) Mithila, Śāṅkayana, these are to be known as the thirteen devout and eminent Kuśikas.⁷⁰ 115. Manu Vaivasvata, Idā, king Purūravas, these are to be known as the eminent utterers of hymns among the Kṣattriyas. 116. Bhalanda, Vandya, and Sankīrtti,⁷¹ these are always to be known as the three eminent persons among the Vaiśyas who were composers of hymns. 117. Thus ninety-one⁷² persons have been declared, by whom hymns have been given forth, Brāhmans, Kṣattriyas, and Vaiśyas. Learn the sons of the rishis. 118. These are the offspring of the ṛishikas, sons of rishis, secondary rishis (*śrutarśhis*)."

The section ends here.

⁶⁴ I am indebted for an additional copy of this section of the Matsya Purāṇa (of which some account is given by Prof. Aufrecht in his Catalogue, p. 41), to the kindness of Mr. Griffith, Principal of Queen's College, Benares, who, at my request, has caused it to be collated with various other MSS. existing in Benares. I have not thought it necessary to exhibit all the various readings in the part I have quoted.

⁶⁵ The number of nineteen is only obtained by making Vaina and Prithu two persons.

⁶⁶ Instead of this word, one Benares MS. has Lakshmaṇa.

⁶⁷ Two MSS. have Turavita.

⁶⁸ This word is divided into two in the MS.

⁶⁹ Two MSS. have, instead, Svaśravas and Tamasyavat.

⁷⁰ Unless some of the words I have taken as names are really epithets, fifteen persons are enumerated here.

⁷¹ Some MSS. have Bhalandaka, Vandha or Vāsas, and Sankāla or Sankīma.

⁷² This is the total of several lists, some of which I have omitted.

It will be observed from a comparison of this extract with the details previously given, that some of the rājarshis, or rishis of royal blood, such as Ārshṭishēṇa, Vīṭahavya, Prīthu (the same as Prithī) are spoken of as belonging to the family of Bhṛigu, while others of the same class, such as Māndhātṛi, Ambarisha, Yuvanāśva, Purukutsa, are reckoned among the Angirases. Viśvāmitra and his descendants are merely designated as Kuśikas without any specific allusion to their Rājanya descent; but Manu, Iḍa, and Purūravas, are distinctly recognized as being as once authors of hymns and Kshattriyas; and, what is more remarkable, three Vaiśyas are also declared to have been sacred poets. These traditions of an earlier age, though scanty in amount, are yet sufficient to show that in the Vedic times the capacity for poetical composition, and the prerogative of officiating at the service of the gods, were not regarded as entirely confined to men of priestly families.

SECT. III.—*Texts from the Atharva-veda illustrating the progress of Brāhmanical pretensions.*

I have already quoted (in pp. 21 and 22) three short passages from the Atharva-veda regarding the origin of the Brāhman and Kshattriya castes. I shall now bring forward some other texts from the same collection which show a much greater development of the pretensions of the priests to a sacred and inviolable character than we meet in any part of the Rīg-veda, if the 109th hymn of the tenth book (cited above) be excepted.

I shall first adduce the 17th hymn of the fifth book, to which I have already alluded, as an expansion of R.V. x. 109.

Atharva-veda v. 17. (Verses 1–3 correspond with little variation to verses 1–3 of R.V. x. 109). 4. *Yām āhus “tārakā eshā vikeśi” iti ducheḥkhunān grāmam avapadyamānām | sā brahma-jyā vi dumoti rāsh-ṭraṁ yatra prāpūdi śasāḥ ulkushimān |* (verses 5 and 6 = verses 5 and 4 of R.V. x. 109). 7. *Ye garbhāḥ avapadyante jagad yach chāpalupyate | virāḥ ye tṛihyante mitho brahma-jyā hinasti tām |* 8. *Uta yat patayo dāsa striyāḥ pūrve abrahmanāḥ | brahmā ched hastam agrahīt sa eva patir ekadhā |* 9. *Brāhmanāḥ eva patir na rājanyo na vaiśyaḥ | tat sūryaḥ prabruvann eti panchabhyo mānavebhyaḥ |* (Verses 10 and 11 = verses 6 and 7 of R.V. x. 109). 12. *Nāsyā jyā śatawāhī kalyāṇi talpam*

a śayo | yasmīn rāṣṭre nirudhyate brahma-jyā achittā | 13. Na vikarṇaḥ prīḥusirās tasmīn veśmani jayate | yasmīn ityādi | 14. Nāśya kṣattā nishka-grīvaḥ sūnānūm eti agrataḥ | yasmīn ityādi | 15. Nāśya śvetaḥ kṛṣṇa-karṇo dhuri yukto mahīyate | yasmīn ityādi | 16. Nāśya kehettre puṣkaraṇī nāṇḍikaṁ jayate viśam | yasmīn ityādi | 17. Nāśmai prīṣṇīm vi duhanti ye 'śyāḥ doham upāsate | yasmīn ityādi | 18. Nāśya dhenuḥ kalyāṇī nūnaḍvān saḥate yugam | vijānir yatra brāhmaṇo rātriṁ vasati pāpayā |

" 4. That calamity which falls upon the village, of which they say, 'this is a star with dishevelled hair,' is in truth the *brāhmān's* wife, who ruins the kingdom; (and the same is the case) wherever (a country) is visited by a hare attended with meteors.
 7. Whenever any miscarriages take place, or any moving things are destroyed, whenever men slay each other, it is the *brāhmān's* wife who kills them. 8. And when a woman has had ten former husbands not *brāhmāns*, if a *brāhmān* take her hand (*i.e.* marry her), it is he alone who is her husband. 9. It is a *Brāhmaṇ* only that is a husband, and not a *Rājanya* or a *Vaiśya*. That (truth) the Sun goes forward proclaiming to the five classes of men (*pañcābhya mānavebhyah*),
 12. His (the king's) wife does not repose opulent (*śatavāhi*) and handsome upon her bed in that kingdom where a *brāhmān's* wife is foolishly shut up. 13. A son with large ears (*vikarṇaḥ*) and broad head is not born in the house in that kingdom, etc. 14. A charioteer with golden neckchain does not march before the king's hosts⁷³ in that kingdom, etc. 15. A white horse with black ears does not make a show yoked to his (the king's) chariot in that kingdom, etc. 16. There is no pond with blossoming lotuses⁷⁴ in his (the king's) grounds in that kingdom where, etc. 17. His (the king's) brindled cow is not milked by his milkmen in that kingdom, etc. 18. His (the king's) milch cow does not thrive, nor does his ox endure the yoke, in that country where a *Brāhmaṇ* passes the night wretchedly without his wife."

This hymn appears to show that, however extravagant the pretensions of the *Brāhmaṇs* were in other respects, they had, even at the comparatively late period when it was composed, but little regard to

⁷³ The word here in the original is *sūnānūm*, with which it is difficult to make any sense. Should we not read *senānūm*?

⁷⁴ Compare R.V. x. 107, 10.

the purity of the sacerdotal blood, as they not only intermarried with women of their own order, or even with women who had previously lived single, but were in the habit of forming unions with the widows of Rājanyas or Vaiśyas,⁷⁵ if they did not even take possession of the wives of such men while they were alive.⁷⁶ Even if we suppose these women to have belonged to priestly families, this would only show that it was no uncommon thing for females of that class to be married to Rājanyas or Vaiśyas—a fact which would, of course, imply that the caste system was either laxly observed, or only beginning to be introduced among the Indians of the earlier Vedic age. That, agreeably to ancient tradition, Brāhman intermarried with Rājanya women at the period in question, is also distinctly shewn

⁷⁵ That the remarriage of women was customary among the Hindus of those days is also shewn by A.V. ix. 5, 27 f., quoted in my paper on Yama, Jour. R. A. S. for 1865, p. 299.

⁷⁶ This latter supposition derives a certain support from the emphasis with which the two verses in question (A. V. v. 17, 8, 9) assert that the Brāhman was the only true husband. Whence, it may be asked, the necessity for this strong and repeated asseveration, if the Rājanya and Vaiśya husbands were not still alive, and prepared to claim the restoration of their wives? The verses are, however, explicable without this supposition.

It is to be observed, however, that no mention is here made of S'ūdras as a class with which Brāhman intermarried. S'ūdras were not Āryas, like the three upper classes. This distinction is recognised in the following verse of the A.V. xix. 62, 1: "Make me dear to gods, dear to princes, dear to every one who beholds me, both to S'ūdra and to Ārya." (Unless we are to suppose that both here and in xix. 32, 8, *ārya* = a Vaiśya, and not *ārya*, is the word). In S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, Kāṇva Sākhā (Adhvara Kāṇva, i. 6), the same thing is clearly stated in these words (already partially quoted above, p. 176), for a copy of which I am indebted to Prof. Müller: *Tan na sarva eva prapadyeta na hi devāḥ sarveṇaiva sangachhante | ārya eva brāhmaṇo vā kshattriyo vā vaiśyo vā te hi yajniyāḥ | no eva sarveṇaiva samvadeta na hi devāḥ sarveṇaiva samvadante āryeṇaiva brāhmaṇena vā kshattriyeṇa vā vaiśyena vā te hi yajniyāḥ | yady enam s'ūdreṇa samvādo vindet "ittham enam nichakshva" ity anyam brūyād eshu dikshitasopachāraḥ*. "Every one cannot obtain this (for the gods do not associate with every man), but only an Ārya, a Brāhman, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. Nor should one talk with everybody (for the gods do not talk with every body), but only with an Ārya, a Brāhman, or a Kshattriya, or a Vaiśya, for these can sacrifice. If any one have occasion to speak to a S'ūdra, let him say to another person, 'Tell this man so and so.' This is the rule for an initiated man."

In the corresponding passage of the Mādhyandina Sākhā (p. 224 of Weber's edition) this passage is differently worded.

From Manu (ix. 149-157; x. 7 ff.) it is clear that Brāhman intermarried with S'ūdra women, though the offspring of those marriages was degraded.

by the story of the rishi Chyavana and Sukanyā, daughter of king Saryāta, narrated in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, and quoted in my paper entitled "Contributions to a Knowledge of Vedic Mythology," No. ii., in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1866, pp. 11 ff. See also the stories of the rishi Śyāvāśva, who married the daughter of king Rathavīti, as told by the commentator on Rig-veda, v. 61, and given in Professor Wilson's translation, vol. iii. p. 344.

The next hymn, from the same work, sets forth with great liveliness and vigour the advantages accruing to princes from the employment of a domestic priest.

Atharva-veda, iii. 19, 1. *Samśitam me idam brahma samśitam vīryam balam | samśitam kshatram ajaram astu jishnu (? jishnu) yeshām asmi purohitaḥ |* 2. *Sam aham eshām rāshṭraṁ syāmi sam ojo vīryam balam | r̥ṣichāmi śatrūnām bāhūn anena harishā aham |* 3. *Nichaiḥ padyantam adhare bhavantu ye naḥ sūrim maghavānam prītanyān | kshināmi brahmanā 'mitrān unnayāmi svān aham |* 4. *Tikshṇīyānsaḥ paraśor agne tikshṇatarāḥ uta | Indrasya vajrāt tikshṇīyānso yeshām asmi purohitaḥ |* 5. *Eshām aham āyudhā saṁ syāmi eshām rāshṭraṁ svīraṁ vardhayāmi | eshām kshatram ajaram astu jishnu eshām chitān vīse avantu devāḥ |* 6. *Uddharshantām Maghavan vājināni ud vīrānām jayātām etu ghoshāḥ | prithagghoshāḥ ululayaḥ ketumantaḥ udīratām | devāḥ Indra-jyeshthāḥ Maruto yantu senayā |* 7. *Preta jayata naraḥ ugrāḥ vaḥ santu bāhavaḥ | tikshṇeshavo abala-dhanvāno hata ugrāyudhāḥ abalān ugra-bāhavaḥ |* 8. *Acasṛishṭā parā pata śarāye brahma-samśito | jayāmitrān pra padyasva jaky eshām varam-varam mā 'mishām mochi kāsḥana |*

"1. May this prayer of mine be successful; may the vigour and strength be complete, may the power be perfect, undecaying, and victorious of those of whom I am the priest (*purohita*). 2. I fortify their kingdom, and augment their energy, valour, and force. I break the arms of their enemies with this oblation. 3. May all those who fight against our wise and prosperous (prince) sink downward, and be prostrated. With my prayer I destroy his enemies and raise up his friends. 4. May those of whom I am the priest be sharper than an axe, sharper than fire, sharper than Indra's thunderbolt. 5. I strengthen their weapons; I prosper their kingdom rich in heroes. May their power be undecaying and victorious. May all the gods foster their designs.

6. May their valorous deeds, o Maghavat, burst forth ; may the noise of the conquering heroes arise ; may their distinct shouts, their clear yells, go up ; may the gods, the Maruts, with Indra as their chief, march forward with their host. 7. Go, conquer, ye warriors ; may your arms be impetuous. Ye with the sharp arrows, smite those whose bows are powerless ; ye whose weapons and arms are terrible (smite) the feeble. 8. When discharged, fly forth, o arrow, sped by prayer. Vanquish the foes, assail, slay all the choicest of them ; let not one escape."

The two following hymns from the same collection declare the guilt, the peril, and disastrous consequences of oppressing Brāhmanas, and robbing them of their property. The threats and imprecations of haughty sacerdotal insolence could scarcely be expressed more energetically.

Atharva-veda, v. 18. 1. *Naitām te devāḥ adadus tubhyaṁ nṛpate attve | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya gām jighatso anādyām |* 2. *Aksha-drugdho rājanyo pūpaḥ ūtma-parājilaḥ | sa brāhmaṇasya gām adyād "adya jivāni mā śvaḥ"* | 3. *Āviṣṭitā agha-vishā pridākūr iva charmaṇā | mā brāhmaṇasya rājanya trishṭā eṣhā gaur anādyā |* 4. *Nir vai kshattriṇaṁ nayati hanti varcho agnir ārabdho vi dunoti sarvam | yo brāhmaṇam manyate annam eva sa viśhasya pibati taimātasya |* 5. *Yaḥ enaṁ hanti mṛidum manyamāno deva-pīyur dhana-kāmo na chittāt | saṁ tasya Indro hṛidaye agnim indhe ubho enaṁ dviṣṭo nabhasi charantaṁ |* 6. *Na brāhmaṇo hīṁsitavyo agniḥ priyatanor iva | Soṁo hi asya dāyādaḥ Indro veyābhīśastipāḥ |* 7. *Satāpāshthām nī girati tām na śaknoti nīḥkḥidam | annaṁ yo brāhmaṇam malvaḥ svādu admīti manyate |* 8. *Jihvā jyā bhavati kulmalaṁ vān nāḍikāḥ dantās tapasā 'bhīdagdhāḥ | tebhīr brahmā vidhyati vṛṣa-pīyūn hṛīd-balair dhanurbhīr deva-jūtaiḥ |* 9. *Tikṣṇeshavo brāhmaṇāḥ hetimanto yām asyanti śaravyām na sū mṛiṣhā | anuhāya tapasā manyuṇā cha uta dūrād ava bhīndanti enam |* 10. *Ye sahasram arājann āsan daśa-satū uta | te brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhwā Vaitahavyāḥ parābhavan |* 11. *Gaur eva tām hanyamānā Vaitahavyān avatīrat | ye Kesaraprābandhāyās charamājām apechiran |* 12. *Eka-satām tūḥ janatūḥ yāḥ bhūmīr vyadhūnuta | prajāṁ hīṁsitvā brāhmaṇim asambhavyam parābhavan |* 13. *Deva-pīyus charati marttyeṣhu gara-gīrṇo bhavati aṣṭhi-bhūyān | yo brāhmaṇaṁ deva-bandhuṁ hīnasti na sa pīṭri-yaṇam apyoti lokam |* 14. *Agnir vai naḥ padavāyaḥ Somo dāyāda uchyate |*

*kantābhisastā Indras tathā tad vedhaso viduḥ | 15. Ishur iva digdhā
nripate pridākūr iva gopate | sū brāhmaṇasya ishur ghorā tayā vidhyati
piyataḥ |*

“1. King, the gods have not given thee (this cow) to eat. Do not, o Rājanya (man of royal descent), seek to devour the Brāhman's cow, which is not to be eaten. 2. The wretched Rājanya, unlucky in play, and self-destroyed, will eat the Brāhman's cow, saying, ‘Let me live to-day, (if I can) not (live) to-morrow.’ 3. This cow, clothed with a skin, contains deadly poison, like a snake. Beware, Rājanya, of this Brāhman's (cow); she is ill-flavoured, and must not be eaten. 4. She takes away his regal power, destroys his splendour, consumes him entire like a fire which has been kindled. The man who looks upon the Brāhman as mere food to be eaten up, drinks serpent's poison. 5. Indra kindles a fire in the heart of that contemner of the gods who smites the Brāhman, esteeming him to be inoffensive, and foolishly covets his property. Heaven and earth abhor the man who (so) acts. 6. A Brāhman is not to be wronged, as fire (must not be touched) by a man who cherishes his own body. Soma is his (the Brāhman's) kinsman, and Indra shields him from imprecations. 7. The wicked (?) man who thinks the priests' food is sweet while he is eating it, swallows (the cow) bristling with a hundred sharp points, but cannot digest her. 8. The priest's tongue is a bow-string, his voice is a barb, and his windpipe is arrow-points smeared with fire. With these god-directed, and heart-subduing bows, the priest pierces the scornors of the gods. 9. Brāhmans bearing sharp arrows, armed with missiles, never miss their mark when they discharge a shaft. Shooting with fiery energy and with anger, they pierce (the enemy) from afar. 10. The descendants of Vituhavya, who ruled over a thousand men, and were ten hundred in number, were overwhelmed after they had eaten a Brāhman's cow.” 11. The cow herself, when she was slaughtered, destroyed them,—those men who cooked the last she-goat of Kesaraprābandhā. 12. Those hundred persons whom the earth shook off, after they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner. 13. He lives among mortals a hater of the gods; infected with poison he becomes reduced to a skeleton; he who wrongs a Brāhman the kins-

” I am not aware whether any traces of this story are discoverable in the Purāṇas or Mahābhārata. See the first verso of the hymn next to be quoted.

man of the deities, fails to attain to the heaven of the Forefathers. 14. Agni is called our leader; Soma our kinsman. Indra neutralizes imprecations (directed against us); this the wise understand. 15. Like a poisoned arrow, o king, like a serpent, o lord of cows,—such is the dreadful shaft of the Brāhman, with which he pierces his enemies.”

Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1. *Atimātram avardhanta nod iva divam aspriṣan | Bhṛiguṁ hiṁsitrā Sṛñjayāḥ Vaitahavyāḥ parābhavan | 2. Brihatsāmanam Angirasam ārpayan brāhmaṇāṁ janūḥ | petras teshū ubhayādam avis tokāny ārayat | 3. Ye brāhmaṇam pratyashṭhivan ye vā 'smin śuklam īshire | asnas te madhye kulyāyāḥ keśān khādanta āsate | 4. Brahmagavī pacyamānū yāvat sū 'bhi vijangahe | tejo rāshṭrasya nirhanti na vīro jāyate vṛishā | 5. Krūram asyāḥ āsanaṁ trisṭam piṣitam asyate | kshīraṁ yad asyāḥ pīyate tad vai pitriṣhu kilbisham | 6. Ugro rājā manyamāno brāhmaṇam yaj jighatsati | parā tat sichyate rāshṭram brāhmaṇo yatra jiyate | 7. Aṣṭāpadi chaturakṣī chatuḥ-śrotrā chaturhanuḥ | dehyāsyā dvijihvā bhūtvā sū rāshṭram avadhūnute brahmajyasya | 8. Tad vai rāshṭram āravati nūvam dhinnūm ivodakam | brāhmāṇam yatra hiṁsanti tad rāshṭraṁ hanti ducehhunā | 9. Tam vṛikṣhūḥ apa sādānti "chhāyām no mopa gūḥ" iti | yo brāhmaṇasya saddhanam abhi Nārada manyate | 10. Viśham etad deva-kṛtām rājā Varuṇo abrauit | na brāhmaṇasya gām jagdhe rāshṭre jūgūra kaśchana | 11. Navaiṇa tāḥ navatayo gūḥ bhūmir vyadhūnuta | prajāṁ hiṁsitrā brāhmaṇim asam-bhavyam parābhavan | 12. Yām mṛitāyānubadhanti kūḍyam pada-yopanīm | tad vai brahmajya te devāḥ upastaraṇam abruvan | 13. Āsrūṇi kṛipamūṇasya yāni jīṭasya vāvṛitūḥ | tam vai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhāgam adhārayan | 14. Yena mṛitām snapayanti śmaśrūṇi yena undate | tam vai brahmajya te devāḥ apām bhāgam adhārayan | 15. Na varshaṁ Maitravaruṇam brahmajyam abhi varshati | nāsmā samitiḥ kalpate na mitram nayate vaśam |*

“1. The Sṛñjayas, descendants of Vītahavya, waxed exceedingly; they almost touched the sky; but after they had injured Bhṛigu, they were overwhelmed. 2. When men pierced Brihatsāman, a Brāhman descended from Angiras, a ram with two rows of teeth swallowed their children. 3. Those who spit, or throw filth (?) upon a Brāhman, sit eating hair in the midst of a stream of blood. 4. So long as this Brāhman's cow is cut up (?) and cooked, she destroys the glory of the kingdom; no vigorous hero is born there. 5. It is cruel to

slaughter her; her ill-flavoured flesh is thrown away. When her milk is drunk, that is esteemed a sin among the Forefathers. 6. Whenever a king, fancying himself mighty, seeks to devour a Brāhman, that kingdom is broken up, in which a Brāhman is oppressed. Becoming eight-footed, four-eyed, four-eared, four-jawed, two-faced, two-tongued, she (the cow) shatters the kingdom of the oppressor of Brāhmans. 8. (Ruin) overflows that kingdom, as water swamps a leaky boat: calamity smites that country in which a priest is wronged. 9. Even trees, o Nārada, repel, and refuse their shade to, the man who claims a right to the property of a Brāhman. This (property), as king Varuṇa hath said, has been turned into a poison by the gods. No one who has eaten a Brāhman's cow continues to watch (*i.e.* to rule) over a country. 11. Those nine nineties (of persons) whom the earth shook off, when they had wronged the priestly race, were overwhelmed in an inconceivable manner (see verse 12 of the preceding hymn). 12. The gods have declared that the cloth wherewith a dead man's feet are bound shall be thy pall, thou oppressor of priests. 13. The tears which flow from a persecuted man as he laments,—such is the portion of water which the gods have assigned to thee, thou oppressor of priests. 14. The gods have allotted to thee that portion of water wherewith men wash the dead, and moisten beards. 15. The rain of Mitra and Varuṇa does not descend on the oppressor of priests. For him the battle has never a successful issue; nor does he bring his friend into subjection."

The attention of the reader is directed to the intensity of contempt and abhorrence which is sought to be conveyed by the coarse imagery contained in verses 3, and 12-14, of this last hymn.

There is another section of the same Veda, xii. 5, in which curses similar to those in the last two hymns are fulminated against the oppressors of Brāhmans. The following are specimens:

Atharva-veda, xii. 5, 4. *Brahma padavūyam brāhmaṇo 'dhipatiḥ |*
 5. *Tām ādadānasya brahma-gavīm jinato brāhmaṇān kshattriyaśya |*
 6. *Apa krāmati sūṇṛitū vīryam punyū lakṣmīḥ |* 7. *Ojaścha tejaś cha sahaś cha balaṁ cha vāk cha indriyaṁ cha śrīś cha dharmaś cha |*
 8. *Brahma cha kshattraṁ cha rāṣṭraṁ cha viśaś cha tvishiś cha yaśaś cha varchaś cha draviṇaṁ cha |* 9. *Āyus cha rūpaṁ cha nāma cha kīrttiś cha prāṇaś cha apānaś cha chakṣuś cha śrotraṁ cha |* 10. *Payaś cha rasaś*

*cha annañ cha annādyañ cha řitañ cha satyañ cha ishñañ cha pūrttuñ
cha prajā cha paśavaś cha* | 11. *Tāni sarvāñi apa krāmanti brahma-gavīm
ādadanasya jinato brāhmaṇaṁ kṣhattriyaśya* | 12. *Sā eśhā bhīmā brahma-
gavī agha-vishū* | 13. *Sarvāñy asyām ghorāñi sarve cha mṛitya-
vaḥ* | 14. *Sarvāñy asyām krūrāñi sarve puruṣha-vadhāḥ* | 15. *Sā
brahma-jyañ deva-pīyūm brahmagavī ādiyamānā mṛityoḥ padbīṣe ā
dyati* |

“4. Prayer (*brāhmān*) is the chief (thing); the Brāhman is the lord (*adhīpati*). 5. From the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow, and oppresses the Brāhman, (6) there depart piety, valour, good fortune, (7) force, keenness, vigour, strength, speech, energy, prosperity, virtue, (8) prayer (*brāhmān*), royalty, kingdom, subjects, splendour, renown, lustre, wealth, (9) life, beauty, name, fame, inspiration and expiration, sight, hearing, (10) milk, sap, food, eating, righteousness, truth, oblation, sacrifice, offspring, and cattle;—(11) all these things depart from the Kshattriya who seizes the priest's cow. 12. Terrible is the Brāhman's cow, filled with deadly poison. . . . 13. In her reside all dreadful things, and all forms of death, (14) all cruel things, and all forms of homicide. 15. When seized, she binds in the fetters of death the oppressor of priests and despiser of the gods.”

A great deal more follows to the same effect, which it would be tiresome to quote.

I subjoin some further texts, in which reference is made to *brāhmāns*.

In xix. 22, 21 (= xix. 23, 30) it is said :

*Brahma-jyeshṥhā sambhṛitā vīryāñi brahmāgre jyeshṥhañ divam ātatūna |
bhūtānām brahmā prathamo ha jajne tenūrhati brahmaṇā sparddhitūn
kaḥ* |

“Powers are collected, of which prayer (or sacred science, *brāhmān*) is the chief. Prayer, the chief, in the beginning stretched out the sky. The priest (*brāhmān*) was born the first of beings. Who, then, ought to vie with the *brāhmān*.”

A superhuman power appears to be ascribed to the *brāhmān* in the following passages,—unless by *brāhmān* we are to understand Bṛihaspati :—

xix. 9, 12. *Brahmā Prajāpatir Dhātā lokāḥ vedāḥ sapta-riṣhaya
'gnayaḥ | tair me kṛitañ svastyayanam Indro me śarma yachhatu brahmā
me śarma yachhatu* |

"May a prosperous journey be granted to me by prayer, Prajāpati, Dhātṛi, the worlds, the Vedas, the seven rishis, the fires; may Indra grant me felicity, may the *brāhmān* grant me felicity."

xix. 43, 8. *Yatra brahma-vido yānti dīkshayā tapasā saha | brahmā mā tatra nayatu brahmā brahma dadhātu me | brahmane svāhā.*

"May the *brāhmān* conduct me to the place whither the knowers of prayer (or of sacred science) go by initiation with austerity. May the *brāhmān* impart to me sacred science. *Svāhā* to the *brāhmān*."

The wonderful powers of the Brahmacārin, or student of sacred science, are described in a hymn (A.V. xi. 5), parts of which are translated in my paper on the progress of the Vedic Religion, pp. 374 ff.

And yet with all this sacredness of his character the priest must be devoted to destruction, if, in the interest of an enemy, he is seeking by his ceremonies to effect the ruin of the worshipper.

v. 8, 5. *Yam amī puro dadhire brahmānam apabhūṭaye | Indra sa me adhaspadaṁ tam pratyasyāmi mṛityave |*

"May the *brāhmān* whom these men have placed in their front (as a *purohita*) for our injury, fall under my feet, o Indra; I hurl him away, to death (compare A.V. vii. 70, 1 ff.).

SECT. IV.—*Opinions of Professor R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug regarding the origin of caste among the Hindus.*

I shall in this section give some account of the speculations of Prof. R. Roth and Dr. M. Haug on the process by which they conceive the system of castes to have grown up among the Indians.

The remarks which I shall quote from Prof. Roth are partly drawn from his third "Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda," p. 117, and partly from his paper on "Brahma and the Brāhmans," in the first volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society.⁷⁸ He says in the latter essay: "The religious development of India is attached through the course of three thousand years to the word *brāhmā*. This conception might be taken as the standard for estimating the progress of thought directed to divine things, as at every step taken by the latter, it has gained a new form, while at the same time

⁷⁸ The reader who is unacquainted with German will find a fuller account of this article in the Benares Magazine for October 1851, pp. 823 ff.

it has always embraced in itself the highest spiritual acquisition of the nation. . . . The original signification of the word *brāhmā*, as we easily discover it in the Vedic hymns, is that of prayer; not praise or thanksgiving, but that invocation which, with the force of the will directed to God, seeks to draw him to itself, and to receive satisfaction from him. . . . From this oldest sense and form of *brāhmā* (neuter) was formed the masculine noun *brahmā*, which was the designation of those who pronounced the prayers, or performed the sacred ceremonies; and in nearly all the passages of the Rig-veda in which it was thought that this word must refer to the Brahmanical caste, this more extended sense must be substituted for the other more limited one. . . . From this sense of the word *brahmā*, nothing was more natural than to convert this offerer of prayer into a particular description of sacrificial priest: so soon as the ritual began to be fixed, the functions which were before united in a single person, who both prayed to the gods and sacrificed to them, became separated, and a priesthood interposed itself between man and God.”⁷⁹

Then further on, after quoting R.V. iv. 50, 4 ff. (see above, p. 247), Prof. Roth continues: “In this manner here and in many places of the liturgical and legal books, the promise of every blessing is attached to the maintenance of a priest by the king. Inasmuch as he supports and honours the priest, the latter ensures to him the favour of the gods. So it was that the caste of the Brāhmans arose and attained to power and consideration: first, they were only the single domestic priests of the kings; then the dignity became hereditary in certain families; finally a union, occasioned by similarity of interests, of these families in one larger community was effected; and all this in reciprocal action with the progress made in other respects by theological doctrine and religious worship. Still the extension of the power which fell into the hands of this priestly caste would not be perfectly comprehensible

⁷⁹ In his third Dissertation on the Literature and History of the Veda, Prof. Roth remarks: “In the Vedic age, access to the gods by prayer and sacrifice was open to all classes of the community; and it was only the power of expressing devotion in a manner presumed to be acceptable to the deities, or a readiness in poetical diction, that distinguished any individual or family from the mass, and led to their being employed to conduct the worship of others. The name given to such persons was *purohita*, one ‘put forward;’ one through whose mediation the gods would receive the offering presented. But these priests had as yet no especial sanctity or exclusive prerogative which would render their employment imperative.”

from this explanation alone. The relation of spiritual superiority in which the priests came to stand to the kings was aided by other historical movements."

Professor Roth then proceeds: "When—at a period more recent than the majority of the hymns of the Rig-veda—the Vedic people, driven by some political shock, advanced from their abodes in the Punjab further and further to the south, drove the aborigines into the hills, and took possession of the broad tract of country lying between the Ganges, the Jumna, and the Vindhya range; the time had arrived when the distribution of power, the relation of king and priest, could become transformed in the most rapid and comprehensive manner. Principalities separated in such various ways, such a division into tribes as had existed in the Punjab, were no longer possible here, where nature had created a wide and continuous tract with scarcely any natural boundaries to dis sever one part from another. Most of those petty princes who had descended from the north with their tribes must here of necessity disappear, their tribes become dissolved, and contests arise for the supreme dominion. This era is perhaps portrayed to us in the principal subject of the Mahābhārata, the contest between the descendants of Pāṇḍu and Kuru. In this stage of disturbance and complication, power naturally fell into the hands of those who did not directly possess any authority, the priestly races and their leaders, who had hitherto stood rather in the position of followers of the kings, but now rose to a higher rank. It may easily be supposed that they and their families, already honoured as the confidential followers of the princes, would frequently be able to strike a decisive stroke to which the king would owe his success. If we take further into account the intellectual and moral influence which this class possessed in virtue of the prerogative conceded to, or usurped by, them, and the religious feeling of the people, it is not difficult to comprehend how in such a period of transition powerful communities should arise among the domestic priests of petty kings and their families, should attain to the highest importance in every department of life, and should grow into a caste which, like the ecclesiastical order in the middle ages of Christianity, began to look upon secular authority as an effluence from the fulness of their power, to be conferred at their will; and how, on the other hand, the numerous royal families should

sink down into a nobility which possessed, indeed, the sole right to the kingly dignity, but at the same time, when elected by the people, required inauguration in order to their recognition by the priesthood, and were enjoined above all things to employ only Brāhmanas as their counsellors."

In order to render the probability of this theory still more apparent, Professor Roth goes on to indicate the relations of the other castes to the Brāhmanas. The position which the three superior classes occupied in the developed Brahmanical system was one of gradation, as they differed only in the extent of their religious and civil prerogatives, the Kshattriya being in some respects less favoured than the Brāhman, and the Vaiśya than the Kshattriya. With the Sūdras, on the other hand, the case was quite different. They were not admitted to sacrifice, to the study of the Vedas, or to investiture with the sacred cord. From this Professor Roth concludes that the three highest castes stood in a closer connection with each other, whether of descent, or of culture, than any of them did to the fourth. The Indian body politic, moreover, was complete without the Sūdras. The Brāhman and Kshattriya were the rulers, while the Vaiśyas formed the mass of the people. The fact of the latter not being originally a separate community is confirmed by the employment assigned to them, as well as by their name Vaiśya, derived from the word *Viś*, a word which in the Veda designates the general community, especially considered as the possessor of the pure Aryan worship and culture, in contradistinction to all barbarian races. Out of this community the priesthood arose in the manner above described, while the Kshattriyas were the nobility, descended in the main from the kings of the earlier ages. The fourth caste, the Sūdras, consisted, according to Prof. Roth, of a race subdued by the Brahmanical conquerors, whether that race may have been a branch of the Arian stock which immigrated at an earlier period into India, or an autochthonous Indian tribe.

In his tract on the origin of Brāhmanism, from which I have already quoted (see above, pp. 11 and 14), Dr. Haug thus states his views on this question: "It has been of late asserted that the original parts of the Vedas do not know the system of caste. But this conclusion was prematurely arrived at without sufficiently weighing the evidence. It is true the caste system is not to be found in such a developed state;

the duties enjoined to the several castes are not so clearly defined as in the Law Books and Purāṇas. But nevertheless the system is already known in the earlier parts of the Vedas, or rather presupposed. The barriers only were not so insurmountable as in later times." (p. 6). This view he supports by a reference to the Zend Avesta, in which he finds evidence of a division of the followers of Ahura Mazda into the three classes of Atharvas, Rathaesthas, and Vastrya fshuyans, which he regards as corresponding exactly to the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas of India. The Atharvas, or priests, in particular formed a class or even a caste; they had secrets which they were prohibited from divulging; they were the spiritual guides of their nation, and none but the son of a priest could become a priest—a rule which the Parsis still maintain. From these facts, Dr. Haug deduces the conclusion that the nation of which both the Indo-Arians and the Perso-Arians originally formed a part had been divided into three classes even before the separation of the Indians from the Iranians; and he adds (p. 7): "From all we know, the real origin of caste appears to go back to a time anterior to the composition of the Vedic hymns, though its development into a regular system with insurmountable barriers can be referred only to the latest period of the Vedic times."

I shall furnish a short analysis of some other parts of Dr. Haug's interesting tract. He derives (p. 7) the word *brāhmaṇa* from *brāhmān* (neuter), which originally meant "a sacred song, prayer," as an effusion of devotional feeling. *Brāhmā* was the "sacred element" in the sacrifice, and signified "the soul of nature, the productive power." The Brahmanic sacrifices had production as their object, and embraced some rites which were intended to furnish the sacrificer with a new spiritual body wherewith he might ascend to heaven, and others calculated to provide him with cattle and offspring (p. 8). The symbol of this *brāhmā*, or productive power, which must always be present at the sacrifice, was a bunch of *kuśa* grass, generally called *Veda* (a word alternating with *brāhmā*), which, at the sacrifice, was passed from one priest to another, and given to the sacrificer and his wife. The corresponding symbol of twigs used by the Parsis was called in Zend *bāresma*, which Dr. Haug considers to have been originally the same as *brāhmā* (p. 9). As it was essential to the success of these sacrifices

that every portion of the complicated ceremonial should be accurately performed, and as mistakes could not be avoided, it became necessary to obviate by an atonement (*prāyaścitti*) the mischief which would otherwise have ensued; and the priest appointed to guard against or expiate such mistakes, when committed by the other priests—the *hotṛi*, *adhvaryu*, and *udgātṛi*—was called, “from the most ancient times,” the *brāhmān* (masculine), who was a functionary pre-eminently supplied with *brāhmā* (neuter) or sacred knowledge, and thereby connected “with the soul of nature, the cause of all growth, the last cause of all sacrificial rites” (p. 10). The office of *brāhmān* was not one to which mere birth gave a claim, but had to be attained by ability and study. The descendants of these *brāhmān* priests were the Brāhmans, and the speculations of the most eminent *brāhmān* priests on divine things, and especially on sacrificial rites, are contained in the works called Brāhmaṇas (p. 12). Dr. Haug considers that no such a class as that of the *brāhmān* priests existed at the early period when the ancestors of the Hindus separated from those of the Parsis in consequence of religious differences. The few rites preserved by the Parsis as relics of the remotest antiquity closely resemble those of the Brāhmans. Dr. Haug finds that in the Homa ritual of the former (corresponding to the Soma ceremony of the latter) only two priests, called *Zota* and *Raspi* or *Rathuci*, are required, whom he recognises as corresponding to the *Hotṛi* and *Adhvaryu* of the latter. So long as the rites were simple, no *brāhmān* priest was wanted; but when they became complicated and multifarious, the necessity for such a functionary arose. And it was only then that the sons of the *brāhmāns*, i.e. the Brāhmans, could rise through the possession of sacred knowledge, derived from their fathers, to great power, and form themselves into a regular caste. The development of these ceremonies out of their primitive simplicity into the complexity and multifariousness which they ultimately assumed must, Dr. Haug thinks, have been the work of many centuries. This transformation must have taken place in the region bordering on the Sarasvatī, where the expansion of the Brahmanical system, and the elevation of the Brāhmans to full spiritual supremacy, is to be sought, before the Indo-Arians advanced south-eastwards into Hindostan proper (p. 14). The ascendancy of the Brāhmans was not however attained without opposition on the part of the kings (p. 18). Dr. Haug concludes by relating the reception

of Viśvāmitra into the order of Brāhmanas, and by giving some account of the rishis and the several classes into which they were divided.

As the question is generally stated by Dr. Haug in pages 6 and 12 ff., the difference between him and other European scholars is one of age and not of principle, for neither party admits any distinction of race or congenital diversity between the three superior castes or classes.

CHAPTER IV.

EARLY CONTESTS BETWEEN THE BRAHMANS AND KSHATTRIYAS.

I proceed to give some legendary illustrations of the struggle which no doubt occurred in the early ages of Hindu history between the Brāhmanas and the Kshattriyas, after the former had begun to constitute a fraternity exercising the sacerdotal profession, but before the respective provinces of the two classes had been accurately defined by custom, and when the members of each were ready to encroach on the prerogatives claimed as their own exclusive birthright by the other.

SECT. I.—*Manu's Summary of refractory and submissive monarchs.*

I shall begin with the following passage, which we find in the Institutes of Manu, vii. 38 ff., regarding the impious resistance, as the lawgiver considered it, of certain monarchs to the legitimate claims of the priests, and the dutiful behaviour of others.

38. *Ṛiddhāṁś cha nityaṁ seveta viprān veda-vidāḥ śuchān | vṛiddha-sevī hi satatāṁ rakshobhir api pūjyate |* 39. *Tebhyo 'dhigachhed vina-yaṁ vinītātma 'pi nityaśaḥ | vinītātma hi nṛpatir na vinaśyati karchi-chit |* 40. *Bahavo 'vinayād nashṭāḥ rājānaḥ sa-parichhadāḥ | vanasthāḥ api rājyāni vinayāt pratipedire |* 41. *Veṇo vinashṭo 'vinayād Nahushaś chaiva pāṛthivaḥ | Sudāḥ Pūjavanaś⁸⁰ chaiva Sumukho Nimir eva cha |* 42. *Prithus tu vinayād rājyam prāptavān Manur eva cha | Kuveraś cha dhanaścāryam brāhmanyam chaiva Gādhijāḥ |*

“Let the king constantly reverence ancient Brāhmanas skilled in the Vedas, and pure in conduct; for he who always respects the aged is honoured even by the Rākshāsas. 39. Let him, even though humble-

⁸⁰ In support of this reading, see M. Loiseleur Deslongchamps's and Sir G. C. Haughton's notes on the passage.

minded, be continually learning submissiveness from them : for a submissive monarch never perishes. 40. Through want of this character many kings have been destroyed with all their possessions ; whilst by humility even hermits have obtained kingdoms. 41. Veṇa perished through want of submissiveness, and king Nahusha, and Sūdas the son of Pijavana, and Sumukha, and Nimi. 42. But through submissiveness Pṛithu and Manu attained kingly power, Kuvera the lordship of wealth, and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmītra) Brāhmanhood."⁸¹

Veṇa is again referred to in Manu ix. 66 f. : *Ayaṁ dvijair hi vidvadbhiḥ paśudharmo nigarhitaḥ | manushyānām api prokto Veṇe rājyam praśāsati |* 67. *Sa mahim akhilām bhunjan rājarshi-pravaraḥ purā | varṇānām sankarām chakre kāmopahata-chetanaḥ |*

"This custom (of raising up seed to a deceased brother or kinsman by his widow) fit only for cattle, was declared to be (law) for men also, when Veṇa held sway. This eminent royal rishi, who in former times ruled over the whole earth, having his reason destroyed by lust, occasioned a confusion of castes."

The legendary history of nearly all the kings thus stigmatized or celebrated can be traced in the Purāṇas and other parts of Indian literature. I shall supply such particulars of the refractory monarchs as I can find.

It will be observed that Manu is spoken of as an ordinary prince ; and that even Kuvera, the god of wealth, is said to have attained his dignity by the same species of merit as the other persons whom the writer eulogizes. I am not aware whether any legends exist to the same effect. Something of a contrary tendency is found with regard to the deity in question in the passage of the Mahābhārata, of which an extract is given above, in p. 140, note 249.

⁸¹ Kullūka remarks on this passage: *Gādhi-putro Viśvāmitras' cha kshattriyaḥ saṁśa tenaiva dehena brāhmanyam prāptavān | rājya-libhācasare brāhmanya-prāptir aprastutā 'pi vinayotkurshārtham uktā |* 'ndriśo 'yaṁ sūstrānushṭhāna-nishiddha-varjuna-rūpa-vinayodayena kshattriyo 'pi dvitlabham brāhmanyam lebbe | "Viśvāmītra, the son of Gādhi, being a Kshattriya, obtained Brāhmanhood in the same body (i.e. without being again born in another body). The attainment of Brahmanhood by one who at the time held kingly authority, although an unusual occurrence, is mentioned to show the excellence of submissiveness. Through that quality, as exhibited in the observance of scriptural injunctions, and in abstinence from things forbidden, he, being a Kshattriya, obtained Brahmanhood, so difficult to acquire."

I have not met with any story of Sumukha's contest with the Brāhmins. Some MSS. read Suratha instead of Sumukha.

The name of Sudās, the son of Pijavana, occurs in several parts of the Rīg-veda. I shall return to him in relating the contest between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I begin with the story of Vena.

SECT. II.—*Legend of Vena.*

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, Vena was the son of Anga, and the descendant in the ninth generation of the first Manu, Svāyambhuva; the line of ancestors from the latter downwards being as follows: Uttānapāda, Dhruva, Ślishti, Rīpu, Chākshusha, the sixth Manu called Chākshusha, Uru, Anga (see Wilson's Vishṇu P. vol. i.). Vena thus belongs to a mythical age preceding by an enormous interval that of the descendants of Manu Vaivasvata mentioned in the preceding chapter of this volume; five Manvantaras, or periods of 308,571 years each, having intervened in the present Kalpa between the close of the Svāyambhuva, and the beginning of the existing, or Vaivasvata, Manvantara.

Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 13, 7 : *Parāśara uvācha | Sunāthā nāma yā kanyā Mrityoḥ prathama-jā 'bhavat | Angasya bhāryyā sa dattā tasyām Venas tv ajāyata | 8. Sa mātāmaha-doshena tena Mrityoḥ sūtātmajaḥ | nisargād iva Maitreya duṣṭaḥ eva vyajāyata | 9. Abhiskikto yadū rājye sa Venaḥ paramarshibhiḥ | ghoshayāmāsa sa tadā prithivyām prithivīpatiḥ | "na yashtavyaṁ na dātavyaṁ hotavyaṁ na kudāchana | bhoktā yajnasya kas tv anyo hy ahaṁ yajna-patiḥ sadā | 10. Tatas tam ṛishayaḥ sarve sampūjya prithivīpatim | ūchuḥ sāmakalāṁ saṁyāṁ Maitreya samupasthitāḥ | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ | 11. " Bho bho rājan śrinushva tvaṁ yad vadāmas tava prabho | rājya-dehopakāre yaḥ prajānām cha hitam param | 12. Dīrgha-sattrena deveṣāṁ sarva-yajneśvaraṁ Harim | pūjayishyāmo bhadraṁ te tatrāmśas te bhaviṣyati | 13. Yajnena yajna-puruṣo Vishṇuḥ samprīṇito vibhuḥ | asmābhir bhavataḥ kāmān sarvān eva pradāsyati | yajnair yajneśvaro yeshāṁ rūṣṭre sampūjyate Hariḥ | teshāṁ sarvepsitāvṛptīm dadāti nrīpa bhūbhujām" | Venaḥ uvācha | "mattaḥ ko 'bhyadhiko 'nyo 'sti kaś chārādhyo mamāparaḥ | ko 'yaṁ Harir iti khyāto yo vo yajneśvuro mataḥ | Brahmā Janārdano Rudraḥ Indro Vāyur Yamo Raviḥ |*

Hutabhog Varuṇo Dhātū Pūshū Bhūmir Nisūkarah | ete chāṇye cha ye devāḥ śāpānugraha-kārīnaḥ | nṛpasya te śarīra-sthāḥ sarva-devamayā nṛipaḥ | etaj jñātvā mayā 'jñaptāṁ yad yathā kriyatāṁ tathā | na dātavyaṁ na hotavyaṁ na yashṭavyaṁ cha vo dvijāḥ | 14. Bharttuḥ śuś-rūshaṇam dharmo yathā strīṇam paro mataḥ | mamājñā-pūlanaṁ dharmo bhavatāṁ cha tathā dvijāḥ" | ṛishayaḥ ūchuḥ | "dehy anujñam mahā-rāja ma dharmo yātu sankshayam | havishām pariṇāmo 'yaṁ yad etad akhilaṁ jagat | 15. Dharmo cha sankshayaṁ yāte kshīyate chākhilaṁ jagat" | Parāsarāḥ uvācha | iti vijnāpyamāno 'pi sa Veṇaḥ paramar-shibhiḥ | yadā dadāti nānujñam proktaḥ proktaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | tatas te munayaḥ sarve kopāmarsha-samanvitāḥ | "hanyatāṁ hanyatām pāpaḥ" ity ūchuḥ te parasparam | 16. "Yo yajna-purushaṁ devam anādi-ni-dhanam prabhum | vinindaty adhamāchūro na sa yogyo bhuvāḥ patih" | ity uktvā mantra-pūtais te kusair muni-gaṇāḥ nṛipam | nirjaghuḥ nihatam pūrvam bhagavan-nindanādīnā | tatas cha munayo rezuḥ dadṛiḥṣuḥ sar-vato dvija | "kim etad" iti chāsannam paprachhuḥ te janaṁ tada | 17. Akhyātāṁ cha janais teshāṁ "chauribhūtair arājake | rāshṭre tu lokair ārabdhām para-svādānaṁ āturaiḥ | 18. Teshāṁ udīrṇa-vegānāṁ chaurāṇāṁ muni-sattamāḥ | sumahān dṛiṣyate rezuḥ para-vittāpāhā-rīṇāṁ" | tataḥ sammantrya te sarve munayaḥ tasya bhūbhṛitāḥ | maman-thur ārum putrārtham anapatyasya yatnataḥ | mathyatas cha samuttas-thau tasyoroḥ purushaḥ kila | dagdha-sthūṇāpratīkāśaḥ kharvāṭāśyo 'tīhrasvakaḥ | 19. Kiṁ karomīti tān sarvān viprān āha sa chāturaḥ | nishīdeti tam ūchuḥ te nishīdās tena so 'bhavat | 20. Tatas tat-sambhavāḥ jātāḥ Vindhya-śaila-nivāsinaḥ | nishīdāḥ muni-śīrdūla pāpa-karmo-palakshaṇāḥ | 21. Tena dvāreṇa nishkrāntam tat pāpaṁ tasya bhūpateḥ | nishīdās te tathā jātāḥ Veṇa-kalmasha-sambhavāḥ | 22. Tato 'sya dak-shiṇāṁ hastam mamanthus te tadā dvijāḥ | mathyamāno cha tatrabhūt Prithur Vainyaḥ pratāpavān | dīpyamānaḥ sva-vapushā sākshāḥ Agnir ivojjvalan | 23. Ādyam ājagavaṁ nāma khāt papāta tato dhanuḥ | śarāś cha dicyāḥ nabhasaḥ kavachaṁ cha papāta ha | tasmin jāte tu bhūtāni samprahriṣṭāni sarvasaḥ | satputreṇa cha jātena Veṇo 'pi tridivāṁ yayau | pun-nāmo narakāt trūtaḥ sa tena sumahātmanā |

"7. The maiden named Sunīthā, who was the first-born of Mrityu (Death)⁸² was given as wife to Anga; and of her Veṇa was born. 8. This son of Mrityu's daughter, infected with the taint of his ma-

⁸² See above, p. 124, and note 230.

ternal grandfather, was born corrupt, as if by nature. 9. When Veṇa was inaugurated as king by the eminent rishis, he caused this proclamation to be made on the earth: 'Men must not sacrifice, or give gifts, or present oblations. Who else but myself is the enjoyer of sacrifices? I am for ever the lord of offerings.' 10. Then all the rishis approaching the king with respectful salutations, said to him in a gentle and conciliatory tone: 11. 'Hear, o king, what we have to say: 12. We shall worship Hari, the monarch of the gods, and the lord of all sacrifices, with a *Dirghasattra* (prolonged sacrifice), from which the highest benefits will accrue to your kingdom, your person, and your subjects. May blessings rest upon you! You shall have a share in the ceremony. 13. Vishṇu the lord, the sacrificial Male, being propitiated by us with this rite, will grant all the objects of your desire. Hari, the lord of sacrifices, bestows on those kings in whose country he is honoured with oblations, everything that they wish.' Veṇa replied: 'What other being is superior to me? who else but I should be adored? who is this person called Hari, whom you regard as the lord of sacrifice? Brahmā, Janārdana, Rudra, Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Ravi (the Sun), Agni, Varuṇa, Dhātṛi, Pūshan, Earth, the Moon,—these and the other gods who curse and bless are all present in a king's person: for he is composed of all the gods.'⁸³ Knowing this, ye must

⁸³ The orthodox doctrine, as stated by Manu, vii. 3 ff., coincides very nearly with Veṇa's estimate of himself, although the legislator does not deduce from it the same conclusions: 3. *Rakṣūrtham asya sarvasya rājānam aṣṭijāt prabhuḥ* | 4. *Indrānila-yamārākūṇām Agneś cha Varuṇasya cha* | *Chandra-Viṭteśayoś chaiva mūtrāḥ nirhṛitya sūśeuti* | 5. *Yasmād eṣūm surendrāṇām mūtrābhyo nirṇito nṛipaḥ* | *tasmād abhībhavaty eṣa sarva-bhūtāni tejasā* | 6. *Tapaty āditya-vach chaisha chakṣhūṁśi cha manūṁsi cha* | *na chainam bhūvi śaknoti laśchid apy abhīvikṣhitum* | 7. *So 'gnir bhavati Vāyus cha so 'rkaḥ Somaḥ sa Dharmarūḥ* | *sa Kuveraḥ sa Varuṇaḥ sa Mahendraḥ prabhūvataḥ* | 8. *Bīlo 'pi nūvamanatavo "manuṣyaḥ" iti bhūmipah* | *mahatī devatā hy eṣū nara-rūpeṇa tiṣṭhati* | "3. The lord created the king for the preservation of this entire world, (4) extracting the eternal essential particles of Indra, Vāyu, Yama, Sūrya, Agni, Varuṇa, Chandra, and Kuvera. 5. Inasmuch as the king is formed of the particles of all these gods, he surpasses all beings in brilliancy. 6. Like the Sun, he distresses both men's eyes and minds; and no one on earth can ever gaze upon him. 7. He is Agni, Vāyu, Sūrya, Soma, Yama, Kuvera, Varuṇa, and Indra, in majesty. 8. Even when a child a king is not to be despised under the idea that he is a mere man; for he is a great deity in human form."

In another passage, ix. 303, this is qualified by saying that the king should imitate the functions of the different gods: *Indrasyaṛkasya Vāyoścha Yamasya Varuṇasya cha* | *Chandrasyaṅgneḥ Pṛithivyās cha tejo vṛittān nṛipaś' charet* | This expanded in the next verses.

act in conformity with my commands. Brāhmans, ye must neither give gifts, nor present oblations nor sacrifices. 14. As obedience to their husbands is esteemed the highest duty of women, so is the observance of my orders incumbent upon you.' The rishis answered: 'Give permission, great king: let not religion perish: this whole world is but a modified form of oblations. 15. When religion perishes the whole world is destroyed with it.' When Vena, although thus admonished and repeatedly addressed by the eminent rishis, did not give his permission, then all the munis, filled with wrath and indignation, cried out to one another, 'Slay, slay the sinner. 16. This man of degraded life, who blasphemes the sacrificial Male, the god, the lord without beginning or end, is not fit to be lord of the earth.' So saying the munis smote with blades of kuśa grass consecrated by texts this king who had been already smitten by his blasphemy of the divine Being and his other offences. The munis afterwards beheld dust all round, and asked the people who were standing near what that was. 17. They were informed: 'In this country which has no king, the people, being distressed, have become robbers, and have begun to seize the property of others. 18. It is from these robbers rushing impetuously, and plundering other men's goods, that this great dust is seen? Then all the munis, consulting together, rubbed with force the thigh of the king, who was childless, in order to produce a son. From his thigh when rubbed there was produced a man like a charred log, with flat face, and extremely short. 19. 'What shall I do?' cried the man, in distress, to the Brāhmans. They said to him, 'Sit down' (*nishāda*); and from this he became a Nishāda. 20. From him sprang the Nishādas dwelling in the Vindhya mountains, distinguished by their wicked deeds. 21. By this means the sin of the king departed out of him; and so were the Nishādas produced, the offspring of the wickedness of Vena. 22. The Brāhmans then rubbed his right hand; and from it, when rubbed, sprang the majestic Prithu, Vena's son, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni. 23. Then the primeval bow called Ājagava fell from the sky, with celestial arrows, and a coat of mail. At Prithu's birth all creatures rejoiced. And through the birth of this virtuous son, Vena, delivered from the hell called Put⁸⁴ by this eminent person, ascended to heaven."

⁸⁴ This alludes to the fanciful derivation of *putra*, "son," from *put* + *tra*.

The *Harivaṁśa* (sect. 5) relates the same story thus, with little variation from the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*:

*Vaiśampāyanaḥ uvācha | Āsīd dharmasya goptā vai pūrvaṃ Atri-samaḥ
prabhuḥ | Atri-vaṁśa-samutpannas tv Ango nāma prajāpatiḥ | tasya
putro 'bharad Veno nātyarthaṁ dharmā-kovidāḥ | jāto Mrityu-sutāyām
vai Sunīthāyām prajāpatiḥ | sa mātāmaha-doshēṇa tena kālātma-jātma-jāḥ |
sva-dharmān prishṭhataḥ kṛtvā kāmāl lobhesho avarttata | maryādām
sthūpayāmāsa dharmāpetām sa pāṛthivāḥ | veda-dharmān atikrāmya so
'dharmā-nirato 'bharat | niḥ-srūdhya-rasakṣkārās tasmīn rājani śāsati |
prāvarttan na papuḥ somaṁ hutāṁ yajñeshu devatūḥ | "na yashṭvayāṁ
na hotaryāṁ" iti tasya prajāpatēḥ | āsīt pratijñā krūreyāṁ vināśe
samupasthite | aham ijjas cha yashṭū cha yajñas cheti kurūdraka |
"mayi yajñāḥ vidhātavyāḥ mayi hotaryāṁ" ity api | tam atikrānta-
maryādām ādadānam asāmpratam | ūchur maharshayaḥ sarve Marīchi-
pramukhās tadā | "vayāṁ dikṣhām pravakṣhyāmaḥ saṁvatsara-gaṇīm
bahūn | adharmaṁ kuru mā Vena naiṣa dharmāḥ sanātanaḥ | anṛaye
'treḥ prasūtas tam prajāpatir asaṁśayam | 'prajāś cha pūḥyishye
'ham" iti te samayaḥ kṛtāḥ" | tāṁs tathā bruvataḥ sarcān maharshīn
abravīt tadā | Venāḥ prakṣya durbuddhir imam artham anartha-eit |
Venāḥ uvācha | "srashṭū dharmasya kaś chānyaḥ śrotaryāṁ kasya vā
mayā | śrūta-cīrya-tapaḥ-satyair mayā vā kaś samo bhūvi | prabhavaṁ
sarva-bhūtānām dharmānām cha viśeshataḥ | samvīdhuḥ na vidur nūnam
bhavanto mām achetasāḥ | ichhan daheyam prithivīm plāvayeyāṁ jalais
tathā | dyām bhuvāṁ chaiva rundheyāṁ nātra 'kāryā vichāraṇā" | yadā
na śakyate mohād avalepūch cha pāṛthivāḥ | anūnetum tadā Venas tataḥ
kruddhūḥ maharshayaḥ | nigrihya tam mahātmāno viśphurantam mahū-
balaṁ | tato 'sya savyam ūrum te mamanthur jāta-manyavaḥ | tasmīns tu
mathyamāne vai rūjnah ūrau vijajñivān | hrasvo 'timātraḥ puruṣaḥ
krishṇas chāpi babhūva ha | sa bhītaḥ prāñjalir bhūtvā sthītaḥ Janā-
mejjaya | tam Atrir vikṛtaṁ dṛishṭvā nishidety abravīt tadā | nishāda-
vaṁśa-kartā 'sau babhūva vadatām vara | dhīcarān asṛjach chāpi Vena-
kalmasha-sambhavān | ye chānye Vindhya-nīlayās Tukhārās Tumburās
tathā | adharma-ruchayas tāta viddhi tūn Vena-sambhavān | tataḥ punar
mahātmānaḥ pūṇīm Venasya dakṣiṇam | arañīm iva saṁrabdhūḥ maman-
thur jāta-manyavaḥ | Prīthus tasmāt samuttasthau karāj jvalana-sanni-
bhaḥ | dīpyamanāḥ sva-capushā śakṣhād Agnir iva jvalan |*

"There was formerly a Prajāpati (lord of creatures), a protector of

righteousness, called Anga, of the race of Atri, and resembling him in power. His son was the Prajāpati Vena, who was but indifferently skilled in duty, and was born of Sunīthā, the daughter of Mr̥ityu. This son of the daughter of Kāla (Death), owing to the taint derived from his maternal grandfather, threw his duties behind his back, and lived in covetousness under the influence of desire. This king established an irreligious system of conduct: transgressing the ordinances of the Veda, he was devoted to lawlessness. In his reign men lived without study of the sacred books and without the vashaṭkāra, and the gods had no Soma-libations to drink at sacrifices. 'No sacrifice or oblation shall be offered,'—such was the ruthless determination of that Prajāpati, as the time of his destruction approached. 'I,' he declared, 'am the object, and the performer of sacrifice, and the sacrifice itself: it is to me that sacrifice should be presented, and oblations offered.' This transgressor of the rules of duty, who arrogated to himself what was not his due, was then addressed by all the great rishis, headed by Marīchi: 'We are about to consecrate ourselves for a ceremony which shall last for many years: practise not unrighteousness, o Vena: this is not the eternal rule of duty. Thou art in very deed a Prajāpati of Atri's race, and thou hast engaged to protect thy subjects.' The foolish Vena, ignorant of what was right, laughingly answered those great rishis who had so addressed him: 'Who but myself is the ordainer of duty? or whom ought I to obey? Who on earth equals me in sacred knowledge, in prowess, in austere fervour, in truth? Ye who are deluded and senseless know not that I am the source of all beings and duties. Hesitate not to believe that I, if I willed, could burn up the earth, or deluge it with water, or close up heaven and earth.' When owing to his delusion and arrogance Vena could not be governed, then the mighty rishis becoming incensed, seized the vigorous and struggling king, and rubbed his left thigh. From this thigh, so rubbed, was produced a black man, very short in stature, who, being alarmed, stood with joined hands. Seeing that he was agitated, Atri said to him 'Sit down' (*nishīda*). He became the founder of the race of the Nishādas, and also progenitor of the Dhīvaras (fishermen), who sprang from the corruption of Vena. So too were produced from him the other inhabitants of the Vindhya range, the Tukhāras, and Tumburas, who are prone to lawlessness. Then the mighty sages, excited and incensed, again rubbed

the right hand of Vena, as men do the *aragi* wood, and from it arose Prithu, resplendent in body, glowing like the manifested Agni."

Although the Harivaṁśa declares Vena to be a descendant of Atri, yet as the Prajāpati Atri is said in a previous section to have adopted Uttānapāda, Vena's ancestor, for his son (Hariv. sect. 2, verse 60, *Uttānapādaṁ jagrāha putram Atriḥ prajāpatiḥ*) there is no contradiction between the genealogy given here and in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa.

The story of Vena is told in the same way, but more briefly, in the Mahābhārata, Śāntip. sect. 59. After narrating the birth of Prithu, the writer proceeds, verse 2221 :

Tatas tu prāṇjalir Vaṅgyo maharshīṁś tām uvācha ha | "susūkṣhmaṁ me samutpannā buddhir dharmārtha-darśinī | anyā kim mayā kāryyaṁ tad me tattvena śaṁsata | yad mām bhavanto rakshyanti kāryam artha-samanvitaṁ | tad ahaṁ vai karishyāmi nātra kāryā vicāraṇā" | *tam āchus tatra devās te te chaiva paramarshayaḥ | "niyato yatra dharmo vai tvam aśankaḥ samāchara | priyāpriye parityajya samaḥ sarveshu jan-tushu | kāmā-krodhau cha lobhāṁ cha mānaṁ chotsṛijya dūrataḥ | yaś cha dharmāt parichaleḥ loke kaśchana mānavaḥ | nigrāhyās te eva-bāhubhyaṁ śaśvad dharmam avekṣatā | pratijñāṁ chādhirohasva manasā karmaṇā girā | 'pālayishyāmy aham bhaumam brahma' ity eva chāśakṛit | . . . adandyaḥ me dvijaś cheti pratijñānihi he vibho | lokaṁ cha sankarāt kṛitsnaṁ trātūsmīti parantapa"* | *Vaṅgyas tatas tām uvācha devān rishi-purogamān | "brāhmaṇāḥ me mahābhūgāḥ namasyāḥ puruṣarshabhūḥ"* | *"eram astv"* | *iti Vaṅgyas tu tair ukto brahmacūḍibhiḥ | purodhās chābhavat tasya Sukro brahmamayo nidhiḥ | mantriṇo Bālakhilyās cha Śārasvatyo gaṇas tathā | maharshir bhagavān Gargas tasya sāmvaatsaro bhavat |*

"The son of Vena (Prithu) then, with joined hands, addressed the great rishis: 'A very slender understanding for perceiving the principles of duty has been given to me by nature: tell me truly how I must employ it. Doubt not that I shall perform whatever you shall declare to me as my duty, and its object.' Then those gods and great rishis said to him: 'Whatever duty is enjoined perform it without hesitation, disregarding what thou mayest like or dislike, looking on all creatures with an equal eye, putting far from thee lust, anger, cupidity, and pride. Restrain by the strength of thine arm all those men who swerve from righteousness, having a constant regard to duty. And in thought, act, and word take upon thyself, and continually renew, the

engagement to protect the terrestrial Brāhmān (Veda, or Brāhmans?) And promise that thou wilt exempt the Brāhmans from punishment, and preserve society from the confusion of castes.' The son of Vena then replied to the gods, headed by the rishis: 'The great Brāhmans, the chief of men, shall be revered by me.' 'So be it,' rejoined those declarers of the Veda. Sukra, the depository of divine knowledge, became his purohita; the Bālakhilyas and Śarasvatyas his ministers; and the venerable Garga, the great rishi, his astrologer."

The character and conduct of Prithu, as portrayed in the last passage presents a strong, and when regarded from a Brahmanical point of view, an edifying, contrast to the contempt of priestly authority and disregard of Vedic observances which his predecessor had shewn.

In legends like that of Vena we see, I think, a reflection of the questions which were agitating the religious world of India at the period when the Purāṇas in which they appear were compiled, viz., those which were then at issue between the adherents of the Veda, and the various classes of their opponents, Bauddha, Jaina, Chārvāka, etc. These stories were no doubt written with a purpose. They were intended to deter the monarchs contemporary with the authors from tampering with those heresies which had gained, or were gaining, circulation and popularity, by the example of the punishment which, it was pretended, had overtaken the princes who had dared to deviate from orthodoxy in earlier times. Compare the account given of the rise of heretical doctrines in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 209 ff. vol. iii. of Dr. Hall's edition of Professor Wilson's translation), which the writer no doubt intended to have something more than a merely historical interest.

The legend of Vena is told at greater length, but with no material variation in substance, in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, iv. sections 13-15. See also Professor Wilson's note in his Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. in loco.

In ascribing to Vena an irreligious character and a contempt for the priests, the Purāṇas contradict a verse in the Rīg-veda x. 93, 14, in which (unless we suppose a different individual to be there meant) Vena is celebrated along with Duḥśīma, Prithavāna, and Rāma for his conspicuous liberality to the author of the hymn (*pra tad Duḥśīma Prithavāno Veno pra Rāmo vocam asure maghavatsu | yo yuktvāya pancha śata asmayu pathā viśrāvi eśhām*). The two other passages,

viii. 9, 10, and x. 148, 5, in which he is alluded to as the father of Pṛithu have been quoted above, p. 268.

I observe that a Vena, called Bhārgava (or a descendant of Bhṛigu), is mentioned in the list of traditional authors of hymns, given at the end of Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda, vol. ii., as the rishi of R.V. ix. 85, and x. 123.

SECT. III.—*Legend of Purūravas.*

Purūravas has been already alluded to (in pp. 158, 221, 226, 268, and 279 f.) as the son of Iḍa (or Iḍā), and the grandson of Manu Vaivasvata; as the author of the triple division of the sacred fire; and as a royal rishi. We have also seen (p. 172) that in Rig-veda i. 31, 4, he is referred to as *sukṛite*, a "beneficent," or "pious," prince. Rig-veda x. 95 is considered to contain a dialogue between him and the Apsaras Urvaśi (see above, p. 226). In verse 7 of that hymn the gods are alluded to as having strengthened Purūravas for a great conflict for the slaughter of the Dasyus (*mahe yat tvā Purūravo raṇāya avarddhayan dasyu-hatyāya devāḥ*); and in the 18th verse he is thus addressed by his patronymic: *Iti tvā devāḥ ime āhur Aila yathā im etad bhavasi mṛityubandhuḥ | prajā te devān havishā yajāti svarge u tvaṁ api mādāyāse* | "Thus say these gods to thee, o son of Iḍa, that thou art indeed nothing more than a kinsman of death: (yet) let thy offspring worship the gods with an oblation, and thou also shalt rejoice in heaven."

It thus appears that in the Vedic hymns and elsewhere Purūravas is regarded as a pious prince, and Manu does not include him in his list of those who resisted the Brāhmins. But the M. Bh., Ādiparvan 3143 speaks of him as follows:

*Purūravās tato vidvān Ilāyām samapadyata | sā vai tasyābhavad mūtā
pitā chaiveti naḥ śrutam | trayodaśa samudrasya dvīpān aśnan Purūra-
vāḥ | amānushair vṛitaḥ sarvair mānushaḥ san mahāyāsāḥ | vipraiḥ sa
vighrahaṁ chakre viryyonmattaḥ Purūravāḥ | jahāra cha sa viprāṇām
ratnāny utkrośatām api | Sanatkumāras taṁ rājan Brahma-lokāḍ upetya
ha | amudarśaṁ tataś chakre pratyagrihṇād na chāpy asau | tato mahar-
shibhiḥ kruddhaiḥ sadyaḥ śapto vyanaśyata | lobhānvito bala-madād
nashā-sanjño narādhipaḥ | sa hi gandharva-loka-sthān Urvaśyā sahito
virat | ānināya kriyārthe 'gnān yathāvad vikitāns tridhā |*

"Subsequently the wise Purūravas was born of Ilā, who, as we have heard, was both his father and his mother. Ruling over thirteen islands of the ocean, and surrounded by beings who were all superhuman, himself a man of great renown, Purūravas, intoxicated by his prowess, engaged in a conflict with the Brāhmanas, and robbed them of their jewels, although they loudly remonstrated. Sanatkumāra came from Brāhmā's heaven, and addressed to him an admonition, which, however, he did not regard. Being then straightway cursed by the incensed rishis, he perished, this covetous monarch, who, through pride of power, had lost his understanding. This glorious being (*virāj*), accompanied by Urvaśī, brought down for the performance of sacred rites the fires which existed in the heaven of the Gandharvas, properly distributed into three." (See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. ed. pp. 350 and 394 ff. with note p. 397.)

I cite from the Harivaṃśa another passage regarding Purūravas, although no distinct mention is made in it of his contest with the Brāhmanas:

Harivaṃśa 8811. *Pitā Budhasyottama-vīrya-karmū Purūravāḥ yasya suto nṛi-devaḥ | prānāgnir idyo 'gnim ājijunad yo nashṭam śamī-garbha-bhavam bhavātmā | tathaiva paśchāch chakame mahātmā purorvaśim ap-sarasām varishṭhām | pītaḥ purā yo 'mṛita-sarva-deho muni-pravīrair vara-gātri-ghoraiḥ | nṛipaḥ kuśāgraiḥ punar eva yaś cha dhīmān kṛito 'gnir divi pūjyate cha |*

"He (the Moon) was the father of Budha (Mercury), whose son was Purūravas, a god among men, of distinguished heroic deeds, the vital fire, worthy of adoration, the generator, who begot the lost fire which sprang from the heart of the śamī-wood, the great personage, who, placed to the west, loved Urvaśī, the paragon of Apsarasas, who was placed to the east. This king with his entire immortal body was formerly swallowed up with the points of Kuśa grass by the munis terrible with their resplendent forms; but was again made wise, and is worshipped in heaven as fire."

SECT. IV.—*Story of Nahusha.*

The legend of Nahusha,⁸⁵ grandson of Purūravas (see above, p. 226),

⁸⁵ The name of Nahush occurs in the Rīg-veda as that of the progenitor of a race.

the second prince described by Manu as having come into hostile collision with the Brāhmans is narrated with more or less detail in different parts of the Mahābhārata, as well as in the Purāṇas. The following passage is from the former work, Ādip. 3151 :

*Āyusho Nahushaḥ putro dhīmān satya-parākramaḥ | rājyaṁ śaśāsa
sumahad dharmena prithivīpate | pitṛin devān rishīn viprān gandharva-
raga-rākshasān | Nahushaḥ pālayāmāsa brahma kshatram atho viśaḥ |
sa hatvā dasyu-saṅghātān rishīn karam adāpayat | paśuvach chaiva tān
prishṭhe vāhayāmāsa vīryavātān | kārāyāmāsa chendratvam abhibhūya
divaukasaḥ | tejasū tapasū chaiva vikramenaujasū tathā |*

“Nahusha the son of Āyus, wise, and of genuine prowess, ruled with justice a mighty empire. He protected the pitṛis, gods, rishis, wise men, gandharvas, serpents (*uraga*), and rākshasas, as well as Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, and Vaiśyas. This energetic prince, after slaying the hosts of the Dasyus, compelled the rishis to pay tribute, and made them carry him like beasts upon their backs. After subduing the celestials he conquered for himself the rank of Indra, through his vigour, austere fervour, valour and fire.”

The story is thus introduced in another part of the same work, the Vanaparvan, section 180. Yudhishtīra found his brother Bhīmasena seized by a serpent in a forest (see above, p. 133). This serpent, it appears, was no other than king Nahusha, who on being questioned thus relates his own history, 12460 :

*Nahusho nāma rājā 'ham āsam pūrvas tavānāgha | prathitāḥ panchamaḥ
Somād Āyoh putro narādhipa | kratubhis tapasū chaiva svādhyāyena
damena cha | trailokyaiśvaryam avyagram prāpto 'haṁ vikrameṇa cha |
tad aiśvaryaṁ samāsādyā darpo mām agamat tadā | sahasraṁ hi devjā-
tīnām uvāha śivikām mama | aiśvarya-mada-matto 'ham avamanya tato
divjān | imām Agastyena daśam ānītāḥ prithivīpate | . . . ahaṁ hi
divi diyena vimānena charan purā | abhimānena mattaḥ sām kanchid
nānyam achintayam | brahmarshi-deva-gandharva-yaksha-rākshasa-pan-
nagūḥ | karān mama prayachchanti sarve trailokya-vāsinaḥ | chakshushā
yam prapaśyāmi prāṇinam prithivīpate | tasya tejo harāmy āsu tad hi
dṛishṭer balam mama | maharshīṇām sahasraṁ hi uvāha śivikām mama |*

See above, p. 165, note 7, and pp. 179 f. Nahusha Mānava is the traditional rishi of Rig-veda ix. 101, verses 7-9, and Yayāti Nahusha of verses 4-6 of the same hymn. See list of rishis in Professor Aufrecht's Rig-veda ii. 464 ff.

*sa mām apanayo rājan bhraṁśayāmāsa vai śrīyaḥ | tatra hy Agastyah
pādēna vahan spriṣṭo mayā munīḥ | Agastyena tato 'smy ukto dhvaṁsa
sarpeti vai rushū | tatas tasmād vimānāgryāt prachyutāś chyuta-lakṣha-
nāḥ | prapatan bubudho 'tmānaṁ vyūtibhūtam adhomukham | ayācham
tam alāṁ vipraṁ "śūpasyānto bhaved" iti | "pramādāt sampramūḍha-
sya bhagavan kṣantum arhasi" | tataḥ sa mām uvāchedam prapatantaṁ
krīpānvitāḥ | "Yudhisṭhīro dharma-rājaḥ śūpāt tvām mochayishyati" |
. . . . ity uktvā "jagaraṁ deham muktvā na Nahusho nṛipaḥ | divyaṁ
vapuh samāsthāya gatas tridivam eva cha |*

"I was a king called Nahusha, more ancient than thou, known as the son of Āyus, and fifth in descent from Soma. By my sacrifices, austere fervour, sacred study, self-restraint, and valour, I acquired the undisturbed sovereignty of the three worlds. When I had attained that dominion, pride took possession of my soul: a thousand Brāhmans bore my vehicle. 'Becoming intoxicated by the conceit of my lordly power, and contemning the Brāhmans, I was reduced to this condition by Agastya.' The serpent then promises to let Bhīmasena go, if Yudhisṭhira will answer certain questions (above referred to in p. 133 ff.). Yudhisṭhira afterwards enquires how delusion had happened to take possession of so wise a person as their conversation shewed Nahusha to be. The latter replies that he had been perverted by the pride of power, and proceeds: "Formerly, as I moved through the sky on a celestial car, intoxicated with self-conceit, I regarded no one but myself. All the inhabitants of the three worlds, brāhmanical rishis, gods, gandharvas, yakshas, rākshasas, pannagas, paid me tribute. Such was the power of my gaze that on what creature soever I fixed my eyes, I straightway robbed him of his energy. A thousand of the great sages bore my vehicle. That misconduct it was, o king, which hurled me from my high estate. For I then touched with my foot the muni Agastya who was carrying me. Agastya in his wrath cried out to me 'Fall, thou serpent.' Hurled therefore from that magnificent car, and fallen from my prosperity, as I descended headlong, I felt that I had become a serpent. I entreated the Brāhman (Agastya), 'Let there be a termination of the curse: thou, o reverend rishi, shouldst forgive one who has been deluded through his inconsideration.' He then compassionately replied to me as I fell, 'Yudhisṭhira, the king of righteousness, will free thee from the curse.'" And at the close of the

conversation between Yudhishthira and the serpent, we are told that "King Nahusha, throwing of his huge reptile form, became clothed in a celestial body, and ascended to heaven."

The same story is related in greater detail in the Udyogaparvan, sections 10-16, as follows :

After his slaughter of the demon Vritra, Indra became alarmed at the idea of having taken the life of a Brāhman (for Vritra was regarded as such), and hid himself in the waters. In consequence of the disappearance of the king of the gods, all affairs, celestial as well as terrestrial, fell into confusion. The rishis and gods then applied to Nahusha to be their king. After at first excusing himself on the plea of want of power, Nahusha at length, in compliance with their solicitations, accepted the high function. Up to the period of his elevation he had led a virtuous life, but he now became addicted to amusement and sensual pleasure; and even aspired to the possession of Indrāṇī, Indra's wife, whom he had happened to see. The queen resorted to the Angiras Vṛihaspati, the preceptor of the gods, who engaged to protect her. Nahusha was greatly incensed on hearing of this interference; but the gods endeavoured to pacify him, and pointed out the immorality of appropriating another person's wife. Nahusha, however, would listen to no remonstrance, and insisted that in his adulterous designs he was no worse than Indra himself: 373. *Ahalyā dharshitā pūrvam rishi-patnī yaśasvinī | jīvato bharttur Indreṇa sa vaḥ kiṃ na nivāritaḥ |* 374. *Bahūni cha nṛśaṃsāni kṛitānindreṇa vai purā | vai-dharmyāny upadāś chaiva sa vaḥ kiṃ na nivāritaḥ |* "373. The renowned Ahalyā, a rishi's wife, was formerly corrupted by Indra in her husband's lifetime (see p. 121 f.): Why was he not prevented by you? 374. And many barbarous acts, and unrighteous deeds, and frauds, were perpetrated of old by Indra: Why was he not prevented by you?" The gods, urged by Nahusha, then went to bring Indrāṇī; but Vṛihaspati would not give her up. At his recommendation, however, she solicited Nahusha for some delay, till she should ascertain what had become of her husband. This request was granted. The gods next applied to Viṣṇu on behalf of Indra; and Viṣṇu promised that if Indra would sacrifice to him, he should be purged from his guilt, and recover his dominion, while Nahusha would be destroyed. Indra sacrificed accordingly; and the result is thus told: 419. *Vibhajya brahma-hatyām tu vriksheshu*

*cha nadīshu cha | parvateshu prithivyām cha strīshu chaiva Yudhish-
thira | sa vibhājya cha bhūteshu visṛjya cha sureśvaraḥ | vijvaro
dhuta-pāpmā cha Vāsavo 'bhavad ātmavān |* "Having divided the guilt
of brahmanicide among trees, rivers, mountains, the earth, women,
and the elements, Vāsava (Indra), lord of the gods, became freed from
suffering and sin, and self-governed." Nahusha was by this means
shaken from his place. But (unless this is said by way of prolepsis,
or there is some confusion in the narrative) he must have speedily
regained his position, as we are told that Indra was again ruined, and
became invisible. Indrāṇī now went in search of her husband; and by
the help of Upaśruti (the goddess of night and revealer of secrets) dis-
covered him existing in a very subtle form in the stem of a lotus
growing in a lake situated in a continent within an ocean north of the
Himālaya. She made known to him the wicked intentions of Nahusha,
and entreated him to exert his power, rescue her from danger, and
resume his dominion. Indra declined any immediate interposition on
the plea of Nahusha's superior strength; but suggested to his wife
a device by which the usurper might be hurled from his position. She
was recommended to say to Nahusha that "if he would visit her on a
celestial vehicle borne by rishis, she would with pleasure submit herself
to him" (449. *Ṛishi-yānena divyena mām upaihi jagatpate | evaṁ tava
vase prītā bhavishyāmīti taṁ vada*). The queen of the gods accordingly
went to Nahusha, by whom she was graciously received, and made this
proposal: 457. *Ichhāmy aham athāpūrvaṁ vāhanaṁ te surādhipa | yad
na Viṣṇor na Rudrasya nāsurāṇām na rākshāsām | vahantu tvām mahā-
bhāgāḥ ṛishayaḥ sangatāḥ vibho | sarve śivikayā rājann etad hi mama
rochate |* "I desire for thee, king of the gods, a vehicle hitherto un-
known, such as neither Viṣṇu, nor Rudra, nor the asuras, nor the rak-
shases employ. Let the eminent rishis, all united, bear thee, lord, in a
car: this idea pleases me." Nahusha receives favourably this appeal
to his vanity, and in the course of his reply thus gives utterance to his
self-congratulation: 463. *Na hy alpa-vīryo bhavati yo vāhān kurute mu-
nin | ahaṁ tapasvī balavān bhūta-bhavya-bhavat-prabhuḥ | mayi kruddho
jagad na syād mayi sarvam pratishṭhitam | . . . tasmāt te vachanaṁ
devi karishyāmi na saṁśayaḥ | saptarshayo mām vakshyanti sarve brah-
marshayaḥ tathā | paśya mātmyam asmākaṁ riddhiṁ cha varavarnini |
. . . 468. *Vimāno yojayitvā sa ṛishin niyamam āsthitān | abrahmanyō**

balopeto matto mada-balena cha | kūma-vṛittāḥ sa dushṭātmā vāhayāmāsa tūn rishin | "He is a personage of no mean prowess who makes the munis his bearers. I am a fervid devotee of great might, lord of the past, the future, and the present. If I were angry the world would no longer stand; on me everything depends. . . . Wherefore, o goddess, I shall, without doubt, carry out what you propose. The seven rishis, and all the brāhman-rishis, shall carry me. Behold, beautiful goddess, my majesty and my prosperity." The narrative goes on: "Accordingly this wicked being, irreligious, violent, intoxicated by the force of conceit, and arbitrary in his conduct, attached to his ear the rishis, who submitted to his commands, and compelled them to bear him." Indrāṇī then again resorts to Vṛihaspati, who assures her that vengeance will soon overtake Nahusha for his presumption; and promises that he will himself perform a sacrifice with a view to the destruction of the oppressor, and the discovery of Indra's lurking place. Agni is then sent to discover and bring Indra to Vṛihaspati; and the latter, on Indra's arrival, informs him of all that had occurred during his absence. While Indra, with Kuvera, Yama, Soma, and Varuṇa, was devising means for the destruction of Nahusha, the sage Agastya came up, congratulated Indra on the fall of his rival, and proceeded to relate how it had occurred: 527. *Stamārttāścha vāhantas tam Nahusham pūpakārinam | devarshayo mahābhūgas tathā brahmarshayo 'malāḥ | paprachhur Nahusham devam saṁśayaṁ jayatūn vara | ye ime brāhmanūḥ proktāḥ mantrūḥ vai prokṣhṇo garām | ete pramāṇam bhavataḥ utāho neti Vāsava | Nahusho neti tūn āha tamasā mūḍha-chetanaḥ | rishayaḥ ūchuḥ | adharme sampravṛittas tvaṁ dharmān na pratipadyase | pramāṇam etad asmūkam pūrvam proktam maharshibhiḥ | Agastyāḥ uvācha | Tato vivadamānah sa munibhiḥ saha Vāsava | atha mām aspriśad mūrdhni pādenādharma-yojitaḥ | tenābhūd hata-lejās cha niḥśrikaś cha mahipatiḥ | tatas taṁ sahasā vīgam avoçam bhaya-pīḍitam | "yasmāt pūrvaiḥ kṛitam brahma brahmarshibhir amuṣṭhitam | aduṣṭān dūshayasi vai yach cha mūrdhny aspriśaḥ padā | yach chāpi tvam rishin mūḍha brahma-kalpān durāsādān | vāhān krivā vāhayasi tena svargād hata-prabhaḥ | dhvāṁsa pāpa paribhrashtāḥ kṣhīṇa-punyō mahitālam | daśa-varsha-sahasrāṇi sarpa-rūpa-dhara mahān | vicharishyasi pūrṇeshu punaḥ svargam avīpsyasi" | evam bhrashto durātmā sa deva-rājyād arinduma | diṣṭyū vurdhūmahe śakra hato brāhmaṇa-kaṇ-*

śakāḥ | tripiśṭāpam prapadyasva pāhi lokān śachipate | jetendriyo jīta-mitraḥ stūyamāno maharshibhiḥ | “Wearied with carrying the sinner Nahusha, the eminent divine-rishis, and the spotless brāhman-rishis, asked that divine personage Nahusha [to solve] a difficulty: ‘Dost thou, o Vāsava, most excellent of conquerors, regard as authoritative or not those Brāhmaṇa texts which are recited at the immolation of kine?’ ‘No,’ replied Nahusha, whose understanding was enveloped in darkness. The rishis rejoined: ‘Engaged in unrighteousness, thou attainest not unto righteousness: these texts, which were formerly uttered by great rishis, are regarded by us as authoritative.’ Then (proceeds Agastya) disputing with the munis, Nahusha, impelled by unrighteousness, touched me on the head with his foot. In consequence of this the king’s glory was smitten and his prosperity departed. When he had instantly become agitated and oppressed with fear, I said to him, ‘Since thou, o fool, contemnest that sacred text, always held in honour, which has been composed by former sages, and employed by brāhman-rishis, and hast touched my head with thy foot, and employest the Brahmā-like and irresistible rishis as bearers to carry thee,—therefore, shorn of thy lustre, and all thy merit exhausted, sink down, sinner, degraded from heaven to earth. For ten thousand years thou shalt crawl in the form of a huge serpent. When that period is completed, thou shalt again ascend to heaven.’ So fell that wicked wretch from the sovereignty of the gods. Happily, o Indra, we shall now prosper, for the enemy of the Brāhmans has been smitten. Take possession of the three worlds, and protect their inhabitants, o husband of Sāchī (Indrāṇī), subduing thy senses, overcoming thine enemies, and celebrated by the great rishis.”⁸⁸

Indra, as we have seen above, was noted for his dissolute character. The epithet “subduing thy senses,” assigned to him in the last sentence by Agastya, is at variance with this indifferent reputation. Is it to be regarded as a piece of flattery, or as a delicate hint that the god would do well to practise a purer morality in future?

This legend appears, like some others, to have been a favourite with the compilers of the Mahābhārata; for we find it once more related, though with some variety of detail, (which may justify its repetition in

⁸⁸ Further on, in verse 556, Nahusha is called “the depraved, the hater of brahman, the sinful-minded (*durāchārāś cha Nahusho brahma-aviṣṭapāchetanah*).”

a condensed form), in the Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 4745-4810. We are there told that Nahusha, in recompense for his good deeds, was exalted to heaven; where he continued to perform all divine and human ceremonies, and to worship the gods as before. At length he became puffed up with pride at the idea that he was Indra, and all his good works in consequence were neutralized. For a great length of time he compelled the rishis to carry him about. At last it came to Agastya's turn to perform the servile office. Bhṛigu then came and said to Agastya, 'Why do we submit to the insults of this wicked king of the gods?' Agastya answered that none of the rishis had ventured to curse Nahusha, because he had obtained the power of subduing to his service everyone upon whom he fixed his eyes; and that he had *amṛita* (nectar) for his beverage. However, Agastya said he was prepared to do anything that Bhṛigu might suggest. Bhṛigu said he had been sent by Brahmā to take vengeance on Nahusha, who was that day about to attach Agastya to his ear, and would spurn him with his foot; and that he himself (Bhṛigu), "incensed at this insult, would by a curse condemn the transgressor and hater of Brāhmins to become a serpent" (*vyutkrānta-dharmaṁ tam ahaṁ dharshaṇāmarshito bhṛiṣam | ahir bhavasveti rushā śapsye pāpaṁ divja-druham*). All this accordingly happened as follows:

Athāgastyam rishi-śreṣṭham vāhanāyājūhva ha | drutaṁ Sarasvatī-kulāt smayann iva mahābalaḥ | tato Bhṛigur mahātejaḥ Muṭtrāvaruṇim abravīt | "nimālayasva nayane jaṭāṁ yūvad viśāmi te" | sthānubhūtasya tasyātha jaṭāṁ praviśad achyutaḥ | Bhṛiguḥ sa sumahātejaḥ pātānūya nṛipasya cha | tataḥ sa deva-rāṭ prāptas tam rishiṁ vāhanāya vai | tato 'gastyah surapatiṁ vākyam āha viśūmpate | "yojayasveti māṁ kshipraṁ kaṁ cha deśaṁ vahāmi te | yatra vakshyasi tatra tvāṁ nayishyāmi surādhipa" | ity ukto Nahushas tena yojayāmāsa tam munim | Bhṛigus tasya jaṭāntaḥ-stho babhūva hṛishito bhṛiṣam | na chāpi darśanaṁ tasya chakāra. sa Bhṛigus tadā | vara-dāna-prabhāva-jno Nahushasya mahātmanaḥ | na chukopa tadā 'gastyo yukto 'pi Nahushena vai | tam tu rāja pratodena chodayāmāsa Bhūrata | na chukopa sa dharmātmā tataḥ pādena deva-rāṭ | Agastyasya tadā kruddho vāmenābhyahanach chhiraḥ | tasmin śirasya abhihate sa jaṭāntargato Bhṛiguḥ | śasūpa balavat kruddho Nahusham pāpa-chetasam | "yasmāt padā 'hanaḥ krodhāt śirasīmam mahāmuniṁ | tasmād āsu mahiṁ gachha sarpo bhūtvā sudurmate" | ity uktaḥ sa tadā tena

*sarpo bhūtvā papāta ha | adṛishṭenātha Bhṛiguṇā bhūtale Bharatarsha-
bha | Bhṛiguṁ hi yadi so 'drakshyad Nahushaḥ prithivīpate | sa na śakto
'bhaviṣhyad vai pātano tasya tejasū |*

"The mighty Nahusha, as it were smiling, straightway summoned the eminent rishi Agastya from the banks of the Sarasvatī to carry him. The glorious Bhṛigu then said to Maitrāvaruṇi (Agastya), 'Close thy eyes whilst I enter into the knot of thy hair.' With the view of overthrowing the king, Bhṛigu then entered into the hair of Agastya who stood motionless as a stock. Nahusha then came to be carried by Agastya, who desired to be attached to the vehicle and agreed to carry the king of the gods whithersoever he pleased. Nahusha in consequence attached him. Bhṛigu, who was lodged in the knot of Agastya's hair, was greatly delighted, but did not venture to look at Nahusha, as he knew the potency of the boon which had been accorded to him (of subduing to his will everyone on whom he fixed his eyes). Agastya did not lose his temper when attached to the vehicle, and even when urged by a goad the holy man remained unmoved. The king of the gods, incensed, next struck the rishi's head with his left foot, when Bhṛigu, invisible within the knot of hair, became enraged, and violently cursed the wicked Nahusha: 'Since, fool, thou hast in thine anger smitten this great muni on the head with thy foot, therefore become a serpent, and fall down swiftly to the earth.' Being thus addressed, Nahusha became a serpent, and fell to the earth, through the agency of Bhṛigu, who remained invisible.* For if he had been seen by Nahusha, the saint would have been unable, in consequence of the power possessed by the oppressor, to hurl him to the ground."

Bhṛigu, on Nahusha's solicitation, and the intercession of Agastya, placed a period to the effects of the curse, which, as in the other version of the legend, Yudhisṭhira was to be the instrument of terminating.

From several phrases which I have quoted from the version of this legend given in the Udyogaparvan, as well as the tenor of the whole, it appears to be the intention of the writers to hold up the case of Nahusha as an example of the nemesis awaiting not merely any gross display of presumption, but all resistance to the pretensions of the priesthood, and contempt of their persons or authority.

SECT. V.—*Story of Nimi.*

Nimi (one of Ikshvāku's sons) is another of the princes who are stigmatized by Manu, in the passage above quoted, for their want of deference to the Brāhman. The Vishṇu P. (Wilson, 4to. ed. p. 388) relates the story as follows: Nimi had requested the Brāhman-rishi Vasiṣṭha to officiate at a sacrifice, which was to last a thousand years. Vasiṣṭha in reply pleaded a pre-engagement to Indra for five hundred years, but promised to return at the end of that period. The king made no remark, and Vasiṣṭha went away, supposing that he had assented to this arrangement. On his return, however, the priest discovered that Nimi had retained Gautama (who was, equally with Vasiṣṭha, a Brāhman-rishi) and others to perform the sacrifice; and being incensed at the neglect to give him notice of what was intended, he cursed the king, who was then asleep, to lose his corporeal form. When Nimi awoke and learnt that he had been cursed without any previous warning, he retorted, by uttering a similar curse on Vasiṣṭha, and then died. "In consequence of this curse" (proceeds the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 5, 6) "the vigour of Vasiṣṭha entered into the vigour of Mitra and Varuṇa. Vasiṣṭha, however, received from them another body when their seed had fallen from them at the sight of Urvaśī" (*tach-chhāpāch cha Mitra-varuṇayos tejasi Vasiṣṭha-tejaḥ pravaiṣṭam | Urvaśi-darśanād udbhūta-vīryya-prapālayoḥ sakāśād Vasiṣṭho-deham aparaṁ lehe*).⁵⁷ Nimi's body was embalmed. At the close of the sacrifice which he had begun, the gods were willing, on the intercession of the priests, to restore him to life, but he declined the offer; and was placed by the deities, according to his desire, in the eyes of all living creatures. It is in consequence of this that they are always opening and shutting (*nimisha* means "the twinkling of the eye").

The story is similarly related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 13, 1-13. A portion of the passage is as follows:

3. *Nimiś chalam idaṁ vidvān satṭram ārabhatātmanvān | rītvigbhir aparais tavad nīgamad yāvata guruḥ | śiṣhya-vyatikramāṁ vīkṣhya nīr-varttya gurur āgataḥ | āśapat "patatād deho Nimeḥ paṇḍita-māninaḥ" | Nimiḥ pratidadau śūpaṁ guruve 'dharma-varttine | "tavāpi patatād deho*

⁵⁷ This story will be further illustrated in the next section.

lobhād dharmam ajānataḥ” | *ity utsasarjja svaṁ dehaṁ Nimir adhyātma-kovidāḥ* | *Mitrā-varuṇayor jajñe Ureśyām prapitāmahaḥ* |

“Nimi, who was self-controlled, knowing the world to be fleeting, commenced the sacrifice with other priests until his own spiritual instructor should come back. The latter, on his return, discovering the transgression of his disciple, cursed him thus: ‘Let the body of Nimi, who fancies himself learned, fall from him.’ Nimi retorted the curse on his preceptor, who was acting unrighteously: ‘Let thy body also fall from thee, since thou, through covetousness, art ignorant of duty.’ Having so spoken, Nimi, who knew the supreme spirit, abandoned his body: and the patriarch (Vaśishṭha) was born of Urvaśī to Mitra and Varuṇa.”⁸⁸

The offence of Nimi, as declared in these passages, is not that of condemning the sacerdotal order in general, or of usurping their functions; but merely of presuming to consult his own convenience by proceeding to celebrate a sacrifice with the assistance of another Brāhman (for Gautama also was a man of priestly descent) when his own spiritual preceptor was otherwise engaged, without giving the latter any notice of his intention. The Bhāgavata, as we have seen, awards blame impartially to both parties, and relates (as does also the Vishṇu Purāṇa) that the king’s curse took effect on the Brāhman, as well as the Brāhman’s on the king.

SECT. VI.—*Vaśishṭha*

One of the most remarkable and renowned of the struggles between Brāhmans and Kshattriyaes which occur in the legendary history of India is that which is said to have taken place between Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra. I propose to furnish full details of this conflict with its fabulous accompaniments from the Rāmāyaṇa, which dwells upon it at considerable length, as well as from the Mahābhārata, where it is repeatedly

⁸⁸ On the last verse the commentator Śrīdhara has the following note: *Ureśī-darśanāt skannam retas tūbhyāṁ kumbhe nishikṭam* | *tasmāt prapitāmaho Vaśishṭho jajñe* | *tathā cha śrutiḥ “kumbhe retas sishichitūḥ samānam” iti* | “Seed fell from them at the sight of Urvaśī and was shed into a jar: from it the patriarch, Vaśishṭha, was born. And so says the śruti” (R.V. vii. 33, 13, which will be quoted in the next section).

introduced; but before doing so, I shall quote the passages of the Rig-veda which appear to throw a faint light on the real history of the two rivals. It is clear from what has been said in the Introduction to this volume, pp. 1-6, as well as from the remarks I have made in pp. 161 f., that the Vedic hymns, being far more ancient than the Epic and Puranic compilations, must be more trustworthy guides to a knowledge of the remotest Indian antiquity. While the Epic poems and Puranas no doubt embody numerous ancient traditions, yet these have been freely altered according to the caprice or dogmatic views of later writers, and have received many purely fictitious additions. The Vedic hymns, on the contrary, have been preserved unchanged from a very remote period, and exhibit a faithful reflection of the social, religious, and ecclesiastical condition of the age in which they were composed, and of the feelings which were awakened by contemporary occurrences. As yet there was no conscious perversion or colouring of facts for dogmatic or sectarian purposes; and much of the information which we derive from these naïve compositions is the more trustworthy that it is deduced from hints and allusions, and from the comparison of isolated particulars, and not from direct and connected statements or descriptions. It is here therefore, if anywhere, that we may look for some light on the real relations between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra. After quoting the hymns regarding these two personages, I shall adduce from the Brāhmaṇas, or other later works, any particulars regarding their birth and history which I have discovered. The conflict between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra has been already discussed at length in the third of Dr. Rudolf Roth's "Dissertations on the literature and history of the Veda,"⁶⁹ where the most important parts of the hymns bearing upon the subject are translated. The first hymn which I shall adduce is intended for the glorification of Vasishṭha and his family. The latter part relates the birth of the sage, while the earlier verses refer to his connection with king Sudās. Much of this hymn is very obscure.

R.V. vii. 33, 1. *Svityancho mā dakṣhiṇatas-kapardāḥ dhiyaṁjivāso abhi hi pramanduh | uttishṭhan voce pari barhiṣho nṛin na me dūrād avitave Vasishṭhāḥ |* 2. *Dūrād Indram anayann ā sutena tiro vaiśantam ati pāntam ugram | Pāsadyumnasya Vāyatasya somāt eutād Indro avṛiṇta Vasishṭhān |* 3. *Eva in nu kam sindhum ebhis tatāra eva in nu kam*

⁶⁹ Zur Litteratur und Geschichte des Weda. Stuttgart. 1846.

Bhedam ebhir jaghāna | eva in nu kaṁ dāsarājne Sudāsam prācad Indro brahmanā vo Vasishthāḥ | 4. Jushṭi naro brahmanā vaḥ pitrīnām aksham avyayaṁ na kila rishātha | yat śakvarishu bṛihatā ravena Indre śushmam adadhāta Vasishthāḥ | 5. Uḍ dyām iva it tṛishnajo nāthitāso adīdhayur dāsarājne vṛitāsah | Vasishthasya sturataḥ Indro āsrod uruṁ Tṛitsubhyo akrīnod u lokam | 6. Dandā iva gojanāsuḥ āsan parichhin-nūḥ Bharatāḥ arbhakāsah | abhavach cha pura-etū Vasishthāḥ ād it Tṛitsūnām vīšo aprathanta | 7. Trayah kṛinvanti bhuvanesu relas tisrah prajāḥ ūryūḥ jyotir-agrāḥ | trayo gharmāsah ushasāṁ sachante sarvān it tān anu vidur Vasishthāḥ | 8. Sūryasya iva vakshatho jyotir eshām samudrasya iva mahimā gablīrah | vātasya iva prajavo na anyena stono Vasishthāḥ anu elave vaḥ | 9. Te in ninyāṁ hridayasya praketaiḥ sahasra-valśam abhi saṁ charanti | yamena tatam paridhiṁ vayanto apsarasah upa sedur Vasishthāḥ | 10. Vidyuto jyotiḥ pari saṁ jihānam Mitrā-varuṇā yad apaśyatām tvā | tat te janma uta ekaṁ Vasishtha Agastyo yat tvā viśah ājabhāra | 11. Uta asi Maitravaruṇo Vasishtha Urvaśyūḥ brahman manaso 'dhi jātah | drapsaṁ skannam brahmanā daivryena viśve devāḥ pushkare tvā 'dadanta | 12. Sa praketaḥ ubhayasya prōvidrān sahasradānaḥ uta vā sadānaḥ | yamena tatam paridhiṁ vayishyann apsarasah pari jājne Vasishthāḥ | 13. Sattre ha jātāv ishītā namobhiḥ kumbhe relah sishichatuḥ samānam | tato ha Mānaḥ ud iyāya madhyāt tato jātām ṛishim ākur Vasishtham |

"1. The white-robed (priests) with hair-knots on the right, stimulating to devotion, have filled me with delight. Rising from the sacrificial grass, I call to the men, 'Let not the Vasishthas (stand too) far off to succour [or gladden] me.'⁹⁰ 2. By their libation they brought Indra hither from afar across the Vaisanta away from the powerful draught.⁹¹ Indra preferred the Vasishthas to the soma offered by Pāsadyumna,⁹² the son of Vayata. 3. So too with them he crossed the river; so too with them he slew Bheda; so too in the battle of the ten kings⁹³ Indra delivered Sudās through your prayer, o Vasishthas.

⁹⁰ Sāyana thinks that Vasishtha is the speaker, and refers here to his own sons. Professor Roth (under the word *av*) regards Indra as the speaker. May it not be Sudās?

⁹¹ This is the interpretation of this clause suggested by Professor Aufrecht, who thinks Vaisanta is probably the name of a river.

⁹² According to Sāyana, another king who was sacrificing at the same time as Sudās.

⁹³ See verses 6-8 of R.V. vii. 83, to be next quoted.

4. Through gratification caused by the prayer of your fathers, o men, ye do not obstruct the undecaying axlo (?), since at (the recitation of the) Śakvarī verses⁹⁴ with a loud voice ye have infused energy into Indra, o Vasishṭhas. 5. Distressed, when surrounded in the fight of the ten kings, they looked up, like thirsty men, to the sky. Indra heard Vasishṭha when he uttered praise, and opened up a wide space for the Tritsus.⁹⁵ 6. Like staves for driving cattle, the contemptible Bharatas were lopped all round. Vasishṭha marched in front, and then the tribes of the Tritsus were deployed. 7. Three deities create a fertilizing fluid in the worlds. Three are the noble creatures whom light precedes. Three fires attend the dawn.⁹⁶ All these the Vasishṭhas know. 8. Their lustre is like the full radiance of the sun; their greatness is like the depth of the ocean; like the swift-ness of the wind, your hymn, o Vasishṭhas, can be followed by no one else. 9. By the intuitions of their heart they seek out the mystery with a thousand branches. Weaving the envelopment stretched out by Yama, the Vasishṭhas sat down by the Apsaras. 10. When Mitra and Varuṇa saw thee quitting the flame of the lightning, that was thy birth; and thou hadst one (other birth), o Vasishṭha, when Agastya brought thee to the people. 11. And thou art also a son of Mitra and Varuṇa, o Vasishṭha, born, o priest, from the soul of Urvaśī. All the gods placed thee—a drop which fell through divine contemplation—in the vessel. 12. He, the intelligent, knowing both (worlds?), with a thousand gifts, or with gifts—he who was to weave the envelopment stretched out by Yama—he, Vasishṭha, was born of the Apsurus. 13. They, two (Mitra and Varuṇa?), born at the sacrifice, and impelled by adorations, dropped into the jar the same amount of seed. From the

⁹⁴ See R.V. x. 71, 11, above, p. 256.

⁹⁵ This is evidently the name of the tribe which the Vasishṭhas favoured, and to which they themselves must have belonged. See vii. 83, 4. The Bharatas in the next verse appear to be the hostile tribe.

⁹⁶ In explanation of this Sāyana quotes a passage from the Śūtyāyana Brāhmaṇa, as follows: "*Trayaḥ kṛtvānti bhuvaneshu retāḥ*" ity Agniḥ prithivyām retāḥ kṛtvoti Vāyur antarikṣhe Adityo divi | "*tisraḥ prajāḥ ūryyāḥ jyotir-agrāḥ*" iti Vasavo Rudrāḥ Adityāḥ tūsaṁ jyotir yad asāv Adityaḥ | "*trayo gharmūsaḥ ushasaṁ saohante*" ity Agnir Ushasaṁ sachate Vāyur Ushasaṁ sachate Adityaḥ Ushasaṁ sachate | (1) "Agni produces a fertilizing fluid on the earth, Vāyu in the air, the Sun in the sky. (2) The 'three noble creatures' are the Vasus, Rudras, and Adityas. The Sun is their light. (3) Agni, Vāyu, and the Sun each attend the Dawn."

midst of that arose Māna (Agastya?); and from that they say that the rishi Vasishṭha sprang."⁹⁷

There is another hymn (R.V. vii. 18) which relates to the connection between Vasishṭha and Sudās (verses 4, 5, 21-25) and the conflict between the latter and the Tr̥itsus with their enemies (verses 6-18); but as it is long and obscure I shall content myself with quoting a few verses.⁹⁸

R.V. vii. 18, 4. *Dhenuṁ na tvā suyase dudhukshann upa brahmāni
sasṛje Vasishṭhaḥ | tvām id me gopatiṁ viśvaḥ āha ā naḥ Indrāḥ suma-
tiṁ gantu achiha |* 5. *Arṇāmsi chit paprathānā Sudāse Indro gādhanī*

⁹⁷ Whatever may be the sense of verses 11 and 13, the Nirukta states plainly enough v. 13; *Tasyāḥ darśanād Mitrā-v.ṛumayoḥ retasḥ chaskanda | tad-abhivādinī eṣhā riḡ bhavati* | "On seeing her (Urvasī) the seed of Mitra and Varuṇa fell from them. To this the following verse (R.V. vii. 33, 11) refers." And Sāyaṇa on the same verse quotes a passage from the Bṛihaddevatā: *Tayor ādityayoḥ sattre dṛiṣṭvā 'psarasam Urvasīm | retasḥ chaskanda tat kumbhe nyapatād vāsativare | tenaiva tu muhūrtena vīryavantaṁ tapasvinau | Agastyas cha Vasishṭhas cha tatrarshī sambadhū-
vatuḥ | bahudhā patitaṁ retasḥ kalasē cha jale sthale | sthale Vasishṭhas tu munīḥ sam-
bhuṁvārshi-sattamaḥ | kumbhe tv Agastyas sambhūto jale matsyo mahādṛyutīḥ | udiṇyā
tato 'gastyo śamyā-mātro mahūtpāḥ | mānena sammito yasmāt tasmād Mōnyas
ihochyate | yadvā kumbhād rishir-jātaḥ kumbhenūpi hi nyagte | kumbhaḥ ity abhidhā-
nam cha parimāṇasya lakshyate | tato 'psu grīyamāṇāsu Vasishṭhaḥ pushkare sthi-
taḥ | sarevataḥ pushkare taṁ hi viśve devāḥ adhūryan* | "When these two Adityas (Mitra and Varuṇa) beheld the Apsaras Urvasī at a sacrifice their seed fell from them into the sacrificial jar called *vāsativara*. At that very moment the two energetic and austere rishis Agastya and Vasishṭha were produced there. The seed fell on many places, into the jar, into water, and on the ground. The muni Vasishṭha, most excellent of rishis, was produced on the ground; while Agastya was born in the jar, a fish of great lustre. The austere Agastya sprang thence of the size of a *śamyā* (i.e. the pin of a yoke; see Wilson, *s.v.*, and Professor Roth, *s.v. māna*). Since he was measured by a certain standard (*māna*) he is called the 'measurable' (*mānya*). Or, the rishi, having sprung from a jar (*kumbha*), is also measured by a jar, as the word *kumbha* is also designated as the name of a measure. Then when the waters were taken, Vasishṭha remained in the vessel (*pushkara*); for all the gods held him in it on all sides." In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 64, Prof. Roth speaks of the verses of the hymn which relate to Vasishṭha's origin as being a more modern addition to an older composition, and as describing the miraculous birth of the sage in the taste and style of the Epic mythology. Professor Max Muller (Oxford Essays for 1856, pp. 61 f.) says that Vasishṭha is a name of the Sun; and that the ancient poet is also "called the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, night and day, an expression which has a meaning only in regard to Vasishṭha, the sun; and as the sun is frequently called the offspring of the dawn, Vasishṭha, the poet, is said to owe his birth to Urvasī" (whom Muller identifies with Ushas). For M. Langlois's view of the passage, see his French version of the R.V. vol. iii. pp. 79 f. and his note, p. 234.

⁹⁸ See Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 87 ff. where it is translated into German.

akṛiṇot supārū | 21. Pra ye grihād amamadus tvāyū Parāśaraḥ Satayātūr Vasishṭhaḥ | na te bhojasya sakhyam mṛishanta adha sūribhṛyaḥ sudinā vi uchhān | 22. Dve naptur Devavataḥ śate gor dvā rathā vadhūmantā Sudāsaḥ | arhann Agne Paijavanasya dūnam hoteva sadma pari emi rebhan | 23. Chatvāro mā Paijavanasya dūnāḥ smad-dishṭayāḥ kṛiṣanīno nireke | rjirāso mā prithivishṭhāḥ Sudāsaḥ tokaṁ tokāya śravase vahanti | 24. Yasya śravo rodasī antar urvī śirshṇe śirshṇe vibabhūja vibhaktā | sapta id Indrāṁ na sravatō grīṇanti n Yudhyāmadhim aśiśād abhāke | imāṁ naro Marutaḥ saśchatānu Divo-dāsaṁ na pitaraṁ Sudāsaḥ | avishṭana Paijavanasya ketaṁ dūnāsaṁ kshattram ajaraṁ dwoyū |

"4. Seeking to milk thee (Indra), like a cow in a rich meadow, Vasishṭha sent forth his prayers to thee; for every one tells me that thou art a lord of cows; may Indra come to our hymn. 5. However the waters swelled, Indra made them shallow and fordable to Sudās. 21. Parāśara,⁹⁹ Satayātu, and Vasishṭha, devoted to thee, who from indifference have left their home, have not forgotten the friendship of thee the bountiful;—therefore let prosperous days dawn for these sages. 22. Earning two hundred cows and two chariots with mares, the gift of Sudās the son of Pijavana, and grandson of Devavat,¹⁰⁰ I walk round the house, o Agni, uttering praises, like a hotṛi priest. 23. The four brown steeds, bestowed by Sudās the son of Pijavana, vigorous, decked with pearls, standing on the ground, carry me on securely to renown from generation to generation. 24. That donor, whose fame pervades both worlds, has distributed gifts to every person. They praise him as the seven rivers¹⁰¹ praise Indra; he has slain Yudhyāmadhi in battle. 25. Befriend him (Sudās), ye heroic Maruts, as

⁹⁹ *Parāśara* is said in Nir. vi. 30, which refers to this passage, to have been a son of Vasishṭha born in his old age (*Parāśaraḥ parāśirṇasya Vasishṭhasya sthāvirasya jāne*); or he was a son of Śakti and grandson of Vasishṭha (Roth *s.v.*)

¹⁰⁰ *Devavat* is said by Śāyana to be a proper name. He may be the same as Divodāsa in verse 25. Or Divodāsa may be the father, and Pijavana and Devavat among the forefathers of Sudās. In the Vishṇu Purāṇa Sarvakāma is said to have been the father and Rītuparna the grandfather of Sudāsa, Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 380. At p. 454 f. a Sudāsa is mentioned who was son of Chyavana, grandson of Mitrāyu and great-grandson of Divodāsa.

¹⁰¹ Professor Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Veda, p. 100) compares R.V. i. 102, 2, *asya śravo nadyaḥ sapta bibhrati*, "the seven rivers exalt his (Indra's) renown." These rivers are, as Roth explains, the streams freed by Indra from Vṛitra's power.

ye did Divodāsa tho (fore)father of Sudās; fulfil the desire of the son of Pijavana (by granting him) imperishable, undecaying power, worthy of reverence (?)."

Although the Vasishṭhas are not named in the next hymn, it must refer to the same persons and circumstances as are alluded to in the first portion of R.V. vii. 33, quoted above.

R.V. vii. 83, 1. *Yuvān narā paśyamānāsah āpyam prāchā garyantaḥ prithu-parśavo yayuḥ | dāsū cha rītrā hatam āryāni cha Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā 'vasā 'catam |* 2. *Yatra narah samayante kṛita-dhejaḥ yasmīn ājā bhuvati kinchana priyam | yatra bhayante bhuvanā svar-dṛśas tatra naḥ Indrā-varuṇā 'dhi rochatam |* 3. *Sam bhūmyāḥ antāḥ dhvasirāḥ adṛikshata Indrā-varuṇā divi ghoshah ūruhat | asthur janānām upa mām arātayo arvāg arasū havana-srutā āgataḥ |* 4. *Indrā-varuṇā vadhānūbhīr aprati Bhedaṁ vacantā pra Sudāsam āvataḥ | brahmāṇi eṣhām śrigūtaṁ havīmāni satyā Tṛitsūnām abhavat purohitiḥ |* 5. *Indrā-varuṇāv abhi ā tapanti mā aghāni aryo vanushūm arātayaḥ | yuvān hi vasrah ubhayasya rājatho adha sma no avataḥ pārye divi |* 6. *Yuvān havante ubhayāsah ājishu Indraṁ cha vasro Varuṇaṁ cha sātaye | yatra rājābhīr daśābhīr nibādhitam pra Sudāsam āvataṁ Tṛitsubhiḥ saha |* 7. *Daśa rājūnah samitāḥ ayajyarah Sudāsam Indrā-varuṇā na guyudhuḥ | satyā nṛiṇām adma-sadām upastutir devāḥ eṣhām abhavan deva-hūtisku |* 8. *Dāsarājño pariyattāya viśvataḥ Sudāse Indra-varuṇāv aśikshatam | ścītyaṇcho yatra namasū kaparddino dhiyā dhīvanto asapanta Tṛitsarah |*

"Looking to you, o heroes, to your friendship, the men with broad axes advanced to fight. Slay our Dāsa and our Arya enemies, and deliver Sudās by your succour, o Indra and Varuṇa. 2. In the battle where men clash with elevated banners, where something which we desire¹⁰² is to be found, where all beings and creatures tremble, there, o Indra and Varuṇa, take our part. 3. The ends of the earth were seen to be darkened, o Indra and Varuṇa, a shout ascended to the sky; the foes of my warriors came close up to me; come hither with your help, ye hearers of our invocations. 4. Indra and Varuṇa, unequalled with your weapons, ye have slain Bheda, and delivered Sudās; ye heard the prayers of these men in their invocation; the priestly agency

¹⁰² Sāyana divides the *kinchana* of the Pada-text into *kincha na*, which gives the sense "where nothing is desired, but everything is difficult."

of the Tritsus¹⁰³ was efficacious. 5. O Indra and Varuṇa, the injurious acts of the enemy, the hostilities of the murderous, afflict me on every side. Ye are lords of the resources of both worlds: protect us therefore (where ye live) in the remotest heavens. 6. Both parties¹⁰⁴ invoke you, both Indra and Varuṇa, in the battles, in order that ye may bestow riches. (They did so in the fight) in which ye delivered Sudās—when harassed by the ten kings—together with the Tritsus. 7. The ten kings, who were no sacrificers, united, did not vanquish Sudās, o Indra and Varuṇa. The praises of the men who officiated at the sacrifice were effectual; the gods were present at their invocations. 8. Ye, o Indra and Varuṇa, granted succour to Sudās, hemmed in on every side in the battle of the ten kings,¹⁰⁵ where the white-robed Tritsus,¹⁰⁶ with hair-knots, reverentially praying, adored you with a hymn."

From these hymns it appears that Vasishṭha, or a Vasishṭha and his family were the priests of king Sudās (vii. 18, 4 f., 21 ff.; vii. 33, 3 f.); that, in their own opinion, these priests were the objects of Indra's preference (vii. 33, 2), and had by the efficacy of their intercessions been the instruments of the victory gained by Sudās over his enemies in the battle of the ten kings. It seems also to result from some of the verses (vii. 33, 6; vii. 83, 4, 6; and vii. 33, 1, compared with vii. 83, 8) that both the king and the priests belonged to the tribe of the Tritsus.¹⁰⁷ Professor Roth remarks that in none of the hymns which

¹⁰³ Compare verses 7 and 8. Sāyana, however, translates the clause differently: "The act of the Tritsus for whom I sacrificed, and who put me forward as their priest, was effectual: my priestly function on their behalf was successful" (*Tritsūnām etat-sañjñānam mama yājñānam purohitir mama purodhānam satyā satya-phalaṁ abhavat | teshu yad mama pavrohityaṁ tat saphalaṁ jñam* |).

¹⁰⁴ According to Sāyana the two parties were Sudās and the Tritsus his allies (*ubhaya-vidhau Sudāḥ-sañjño rājā tat-sahāya-bhūtāḥ Tritsaras cha evaṁ dvī-prakūrūḥ janūḥ*). It might have been supposed that one of the parties meant was the hostile kings; but they are said in the next verse to be *agnijyarah*, "persons who did not sacrifice to the gods."

¹⁰⁵ *Jñātarījṇe*. This word is explained by Sāyana in his note on vii. 33, 3, *dada-bhī rājabhiḥ saha yuddhe pravrīte*, "battle having been joined with ten kings." In the verse before us he says "the lengthening of the first syllable is a Vedic peculiarity, and that the case-ending is altered, and that the word merely means 'by the ten kings'" (*dasa-śabdasya chhāndaso dirghaḥ | vibhakti-vyatyayaḥ | dasabhiḥ rājabhiḥ . . . pariveshṭitāya*).

¹⁰⁶ Here Sāyana says the Tritsus are "the priests so called who were Vasishṭha's disciples" (*Tritsavo Vasishṭha-śishyāḥ etat-sañjñāḥ ritvijāḥ*).

¹⁰⁷ See Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 120.

he quotes is any allusion made to the Vasishthas being members of any particular caste; but that their connection with Sudās is ascribed to their knowledge of the gods, and their unequalled power of invocation (vii. 33, 7 f.)

In the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 21, we have another testimony to the connection of Vasishthā with Sudās, as he is there stated to have "consecrated Sudās son of Pijavana by a great inauguration similar to Indra's; ¹⁰⁸ in consequence of which Sudās went round the earth in every direction conquering, and performed an aśvamedha sacrifice" (*etena ha vai aindreṇa mahābhishekeṇa Vasishthāḥ Sudāsam Pijavanam abhisheche | tasmād u Sudāḥ Pijavanāḥ samantān sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan pariyāya āsvena cha medhyena ije*).

The following passages refer to Vasishthā having received a revelation from the god Varuṇa, or to his being the object of that god's special favour:

vii. 87, 4. *Uvācha me Varuṇo medhirāya triḥ sapta nāma aghnyā bībhartti | vidvān padasya guhyā na vochaḍ yugāya vipraḥ uparāya śikshan |*

"Varuṇa has declared to me ¹⁰⁹ who am intelligent, 'The Cow' ¹¹⁰ possesses thrice seven names. The wise god, though he knows them, has not revealed the mysteries of (her) place, which he desires to grant to a future generation."

R.V. vii. 88, 3. *Ā yad ruhāva Varuṇas cha nāvam pra yat samudram trayāva madhyam | adhi yad apām snubhiḥ charāva pra pra inkhe inkha-yāvahai śubhe kam | 4. Vasishthān ha Varuṇo nāvi ā adhād rishīm chakāra svapāḥ mahobhiḥ | stotāraṁ vipraḥ sudinatre ahnām yād nu dyavas tatanan yād ushasaḥ | 5. Kva tyāni nau sakhyā babhūruḥ sachāvahe yad*

¹⁰⁸ Colbrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 40.

¹⁰⁹ Vasishthā is not named in this hymn, but he is its traditional author.

¹¹⁰ Sayana says that either (1) Vāch is here meant under the figure of a cow having the names of 21 metres, the Gāyatrī, etc., attached to her breast, throat, and head, or (2) that Vāch in the form of the Veda holds the names of 21 sacrifices; but that (3) another authority says the earth is meant, which (in the Nighaṇṭu, i. 1) has 21 names, *go, gṃā, jṃā*, etc. (*Vāg atra gaur uchyate | sā cha urasi kaṇṭhe śirasi cha buddhāni gāyatrī-ādini sapta chhandasām nāmāni bibhartti | yadvā vedātmikā vāg ekaviṃśati-saṁsthūnām yajñānām nāmāni bibhartti | dhārayati | aparāḥ āha "gauh prithivī | tasyās cha 'gaur gṃā jṃā' iti paṭhitāny ekaviṃśati-nāmāni" iti*). I have, in translating the second clause of the verse, followed for the most part a rendering suggested by Professor Aufrecht.

*avrikam purā chit | bṛihantam mānam Varuṇa svadhāraḥ sahasra-drāṇ
jagama grihaṁ te | 6. Yaḥ āpir nityo Varuṇa priyaḥ san tvām āgāmsi
kṛṇavat sakhā te | mā te enusvanto yakshin bhujema yandhi sma vipraḥ
stuvate varūtham |*

“When Varuṇa and I embark on the boat, when we propel it into the midst of the ocean, when we advance over the surface of the waters, may we rock upon the undulating element till we become brilliant. 4. Varuṇa took Vasishṭha into the boat; by his mighty acts working skilfully he (Varuṇa) has made him a rishi; the wise (god has made) him an utterer of praises in an auspicious time, that his days and dawns may be prolonged.¹¹¹ 5. Where are (now) our friendships, the tranquillity which we enjoyed of old? We have come, o self-sustaining Varuṇa, to thy vast abode, to thy house with a thousand gates. 6. Whatever friend of thine, being a kinsman constant and beloved, may commit offences against thee;—may we not, though sinful, suffer (punishment), o adorable being; do thou, o wise god, grant us protection.”

R.V. vii. 86 is a sort of penitential hymn in which Vasishṭha refers to the anger of Varuṇa against his old friend (verse 4) and entreats forgiveness of his offences. This hymn, which appears to be an earnest and genuine effusion of natural feeling, is translated in Professor Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* p. 540.

The passage which follows is part of a long hymn, consisting chiefly of imprecations directed against Rākshāsas and Yātudhānas, and said in the Bṛihaddevatā (as quoted by Sāyaṇa in his introductory remarks) to have “been ‘seen’ by the rishi (Vasishṭha) when he was overwhelmed with grief and anger for the loss of his hundred sons who had been slain by the sons of Sudās” (*rishir dadarśa raksho-ghnam puttra-śoka-pariplutāḥ | hate puttra-śate kruddhaḥ Saudāsair duḥkhitas tadā*). I shall cite only the verses in which Vasishṭha repels the imputation (by whomsoever it may have been made) that he was a demon (Rakshas or Yātudhana).

R.V. vii. 104, 12. *Surijnānaṁ chikitushe janāya sach cha asach cha
vachasī paspridhate | tayoṛ yat satyaṁ yatarad rījīyas tad it Somo avati
hanti asat | 13. Na vai u Somo vṛijinaṁ hinoti na kshattriyam mithuyā*

¹¹¹ Professor Aufrecht renders the last clause, “As long as days and dawns shall continue.”

dhārayantam | hanti raksho hanti asad vadantam ubhāv Indrasya prasutau śayāte | 14. *Yadi vā aham anṛita-devaḥ āsa moghaṁ vā devān api ūhe Agne | kim asmabhyaṁ Jātavedo hṛiṇīṣhe droghavāchas te nirṛithaṁ sachantām |* 15. *Adya muriya yadi yātudhāno asmi yadi vā āpyas tatapa pūrushasya | adha sa vīrair daśabhir vi gnyāḥ yo mā moghaṁ "Yātudhāna" ity āha |* 16. *Yo mā ayātuṁ "yātudhāna" ity āha yo vā rakshūḥ "śuchir asmi" ity āha | Indras taṁ hantu mahatū vadkena viśvasyā jantor ādhamas padishṭa |*

"The intelligent man is well able to discriminate (when) true and false words contend together. Soma favours that one of them which is true and right, and annihilates falsehood. 13. Soma does not prosper the wicked, nor the man who wields power unjustly. He slays the Rakshas; he slays the liar: they both lie (bound) in the fetters of Indra. 14. If I were either a follower of false gods, or if I erroneously conceived of the gods, o Agni:—Why, o Jātavedas, art thou incensed against us? Let injurious speakers fall into thy destruction. 15. May I die this very day, if I be a Yātudhāna, or if I have destroyed any man's life. May he be severed from his ten sons who falsely says to me, 'o Yātudhāna.' 16. He who says to me, who am no Yātu, 'o Yātudhāna,' or who (being himself) a Rakshas, says, 'I am pure,'—may Indra smite him with his great weapon; may he sink down the lowest of all creatures.

In elucidation of this passage Sāyaṇa quotes the following lines:

Itatrā puttra-śatam pūrvam Vasishṭhasya mahātmanah | Vasishṭhaṁ "rākshaso 'si tvam" Vasishṭhaṁ rūpam āsthitah | "aham Vasishṭhaḥ" ity evaṁ jighāṁsuḥ rākshaso 'bravit | atrottarāḥ rīcho dṛishṭāḥ Vasishṭheneti naḥ śrutam |

"Having slain the hundred sons of the great Vasishṭha, a murderous Rākshasa, assuming the form of that rishi, formerly said to him, 'Thou art a Rākshasa, and I am Vasishṭha.' In allusion to this the latter verses were seen by Vasishṭha, as we have heard."

We may, however, safely dismiss this explanation resting on fabulous grounds.

The verses may, as Professor Max Müller supposes,¹¹² have arisen out

¹¹² "Vasishṭha himself, the very type of the Arian Brahman, when in feud with Viśvāmitra, is called not only an enemy, but a 'Yātudhāna,' and other names which in common parlance are only bestowed on barbarian savages and evil spirits. We

of Vasishṭha's contest with Viśvāmitra, and it may have been the latter personage who brought these charges of heresy, and of murderous and demoniacal character against his rival.¹¹³

Allusion is made both in the Taittirīya Sanhitā and in the Kaushītaki Brāhmaṇa to the slaughter of a son of Vasishṭha by the sons or descendants of Sudās. The former work states, *Asṭaka vii.* (p. 47 of the India Office MS. No. 1702):

Vasishṭho hataputro 'kamayata "vindeya prajām abhi Saudāsān' bhaveyam" iti | sa etam ekasmānnapanchāsam apaśyat tam āharat tenāyajata | tato vai so 'vindata prajām abhi Saudāsān abhavat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I obtain offspring; may I overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this *ekasmānnapanchāsa* (?), he took it, and sacrificed with it. In consequence he obtained offspring, and overcame the Saudāsas."

The passage of the Kaushītaki Brāhmaṇa, 4th adhyāya, as quoted by Professor Weber (*Ind. St. ii.* 299) is very similar:

Vasishṭho 'kamayata hata-putraḥ "prajāyeya prajāya paśubhir abhi Saudāsān bhareyam" iti | sa etam yajna-kratum apaśyad Vasishṭha-yajnam . . . tena ishṭvā . . . abhi Saudāsān abhavat |

"Vasishṭha, when his son had been slain, desired, 'May I be fruitful in offspring and cattle, and overcome the Saudāsas.' He beheld this form of offering, the Vasishṭha-sacrifice; and having performed it, he overcame the Saudāsas."

In his introduction to *Rig-veda*, vii. 32, Śāyana has the following notice from the *Anukramanikā*:

"Saudāsair agnau prakshipyamānaḥ Saktir antyam pragātham ālebhe so 'rūharche ukte 'dahyata | tam putroktam Vasishṭhaḥ samāpayata" iti Sātyāyanakam | "Vasishṭhasya eva hata-putrasya ūrsham" iti Tāṇḍakam |

"The Sātyāyana Brāhmaṇa says that 'Sakti (son of Vasishṭha), when being thrown into the fire by the Saudāsas, received (by inspiration) the concluding pragātha of the hymn. He was burnt after he had spoken half a *rich*; and Vasishṭha completed what his son was

have still the very hymn in which Vasishṭha deprecates such charges with powerful indignation." Prof. Müller then quotes verses 14-16 of the hymn before us ("Last Results of the Turanian Researches," in Bunsen's "Outlines of the Philosophy of Univ. History," i. 344.

¹¹³ See my article "On the relations of the priests to the other classes of Indian society in the Vedic age," in the *Journal Roy. As. Soc.* for 1866, pp. 296 ff.

uttering. The Tāṇḍaka says that 'it was Vasishṭha himself who spoke the whole when his son was slain.'"

The words supposed to have been spoken by Sakti, viz. "O Indra, grant to us strength as a father to his sons" (*Indra kratuṁ naḥ ā bhara pitā putrebhyo yathā*) do not seem to be appropriate to the situation in which he is said to have been placed; and nothing in the hymn appears to allude to any circumstances of the kind imagined in the two Brāhmaṇas.

Manu says of Vasishṭha (viii. 110): *Maharshibhiḥ cha devaiḥ cha kūrṃyārthaṁ śapathāḥ kṛitāḥ | Vasishṭhaḥ chāpi śapathāṁ śepe Paiyavane nripe |* "Great rishis and gods too have taken oaths for particular objects. Vasishṭha also swore an oath to king Paiyavana." The occasion on which this was done is stated by the Commentator Kullūka: *Vasishṭho 'py anena putra-śatam bhakṣitam iti Viśvāmitrena ākrushṭo sva-parisuddhaye Piyavanāpatye Sudāmnī rājani śapathāṁ chakāra |* "Vasishṭha being angrily accused by Viśvāmitra of having eaten (his) hundred sons, took an oath before king Sudāman (Sudās, no doubt, is meant) the son of Piyavana in order to clear himself." This seems to refer to the same story which is alluded to in the passage quoted by the Commentator on Rig-veda vii. 104, 12.

In the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 55, 5 f., a hundred sons of Viśvāmitra are said to have been burnt up by the blast of Vasishṭha's mouth when they rushed upon him armed with various weapons (*Viśvāmitra-sutānām tu śataṁ nānā-vidhāyudham | abhyadhūvat susankruddhāṁ Vasishṭham japa-tām varam | hunkareṇaiva tān sarvān nirdadāha mahān ṛishiḥ*).

Vasishṭha is also mentioned in Rig-veda, i. 112, 9, as having received succour from the Aśvins (—*Vasishṭhaṁ yūbhir ajarūv ajinvatam*).

Vasishṭha, or the Vasishṭhas, are also referred to by name in the following verses of the seventh Mandala of the Rig-veda: 7, 7; 9, 6; 12, 3; 23, 1, 6; 26, 5; 37, 4; 39, 7; 42, 6; 59, 3; 70, 6; 73, 3; 76, 6, 7; 77, 6; 80, 1; 90, 7; 95, 6; 96, 1, 3; but as no information is derivable from these texts, except that the persons alluded to were the authors or reciters of the hymns, it is needless to quote them.¹¹⁴

¹¹⁴ Another verse of a hymn in which the author is not referred to (vii. 72, 2) is as follows: *Ā no devebhir upa yātam arvuk sajoṣaśhū nāsatyā rathena | yuvor hi naḥ sakhyā pitryāni samāno bandhur uta tasya vittam |* "Come near to us, Aśvins, on the same car with the gods: for we have ancestral friendships with you, a common relation; do ye recognize it." Although this has probably no mythological

In the Atharva-veda, iv. 29, 3 and 5, Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are mentioned among other personages, Angiras, Agasti, Jamadagni, Atri, Kuśyapa, Bharadvāja, Gavishṭhira, and Kutsa, as being succoured by Mitra and Varuṇa (. . . *yāv Angirasam avatho yāv Agastim Mitṛā-Varuṇā Jamadagnim Atrim | yau Kāśyapam avatho yau Vasishṭham . . . yau Bharadvājam avatho yau Gavishṭhiram Viśvāmitram Varuṇa Mitra Kutsam*). And in the same Veda, xviii. 3, 15 f., they are invoked as deliverers: *Viśvāmitro 'yaṁ Jamadagnir Atrir avanti naḥ Kāśyapo Vāmadevaḥ | Viśvāmitra Jamadagne Vasishṭha Bharadvāja Gotama Vāmadeva . . . |* "15. May this Viśvāmitra, may Jamadagni, Atri, Kuśyapa, Vāmadeva preserve us. 16. O Viśvāmitra, o Jamadagni, o Vasishṭha, o Bharadvāja, o Gotama, o Vāmadeva." The second passage at least must be a good deal more recent than the most of the hymns of the Rig-veda.

Sudās is mentioned in other parts of the Rig-veda without any reference either to Vasishṭha or to Viśvāmitra. In some cases his name is coupled with that of other kings or sages, which appears to shew that in some of these passages at least a person, and not a mere epithet, "the liberal man," is denoted by the word Sudās.

R.V. i. 47, 6. (The traditional rishi is Praskanva.) *Sudāse dasrū vasu bibhratā rathe prikshe vakatam Aśvinā | rayiṁ samudrād uta vā divas pari asme dhattam puru-spriham |*

"O impetuous Aśvins, possessing wealth in your car, bring sustenance to Sudās. Send to us from the (aerial) ocean, or the sky, the riches which are much coveted."

Sāyaṇa says the person here meant is "king Sudās, son of Pijavana" (*Sudāse . . . rājne Pijavana-putrāya*).

i. 63, 7. (The rishi is Nodhas, of the family of Gotama.) *Tvaṁ ha tyad Indra sapta yudhyan puro vajrin Purukutsūya dardah | barhir na yat Sudāse vṛithā varḡ anho rājan varivah Pūrave kah |*

"Thou didst then, o thundering Indra, war against, and shatter, the seven cities for Purukutsa, when thou, o king, didst without effort hurl

reference, Sāyaṇa explains it as follows: *Vivasvān Varuṇas cha ubhāv api Kāśyapād Aditer jātāu | Vivasvān Aśvinor janako Varuṇo Vasishṭhanya ity evam samāna-bandhutvam |* "Vivasvat and Varuṇa were both sons of Kāśyapa and Aditi. Vivasvat was the father of the Aśvins and Varuṇa of Vasishṭha; such is the affinity." Sāyaṇa then quotes the Bṛihaddevatā to prove the descent of the Aśvins from Vivasvat. Compare R.V. x. 17, 1, 2, and Nirukta, xii. 10, 11.

away distress from Sudās like a bunch of grass, and bestow wealth on Pūru.¹¹⁵

i. 112, 19. (The rishi is Kutsa.) . . . *yābhir Sudāse ūhathuḥ sude-
ryaṁ tābhīr u shu ūtibhir Aśvinā gatam* |

"Come, o Aśvins, with those succours whereby ye brought glorious power to Sudās" ['son of Pijavana'—Sāyaṇa].¹¹⁶

The further texts which follow are all from the seventh Mandala, of which the rishis, with scarcely any exception, are said to be Vasishṭha and his descendants :

vii. 19, 3. *Tvaṁ dhṛishṇo dhṛishatū vītahavyam prūvo viśvābhir ūtibhiḥ
Sudāsam* | *pra Paurukutsiṁ Trasadasyum āvaḥ kshettrasatū vṛittrahat-
yeshu Pūrum* |

"Thou, o fierce Indra, hast impetuously protected Sudās, who offered oblations, with every kind of succour. Thou hast preserved Trasadasyu the son of Purukutsa, and Pūru in his conquest of land and in his slaughter of enemies."

vii. 20, 2. *Manā Vṛittram Indrah śuśuvānaḥ prāvīd nu vīro jari-
tāram uti* | *kartū Sudāse aha vai u lokaṁ dātā vasu muhur n dāsushe bhūt* |

"Indra growing in force slays Vṛitra; the hero protects him who praises him; he makes room for Sudās [or the liberal sacrificer—*kal-
yāna-dānāya yajamānāya*. Sāyaṇa]; he gives riches repeatedly to his worshipper."

vii. 25, 3. *S'ataṁ te śiprinn ūtayaḥ Sudāse sahasraṁ saṁsāḥ uta
rātir astu* | *jahi vadhar vanusho marttyasya asme dyumnam adhi ratnaṁ
cha dhehi* |

"Let a hundred succours come to Sudās, a thousand desirable (gifts) and prosperity. Destroy the weapon of the murderous. Confer renown and wealth on us."

(Sāyaṇa takes *ṣṭ* here and in all the following citations to signify a "liberal man.")

¹¹⁵ Professor Roth renders this passage differently in his *Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 132; as does also Prof. Benfey, *Orient und Occident*, i. p. 590.

¹¹⁶ In R.V. i. 185, 9, we find the word *sudās* in the comparative degree *sudāstara*, where it must have the sense of "very liberal": *dhūri chid aryah sudāstariya* | "(give the wealth) of my enemy, though it be abundant to (me who am) most liberal." In v. 63, 2, the term *sudās* appears to be an adjective: *ā etān ratheshu tasthushaḥ kaḥ śuśrāva kathū gayuḥ* | *kasmai saruḥ sudāse anu ūpayah ilābhīr vṛishṭayaḥ saha* | "Who has heard them (the Maruts) mounted on their cars, how they have gone? To what liberal man have they resorted as friends, (in the form of) showers with blessings?"

vii. 32. 10. *Nakiḥ Sudāso ratham pari āsa na rīramat | Indro yasya avitā yasya Maruto gamat sa gomati vraje |*

"No one can oppose or stop the chariot of Sudās. He whom Indra, whom the Maruts, protect, walks in a pasture filled with cattle."

vii. 53, 3 : *Uto hi vañ ratnadheyāni santi purūṇi dyāvā - prithivī Sudāse |*

"And ye, o Heaven and Earth, have many gifts of wealth for Sudās [or the liberal man]."

vii. 60, 8. *Yad gopāvad Aditiḥ śarma bhādrām Mitro yachhanti Varuṇaḥ Sudāse | tasmīn ā tokañ tanayañ dadhūnāḥ mā karma devahelanañ turāsaḥ | 9. . . . pari dveshobhir Aryamā vṛinaktu uruñ Sudāse vṛishaṇau u lokam |*

"Since Aditi, Mitra, and Varuṇa afford secure protection to Sūdās (or the liberal man), bestowing on him offspring;—may we not, o mighty deities, commit any offence against the gods. 9. . . . May Aryaman rid us of our enemies. (Grant) ye vigorous gods, a wide space to Sudās."

There is another passage, vii. 64, 3 (*bravād yathā naḥ ād ariḥ Sudāse*), to which I find it difficult to assign the proper sense.

Vasishṭha is referred to in the following passages of the Brāhmaṇas :

Kāṭhaka 37, 17.¹¹⁷ *Ṛishayo vai Indram pratyakshañ na apaśyañs tañ Vasishṭhaḥ eva pratyasham apaśyat | so 'bibhet "itarebhyo mā rishibhyaḥ pravakshyati" iti*¹¹⁸ | so 'bravīd "brāhmaṇaṁ te vakshyāmi yathā tvat-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prajanishyante | atha mō itarebhyāḥ rishibhyo mā pravochaḥ" iti | tasmai etān stoma-bhāgān abravīt tato Vasishṭha-purohitāḥ prajāḥ prājūyanta |

"The rishis do not behold Indra face to face; it was only Vasishṭha who so beheld him. He (Indra) was afraid lest Vasishṭha should reveal him to the other rishis; and said to him, 'I shall declare to thee a Brāhmaṇa in order that men may be born who shall take thee for their purohita. Do not reveal me to the other rishis.' Accordingly he declared to

¹¹⁷ Quoted by Professor Weber, *Indische Studien*, iii. 478.

¹¹⁸ The words from *so 'bibhet* down to *iti* are omitted in the *Taitt. Saṁhitā*, iii. 5, 2, 2, where this passage is also found. Weber refers in *Ind. St. ii.* to another part of the *Kāṭhaka*, ii. 9, where Vasishṭha is alluded to as having "seen" a text beginning with the word *purovāta* during a time of drought ("*Purovāta*" *iti vṛkṣhī-apeto bhūta-grāme Vasishṭho dadarśa*).

him these parts of the hymn. In consequence men were born who took Vasishṭha for their purohita."

Professor Weber refers in the same place to a passage of the Sata-patha Brāhmaṇa relating to the former superiority of Vasishṭha's family in sacred knowledge and priestly functions :

xii. 6, 1, 38. *Vasishṭho ha virājam vidānchakāra tān ha Indro 'bhidadhyau | sa ha uvācha "ṛishe virājam ha vai vettha tān me brūhi" iti | sa ha uvācha "kim mama tataḥ syād" iti | "sarvasya cha te yajnasya prāyaśchittim brūyān rūpañ cha tvā darśayeya" iti | sa ha uvācha "yad nu me sarvasya yajnasya prāyaśchittim brūyāḥ kim u sa syād yañ tvañ rūpañ darśayethāḥ" iti | jīva-scarga eva asmāl lokāt preyād" iti | tato ha etām ṛishir Indrāya virājam uvācha "iyañ vai virād" iti | tasmād yo 'syai bhūyishṭhañ labhate sa eva śreṣṭho bhavati | atha ha etām Indrāḥ ṛishaye prāyaśchittim uvācha agnihotrād agre ā mahataḥ ukthāt | tāḥ ha sma etāḥ purā vyākṛitir Vasishṭhāḥ eva viduḥ | tasmād ha sma purā Vasishṭhāḥ eva brahmā bhavati |*

"Vasishṭha was acquainted with the Virāj (a particular Vedic metre). Indra desired it; and said, 'O rishi, thou knowest the Virāj: declare it to me.' Vasishṭha asked: 'What (advantage) will result to me from doing so?' (Indra replied) 'I shall both explain to thee the forms for rectifying anything amiss (*prāyaśchitti*)¹¹⁹ in the entire sacrifice, and show thee its form.' Vasishṭha further enquired, 'If thou declarest to me the remedial rites for the entire sacrifice, what shall he become to whom thou wilt show the form?' (Indra answered) 'He shall ascend from this world to the heaven of life.' The rishi then declared this Virāj to Indra, saying, 'this is the Virāj.' Wherefore it is he who obtains the most of this (Virāj) that becomes the most eminent. Then Indra explained to the rishi this remedial formula from the *agnihotra* to the great *uktha*. Formerly the Vasishṭhas alone knew these sacred syllables (*vyākṛiti*). Hence in former times a Vasishṭha only was a (priest of the kind called) *brāhmān*."

Professor Weber quotes also the following from the Kūthaka 32, 2. *Yām abrahmaṇaḥ prāsṇāti sā skannā ākutis tasyā vai Vasishṭhāḥ eva prāyaśchittān vidānchakāra |* "The oblation of which a person not a brāhmaṇa partakes is vitiated. Vasishṭha alone knew the remedial rite for such a case."

¹¹⁹ See above, p. 294.

In the *Shadvimśa Brāhmaṇa* of the *Sāma-veda*, quoted by the same writer (*Ibid.* i. 39, and described p. 37, as possessing a distinctly formed Brahmanical character indicating a not very early date), we have the following passage :

i. 5. *Indro ha Viśvāmitrāya uktham urūcha Vasishṭhūya brahma rūg uktham ity eva Viśvāmitrāya mano brahma Vasishṭhūya | tad vai etad Vāsishṭham brahma | api ha evānvidhañ vā Vāsishṭhañ vā brāhmāṇaṁ kurvīta |*

“Indra declared the *uktha* (hymn) to Viśvāmitra, and the *brāhmān* (devotion) to Vasishṭha. The *uktha* is expression (*vāk*); that (he made known) to Viśvāmitra; and the *brāhmān* is the soul; that (he made known) to Vasishṭha. Hence this *brāhmān* (devotional power) belongs to the Vasishṭhas. Moreover, let either a person of this description, or a man of the family of Vasishṭha, be appointed a *brāhmān*-priest.”

Here the superiority of Vasishṭha over Viśvāmitra is clearly asserted.¹²⁰

Vasishṭha is mentioned in the *Mahābhārata*, *Santip.* verses 11221 ff., as having communicated divine knowledge to king Janaka, and as referring (see verses 11232, 11347, 11409, 11418, 11461, etc.) to the *Sāṅkhya* and *Yoga* systems. The sage is thus characterized :

11221. *Vasishṭhañ śreṣṭham āśīnam ṛishīṇām bhūskara-dyutim | pa-prachha Janako rājā jñānañ naiśśreyasam param | param adhyātma-kuśalam adhātma-gati-niśchayam | Maitrāvaruṇim āśīnam abhivādya kritāñjaliḥ |*

“King Janaka with joined hands saluted Vasishṭha the son of Mitra and Varuṇa, the highest and most excellent of rishis, resplendent as the sun, who was acquainted with the Supreme Spirit, who had ascertained the means of attaining to the Supreme Spirit; and asked him after that highest knowledge which leads to final beatitude.”

The doctrine which the saint imparts to the king he professes to have derived from the eternal *Hiranyagarbha*, i.e. *Brahmā* (*avāptam etad hi mayā sanātānād Hiranyagarbhād gadato narādhipa*).

I have already in former parts of this volume quoted passages from *Manu*, the *Vishṇu Purāṇa*, and the *Mahābhārata*, regarding the creation

¹²⁰ Professor Weber mentions (*Ind. St.* i. 53) that in the commentary of *Rāmā-kṛishṇa* on the *Pāraskara Grihya Sūtras* allusion is made to the “*Chhandogas* who follow the *Sūtras* of the Vasishṭha family” *Vāsishṭha-sūtrānuchārīṇas chhandogāḥ*).

of Vasishṭha. The first-named work (see above, p. 36) makes him one of ten Maharshis created by Manu Svāyambhuva in the first (or Svāyambhuva) Manvantara. The Vishṇu Purāṇa (p. 65) declares him to have been one of nine mind-born sons or Brahmās created by Brahmā in the Manvantara just mentioned. The same Purāṇa, however, iii. 1, 14, makes him also one of the seven rishis of the existing or Vaivasvata Manvantara, of which the son of Vivasvat, Strāddhadeva,¹²¹ is the Manu (*Vivasvataḥ suto vipra Strāddhadevo mahādyutiḥ* | *Manuḥ samvarttate dhīmān sāmpratāṁ saptame 'ntare . . . Vasishṭhaḥ Kāśyapo 'thātrir Jamadagniḥ sa-Gautamaḥ* | *Viśvāmitra-Bharadvājau sapta saptarshayo 'bhavan*). The Mahābhārata (see p. 122) varies in its accounts, as in one place it does not include Vasishṭha among Brahmā's six mind-born sons, whilst in a second passage it adds him to the number which is there raised to seven,¹²² and in a third text describes him as one of twenty-one Prajāpatīs.

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, i. 10, 10, "Vasishṭha had by his wife Ūrjā" (one of the daughters of Daksha, and an allegorical personage, see V. P. i. 7, 18), seven sons called Rajas, Gātra, Ūrdhvabāhu, Savana, Anagha, Sutapas, and Sukra, who were all spotless rishis" (*Ūrjāyām cha Vasishṭhasya saptāyānta vai sutāḥ* | *Rajo-Gātrordhvabāhuścha Savanaś chānaghas tathā* | *Sutapāḥ Sukraḥ ity ete sarve saptarshayo 'malāḥ*). This must be understood as referring to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. The Commentator says these sons were the seven rishis in the third Manvantara (*saptarshayas tritīya-manvantare*). In the description of that period the V. P. merely says, without naming them (iii. 1, 9) that "the seven sons of Vasishṭha were the seven rishis" (*Vasishṭha-tanayās tatra sapta saptarshayo 'bhavan*).¹²³ The Bhāgavata Purāṇa (iv. 1, 40 f.) gives the names of Vasishṭha's sons differently; and also specifies Śakṛi and others as the offspring of a different marriage. (Compare Professor Wilson's notes on these passages of the Vishṇu Purāṇa.)

¹²¹ See above p. 209, note 66, and pp. 188 ff.

¹²² In another verse also (Ādip. 6638, which will be quoted below in a future section) he is said to be a mind-born son of Brahmā.

¹²³ Ūrjā, who in the Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6, is stated to be one of the rishis of the second or Svārochisha Manvantara, is said in the Vāyu P. to be a son of Vasishṭha. See Professor Wilson's note (vol. iii. p. 3) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1, 6. The Vāyu P. also declares that one of the rishis in each of the fourth and fifth Manvantaras was a son of Vasishṭha. (See Prof. Wilson's notes (vol. iii. pp. 8 and 11) on Vishṇu P. iii. 1.)

In Manu, ix. 22 f., it is said that "a wife acquires the qualities of the husband with whom she is duly united, as a river does when blended with the ocean. 23. Akshamālā, though of the lowest origin, became honourable through her union with Vasishṭha, as did also Śārāṅgī through her marriage with Mandapāla" (*Yādṛig-guṇena bhartṛā strī saṁyujyate yathāvidhi | tādṛig-guṇā sā bhavati samudreneva nimnagā |* 23. *Akshamālā Vasishṭhena saṁyuktā 'dhama-yoni-jā | Śārāṅgī Mandāpalena jagamābhyarhaṇīyatām*).

Vasishṭha's wife receives the same name (*Vasishṭhas chākshamūlayā*) in a verse of the Mahābhārata (Udyogaparvan, v. 3970);¹²⁴ but in two other passages of the same work, which will be adduced further on, she is called Arundhatī.¹²⁵

According to the Viṣṇu Purāṇa (ii. 10, 8) Vasishṭha is one of the superintendents who in the month of Āshāḍha abide in the Sun's chariot, the others being Varuṇa, Rambhā, Sahajanyā, Huhu, Budha, and Rathachitra (*Vasishṭho Varuṇo Rambhā Sahajanyā Huhur Budhaḥ | Rathachitras tathā Sukre vasanty Āshāḍha-sanjñite*); whilst in the month of Phalguṇa (ibid. v. 16) the rival sage Viśvāmitra exercises the same function along with Viṣṇu, Aśvatara, Rambhā, Sūryavarchas, Satyajit, and the Rākshasa Yajñapeta (*śrūyatām chāpare sūrye phalguṇe nivasanti ye | Viṣṇur Aśvataro Rambhā Sūryavarchas cha Satyajit | Viśvāmitras tathā raksho Yajñapeto mahātmanaḥ*).

At the commencement of the Vāyu Purāṇa Vasishṭha is characterized as being the most excellent of the ṛishis (*ṛishinām cha varishṭhāya Vasishṭhāya mahātmane*).

It is stated in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, iii. 3, 9, that the Vedas have been already divided twenty-eight times in the course of the present or Vaivasvata Manvantara; and that this division has always taken place in the Dvāpara age of each system of four yugas. In the first Dvāpara Brahmā Svayambhū himself divided them; in the sixth Mṛityu (Death, or Yama); whilst in the eighth Dvāpara it was Vasishṭha who was the Vyāsa or divider (*Ashṭavinśatikṛitvo vai vedāḥ vyastāḥ maharshibhiḥ | Vaivasvate 'ntare tasmīn dvāpareṣu punaḥ punaḥ | . . . 10. Dvāpare prathamē vyastāḥ svayam vedāḥ Svayambhuvā | . . . 11. . . . Mṛityuḥ aṣaṣṭhe smṛitāḥ prabhuḥ | . . . Vasishṭhas chāṣṭame smṛitāḥ*).

¹²⁴ Two lines below Haimavatī is mentioned as the wife of Viśvāmitra (*Haimavatī cha Kauśikā*).

¹²⁵ In the St. Petersburg Lexicon *akshamālā* is taken for an epithet of Arundhatī.

Vasishṭha was, as we have seen above, the family-priest of Nimi, son of Ikshvāku, who was the son of Manu Vaivasvata, and the first prince of the solar race of kings; and in a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. (6643 f.), which will be quoted in a future section, he is stated to have been the purohita of all the kings of that family. He is accordingly mentioned in Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 3, 18, as the religious teacher of Sagara, the thirty-seventh in descent from Ikshvāku (*tat-kulā-guruṃ Vasishṭham śaraṇaṃ jagmuḥ*); and as conducting a sacrifice for Saudāsa or Mitrasaha, a descendant in the fiftieth generation of the same prince (Vishṇu P. iv. 4, 25, *Kālena gachhatā sa Saudāso yajnam ayajāt | parinishṭhita-yajne cha āchāryye Vasishṭhe nishkrānte ityādi*).

Vasishṭha is also spoken of in the Rāmāyana, ii. 110, 1 (see above, p. 115), and elsewhere (ii. 111, 1, etc.), as the priest of Rāma, who appears from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, (iv. 4, 40, and the preceding narrative), to have been a descendant of Ikshvāku in the sixty-first generation.¹²⁶

Vasishṭha, according to all these accounts, must have been possessed of a vitality altogether superhuman; for it does not appear that any of the accounts to which I have referred intend under the name of Vasishṭha to denote merely a person belonging to the family so called, but to represent the founder of the family himself as taking part in the transactions of many successive ages.

It is clear that Vasishṭha, although, as we shall see, he is frequently designated in post-vedic writings as a Brāhman, was, according to some other authorities I have quoted, not really such in any proper sense of the word, as in the accounts which are there given of his birth he is declared to have been either a mind-born son of Brahmā, or the son of Mitra, Varuṇa, and the Apsaras Urvaśī, or to have had some other supernatural origin.

SECT. VII.—*Viśvāmitra*.

Viśvāmitra is stated in the Anukramaṇikā, as quoted by Sāyaṇa at the commencement of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, to be the rishi, or "seer," of that book of the collection: *Aśva maṇḍala-draśṭā*

¹²⁶ Rāma's genealogy is also given in the Rāmāyana, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., where, however, he is said to be only the thirty-third or thirty-fourth from Ikshvāku.

Viśvāmitraḥ ṛishiḥ | “The rishi of this (the first hymn) was Viśvāmitra, the ‘seer’ of the Maṇḍala.” This, however, is to be understood with some exceptions, as other persons, almost exclusively his descendants, are said to be the rishis of some of the hymns.

I shall quote such passages as refer, or are traditionally declared to refer, to Viśvāmitra or his family.

In reference to the thirty-third hymn the Nirukta states as follows :

ii. 24. *Tatra itihāsam āchakshate | Viśvāmitraḥ ṛishiḥ Sudāsaḥ Pijavanasya purohito babhūva . . . | sa vittaṁ grihīta Vipāṭ-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau | anuyayur itare | sa Viśvāmitro nadīs tushṭāva “gādihāḥ bhavata” iti |*

“They there relate a story. The rishi Viśvāmitra was the purohita of Sudās, the son of Pijavana. (Here the etymologies of the names Viśvāmitra, Sudās, and Pijavana are given.) Taking his property, he came to the confluence of the Vipāś and Sutudrī (Sutlej); others followed. Viśvāmitra lauded the rivers (praying them to) become fordable.”

Sāyaṇa expands the legend a little as follows :

Purā kila Viśvāmitraḥ Pijavanasya Sudāso rājnaḥ purohito babhūva | sa cha paurohityena labdha-dhanaḥ sarvam dhanam ādāya Vipāṭ-chhutudryoḥ sambhedam āyayau | anuyayur itare | athottitīrshur Viśvāmitro ‘gādha-jale te nadyau dṛishṭvā uttaraṇārtham ādyābhis tisṛibhis tushṭāva |

“Formerly Viśvāmitra was the purohita of king Sudās, the son of Pijavana. He, having obtained wealth by means of his office as purohita, took the whole of it, and came to the confluence of the Vipāś and the Sutudrī. Others followed. Being then desirous to cross, but perceiving that the waters of the rivers were not fordable, Viśvāmitra, with the view of getting across lauded them with the first three verses of the hymn.”

The hymn makes no allusion whatever to Sudās, but mentions the son of Kuśika (Viśvāmitra) and the Bharatas. It is not devoid of poetical beauty, and is as follows :

R.V. iii. 33, 1 (= Nirukta, ix. 39). *Pra parvatūnām usatī upasthād āśve iva viśhite hāsamāne | gāveva śubhre mātara rihāne Vipāṭ Chhutudrī payasā javete | 2. Indreshile prasavam bhikshamāne achha samudraṁ rathyā iva yāthaḥ | samūrāṇe ūrmibhiḥ pinvamāne anyā vām anyām api eti śubhre | 3. Achha sindhum mātṛitamām ayāsam Vipāśam ūrvīm*

*subhagām aganma | vatsam iva mātārā saññihāṇe samānaṁ yoniṁ anu
sancharanti |* 4. *Enā vayam payasā pīvamānā anu yoniṁ dera-kṛitūṁ
charantiḥ | na varttave prasavaḥ sarga-taktaḥ kiṁyur vipro nadyo johavīti |*
5 (= Nirukta, ii. 25). *Ramadhvam me vachase somyāya rītāvarī upa
muhūrttam evaiḥ | pra sindhum achha bṛīhaṭi manāshā avasyur ahve
Kusikasya sūnuḥ |* 6 (= Nir. ii. 26). *Indro asmān aradat vajra-bālur
apāhan Vṛittrām paridhiṁ nadīnām | devo 'nayat Savitā supānis tasya
vayam prasave yāmaḥ ūrvīḥ |* 7. *Pravāchyāṁ śaśvadhū vīryaṁ tad
Indrasya karma yad Ahiṁ virīṣhat | vi vajreṇa parishado jaghāna
āyann ūpo ayanam ichhamānūḥ |* 8. *Etad vacho jaritar mā 'pi mṛishṭūḥ
ā yat te ghoshān uttarā yugāni | uktheshu kāro prati no jushasva mā no
ni kaḥ purushatra namas te |* 9. *O su svasāraḥ kārave śṛiṇota yayau yo
durād anasā rathena | ni su namadvham bhavata supārā adhoakshaḥ
sindhavaḥ srotiyābhiḥ |* 10 (= Nir. ii. 27). *Ā te kāro śṛiṇavāma vachāṁsi
yayātha durād anasā rathena | ni te naṁsai pīpyānū iva yoshū maryāya
iva kanyā śaśvacchai te |* 11. *Yad anga tvā Bharatāḥ santareyur gavyan
grāmaḥ ishitaḥ Indra-jūtaḥ | arshūd aha prasavaḥ sarga-taktaḥ ā vo
vrīṇe sumatiṁ yajniyānām |* 12. *Atārishur Bharatāḥ gavyavaḥ sam
abhakta vipraḥ sumatiṁ nadīnām | pra pīvadhvam ishayantiḥ surādhaḥ
ā vakshanaḥ prīnadhvam yāta śibham |*

“1. (Viśvāmitra speaks): Hastening eagerly from the heart of the mountains, contending like two mares let loose, like two bright mother-cows licking¹²⁷ (each her calf), the Vipās and Sūtudrī rush onward with their waters. 2. Impelled by Indra, seeking a rapid course, ye move towards the ocean, as if mounted on a car. Running together, as ye do, swelling with your waves, the one of you joins the other, ye bright streams. 3. I have come to the most motherly stream; we have arrived at the broad and beautiful Vipās; proceeding, both of them, like two mother(-cows) licking each her calf, to a common receptacle. 4. (The rivers reply): Here swelling with our waters we move forward to the receptacle fashioned by the gods (the ocean); our headlong course cannot be arrested. What does the sage desire that he invokes the rivers? 5. (Viśvāmitra says): Stay your course for a moment, ye pure streams, (yielding) to my pleasant words.¹²⁸ With a powerful prayer, I, the son

¹²⁷ Prof. Roth (Illustr. of Nirukta, p. 133) refers to vii. 2. 5 (*pūrvī śisūṁ na mātārā rihāṇe*) as a parallel passage.

¹²⁸ Prof. Roth (Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 103) renders: “Listen joyfully for a

of Kuśika,¹²⁹ desiring succour, invoke the river. 6. (The rivers answer): Indra, the wielder of the thunderbolt, has hollowed out our channels; he has smitten Ahi who hemmed in the streams. Savitṛi the skilful-handed has led us hither; by his impulse we flow on in our breadth. 7. For ever to be celebrated is the heroic deed of Indra, that he has split Vṛittra in sunder. He smote the obstructions with his thunderbolt; and the waters desiring an outlet went on their way. 8. Do not, o utterer of praises, forget this word, which future ages will re-echo to thee. In hymns, o bard, show us thy devotion; do not humble us before men; reverence be paid to thee. 9. (Viśvāmitra says): Listen, o sisters, to the bard who has come to you from afar with waggon and chariot. Sink down; become fordable; reach not up to our chariot-axles with your streams. 10. (The rivers answer): We shall listen to thy words, o bard; thou hast come from far with waggon and chariot. I will bow down to thee like a woman with full breast¹³⁰ (suckling her child); as a maid to a man will I throw myself open to thee. 11. (Viśvāmitra says): When the Bharatas,¹³¹ that war-loving tribe, sent forward, impelled by Indra, have crossed thee, then thy headlong current shall hold on its course. I seek the favour of you the adorable. 12. The war-loving Bharatas have crossed; the Sage has obtained the favour of the rivers. Swell on impetuous, and fertilizing; fill your channels; roll rapidly."

The next quotation is from the fifty-third hymn of the same third Maṇḍala, verses 6 ff.:

6. *Apāḥ somam astam Indra pra yāhi kalyāṇīr jūyā suraṇaṁ grihe*

moment to my amiable speech, ye streams rich in water; stay your progress;" and adds in a note: "I do not connect the particle *upa* with *ramadhvam*, as the Nirukta and Sāyaṇa do; the fact that *upa* stands in another Pāda (quarter of the verse) requires a different explanation. The most of those interpretations of the Commentator which destroy the sense have their ultimate ground in the circumstance that he combines the words of different divisions of the verse; and any one may easily convince himself that every Pāda has commonly a separate sense, and is far more independent of the others than is the case in the śloka of later times." In his Lexicon Roth renders *ritāvari* in this passage by "regular," "equably flowing."

¹²⁹ "Kuśika was a king" (*Kuśiko rājā babhūva*. Nir. ii. 25). Sāyaṇa calls him a royal rishi.

¹³⁰ This is the sense assigned by Prof. Roth, *s.v. pī to pīḡyānū*. Sāyaṇa, following Yaska, ii. 27, gives the sense "suckling her child." Prof. Aufrecht considers that the word means "pregnant." In the next clause *śāśvachai* is rendered in the manner suggested by Prof. A., who compares R.V. x. 18, 11, 12.

¹³¹ "The men of the family of Bharata, my people" (*Bharata-kula-jūḥ madīyūḥ sarve*." Sāyaṇa).

te | yatra rathasya bñhato nidhānañ vimochanañ vājino dakṣiṇāvat |
 7. Ime bhōjāḥ angiraso virūpāḥ divas putrāso asurasya virūḥ | Viśvā-
 mitrāya dadato maghāni sahasra-sūve pratirante āyūḥ | 8. Rūpañ rūpaṃ
 maghavā bobhavīti māyūḥ kṛiṇvūnas tanvaṃ pari svām | trir yad divaḥ
 pari mukūrttam āgāt svair mantrair anṛitupāḥ ṛitāvā | 9. Mahān rishir
 deva-jāḥ deva-jāto astabhnāt sindhum arṇavañ nṛichakṣhāḥ | Viśvāmitro
 yad avahat Sudāsaṃ apriyāyata Kuśikebhīr Indrah | 10. Itāṃsūḥ iva
 kṛinūtha ślokaṃ adribhīr madanto gīrbhīr adhvare sute sachā | devebhīr
 viprāḥ ṛishayo nṛichakṣhaso vi pibadhvañ Kuśikūḥ soṃyam madhu |
 11. Upa preta Kuśikāś chetayadhvam āsvāñ rāyo pra munchata Su-
 dāsāḥ | rājā vṛittrañ jaughanat prūg apāg udag atha yajāte vare ā
 pṛithivyāḥ | 12. Yāḥ ime rodasī ubhe aham Indram atushtavam | Viśvā-
 mitrasya rakṣati brahma idam Bhāratañ janam | 13. Viśvāmitrāḥ
 arāsaṭa brahma Indrāya vajrino | karad in naḥ surādhasaḥ | 14 (=Nir.
 vi. 32). Kiñ te kurvanti Kīkaṭeshu gāvo nāsirañ duhre na tapanti ghar-
 mam | ā no bhara Pramagandasya vedo Naichūśakham maghavan randhaya
 naḥ | 15. Sasarpārīr amatim bādhamānū bñihad mimāya Jamadagni-
 dattā | ā Sūryasya duhitā tatūna śravo deveshu amṛitam ajuryam | 16.
 Sasarpārīr abharat tūyam ebhyo adhi śravaḥ panchajanyāsu kṛishṭishu |
 sū pakshyā navyam āyur dadhānā yām me palasti-jamadagnayo daduḥ |
 21. Indra ūtibhīr bahulābhīr no adya yāchehreshṭhābhīr ma-
 ghavan śūra jinva | yo no dveshtī adharah sas padīṣṭha yam u dvishmas
 tam u prāno jahātu | 22. parāsuñ chid vi tapati śimbalañ chid vi vṛiś-
 chati | ukhā chid Indra yeshanti prayastā phenam asyati. 23. Na sāya-
 kasya chikite janāso lodhañ nayanti paśu manyamānūḥ | nāvājinañ
 vājinañ hāsayanti na gardabham puro āsvān nayanti | 24. Ime Indra
 Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitvañ chikitur na prapitvaṃ | hinvanti āsvam
 arāṇaṃ na nityaṃ jyāvājāṃ pari nayanti ājau |

“ 6. Thou hast drunk soma; depart, Indra, to thy abode: thou hast a
 handsome wife and pleasure in thy house. In whatever place thy great
 chariot rests, it is proper that the steed should be unyoked. 7. These
 bountiful Virūpas of the race of Angiras,¹³² heroic sons of the divine

¹³² Sāyana says that the liberal men are the Kshattriyas, sons of Sudās, that
 virūpāḥ means their different priests of the race of Angiras, Medhātithi, and others,
 and that the sons of the sky are the Maruts, the sons of Rudra (Ime yāgañ kurvānāḥ
 bhōjāḥ Saudāsāḥ kshattriyāḥ teshāṃ yājakūḥ virūpāḥ nānārūpāḥ Medhātīthi-prabhṛi-
 tayo 'ngirasaḥ cha divo 'surasya devebhyo 'pi balavato Rudrasya putrāso . . . Ma-
 rutah). The Virūpas are connected with Angiras in R.V. x. 62, 5; and a Virūpa is
 mentioned in i. 45, 3; and viii. 61, 6.

Dyaus (sky), bestowing wealth upon Viśvāmitra at the sacrifice with a thousand libations, prolong their lives. 8. The opulent god (Indra) constantly assumes various forms, exhibiting with his body illusive appearances; since he came from the sky thrice in a moment, drinking (soma) according to his own will, at other than the stated seasons, and yet observing the ceremonial. 9.¹³³ The great rishi, god-born, god-impelled, leader of men, stayed the watery current; when Viśvāmitra conducted Sudās, Indra was propitiated through the Kuśikas. 10. Like swans, ye make a sound with the (soma-crushing) stones, exulting with your hymns when the libation is poured forth; ye Kuśikas, sage rishis, leaders of men, drink the honied soma with the gods.¹³⁴ 11. Approach, ye Kuśikas, be alert; let loose the horse of Sudās to (conquer) riches; let the king smite strongly his enemy in the east, the west, and the north; and then let him sacrifice on the most excellent (spot) of the earth.¹³⁵ 12. I Viśvāmitra have caused both heaven and earth to sing the praises of Indra;¹³⁶ and my prayer protects the race of Bharata. 13. The Viśvāmitras have offered up prayer to Indra the thunderer. May he render us prosperous! 14. What are thy cows doing among the Kīkaṭas,¹³⁷ who neither draw from them the milk (which is to be mixed with soma), nor heat the sacrificial kettle. Bring to us the wealth of Pramaganda; subdue to us to the son of Nīchāśākha. 15. Moving swiftly, removing poverty, brought by the Jamadagnis, she has mightily uttered her voice: this daughter of the sun has conveyed (our) renown, eternal and undecaying, (even) to the gods. 16. Moving swiftly she has speedily brought down (our) renown from them to the five races of men; this winged¹³⁸ goddess whom the aged Jamadagnis brought to us, has conferred on us new life." Omitting verses

¹³³ Verses 9–13 are translated by Prof. Roth, *I.itt. u. Gesch. des Weda*, p. 106 f.

¹³⁴ Comp. M. Bh. Adip. v. 6695. *Apibach cha tataḥ somam Indreṇa saha Kuśikāḥ* | "And then the Kuśika drank soma with Indra."

¹³⁵ Compare R.V. iii. 23, 4, which will be quoted below.

¹³⁶ Compare R.V. iv. 17, 1.

¹³⁷ *Kīkaṭāḥ nāma deśo 'nāryya-nivāsaḥ* | "Kīkaṭa is a country inhabited by people who are not Āryas." See the second vol. of this work, p. 362, and Journ. Royal As. Soc. for 1866, p. 340.

¹³⁸ *Pakshyā*. This word is rendered by Sāyana "the daughter of the sun who causes the light and dark periods of the moon, etc." (*Pakshasya pakshādī-nirvāha-kasya Sūryasya duhitā*). Prof. Roth *s.v.* thinks the word may mean "she who changes according to the (light and dark) fortnights."

17-20 we have the following: "21. Prosper us to-day, o opulent Indra, by numerous and most excellent succours. May he who hates us fall down low; and may breath abandon him whom we hate." This is succeeded by three obscure verses, of which a translation will be attempted further on.

Sāyaṇa prefaces verses 15 and 16 by a quotation from Śhaḍguru-śiṣhya's Commentary on the Anukramanikā, which is given with an addition in Weber's Indische Studien i. 119 f. as follows: *Sasarpari-do-riche prāhur itihāsam purāvidaḥ* ; *Saudāsa-nṛipater yajne Vasishṭhāt-maja-Saktinā* | *Viśvāmitrasyaḥbhibhūtam balaṁ vāk cha samantataḥ* | *Vasishṭhenābhibhūtaḥ sa hy avāsīdaḥ cha Gādhi-jāḥ* | *tasmai Brāhmīn tu Saurīm vā nāmnā vāchaṁ Sasarpārīm* | *Sūrya-vśmana āhṛitya dadur vai Jamadagnayaḥ* | *Kuśikānāṁ tataḥ sā vāṁ manūk chintām athānūdāt* | *upapreteti Kuśikān Viśvāmitro 'nucodayat* | *labdhvā vā-chaṁ cha hṛishṭātmā Jamadagnīn apūjayat* | "*Sasarpārī*" *iti dēvābhyāṁ riḡbhyāṁ Vācham stuvam svayam* | "Regarding the two verses beginning "*Sasarpārīḥ*" those acquainted with antiquity tell a story. At a sacrifice of king Saudāsa¹³⁹ the power and speech of Viśvāmitra were completely vanquished by Sakti, son of Vasishṭha; and the son of Gādhi (Viśvāmitra) being so overcome, became dejected. The Jamadagnis drew from the abode of the Sun a Voice called "*Sasarpārī*," the daughter of Brahmā, or of the Sun, and gave her to him. Then that voice somewhat dispelled the disquiet of the Jamadagnis [or, according to the reading of this line given by Sāyaṇa (*Kuśikānāṁ matiḥ sā vāg amatīm tām apānūdāt*) "that Voice, being intelligence, dispelled the unintelligence of the Kuśikas."]. Viśvāmitra then incited the Kuśikas with the words *upapreta* 'approach' (see verse 11). And being gladdened by receiving the Voice, he paid homage to the Jamadagnis; praising them with the two verses beginning "*Sasarpārīḥ*."

In regard to the verses 21-24 Sāyaṇa has the following remarks: "*Indra ūtibhir ity ādyās chatasro Vasishṭha-dveshinayaḥ* | *purā khalu Viśvāmitra-śiṣhyaḥ Sudāḥ nāma rājarshir āsit* | *sa cha kenachit kārāṇena Vasishṭha-dveshyo 'bhūt* | *Viśvāmitras tu śiṣhyasya rakshārtham abhir riḡbhir Vasishṭham asapat* | *imāḥ abhiśūpa-rūpāḥ* | *tāḥ richo Vasishṭhāḥ na śrinvantī* | "The four verses beginning 'o Indra, with succours' express hatred to Vasishṭha. There was formerly a royal rishi called

¹³⁹ The Brihaddevatā, which has some lines nearly to the same effect as these I have quoted (see Ind. Stud. i. 119), gives Sudās instead of Saudāsa.

Sudās, a disciple of Viśvāmītra; who for some reason had incurred the ill-will of Vasishṭha. For his disciple's protection Viśvāmītra cursed Vasishṭha in these verses. They thus consist of curses, and the Vasishṭhas do not listen to them."

In reference to the same passage the Brihaddevatā iv. 23 f., as quoted in Indische Studien, i. 120, has the following lines: *Parāś chatasro yās tatra Vasishṭha-dreshiṇī viduḥ | Viśvāmītreṇa tāḥ proktāḥ abhiśūpāḥ iti smritāḥ | dvesha-dreshās tu tāḥ proktāḥ vidyāch chaivābhichārikāḥ | Vasishṭhās tu na śṛiṇvanti tad āchāryyaka-sammataṃ | kīrttanāch chhrawaṇād vā 'pi mahān doṣaḥ prajāyate | śatadhā bhidyate mūrdhā kīrtti-tena śruteṇa vā | teshāṃ bālāḥ pramīyante tasmāt tās tu na kīrtlayet |* "The other four verses of that hymn, which are regarded as expressing hatred to Vasishṭha, were uttered by Viśvāmītra, and are traditionally reported to contain imprecations. They are said to express hatred in return for (?) hatred, and should also be considered as incantations. The descendants of Vasishṭha do not listen to them, as this is the will of their preceptor. Great guilt is incurred by repeating or hearing them. The heads of those who do so are split into a hundred fragments; and their children die. Wherefore let no one recite them."

Durga, the commentator on the Nirukta,¹⁴⁰ in accordance with this injunction and warning, says in reference to verse 23: *Yasmin nigamo esha śabdaḥ (lodhaḥ) sū Vasishṭha-dreshiṇī rik | ahaṃ cha Kāpishṭhala Vāsishṭhaḥ | atas tām na nirbravīmi |* "The text in which this word (lodha) occurs is a verse expressing hatred of Vasishṭha. But I am a Kāpishṭhala of the family of Vasishṭha; and therefore do not interpret it."

The following text also may have reference to the personal history of Viśvāmītra: R.V. iii. 43, 4. *Ā cha tvām etā vṛishanā vahāto hari sakhāyā sudhurā svangā | dhānāvād Indrah savanām jushūnaḥ sakhā sakhyaḥ śṛiṇavad vandanāni |* 5. *Kuvid mā gopaṃ karase janasya kuvid rājānam maghavann riḡishin | kuvid mā ṛishim papivāṃsaṃ sutasya kuvid me vasvo anṛitasya śikshāḥ |* "4. May these two vigorous brown steeds, friendly, well-yoked, stout-limbed, convey thee hither. May Indra gratified by our libation mingled with grain, hear (like) a friend, the praises of a friend. 5. Wilt thou make me a ruler of the people? wilt

¹⁴⁰ As quoted both by Prof. Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 108, note, and by Prof. Müller, Pref. to Rīg-veda, vol. ii. p. lvi.

thou make me a king, o impetuous lord of riches? wilt thou make me a rishi a drinker of soma? wilt thou endow me with imperishable wealth?"

The next passage refers to Devaśravas and Devavāta, of the race of Bharata, who are called in the Anukramanikā, quoted by Śāyana, "sons of Bharata" (*Bharatasya putrau*); but one of whom at least is elsewhere, as we shall see, said to be a son of Viśvāmitra: R.V. iii. 23, 2. *Amanthishṭām Bhūratā revad Agnim Devaśravāḥ Devavātaḥ sudakṣham | Agne vi paśya bṛihatā 'bhi rāyā īshām no netā bhavatād anu dyūn | 3. Daśa kshipaḥ pūrvyām sīm ajījanan sujātam mātṛishu priyam | Agniṁ stuhi Daivavātām Devaśravo yo janānām asud vaśi | 4. Nī tvā dadhe vare ā prithivyāḥ ilāyās pade sudinatve ahnām | Dṛishadvatyām mānusho Āpayāyām Sarasvatyām revad Agne didhi |* "2. The two Bhāratas Devaśravas and Devavāta have brilliantly created by friction the powerful Agni. Look upon us, o Agni, manifesting thyself with much wealth; be a bringer of nourishment to us every day. 3. The ten fingers (of Devavāta) have generated the ancient god, happily born and dear to his mothers. Praise, o Devaśravas, Agni, the offspring of Devavāta, who has become the lord of men. 4. I placed (or he placed) thee on the most excellent spot of earth on the place of worship,¹⁴¹ at an auspicious time. Shine, o Agni, brilliantly on the (banks of the) Dṛishadvatī, on (a site) auspicious for men, on (the banks of) the Āpayā, of the Sarasvatī."

Viśvāmitra is mentioned along with Jamadagni in the fourth verse of the 167th hymn of the tenth Maṇḍala, which is ascribed to these two sages as its authors: *Prasūto bhakṣham akaram charāv api stomān chemam prathamāḥ sūrir un mṛije | sute sātena yadī āgamām vām prati Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī dame |* "Impelled, I have quaffed this draught of soma when the oblation of boiled rice was presented; and I, the first bard, prepare this hymn, whilst I have come to you, o Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni in the house, with that which has been offered as a libation."

The family of the Viśvāmitras has, as we have seen, been already mentioned in R.V. iii. 53, 13. They are also named in the following passages:

iii. 1, 21. *Janman janman nihito Jātavedaḥ Viśvāmitrebhir idhyate ajasrah |*

¹⁴¹ Compare R.V. iii. 29, 3, 4.

"The undecaying Jātavedas (Agni) placed (on the hearth) is in every generation kindled by the Viśvāmitras."

iii. 18, 4. *Uch chhochishā sahasas putraḥ stuto bṛihad vayah śasamā-
neshu dhehi | revad Agne Viśvāmitreshu śaṁ yor marmṛijma te tanvam
bhūri kṛitvaḥ |*

"Son of strength, when lauded, do thou with thy upward flame inspire vigorous life into thy worshippers; (grant) o Agni, brilliant good fortune and prosperity to the Viśvāmitras; many a time have we given lustre to thy body."

x. 89, 17. *Eva te vayam Indra bhunjatīnām vidyāma sumatinām navā-
nām | vidyāma vastor arasā grīnanto Viśvāmitraḥ uta te Indra nānam |*

"Thus may we obtain from thee new favours to delight us: and may we, Viśvāmitras, who praise thee, now obtain riches through thy help, o Indra."

This hymn is ascribed in the Anukramaṇī to Renu, the son or descendant of Viśvāmitra; and the 18th verse is identical with the 22nd of the 30th hymn of the third Maṇḍala, which is said to be Viśvāmitra's production.

In a verse already quoted (R.V. iii. 33, 11) Viśvāmitra is spoken of as the son of Kuśika; at least the Nirukta regards that passage as referring to him; and the Kuśikas, who no doubt belonged to the same family as Viśvāmitra, are mentioned in another hymn which I have cited (iii. 53, 9, 10). They are also alluded to in the following texts:

R.V. iii. 26, 1. *Vaiśvānaram manasā 'gniṁ nichāyya havishmanto anu-
shatyaṁ svarvidam | sudānuṁ devaṁ rathirām vasūyavo gīrbhiḥ ranvaṁ
Kuśikāso havāmahe | 3. Aśvo na krandan janibhiḥ sam idhyate
Vaiśvānaraḥ Kuśikebhīr yuge yuge | sa no Agniḥ suvīryaṁ svasvyaṁ da-
dhātu ratnam amṛiteshu jāgriviḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, presenting oblations, and desiring riches, revering in our souls, as is meet,¹⁴² the divine Agni Vaiśvānara, the heavenly, the bountiful, the charioteer, the pleasant, invoke him with hymns. . . . 3. Vaiśvānara, who (crackles) like a neighing horse, is kindled by the Kuśikas with the mothers (*i.e.* their fingers) in every age. May

¹⁴² This is the sense of *anushatyaṁ* according to Prof. Aufrecht. Sāyana makes it one of the epithets of Agni "he who is true to his promise in granting rewards according to works" (*satyenānugataṁ karmānūrūpa-phala-pradāne satya-pratijnam*).

this Agni, who is ever alive among the immortals, bestow on us wealth, with vigour and with horses."

iii. 29, 15. *Amitrāyudho Marutām iva prayāḥ prathamajāḥ brahmaṇo viśvam id viduḥ | dyumnavaḥ brahma Kuśikāsaḥ ā irire ekaḥ eko dāme Agniṁ sam idhire |*

"Combating their enemies like the hosts of the Maruts, (the sages) the first-born of prayer¹⁴⁸ know everything; the Kuśikas have sent forth an enthusiastic prayer; they have kindled Agni, each in his own house."

iii. 30, 20. *Imaṁ kāmam mandaya gobhir āstaiś chandrāvata rūdhasā paprathaś cha | svaryavo matibhis tubhyam viprāḥ Indrāja vāhaḥ K.śi-kāso akraṇ |*

"Gratify this (our) desire with kine and horses; and prosper us with brilliant wealth. The wise Kuśikas, desiring heaven, have with their minds composed for thee a hymn."

iii. 42, 9. *Tvāṁ sutasya pītaye pratnam Indra havāmahe | Kuśikāso avasyavaḥ |*

"We, the Kuśikas, desiring succour, summon thee the ancient Indra to drink the soma libation."

It will be seen from these passages that the Viśvāmitras and the Kuśikas assert themselves to have been ancient worshippers of Agni, and to be the composers of hymns, and the possessors of all divine knowledge.

In the eleventh verse of the tenth hymn of the first Maṇḍala of the R. V., of which the traditional author is Madhuchhandas of the family of Viśvāmitra, the epithet *Kauśika* is applied to Indra: *Ā tu naḥ Indra Kauśika mandasūnaḥ sutam piba | navyam āyuḥ pra sutira kridhi sahasra-sām ṛishim |* "Come, Indra, Kauśika, drink our oblation with delight. Grant me new and prolonged life; make the rishi the possessor of a thousand boons."

Sāyaṇa explains the epithet in question as follows: *Kauśika Kuśikasya putra . . . yadyapi Viśvāmitro Kuśikasya putras tathāpi tadrūpeṇa Indrasya eva utpannatvāt Kuśika-putratvam aviruddham | ayaṁ vṛttānto 'nukramanikāyām uktaḥ |* "Kuśikas to Aishirathir Indra-

¹⁴⁸ Compare with this the epithet of *devajāḥ*, "god-born," applied to Viśvāmitra in iii. 53, 9 (above p. 342); and the claim of knowledge made for the Vasishṭhas in vii. 33, 7 (above p. 320).

tulyam putram icchan brahmacharyaṁ chachāra | tasya Indrāḥ eva Gāthi putro jajne" iti | "Kauśika means the son of Kuśika . . . Although Viśvāmitra was the son of Kuśika, yet, as it was Indra who was born in his form, there is nothing to hinder Indra being the son of Kuśika. This story is thus told in the Anukramaṇikā: 'Kuśika, the son of Ishīratha desiring a son like Indra, lived in the state of a Brahmachārin. It was Indra who was born to him as his son Gāthin.'" To this the Anukramaṇī (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, vol. ii. pref. p. xl.) adds the words: *Gāthino Viśvāmitraḥ | sa tṛtīyam maṇḍalam apaśyat* | "The son of Gāthin was Viśvāmitra, who saw the third Maṇḍala." In quoting this passage Professor Müller remarks: "According to Śhaṅkara this preamble was meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra: *"Saty apavāde svayam rishitvam anubhavato Viśvāmitra-gotrasya vicakshayā itihāsaṁ āha"* | "Wishing to declare the rishihood of the family of Viśvāmitra which was controverted, although they were themselves aware of it, he tells a story."

Professor Roth in his Lexicon (*s.v. Kauśika*) thinks that this term as originally applied to Indra meant merely that the god "belonged, was devoted to," the Kuśikas; and Professor Benfey, in a note to his translation of R.V. i. 10, 11,¹⁴⁵ remarks that "by this family-name Indra is designated as the sole or principal god of this tribe."

¹⁴⁴ Prof. Müller states that "Sāyana passes over what Kātyāyana (the author of the Anukramaṇī) says about the race of Viśvāmitra;" and adds "This (the fact of the preamble being 'meant to vindicate the Rishitva of the family of Viśvāmitra') was probably the reason why Sāyana left it out." It is true that Sāyana does not quote the words of the Anukramaṇī in his introductory remarks to the third Maṇḍala; but as we have seen he had previously adduced the greater part of them in his note on i. 10, 11.

¹⁴⁵ Orient und Occident, vol. i. p. 18, note 50. We have seen above, p. 345, that in R.V. iii. 23, 3, another god, Agni, is called *Daivavāta*, after the rishi Devavāta, by whom he had been kindled. Compare also the expression *Divodāso Agniḥ* in R.V. viii. 92, which Sāyana explains as = *Divodāsenā āhūyamāno'gniḥ*, "Agni invoked by Divodāsa;" while Prof. Roth *s.v.* understands it to mean "Agni who stands in relation to Divodāsa." In R.V. vi. 16, 19, Agni is called *Divodāsaḥ satpatiḥ*, "the good lord of Divodāsa." Agni is also called Bhārata in R.V. ii. 7, 1, 5; iv. 25, 4; vi. 16, 19. On the first text (ii. 7, 1) Sāyana says *Bharatūḥ pṛtvijāḥ | teshāṁ sambandhī Bhārataḥ*, "Bharatas are priests. Bhārata is he who is connected with them." On ii. 7, 5 he explains the word by *pṛtvijām putra-sthāniya*, "Thou who art in the place of a son to the priests." On the second text (iv. 25, 4) *tasmai Agnir Bhārataḥ śarma yaśmat*, "may Agni Bhārata give him protection" Sāyana takes Bhārata to mean "the bearer of the oblation" (*haviḥ bhartā*); but also refers to the S'P.Br. i. 4, 2, 2, where it is said, "or Agni is called 'Bhārata,' because, becoming breath, he sustains all creatures"

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa (pp. 398–400, Wilson, 4to. ed.) Viśvāmitra was the twelfth in descent from Purūravas, the persons intermediate being (1) Amāvasu, (2) Bhīma, (3) Kāñchana, (4) Suhotra, (5) Jahnu, (6) Sumantu, (7) Ajaka, (8) Valākāśva, (9) Kuśa, (10) Kuśāmba, and (11) Gādhi. The birth of Viśvāmitra's father is thus described, V.P. iv. 7, 4: *Teshāṃ Kuśāmbaḥ "śakra-tulyo me putro bhaved" iti tapaś chachāra | taṃ cha ugra-tapasam avalokya "mā bhavato anyo 'emat-tulya-vīryyaḥ" ity ātmanā eva asya Indrah putratvam agachhat | Gādhir nāma sa Kauśiko bhavat |* "Kuśāmba (one of Kuśa's four sons) practised austere fervour with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra. Perceiving him to be very ardent in his austere fervour, Indra, fearing lest another person should be born his own equal in vigour, became himself the son of Kuśāmba, with the name of Gādhi the Kauśika." Regarding the birth of Viśvāmitra himself, the Vishṇu Purāṇa relates the following story: Gādhi's daughter Satyavati had been given in marriage to an old Brāhman called Rīchika, of the family of Bhṛigu. In order that his wife might bear a son with the qualities of a Brāhman, Rīchika had prepared for her a dish of charu (rice, barley, and pulse, with butter and milk) for her to eat; and a similar mess for her mother, calculated to make her conceive a son with the character of a warrior. Satyavati's mother, however, persuaded her to exchange messes. She was blamed by her husband on her return home for what she had done. I quote the words of the original:

V.P. iv. 7, 14. "*Ati prāpe kim idam akūryyam bhavatyā kṛitam | atiraudraṃ te vapur ālakshyate | nūnaṃ trayā tvan-mūtri-satkṛitāś charur upayuktaḥ (? upabhuktaḥ) | na yuktam etat | 15. Mayā hi tatitra charau sakalā eva sauryya-vīryya-bala-sampad āropitā tvadīye charāv apy akhila-śānti-jnāna-titikshādikā brāhmaṇa-sampat | etach cha vipa-*

^{१२५}*śeṣa u vai imāḥ prajāḥ prāṇo bhūtvā bīharṣti tasmād vā iva āha "Bhārata" iti.* Another explanation had previously been given that the word *Bhārata* means "he who bears oblations to the gods." On the third text (vi. 16, 19) Sāyaṇa interprets the term in the same way. Roth, *s.v.*, thinks it may mean "warlike." In R.V. vii. 8, 4, (V.S. 12, 34) we find the words *pra pra ayam Agnir Bharatasya śrinve*, "this Agni (the son?) of Bīharata has been greatly renowned." Sāyaṇa makes *bharatasya* = *yajamūnasya*, "the worshipper," and *pra pra śrinve* = *prathito bhavati*, "is renowned." The Comm. on the Vīj. S. translates "Agni hears the invocation of the worshipper" (*śrinve śrinute āhvānam*). The S. P. Br. vi. 8, 1, 14, quotes the verse, and explains *Bharata* as meaning "Prajapati, the supporter of the universe" (*Prajapatir vai Dharataḥ sa hi idam sarvam bīharṣti*).

*rītaṁ kurvatyās tava aliraudrāstra-dhūrāṇa-mūrāṇa-nishṭha-kshattri-
yūchhūrāḥ puttro bharishyaty asyās cha upasāma-ruchir brāhmaṇā-
chūrāḥ*” | *ity ākārṇya eva sū tasya pādaṁ jagrāha pranīpatya cha enam
āha* “*bhagavan mayā etad ajnānād anuṣṭhītam | prasādaṁ me kuru |
mā evaṁvidaḥ putro bharatu | kāmam evaṁvidhaḥ pautro bharatu*” | *ity
ukto munir apy āha* “*evam asti*” | 16. *Anantaraṁ cha sū Jamad-
agnim ajījanat tan-mūti cha Viśvāmitraṁ janayāmāsa | Satyavatī cha
Kauśiki nāma nady abharat | Jamadagnir Ikshvāku-vaṁśodbhavasya Rēṇos
tanayāṁ Renukāṁ upayeme tasyāṁ cha aśeṣa-kshattri-vaṁśa-hantāram
Paraśurāma-sanjnam bhagavataḥ sakala-loka-guror Nārāyaṇasya aṁśaṁ
Jamadagnir ajījanat | Viśvāmitra-putras tu Bhūrgavaḥ eva Sunaśsepo
nāma devair dattaḥ | tataś cha Devarāta-nāmā bhavat | tataś cha anye
Madhuchhanda-Jayakṛita-Devadera-Ashṭaka-Kachhapa-IIaritaakhyāḥ
Viśvāmitra-putrāḥ babbhūvuh | 17. Teshāṁ cha bahūni Kauśika-gotrāṇi
rīshyantareshu vaivāhyāni bhavanti |*

“Sinful woman, what improper deed is this that thou hast done? I behold thy body of a very terrible appearance. Thou hast certainly eaten the charu prepared for thy mother. This was wrong. For into that charu I had infused all the endowments of heroism, vigour, and force, whilst into thine I had introduced all those qualities of quietude, knowledge, and patience which constitute the perfection of a Brāhman. Since thou hast acted in contravention of my design a son shall be born to thee who shall live the dreadful, martial, and murderous life of a Kshattriya; and thy mother's offspring shall exhibit the peaceful disposition and conduct of a Brāhman.’ As soon as she had heard this, Satyavatī fell down and seized her husband's feet, and said, ‘My lord, I have acted from ignorance; show kindness to me; let me not have a son of the sort thou hast described; if thou pleasest, let me have a grandson of that description.’ Hearing this the muni replied, ‘Be it so.’ Subsequently she bore Jamadagni, and her mother gave birth to Viśvāmitra. Satyavatī became the river called Kauśiki. Jamadagni wedded Renukā, the daughter of Rēṇu, of the family of Ikshvāku; and on her he begot a son called Paraśurāma, the slayer of the entire race of Kshattriyas, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa, the lord of the universe.¹⁴⁶ To Viśvāmitra a son called Sunaśsepa, of the race of

¹⁴⁶ According to the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, i. 3, 20, Paraśurāma was the sixteenth incarnation of Viṣṇu: *Avatāre shoḍaśame paśyaṇ brahma-druho nṛipān | trisapt-*

Bhṛigu, was given by the gods, who in consequence received the name of Devarāta ("god-given"). And then other sons, Madhuchhandas, Jayakṛita, Devadeva, Aṣṭaka, Kachhapa, Hāritaka, etc., were born to Viśvāmitra. From them sprang many families of Kauśikas, which intermarried with those of other rishis."

The Harivaṁśa, verses 1425 ff., gives a similar account, but makes Kuśika, not Kuśāmba, the grandfather of Viśvāmitra :

*Kuśa-putrāḥ bābhūvur hi chatvāro deva-varehasaḥ | Kuśikaḥ Kuśanā-
bhaḥ cha Kuśāmba Mūrtimāns tathā | Pahlavaiḥ saha saṁvṛiddho rājā
vana-charais tadā | Kuśikas tu tapas tepe puttram Indra-samān vibhuh |
labheyam iti tān Sakras trāsād abhyetya jajñivān | pūrṇe varsha-sahasre
vai tān tu S'akro hy apaśyata | aty ugra-tapasān drishtvā sahasrākṣaḥ
purandaraḥ | samarthaḥ putra-janane svam evāṁśam arāsayat | putratve
kalpayāmāsa sa devendraḥ surottamaḥ | sa Gādhir abhavad rājā Magha-
vān Kauśikaḥ svayam | Paurukutsy abhavad bhāryyā Gādhis tasyām
ajāyata |*

"Kuśa had four sons, equal in lustre to the gods, Kuśika, Kuśanābha, Kuśāmba, and Mūrtimat. Growing up among the Pahlavas, who dwelt in the woods, the glorious king Kuśika practised austere fervour, with the view of obtaining a son equal to Indra; and Indra from apprehension came and was born. When a thousand years had elapsed Sakra (Indra) beheld him. Perceiving the intensity of his austere fervour, the thousand-eyed, city-destroying, god of gods, highest of the deities, powerful to procreate offspring, introduced a portion of himself, and caused it to take the form of a son; and thus Maghavat himself became Gādhi, the son of Kuśika. Paurukutsi was the wife (of the latter), and of her Gādhi was born."

The Harivaṁśa then relates a story similar to that just extracted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa regarding the births of Jamadagni and Viśvāmitra, and then proceeds, verse 1456 :

*Aurvaśyaivam Ricikasya Satyavatyām mahāyaśāḥ | Jamadagnis tapo-
viryyaj jāne brahma-vidān varaḥ | madhyamaḥ cha Sunaśṣephaḥ Sunaḥ-
puchhaḥ kanishṭhakaḥ | Viśvāmitraṁ tu dāyādām Gādhiḥ Kuśika-nan-
danaḥ | janayāmāsa putraṁ tu tapo-vidyā-samātmaṇam | prāpya brah-*

kṛiteaḥ kupito nīkṣhatrām akarod mahīm | "In his sixteenth incarnation, perceiving that kings were oppressors of Brāhmins, he, incensed, made the earth destitute of Kshattriyas one and twenty times."

*marshi-samatām yo 'yam saptarshitām gataḥ | Viśvāmitras tu dharmātma
nāmnā Viścarathaḥ smṛitāḥ | jajne Bhṛigu-prasādēna Kauśikād vaṁśa-
vaddhanaḥ | Viśvāmitrasya cha sutāḥ Devarātādayaḥ smṛitūḥ | vikhṛyātās
trishu lokeshu teshām nāmāni vai śṛiṇu | Devaśravāḥ Katiś chaiva yasmāt
Kātyāyanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Sālāvātīyām Hiranyākṣho Reṇor jajne 'tha Reṇu-
mān | Sāṅkṛitir Gālavaś chaiva Mudgalaś cheti viśrutāḥ | Madhuchhanda
Jayaś chaiva Devalaś cha tathā 'śṭakaḥ | Kachhapa Hāritaś chaiva Viśvā-
mitrasya te sutāḥ | teshām khyātāni gotrāṇi Kauśikānām mahātmanām |
Pāṇino Babhravaś chaiva Dhyānājapyās tathaiva cha | Pārthivāḥ Deva-
rātāś cha Sālāṅkāyana-Vāskalāḥ | Lohitāḥ Yāmadātāś cha tathā Kāri-
shayaḥ smṛitāḥ | Sansṛutāḥ Kauśikāḥ rājāṁs tathā 'nye Saindhava-
nāḥ | Deralāḥ Reṇavaś chaiva Yājñavalkyāghamarshaṇāḥ | Audumbaraḥ
hy Abhishṇātās Tārākāyana-chunchulāḥ | Sālāvātīyāḥ Hiranyākṣhāḥ
Sāṅkṛitīyāḥ Gālavaś tathā | Nārāyaṇir Naraś chānyo Viśvāmitrasya
dhimataḥ | riśhy-antara-vivāhyāś cha Kauśikāḥ bahavaḥ smṛitāḥ | Pau-
ravasya mahārāja brahmarṣheḥ Kauśikasya cha | sambandho 'py asya
vaṁśe 'smin brahma-kṣhatrasya viśrutāḥ |*

“Thus was the renowned Jamadagni, the most excellent of those possessed of sacred knowledge, born by the power of austere fervour to Rīchika, the son of Ūrva, by Satyavati. Their second son was S'unaś-śepha¹⁴⁷ and the youngest Sunahpuchha. And Gādhi, son of Kuśika, begot as his son and inheritor Viśvāmitra, distinguished for austere fervour, science, and quietude; who attained an equality with Brahman-rishis, and became one of the seven rishis. The righteous Viśvāmitra, who was known by name as Viśvaratha,¹⁴⁸ was by the favour of a Bhṛigu born to the son of Kuśika, an augments (of the glory) of his race. The sons of Viśvāmitra are related to have been Devarāta and the rest, renowned in the three worlds. Hear their names: Devaśravas, Kati (from whom the Kātyāyanas had their name); Hiranyākṣha, born of Sālāvātī, and Reṇumat of Reṇu; Sāṅkṛiti, Gālava, Mudgala, Madhuchhanda, Jaya, Devala, Aśṭaka, Kuchhapa, Hārita — these were the

¹⁴⁷ The Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, as we shall shortly see, makes 'S'unaśśepa' a son of Ajigarta. The Mahābhārata Anuśāsanap. verse 186, coincides with the Harivaṁśa.

¹⁴⁸ In another passage of the Harivaṁśa (verses 1764 ff.), which repeats the particulars given in this passage, it appears to be differently stated, verse 1766, that besides a daughter Satyavati, and his son Viśvāmitra, Gādhi had three other sons, Viśvaratha, Viśvakṛit, and Viśvajit (*Vi 'vāmitras tu Gādheyo rāja Viśvarathas tadā | Viśvakṛit Viśvajitḥ chaiva tathā Satyavatī nripo*).

sons of Viśvāmītra. From them the families of the great Kauśikas are said to have sprung: the Pāṇins, Babhrus, Dhānājapyas, Pārthivas, Devarātas, Śālankāyanas, Vāskalas, Lohitas, Yāmadūtas, Kārishis, Sauśrutas, Kauśikas, Saindhavāyanas, Devalas, Reṇus, Yājñavalkyas, Aghamarshaṇas, Audumbaras, Abhishnātas, Tārakayaṇas, Chunchulas, Śālāvatyas, Hiranyākshas, Sāṅkrityas, and Gālavas.¹⁴⁹ Nārāyaṇi and Nara were also (descendants) of the wise Viśvāmītra. Many Kauśikas are recorded who intermarried with the families of other rishis. In this race of the Paurava and Kauśika Brahman-rishi, there is well known to have been a connection of the Brāhmins and Kshattriyas. Sunaśśepha, who was a descendant of Bhṛigu, and obtained the position of a Kauśika, is recorded to have been the eldest of Viśvāmītra's sons."

It will be observed that in this passage, Devaśravas is given as one of Viśvāmītra's sons. A Devaśravas, as we have already seen, is mentioned in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as a Bhārata, along with Devavāta. Here however in the Harivaṁśa we have no Devavāta, but a Devarāta, who is identified with Sunaśśepha. This, as we shall find, is also the case in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

In the genealogy given in both of the preceding passages, from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, and the 27th chapter of the Harivaṁśa respectively, Viśvāmītra is declared to be the descendant of Amāvasu the third son of Purūravas. In the 32nd chapter of the Harivaṁśa, however, we find a different account. Viśvāmītra's lineage is there traced up to a Jahnu, as in the former case; but Jahnu is no longer represented as a descendant of Amāvasu, the third son of Purūravas; but (as appears from the preceding narrative) of Āyus, the eldest son of that prince, and of Puru, the great-grandson of Āyus. Professor Wilson (Viṣṇu Purāṇa, 4to. ed. p. 451, note 23) is of opinion that this confusion originated in the recurrence of the name of Suhotra in different genealogical lists, and in the ascription to one king of this name of descendants who were

¹⁴⁹ Professor Wilson (V.P. 4to. ed. p. 405, note) gives these names, and remarks that the authorities add "an infinity of others, multiplied by intermarriages with other tribes, and who, according to the Vāyu, were originally of the regal caste like Viśvāmītra; but like him obtained Brahmanhood through devotion. Now these gotras, or some of them at least, no doubt existed, partaking more of the character of schools of doctrine, but in which teachers and scholars were very likely to have become of one family by intermarrying; and the whole, as well as their original founder, imply the interference of the Kshattriya caste with the Brahmanical monopoly of religious instruction and composition."

really sprung from another. It is not, however, clear that the genealogy of Viśvāmitra given in the Vishṇu Purāṇa is the right one. For in the Rig-veda, as we have seen, he is connected with the Bharatas, and in the passage about to be quoted from the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, he is called a Bharata and his sons Kuśikas; and Bharata is said both in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (Wilson's V.P. 4to. ed. p. 449) and in the Harivaṃśa (sect. 32, v. 1723, and preceding narrative) to be a descendant of Āyus and of Pūru. Accordingly we have seen that the Harivaṃśa styles Viśvāmitra at once a Paurava and a Kauśika.

A similar genealogy to that in the 32nd section of the Harivaṃśa is given in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 201 ff., where it is said that in the line of Bharata there was a king called Ajamiḍha who was also a priest (*Bharatasyānvaye chaivājamidho nāma pāṛthivāḥ | babhūva Bharata-śreṣṭha yajvā dharma-bhṛitāṃ varāḥ*), from whom Viśvāmitra was descended through (1) Jahnu, (2) Sindhudvīpa, (3) Balākaśva, (4) Kuśika, (5) Gādhi.

One of the names applied to Viśvāmitra and his race, as I have just noticed, is Bharata.¹⁵⁰ The last of the four verses at the close of the 53rd hymn of the third Maṇḍala of the Rig-veda, which are supposed to contain a malediction directed by Viśvāmitra against Vasishṭha (see above) is as follows: iii. 53, 24. *Ime Indra Bharatasya putrāḥ apapitvaṃ chikitur na prapitvam* | "These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire to avoid (the Vasishṭhas), not to approach them." These words are thus explained by Sāyaṇa: *Bharatasya putrāḥ Bharata-vaṃśyāḥ ime Viśvāmitrāḥ apapitvam apagamanaṃ Vasishṭhebhyaḥ chikitur na prapitvam* | [*Va*] *sishṭaiḥ saha teshāṃ sangatir nāsti | brāhmaṇāḥ eva ity arthaḥ* | "These sons of Bharata, persons of his race, know departure from, and not approach to, the Vasishṭhas. They do not associate with the Vasishṭhas. This means they are Brāhmanas."

The persons who accompanied Viśvāmitra when he wished to cross the Vipāś and the Sutudrī are, as we have seen above, called Bhārātas; and Devaśravas and Devavāta are designated in R.V. iii. 23, 2, as Bhārātas. On the other hand in one of the hymns ascribed to Vasishṭha (R.V. vii. 33, 6) the Bhārātas are alluded to as a tribe hostile to the Tritsus, the race to which Vasishṭha belonged.

¹⁵⁰ See Roth's Lexicon, s.v. *Bharata*, (7) "the name of a hero, the forefather of a tribe. His sons are called Viśvāmitras and the members of his family Bharatas."

In the legend of Sunaśśepa, told in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 13-18,¹⁵¹ Viśvāmitra is alluded to as being the hotṛi-priest of king Hariścandra, and as belonging to the tribe of the Bharatas. He is also addressed as *rājaputra*, and his sons are called Kuśikas. The outlines of the story are as follows: King Hariścandra of the family of Ikshvāku having no son, promised to Varuṇa, by the advice of Nārada, that if a son should be born to him he would sacrifice him to that god. A son was accordingly born to the king, who received the name of Rohita; but Hariścandra, though called upon by Varuṇa, put off from time to time, on various pleas, the fulfilment of his promise. When the father at length consented, the youth himself refused to be sacrificed and went into the forest. After passing six years there he met a poor Brāhman rishi called Ajigartta who had three sons, the second of whom, Sunaśśepa, he sold for a hundred cows to Rohita, who brought the young Brāhman to be sacrificed instead of himself. Varuṇa accepted the vicarious victim, and arrangements were made accordingly, "Viśvāmitra being the hotṛi-priest, Jamadagni the adhvaryu, Vasishṭha the brāhmān, and Ayāsa the udgātrī (*tasya ha Viśvāmitro hotā āsij Jamadagnir adhvaryur Vasishṭho brāhmā Ayāsayah udgātā*)." The sacrifice was not, however, completed, although the father received a hundred more cows for binding his son to the sacrificial post, and a third hundred for agreeing to slaughter him. By reciting verses in honour of different deities in succession Sunaśśepa was delivered; and at the request of the priests took part in the ceremonial of the day. I shall quote the remainder of the story at length:

17. *Atha ha Sunaśśepo Viśvāmitrasyāṅkam āsarūda | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasir "ṛishe punar me puttraṁ dehi" iti | "Na" iti ha uvācha Viśvāmitro "devāḥ vai imā mahyam arūsata" iti | sa ha Devagāto Viśvāmitraḥ āsa | tasya ete Kāpileya-Bābhraṇāḥ | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasir "traṁ vahi vihvayāvahai" iti | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasir "Āngiraso janmanā 'sy Ājigarttiḥ śrutatḥ kavīḥ | ṛishe paitāmahūt tantor mā 'pagāḥ punar ehi mām" iti | sa*

¹⁵¹ This legend is translated into German by Prof. Roth in Weber's Ind. Stud. i. 457 ff., into English by Prof. Wilson, Journ. Roy. As. Soc. vol. xiii. for 1851, pp. 96 ff., by Dr. Hang in his Ait. Brāhmaṇa, vol. ii. 460 ff., by Prof. Müller in his Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 408 ff., and into Latin by Dr. Streiter in his "Diss. de Sunaśśepo."

ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “adarśus tvā śāsa-hastaṁ na yach chhādreshv alapsata | garām trīṇi satāni tvam avṛṇīthāḥ mad Angiraḥ” iti | sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Sauyavasis “tad vai mā tāta tapati pāpam karma mayā kṛitam | tad ahaṁ nihnave tubhyam pratiyantu satā garām” iti | sa ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “yaḥ sakṛit pūpakaṁ kuryāt kuryād enat tato 'param | nūpāgāḥ śaudrānyāyūd asandheyaṁ tvayā kṛitam” iti | “asandheyaṁ” iti ha Viśvāmitraḥ upapapāda | sa ha uvācha Viśvāmitraḥ “Bhīmaḥ eva Sauyavasiḥ śāsena viśiśāsishuḥ | asthād maitasya putro bhūr mamairopehi putratām” iti | sa ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “sa vai yathā no jñāpīyā rājaputra tathā vada | yathaivāṅgirasah saṁn upeyām tara putratām” iti | sa ha uvācha Viśvāmitro “Jyeshtho me tvam putrānām syās tava śreshthā prajā syāt | upeyāḥ daivam me dāyaṁ tena vai tvopamantraye” iti | sa ha uvācha Sunaḥśepaḥ “sanjñānāneshu vai brūyāt sauhārdyāya me śriyai | yathā 'ham Bharata-ṛishabha upeyām tara putratām” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ putrān āmantrayāmāsa “Madhuchhandūḥ śṛiṇotana Rishabho Reṇur Aśṭakāḥ | ye ke cha bhrātaraḥ sthana asmai jyaiṣṭhyāya kalpadhvam” iti | 18. Tasya ha Viśvāmitrasya eka-satam putrāḥ āsuh panchāśad eva jyāyāṁso Madhuchhandasaḥ panchāśat kaṇṭyāṁsah | tad ye jyāyāṁso na te kuśalam menire | tūn anuryajāhūra “antān vaḥ prajā bhakṣiṣṭā” iti | te ete 'ndhrāḥ Puṇḍrāḥ S'abaraḥ Pulindāḥ Mātibāḥ ity udantyaḥ bahavo bhavanti | Vaiśvāmitraḥ Dasyūnām bhūyishṭhāḥ | sa ha uvācha Madhuchhandāḥ panchāśatā sardham “yad naḥ pitā sanjñānte tasmīns tiṣṭhāmahe vayam | puras tvā sarve kurmahe trām anvāno vayam smat” iti | atha ha Viśvāmitraḥ pratītaḥ putrāns tushṭāva “te vai putrāḥ paśumanto vīravanto bhaviṣyatha | ye mānam me 'nugrihṇanto vīravantam akartta mā | pura-etrā vīravanto Devarātena Gāthīnāḥ | sarve rādhyāḥ stha putrāḥ esha vaḥ salvivāchanam | esha vaḥ Kuśikāḥ vīro Devarātas tam anvita | yushmāns dāyam me upetā vidyām yam u cha vidmasi | te samyāno Vaiśvāmitrāḥ, sarve sūkāṁ sarātayaḥ | Devarātāya tasthīre dhrītyai śraishṭhyāya Gāthīnāḥ | adhīyata Devarāto rikthayor ubhayayor rīṣiḥ | Jahnūnām chādhipatyē dāive vede cha Gāthīnām |

“Sunaśśepa came to the side of Viśvāmitra. Ajigartta, the son of Suyavasa, said, ‘Rishi, give me back my son.’ ‘No,’ said Viśvāmitra, ‘the gods have given him to me’ (*devāḥ arāsata*); hence he became Devarāta the son of Viśvāmitra. The Kūpileyas and Bābhavas are his descendants. Ajigartta said to Viśvāmitra, ‘Come; let us both call

(him) to us.¹⁵² He (again) said (to his son), 'Thou art an Āngirasa, the son of Ajigartta, reputed a sage; do not, o rishi, depart from the line of thy ancestors; come back to me.' Sunaśśepa replied, 'They have seen thee with the sacrificial knife in thy hand—a thing which men have not found even among the Sūdras; thou didst prefer three hundred cows to me, o Angiras.' Ajigartta rejoined, 'That sinful deed which I have done distresses me, my son; I abjure it to thee. Let the [three] hundreds of cows revert (to him who gave them).'¹⁵³ Sunaśśepa answered, 'He, who once does a sinful deed, will add to it another; thou hast not freed thyself from that iniquity, fit only for a Sūdva. Thou hast done what cannot be rectified.' 'What cannot be rectified,' interposed Viśvāmitra; who continued, 'Terrible was the son of Suyavasa as he stood about to immolate (thee) with the knife: continue not to be his son; become mine.' Sunaśśepa replied, 'Speak, o king's son (*rāja-putra*), whatever thou hast to explain to us, in order that I, though an Āngirasa, may become thy son.' Viśvāmitra rejoined, 'Thou shalt be the eldest of my sons, and thy offspring shall be the most eminent. Thou shalt receive my divine inheritance; with this (invitation) I address thee.' Sunaśśepa answered, 'If (thy sons) agree, then for my welfare enjoin on them to be friendly, that so, o chief of the Bharatas, I may enter on thy sonship.' Viśvāmitra then addressed his sons, 'Do ye, Madhuchhandas, Ṛishabha, Renu, Ashtaka, and all ye who are brothers, listen to me, and concede to him the seniority.' 18. Now Viśvāmitra had a hundred sons, fifty of whom were older than Madhuchhandas and fifty younger. Then those who were older did not approve (their father's proposal). Against them he pronounced (this

¹⁵² I follow here the tenor of the interpretation (which is that of the Commentator on the S'āṅkhāyana Brāhmaṇa) given by Prof. Weber in his review of Dr. Haug's *Aitapya Brāhmaṇa*, in *Indische Studien*, ix. 316. Prof. Weber remarks that in the Brāhmaṇas the root *hu* + *vi* is employed to denote the opposing invitations of two persons who are seeking to bring over a third person to their own side; in proof of which he quotes Taitt. S. 6, 1, 6, 6, and S. P. Br. 3, 2, 4, 4, and 22. Profs. Roth, Wilson, and Müller, as well as Dr. Haug, understand the words to be addressed to Sunaśśepa by his father, and to signify "we, too (I and thy mother), call, or will call (thee to return to us)." But it does not appear that Sunaśśepa's mother was present. And it is to be observed that the next words uttered by Ajigartta, which are addressed to Sunaśśepa, are preceded by the usual formula *sa ha uvācha Ajigarttaḥ Suyavasiḥ*, "Ajigartta the son of S. said," which perhaps would not have been the case if both sentences had been addressed to the same person.

¹⁵³ Here too I follow Weber, *Ind. St.* ix. p. 317.

doom), 'Let your progeny possess the furthest ends (of the country).' These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Śābaras, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra.¹⁵⁴ Madhuchhandas with the (other) fifty said, 'Whatever our father determines, by that we abide. We all place thee in our front, and follow after thee.' Then Viśvāmitra was pleased, and said to his sons, 'Ye, my children who, shewing deference to me, have conferred upon me a (new) son, shall abound in cattle and in sons. Ye, my sons, the offspring of Gāthīn, who possess in Devarāta a man who shall go before you, are all destined to be prosperous; he is your wise instructor. This Devarāta, o Kuśikas, is your chief; follow him. He will receive you as my inheritance, and obtain all the knowledge which we possess.' All these sons of Viśvāmitra, descendants of Gāthīn, submitted together in harmony and with good will to Devarāta's control and superiority. The rishi Devarāta was invested with both possessions, with the lordly authority of the Jahnu, and with the divine Veda of the Gāthīns."¹⁵⁵

On this legend Professor Müller (Anc. Sansk. Lit. pp. 415 f.) remarks, amongst other things, as follows: "So revolting, indeed, is the descrip-

¹⁵⁴ See Weber, Ind. St. ix. p. 317 f., and Roth in his Lexicon, s.v. *anta* and *udantya*.

¹⁵⁵ This legend is perhaps alluded to in the Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa, 19, 11, quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. iii. 478: *S'unaśsepa vai etām Ajigarttir Varuṇa-grīhito 'paśyat | tayā sa vai Varuṇa-pāśād amuchyata* | "S'unaśsepa the son of Ajigartta, when seized by Varuṇa, saw this (verse); and by it he was released from the bonds of Varuṇa." Manu also mentions the story, x. 105: *Ajigarttaḥ sutām hantum upāsarpad bubhukshitaḥ | na chālipyata pūpena khut-pratikūram ācharam* | "Ajigartta, when famished, approached to slay his son; and (by so doing) was not contaminated by sin, as he was seeking the means of escape from hunger." On this Kullūka annotates: *Rishir Ajigarttīkhyo bubhukshitaḥ san putrān S'unaśsepha-nāmānān svayam vikritavān yajne go-śata-lūbhāya yajna-yūpe baddhvā viśasitā bhūtoḥ hantum prachakrame | na cha khut-pratikūrtham tathā kurvan pūpena tīptāḥ | etach cha Bahvricha brāhmaṇe S'unaśsephākhyāneshu vyaktam uktam* | "A rishi called Ajigartta, having, when famished, himself sold his son called S'unaśsepha, in order to obtain a hundred cows at a sacrifice, bound him to the sacrificial stake, and in the capacity of immolator was about to slay him. By doing so, as a means of escape from hunger, he did not incur sin. This is distinctly recorded in the Bahvricha (Aitareya) Brāhmaṇa in the legend of S'unaśsepha." The speakers in the Brāhmaṇa, however, do not take by any means so lenient a view of Ajigartta's conduct as Manu. (See Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 416.) The compiler of the latter work lived in an age when it was perhaps thought that a rishi could do no wrong. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. sect. 7, and sect. 16, verses 30-37 follows the Ait. Br. in the version it gives of the story; but, as we shall see in a subsequent section, the Rāmāyaṇa relates some of the circumstances quite differently.

tion given of Ajigartta's behaviour in the Brāhmaṇa, that we should rather recognize in him a specimen of the un-Āryan population of India. Such a supposition, however, would be in contradiction with several of the most essential points of the legend, particularly in what regards the adoption of Sunahṣepha by Viśvāmitra. Viśvāmitra, though arrived at the dignity of a Brāhman, clearly considers the adoption of Sunahṣepha Devarāta, of the famous Brahmanic family of the Āngirāsas, as an advantage for himself and his descendants; and the Devārātas are indeed mentioned as a famous branch of the Viśvāmitras (V.P. p. 405, 23). Sunahṣepha is made his eldest son, and the leader of his brothers, evidently as the defender and voucher of their Brahma-hood, which must have been then of very recent date, because Viśvāmitra himself is still addressed by Sunahṣepha as *Rāja-putra* and *Bharata-rishabha*." It must, however, be recollected that the story, as told in the Brāhmaṇa, can scarcely be regarded as historical, and that it is not unreasonable to suppose that the incidents related, even if founded on fact, may have been coloured by the Brahmanical prepossessions of the narrator. But if so, the legend can give us no true idea of the light in which Viśvāmitra's exercise of priestly functions was looked upon either by himself or by his contemporaries.

In *Indische Studien*, ii. 112-123, this story forms the subject of an interesting dissertation by Professor Roth, who arrives at the following conclusions:

"(i.) The oldest legend about Sunahṣepa (alluded to in R.V. i. 24, 11-13,¹⁵⁶ and R.V. v. 2, 7) knows only of his miraculous deliverance by divine help from the peril of death.

"(ii.) This story becomes expanded in the sequel into a narrative of Sunahṣepa's threatened slaughter as a sacrificial victim, and of his deliverance through Viśvāmitra.

"(iii.) This immolation-legend becomes severed into two essentially distinct versions, the oldest forms of which are respectively represented by the stories in the *Aitareya Brāhmaṇa*, and the *Rāmāyaṇa*.

"(iv.) The latter becomes eventually the predominant one; but its proper central-point is no longer the deliverance from immolation, but

¹⁵⁶ Compare also Rosen's remarks on the hymns ascribed to Sunahṣepa; *Rig-veda Samhita*, Annotations, p. lv. He thinks they contain nothing which would lead to the belief that they have any connection with the legend in the *Rāmāyaṇa* and *Ait. Br.*

the incorporation of Śunahśepa, or (with a change of persons) of Richika, into the family of the Kuśikas. It thus becomes in the end a family-legend of the race of Viśvāmitra.

“There is thus no historical, perhaps not even a genealogical, result to be gained here. On the other hand the story obtains an important place in the circle of those narratives in which the sacerdotal literature expressed its views regarding the character and agency of Viśvāmitra.”

In a passage of the Mahābhārata, Ādip. verses 3694 ff.,¹⁵⁷ where the descendants of Pūru are recorded, we find among them Bharata the son of Dushyanta (verse 3709) from whom (1) Bhumanyu, (2) Suhotra, (3) Ajamīdha, and (4) Jahnu are said to have sprung in succession (verses 3712–3722); and the last-named king and his brothers Vrajana and Rūpin are said to have been the ancestors of the Kuśikas (verse 3723: *anvayāḥ Kuśikāḥ rājan Jahnor amita-tejasaḥ | Vrajana-Rūpiṇoḥ*), who were therefore, according to this passage also, descended from Bharata (see above, p. 354). The Mahābhārata then goes on to relate that during the reign of Samvarana, son of Jahnu's eldest brother Ṛiksha, the country over which he ruled was desolated by various calamities (verses 3725 f.). The narrative proceeds, verse 3727:

*Abhyagnan Bhāratānś chaiva sapatnānām balāni cha | chālayan
vasudhām chemām balena chaturangiṇā | abhyayāt tam cha Pāṇchālyo
vijitya tarasā mahīm | akshauhiṇībhir daśabhiḥ sa enām samare 'jayat |
tataḥ sa-dāraḥ sāmātyaḥ sa-putraḥ sa-suhṛījjanaḥ | rājā Saṁvaranaḥ
tasmāt palāyata mahābhayāt | 3730. Sindher nadasya mahato nikunje
nyavasat tadā | nadi-vishaya-paryyante parvatasya samīpataḥ | tattrā-
vasan bhūn kālān Bhāratāḥ durgam āsritāḥ | teshām nivasatām tattra
sahasraṁ parivatsarān | athābhyagachhad Bhāratān Vaśiṣṭho bhagavān
ṛṣiḥ | tam āgatam prayatnena pratyudgamyābhivādya cha | arghyam
abhyāharaṁś tasmai te sarve Bhāratas tadā | nivedya sarvaṁ ṛṣayaḥ
satkāreṇa suvarchase | tam āsane chopaviṣṭam rājā vavre svayam tadā |
“purohito bhavān no 'stu rājyāya prayatemaḥ” | 3735. “Om” ity
evām Vaśiṣṭho 'pi Bhāratān pratyapadyata | athābhyasinchat sāmṛājye
sarva-kṣatrasya Pauravam | viśāṇa-bhūtaṁ sarvasyām prithivyām itī
naḥ śrutam | Bharatādhyushitam pūrvaṁ so 'dhyatishṭhat purottamam |
punar balibhṛitaḥ chaiva chakre sarva-mahikṣitaḥ |*

¹⁵⁷ Referred to by Roth, Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, pp. 142 ff., and Wilson, Rig-veda, iii. p. 86.

"3727. And the hosts of their enemies also smote the Bhāratas. Shaking the earth with an army of four kinds of forces, the Pāṇchālyā chief assailed him, having rapidly conquered the earth, and vanquished him with ten complete hosts. Then king Samvarāṇa with his wives, ministers, sons, and friends, fled from that great cause of alarm; (3730) and dwelt in the thickets of the great river Sindhu (Indus), in the country bordering on the stream, and near a mountain. There the Bhāratas abode for a long time, taking refuge in a fortress. As they were dwelling there, for a thousand years, the venerable rishi Vasishṭha came to them. Going out to meet him on his arrival, and making obeisance, the Bhāratas all presented him with the *arghya* offering, shewing every honour to the glorious rishi. When he was seated the king himself solicited him, 'Be thou our priest; let us strive to regain my kingdom.' 3735. Vasishṭha consented to attach himself to the Bhāratas, and, as we have heard, invested the descendant of Pūru with the sovereignty of the entire Kshattriya race, to be a horn (to have mastery) over the whole earth. He occupied the splendid city formerly inhabited by Bhārata, and made all kings again tributary to himself."

It is remarkable that in this passage the Bhāratas, who, as we have seen, are elsewhere represented as being so closely connected with Viśvāmitra, and are in one text of the Rig-veda (vii. 33, 6) alluded to as the enemies of Vasishṭha's friends, should be here declared to have adopted the latter rishi as their priest. The account, however, need not be received as historical, or even based on any ancient tradition; and the part referring to Vasishṭha in particular may have been invented for the glorification of that rishi, or for the honour of the Bhāratas.

The 11th and 12th khandas of the second adhyāya of the Sarvasāra Upanishad (as we learn from Professor Weber's analysis in Ind. St. i. 390) relate that Viśvāmitra was instructed on the identity of breath (*prāṇa*) with Indra, by the god himself, who had been celebrated by the sage on the occasion of a sacrifice, at which he officiated as hotri-priest, in a thousand Bṛihatī verses, and was in consequence favourably disposed towards him.

It is abundantly clear, from the details supplied in this section, that Viśvāmitra, who was a *rājanya* of the Bhārata and Kuśika families (Ait. Br. vii. 17 and 18), is represented by ancient Indian tradition as

the author of numerous Vedic hymns, as the domestic priest (purohita) of king Sudās (Nir. ii. 24), and as officiating as a hotṛi at a sacrifice of king Hariśchandra (Ait. Br. vii. 16). The Rāmāyaṇa also, as we shall see in a future section, connects him with Trisāṅku, the father of Hariśchandra, and makes him also contemporary with Ambarisha; and in the first book of the same poem he is said to have visited king Daśaratha, the father of Rāma (Bālakanda, i. 20, 1 ff.). As these kings were separated from each other by very long intervals, Trisāṅku being a descendant of Ikshvāku in the 28th, Ambarisha in the 44th,¹⁵⁸ Sudās in the 49th, and Daśaratha in the 60th generation (see Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. pp. 284, 303, 304, 313), it is manifest that the authors of these legends either intentionally or through oversight represented Viśvāmitra, like Vasishṭha (see above), as a personage of miraculous longevity; and on either supposition a great deal that is related of him must be purely fabulous. All the authorities describe him as the son of Gāthīn or Gādhi, the Anukramaṇī, the Vishṇu Purāṇa, and the Harivamśa declaring also that Gāthīn was an incarnation of Indra, and thus asserting Viśvāmitra to be of divine descent. It is not clear whether this fable is referred to in R. V. iii. 53, 9, where Viśvāmitra is styled *deva-jāḥ*, "born of a god," or whether this verse may not have led to the invention of the story. In either case the verse can scarcely have emanated from the rishi himself; but it is more likely to be the production of one of his descendants.¹⁵⁹

¹⁵⁸ According to the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, 41; ii. 110, 32, Ambarisha was only 28th from Ikshvāku. Compare Prof. Wilson's note on these genealogies, V.P. iii. 313 ff.

¹⁵⁹ The word *devajāḥ*, which, following Roth, *s.v.*, I have translated "god-born," is taken by Sāyaṇa as = *dyotamūṇānāṁ tjasām janayitā*, "generator of shining lights," and appears to be regarded by him as referring to the creation of constellations by Viśvāmitra, mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 60, 21. Prof. Wilson renders the phrase by "generator of the gods;" and remarks that "the compound is not *devajū*, 'god-born,' nor was Viśvāmitra of divine parentage" (R.V. iii. p. 85, note 4). This last remark overlooks the fact above alluded to of his father Gādhi being represented as an incarnation of Indra, and the circumstance that Prof. Wilson himself (following Sāyaṇa) had shortly before translated the words *prathama-jāḥ brahmaṇaḥ* in R.V. iii. 29, 15, as applied to the Kuśikas, by "the first-born of Brahmā," although from the accent *brahman* here must be neuter, and the phrase seems to mean, as I have rendered above, "the first-born of prayer." The word *jā* is given in the Nighaṇṭu as one of the synonyms of *apatya*, "offspring;" and in R.V. i. 164, 16, where it is coupled with *riṣhayaḥ*, the compound *devajāḥ* is explained by Sāyaṇa as "born of the god," *i.e.* the sun, and by Prof. Wilson as "born of the gods." See

This verse (R.V. iii. 53, 9) which claims a superhuman origin for Viśvāmitra, and the following verses 11–13 of the same hymn, which assert the efficacy of his prayers, form a sort of parallel to the contents of R.V. vii. 33, where the supernatural birth of Vasishṭha (vv. 10 ff.), the potency of his intercession (vv. 2–5), and the sacred knowledge of his descendants (vv. 7 and 8), are celebrated.

As the hymns of Viśvāmitra and his descendants occupy so prominent a place in the Rīg-veda Sanhitā, and as he is the alleged author of the text reputed the holiest in the entire Veda (iii. 62, 10), the Gāyatri *par excellence*, there is no reason to doubt that, although he was a *rājanya*, he was unreservedly acknowledged by his contemporaries to be both a rishi and a priest. Nothing less than the uniform recognition and employment of the hymns handed down under his name as the productions of a genuine “seer,” could have sufficed to gain for them a place in the sacred canon.¹⁶⁰ It is true we possess little authentic information regarding the process by which the hymns of different families were admitted to this honour; but at least there is no tradition, so far as I am aware, that those of Viśvāmitra and his family were ever treated as *antilegomena*. And if we find that later works consider it necessary to represent his priestly character as a purely exceptional one, explicable only on the ground of supernatural merit acquired by ardent devotion, we must recollect that the course of ages had brought about a most material change in Indian society, that the sacerdotal function had at length become confined to the members of an exclusive caste, and that the exercise of such an office in ancient times by persons of the regal or mercantile classes had ceased to be intelligible, except upon the supposition of such extraordinary sanctity as was alleged in the case of Viśvāmitra.

It is worthy of remark that although the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa (see above) declares that Sunaśśepa, as belonging to a priestly family, was called on to exercise the sacerdotal office immediately after his release, yet the anterior possession of divine knowledge is also ascribed to Viśvāmitra and the Gāthins, and that Sunaśśepa is represented as such—also R.V. ix. 93, 1 = S.V. i. 538. (Compare Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society, for 1866, p. 387 ff.)

¹⁶⁰ That many at least of these compositions were really the work of Viśvāmitra, or his descendants, is proved, as we have seen, by the fact that their names are mentioned in them.

ceeding to this sacred lore, as well as to the regal dignity of the race on which he became engrafted.

The fact of Viśvāmitra having been both a rishi and an officiating priest, is thus, as we have seen, and if ancient tradition is to be believed, undoubted. In fact, if we look to the number of Vedic hymns ascribed to him and to his family, to the long devotion to sacerdotal functions which this fact implies, and to the apparent improbability that a person who had himself stood in the position of a king should afterwards have become a professional priest, we may find it difficult to believe that although (as he certainly was) a scion of a royal stock, he had ever himself exercised regal functions. Professor Roth remarks (Litt. u. Gesch. p. 125) that there is nothing either in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, or in the hymns of the Rig-veda to shew that he had ever been a king.¹⁶¹ But on the other hand, as the same writer observes (p. 126), and as we shall hereafter see, there are numerous passages in the later authorities in which the fact of his being a king is distinctly, but perhaps untruly, recorded.

It is so well known, that I need scarcely adduce any proof of the fact, that in later ages Rājanyas and Vaiśyas, though entitled to sacrifice and to study the Vedas, were no longer considered to have any right to officiate as priests on behalf of others. I may, however, cite a few texts on this subject. Manu says, i. 88 :

Adhyāpanam adhyayanam yājñanam yājñanam tathā | dānam prati-graham chaiva Brāhmaṇānām akalpayat | 89. *Prajānām rakṣaṇam dānam ijjā' dhyayanam eva cha | viśayeshv aprasaktim cha kshattri-yasya samāsataḥ |* 90. *Paśūnām rakṣaṇam dānam ijjā' dhyayanam eva cha | vanikpatham kusīdam cha Vaiśyasya krishim eva cha |* 91. *Ekam eva tu Sūdrasya prabhuk karma samādiśat | eteshām eva varṇānām śūśrū-śām anasūyayā |* 88. He (Brahmā) ordained teaching, study, sacrifice, officiating for others at sacrifices, and the giving and receiving of gifts, to be the functions of Brāhmans. 89. Protection of the people, the giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, and non-addiction to objects of sense he assigned as the duties of the Kshattriya. 90. The tending of cattle, giving of gifts, sacrifice, study, commerce, the taking of usury, and agriculture he appointed to be the occupations of the Vaiśya. 91. But the

¹⁶¹ May not R.V. iii. 43, 5 (quoted above), however, be understood to point to something of this kind ?

lord assigned only one duty to the Sūdra, that of serving these other three classes without grudging."

Similarly it is said in the second of the Yajna-paribhāṣhā Sūtras, translated by Professor M. Müller (at the end of the ninth volume of the Journal of the German Oriental Society, p. xliii.), "that sacrifice is proper to the three classes, the Brāhman, Rājanya, and also the Vaiśya."¹⁶² Prof. Müller also refers to Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, of which i. 1, 5 and 6 are as follows:

5. *Angahināśrotṛiya - śhaṇḍa - śūdra - varjam* | 6. *Brāhmaṇa-rājanya-vaiśyānām śruteḥ* | "Men,¹⁶³ with the exception of those whose members

¹⁶² Prof. Müller does not give the original text.

¹⁶³ In one of these Sūtras of Kātyāyana (i. 1, 4) and its commentary a curious question (one of those which the Indian authors often think it necessary to raise and to settle, in order that their treatment of a subject may be complete and exhaustive) is argued, viz. whether the lower animals and the gods have any share in the practice of Vedic observances; or whether it is confined to men. The conclusion is that the gods cannot practise these rites, as they are themselves the objects of them, and as they have already obtained heaven and the other objects of desire with a view to which they are practised (*tatra devānām devatāntarābhāṣād anadhikārah* | *na hy ūtmānam ūddiśya tyāgaḥ sambhavati* | *kincha* | *devas cha prāpta-svargyūdi-kāmāḥ* | *na cha teshām kinchid avāptavyam asti yad-artham karmāni kurvate* |). As regards the right of the lower animals to sacrifice, although the point is decided against them on the ground of their only "looking to what is near at hand, and not to the rewards of a future world" (*te hy āsanum eva chetayante na pūralaukikam phalam*); still it is considered necessary seriously to obviate a presumption in their favour that they seek to enjoy pleasure and avoid pain, and even appear to indicate their desire for the happiness of another world by seeming to observe some of the Vedic prescriptions: "Nānu uktaḥ sunaś chaturdaśyām upavāsa-darśanāt śyenasya cha aśṭamyaṁ upavāsa-darśanāḥ cha te 'pi pūralaukikam jñanti" iti | *tat katham avagamya* | "te dharmārtham upavasanti" iti | *ye hi veda-smṛiti-purāṇādikam paṭhanti te eva jñanti yad anena karmaṇā idam phalam amutra prāpsyate* | "iti | *na cha ete vedādikam paṭhanti nāpy anyebhyaḥ āgamayanti* | *tena śāstrārtham avitvānāḥ phalam āmushmikaṁ akūmayantaḥ katham tat-sādhanānāṁ karma kuryuḥ* | *tasmād na dharmārtham upavasanti* | *iti* | *kimartham tarhy eteshām upavāsaḥ* | *uchyate* | *rogād aruchir eśhām* | *[tarhi niyata-kāle katham rogāḥ* | *uchyate* | *niyata-kālāḥ api rogāḥ bhavanti yathā trītyaka-chā-turthīkādī-jvarāḥ* | *adhañāś cha ete* | "But do not some say that 'from a dog having been noticed to fast on the fourteenth day of the month, and a hawk on the eighth, they also have a knowledge of matters connected with a future life?' But how is it known that these dogs and hawks fast from religious motives? For it is only those who read the Vedas, Śāritis, Purāṇas, etc., who are aware that by means of such and such observances, such and such rewards will be obtained in another world. But these animals neither read the sacred books for themselves, nor ascertain their contents from others. How then, ignorant as they are of the contents of the scriptures, and devoid of any desire for future rewards, can they perform those rites which are the means of attaining them? It is therefore to be concluded that they do not fast from religious motives. But why, then, do they fast? We reply, because from sickness they have a disinclin-

are defective, those who have not read the Veda, eunuchs, and Sūdras, have a right to sacrifice. 6. It is Brāhmanas, Rājanyas, and Vaiśyas (only who) according to the Veda (possess this privilege)."¹⁶⁴

ation for food. But how do they happen to be sick on certain fixed days? We answer, there are also certain diseases which occur on fixed days, as tertian and quartan agues. Another reason why the lower animals cannot sacrifice is that they are destitute of wealth (and so unable to provide the necessary materials)."

¹⁶⁴ "And yet," Prof. Müller remarks (ibid), "concessions were made (to other and lower classes) at an early period. One of the best known cases is that of the Rathakāra. Then the Nishādasthapati, though a Nishāda chief and not belonging to the three highest classes was admitted to great sacrifices, e.g. to the gāvedhukacharu." The S'atap. Br. i. 1, 4, 12, has the following words: *Tāni vai etāni chatvāri vāchaḥ "ehi" iti brāhmaṇasya "āgahi" "ādhrava" vaiśyasya cha rājanyabandhoḥ cha "ādhrava" iti sūdrasya* | "[In the formula, *havishkrid ehi*, 'come, o oblation-maker,' referred to in the previous paragraph, and its modifications] these four (different) words are employed to express 'come:' *ehi*, 'come,' in the case of a Brāhman; *āgahi*, 'come hither,' in the case of a Vaiśya; *ādhrava*, 'hasten hither,' in the case of a Rājanyabandhu, and *ādhrava*, 'run hither,' in the case of a Sūdra." On this Prof. Weber remarks, in a note on his translation of the first adhyāya of the first book of the S'. P. Br. (Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. iv. p. 301): "The entire passage is of great importance, as it shews (in opposition to what Roth says in the first vol. of this Journal, p. 83) that the Sūdras were then admitted to the holy sacrifices of the Arians, and understood their speech, even if they did not speak it. The latter point cannot certainly be assumed as a necessary consequence, but it is highly probable; and I consequently incline to the view of those who regard the Sūdras as an Arian tribe which immigrated into India before the others." See above, p. 141, note 251, and Ind. Stud. ii. 194, note, where Prof. Weber refers to the Mahābhārata, S'antip. verses 2304 ff. which are as follows: *Svāhākāra-vashatkārau mantrāḥ sūdre na vidyate | tasmāch chhūdraḥ pākayajñair yojetūrvataoṇi scayam | pūrṇapātramayim āhūḥ pākayajñasya dakṣiṇīm | sūdraḥ Pajjvāno nāma sghasrājñīm śataim dadau | Aindrāgnyena cāhlūnenā dakṣiṇīm iti naḥ śrutam* | "The svāhākāra, and the vashatkāra, and the mantras do not belong to a Sūdra. Wherefore let a man of this class sacrifice with pākayajnas, being incapacitated for (Vedic) rites (*śrauta-vratopāya-hīnaḥ* | Comm.). They say that the gift (*dakṣiṇā*) proper for a pākayajna consists of a full dish (*pūrṇapātramayī*). A Sūdra called Pajjavāna gave as a present a hundred thousand (of these pūrṇapātras) after the Aindrāgnya rule." Here, says Prof. Weber, "the remarkable tradition is recorded that Pajjavāna, i.e. Sūdās, who was so famous for his sacrifices, and who is celebrated in the Rig-veda as the patron of Vievāmītra and enemy of Vasiṣṭha, was a Sūdra." In the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, vii. 11, 24, the duties of a Sūdra are described to be "submissiveness, purity, honest service to his master, sacrifice without mantras, abstinence from theft, truth, and the protection of cows and Brāhmanas" (*sūdrasya sannatiḥ śaucaḥ sevā svāmīny amāyayā | amantrayajno hy asteyaṁ satyaṁ go-vipra-rakṣaṇam* |). The Commentator defines *amantrayajnaḥ* thus: *namaskūreṇaiva pancha-yajñānushṭhānam*, "the practice of the five sacrifices with obeisance," and quotes Yājñavalkya. See also Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 87, and notes; Müller's Anc. Sansk. Lit. p. 203; the same author's Essay, at the end of the ninth vol. of the Journ. Germ. Or. Soc. p. lxxiii.; and Bohtlingk and Roth's Lexicon, s.v. *pākayajna*.

According to the Ait. Br. vii. 19, "the Brāhman alone of the four castes has the right of consuming things offered in sacrifice" (*etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ | atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ*). And yet, as Prof. Müller observes, it is said in the Satap. Br. v. 5, 4, 9 : *Chatvāro vai varṇāḥ brāhmaṇo rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdro na ha eteshām ekaśchana bhavati yaḥ somaṁ vamaṁ | sa yad ha eteshām ekaśchit syāt syād ha eva prāyaśchittiḥ* | "There are four classes, the Brāhman, Rājanya, Vaiśya, and Śūdra. There is no one of these who vomits (i.e., I suppose, dislikes) the soma. If anyone of them however should do so, let there be an atonement."

Professor Weber, by whom also these words are quoted (Ind. St. x. 12), remarks that "they leave open the possibility of Rājanyas, Vaiśyas, and even Śūdras partaking of the soma, the only consequence being that they must as an expiation perform the Sautramaṇī rite."

In the twenty-first of the Yajna-paribhāṣā Sūtras, translated by Müller, p. xlvii., it is declared that the priestly dignity belongs to the Brāhmans; and it is laid down by the Indian authorities that even when the sacrifice is of a kind intended exclusively for Kshattriyas, the priest must still be a Brāhman and not a Kshattriya, the reason being that men of the former class only can eat the remains of the sacrifice (see Kātyāyana's Sr. Sūtras, i. 2, 8): *Brāhmaṇāḥ ritviḥ bhakṣa-pratishedhād itarayoj*, "the Brāhmans only are priests, because the other two castes are forbidden to eat (the remains of the sacrifice)". See also Weber, Ind. St. x. pp. 17 and 31, and the passages of the Ait. Br. viii. 24 and 27, referred to in pages 30 and 31 : 24. *Na ha vai apurohitasya rājno devāḥ annam adanti | tasmād rājā 'yakṣhamāno brāhmaṇam puro dadhita* | "The gods do not eat the food offered by a king who has no purohita. Wherefore (even) when not about to sacrifice, the king should put forward a Brāhman (as his domestic priest)." 27. *Yo ha vai trīn purohitāṁs trīn purodhātṛīn veda sa brāhmaṇaḥ purohitaḥ | sa vadeta purodhāyai | Agnir vāva purohitaḥ prithivī purodhātā vāyur vāva purohito 'ntarikṣham purodhātā ādityo vāva purohito dyauḥ purodhātā | esha ha vai purohito yaḥ evaṁ veda atha sa tirohito yaḥ evaṁ na veda | tasya rājā mitraṁ bhavati dvishantam apabādhati | yasyaivaṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo rūṣṭra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | kshattrēṇa kshattriṁ jayati balena balam aśnute | yasyaivaṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo rūṣṭra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | tasmai viśaḥ sanjānate sammukhāḥ ekamanasaḥ | yasyaivaṁ vidvān brāhmaṇo*

rāshṭra-gopaḥ purohitaḥ | “The Brāhman who knows the three purohitas, and their three appointers, is a (proper) purohita, and should be nominated to this office. Agni is one purohita, and the earth appoints him; Vāyu another, and the air appoints him; the Sun is a third, and the sky appoints him. He who knows this is a (proper) purohita; and he who does not know this is to be rejected. (Another) king becomes the friend of the prince who has a Brāhman possessing such knowledge for his purohita and the protector of his realm; and he vanquishes his enemy. He who has a Brāhman possessing etc. (as above) conquers (another’s) regal power by (his own) regal power, and acquires another’s force by (his own) force. With him who has a Brāhman etc. (as above) the people are openly united and in harmony.”

I add another passage from the same Brāhmaṇa, which might also have been properly introduced in an earlier chapter of this work (chapt. i. sect. iii.) as it relates to the creation of the four castes :

Ait. Br. vii. 19. *Prajāpatir yajnam asṛijāta* | *yajnaṁ sṛiṣṭam anu brahma-kshattre asṛijyetām* | *brahma-kshattre anu dvayyaḥ prajāḥ asṛijyanta hutādaś cha ahutādaś cha brahma eva anu hutāduḥ kshatram anv ahutādaḥ* | *etāḥ vai prajāḥ hutādo yad brāhmaṇāḥ* | *atha etāḥ ahutādo yad rājanyo vaiśyaḥ śūdraḥ* | *tābhyo yajnaḥ udakrāmat* | *tam brahma-kshattre anvaitām yāny eva brahmaṇaḥ āyudhāni tair brahma anvait yāni kshattrasya taṁ (? tath) kshatram* | *etāni vai brahmaṇaḥ āyudhāni yad yajnāyudhāni* | *atha etāni kshattrasya āyudhāni yad aśva-rathaḥ kavachaḥ iṣhu-dhanva* | *taṁ kshatram ananvāpya nyavarttata* | *āyudhebhyo ha sma asya vijamānaḥ parāṇ eva eti* | *atha enam brahma anvait* | *tam āpnot* | *tam āptvā parastād nirudhya atishṭhat* | *sa āptaḥ parastād niruddhas tishṭhan jñtvā svāny āyudhāni brahma upāvarttata* | *tasmād ha apy etarhi yajno brahmany eva brāhmaneshu pratishṭhitāḥ* | *atha enat kshatram anvāgacchhat tad abravīd* “*upa mā asmin yajne hvayasa*” *iti* | *tat* “*tathā*” *ity abravīt* “*tad vai nidhāya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇaḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttasa*” *iti* | “*tathā*” *iti tat kshattrāṁ nidhāya svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇaḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttata* | *tasmād ha apy etarhi kshattriyo yajamāno nidhāya eva svāny āyudhāni brahmaṇaḥ eva āyudhair brahmaṇo rūpeṇa brahma bhūtvā yajnam upāvarttata* |

“Prajāpati created sacrifice. After sacrifice, Brāhmān (sacred know-

ledge) and Kshättra (regal power)¹⁶⁵ were created. After these, two kinds of creatures were formed, viz. those who eat, and those who do not eat, oblations. After Brāhmān came the eaters of oblations, and after Kshättra those who do not eat them. These are the eaters of oblations, viz. the Brāhmans. Those who do not eat them are the Rājanya, the Vaiśya, and the Sūdra. From these creatures sacrifice departed. Brāhmān and Kshättra followed it, Brāhmān with the implements proper to itself, and Kshättra with those which are proper to itself. The implements of Brāhmān are the same as those of sacrifice, while those of Kshättra are a horse-chariot,¹⁶⁶ armour, and a bow and arrows. Kshättra turned back, not having found the sacrifice; which turns aside afraid of the implements of Kshättra. Brāhmān followed after it, and reached it; and having done so, stood beyond, and intercepting it. Being thus found and intercepted, sacrifice, standing still and recognizing its own implements, approached to Brāhmān. Wherefore now also sacrifice depends upon Brāhmān, upon the Brāhmans. Kshättra then followed Brāhmān, and said, 'invite me'¹⁶⁷ (too to participate) in this sacrifice.' Brāhmān replied, 'so be it: then laying aside thy own implements, approach the sacrifice with the implements of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān.'¹⁶⁸

¹⁶⁵ The two principles or functions represented by the Brāhmans and Kshattriyas respectively.

¹⁶⁶ See Weber, *Indische Studien*, ix. p. 318.

¹⁶⁷ See Weber, in the same page as last quoted.

¹⁶⁸ This idea may be further illustrated by a reference to several passages adduced by Professor Weber, *Ind. St.* x. 17, who remarks: "Hence every Rājanya and Vaiśya becomes through the consecration for sacrifice (*dīkshā*) a Brāhman during its continuance, and is to be addressed as such in the formula employed," and cites S. P. Br. iii. 2, 1, 39 f., part of which has been already quoted above, in p. 136, note; and also Ait. Br. vii. 23: *Sa ha dīkshamāṇaḥ eva brāhmaṇatām abhyupaiti* | "He a king, when consecrated, enters into the condition of a Brāhman." See the rest of the section and Sections 24, 25, and 31 in Dr. Haug's translation. The S. P. Br. xiii. 4, 1, 3, says, in opposition to the opinion of some, that an *asvamedha*, which is a sacrifice proper to Rājanyas, should be begun in summer, which is their season: *tad vai vasante eva abhyūraheta* | *vasanto vai brāhmaṇasya rituḥ* | *yaḥ u vai kṣā cha yajate brāhmaṇībhūya eva eva yajate* | "Let him commence in spring, which is the Brāhman's season. Whosoever sacrifices does so after having as it were become a Brāhman." So too Kātyāyana says in his *S'rauta Sūtras* vii. 4, 12: "*Brāhmaṇa*" *ity eva vaiśya-rījan-yayor epi* | "The word *Brāhmaṇa* is to be addressed to a Vaiśya and a Rājanya also." On which the Commentator annotates: *Vaiśya-rījan-yayor api yajne "dīkshito 'yam brāhmaṇaḥ" ity eva vaktavyam* | *na "dīkshito 'yaṁ kshattriyo vaiśyo vā" iti* | "The formula 'This Brāhman has been consecrated' is to be used at the sacrifice of a Vaiśya

Kshātttra rejoined, 'Be it so,' and, laying aside its own implements, approached the sacrifice with those of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān. Wherefore now also a Kshattriya when sacrificing, laying aside his own implements, approaches the sacrifice with those of Brāhmān, in the form of Brāhmān, and having become Brāhmān."

The Mahābhārata, Sāntip. verses 2280 f. distinctly defines the duty of a Kshattriya in reference to sacrifice and sacred study: *Kshattriyā-syāpi yo dharmas tām te vakshyāmi Bhārata | dadyād rājan na yācheta yajeta na cha yājayet | nādhyāpayed adhyāta prajāś cha paripūlayet |* "I will tell thee also the duties of a Kshattriya. Let him give, and not ask (gifts); let him sacrifice, but not officiate for others at sacrifices; let him not teach, but study; and let him protect the people."

It is clear that these passages which restrict the right of officiating ministerially at sacrifices to the members of the Brahmanical order,¹⁶⁹ represent a very different state of opinion and practice from that which prevailed in the earlier Vedic age, when Viśvāmitra, a Rājanya, and his relatives, were highly esteemed as the authors of sacred poetry, and were considered as perfectly authorized to exercise sacerdotal functions.

The result of the conflict between the opposing interests represented by Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively, is thus described by Professor

and a Rājanya also; and not the words 'this Rājanya, or this Vaisya, has been consecrated.'"

¹⁶⁹ It appears from Arrian that the Greeks were correctly informed of this prerogative of the Brāhmins. He says, Indica, ch. xi. : *Καὶ ὅστις δὲ ἰδίᾳ θύει, ἐξηγητὴς ἀντὶ τῆς θυσιῆς τῶν τις σοφιστῶν τούτων γίνεται, ὡς οὐκ ἂν ἄλλως κεχαρισμένα τοῖς θεοῖς θύσαντας.* "And whosoever sacrifices in private has one of these sophists" (so the highest of the classes, here said to be seven in number, is designated) "as director of the ceremony, since sacrifice could not otherwise be offered acceptably to the gods." Arrian makes another assertion (ibid. xii.) which, if applied to the time when he wrote (in the second Christian century), is not equally correct. After observing that the several classes were not allowed to intermarry, nor to practice two professions, nor to pass from one class into another, he adds : *Μοῦνον σφίσιν ἀνείναι σοφιστὴν ἐκ παντὸς γένεος γενέσθαι* 'ὅτι οὐ μαλθακὰ τοῖσι σοφιστῆσιν εἰσι τὰ πρήγματα, ἀλλὰ πάντων ταλαιπωρότατα. "Only it is permitted to a person of any class among them to become a sophist; for the life of that class is not luxurious, but the most toilsome of all." However indubitably true the first part of this sentence may have been in the age of Viśvāmitra, it cannot be correctly predicated of the age of Arrian, or even of the period when India was invaded by Alexander the Great. The mistake may have arisen from confounding the Buddhists with the Brāhmins, or from supposing that all the Brahmanical Indians, who adopted an ascetic life, were regarded as "sophists."

Roth at the close of his work on the literature and history of the Veda, which has been so often quoted, p. 141: "Vasishṭha, in whom the future position of the Brahmans is principally foreshadowed, occupies also a far higher place in the recollections of the succeeding centuries than his martial rival; and the latter succumbs in the conflict out of which the holy race of Brahmāvartta was to emerge. Vasishṭha is the sacerdotal hero of the new order of things. In Viśvāmitra the ancient condition of military shepherd-life in the Punjab is thrown back for ever into the distance. This is the general historical signification of the contest between the two Vedic families, of which the literature of all the succeeding periods has preserved the recollection."

SECT. VIIa—*Do the details in the last two sections enable us to decide in what relation Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra stood to each other as priests of Sudās?*

It appears from the data supplied in the two preceding sections that both Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as priests of a king called Sudās. This is shewn, as regards the former rishi (see pp. 319 ff., above), by R.V. vii. 18, 4, 5, and 21–25; and vii. 33, 1–6, where he is said to have interceded with Indra for Sudās, who, as appears from verse 25 of the second of these hymns, was the son of Pijavana. A similar relation is shewn by R.V. iii. 53, 9–13 to have subsisted between Viśvāmitra and Sudās (see above, p. 342); and although Sudās is not in that passage identified with the king who was Vasishṭha's patron, by the addition of his patronymic, we are told in the Nirukta, ii. 24, that he was the same person, the son of Pijavana. There is therefore no doubt that, according to ancient tradition, the two rishis were both priests of the same prince. It further appears that the Bharatas, with whom, as we have seen, Viśvāmitra was connected, are in R.V. vii. 33, 6 referred to as in hostility with Sudās and his priest. Are we then to conclude that the one set of facts excludes the other—that the two rishis could not both have been the family-priests of Sudās?

There is no reason to arrive at such an inference. Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra could not, indeed, have been the domestic priests of Sudās at one and the same period. But they may have been so at different

• times ; and the one may have supplanted the other. It is, however, very difficult to derive from the imperfect materials supplied in the passages to which I have referred any clear conception of the shape and course which the contest between these two rivals took, or to fix the periods at which they respectively enjoyed their patron's favour. Prof. Roth thinks¹⁷⁰ that some light is thrown on this obscure subject by the different parts of the 53rd hymn of the third mandala of the Rîg-veda. This composition, as it stands, contains, as he considers, fragments of hymns by Viśvāmītra or his descendants, of different dates ; and the verses (9-13), in which that rishi represents himself and the Kauśikas as being the priests of Sudās, are, in his opinion, earlier than the concluding verses (21-24),¹⁷¹ which consist of imprecations directed against Vasishṭha. These last verses, he remarks, contain an expression of wounded pride, and threaten vengeance against an enemy who had come into possession of some power or dignity which Viśvāmītra himself had previously enjoyed. And as we find from one of his hymns (the 53rd) that he and his adherents had at one time led Sudās to victory, and enjoyed a corresponding consideration ;—while from Vasishṭha's hymns it is clear that he and his family had also been elevated in consequence of similar claims to a like position ;—it would seem to result that Viśvāmītra had cursed Vasishṭha for this very reason that he had been supplanted by him. The former with his Kauśikas had through the growing influence of his rival been driven away by Sudās to the Bharatas the enemies of that prince and of the Tṛītsus ; and then

¹⁷⁰ See Litt. und Gesch. des Weda, pp. 121 ff.

¹⁷¹ I have (above, p. 343) characterized these verses as obscure and have left them untranslated. The portions of the following version which are printed in italics are doubtful : verse 22. " He (or, it) vexes (*turns the edge of*) even an axe ; and breaks even a sword. A seething cauldron, even, o Indra, when *over-heated*, casts out foam. 23. O men, no notice is taken of the arrow. They lead away the *intelligent* (*iqṛtha*) looking upon him as a beast. Men do not, however, pit a hack to run against a racer ; they do not lead an ass before horses. 24. These sons of Bharata, o Indra, desire separation, not vicinity. They constantly urge the horse *as if to a distance* ; they carry about the *bow* in the battle." The reader may consult Prof. Wilson's translation R.V. vol. iii. p. 89 f., as well as Roth's Litt. u. Gesch. des Weda, p. 109 f. In his Illustrations of the Nirukta, p. 42, Roth conjectures that both *iqṛtha* and *paśu*, in verse 23, may denote animals of different natures, and that the clause may mean something to the same effect as " they look on the wolf as if it were a hare." In his Lexicon, s.v. *paśu*, he takes that word to denote a head of cattle (ein Stück Vieh) as a term of contempt. He takes *jyāvāja*, in verse 24, to mean " having the impulsive force (?) (*Schnell-Kraft*) of a bow-string."

vowed vengeance against their enemies. Roth remarks that if this conjecture appears too bold, which he does not allow, there is no alternative but to regard verses 9–11 of R.V. iii. 53, as interpolated, and to hold that Viśvāmitra had always been allied with the Bharatas. But, as he urges, in a period such as that which the hymns of the Veda represent to us—a time of feud and foray among the small neighbouring tribes, when the power of the leaders of families and petty chiefs was unlimited, when we observe that the ten kings were allied against Sudās—in a period of subdivided dominion like this it would be far more surprising to find a family so favoured by the gods as that of Viśvāmitra or Vasishṭha in continued and undisturbed possession of influence over any one of these chieftains, than to see mutual aggression, hostility, and vindictiveness, prevailing even among families and clans united to one another by community of language and manners. It is further evident from later tradition, as Roth remarks, that Vasishṭha and his family had not always been the objects of Sudās's favour; but had, on the contrary, been at some time or other sufferers from his enmity or that of his house; and in proof of this he refers to the passage which has been cited above (p. 328) from Sāyaṇa's note on R.V. vii. 32, and the Sātyāyana and Tāṇḍya Brāhmaṇas, as there quoted; and also to the 176th adhyāya of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6696 ff., which will be adduced in a future section.

According to Roth's view (p. 124) the alienation between Sudās and Vasishṭha fomented by Viśvāmitra was only of temporary duration, and we must, therefore, understand that according to his view, the former rishi and his family remained eventually victors in the contest for influence between themselves and their rivals.

Professor Weber, in a note appended to an article by Dr. A. Kuhn in page 120 of the first volume of his *Indische Studien*, expresses a different opinion. "The testimonies," he says, "adduced by Roth, pp. 122 ff., according to which Sudās appears in the Epic age as hostile to Brahmanical interests, stand in opposition to his assertion that Vasishṭha's family finally banished Viśvāmitra and the Kuśikas from the court of that prince. The enmity between the latter and Vasishṭha, the prototype of Brahmanhood, is thus by no means of temporary duration (Roth, p. 124), but the very contrary." The passages cited by Roth, which Weber here claims as supporting his

own view, are Manu, vii. 41 (see above, p. 296), the Anukramaṇī with the Sātyāyana and Tāndya Brāhmaṇas quoted in p. 328, and the 126th and following sections of the Ādip. of the M. Bh. which will be adduced hereafter. To these may be added the text from the Kaushitaki Brāhmaṇa, cited in p. 328. If Sudās became ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha, and re-instated him and his relatives in their position of court priests, to the exclusion of the rival family of Viśvāmitra, it seems hard to understand, according to Professor Weber's argument, how that prince's name should have been handed down by tradition as one of the most prominent examples of impiety displayed in resistance to Brahmanical pretensions. It is, however, to be observed that, except in the text of Manu, it is the descendants of Sudās, and not the king himself, who are charged with the outrages committed against Vasishṭha's family; and that in the passage of the M. Bh. above referred to (Ādip. vv. 7669 ff.) the son of Sudās is represented as becoming ultimately reconciled to Vasishṭha.¹⁷² And if the passages, which have been cited above from the Rig-veda (pp. 330 f.) in allusion to Sudās's deliverance by the gods, refer to a real person, and to the

¹⁷² It is also worthy of remark that the Anusūsanap. of the M. Bh. contains a conversation between Vasishṭha and Saudāsa (the son, or one of the descendants of, Sudās) about the pre-eminent purity and excellence of cows, verse 3732 : *Elasmiṇ eva kule tu Vasishṭham ṛishi-sattanam | Ikshvāku-vamsajo rājā Saudāso vadatām varah | sarva-loka-charaṇāṁ siddham brahma-kośaṁ sanātanam | purohitam abhi-praśṭum abhiśūdyopachakrame | Saudāso uvācha | tṛṣṇilokye bhagavan kinirev pavi-traṁ kathyate 'nagha | yat kīrtayan sadā marttyaḥ prṇṇuyāt punyam uttamam |* "At this time the eloquent king Saudāsa, sprung from the race of Ikshvāku, proceeded, after salutation, to make an enquiry of his family-priest Vasishṭha, the eternal saint, the most excellent of ṛishis, who was able to traverse all the world, and was a treasure of sacred knowledge : 'What, o venerable and sinless man, is declared to be the purest thing in the three worlds, by constantly celebrating which one may acquire the highest merit ?' Vasishṭha in reply expatiates at great length on the merit resulting from bestowing cows, and ascribes to these animals some wonderful properties, as that they are the "support of all beings" (*pratishṭhā bhūtānām*, verse 3736), "the present and the future" (*gāvo bhūtāṁ cha bhavyāṁ cha*, 3737), and describes the cow as "pervading the universe, mother of the past and future" (*yayā sarvam idam ūyiptam jagat sthūvara-jangamanam | tām dhenuṁ śirasā vande bhūta-bhavyasya mātaram*, 3799). The sequel is thus told in verse 3801 : *Varam idam iti bhūmido (bhūniṇi) vichintya pravaram ṛisher vachanaṁ tato mahātma | vyasṛjato niyatātmanavān āvijeḥhyo subahu cha go-dhanam āptavāns lokān |* "The great, self-subduing king, considering that these words of the ṛishi were most excellent, lavished on the Brāhmins very great wealth in the shape of cows, and obtained the worlds."—So here we find the son of Saudāsa extolled as a saint.

same individual with whom we are at present concerned, they are difficult to reconcile with these traditions in the Brāhmaṇas, Mahābhārata, and Purāṇas; inasmuch as they are not said to be the productions of Viśvāmitra or his descendants, and as they necessarily imply that Sudās was a pious prince who worshipped the popular deities in the way prescribed by the rishis by whom he was commemorated, since the latter would not otherwise have celebrated him in their hymns as a conspicuous object of divine favour. Tradition, too, as we have seen (p. 268) represents Sudās to have been the author of a Vedic hymn. The verses of the 104th hymn of the seventh book which I have quoted (above, p. 327) do not appear to contribute any further aid towards the solution of the question under consideration. Assuming that they contain a curse aimed at Viśvāmitra we have no means of ascertaining when they were uttered; whether the charge preferred against Vasishṭha preceded or followed the ascendancy of his rival.

We seem, therefore, to possess no sufficient data for settling the question of the relations in which Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra respectively stood to king Sudās, further than that they both appear, from the hymns of the Rīg-veda, to have been, at one period or another, his family priests; but which of the two was the first, and which the last, to enjoy the king's favour, must, according to all appearance, remain a mystery.

SECT. VIII.—*Story of Triśanku.*

I shall now proceed to adduce the different legends in the Purāṇas, the Rāmāyaṇa, and the Mahābhārata, in which Vaśiṣṭha and Viśvāmitra are represented as coming into conflict.

In the third chapter of the fourth book of the Viṣṇu Purāṇa (Wilson, vol. iii. pp. 284 ff.) we find a story about a king Satyavrata, called also Triśanku, the 26th in descent from Ikṣhvāku, who had become degraded to the condition of a Chanḍāla, about whom it is briefly related, iv. 3, 13 : *Drādaśa-vārshikyām anāvṛishṭyām Viśvāmitra - kalatrāpatya - poṣhaṇūrthaṁ chaṇḍāla - pratigraha - parihaṇāya cha Jāhnavī - tīra - nyagrodhe mṛiga-māmsam anudīnam babandha* | 14. *Paritūṣṭeṇa cha Viśvāmitreṇa sa-śarīraḥ svargam āropitaḥ* | “During a twelve years' drought he daily suspended deer's flesh for the support of Viśvāmitra's wife and children

on a nyagrodha-tree on the banks of the Ganges, intending by this means to spare them the (humiliation of) receiving a gift from a Chāṇḍāla; and was in consequence raised bodily to heaven by Viśvāmitra, who was gratified (with his conduct)."¹⁷³

This story is told at greater length in the Harivāmśa (sections 12 and 13) where Vasishṭha also is introduced. I have already (p. 337) remarked on the super-human longevity ascribed to this sage, who is represented as contemporary both with Ikshvāku, and with his descendants down to the sixty-first generation. But Indian mythology, with its boundless resources in supernatural machinery, and in the doctrine of transmigration, can reconcile all discrepancies, and explain away all anachronisms, making any sage re-appear at any juncture when his presence may be required, another and yet the same.

The Harivāmśa states that Satyavrata (Triśanku) had been expelled from his home by his father for the offence of carrying off the young wife of one of the citizens under the influence of a criminal passion (verse 718. *Yena bhāryyā hrītā pūrvam kṛitodrahā parasya vai* | 720. *Jahāra kāmāt kanyāṁ sa kasyachit puravāsinaḥ*); and that Vasishṭha did not interfere to prevent his banishment. His father retired to the woods to live as a hermit. In consequence of the wickedness which had been committed, Indra did not rain for a period of twelve years. At that time Viśvāmitra had left his wife and children and gone to practice austerities on the sea-shore. His wife, driven to extremity by want, was on the point of selling her second son for a hundred cows, in order to support the others; but this arrangement was stopped by the intervention of Satyavrata, who liberated the son when bound,¹⁷⁴ and

¹⁷³ In the Mahābh. S'āntip. verses 5330 ff. (referred to by Weber, Ind. St. i. 475, note) there is a story of Viśvāmitra determining to eat dog's flesh in a period of famine between the end of the Tretā-age and the beginning of the Dvāpara; and holding a conversation on this subject with a Chāṇḍāla. The circumstance is referred to in Manu, x. 108: *Kṣudhārttaś chātum abhyūgād Viśvāmitraḥ śva-jūghanīm | chāṇḍāla-hastād ādīya dharmādharma-vichakṣaṇaḥ* | "And Viśvāmitra, who knew right and wrong, resolved to eat a dog's thigh, taking it from the hand of a Chāṇḍāla."

¹⁷⁴ See in Ind. Stud. ii. 121 ff. Professor Roth's remarks on the peculiar relation in which he regards this story as standing to that of S'unaśśeṣa, as given in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa. The various incidents in the one present in many respects a curious parallel to those of the other, which he considers can hardly be accidental; and he thinks this version of the legend of Triśanku may have arisen out of a transformation and distortion of that of S'unaśśeṣa.

maintained the family by providing them with the flesh of wild animals: and according to his father's injunction, consecrated himself for the performance of a silent penance for twelve years (verse 732. *Upāṁśa - vratam āsthāya dīkṣhām dvādaśa - vārshikīm | pitur niyogād avahat tasmin vana-gate nṛipe*). The story proceeds thus:

Verse 733. *Ayodhyāṁ chaiva rāṣṭrāṁ cha tathāivāntalāhpuram munih | yājñopadhyāya-sambandhād Vaśiṣṭhaḥ paryarakṣata | Satyavrataḥ tu bālyād vai bhāvino 'rthasya vā balāt | Vaśiṣṭhe 'bhyadhikam manyuṁ dhūrayāmāsa nityadā | 735. Pitrā hi taṁ tadā rājyāt tyajyamānaṁ svam ātmajam | na vārāyāmāsa munir Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kṛāṇena ha | pāṇi-grahāṇa-mantrāṇāṁ nishṭhā syāt saptame pade | na cha Satyavrataḥ tas-mād dhṛitavān saptame pade | jānan dharmān Vaśiṣṭhas tu na mām trātīti Bhūrata | Satyavrataḥ tadā roṣhāṁ Vaśiṣṭhe manasā 'karot | guṇa-buddhyā tu bhagavān Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kṛitavāns tadā | na cha Satya-vrataḥ tasya tam upāṁśum abudhyata | . . . 740. Tena tv idānīm vahaat dīkṣhām taṁ durvāhām bhuvi | "kulasya nishkṛitis tāta kṛitā sū vai bhaved" iti | na taṁ Vaśiṣṭho bhagavān pitrā tyaktān nyavārāyat | abhishlekshyāmy aham putram asyety evam matir muneḥ | sa tu dvādaśa-varshāṇi taṁ dīkṣhām udvahan bāl | avidyamāne māṁse tu Vaśiṣṭhasya mahātmanah | sarva-kāma-dughāṁ dogdhrīm dadarśa sa nṛipātmanah | taṁ vai krodhāch cha mohāch cha śramāch chaiva kṣudhārditaḥ | daśa-dharma-gato rājā jaghāna Janamejaya | . . . 745. Tach cha mām-saṁ svayaṁ chaiva Viśvāmitrasya chātmanjan | bhojayāmāsa tach chhṛutvā Vaśiṣṭho 'py asy chukrudhe | . . . 750. Viśvāmitras tu dūrāṇām āgato bharaṇe kṛito | sa tu tasmai varam prādād munih prītas Trisāṅkave | chhandyamāno varenūtha varam vavre nṛipātmanah | saśarīro vraje svargam ity evaṁ yūchīto varaḥ | anūvṛiṣṭi-bhaye tasmin gate dvā-daśa-vārshike | pitryo 'bhishichya rājye tu yājñāmāsa tam munih | mi-shatām devatānām cha Vaśiṣṭhasya cha Kauśikah | saśarīraṁ tadā taṁ tu divam ūropayat prabhuḥ |*

733. "Meanwhile Vaśiṣṭha, from the relation subsisting between the king (Satyavrata's father) and himself, as disciple¹⁷⁵ and spiritual preceptor, governed the city of Ayodhyā, the country, and the interior apartments of the royal palace. But Satyavrata, whether through folly or the force of destiny, cherished constantly an increased indignation against Vaśiṣṭha, who for a (proper) reason had not interposed to pre-

¹⁷⁵ Literally "the person in whose behalf sacrifice was to be performed."

vent his exclusion from the royal power by his father. 'The formulas of the marriage ceremonial are only binding,' said Satyavrata, 'when the seventh step has been taken,'¹⁷⁶ and this had not been done when I seized the damsel: still *Vaśishṭha*, who knows the precepts of the law, does not come to my aid.' Thus Satyavrata was incensed in his mind against *Vaśishṭha*, who, however, had acted from a sense of what was right. Nor did Satyavrata understand (the propriety of) that silent penance imposed upon him by his father. . . . 740. When he had supported this arduous rite, (he supposed that) he had redeemed his family position. The venerable muni *Vaśishṭha* did not, however, (as has been said) prevent his father from setting him aside, but resolved to install his son as king. When the powerful prince Satyavrata had endured the penance for twelve years, he beheld, when he was without flesh to eat, the milch cow of *Vaśishṭha* which yielded all objects of desire; and under the influence of anger, delusion, and exhaustion, distressed by hunger, and failing in the ten duties [the opposites of which are then enumerated] he slew her . . . (745) and both partook of her flesh himself, and gave it to *Viśvāmitra*'s sons to eat. *Vaśishṭha* hearing of this, became incensed against him," and imposed on him the name of *Trīśanku* as he had committed three sins (verses 747-749). "750. On his return home, *Viśvāmitra* was gratified by the support which his wife had received, and offered *Trīśanku* the choice of a boon. When this proposal was made, *Trīśanku* chose the boon of ascending bodily to heaven. All apprehension from the twelve years' drought being now at an end, the muni (*Viśvāmitra*) installed *Trīśanku* in his father's kingdom, and offered sacrifice on his behalf. The mighty *Kauśika* then, in spite of the resistance of the gods and of *Vaśishṭha*, exalted the king alive to heaven."

The legend of *Trīśanku* is also related, though differently, in the *Bālakāṇḍa* of the *Rāmāyaṇa*; but as it is there introduced as a portion of the history of *Viśvāmitra*'s various contests with *Vaśishṭha* recorded in the 51st to 65th sections of that book, I shall reserve it till I take up that narrative.

¹⁷⁶ "The next ceremony is the bride's stepping seven steps. It is the most material of all the nuptial rites; for the marriage is complete and irrevocable so soon as she has taken the seventh step, and no sooner." Colebrooke's *Misc. Ess.* i. 218, where further details will be found.

SECT. IX.—*Legend of Hariśchandra.*

The son of Trisanku, the subject of the preceding story, was Hariśchandra, whose name is mentioned in the Vishṇu P., but without any allusion to the events of his life. According to the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa,¹⁷⁷ however, he gave up his whole country, and sold his wife and son, and finally himself, in satisfaction of Viśvāmitra's demands for money. The following is a summary of the story as there told, book i. sections 7-9. We may perhaps regard it as having in part a polemical import, and as intended to represent Viśvāmitra, the Kshattriya rival of the Brāhmans, in the most unfavourable colours. The sufferings of Hariśchandra, his wife, and son, are very pathetically depicted, and the effect of the various incidents is heightened with great artistic skill. The story, in fact, appears to me one of the most touching to be found in Indian literature. Hariśchandra, the Purāṇa tells us, was a royal rishi (*rājārshi*) who lived in the Tretā age, and was renowned for his virtues, and the universal prosperity, moral and physical, which prevailed during his reign. On one occasion, when hunting, the king heard a sound of female lamentation which proceeded, it appears, from the Sciences who were becoming mastered by the austere-fervid sage Viśvāmitra, in a way they had never been before by anyone else; and were consequently crying out in alarm at his superiority. In fulfilment of his duty as a Kshattriya to defend the weak, and inspired by the god Ganeśa, who had entered into him, Hariśchandra exclaimed (i. 7, 12) "What sinner is this who is binding fire in the hem of his garment, while I, his lord, am present, resplendent with force and fiery vigour?" He shall to-day enter on his long sleep, pierced in all his limbs by arrows, which, by their discharge from my bow, illuminate all the quarters of the firmament" (12. *Ko'yam badhnāti vastrānte pāvakaṃ pāpa-kṛin naraḥ | baloṣṭha-tejasā dīpte mayi patyāv upasthite |* 13. *So'dya mat-kīrmukā-keṣha - vidīpita - digantaraiḥ | śarair vibhinna - sarvāṅgo dīrghanidrām praveksyati |*). Viśvāmitra was provoked by this address. In consequence of his wrath the Sciences instantly perished, and Hariśchandra, trembling like the leaf of an aśvattha tree, submissively represented that

¹⁷⁷ The same story is told in the Padma Purāṇa also. See Wilson's V.P. vol. iii. p. 287, and note. The glory of Hariśchandra is described in the M.Bh. Sabhūp. verses 489 ff.

he had merely done his duty as a king, which he defined as consisting in the bestowal of gifts on eminent Brāhman and other persons of slender means, the protection of the timid, and war against enemies. Viśvāmitra hereupon demands a gift as a Brāhman intent upon receiving one. The king offers him whatever he may ask : Gold, his own son, wife, body, life, kingdom, good fortune (*hiranyaṃ vā suvarṇaṃ vā putraḥ patnī kalevaram | prāṇāḥ rājyam puraṃ lakṣmīr yad abhipretam ātmanuḥ* |). The saint first requires the present for the Rājasūya sacrifice. 'On this being promised, and still more offered, he asks for the empire of the whole earth, including everything but Hariśchandra himself, his wife and son, and his virtue which follows its possessor wherever he goes ¹⁷⁸ (i. 7, 28. *Vinā bhāryyām cha putraṃ cha śarīraṃ cha tavānagha | 29. Dharmaṃ cha sarva - dharma - jña yo yāntam anugachhati*). Hariśchandra joyfully agrees. Viśvāmitra then requires him to strip off all his ornaments, to clothe himself in the bark of trees, and to quit the kingdom with his wife Sāivyā and his son. When he is departing the sage stops him and demands payment of his yet unpaid sacrificial fee. The king replies that he has only the persons of his wife, his son, and himself left. Viśvāmitra insists that he must nevertheless pay ; and that "unfulfilled promises of gifts to Brāhman bring destruction" (i. 7. 35. *Viśeshato brāhmaṇānām hantya adattam pratiśrutam*). The unfortunate prince, after being threatened with a curse, engages to make the payment in a month ; and commences his journey with a wife unused to such fatigues, amid the universal lamentations of his subjects. While he lingers, listening to their affectionate remonstrances against his desertion of his kingdom, Viśvāmitra comes up, and being

¹⁷⁸ Compare Manu's very striking verses, viii. 17, and iv. 239 ff., which may be freely rendered as follows :

"Our virtue is the only friend that follows us in death ;
All other ties and friendships end with our departing breath.
Nor father, mother, wife, nor son beside us then can stay,
Nor kinsfolk :—virtue is the one companion of our way.
Alone each creature sees the light, alone the world he leaves ;
Alone of actions, wrong or right, the recompence receives.
Like log or clod, beneath the sod their lifeless kinsman laid,
His friends turn round and quit the ground ; but virtue tends the dead.
Be then a hoard of virtue stored, to help in day of doom ;
By virtue led, we cross the dread, immeasurable gloom."

See the *Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society*, vol. xix. for 1862, p. 303 f.

incensed at the delay and the king's apparent hesitation, strikes the queen with his staff, as she is dragged on by her husband. All this Hariśchandra endures with patience, uttering no complaint. Then the five Viśvedevas, merciful gods, exclaimed, " 'To what worlds shall this sinner Viśvāmitra go, who has thrust down this most excellent of sacrificers from the royal dignity? Whose faith shall now sanctify the soma-juice poured out with recitation of texts at the great sacrifice, that we may drink it, and become exhilarated? ' " (i. 7, 62. *Atha viśve tadā devāḥ pañcha prāhuḥ kṛipūlavah | Viśvāmitraḥ supāpo 'yaṁ lokān kām samavāpsyati |* 63. *Yenāyaṁ yajvanām śreṣṭhaḥ sva-rājyād avaro-pitaḥ | kasya vā śraddhayā pūtaṁ sutaṁ somam mahādhave | pītṛ vāyam prayāsyāmo mudam mantra-purassaram |*). Viśvāmitra heard what they said, and by a curse doomed them to become men; he relented, however, so far as to exempt them from having offspring, and from other family ties and human weaknesses, and promised that they should eventually be restored to their pristine position as gods. They in consequence became partially incarnate as the five Pāṇḍus, the sons of Draupadī. Resuming the story of Hariśchandra, the writer tells us that he then proceeded with his wife and little son to Benares, imagining that this divine city, as the special property of Śiva, could not be possessed by any mortal. Here he found the relentless Viśvāmitra waiting for him, and ready to press his demand for the payment of his sacrificial gift, even before the expiration of the full period of grace. In this extremity Śaivya the queen suggests with a sobbing voice that her husband should sell her. On hearing this proposal Hariśchandra swoons, then recovers, utters lamentations, and swoons again, and his wife, seeing his sad condition, swoons also. While they are in a state of unconsciousness, their famished child exclaims in distress, "O father, father, give me bread; O mother, mother, give me food: hunger overpowers me; and my tongue is parched" (i. 8, 35. *Tāta tāta dadāsvānam ambāmba bhojanam dada | kṣud me balavati jātā jihvāgraṁ śuśhyate tathā*). At this moment Viśvāmitra returns, and after recalling Hariśchandra to consciousness by sprinkling water over him, again urges payment of the present. The king again swoons, and is again restored. The sage threatens to curse him if his engagement is not fulfilled by sunset. Being now pressed by his wife, the king agrees to sell her, adding, however, "If my voice can utter such a wicked word, I do

what the most inhuman wretches cannot perpetrate" (i. 8, 48 f. *Nṛi-śaṁsair api yat karttuṁ na śakyaṁ tat karomy aham | yadi me śakyate vānī vaktum idṛik sudurvachah*). He then goes into the city, and in self-accusing language offers his queen for sale as a slave. A rich old Brāhman offers to buy her at a price corresponding to her value, to do his household work. Hariśchandra's heart was torn, and he could make no reply. The Brāhman paid down the money, and was dragging away the queen by the hair of her head, when her little son Rohitāśva, seeing his mother about to be taken away from him, began to cry, and laid hold of her skirts. The mother then exclaims: i. 8, 59, "*Munchāryya muncha mām tūrad yāvat pāśyāmy ahaṁ śiṣum | durlabhaṁ darśanaṁ tātā punar aya bhaviṣyati* | 60. *Pāśyaihi vatsa mām evam mātaraṁ dāsyatām gatām | mām mā sprākṣhīḥ rāja-putra aspriṣyā 'haṁ tavā-dhunā*" | 61. *Tataḥ sa bālāḥ sahasā dṛiṣṭvā kṛiṣṭūṁ tu mātaram | samabhyadhāvad ambetī rudan sūśrūvilekṣaṇah* | 62. *Tam āgataṁ dvijaḥ kretā bālam abhyāhanat padū | vadaṁs tathāpi so 'mbetī naivāmunchata mātaram* | 63. *Rājapatny uvācha | "prasādaṁ kuru me nātha kṛiṁśhve-mām cha bālakam | kṛitā 'pi nāham bhavato vinaināṁ kār्या-sādḥikā* | 64. *Ittham mamāṭpa-bhāgyāyāḥ prasāda-sumukho bhara | mām saṁyogaya bālana vatseneva payasvinīm*" | 65. *Brāhmaṇaḥ uvācha | "grihyatām vīttam etat te dīyatām bālako mama"* | "Let me go, let me go, venerable sir, till I look upon my son. I shall hardly ever behold him again. Come, my darling, see thy mother now become a slave. Touch me not, young prince; I may no longer be handled by thee." Seeing his mother dragged away, the child ran after her, his eyes dimmed with tears, and crying 'mother.' The Brāhman purchaser kicked him when he came up; but he would not let his mother go, and continued crying 'mother, mother.' The queen then said to the Brāhman, 'Be so kind, my master, as to buy also this child, as without him I shall prove to thee but a useless purchase. 64. Be thus merciful to me in my wretchedness; unite me with my son, like a cow to her calf.'¹⁷⁹ The Brāhman agrees: 'Take this money and give me the boy.'" When his wife and son were being carried away, Hariśchandra broke out into lamentations: i. 8, 68. *Yāṁ na vāyur na chādītyo nendur na cha pri-thag-janaḥ | dṛiṣṭvantaḥ purā patnīm seyaṁ dāsītvam āgata* | 69. *Sūrya-vaṁśa-prasūto 'yaṁ sukumāra-karāṅgulīḥ | samprāpto vikrayam*

¹⁷⁹ The whole of this reads like a scene from "Uncle Tom's Cabin."

bālo dhiñ mām astu sudurmatim | “‘She, my spouse, whom neither air, nor sun, nor moon, nor stranger had beheld, is now gone into slavery. This my son, a scion of the solar race, with his delicate hands and fingers, has been sold. Woe to me, wicked wretch that I am.’” After the Brāhman had gone out of sight with his purchases, Viśvāmītra again appeared and renewed his demands; and when the afflicted Hariśchandra offered him the small sum he had obtained by the sale of his wife and son, he angrily replied, i. 8, 74: *Kshattrabandho mame-mām teaṁ sadṛṣiṁ yajna-dakṣiṇām* | *manyase yadi tat kshipram paśya tram me balam param* | 75. *Tapaso ’utra sutaptasya brāhmaṇasyāmala-sya cha* | *mat-prabhāvasya chograsya śuddhasyādhyayanasya cha* | “‘If, miserable Kshattriya, thou thinkest this a sacrificial gift befitting my deserts, thou shalt soon behold the transcendent power of my ardent austere-fervour, of my spotless Brāhmanhood, of my terrible majesty, and of my holy study.’” Hariśchandra promises an additional gift, and Viśvāmītra allows him the remaining quarter of the day for its liquidation. On the terrified and afflicted prince offering himself for sale, in order to gain the means of meeting this cruel demand, Dharma (Righteousness) appears in the form of a hideous and offensive Chanḍāla, and agrees to buy him at his own price, large or small. Hariśchandra declines such a degrading servitude, and declares that he would rather be consumed by the fire of his persecutor's curse than submit to such a fate. Viśvāmītra however again comes on the scene, asks why he does not accept the large sum offered by the Chanḍāla; and, when he pleads in excuse his descent from the solar race, threatens to fulminate a curse against him if he does not accept that method of meeting his liability. Hariśchandra implores that he may be spared this extreme of degradation, and offers to become Viśvāmītra's slave in payment of the residue of his debt; whereupon the sage rejoins, “If thou art my slave, then I sell thee as such to the Chanḍāla for a hundred millions of money” (i. 8, 95. *Yadi preshyo mama bhavān chaṇḍālāya tato mayā* | *dāsa-bhāvam anuprāpto datto vittūrbudena vai* |). The Chanḍāla, delighted, pays down the money, and carries off Hariśchandra, bound, beaten, confused, and afflicted, to his own place of abode. Morning, noon, and evening the unfortunate prince repeats these words: i. 8, 99. *Bālā dīna-mukhi dṛṣṭvā bālāṁ dīna-mukham puraḥ* | *mān smaraty asukhāviṣṭā* “*mochayishyati nau nṛipaḥ* | 100. *Upātta-vitto*

viprāya dattvā vittam ato 'dhikam" | *na sū mām mṛiga-sāvākāḥi vetti pūpalaraṇṇaṁ kṛitam* | 101. *Rājya-nūsaḥi suhṛit-tyāgo bhāryyā-tanaya-vik-rayah* | *prāptā chaṇḍālātā cheyam aho duḥkha-paramparā* | "My tender wife, dejected, looking upon my dejected boy, calls me to mind while she says, 'The king will ransom us (100) after he has gained money, and paid the Brāhman a larger sum than he gave for us.' But my fawn-eyed spouse is ignorant that I have become yet more wretched than before. 101. Loss of my kingdom, abandonment of friends, sale of my wife and son, and this fall into the condition of a Chaṇḍāla,— what a succession of miseries! ' Hariśchandra is sent by the Chaṇḍāla to steal grave-clothes in a cemetery (which is described at tedious length, with all its horrors and repulsive features), and is told that he will receive two-sixths of the value for his hire; three-sixths going to his master, and one-sixth to the king. In this horrid spot, and in this degrading occupation, he spent, in great misery, twelve months, which seemed to him like a hundred years (i. 8, 127. *Evaṁ dvādaśa-māsās tu nītāḥ śata-samopamūḥ*). He then falls asleep and has a series of dreams suggested by the life he had been leading (*śmaśānābhhyāsa-yogena*, verse 129). After he awoke, his wife came to the cemetery to perform the obsequies of their son, who had died from the bite of a serpent (verses 171 ff.). At first the husband and wife did not recognize each other, from the change in appearance which had been wrought upon them both by their miseries. Hariśchandra, however, soon discovers from the tenor of her lamentations that it is his wife, and falls into a swoon; as the queen does also when she recognizes her husband. When consciousness returns, they both break out into lamentations, the father bewailing in a touching strain the loss of his son, and the wife the degradation of the king. She then falls on his neck, embraces him, and asks "whether all this is a dream, or a reality, as she is utterly bewildered;" and adds, that "if it be a reality, then righteousness is un-availing to those who practise it" (verse 210. *Rājan svapno 'tha tathyaṁ vā yad etad manyate bhavaṁ | tat kathyatām mahābhūga mano vai muh-yate mama* | 211. *Yady etad evaṁ dharmajña nāsti dharme sahāyātā* |). After hesitating to devote himself to death on his son's funeral pyre without receiving his master's leave, (as such an act of insubordination might send him to hell) (verses 215 ff.), Hariśchandra resolves to do so, braving all the consequences, and consoling himself with the hopeful

anticipation: verse 224. *Yadi dattañ yadi hutañ guravo yadi tashitāḥ | paratra sangamo bhūyāt puttrena saha cha tvayā |* "If I have given gifts, and offered sacrifices, and gratified my religious teachers, then may I be reunited with my son and with thee (my wife) in another world."¹⁸⁰ The queen determines to die in the same manner. When Hariśchandra, after placing his son's body on the funeral pile, is meditating on the lord Hari Nārāyaṇa Kṛishṇa, the supreme spirit, all the gods arrive, headed by Dharma (Righteousness), and accompanied by Viśvāmitra.¹⁸¹ Dharma entreats the king to desist from his rash in-

¹⁸⁰ In the following verses of the Atharva-veda a hope is expressed that families may be re-united in the next world: vi. 120, 3. *Yatra suhūrdāḥ suhṛdo madantu vihūya rogāñ tanvaḥ svāyāḥ | asloniḥ angair ahṛulāḥ svargo tattra paśyema pitṛau cha putrān |* "In heaven, where our friends, and intimates live in blessedness, having left behind them the infirmities of their bodies, free from lameness or distortion of limb,—may we behold our parents and our children." ix. 5, 27. *Yā pūrvam putrīm vittaṭvā athūnyāñ vindate 'param | panchaudanañ cha tūv ajāñ dadṛito na vi yoshataḥ |* 28. *Samūnaloko bhavati punarbhuvā 'paraḥ patiḥ | yo 'jam panchaudanañ dakṣiṇū-jyotishāñ dadṛiti |* "When a woman has had one husband before, and takes another, if they present the *aja panchaudana* offering they shall not be separated. 28. A second husband dwells in the same (future) world with his re-wedded wife, if he offers the *aja panchaudana*, illuminated by presents." xii. 3, 17. *Svargāñ lokam abhi no nayāsi sām jūyayā saha putratṛiḥ syāma |* "Mayest thou conduct us to heaven; may we be with our wives and children." xviii. 3, 23. *Svān gachhātu te mano adha pitṛin upa drava |* "May thy soul go to its own (its kindred) and hasten to the fathers." From the texts cited by Mr. Colebrooke "on the duties of a faithful Hindu widow," (Misc. Ess. 115 ff.) it appears that the widow who becomes a sati (i.e. burns herself with her husband's corpse, or, in certain cases, afterwards) has the promise of rejoining her lord in another life, and enjoying celestial felicity in his society. In order to ensure such a result in all cases it was necessary either that both husband and wife should have by their lives merited equal rewards in another existence, or that the heroism of the wife, in sacrificing herself on her husband's funeral-pile should have the vicarious effect of expiating his offences, and raising him to the same heavenly region with herself. And it is indeed the doctrine of the authorities cited by Mr. Colebrooke that the self-immolation of the wife had this atoning effect. But in other cases where the different members of a family had by their actions during life merited different kinds of retribution, they might, according to the doctrine of the transmigration of souls current in later ages, be re-born in the shape of different animals, and so rendered incapable of any mutual communication after death. In regard to the absence of any traces of the tenet of metempsychosis from the earliest Indian writings, see Professor Weber's remarks in the Journ. of the Germ. Or. Soc. ix. 327 ff. and the abstract of them given in Journ. Roy. As. Soc. for 1865, pp. 365 ff.

¹⁸¹ An attempt is here made, verses 234 f., to give the etymology of Viśvāmitra: *Viśva-trageṇa yo mtram kartvūn na śakitāḥ purā | Viśvāmītras tu te mātṛīm śaḥ-ṣaṇ chāhartum ichhati |* "That Viśvāmītra, whom the three Viśvas formerly could not induce to be their friend, wishes to offer thee his friendship, and whatsoever thou desirest."

tention; and Indra announces to him that he, his wife, and son have conquered heaven by their good works. Ambrosia, the antidote of death, and flowers, are rained by the god from the sky; and the king's son is restored to life and the bloom of youth. The king, adorned with celestial clothing and garlands, and the queen, embrace their son. Harischandra, however, declares that he cannot go to heaven till he has received his master the Chaṇḍāla's permission, and has paid him a ransom. Dharma then reveals to the king that it was he himself who had miraculously assumed the form of a Chaṇḍāla. The king next objects that he cannot depart unless his faithful subjects, who are sharers in his merits, are allowed to accompany him to heaven, at least for one day. This request is granted by Indra; and after Viśvāmitra has inaugurated Rohitāśva the king's son to be his successor, Hariścandra, his friends and followers, all ascend in company to heaven. Even after this great consummation, however, Vaśiṣṭha, the family-priest of Harischandra, hearing, at the end of a twelve years' abode in the waters of the Ganges, an account of all that has occurred, becomes vehemently incensed at the humiliation inflicted on the excellent monarch, whose virtues and devotion to the gods and Brāhmins he celebrates, declares that his indignation had not been so greatly roused even when his own hundred sons had been slain by Viśvāmitra, and in the following words dooms the latter to be transformed into a crane: i. 9, 9. *Tasmād durātmā brahma-dviṭ prājñānām araropitaḥ | mach-ckhāpopahato mūḍhaḥ sa vakatvam avāpsyati* | "Wherefore that wicked man, enemy of the Brāhmins, smitten by my curse, shall be expelled from the society of intelligent beings, and losing his understanding shall be transformed into a Vaka." Viśvāmitra reciprocates the curse, and changes Vasishṭha into a bird of the species called Āṛi. In their new shapes the two have a furious fight,¹⁸² the Āṛi being of the portentous height of two thousand yojanas (= 18000 miles), and the Vaka of 3090 yojanas. They first assail each other with their wings; then the Vaka smites his antagonist in the same manner, while the Āṛi strikes with his talons. Falling mountains, overturned by the blasts of wind raised by the

¹⁸² On the subject of this fight the Bhāgavata Purāṇa has the following verse: ix. 7, 6. *Trisāṅkavo Hariścandro Viśvāmitra-Vaśiṣṭhayoḥ | yan-nimittam abhūd yuddham pakṣhiṇor bahu-vārshikam* | "The son of Trisāṅku was Hariścandra, on whose account Viśvāmitra and Vaśiṣṭha in the form of birds had a battle of many

flapping of their wings, shake the whole earth, the waters of the ocean overflow, the earth itself, thrown off its perpendicular, slopes downwards towards Pātāla, the lower regions. Many creatures perish by these various convulsions. Attracted by the dire disorder, Brahmā arrives, attended by all the gods, on the spot, and commands the combatants to desist from their fray. They were too fiercely infuriated to regard this injunction: but Brahmā put an end to the conflict by restoring them to their natural forms, and counselling them to be reconciled: i. 9, 28. *Na chūpi Kausika-śreshṭhas tasya rājno 'parādhyate | svarga-prāptikaro brahmann upakāra-pade sthitaḥ |* 29. *Tapo-vighnasya karttārau kāma-krodha-vaśaṁ gatau | parilyajata bhadrāṁ no brahma hi prachuram balam |* 'The son of Kuśika has not inflicted any wrong on Hariśchandra: inasmuch as he has caused the king's elevation to heaven he stands in the position of a benefactor. 29. Since ye have yielded to the influence of desire and anger ye have obstructed your austere fervour; leave off, bless you; the Brahmanical power is transeendent.' The sages were accordingly pacified, and embraced each other."

This interesting legend may be held to have had a double object, viz. first to portray in lively colours the heroic fortitude and sense of duty exhibited by Hariśchandra and his wife in enduring the long series of severe trials to which they were subjected; and secondly, to represent Viśvāmitra in an unamiable light, as an oppressive assertor of those sacerdotal prerogatives, which he had conquered for himself by his austerities,¹⁸³ to place him in striking contrast with the genuine Brāhman Vasishṭha who expresses strong indignation at the harsh procedure of his rival, and to recall the memory of those conflicts between

years duration." On this the Commentator remarks: *Viśvāmित्रो रजसूया-दक्षिण-चक्षालेन हारिश्चन्द्रस्य सर्वा-स्रमं अपहरित्वा यृतयामूसा | तच्छिखरत्रं कुपितो वासिष्ठो 'पि विś्वामित्राṁ "tvam āpi bhava" iti śasūpa | so 'pi "tvam vako bhava" iti Vasishṭham śasūpa | tayoḥ cha yuddham abhūt iti prasiddam |* "Viśvāmित्रा under pretence of taking a present for a rajasūya sacrifice, stripped Hariśchandra of all his property, and afflicted him. Vasishṭha hearing of this, became incensed, and by an imprecation turned him into an Āpi. Viśvāmित्रा retorted the curse and changed Vasishṭha into a Vāka. And then a battle took place between them, as is well known." Here it will be seen that the Commentator changes the birds into which the rishis were transformed, making Viśvāmित्रा the Āpi and Vasishṭha the Vāka.

¹⁸³ It is true that the Brāhman rishi Durvāsas also is represented as a very irascible personage. See vol. iv. of this work, pp. 165, 169, 208, 407; and Weber's Ind. St. iii. 398.

the Brāhmanas and Kshattriyas, which were exemplified in the persons of these two sages, of whom the one is said to have been made the "lord of Brāhmanas" (*Vaśishṭham īśaṁ viprāṇāṃ*, M.Bh. Sāntip. v. 4499), and the other is declared in the story before us to have been the "enemy of the priests."

SECT. X.—*Contest of Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra according to the Mahābhārata.*

In the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 6638 ff., we find another legend, in the Brahmanical interest, regarding the same two great personages, which begins with a panegyric on Vaśishṭha, at the expense of the rival rishi :

6638. *Brahmaṇo mānasaḥ putro Vaśishṭho 'rundhatī-patiḥ | tūpasā nirjītau śaśvad ājeyāv amarair api | kāma-krodhāv ubhau yasya charaṇau saṁvavāhatuḥ | yas tu nochchedanaṁ chakre Kuśikānāṁ udāru-dhīḥ | Viśvāmitrapārādheṇa dhārayan manyun uttamam |* 6640. *Putra-vyasana-santaptaḥ śaktimān apy asakta-vat | Viśvāmitra-vināśāya na chakre karma dāruṇam | mṛitānś cha punar āharttum yaḥ sa putrān Yama-kshayāt | kṛitāntaṁ nātichakrāma velām iva mahodadhiḥ | yam prāpya vijitātmaṇam mahātmaṇaṁ narādhipāḥ | Ikṣvāṅkavo mahīpālāḥ lebhīre pṛithivīm imām | purohitam imam prāpya Vaśishṭham ṛishi-sattamam | ijire kratubhīś chaiva nṛipās te Kuru-nandana | sa hi tān yūjayāmāsa sarvān nṛipatī-sattamān | brahmarshiḥ Pāṇḍava-śreṣṭhṭha Vṛihaspatir ivāmarān |* 6645. *Tasmād dharma-pradhānātmā veda-dharma-vid īpsitaḥ | brahmaṇo guṇavān kaśchit purodhūḥ paridṛśyatām | kshattriyenābhijātena pṛithivīm jetum icchatuḥ | pūrvam purohitaḥ kāryyaḥ pārtha rājyābhisiddhaye | mahīm jigīṣhatuḥ rājñā brahma kāryam purasaram | . . .* 6666. *Kshattriyo 'ham bhavān vipras tapaḥ-svādhyāya-sūdhunaḥ | brāhmaṇeṣhu kuto vīryam praśānteṣhu dhṛitātmasu | arbudena gavām yas tvaṁ na dadāsi mamepsitam | sva-dharmaṁ na prahāsyāmi neshyāmi cha balena gām | . . .* 6679. *"Sthīyatām" iti tach chkrutvā Vaśishṭhasya payasvinī | ūrdhvaṅchīta-śīro-grīvā prababhau raudra-darsanā |* 6680. *Krodha-raktekṣhaṇā sū gaur hambhā-rava-ghana-svanā | Viśvāmitrasya tat sainyaṁ vyadrāvayata sarvaśaḥ | kaśāgra-daṇḍābhīhatuḥ kalyamūnā tatastataḥ | krodha-raktekṣhaṇā krodham bhūya eva samādadhe | ūḍītya iva madhyāhne krodha-dīpta-vapur babhau | angūra-varṣham munchantī mukur bāladhito*

mahat | asṛijāt Pahlavān pucchāt prasaravād Drāviḍan Sakān | yonidesāccha cha Yavanān śakṛitāḥ Savarūn bahūn | . . . 6691. Dṛiṣṭvā tad mahad āccharyam brahma-tejo-bhavam tadā | Viśvāmītraḥ kṣhattriya-bhāvād nirvinno vākyam abravīt | “dhig balaṁ kṣhattriya-balam brahma-tejo-balam balam | balābalaṁ viniśchitya tapaḥ eva puram balam” | sa rājyaṁ sphītam utṣṛijya tām cha dīptām nṛipa-sriyam | bhogāṁś cha prīṣṭhataḥ kṛtvā tapasy eva mano dadhe | sa gatvā tapasā siddhim lokūn viśṭābhya tejasū | 6695. Tātāpa sarvān dīptavijāḥ brāhmaṇatvam avāptavān | apibach cha tataḥ somam Indrena saha Kauśikāḥ |

6638. “Vasishṭha,” a Gandharva informs Arjuna, “was the mind-born son of Brahmā and husband of Arundhatī.¹⁸⁴ By his austero fervour, lust and anger, invincible even by the immortals, were constantly vanquished and embraced his feet. Restraining his indignation at the wrong done by Viśvāmītra, he magnanimously abstained from exterminating the Kuśikas.¹⁸⁵ 6640. Distressed by the loss of his sons, he acted, although powerful, like one who was powerless, and took no

¹⁸⁴ Arundhatī is again mentioned as the wife of Vasishṭha, in the following lines of the M. Bh. Ādip. 7351 f. addressed to Draupadī: *Yathendranī Harihaye Svāhā chaiva Yībhāvasau | Rohiṇī cha yathā Some Damayantī yathā Nalā | yathā Vaiśravaṇo Bhadrā Vasishṭhe chūpy Arundhatī | yathā Nārāyaṇo Lakṣmīḥ tathā tvam bhava bhartṛiṣhu |* “What Indranī is to Indra, Svāhā to the Sun, Rohiṇī to the Moon, Damayantī to Nalā, Bhadrā to Kuvera, Arundhatī to Vasishṭha, and Lakṣmī to Nārāyaṇa, that be thou to thy husbands.” She is again noticed in verses 8455 ff.: *Suvratā chūpi kalyāṇī sarva-bhūteshu viśrutā | Arundhatī mahātmānuṁ Vasishṭham paryasankata | viśuddha-bhāvam atyantāṁ sadā priya-hiteratam | saptarṣi-madhya-gaṁ vīraṁ avamene cha tam munim | apadhyāneṇa sū teṇa dhūmūruṇa-sama-prabhā | lakṣhyā’lakṣhyā nābhīrūpā nimittam iva paśyati |* “The faithful and beautiful Arundhatī, renowned among all creatures, was suspicious about the great Vasishṭha, whose nature was eminently pure, who was devoted to the welfare of those he loved, who was one of the seven rishis, and heroic; and she despised the muni. In consequence of these evil surmises, becoming of the dusky colour of smoke, both to be seen and not to be seen, devoid of beauty, she looks like a (bad) omen.” This version of the last line is suggested by Prof. Aufrecht. The Commentator explains it thus: “*Nimittam*” *bhartur lakṣmaṇam* “*eva paśyati*” *kupaṭeṇa | atah eva* “*nābhīrūpā prachhanna-veshā | teṇa hetuṁ*” *“lakṣhyā’lakṣhyā cha”* | “She regards as it were” i.e. by guile ‘the omen’ afforded by her husband’s (bodily) marks, hence she assumed a disguise, and was ‘both to be seen and not to be seen.’”

¹⁸⁵ As regards the magnanimous character here assigned to Vasishṭha, I quote a passage from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, i. 9, 15 ff., where the irascible Durvāsas (to whom I lately referred, and who is said, in verse 2, to be a partial incarnation of Śiva, *Śankarasyāmśah*), addressing Indra, who, he conceived, had insulted him, thus speaks of that sage’s amiable temper, as contrasted with his own fierce and revengeful disposition: 15. *Nāhaṁ kṛpālu-hṛdayo na cha mām bhujate kṣamā | anye te mun-*

dreadful measures for the destruction of Viśvāmitra. To recover those sons from the abode of Yama, he would not overstep fate, as the ocean respects its shores. Having gained this great self-mastering personage, the kings of Ikshvāku's race acquired (the dominion of) this earth. Obtaining this most excellent of rishis for their family-priest, they offered sacrifices. This Brāhman-rishi officiated as priest for all those monarchs, as Vṛihaspati does for the gods. 6645. Wherefore let some desirable, virtuous Brāhman, with whom righteousness is the chief thing, and skilled in Vedic observances, be selected for this office. Let a well-born Kshatriya, who wishes to subdue the earth, first of all appoint a family-priest in order that he may augment his dominion. Let a king, who desires to conquer the earth, give precedence to the Brahmanical power." The Gandharva then, at Arjuna's request, goes on (verses 6650 ff.) to relate the "ancient story of Vaśishṭha" (*vāśishṭham ākhyānam purāṇam*) and to describe the cause of enmity between that rishi and Viśvāmitra. It happened that the latter, who was son of Gādhi, king of Kānyakubja (Kanauj), and grandson of Kuśika, when out hunting, came to the hermitage of Vaśishṭha, where he was received with all honour, entertained together with his attendants with delicious food and drink, and presented with precious jewels and dresses obtained by the sage from his wonder-working cow, the fulfiller of all his desires. The cupidity of Viśvāmitra is aroused by the sight of this beautiful animal (all of whose fine points are enumerated in the legend), and he offers Vaśishṭha a hundred million cows, of his kingdom, in exchange for her. Vaśishṭha, however, replies that he is unable to part with her even in return for the kingdom. Viśvāmitra then tells him that he will enforce the law of the stronger: 6665. "I am a Kshatriya, thou art a Brāhman, whose functions are austere fervour, and sacred study. How can there be any vigour in Brāhmins who are calm and self-restrained? Since thou dost not give up to me, in exchange for a

ayaḥ Śakra Durvāsasam avehi mām | Gautamādibhir anyais tvaṁ garevaṁ ūpādito mudhū | akṣhānti-sūra-sarvasvaṁ Durvāsasam avehi mām | 17. Vaśishṭhādyaṁ dayā-sūratāḥ stotraṁ kurvadbhir uchchakaitāḥ | garevaṁ gato 'si yenaivaṁ mām athādya-va-manyase | 15. "I am not tender-hearted: patience lodges not in me. Those munis are different: know me to be Durvāsas. 16. In vain hast thou been rendered proud by Gautama and others: know me to be Durvāsas, whose nature and whose entire substance is irascibility. 17. Thou hast become proud through the loud praises of Vaśishṭha and other merciful saints, since thou thus contemnest me to-day."

hundred million of cows, that which I desire, I shall not abandon my own class-characteristic; I will carry away the cow by force." Vaśishṭha, confident, no doubt, of his own superior power, tells him to do as he proposes without loss of time. Viśvāmitra accordingly seizes the wonder-working cow; but she will not move from the hermitage, though beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither. Witnessing this, Vaśishṭha asks her what he, a patient Brāhman, can do? She demands of him why he overlooks the violence to which she is subjected. Vaśishṭha replies: "Force is the strength of Kshattriyas, patience that of Brāhmans. As patience possesses me, go, if thou pleasest" (6676. *Kshattriyāṇām balaṁ tejo brāhmaṇāṇām kṣamā balaṁ | kṣamā māṁ bhajate yasmāt gamyatām yadi rochate*). The cow enquires if he means to abandon her; as, unless he forsakes her, she can never be carried off by force. She is assured by Vaśishṭha that he does not forsake her, and that she should remain if she could. "Hearing these words of her master, the cow tosses her head aloft, assumes a terrific aspect, (6680) her eyes become red with rage, she utters a deep bellowing sound, and puts to flight the entire army of Viśvāmitra. Being (again) beaten with whip and stick, and pushed hither and thither, she becomes more incensed, her eyes are red with anger, her whole body, kindled by her indignation, glows like the noonday sun, she discharges showers of fire-brands from her tail, creates Pahlavas from the same member, Drāviḍas and Śakas, Yavanas, Sabaras," Kānchis, Śarabhas, Pauṇḍras, Kirātas, Sinhālas, Vaśas, and other tribes of armed warriors from her sweat, urine, excrement, etc., who assail Viśvāmitra's army, and put it to a complete rout. 6692. "Beholding this great miracle, the product of Brahmanical might, Viśvāmitra was humbled at (the impotence of) a Kshattriya's nature, and exclaimed, 'Shame on a Kshattriya's force; it is the force of a Brāhman's might that is force indeed.' Examining what was and was not force, and (ascertaining) that austere fervour is the supreme force, he abandoned his prosperous kingdom and all its brilliant regal splendour; and casting all enjoyments behind its back, he devoted himself to austerity. Having by this means attained perfection, and Brāhmanhood, he arrested the worlds by his fiery vigour, and disturbed them all by the blaze of his glory; and at length the Kauśika drank soma with Indra." 186

¹⁸⁶ See above, p. 342, and note 134.

The same legend is repeated in the Salyaparvan, verses 2295 ff. :

*Tathā cha Kauśikas tāta tapo-nityo jitendriyaḥ | tapasū vai sutaptena
brāhmaṇatvam avūptavān | Gādhir nāma mahān āsit kshattriyaḥ prathito
bhūvi | tasya puttro 'bhavad rājan Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa rājā
Kauśikas tāta mahāyogy abhavat kila | sa puttram abhishichyātha Viśvā-
mitram mahātāpāḥ | deha-nyāse manas chakre tam ūchuḥ pranatāḥ pra-
jāḥ | "na gantavyam mahāprājña trāhi chāsmān mahābhayāt" | evam
uktaḥ pratyuvācha tato Gādhiḥ prajāḥ tataḥ | "viśvasya jagato gopiā
bhaviṣhyati suto mama" | 2300. Ity uktvā tu tato Gādhir Viśvāmitraṁ
niveśya cha | jagāma tridivaṁ rājan Viśvāmitro 'bhavad nripaḥ | na sa
śaknoti prithivīm yatnavān api rakshitum | tataḥ śuśrūva rājā sa rāksha-
sebhya mahābhayam | nirayāu nagarācchāpi chatur-anga-bālūnitāḥ |
sa yātvā dūram adhvānam Vasiṣṭhāśramam abhyagāt | tasya te sainikāḥ
rājāns chakrus tattatrālayān bahūn | tatas tu bhagavān vipro Vasiṣṭho
Brahmaṇaḥ sutāḥ | dadṛṣe 'tha tataḥ sarvam bhajyamānam mahāvanam |
tasya kruddho mahārāja Vasiṣṭho muni-sattamaḥ | 2305. "Śrījaṣva Sa-
varān ghorān" iti svān gām uvācha ha | tathoktā sā 'erijad dhenuḥ pu-
rushān ghora-darśanān | te cha tad balam āsādy babhauḥ sarvato
diśam | tach chkrutvā vidrutaṁ sainyaṁ Viśvāmitras tu Gādhijaḥ | tapaḥ
param manyamānas tapasy eva mano dudhe | so 'smiṁs tṛtha-vare rājan
Sarasvatyāḥ samūhitaḥ | niyamais chopavāsais cha karshayan deham āt-
manaḥ | jalāhāro vāyubhakṣaḥ parnāhāras cha so 'bhavat | tathā sthaṇ-
ḍila-śayī cha ye chānye niyamāḥ prithak | asakrit tasya devās tu vrata-
vighnam prachakrire | 2310. Na chāsya niyamād buddhir apayāti mahāt-
manaḥ | tataḥ pareṇa yatnena taptvā bahu-vidhāṁ tapaḥ | tejasū bhāska-
rākāro Gādhijaḥ samapadyata | tapasū tu tathā yuktāṁ Viśvāmitram
Pitāmahaḥ | amanyata mahātejāḥ vara-do varam asya tat | sa tu vavre
varam rājan "syām aham brāhmaṇas tv" iti | tatheti chābravīd Brahmā
sarva-loka-pitāmahaḥ | sa labdhvā tapasogreṇa brāhmaṇatvam mahāyagāḥ |
vichachāra makīm kritsnām kṛitakūmaḥ suropamaḥ |*

"2295. So too the Kauśika, constant in austerities, and subduing his senses, acquired Brāhmanhood by the severity of his exercises. There was a great Kshattriya named Gādhi, renowned in the world, whose son was the powerful Viśvāmitra. This Kauśika prince (Gādhi) was greatly addicted to contemplation (*mahāyogi*): and after having installed his son as king, he resolved to abandon his corporeal existence. His subjects, however, submissively said to him, 'Do not go, o great sage, but deliver

us from our great alarm.' He replied, 'My son shall become the protector of the whole world.' 2300. Having accordingly installed Viśvāmitra, Gādhi went to heaven, and his son became king. Viśvāmitra, however, though energetic, was unable to protect the earth. He then heard that there was great cause of apprehension from the Rākshasas, and issued forth from the city, with an army consisting of four kinds of forces. Having performed a long journey, he arrived at the hermitage of Vaśishṭha. There his soldiers constructed many dwellings. In consequence the divine Brāhman Vaśishṭha, son of Brahmā, beheld the whole forest being cut up; and becoming enraged, he said to his cow, (2305) 'Create terrible Savaras.' The cow, so addressed, created men of dreadful aspect, who broke and scattered in all directions the army of Viśvāmitra. Hearing of this rout of his army, the son of Gādhi devoted himself to austerities, which he regarded as the highest (resource). In this sacred spot on the Sarasvatī he macerated his body with acts of self-restraint and fastings, absorbed in contemplation, and living on water, air, and leaves, sleeping on the sacrificial ground, and practising all the other rites. Several times the gods throw impediments in his way; (2310) but his attention was never distracted from his observances. Having thus with strenuous effort undergone manifold austerities, the son of Gādhi became luminous as the sun; and Brahmā regarded his achievements as most eminent. The boon which Viśvāmitra chose was to become a Brāhman; and Brahmā replied, 'So be it.' Having attained Brāhmanhood, the object of his desire, by his severe austerities, the renowned sage traversed the whole earth, like a god."

We have already seen how the power of austere fervour (*tapas*) is exemplified in the legend of Nahusha (above, pp. 308 ff.). In regard to the sense of this word *tapas*, and the potency of the exercise which it denotes, I may refer to my articles in the Journal of the Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, p. 348 f., and for 1864, p. 63, as well as to the fourth volume of this work, pp. 20 ff. and 288; and to pp. 23 and 28 of the present volume. In further illustration of the same subject I quote the following panegyric upon *tapas* from Manu, xi. 234 ff. where, however, the word cannot have the same sense in all the verses:

*Tapo-mūlām idaṁ sarvaṁ daiva-mānushakam sukham | tapo-madhyam
budhaiḥ proktaṁ tapo-ntaṁ veda-darsibhiḥ | 235. Brāhmaṇasya tapo-jñā-
nān tapaḥ kṣatratasya rakṣaṇam | vaiśyasya tu tapo-vārttā tapaḥ śūdra-*

śya sevanam | 236. *Ṛishayaḥ saṁyatātāmāṇaḥ phala-mūlanilāsanāḥ* | *tapasaiva prapaśyanti trailokyaṁ sa-charūcharam* | 237. *Aushadhāny agado vidyā daivī cha vividhā sthiliḥ* | *tapasaiva prasiddhyanti tapas teshām hi sādhanam* | 238. *Yad dustaraṁ yad durāpaṁ yad durgāṁ yach cha dush-karam* | *sarvaṁ tu tapasā sādhyāṁ tapo hi duratikramam* | 239. *Mahāpātakinaś chaiva śeshāś chūkūryya-kīrinaḥ* | *tapasaiva sutaptena muchyante kilviśāt tataḥ* | 240. *Kṛtāś chāhi-patangāś cha paśavaś cha vayāṁsi cha* | *sthāvarāṇi cha bhūtāni divaṁ yānti tapo-balāt* | 241. *Yat kinchid enaḥ kurvanti mano-vān-mūrttibhir janāḥ* | *tat sarvaṁ nirdahanty āśu tapasaiva tapodhanāḥ* | 242. *Tapasaiva viśuddhasya brāhmaṇasya divaukasaḥ* | *ijyāś cha pratigrihṇanti kāmān saṁvaddhayanti cha* | 243. *Prajāpatir idaṁ śāstraṁ tapasaivāśrijat prabhuḥ* | *tathaiva vedūn ṛishayaś tapasā pratipedire* | 244. *Ity etat tapaso devāḥ mahābhūgyam prachakshate* | *sarvasyāśya prapaśyantas tapasaḥ punyam uttamam* |

“234. All the enjoyment, whether of gods or men, has its root, its centre, and its end in *tapas*; so it is declared by the wise who have studied the Veda. 235. Knowledge is a Brāhman's *tapas*; protection that of a Kshattriya; traffic that of Vaiśya; and service that of a Sūdra. 236. It is by *tapas* that rishis of subdued souls, subsisting on fruits, roots, and air obtain a vision of the three worlds with all things moving and stationary. 237. Medicines, health, science, and the various divine conditions are attained by *tapas* alone as their instrument of acquisition. 238. Whatever is hard to be traversed, or obtained, or reached, or effected, is all to be accomplished through *tapas*, of which the potency is irresistible. 239. Both those who are guilty of the great sins, and all other transgressors, are freed from sin by fervid *tapas*. 240. Worms, serpents, insects, beasts, birds, and beings without motion attain to heaven through the force of *tapas*. 241. Whatever sin men commit by thought, word, or bodily acts, by *tapas* they speedily consume it all, when they become rich in devotion. 242. The gods both accept the sacrifices and augment the enjoyments of the Brāhman who has been purified by *tapas*. 243. It was by *tapas* that Prajāpati the lord created this scripture; and through it that the rishis obtained the Vedas. 244. Such is the great dignity which the gods ascribe to *tapas*, beholding its transcendent merit.”

I return for a moment to the story of Vasishṭha and his cow.

Lassen remarks (Ind. Alt. 2nd ed. i. 631, note) that Atharvan is given

in the Lexicons as a name of Vasishṭha (see Wilson's Dictionary, *s.v.*). Weber (Ind. St. i. 289) quotes from Mallinātha's Commentary on the the Kīrātārjuniya the following words: *Atharvaṇas tu mantroddhāro Vasishṭhena kṛitah ity āgamaḥ* | "There is a passage of scripture to the effect that the mantras of the Atharvan were selected by Vasishṭha." In Böhlingk and Roth's Lexicon, *s.v.* Atharvan, it is noticed that the eleventh hymn of the fifth book of the Atharva-veda contains a conversation between Atharvan and Varuṇa about the possession of a wonderful cow bestowed by the latter on the former; and it is remarked that this circumstance may explain the subsequent identification of Atharvan with Vasishṭha. Prof. Roth, however (Diss. on the A.V., Tübingen, 1865, p. 9), thinks the two sages are distinct. The cow is spoken of in A.V. vii. 104, as the "brindled cow given by Varuṇa to Atharvan which never lacked a calf" (*prīṣṇīm dhenuṃ Varuṇena dattām Atharvane nitya-ratsūm*). The following is the curious hymn referred to:

A.V. v. 11, 1. *Katham mahe asurāya abravīr iha katham pitre haraye tvesha-nṛimrah* | *prīṣṇīm Varuṇa dakṣiṇāṃ dadāvān punarmaghatvam*¹⁸⁷ *manasā 'chikitsiḥ* | 2. *Na kāmēna punarmagho bhavāmi saṃ chakṣhe kam prīṣṇim etām upāje* | *kena nu tvam Atharvan kūr्यena kena jātēna asi jāta-vedāḥ* | 3. *Satyam ahaṃ gabhīrah kūr्यena satyaṃ jātēna asmi jāta-vedāḥ* | *na me dāso na āryyo mahilvā vratam mīmāya yad ahaṃ dharishye* | 4. *Na tvad anyah kavitaro na medhayā dhīrataro Varuṇa svadhāvan* | *tvāṃ tū viśvā bhūvanāni vettha sa chid nu tvaj jano māyī bibhāya* | 5. *Tvāṃ hi anga Varuṇa svadhāvan viśvā vettha junimā supra-ṇīte* | *kiṃ rajasah enā paro anyad asti enā kim pareṇa acaram amūra* | 6. *Ekāṃ rajasah enā paro anyad asti enā parah ekena durṇasaṃ chid arcāk* | *tat te vidvān Varuṇa pra bravīmi adhorarchasah paṇayo bhavantu* | *nīchair dāsāḥ upa sar pantu bhūmim* | 7. *Tvāṃ hi anga Varuṇa bravīshi punarmagheshu avadyāni bhūri* | *mo shu paṇīr abhi etāto bhūr mā tvā vohann arūdhasaṃ janāsaḥ* | 8. *Mā mā vohann arūdhasaṃ janāsaḥ punas te prīṣṇīm jaritar dadāmi* | *stotram me viścam ā yāhi śachibhir antar viśvasu mānushishu vikshu* | 9. *Ā te stotrāṇi udyatāni yantu antar viśvasu mānushishu vikshu* | *dehi nu me yad me ādatto asi yujyo me sapta-padaḥ sakḥā 'si* | 10. *Samāno bandhur Varuṇa samā jā vedāhaṃ tad yad nāv eshā samā jā* | *dadāmi tad yat te ādatto asmi yujyas*

¹⁸⁷ This is the reading proposed by Professor Aufrecht instead of *punarmagha tvam*, which is found in Roth and Whitney's edition of the A.V.

*te sapta-padaḥ sakhā'smi | 11. Devo devāya grīnate vayoḍaḥ vipro viprāya
stuvate sumedhāḥ | ajñjano hi Varuṇa svadhāvann Atharvāṇam pitarāṇ
deva-bandhum | tasmai u rādhaḥ kṛṇuhi supraśastaṁ sakhā no asi para-
maś cha bandhuḥ |*

1. (Atharvan speaks) "How hast thou, who art mighty in energy, declared before the great deity, how before the shining father (that the cow was mine)? ¹⁸⁹ Having bestowed a brindled cow (on me) as a sacrificial gift, thou hast resolved in thy mind to take her back. 2. (Varuṇa replies) It is not through desire that I revoke the gift; I drive hither this brindled cow that I may contemplate her. But by what wisdom, o Atharvan, in virtue of what nature, doest thou know the nature of beings? 3. (Atharvan answers) In truth I am profound in wisdom; in truth by my nature I know the nature of beings. Neither Dāsa nor Āryya can hinder the design which I shall undertake. 4. There is none other wiser or sager in understanding than thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa. Thou knowest all creatures; even the man of deep devices is afraid of thee. 5. Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, o wise director, knowest all creatures. What other thing is beyond this atmosphere? and what is nearer than that remotest thing, o thou unerring? 6. (Varuṇa replies) There is one thing beyond this atmosphere; and on this side of that one there is that which is near though inaccessible. Knowing that thing I declare it to thee. Let the glory of the niggards be cast down; let the Dāsas sink downward into the earth. 7. (Atharvan rejoins) Thou, o Varuṇa, sayest many evil things of those who revoke their gifts. Be not thou numbered among so many niggards; let not men call thee illiberal. 8. (Varuṇa replies) Let not men call me illiberal; I restore to thee, o worshipper, the brindled cow. Attend with all thy powers at every hymn in my honour among all the tribes of men. 9. (Atharvan answers) Let hymns ascend to thee among all the tribes of men. Give me that which thou hast taken from me; thou art to me an intimate friend of seven-fold value. 10. We two have a common bond, o Varuṇa, a common descent. I know what this common descent of ours is. (Varuṇa answers) I give thee that which I

¹⁸⁹ Professor Aufrecht thinks that *Dyaus*, 'the Heaven,' is denoted by *mahe asu-rāya*, and that *pitre haraye*, if the correct reading, can only mean the Sun, the word *hari* being several times applied to that great luminary. I am otherwise indebted to Prof. A. for the correct sense of this line, and for other suggestions.

have taken from thee. I am thy intimate friend of seven-fold value, who, myself a god, confer life on thee a god [or priest, *devāya*] who praisest me, an intelligent sage on thee a sage. (The poet says) Thou, o self-dependent Varuṇa, hast begotten our father Atharvan, a kinsman of the gods. Grant to him most excellent wealth; thou art our friend and most eminent kinsman."

SECT. XI.—*The same, and other legends, according to the Rāmāyana.*

The story told in the preceding section is related at greater length in chapters 51–65¹⁸⁹ of the Bālakāṇḍa, or first book, of the Rāmāyana, of which I shall furnish an outline, noting any important variations from, or additions to, the account in the Mahābhārata, and at the same time giving an abstract of the other legends which are interwoven with the narrative. There was formerly, we are told, a king called Kuśa, son of Prajāpati, who had a son called Kuśanābha, who was father of Gādhi, the father of Viśvāmitra. The latter ruled the earth for many thousand years. On one occasion, when he was making a circuit of the earth, he came to Vasiṣṭha's hermitage, the pleasant abode of many saints, sages, and holy devotees (chapter 51, verses 11–29), where, after at first declining, he allowed himself to be hospitably entertained with his followers by the son of Brahmā (ch. 52). Viśvāmitra (ch. 53), however, coveting the wondrous cow, which had supplied all the dainties of the feast, first of all asked that she should be given to him in exchange for a hundred thousand common cows, adding that "she was a gem, that gems were the property of the king, and that, therefore, the cow was his by right" (53, 9. *Ratnaṁ hi bhagavann etaḍ ratna-hārī cha pūrthivaḥ* | 10. *Tasmād me śabalāṁ dehi ma-maiṣhā dharmato devījā*). On this price being refused, the king advances immensely in his offers, but all without effect. He then proceeds (ch. 54)—very ungratefully and tyrannically, it must be allowed—to have the cow removed by force, but she breaks away from his attendants, and rushes back to her master, complaining that he was deserting her. He replies that he was not deserting her, but that the king was

¹⁸⁹ These are the sections of Schlegel's and the Bombay editions, which correspond to sections 52–67 of Gorresio's edition.

much more powerful than he. She answers, 54, 14: *Na balaṃ kṣhat-triyasyāhur brāhmaṇāḥ balaṃ vattarāḥ | brahmaṇ brahma-balaṃ divyaṃ kṣhāttrūc cha balaṃ vattarāṃ | aprameyam balaṃ tubhyaṃ na trayā bala-vattarāḥ | Viśvāmitro mahāvīro tejas tava durāsadam | niyunkṣva mām mahātejas tram brahma-bala-sambhṛitām | tasya darpam balaṃ yatnaṃ nāśayāmi durātmanaḥ |* "Men do not ascribe strength to a Kṣhattriya: the Brāhmanas are stronger. The strength of Brāhmanas is divine, and superior to that of Kṣhattriyas. 15. Thy strength is immeasurable. Viśvāmitra, though of great vigour, is not more powerful than thou. Thy energy is invincible. Commission me, who have been acquired by thy Brahmanical power, and I will destroy the pride, and force, and attempt of this wicked prince."¹⁰⁰ She accordingly by her bellowing creates hundreds of Pahlavas, who destroy the entire host (*nāśayanti balaṃ sarvaṃ*, verse 19) of Viśvāmitra, but are slain by him in their turn. Sakas and Yavanas, of great power and valour, and well armed, were then produced, who consumed the king's soldiers,¹⁰¹ but were routed by him. The cow then (ch. 55) calls into existence by her bellowing, and from different parts of her body, other warriors of various tribes, who again destroyed Viśvāmitra's entire army, foot soldiers, elephants, horses, chariots, and all. A hundred of the monarch's sons, armed with various weapons, then rushed in great fury on Vaśiṣṭha, but were all reduced to ashes in a moment by the blast of that sage's mouth.¹⁰² Viśvāmitra, being thus utterly vanquished and humbled, appointed one of his sons to be regent, and travelled to the Himālaya, where he betook himself to austerities, and thereby obtained a vision of Mahādeva, who at his desire revealed to him the science of arms in all its branches, and gave him celestial weapons with which, elated and full of pride, he consumed the hermitage of Vaśiṣṭha, and put its inhabitants to flight. Vaśiṣṭha then threatens Viśvāmitra and

¹⁰⁰ Compare Manu, xi. 32: *Sva-vīryād rāja-vīryāc cha sva-vīryam balaṃ vattarāṃ | tasmāt svenaiva vīryena nigrihṇīyād arin dijaḥ |* "Of the two, his own, and a king's might, let a Brāhman know that his own is superior. By his own might alone, therefore, let him restrain his enemies."

¹⁰¹ We had been before told that they had been killed, so that this looks like a slaying of the slain, as no resuscitation of the army is alluded to.

¹⁰² On this the Commentator remarks that "though these princes were Kṣhattriyas, they were not actual kings, and had acted tyrannically; so that a very slight expiation was required for killing them" (*kṣhattriyaṭve 'pi prithivī-patitvūbhūvūt tad-badhe alpa-prāyaścittam ātāpītyūc cha |*).

uplifts his Brahmanical mace. Viśvāmitra, too, raises his fiery weapon and calls out to his adversary to stand. Vaśishṭha bids him to show his strength, and boasts that he will soon humble his pride. He asks: (56, 4) *Kra cha te kshattriya-balam kva cha brahma-balam mahat | paśya brahma-balaṁ divyam mama kshattriya-pāṁśana | tasyāstram Gādhipitrasya ghoram āgneyam udyatam | brahma-daṇḍena tach chhāntam agner vegāḥ ivāmbhasā* | “ ‘What comparison is there between a Kshattriya’s might, and the great might of a Brāhman? Behold, thou contemptible Kshattriya, my divine Brahmanical power.’ The dreadful fiery weapon uplifted by the son of Gādhi was then quenched by the rod of the Brāhman, as fire is by water.” Many and various other celestial missiles, as the nooses of Brahmā, Kāla (Time), and Varuṇa, the discus of Viṣṇu, and the trident of Śiva, were hurled by Viśvāmitra at his antagonist, but the son of Brahmā swallowed them up in his all-devouring mace. Finally, to the intense consternation of all the gods, the warrior shot off the terrific weapon of Brāhmā (*brāhmāstra*); but this was equally ineffectual against the Brahmanical sage. Vaśishṭha had now assumed a direful appearance: (56, 18) *Roma-kūpeshu sarveshu Vaśishṭhasya mahātmanaḥ | marīchyāḥ iva nishpetur agner dhūmakulārchishah | prājvalad brahma-daṇḍas cha Vaśishṭhasya karodyataḥ | vidhūmaḥ iva kulāgnir Yama-daṇḍaḥ ivāparaḥ* | “ ‘Jets of fire mingled with smoke darted from the pores of his body; (19) the Brahmanical mace blazed in his hand like a smokeless¹⁹³ mundane conflagration, or a second sceptre of Yāma.’ Being appeased, however, by the munis, who proclaimed his superiority to his rival, the sage stayed his vengeance; and Viśvāmitra exclaimed with a groan: (56, 23) *Dhiḥ balaṁ kshattriya-balaṁ brahma-tejo-balaṁ balaṁ | ekena brahma-daṇḍena sarvāstrāṇi hatāni me* | “ ‘Shame on a Kshattriya’s strength: the strength of a Brāhman’s might alone is strength: by the single Brahmanical mace all my weapons have been destroyed.’ ” No alternative now remains to the humiliated monarch, but either to acquiesce in this helpless inferiority, or to work out his own elevation to the Brahmanical order. He embraces the latter alternative: (56, 24) *Tad etat prasamīkshyāham prasannendriya-mānasah | tapo mahat samāsthāsye yad vai brahmatva-kāraṇam* | “ ‘Having pondered well this defeat, I shall betake myself, with composed senses and mind,

¹⁹³ The Bombay edition has *vidhūmaḥ*. Schlegel’s and Gorresio’s editions have *saḥūmaḥ*, “enveloped in smoke.”

to strenuous austere fervour, which shall exalt me to the rank of a Brāhman." Intensely vexed and mortified, groaning and full of hatred against his enemy, he travelled with his queen to the south, and carried his resolution into effect; (ch. 57) and we are first of all told that three sons Havishyanda, Madhusyanda, and Driḍhanetra were born to him. At the end of a thousand years Brahmā appeared, and announced that he had conquered the heaven of royal sages (*rājārshis*); and, in consequence of his austere fervour, he was recognised as having attained that rank. Viśvāmitra, however, was ashamed, grieved, and incensed at the offer of so very inadequate a reward, and exclaimed: "I have practised intense austerity, and the gods and ṛishis regard me only as a *rājārshi*!"¹⁹⁴ Austerities, it appears, are altogether fruitless" (57, 5. *Jitūh rājārshi-lokās te tapasā Kuśikātmanja* | 6. *Anena tapasā tvañ hi rājārshir iti vidmahe* | . . . 7. *Viśvāmitro 'pi tach chkrutē hriyā kinchid avāñ-muklaḥ* | *duḥkhena mahatā* "vishtāḥ samanyur idam abravīt | *tapas cha sumahat taptāñ rājārshir iti māñ viduḥ* | *devūḥ sarshi-guṇāḥ sarve nāsti manye tapaḥ-phulam* |). Notwithstanding

¹⁹⁴ The Vishṇu Purāṇa, iii. 6, 21, says: "There are three kinds of rishis: Brāhmarshis, after them Devarshis, and after them Rājārshis" (*jneyāḥ brahmarshayaḥ pūrvāñ tebhya devarshayaḥ punaḥ | rājārshayaḥ punas tebhyaḥ ṛishi-praḥṛitayas trayuḥ* |). Bohtlingk and Roth, *s.v. ṛishi*, mention also (on the authority of the vocabulary called Trikaṇḍaśeṣha) the words *māharshi* (great rishi), *pārīmarshi* (most eminent rishi), *śrutarshi* (secondary rishi), and *kāṇḍarshi*, who is explained *s.v.* to be a teacher of a particular portion (*kāṇḍa*) of the Veda. *Devarshis* are explained by Professor Wilson (V.P. iii. p. 68, paraphrasing the text of the Vishṇu Purāṇa), to be "sages who are demi-gods also;" *Brāhmarshis* to be "sages who are sons of Brahmā or Brahmans;" and *Rājārshis* to be "princes who have adopted a life of devotion." In a note he adds: "A similar enumeration is given in the Vāyu, with some additions: Rishi is derived from *ṛish*, 'to go to,' or 'approach'; the Brahmarshis, it is said, are descendants of the five patriarchs, who were the founders of races or gotras of Brahmans, or Kaśyapa, Vasīṣṭha, Angiras, Atri, and Bhṛigu; the Devarshis are Nara and Nārāyaṇa, the sons of Dharma; the Bālakhilyas, who sprang from Kratu; Kardama, the son of Pulaha; Kuvēra, the son of Pulastya; Achala, the son of Pratyūsha; Nārada and Parvata, the sons of Kaśyapa. Rājārshis are Ikshvāku and other princes. The Brahmarshis dwell in the sphere of Brahmā; the Devarshis in the region of the gods; and the Rājārshis in the heaven of Indra." Brahmarshis are evidently rishis who were priests; and Rājārshis, rishis of kingly extraction. If so, a Devarshi, having a divine character, should be something higher than either. Professor Roth, following apparently the Trikaṇḍaśeṣha, defines them as "rishis dwelling among the gods." I am not aware how far back this classification of rishis goes in Indian literature. Roth, *s.v. ṛishi*, *brahmarshi* and *devarshi* does not give any references to these words as occurring in the Brāhmaṇas; and they are not found in the hymns of the R.V. where, however, the "seven rishis" are mentioned. Regarding *rājārshis* see pp. 266 ff. above.

this disappointment, he had ascended one grade, and forthwith recommenced his work of mortification.

At this point of time his austerities were interrupted by the following occurrences: King Triśanku, one of Ikshvāku's descendants, had conceived the design of celebrating a sacrifice by virtue of which he should ascend bodily to heaven. As Vasiṣṭha, on being summoned, declared that the thing was impossible (*aśakyam*), Triśanku travelled to the south, where the sage's hundred sons were engaged in austerities, and applied to them to do what their father had declined. Though he addressed them with the greatest reverence and humility, and added that "the Ikshvākus regarded their family-priests as their highest resource in difficulties, and that, after their father, he himself looked to them as his tutelary deities" (57, 22. *Ikshvākūṇāṃ hi sarveṣhām purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | tasmād anantaram sarve bhavanto daivatam mama*), he received from the haughty priests the following rebuke for his presumption: (58, 2) *Pratyākhyāto 'si durbuddhe gururṇ satyarādīnā | taṃ kathāṃ samatikramya śūkhāntaram upēyivān | 3. Ikshvākūṇāṃ hi sarveṣhām purodhāḥ paramā gatiḥ | na chātikramitūṃ śakyāṃ vachanaṃ satyarādīnāḥ | 4. "Aśakyam" iti chovācha Vasiṣṭho bhagavān rishiḥ | taṃ vayanṃ vai samāhartum kratuṃ śaktāḥ kathāṃ tara | 5. Bālīśa traṇ nara-śreṣṭha gamyatāṃ sva-puram pumāḥ | yājane bhagavān śaktas trailokyasyāpi pūrtthiva | avamānaṃ kathaṃ kartuṃ tasya śakṣyamāha vayanṃ | "Fool, thou hast been refused by thy truth-speaking preceptor. How is it that, disregarding his authority, thou hast resorted to another school (śūkhā)?*¹⁹⁵ 3. The family-priest is the highest oracle of all the Ikshvākus; and the command of that veracious personage cannot be transgressed. 4. Vasiṣṭha, the divine rishi, has declared that 'the thing cannot be;' and how can we undertake thy sacrifice? 5. Thou art foolish, king; return to thy capital. The divino (Vasiṣṭha) is competent to

¹⁹⁵ It does not appear how Triśanku, in asking the aid of Vasiṣṭha's sons after applying in vain to their father, could be charged with resorting to another *śūkhā* (school), in the ordinary sense of that word: as it is not conceivable that the sons should have been of another *Śūkhā* from the father, whose cause they espouse with so much warmth. The Commentator in the Bombay edition explains the word *śūkhāntaram* as = *yājaniādīnā rakṣakāntaram*, "one who by sacrificing for thee, etc., will be another protector." Gorresio's Gaṇḍa text, which may often be used as a commentary on the older one, has the following paraphrase of the words in question, ch. 60, 3: *Mūlam uterijya kasmāt traṇ śūkhāṃ icchasi iambitum* | "Why, forsaking the root, dost thou desire to hang upon the branches."

act as priest of the three worlds; how can we shew him disrespect?" Trisanku then gave them to understand, that as his preceptor and "his preceptor's sons had declined compliance with his requests, he should think of some other expedient." In consequence of his venturing to express this presumptuous intention, they condemned him by their imprecation to become a Chāṇḍāla (58, 7. "*Pratyākhyāto bhagavatā guru-putrais tathairva cha | anyān gatiṃ gamishyāmi svasti vo 'stu tapodhanāḥ*" | *ṛishi-putrās tu tach chkrutvā vākyān ghorābhisaṃhitam | śepūḥ parama-sankruddhās "chāṇḍālatvaṃ gamishyasi"* |). As this curse soon took effect, and the unhappy king's form was changed into that of a degraded outcast, he resorted to Viśvāmitra (who, as we have seen, was also dwelling at this period in the south), enlarging on his own virtues and piety, and bewailing his fate. Viśvāmitra commiserated his condition (ch. 59), and promised to sacrifice on his behalf, and exalt him to heaven in the same Chāṇḍāla-form to which he had been condemned by his preceptors' curse. "Heaven is now as good as in thy possession, since thou hast resorted to the son of Kuśika" (59, 4. *Guru-śāpa-kṛitān rūpaṃ yad idaṃ trayi varttate | anena saha rūpeṇ saśarīro gamishyasi | hasta-prāptam aham manye svargaṃ tava narādhipa | yas tvam Kauśikam āgamyā śaranyāḥ śaraṇaṃ gataḥ* |). He then directed that preparations should be made for the sacrifice, and that all the rishis, including the family of Vasiṣṭha, should be invited to the ceremony. The disciples of Viśvāmitra, who had conveyed his message, reported the result on their return in these words: (59, 11) *Śrutvā te vachanaṃ sarve samāyānti dvijātayaḥ | sarva-deśeshu chāgachhan varjayitvā Mahodayam | Vasiṣṭhaṃ tach chataṃ sarvaṃ krodha-paryākulāksharam | yad uvācha vacho ghorān śṛṇu tvam muni-pungava | "kṣattriyo yūjako yasya chāṇḍālasya viśeshataḥ | katham sadasi bhoktāro havis tasya surarshayaḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ vā mahātmano bhuktvā chāṇḍāla-bhojanam | katham svargaṃ gamishyanti Viśvāmitreṇa pālītāḥ"* | *etad vachana-naishṭhuryyam ūchuḥ saṃrakta-lochanāḥ | Vasiṣṭhāḥ muni-sārdūla sarve saha-mahodayāḥ* | "Having heard your message, all the Brāhmanas are assembling in all the countries, and have arrived, excepting Mahodaya (Vasiṣṭha?). Hear what dreadful words those hundred Vasiṣṭhas, their voices quivering with rage, have uttered: 'How can the gods and rishis¹⁰⁶ con-

¹⁰⁶ The rishis as priests (*ritvik*) would be entitled to eat the remains of the sacrifice, according to the Commentator.

sume the oblation at the sacrifice of that man, especially if he be a Chanḍāla, for whom a Kshattriya is officiating-priest? How can illustrious Brāhmanas ascend to heaven, after eating the food of a Chanḍāla, and being entertained by Viśvāmitra?' These ruthless words all the Vaśishṭhas, together with Mahodaya, uttered, their eyes inflamed with anger." Viśvāmitra, who was greatly incensed on receiving this message, by a curse doomed the sons of Vaśishṭha to be reduced to ashes, and reborn as degraded outcasts (*mṛitpāḥ*) for seven hundred births, and Mahodaya to become a Nishāda. Knowing that this curse had taken effect (ch. 60), Viśvāmitra then, after eulogizing Trisanku, proposed to the assembled rishis that the sacrifice should be celebrated. To this they assented, being actuated by fear of the terrible sage's wrath. Viśvāmitra himself officiated at the sacrifice as *yājūka*; ¹⁹⁷ and the other rishis as priests (*riteijah*) (with other functions) performed all the ceremonies. Viśvāmitra next invited the gods to partake of the oblations: (60, 11) *Nābhyagaman yadā tatra bhāgārthaṁ sarva-devatāḥ | tataḥ kopa-samāviśṭo Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | sruvam udyanyā sakro-dhas Trisankum idam abravīt | "paśya me tapaso vīryaṁ svārjitasya nareśvara | eṣa tvām svaśarīreṇa nayāmi svargam ojasā | duṣṭprāyaṁ svaśarīreṇa svargaṁ gachchha nareśvara | svārjitaṁ kinchid apy asti mayā hi tapasaḥ phalam |* "When, however, the deities did not come to receive their portions, Viśvāmitra became full of wrath, and raising aloft the sacrificial ladle, thus addressed Trisanku: 'Behold, o monarch, the power of austere fervour acquired by my own efforts. I myself, by my own energy, will conduct thee to heaven. Ascend to that celestial region which is so arduous to attain in an earthly body. I have surely earned *some* reward of my austerity.'" Trisanku ascended instantly to heaven in the sight of the munis. Indra, however, ordered him to be gone, as a person who, having incurred the curse of his spiritual preceptors, was unfit for the abode of the celestials;—and to fall down headlong to earth (60, 17. *Trisanko gachchha bhūyas tvām nāsi svargakṛitālayaḥ | guru-śūpa-hato mūḍha pata bhūmim avāk-śirāḥ*). He accordingly began to descend, invoking loudly, as he fell, the help of his spiritual patron. Viśvāmitra, greatly incensed, called out to him to stop: (60, 20) *Tato brahma-tapo-yogāt Prajāpatir ivāparaḥ | sasarjja dakṣhiṇe bhāge saptarshīn aparān punaḥ | dakṣhiṇāṁ diśam āsthāya*

¹⁹⁷ This means as *adhvaryu* according to the Commentator.

rishi-madhyo mahāyāsūḥ | nakshattra-mālām aparām asrijat krodha-mūrchhitāḥ | anyam Indrāṁ karishyāmi loko vā syād anindrakāḥ | daiva-tāny api sa krodhāt srashtuṁ samupachakrame |¹⁹⁸ "Then by the power of his divine knowledge and austere fervour he created, like another Prajapati, other Seven Rishis (a constellation so called) in the southern part of the sky. Having proceeded to this quarter of the heavens, the renowned sage, in the midst of the rishis, formed another garland of stars, being overcome with fury. Exclaiming, 'I will create another Indra, or the world shall have no Indra at all,' he began, in his rage, to call gods also into being." The rishis, gods (Suras), and Asuras now became seriously alarmed and said to Viśvāmitra, in a conciliatory tone, that Trisanku, "as he had been cursed by his preceptors, should not be admitted bodily into heaven, until he had undergone some lustration" (60, 24. *Ayam rājā mahābhāga guru-śāpa-parikshataḥ | saśarīro divaṁ yātuṁ nārhaty akṛita-pāvanaḥ* |).¹⁹⁹ The sage replied that he had given a promise to Trisanku, and appealed to the gods to permit his protégé to remain bodily in heaven, and the newly created stars to retain their places in perpetuity. The gods agreed that "these numerous stars should remain, but beyond the sun's path, and that Trisanku, like an immortal, with his head downwards, should shine among them, and be followed by them," adding "that his object would be thus attained, and his renown secured, and he would be like a dweller in heaven" (60, 29. *Evam bhavatu bhadrāṁ te tishthanto etāni sarvaśaḥ | gagane tāny anekāni vaiśvānara-pathād vahiḥ | nakshatrāṇi muni-śreṣṭhā teshu jyotiṣhshu jājvalan | avāk-śirās Trisankuś cha tishthato amara-sannibhaḥ | anuyāsyanti chaitāni jyotiṁshi nripa-sattamam | kṛitārthaṁ kīrtimantaṁ cha svarga-loka-gataṁ yathā* |). Thus was this great dispute adjusted by a compromise, which Viśvāmitra accepted.

This story of Trisanku, it will have been observed, differs materially from the one quoted above (p. 375 ff.) from the Harivāmśa; but brings out more distinctly the character of the conflict between Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra.

When all the gods and rishis had departed at the conclusion of the

¹⁹⁸ I follow Schlegel's text, which differs verbally, though not in substance, both from the Bombay edition and from Gorresio's.

¹⁹⁹ The last compound word *akṛitapāvanaḥ*, "without lustration," is given by Schlegel and Gorresio. The Bombay edition has instead of it *eva tapodhana*, "o sage rich in austerity."

sacrifice, Viśvāmitra said to his attendant devotees: (61, 2) *Mahān vighnaḥ pravṛtito 'yañ dakṣiṇām āsthito diśam | diśam anyām prapatsyāmas tatra tapsyāmahe tapaḥ* | “This has been a great interruption [to our austerities] which has occurred in the southern region: we must proceed in another direction to continue our penances.” He accordingly went to a forest in the west, and began his austerities anew. Here the narrative is again interrupted by the introduction of another story, that of king Ambarīsha, king of Ayodhyā, who was, according to the Rāmāyaṇa, the twenty-eighth in descent from Ikshvāku, and the twenty-second from Trisanku. (Compare the genealogy in the Rāmāyaṇa, i. 70, and ii. 110, 6 ff., with that in Wilson’s Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. pp. 260 ff. 280, 284 ff. and 303; which is different.) Viśvāmitra is nevertheless represented as flourishing contemporaneously with both of these princes. The story relates that Ambarīsha was engaged in performing a sacrifice, when Indra carried away the victim. The priest said that this ill-omened event had occurred owing to the king’s bad administration; and would call for a great expiation, unless a human victim could be produced (61, 8. *Prāyaścittam mahad hy etad naraṁ eva puruṣaḥ śabha | ānayasva pāśuṁ śighraṁ yāvat karma pravarttate* |). After a long search the royal-rishi (Ambarīsha) came upon the Brāhman-rishi Rīchika, a descendant of Bhṛigu, and asked him to sell one of his sons for a victim, at the price of a hundred thousand cows. Rīchika answered that he would not sell his eldest son; and his wife added that she would not sell the youngest: “eldest sons,” she observed, “being generally the favourites of their fathers, and youngest sons of their mothers” (61, 18. *Prāyeṇa hi nara-śreṣṭha jyeshṭhūḥ pītrīṣu valla-bhāḥ | mātṛiṇām cha kaṇiyāṁsas tasmād rakṣhe kaṇiyasam* |). The second son, Śunaśśepa, then said that in that case he regarded himself as the one who was to be sold, and desired the king to remove him. The hundred thousand cows, with ten millions of gold-pieces and heaps of jewels, were paid down, and Śunaśśepa carried away. As they were passing through Pushkara (ch. 62) Śunaśśepa beheld his maternal uncle Viśvāmitra (see Rāmāyaṇa, i. 34, 7,²⁰⁰ and p. 352 above) who was engaged in austerities there with other rishis, threw himself into his arms,

²⁰⁰ *Pūrvajā bhaginī chōpi mama Rūghava suvatā | nāmnā Satyavatī nāma Rīchike pratipādītā* | “And I have a religious sister older than myself called Satyavatī, who was given in marriage to Rīchika.”

and implored his assistance, urging his orphan, friendless, and helpless state, as claims on the sage's benevolence (62, 4. *Na me 'sti mātā na pitā jñātayo bāndhavāḥ kutaḥ | trātum arhasi mām saumya dharmena muni-pungava | . . . 7. Na me nālho hy anāthasya bhava bhavyena chetasā* |). Viśvāmitra soothed him; and pressed his own sons to offer themselves as victims in the room of Sunaśśeṣa. This proposition met with no favour from Madhushyanda²⁰¹ and the other sons of the royal hermit, who answered with haughtiness and derision: (62, 14) *Katham ātma-sutān hīntā trāyase 'nya-sutān vibho | akāryyam iva paśyāmaḥ svamāṁsam iva bhojane* | "How is it that thou sacrificest thine own sons, and seekest to rescue those of others? We look upon this as wrong, and like the eating of one's own flesh."²⁰² The sage was exceedingly wroth at this disregard of his injunction, and doomed his sons to be born in the most degraded classes, like Vaśishṭha's sons, and to eat dog's flesh,²⁰³ for a thousand years. He then said to Sunaśśeṣa: (62, 19) *Paritra-pṣāir ābaddho rakta-mālyānulepanaḥ | Vaiṣṇavaṁ yūpam āśādyā vāgbhir Agniṁ udāhara | ime cha gāthe dve dirye gāyethāḥ muni-putraka | Ambarishasya gajne 'smiṁs tataḥ siddhim avāpsyasi* | "When thou art bound with hallowed cords, decked with a red garland, and anointed with unguents, and fastened to the sacrificial post of Vishnu, then address thyself to Agni, and sing these two divine verses (*gāthās*), at the sacrifice of Ambarīsha; then shalt thou attain the fulfilment [of thy desire]." Being furnished with the two *gāthās*, Sunaśśeṣa proposed at once to king Ambarīsha that they should set out for their destination. When bound at the stake to be immolated, dressed in a red garment, "he celebrated the two gods, Indra and his younger brother (Vishnu), with the excellent verses. The Thousand-eyed (Indra) was pleased with the secret hymn, and bestowed long life on Sunaśśeṣa" (62, 25. *Sa baddho vāgbhir agryābhir abhitsuṣṭāva vai surau | Indram Indrānujāṁ chaiva yathāvad muni-putrakaḥ | tasmai pritaḥ sahasrakṣho*

²⁰¹ The word is written thus in Schlegel's and Gorresio's editions. The Bombay edition reads Madhuchhanda.

²⁰² Schlegel and Gorresio read *svamāṁsam*, "one's own flesh," which seems much more appropriate than *śva-māṁsam*, "dog's flesh," the reading of the Bombay edition.

²⁰³ Gorresio's edition alone reads *śva-māṁsa-vrittayaḥ*, "subsisting on your own flesh," and makes this to be allusion to what the sons had just said and a punishment for their impertinence (64, 16. *Yasmāt śva-māṁsam uddiṣṭvāṁ yushmābhir avamanya mām*).

rahasya-stuti-toshitaḥ | dīrgham āyus tadā prādāch Chhunaśśephāya Vāsavaḥ |).²⁰⁴ King Ambarisha also received great benefits from this sacrifice. Viśvāmitra meanwhile proceeded with his austerities, which he prolonged for a thousand years.

At the end of this time (ch. 63) the gods came to allot his reward; and Brahmā announced that he had attained the rank of a rishi, thus apparently advancing an additional step. Dissatisfied, as it would seem, with this, the sage commenced his task of penance anew. After a length of time he beheld the nymph (Apsāras) Menākā, who had come to bathe in the lake of Pushkara. She flashed on his view, unequalled in her radiant beauty, like lightning in a cloud (63, 5. *Rāpenūprati-mām tatra vidyutaṁ jalade yathā*). He was smitten by her charms, invited her to be his companion in his hermitage, and for ten years remained a slave to her witchery, to the great prejudice of his austerities.²⁰⁵ At length he became ashamed of this ignoble subjection, and full of indignation at what he believed to be a device of the gods to disturb his devotion; and, dismissing the nymph with gentle accents, he departed for the northern mountains, where he practised severe austerities for a thousand years on the banks of the Kauśikī river. The gods became alarmed at the progress he was making, and decided that he should be dignified with the appellation of great rishi (*māhārshi*); and Brahmā, giving effect to the general opinion of the deities, announced that he had conferred that rank upon him. Joining his hands and bowing his head, Viśvāmitra replied that he should consider himself to have indeed completely subdued his senses, if the incomparable title of Brāhman-rishi were conferred upon him (63, 31. *Brahmarshi-śabdām atulaṁ svīritaiḥ karmabhiḥ śubhaiḥ | yadi me bhagavān āha tato 'haṁ vijitendriyaḥ |*). Brahmā informed him in answer, that he had not yet acquired the power of perfectly controlling his senses; but should make further efforts with that view. The sage then began to put himself through a yet more rigorous course of austerities, standing with his arms erect, without support, feeding on air, in summer exposed to five fires (*i.e.* one on each of four sides, and the sun overhead), in the rainy season remaining unsheltered from the wet, and in

²⁰⁴ I have alluded above, p. 358, note, to the differences which exist between this legend of S'unaśśepa and the older one in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa.

²⁰⁵ Compare Mr. Leckie's History of Rationalism, vol. i, p. 86.

winter lying on a watery couch night and day. This he continued for a thousand years. At last Indra and the other deities became greatly distressed at the idea of the merit he was storing up, and the power which he was thereby acquiring; and the chief of the celestials desired (ch. 64) the nymph Rāmbhā to go and bewitch him by her blandishments. She expressed great reluctance to expose herself to the wrath of the formidable muni, but obeyed the repeated injunction of Indra, who promised that he and Kandarpa (the god of love) should stand by her, and assumed her most attractive aspect with the view of overcoming the sage's impassibility. He, however, suspected this design, and becoming greatly incensed, he doomed the nymph by a curse to be turned into stone and to continue in that state for a thousand years.²⁰⁶ The curse took effect, and Kandarpa and Indra slunk away. In this way, though he resisted the allurements of sensual love,²⁰⁷ he lost the whole fruit of his austerities by yielding to anger; and had to begin his work over again. He resolved to check his irascibility, to remain silent, not even to breathe for hundreds of years; to dry up his body; and to fast and stop his breath till he had obtained the coveted character of a Brāhman. He then (ch. 65) left the Himālāya and travelled to the east, where he underwent a dreadful exercise, unequalled in the whole history of austerities, maintaining silence, according to a vow, for a thousand years. At the end of this time he had attained to perfection, and although thwarted by many obstacles, he remained unmoved by anger. On the expiration of this course of austerity, he prepared some food to eat; which Indra, coming in the form of a Brāhman, begged that he would give him. Viśvāmitra did so, and though he had none left for himself, and was obliged to remain fasting, he said nothing to the Brāhman, on account of his vow of silence. 65, 8. *Tasyānuchekhhvasamānasya mūrdhni dhūmo vyajyāta* | 9. *Trailokyam yena sambhrāntam ātāpitam ivābhavat* | . . . 11. "*Bahubhiḥ kārāṇair deva Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | lobhitaḥ krodhitaś chaiva tapasā chābhivardhate* | . . . 12. *Na diyate yadi to asya manasū may abhīpsitam* | 13. *Vināśayati trailokyam tapasā sa-charāccharam* | *vyākulāś*

²⁰⁶ On this the Commentator remarks that this incident shews that anger is more difficult to conquer than even lust (*eteva kīṇād api krodho durjeyaḥ iti sūchitam*).

²⁰⁷ The Commentator, however, suggests that the sudden sight of Rāmbhā may at first have excited in him some feelings of this kind (*āpātato Rāmbhā-darīana-pravṛtityā kūmenāpi tapaḥ-kṣayaḥ*).

cha diśaḥ sarvāḥ na cha kinchit prakāśate | 14. *Sāgarāḥ kṣubhitāḥ sarve viśiryaṇte cha parvatāḥ* | *prakampate cha vasudhā vāyur vātīha sankulāḥ* | 15. *Brahman na pratijānāmo nāstiko jāyate janāḥ* | . . . 16. *Buddhiṁ na kurute yāvad nāśe deva mahāmuniḥ* | 17. *Tūvat prasādyo bhagavān agnirūpo mahādyutiḥ*” | . . . 19. *Brahmarṣe svāgataṁ te 'stu tapasā smaḥ sutoshitāḥ* | 20. *Brāhmanyāṁ tapasogreṇa prāptavān asi Kauśika* | *dirgham āyus che te brahman dadāmi sa-marud-gaṇāḥ* | 21. . . . *svasti prāpnuhi bhadrāṁ te gachha saumya yathāsukham* | . . . 22. . . . *brāhmanyāṁ yadi me prāptaṁ dirgham āyus tathaiva cha* | 23. *Oṁkāro 'tha vashāṭkāro vedāś cha varayantu mām* | *kṣattrā-veda-vidāṁ śreṣṭhō brahma-veda-vidāṁ api* | 24. *Brahma-putro Vasiṣṭhō mām evaṁ vadatu devatāḥ* | . . . 25. *Tataḥ prasūdīto devair Vasiṣṭhō japatāṁ varaḥ* | *sakhyaṁ chakūra brahmarṣir “evam asto” iti chābravit* | 26. “*Brahmarṣhitvāṁ na sandehaḥ sarvam sampadyate tava*” | . . . 27. *Viśvāmitro 'pi dharmātmā labdhvā brāhmanyam uttamam* | *pūjayāmāsa brahmarṣiṁ Vasiṣṭhāṁ japatāṁ varam* | “As he continued to suspend his breath, smoke issued from his head, to the great consternation and distress of the three worlds.” The gods, rishis, etc., then addressed Brahmā: “The great muni Viśvāmitra has been allured and provoked in various ways, but still advances in his sanctity. If his wish is not conceded, he will destroy the three worlds by the force of his austerities. All the regions of the universe are confounded, no light anywhere shines; all the oceans are tossed, and the mountains crumble, the earth quakes, and the wind blows confusedly. 15. We cannot, o Brahmā, guarantee that mankind shall not become atheistic. . . . 16. Before the great and glorious sage of fiery form resolves to destroy (everything) let him be propitiated.” . . . The gods, headed by Brahmā, then addressed Viśvāmitra: “Hail Brāhman rishi, we are gratified by thy austerities; o Kauśika, thou hast, through their intensity, attained to Brāhmanhood. I, o Brāhman, associated with the Maruts, confer on thee long life. May every blessing attend thee; depart wherever thou wilt.’ The sage, delighted, made his obeisance to the gods, and said: ‘If I have obtained Brāhmanhood, and long life, then let the mystic monosyllable (*oṁkāra*) and the sacrificial formula (*vāśāṭkāra*) and the Vedas recognise me in that capacity. And let Vasiṣṭha, the son of Brahmā, the most eminent of those who are skilled in the Kṣattrā-veda, and the Brāhma-veda (the knowledge of the Kṣattriya and the Brahmanical disciplines), address me simi-

larly.' . . . Accordingly Vaśishṭha, being propitiated by the gods, became reconciled to Viśvāmitra, and recognised his claim to all the prerogatives of a Brāhman rishi. . . . Viśvāmitra, too, having attained the Brahmanical rank, paid all honour to Vaśishṭha." Such was the grand result achieved by Viśvāmitra, at the cost of many thousand years of intense mortification of the body, and discipline of the soul. During the course of the struggle he had manifested, as the story tells us, a power little, if at all, inferior to that of Indra, the king of the gods; and as in a former legend we have seen King Nahusha actually occupying the throne of that deity, we cannot doubt that—according to the recognised principles of Indian mythology—Viśvāmitra had only to recommence his career of self-mortification in order to raise himself yet higher than he had yet risen, to the rank of a devarshi, or divine rishi (if this be, indeed, a superior grade to that of brahmarshi), or to any other elevation he might desire. But, as far as the account in the Rāmāyaṇa informs us, he was content with his success. He stood on a footing of perfect equality with his rival Vaśishṭha, and became indifferent to further honours. In fact, it was not necessary for the purpose of the inventors of the legend to carry him any higher. They only wished to account for his exercising the prerogatives of a Brāhman; and this had been already accomplished to their satisfaction.

In the story of Sakuntalā, however, as narrated in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, sixty-ninth and following sections, we are informed that, to the great alarm of Indra, Viśvāmitra renewed his austerities, even long after he had attained the position of a Brāhman, verse 2914: *Tapyamānaḥ kila purā Viśvāmitro mahat tapaḥ | subhriṣaṁ tūpayāmāsa Sakraṁ sura-gaṇeśvaram | tapasū dipta-vīryyo'yaṁ sthānād mām chyāvayed iti* | "Formerly Viśvāmitra, who was practising intense austere-fervour, occasioned great distress to Sakra (Indra), the lord of the deities, lest by the fiery energy so acquired by the saint he himself should be cast down from his place." Indra accordingly resorted to the usual device of sending one of the Apsarases, Menakā, to seduce the sage by the display of her charms, and the exercise of all her allurements, "by beauty, youth, sweetness, gestures, smiles, and words" (verse 2920, *Rūpa-yauvana-mādhuryya-cheshṭita-smita-bhāshitaiḥ*), into the indulgence of sensual love; and thus put an end to his efforts after increased sanctity. Menakā urges the dangers of the mission arising from the great power

and irascibility of the sage, of whom, she remarked, even Indra himself was afraid, as a reason for excusing her from undertaking it; and refers to some incidents in Viśvāmitra's history, verse 2923: *Mahābhāgaṃ Vasiṣṭhaṃ yaḥ putraiḥ iṣṭaiḥ vyajayāt | kṣattra-jālaś cha yaḥ pūrvam abhavad brāhmaṇo balāt | sauchārthaṃ yo nadiṃ cakre durgamān bahubhir jalaiḥ | yān tūm punyatamān loke Kauśikīti vidur janāḥ |* 2925. *Babhāra yatrāśya purā kṛte durge mahātmanaḥ | dārūn Matango dharmātmā rājārshir vyādhatām gataḥ | atita-kṛte durbhikṣe abhyetya punar āśramam | muniḥ Pāreṭi nadyāḥ vai nāma cakre tadā prabhūḥ | Matangam yājyāncakre yatra prita-manāḥ svayam | traṇ cha somam bhayād yasya gataḥ pātūn sureśvara | cakārānyaṃ cha lokān vai krudho nakṣattra-sampadā | pratiśravaṇa-pūrvān nakṣattraṇi cakāra yaḥ | guru-śāpa-hatasyaṇi Trisankuḥ śaraṇam dadau |* “2923. He deprived the great Vasiṣṭha of his beloved sons; and though born a Kshatriya, he formerly became a Brāhman by force. For the purpose of purification he rendered the holy river, known in the world as the Kauśikī, unfordable from the mass of water. 2925. His wife was once maintained there in a time of distress by the righteous rājārshi Matanga, who had become a huntsman; and when the famine was past, the muni returned to his hermitage, gave to the river the name of Pārī, and being gratified, sacrificed for Matanga on its banks; and then thou thyself, Indra, from fear of him wentest to drink his soma. He created, too, when incensed, another world, with a garland of stars, formed agreeably to his promise, and gave his protection to Trisanku, even when smitten by his preceptor's curse.” Menakā, however, ends by saying that she cannot decline the commission which has been imposed upon her; but begs that she may receive such succours as may ensure her success. She accordingly shows herself in the neighbourhood of Viśvāmitra's hermitage. The saint yields to the influence of love, invites her to become his companion, and as a result of their intercourse Śakuntalā is born. The Apsaras then returns to Indra's paradise.

SECT. XII.—*Other accounts, from the Mahābhārata, of the way in which Viśvāmitra became a Brāhman.*

In the Udyogaparvan of the Mahābhārata, sections 105–118, a story is told regarding Viśvāmitra and his pupil Gālava, in which a different

account is given of the manner in which Viśvāmitra attained the rank of a Brāhman; viz. by the gift of Dharma, or Righteousness, appearing in the form of his rival. M. Bh. Udyogap. 3721: *Viśvāmitraṁ tapyantam Dharmo jijnāsaya purā | abhyāgachhat sayam bhūtvā Vaśiṣṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ | . . . 3728. Atha varsha-śate pūrṇe Dharmaḥ punar upāgamat | Vaśiṣṭhaṁ veśam āsthāya Kauśikam bhojanepsayā | sa dṛiṣṭvā śirasā bhaktaṁ dhriyamānam maharṣinā | tiṣṭhatā vāyubhakteṇa Viśvāmitreṇa dhimātā | pratigrihya tato Dharmas tathaivoshṇam tathā namam | bhuktvā "prito 'smi viprarshe" tam uktvā sa munir gataḥ | kṣhattra-bhāvād apagato brāhmaṇatvam upāgataḥ | Dharmasya vachanāt prito Viśvāmitras tathā 'bhavat |* "Dharma, assuming the personality of the sage Vaśiṣṭha, once came to prove Viśvāmitra, when he was living a life of austerity;" and after consuming some food, given him by other devotees, desired Viśvāmitra, who brought him some freshly cooked charu, quite hot, to stand still for the present. Viśvāmitra accordingly stood still, nourished only by air, with the boiled rice on his head. "The same personage, Dharma, in the same disguise, reappeared after a hundred years, desiring food, and consumed the rice (still quite hot and fresh), which he saw supported upon the hermit's head, while he himself remained motionless, feeding on air. Dharma then said to him, 'I am pleased with thee, o Brāhman ṛishi;' and went away. Viśvāmitra, having become thus transformed from a Kṣhattriya into a Brāhman by the word of Dharma, was delighted."

In the Anuśāsanaparvan of the Mahābhārata, we have another reference to the story of Viśvāmitra. King Yudhishṭhira enquires of Bhīṣma (verse 181) how, if Brāhmanhood is so difficult to be attained by men of the other three castes, it happened that the great Kṣhattriya acquired that dignity. The prince then recapitulates the chief exploits of Viśvāmitra: 183. *Tena hy amita-vīryeṇa Vaśiṣṭhasya mahātmanaḥ | hatam putra-śataṁ sadyas tapasā 'pi pitāmaha | yātudhānās cha bahavo rākṣasās tigma-tejasah | manyunā "viṣṭa-dehena ṛiṣṭūḥ kālāntakopamāḥ |* 185. *Mahān Kuśika-vamśas cha brahmarṣi-śata-sankulaḥ | sthāpito nara-loke 'smin vidvān brāhmaṇa-saṁyutaḥ | Richikasyātmajas chaiva Sunaṣṣepho mahātapaḥ | vimokṣito mahāsattvāt paśutām apy upāgataḥ | Hariśchandra-kratau devāns toshayitvā "ma-tejasā | putratām anusamprāpto Viśvāmitrasya dhimataḥ | nābhivādayato jyeshṭhaṁ Devarātām narā-*

dhipa | puttrāḥ panchāśad evāpi śaptāḥ śvapachatām gatāḥ | Triśankur bandhubhir muktaḥ Aikshvākūḥ prīti-pūrvakam | arāk-śirāḥ divaṁ nīto dakṣiṇām āsrito diśam | . . . tato vighnakarī chaiva Panchachūdā su-sammataḥ | Rambhā nāmāpsarāḥ śāpād yasya sailatram āgatā | tathāivā-sya bhayād baddhvā Vaśiṣṭhaḥ salile purā | ātmānam majjayan śrīmān vipāśaḥ punar utthitaḥ | "For he destroyed Vaśiṣṭha's hundred sons by the power of austere-fervour; when possessed by anger, he created many demons, fierce and destructive as death; he (185) established the great and wise family of the Kuśikas, which was full of Brāhman and hundreds of Brāhman rishis; he delivered Sunasēpha, son of Richika, who was on the point of being slaughtered as a victim, and who became his son, after he had, at Hariśchandra's sacrifice, through his own power, propitiated the gods; he cursed his fifty sons who would not do homage to Devarāta, (adopted as) the eldest, so that they became outcastes; through affection he elevated Triśanku, when forsaken by his relations, to heaven, where he remained fixed with his head downwards in the southern heavens; (191) . . . he changed the troublesome nymph Rambhā, known as Panchachūdā, by his curse into a form of stone; he occasioned Vaśiṣṭha through fear to bind and throw himself into the river, though he emerged thence unbound;" and performed other deeds calculated to excite astonishment. Yudhishṭhira ends by enquiring, "how this Kshattriya became a Brāhman without transmigrating into another body" (197. *Dehāntaram anāsādyā katham sa brāhmaṇo bhavati* |). In answer to this question, Bhīṣma (verses 200 ff.) deduces the descent of Viśvāmitra from Ajāmīḍha, of the race of Bharata, who was a pious priest, or sacrificer (*yajvā dharma-bhritām varāḥ*), the father of Jahnu, who again was the progenitor of Kuśika, the father of Gādhi; and narrates the same legend of the birth of Viśvāmitra, which has been already extracted from the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, pp. 349 f.). The conclusion of the story as here given is, that the wife of Richika bore Jamadagni, while "the wife of Gādhi, by the grace of the rishi, gave birth to Viśvāmitra, who was a Brāhman rishi, and an utterer of the Veda; who, though a Kshattriya, attained to Brāhmanhood, and became afterwards also the founder of a Brāhman race" (216. *Viśvāmitram chājanayad Gādhi-bhāryyā yāsasvinī | rishheḥ prasādād rājendra brahmarshim brahmavādinam | tato brāhmaṇatām yāto Viśvāmitro mahātapaḥ | kshattriyaḥ so 'py atha tathā brahma-vāṁśasya kūrakaḥ* |).

of which the members are detailed,²⁰⁸ including the great rishi Kapila. In regard to the mode in which Viśvāmitra was transformed from a Kshattriya into a Brāhman, we are only told that he belonged to the former class, and that “Rīchika infused into him this exalted Brāhmanhood” (259. *Tathaira kshattriyo rājan Viśvāmitro mahātāpāḥ | Rīchikenāhitam brahma param etad Yudhisṭhira* |).

This version of the story is different from all those preceding ones which enter into any detail, as it makes no mention of Viśvāmitra having extorted the Brahmanical rank from the gods by force of his austerities; and ascribes his transformation to a virtue communicated by the sage Rīchika.

I have above (p. 296 f.) quoted a passage from Manu on the subject of submissive and refractory monarchs, in which reference is made to Viśvāmitra's elevation to the Brahmanical order. Nothing is there said of his conflict with Vaśishṭha, or of his arduous penances, endured with the view of conquering for himself an equality with his rival. On the contrary, it is to his submissiveness, *i.e.* to his dutiful recognition of the superiority of the Brāhmins, that his admission into their class is ascribed. Kullūka, indeed, explains the word submissiveness (*vināya*) to mean virtue in general; but the contrast which is drawn between Prithu, Manu, and Viśvāmitra, on the one hand, and Veṇa, Nahusha, Sudās, and Nimi, the resisters of Brāhmanical prerogatives (as all the legends declare them to have been), on the other, makes it tolerably evident that the merit which Manu means to ascribe to Viśvāmitra is that of implicit submission to the spiritual authority of the Brāhmins.

SECT. XIII.—*Legend of Saudāsa.*

In the reign of Mitrasaha, also called Saudāsa, and Kalmāshapāda, the son of Sudāsa, and the descendant of Trisanku in the twenty-second generation (see p. 337, above), we still find Vaśishṭha figuring in the legend, as the priest of that monarch, and causing him, by an impression, to become a cannibal, because he had, under the influence of a delusion, offered the priest human flesh to eat. I shall not extract the

²⁰⁸ The names in this list differ considerably from those given above, p. 352, from the Harivaṃśa.

version of the story given in the Vishnu Purāṇa in detail (Wilson, V.P. vol. iii. pp. 304 ff.), as it does not in any way illustrate the rivalry of Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra.

The Mahābhārata gives the following variation of the history (Ādi-parvan, sect. 176): "Kulmāshapāda was a king of the race of Ikshvāku. Viśvāmitra wished to be employed by him as his officiating priest; but the king preferred Vasishṭha" (verse 6699. *Akīmayat taṁ yājyārthe Viśvāmitraḥ pratāpavān | sa tu rājā mahātmānaṁ Vasishṭham ṛishi-sat-tamam* |). It happened, however, that the king went out to hunt, and after having killed a large quantity of game, he became very much fatigued, as well as hungry and thirsty. Meeting Saktri, the eldest of Vasishṭha's hundred sons, on the road, he ordered him to get out of his way. The priest civilly replied (verse 6703): *Mama panthāḥ mahārāja dharmāḥ eṣha sanātanaḥ | rājā sarreṣhu dharmeshu deyaḥ panthāḥ dvijātaye* | "The path is mine, o king; this is the immemorial law; in all observances the king must cede the way to the Brāhman." Neither party would yield, and the dispute waxing warmer, the king struck the muni with his whip. The muni, resorting to the usual expedient of offended sages, by a curse doomed the king to become a man-eater. "It happened that at that time enmity existed between Viśvāmitra and Vasishṭha on account of their respective claims to be priest to Kulmāshapāda" (verse 6710. *Tato yājya-nimittān tu Viśvāmitra-Vasishṭhayoḥ | vairam āsit tadā taṁ tu Viśvāmitro'nrapadyata* |). Viśvāmitra had followed the king; and approached while he was disputing with Saktri. Perceiving, however, the son of his rival Vasishṭha, Viśvāmitra made himself invisible, and passed them, watching his opportunity. The king began to implore Saktri's clemency: but Viśvāmitra wishing to prevent their reconciliation, commanded a Rākshasa (a man-devouring demon) to enter into the king. Owing to the conjoint influence of the Brāhman-rishi's curse, and Viśvāmitra's command, the demon obeyed the injunction. Perceiving that his object was gained, Viśvāmitra left things to take their course, and absented himself from the country. The king having happened to meet a hungry Brāhman, and sent him, by the hand of his cook (who could procure nothing else), some human flesh to eat, was cursed by him also to the same effect as by Saktri. The curse, being now augmented in force, took effect, and Saktri himself was the first victim, being eaten up by the king. The same fate

befell all the other sons of Vasiṣṭha at the instigation of Viśvāmitra :
 6736. *S'aktrim tañ tu mṛitañ dṛishṭrā Viśvāmitrah punaḥ punaḥ | Vasiṣṭha-*
ṭhasyaiva putreshu tad rakshaḥ sandideśa ha | sa tñ Saktry-avarān putrān
Vasiṣṭhasya mahātmanaḥ | bhukshayāmāsa sankruddhaḥ sīṃhaḥ kshudra-
mṛigān iva | Vasiṣṭho ghātitañ śrutrā Viśvāmitrena tñ sutān | dhāra-
yāmāsa tañ śokam mahādrir iva medinīm | chakre chātma-vināśāya bud-
dhiñ sa muni-sattamaḥ | na tv eva Kauśikochhedam mene matimatāñ
varaḥ | 6740. *Sa Meru-kūṭād ātmānam munocha bhagarān ṛishiḥ | gīreś*
tasya śilūyāñ tu tūla-rāśāv ivāpatat | na mamāra cha pātēna sa yadā
teja Pāṇḍava | tadā 'gnim iddham bhagarān sañvireśa mahārane | tañ
tadā susamiddho 'pi na dadāha kutāsanaḥ | dīpyamāno 'py anūtra-ghna
śito 'gnir abhavat tataḥ | sa samudram abhiprekshya śokāṛishṭo mahāmu-
niḥ | baddhṛvā kaṇṭhe śilūñ gurvīm nipapāta tadā 'mbhasi | sa samudror-
mi-vegēna sthale nyasto mahāmuniḥ | jagāma sa tataḥ khinnāḥ punar
evāś amam prati | 6745. *Tato dṛishṭrā 'śrama-padañ rahitañ taiḥ sutair*
muniḥ | nirjagāma suduḥkhārttaḥ punar apy āśramāt tataḥ | so 'paśyat
saritam pūrṇam prārṇit-kāle narāmbhasā | vṛikshūn bahuridhān pārtha
harantiñ tira-jān bahūn | atha chintāñ samāpede punaḥ kaurava-nan-
dana | "ambhasy asyāñ nimajjeyam" iti duḥkha-samanvitaḥ | tataḥ pāśais
tadā "lmānam gādham baddhṛvā mahāmuniḥ | tasyāḥ jale mahānadyāḥ
nimamajja suduḥkhitaḥ | atha chhiltvā nadi pāśāñs tasyāri-bala-sūdana |
sthala-sthañ tam ṛishim kṛitvā vipāśāñ samavāsrjāt | 6750. *Uttāra*
tataḥ pāśair vimuktaḥ sa mahān ṛishiḥ | Vipāśeti cha nūmāsyāḥ nadyāś
chakre mahān ṛishiḥ | . . . 6752. *Dṛishṭvā sa punar evarshir nadiñ*
haimavatiñ tadā | chandragrāhaviñ bhīmāñ tasyāḥ srotasy apātayat |
sā tam agni-samāñ vipram anuchintya sarid varā | śatadhā vidrutā yas-
māch śatadrur iti viśrutā | . . . 6774. *Saudāso 'ham mahābhūga yājñas*
te muni-sattama | asmin kūle yad iṣṭāñ te brāhi kiñ karavāñi te | Va-
siṣṭha uvācha | vṛittam etad yathā-kūlañ gachha rājyam prasādḥi vai |
brāhmaṇāñs tu manushyendra mā 'vamañsthāḥ kadāchana | rājā uvācha |
nārmañsye mahābhūga kadāchid brāhmaṇarshabhān | tvan-nideśo sthitaḥ
samyak pūjajishyāmy ahañ dvijān | Ikṣvākūñāñ cha yenūham anṛinaḥ
syāñ dvijottama | tat tvattaḥ prāptum ichhāmi sarva-veda-vidāñ vara |
apatyam īpsitam mahyañ dātum arhasi sattama | "Perceiving Saktri to
 be dead, Viśvāmitra again and again incited the Rākshasa against the
 sons of Vasiṣṭha; and accordingly the furious demon devoured those
 of his sons who were younger than Saktri, as a lion eats up the small

beasts of the forest.²⁰⁸ On hearing of the destruction of his sons by Viśvāmitra, Vaśiṣṭha supported his affliction, as the great mountain sustains the earth. He meditated his own destruction, but never thought of exterminating the Kauśikas. 6740. This divine sage hurled himself from the summit of Meru, but fell upon the rocks as if on a heap of cotton. Escaping alive from his fall, he entered a glowing fire in the forest; but the fire, though fiercely blazing, not only failed to burn him, but seemed perfectly cool. He next threw himself into the sea with a heavy stone attached to his neck; but was cast up by the waves on the dry land. He then went home to his hermitage; (6745) but seeing it empty and desolate, he was again overcome by grief and went out; and seeing the river Vipāśā which was swollen by the recent rains, and sweeping along many trees torn from its banks, he conceived the design of drowning himself into its waters: he accordingly tied himself firmly with cords, and threw himself in; but the river severing his bonds, deposited him unbound (*vipāśa*) on dry land; whence the name of the stream, as imposed by the sage.²¹⁰ 6752. He afterwards saw and threw himself into the dreadful Śatadru (Sutlej), which was full of alligators, etc., and derived its name from rushing away in a hundred directions on seeing the Brāhman brilliant as fire. In consequence of this he was once more stranded; and seeing he could not kill himself, he went back to his hermitage. After roaming about over many mountains and countries, he was followed home by his daughter-in-law Adṛiṣyāntī, Śakti's widow, from whose womb he heard a sound of the recitation of the Vedas, as she was pregnant with a child, which, when born, received the name of Parāśara, verse 6794. Learning from her that there was

²⁰⁸ See above (pp. 327 ff.), the passages quoted from the Brāhmanas, about the slaughter of Vaśiṣṭha's sons. In the Panchaviṃśa Br. (cited by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. i. 32) Vaśiṣṭha is spoken of as *putra-hatah*.

²¹⁰ The Nirukta, ix. 26, after giving other etymologies of the word Vipās, adds a verse: *Pāśāḥ asyūṃ vyapāśyanta Vaśiṣṭhasya mumūrshataḥ | tasmād Vipād uchyate pūrvam āsīd Uruñjirā |* "In it the bonds of Vaśiṣṭha were loosed, when he was on the point of death: hence it is called Vipās. It formerly bore the name of Uruñjirā." It does not appear whether or not this verse is older than the Mahābhārata. On this text of the Nirukta, Durga (as quoted by Prof. Müller, Rig-veda, ii. Pref. p. liv.) annotates: *Vaśiṣṭhaḥ kila nimanajja asyūṃ mumūrshuḥ putra-marana-śokāt itaḥ pāśair ātmānam baddhvā | tasya kila te pāśāḥ asyūṃ vyapāśyanta vyamuchyanta udakena |* "Vaśiṣṭha plunged into it, after binding himself with bonds, wishing to die when grieved at the death of his sons. In it (the river) his bonds were loosed by the water."

thus a hope of his line being continued, he abstained from further attempts on his own life. King Kalmāshapāda, however, whom they encountered in the forest, was about to devour them both, when Vasiṣṭha stopped him by a blast from his mouth; and sprinkling him with water consecrated by a holy text, he delivered him from the curse by which he had been affected for twelve years. The king then addressed Vasiṣṭha thus: “‘Most excellent sage, I am Saudāsa, whose priest thou art: what can I do that would be pleasing to thee?’ Vasiṣṭha answered: ‘This which has happened has been owing to the force of destiny: go, and rule thy kingdom; but, o monarch, never condemn the Brāhmins.’ The king replied: ‘Never shall I despise the most excellent Brāhmins; but submitting to thy commands I shall pay them all honour. And I must obtain from thee the means of discharging my debt to the Ikshvākus. Thou must give me the offspring which I desire.’” Vasiṣṭha promised to comply with his request. They then returned to Ayodhyā. And Vasiṣṭha having been solicited by the king to beget an heir to the throne²¹¹ (verse 6787. *Rājnas tasyājñayā devī Vasiṣṭham upachakrame | maharshiḥ saṁvidam kṛitū sambabhūva tayā saha | devyā divyena vidhinā Vasiṣṭho bhagavān rishiḥ*), the queen became pregnant by him, and brought forth a son at the end of twelve years. This extraordinary proceeding, so contrary to all the recognized rules of morality, is afterwards (verses 6888–6912) explained to have been necessitated by the curse of a Brāhmaṇi, whose husband Kalmāshapāda had devoured when in the forest, and who had doomed him to die if he should attempt to become a father, and had foretold that Vasiṣṭha should be the instrument of propagating his race (verse 6906: *Patnīm ṛitāv anuprāpya sadyas tyakshyasi jīvitam | yasya charsher Vasiṣṭhasya trayā putrāḥ vināśitāḥ | tena sangamyā te bhāryyā tanayam janayishyati*).²¹²

²¹¹ The same story is told in the Vishnu Pur. iv., 4, 38 (Wilson, vol. 3, p. 310).

²¹² This incident is alluded to in the Ādip., section 122. It is there stated that in the olden time women were subject to no restraint, and incurred no blame for abandoning their husbands and cohabiting with anyone they pleased (verse 4719. *Anūvēritūḥ kila purā striyaḥ āsan varānane | kūma-chūra-vihāsinyaḥ svatantrāḥ chāru-hūsini | tāsūṁ vyuchecharamāṇānām kaumārāt subhage patin | nādharmo 'bhūd varārohe sa hi dharmah purā 'bhavat*, compare verse 4729). A stop was, however, put to this practice by Uddālaka Śvetaketu, whose indignation was on one occasion aroused by a Brāhmaṇ taking his mother by the hand, and inviting her to go away with him, although his father, in whose presence this occurred, informed him that

The Mahābhārata has a further legend, regarding Viśvāmitra's jealousy of Vaśiṣṭha, which again exhibits the former in a very odious light, and as destitute of the moral dispositions befitting a saint, while Vaśiṣṭha is represented as manifesting a noble spirit of disinterestedness and generosity.

Salyap. 2360. *Viśvāmitrasya viprarsher Vaśiṣṭhasya cha Bhārata | bhṛīṣaṁ vairam abhūd rājāṁ tapaḥ-sparddhā-kṛitam mahat | āśramo vai Vaśiṣṭhasya sthānu-tīrthe 'bhavad mahān | pūrvataḥ pūrscalas chāsīd Viśvāmitrasya dhimataḥ | . . . 2:66. Viśvāmitra-Vaśiṣṭhau tāv ahany ahani Bhārata | sparddhāṁ tapaḥ-kṛitāṁ tivrām cakratus tau tapo-dhanau | tattrāpy adhika-santapto Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | dṛṣṭvā tejo Vaśiṣṭhasya chintām atī jagāma ha | tasya buddhir iyaṁ hy āsīd dharma-nityasya Bhārata | iyaṁ Sarasvatī tūrṇam mat-samīpāṁ tapo-dhanam | ānayaṣyati regena Vaśiṣṭhāṁ japatāṁ varam | ihāgataṁ devja-śreṣṭhāṁ hanishyāmi na saṁśayaḥ | 2370. Ecaṁ niśchitya bhagavān Viśvāmitro mahāmuniḥ | sasmāra saritāṁ śreṣṭhāṁ krodha-saṁrakta-lochanāḥ | sādhyātū muninā tena ryākulatvāṁ jagāma ha | jajne chainam mahāvīryyam mahākopaṁ cha bhāvinī | tataḥ enaṁ vepamūnā vivarnā prānjaliḥ tadā | upastathe muni-varaṁ Viśvāmitraṁ Sarasvatī | hata-vīrā yathā nārī sād 'bhavad dūḥkhitā bhṛīṣam | brūhi kiṁ karavāṇīti provācha muni-sattamaḥ | tām uvācha muniḥ krudhō "Vaśiṣṭhāṁ śiḡhram ānaya | yāvad enaṁ nihanmy adya" tach chhruvā vyathitā nadī | 2375. Prānjalin tu tataḥ kṛtvā puṇḍarīka-nibheksaṇā |*
 there was no reason for his displeasure, as the custom was one which had prevailed from time immemorial (verse 4726. *S'vetaketoh kila purā samaksham mātaram pituḥ | jagrūha brāhmaṇaḥ pūṇau "gachhāva" iti chābravūt | rishis-puttras tatoḥ kopāṁ chakrūrāmarsha-rhoditaḥ | mātaram tūṁ tathā dṛṣṭvā nṛyaṇānūm balāt iva | krudhām taṁ tu pituḥ dṛṣṭvā S'vetaketum uvācha ha | "mā tāta kopāṁ kūrṣhīḥ teva eṣa dharmāḥ saṁtānaḥ | "*). But S'vetaketu could not tolerate the practice, and introduced the existing rule (verse 4730. *Rishi-putro 'tha tām dharmāṁ S'vetaketur na chakṣhame | chakūra chaiva maryādām imāṁ strī-puṁsayoḥ bhuvī |*). A wife and a husband indulging in promiscuous intercourse were therefore thenceforward guilty of sin. But a wife, when appointed by her husband to raise up seed to him (by having intercourse with another man), is in like manner guilty if she refuse (4734. *Patyā niyuktā yā chava patnī puttrārtham eva cha | na karishyati tasyās cha bhavishyati tad eva hi | iti tena purā bhīru maryādā sthāpita balāt |*). Pāṇḍu, the speaker, then proceeds to give an instance of the latter procedure in the case of Madayanti, the wife of Saudāsa, who, by her husband's command, visited Vaśiṣṭha for the purpose in question (4736. *Saudāsa cha rambhoru niyuktā puttra-janmani | Madayanti jagāmarshīm Vaśiṣṭham iti naḥ śrutam |*). Compare what is said above, p. 224, of Angiras, and in pp. 232 and 233 of Dīrgatamas or Dīrghatapās; and see p. 433, below.

prākampata bhṛīṣam bhātā vāyunerūhatā latā | . . . 2377. *Sa tasya vachanaṁ śrūtā jñātā pāpa-chikīrṣhitam* | *Vaśiṣṭhasya prabhāvaṁ cha jānanty apratimam bhuvi* | *sā 'dhigamya Vaśiṣṭhaṁ cha imam artham achodayat* | *yad uktā saritām śreṣṭhā Viśvāmitrena dhimatā* | *ubhayoḥ śūpayor bhītā vepamānā punaḥ punaḥ* | . . . 2380. *Tāṁ kṛiṣāṁ cha vivarṇāṁ cha dṛiṣṭvā chintā-samanvitām* | *uvācha rājan dharmātmā Vaśiṣṭho dvipadām varaḥ* | *Vaśiṣṭhaḥ uvācha* | “*pāhy ātmānaṁ sarich-chhresṭhe vaha mām śighra-gāmini* | *Viśvāmitraḥ śaped hi tvām mā kṛithās tvaṁ vichāraṇam*” | *tasya tad vachanaṁ śrūtā kṛipā-śilasya sā sarit* | *chintayā-māsa Kauravya kiṁ kṛitvā sukrītam bhavet* | *tasyās chintā samutpannā* “*Vaśiṣṭho mayy atīva hi* | *kṛitavān hi dayām nityam tasya kāryyaṁ hitam mayā*” | *atha kule evake rājan japantam rishi-sattamam* | *juhvānaṁ Kauśikam prekshya sarasvaty abhyachintayat* | 2385. “*Idam antaram*” | *ity eva tataḥ sā saritām varā* | *kūlāpahāram akarot svena vegena sā sarit* | *tena kūlāpahāreṇa Maitravarunir auhyata* | *ūhyamānaḥ sa tushṭāva tadā rājan Sarasvatīm* | *Pitāmahasya sarasaḥ pravṛittā 'si Sarasvati* | *vyūp-taṁ chedaṁ jagat sarvaṁ taraivambhobhir uttamaḥ* | *tvam evākūṣā-gā devi megheśvāterjase payaḥ* | *sarvās chāpas tvam eveti tvatto vayam adhi-mahi* | *pushtir dyutis tathā kṛittih siddhir buddhir umā tathā* | *tvam eva vānī svāhā tvaṁ tarūyattam idaṁ jagat* | 2390. *Tvam eva sarva-bhūteshu vasasiha chaturvidhā* | 2392. *Tam ānītaṁ Sarasvatyā dṛiṣṭvā kopa-samanvitāḥ* | *athānveshat praharaṇaṁ Vaśiṣṭhānta-karaṁ tadā* | *taṁ tu kruddham abhiprekshya brahma-badhya-bhayād nadī* | *apovāha Vaśiṣṭhaṁ tu prāchīn diśam atandritā* | *ubhayoḥ kureatī vākyaṁ vanchayitvā cha Gādhiyam tato 'pavāhitaṁ dṛiṣṭvā Vaśiṣṭham rishi-sattamam* | 2395. *Abravīd duḥkha-sankruddho Viśvāmitro hy amarsha-ṇaḥ* | “*yasmād mām tvaṁ sarich-chhresṭhe vanchayitvā punargatā* | *soṇitaṁ vaha kalyāṇi rakṣo-gra-maṇi-sammatam*” | *tataḥ Sarasvatī śaptā Viśvāmitrena dhimatā* | *avahach chhoṇitonmiśraṁ toyaṁ saṁvat-sāraṁ tadā* | 2401. *Athājagmus tato rājan rākshasāḥ tatra Bhārata* | *tatra te soṇitaṁ sarve pivantaḥ sukhām āsate* | 2402. *Nṛityantaś cha hasantaś cha yathā svarga-jitas tathā* | 2407. *tān dṛiṣṭvā rākshasān rājan munayaḥ saṁśita-vratāḥ* | *paritrāṇe Sarasvatyāḥ paraṁ yatnam prachakrīre* |

“2360. There existed a great enmity, arising from rivalry in their austerities, between Viśvāmitra and the Brāhman rishi Vaśiṣṭha. Vaśiṣṭha had an extensive hermitage in Sthānuputrītha, to the east of

which was Viśvāmītra's 2366. These two great ascetics were every day exhibiting intense emulation in regard to their respective austerities. But Viśvāmītra, beholding the might of Vaśishṭha, was the most chagrined; and fell into deep thought. The idea of this sage, constant in duty (!), was the following: 'This river Sarasvatī will speedily bring to me on her current the austere Vaśishṭha, the most eminent of all mutterers of prayers. When that most excellent Brāhman has come, I shall most assuredly kill him.' 2370. Having thus determined, the divine sage Viśvāmītra, his eyes reddened by anger, called to mind the chief of rivers. She being thus the subject of his thoughts, became very anxious, as she knew him to be very powerful and very irascible. Then trembling, pallid, and with joined hands, the Sarasvatī stood before the chief of munis. Like a woman whose husband has been slain, she was greatly distressed; and said to him, 'What shall I do?' The incensed muni replied, 'Bring Vaśishṭha hither speedily, that I may slay him.' 2375. The lotus-eyed goddess, joining her hands, trembled in great fear, like a creeping plant agitated by the wind." Viśvāmītra, however, although he saw her condition, repeated his command. 2377. "The Sarasvatī, who knew how sinful was his design, and that the might of Vaśishṭha was unequalled, went trembling, and in great dread of being cursed by both the sages, to Vaśishṭha, and told him what his rival had said. 2380. Vaśishṭha seeing her emaciated, pale, and anxious, spoke thus: 'Deliver thyself, o chief of rivers; carry me' unhesitatingly to Viśvāmītra, lest he curse thee.' Hearing these words of the merciful sage, the Sarasvatī considered how she could act most wisely. She reflected, 'Vaśishṭha has always shown me great kindness; I must seek his welfare.' Then observing the Kauśika sage [so in the text, but does not the sense require Vaśishṭha?] praying and sacrificing on her brink, she regarded (2385) that as a good opportunity, and swept away the bank by the force of her current. In this way the son of Mitra and Varuṇa (Vaśishṭha)²¹³ was carried down; and while he was being borne along, he thus celebrated the river: 'Thou, o Sarasvatī, issuest from the lake of Brahṁā, and pervadest the whole world with thy excellent streams. Residing in the sky, thou dischargest water into the clouds. Thou alone art all waters. By thee we study.' [Here the river Sarasvatī is identified with Saras-

²¹³ See above, pp. 316 and 320 L.

vati the goddess of speech.]²¹⁴ 'Thou art nourishment, radiance, fame, perfection, intellect, light. Thou art speech; thou art Svāhā; this world is subject to thee. 2390. Thou, in fourfold form, dwellest in all creatures.' . . . 2392. Beholding Vasiṣṭha brought near by the Sarasvatī, Viśvāmitra searched for a weapon with which to make an end of him. Perceiving his anger, and dreading lest Brahmanicide should ensue, the river promptly carried away Vasiṣṭha in an easterly direction; thus fulfilling the commands of both sages, but eluding Viśvāmitra. Seeing Vasiṣṭha so carried away, (2395) Viśvāmitra, impatient, and enraged by vexation, said to her: 'Since thou, o chief of rivers, hast eluded me, and hast receded, roll in waves of blood acceptable to the chief of demons,' [which are fabled to gloat on blood]. "The Sarasvatī, being thus cursed, flowed for a year in a stream mingled with blood. . . . 2401. Rākshasas came to the place of pilgrimage, where Vasiṣṭha had been swept away, and revelled in drinking to satiety the bloody stream in security, dancing and laughing, as if they had conquered heaven." Some rishis who arrived at the spot some time after were horrified to see the blood-stained water, and the Rākshasas quaffing it, and (2407) "made the most strenuous efforts to rescue the Sarasvatī." After learning from her the cause of the pollution of her waters, they propitiated Mahādeva by the most various austerities, and thus obtained the restoration of the river to her pristine purity (2413 ff.).

We have another reference to the connection of the families of Sudās and Vasiṣṭha in the legend of Paraśurāma,²¹⁵ the destroyer of the Kshatriyas, in the 49th section of the Śāntiparvan of the Mahābhārata. Sarvakarman, a descendant of Sudās, is there mentioned as one of those

²¹⁴ See the remarks on Sarasvatī in my "Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic Theogony and Mythology No. II.," in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866 pp. 18 ff.

²¹⁵ Paraśurāma was the son of Jamadagni, regarding whose birth, as well as that of Viśvāmitra and the incarnation of Indra in the person of his father Gādhi, the same legend as has been already given above, p. 349 ff, is repeated at the commencement of the story referred to in the text. In discoursing with his wife Satyawatī about the exchange of her own and her mother's messes, Richika tells her, verse 1741: *Brahmahūtām hi sakalam pitus tava kulam bhavet* | "All the family of thy father (Gādhi) shall be Brahmanical;" and Vāsudeva, the narrator of the legend, says, verse 1745: *Viśvāmitram cha dīyādān Gādhiḥ Kuśikanandanah | yam priya brahmasammitām viśvair brahmaguṇair yutam* | "And Gādhi begot a son, Viśvāmitra, whom he obtained equal to a Brāhman, and possessed of all Brahmanical qualities."

Kshatriyas who had been preserved from the general massacre by Parāśara, grandson of Vaśishṭha: verse 1792. *Tathā 'nukampamānena yajvanā 'mita-tejasū | Parāśareṇa dāyādah Saudāsasyābhirakshitah | sarva-karmāni kurute śūdra-vat tasya vai dvijaḥ | Sarvakarmety abhikhyātah sa mām rakshatu pāthivah* | “Sarvakarman, the son of Saudāsa, was preserved by the tender-hearted priest Parāśara, who performed, though a Brāhman, all menial offices for him, like a Sūdra; whence the prince's name;—may this king protect me (the earth).” The same book of the Mahābhārata, when recording a number of good deeds done to Brāhmans, has also the following allusion to Mitrasaha and Vaśishṭha: verse 8604. *Rājā Mitrasahaś chāpi Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | Damayantīm priyām dattvā tayā saha divaṁ gataḥ* | “King Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear Damayantī on Vaśishṭha, ascended to heaven along with her.”²¹⁰

The same passage has two further allusions to Vaśishṭha, which, though unconnected with our present subject, may be introduced here. In verse 8591 it is said: *Rantidevaś cha Sankṛityo Vaśishṭhāya mahātmane | apah pradāya śitoshnāḥ nāka-prishṭhe mahiyate* | “Rantideva, son of Sankṛiti, who gave Vaśishṭha tepid water, is exalted to the heavenly regions.” (See the Bhāg. Pur. ix. 21, 2-18, where the various acts of self-sacrifice practised by this prince are celebrated.) It is said of Vaśishṭha in verse 8601: *Avarshati cha Parjanya sarva-bhūtāni bhūta-krit | Vaśishṭho jivayāmāsa prajāpatir ivāparaḥ* | “When Parjanya failed to send rain, the creative Vaśishṭha, like Brahmā, gave life to all beings.”

Vaśishṭha, in short, is continually reappearing in the Mahābhārata. I will here adduce but one other passage. In the Śāntiparvan, verses 10, 118 ff., it is said: *Tasya Vṛittrūdditasyātha mohaḥ āsich chhatakratoḥ | rathantareṇa tam tatra Vaśishṭhaḥ samabodhayat | Vaśishṭhaḥ uvācha | deva-sreshṭho 'si devendra daityāsura-nibarhaṇa | trailokyā-bala-*

²¹⁰ This appears to refer to the story told above, p. 418 ff., of Kalmāshapāda (who was the same as Mitrasaha), allowing Vaśishṭha to be the agent in propagating the royal race; for both there (v. 6910) and in the Vishṇu Pur. (Wilson, vol. iii., pp. 308 and 310), the name of the queen is said to have been Madayantī, which is probably the right reading here also, the first two letters only having been transposed. If so, however, it is to be observed that a quite different turn is given to the story here, where it is represented as a meritorious act on the king's part, and as a favour to Vaśishṭha, that the queen was given up to him; whilst, according to the other account, the king's sole object in what he did was to get progeny.

saṁyuktaḥ kasmāch chhakra nishīdasi | esha Brahmā cha Vishṇuḥ cha S'ivas chaiva jagat-patiḥ | Somaś cha bhagavān devaḥ sarve cha paramar-shayaḥ | mā kārshīḥ kasmalañ Śakra kaśchid evetaro yathā | āryyāñ yuddhe matiñ kṛtvā jahi śatrūn surādhipa | "By reciting the Rathantāra, Vaśishṭha encouraged Indra, when he had become bewildered and distressed in his conflict with Vritra, saying to him, 'Thou art the chief of the gods, o slayer of the Daityas and Asuras, possessing all the strength of the three worlds: wherefore, Indra, dost thou despond? There are here present Brahmā, Vishṇu, S'iva, the divine Soma, and all the chief rishis. Faint not, o Indra, like an ordinary being. Assume a heroic spirit for the fight, and slay thine enemies, etc.'" Strength was thus infused into Indra.

In a later work, the Rāja Taranginī, Book IV. verses 619-655 (pp. 188 ff. and note, pp. 521 and 522, of Troyer's edition, vol. i. and vol. ii. 189, 469, note), a curious echo of these old legends is found still reverberating. A story is there told of a king Jayāpīḍa who oppressed his people, and persecuted the Brāhmins, and was eventually destroyed by them in a miraculous manner. He is compared to Saudāsa in verse 625: *Sa Saudāsaḥ ivāneka-loka-prāṇāpahārakṛt | astutya-kṛitya-sauhityaṁ svapne 'pi na samāyayau |* "Like Saudāsa, depriving many persons of their lives, he was not satiated with wicked deeds even in his dreams." One of the Brāhmins stood up on behalf of the rest to remonstrate: *Āha sma "Viśvāmitro vā Vaśishṭho vā taponidhiḥ | tvam Agastyo 'thavā kiṁ stha" iti darpeṇa taṁ nṛpaḥ | . . . bhavān yatra Harihāchandraś Triśankur Nahuśo 'pi vā | Viśvāmitra-mukhebhyo 'hañ tattraiko bhavituṁ kshamaḥ | vihasyovācha taṁ rājā "Viśvāmitrādī-kopataḥ | Harihāchandrāyo nashṭās tvayi kruddhe tu kiṁ bhavet" | pūṇinā tādāyann ūrvīm tataḥ kruddho 'bhyadhād dvijaḥ | "mayi kruddhe kshanād eva brahma-dāṇḍaḥ paled na kim" | tach chkrutvā vihasaṁ rājā kopād brāhmaṇam abravīt | "patatu brahma-dāṇḍo 'sau kim adyāpi vilambate" | nanv ayam patito jālmety atha vipreṇa bhāṣhite | rājnaḥ kanaka-dāṇḍo 'nge vitāna-skhalito 'patat |* "The king haughtily asked him: 'Art thou Viśvāmitra, or Vaśishṭha, so rich in devotion? or Agastya? or what art thou?' . . . The Brāhman answered, swelling with indignation: 'Just as thou art a Hariśchandra, a Triśanku, or a Nahusha, so too have I power to be a Viśvāmitra, or one of those other rishis.' The king answered with a smile of contempt: 'Hariśchandra

and the rest perished by the wrath of Viśvāmitra and the other sages: but what will come of thy wrath?' The Brāhman angrily replied, smiting the ground with his hand, 'When I am incensed, shall not the Brahmanical bolt instantly descend?' The king retorted with an angry laugh: 'Let it descend; why does it not come down at once?' 'Has it not fallen, tyrant?' said the Brāhman; and he had no sooner spoken, than a golden beam fell from the canopy and smote the king," so that he became tortured by worms, and shortly after died; and went, as the story concludes, to hell.

Professor Lassen, who quotes the stories regarding Vasishṭha and Viśvāmitra (*Ind. Alt.* 2nd ed. i. 718 f.), makes the following remarks on their import:

"The legend of the struggle between Vaśishṭha and Viśvāmitra embraces two distinct points: one is the contest between the priests and warriors for the highest rank; the other is the temporary alienation of the Ikshvākus from their family priests. Vaśishṭha is represented as the exemplar of such a priest; and the story of Kalmāshapāda is related for the express purpose of showing by an example that the Ikshvākus, after they had retained him, were victorious, and fulfilled perfectly the duties of sacrifice (see above, p. 390): in his capacity of priest he continues to live on, and is the representative of his whole race. We may conclude from the legend that his descendants had acquired the position of family priests to the Ikshvākus, though neither he himself nor his son Saktri belonged to their number. Triśanku is the first prince who forsook them, and had recourse to Viśvāmitra. His successor Amba-rīsha received support from that personage, as well as from Richika, one of the Bhṛigus;—a family whose connection with the Kuśikas appears also in the story of Paraśurāma. The hostility between the Ikshvākus and the family of Vaśishṭha continued down to Kalmāshapāda. Viśvāmitra is represented as having intentionally fostered the alienation; while Vaśishṭha is described as forbearing (though he had the power) to annihilate his rival.

"The conflict between the two rivals with its motives and machinery is described in the forms peculiar to the fully developed epos. To this style of poetry is to be referred the wonder-working cow, which supplies all objects of desire. There is no ground for believing in any actual war with weapons between the contending parties, or in

any participation of degraded Kshattriyas, or aboriginal tribes, in the contest; for all these things are mere poetical creations. Besides, the proper victory of Vasishṭha was not gained by arms, but by his rod. The legend represents the superiority of the Brāhmanas as complete, since Viśvāmitra is forced to acknowledge the insufficiency of a warrior's power; and acquires his position as a Brāhman by purely Brahmanical methods.

"From Viśvāmitra are derived many of the sacerdotal families, which bear the common name of Kauśika, and to which many rishis famous in tradition belong. As there were also kings in this family, we have here an example of the fact that one of the old Vedic races became divided, and in later times belonged to both of the two higher castes. It appears impossible that any of the aboriginal tribes should have been among the descendants of Viśvāmitra's sons, as the legend represents; and the meaning of this account may therefore be that some of his sons and their descendants accepted the position of priests among these tribes, and are in consequence described as accursed."²¹⁷

SECT. XIV.—*Story from the Satapatha Brāhmaṇa about king Janaka becoming a Brāhman.*

The Satapatha Brāhmaṇa has the following account of a discussion between Janaka, king of Videha, and some Brāhmanas:²¹⁸

xi. 6, 2, 1. *Janako ha vai Vaidēho brāhmanair dhāvayadbhir samājagāma Svetaaketunā Ārunyena Somaśushmeṇa Sūtyayajñinā Yājñavalkyena | tān ha uvācha "katham katham agnihotram juhutha" iti | 2. Sa ha uvācha Svetaaketur Āruneyo "gharmāv eva sanrād aham ajasrau yaśasā viśyandamanāv anyo'nyasmin juhomi" iti | "katham tad" iti | ādityo vai gharmas tañ sūyam agnau juhomi agnir vai gharmas tam pratar āditye juhomi" iti | "kiñ sa bhavati yaḥ eva juhoti" | "ajasrauḥ eva śriyā yaśasā bhavaty etayoś cha devatayoḥ sūyujyam salokatām jayati" iti | 3. Atha ha uvācha Somaśushmah Sūtyayajñiḥ "tejaḥ eva sanrād aham tejasi juhomi" iti | "katham tad" iti | "Ādityo vai tejas tañ sūyam agnau juhomi | agnir vai tejas tam pratar āditye juhomi"*

²¹⁷ See also Prof. Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.*, pp. 80 f., 383 f., 408, 413 ff., 485 f.

²¹⁸ This passage is referred to and translated by Prof. Müller, *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 421 ff.

iti | "kiṃ sa bhavati yaḥ evaṃ juhōti" iti | "tejasvī yaśasvy annādo bhavaty etayoś chaiva devatayoḥ sāyujyaṃ salokatāṃ jayati" iti | 4. Atha ha uvācha Yājñavalkyaḥ "yad aham agnim uddharāmy agnihotram eva tad udyachhāmi | ādityaṃ vai astaṃ yantam sarve devāḥ anuyanti | te me etam agnim uddhṛtaṃ dṛishṭvā upāvarttante atha aham pātrāṇi nir-
 nījya upavāpya āgnihotrīm dohayitrē paśyan paśyatas tarpayāmi" iti |
 traṃ nedishṭhaṃ yājñavalkya agnihotrasya amīmāṃsisishṭhāḥ | dhenu-
 śataṃ dadūmi" iti ha uvācha "na tv eva enayos tvam utkrāntiṃ na
 gatim na pratishṭhāṃ na triptim na punarāvṛtitiṃ na lokāṃ praty-
 ūthāyinaṃ" | ity uktvā ratham āsthāya pradhārayāṃ chakūra | 5. Te ha ūkur "ali vai no 'yaṃ rājanyabandhur avādid hanta enam
 brahmodyam āhṛayāmaha" iti | sa ha uvācha Yājñavalkyo "brāh-
 maṇūḥ vai vayaṃ smo rājanyabandhur asau yady amuṃ rayaṃ jayema
 kam ajaishṇva iti brūyāma atha yady asāv asmān jayed brāhmanāṃ
 rājanyabandhur ajaishṇid iti no brūyuh | mā idam ādrīdhvam" iti |
 tad ha asya jajñuh | atha ha Yājñavalkyo ratham āsthāya pradhā-
 rayāṃchakūra taṃ ha anvājayāma | sa ha uvācha "agnihotraṃ Yājña-
 valkya veditum" iti | "agnihotraṃ samrīḍ" iti | 6. "Te vai ete āhuti
 hute utkrāmatas te antariksham āviśatas te antariksham eva āhavanīyaṃ
 kurvāte vāyuṃ samidham marīchir eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te antarikshaṃ
 tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ | 7. Te divam āviśatas te divam eva āha-
 vanīyaṃ kurvāte ādityaṃ samidham chandramasam eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te
 divaṃ tarpayatas te tataḥ āvarttete | 8. Te imām āviśatas te imām eva
 āhavanīyaṃ kurvāte agniṃ samidham oshadhīr eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te
 imām tarpayatas te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ | 9. Te puruṣam āviśatas tasya
 mukham eva āhavanīyaṃ kurvāte jihvāṃ samidham annam eva śukrāṃ
 āhutiṃ te puruṣaṃ tarpayataḥ | sa yaḥ evaṃ vidvān āsnāty agnihotram
 eva asya hutam bhavati | te tataḥ utkrāmataḥ | 10. Te strīyaṃ āviśatas
 tasyāḥ upastham eva āhavanīyaṃ kurvāte dhūrakāṃ samidham (dhūrakā
 ha vai nāma eṣhā | etayā ha vai Prajāpatiḥ prajāḥ dhārāyāṃchakūra)
 retāḥ eva śukrāṃ āhutiṃ te strīyaṃ tarpayataḥ | sa yaḥ evaṃ vidvān
 mithunam upaity agnihotram eva asya hutam bhavati yas tataḥ putro
 jāyate sa lokāḥ pratyutthāy | etad agnihotraṃ Yājñavalkya na ataḥ
 param asti" iti ha uvācha | tasmai Yājñavalkyo varam dadau | sa ha
 uvācha "kāmāpraśnaḥ eva me trayi Yājñavalkya asad" iti | tato brahmā
 Janakaḥ āsa |

"Janaka of Vidcha met with some travelling Brāhmanas, Svetaketu

Aruneya, Somaśushma Sātyayajni, and Yājñavalkya, and said to them, 'How do ye respectively offer the agnihotra oblation?' 2. Svetaketu replied, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw the one of the two eternal heats which pervade the world with their splendour into the other.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. (S. replied), 'Āditya (the sun) is one heat; in the evening I throw him into Agni (Fire). Agni is the other heat; in the morning I throw him into Āditya.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He acquires' (replied S.) 'perpetual prosperity and renown; conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 3. Then Somaśushma answered, 'I, o monarch, in sacrificing, throw light into light.' 'How is that done,' asked the king. 'The Sun' (answered S.) 'is light; in the evening I throw him into Fire: and Fire is light; in the morning I throw him into the Sun.' 'What' (enquired the king) 'does he become who thus sacrifices?' 'He becomes' (rejoined S.) 'luminous, and renowned, an eater of food, and conquers for himself an union with these two deities, and dwells in the same region as they.' 4. Then Yājñavalkya said, 'When I take up the fire I lift the agnihotra. All the gods follow the Sun when he sets; and when they see me take up the Fire, they come back to me. Then, after washing and putting down the vessels, and having the Agnihotra Cow milked, beholding them as they behold me, I satisfy them (with sacrificial food).' The king answered, 'Thou hast approached very close to a solution of the Agnihotra, o Yājñavalkya; I give thee a hundred milch-cows: but thou hast not discovered the ascent of these two (oblations), nor the course, nor the resting-place, nor the satisfaction, nor the return, nor the world where they reappear(?)'. Having so spoken, Janaka mounted his car and drove away. 5. The Brāhmins then said amongst themselves, 'This Rājanya has surpassed us in speaking; come, let us invite him to a theological discussion.' Yājñavalkya, however, interposed, 'We are Brāhmins, and he a Rājanya; if we overcome him, we shall ask ourselves, whom have we overcome? but if he overcome us, men will say to us, a Rājanya has overcome Brāhmins. Do not follow this course.' They assented to his advice. Then Yājñavalkya mounted his car, and drove after the king; and came up to him. Janaka asked, 'is it to learn the agnihotra (that thou hast come), Yājñavalkya?' 'The agnihotra, o

monarch,' said Y. 6. The king rejoined, 'These two oblations, when offered, ascend; they enter the air, they make the air their āhavanīya fire, the wind their fuel, the rays their bright oblation, they satisfy the air, and thence ascend. 7. They enter the sky, they make the sky their āhavanīya fire, the sun their fuel, the moon their bright oblation; they satisfy the sky, they return thence. 8. They enter this earth, they make this earth their āhavanīya fire, Agni their fuel, the plants their bright oblation; they satisfy the earth, they ascend thence. They enter man, they make his mouth their āhavanīya fire, his tongue their fuel, food their bright oblation; they satisfy man. (He who, thus knowing, eats, truly offers the agnihotra). 9. They ascend from him, they enter into woman [the details which follow are better left untranslated], they satisfy her. The man who, thus knowing, approaches his wife, truly offers the agnihotra. The son who is then born is the world of re-appearance. This is the agnihotra, o Yājñavalkya; there is nothing beyond this.' Y. offered the king the choice of a boon. He replied, 'Let me enquire of thee whatever I desire, o Yājñavalkya.' Henceforward Janaka was a Brāhmān.²¹⁹

By Brāhmān in the last sentence we have, I presume, to understand a Brāhman. Even if it were taken to dignify a priest of the kind called Brāhmān, the conclusion would be the same; as at the time when the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa was written, none but Brāhmans could officiate as priests.²²⁰

Janaka's name occurs frequently in the Mahābhārata. In the Vana-parvan of that poem (8089) he is called a rājārshi. In the Śānti-parvan, verse 6640, it is said: *Atrāpy udāharantīmam itihāsam purāṭanam | gītān Videha-rājena Janakena praśāmyatū | "anantañ vata me vittañ yasya me nāsti kinchana | Mithilāyām pradīptāyām na me dahyati kinchana"* | "They here relate an ancient story,—the words recited by Janaka the tranquil-minded king of Videha: .

'Though worldly pelf I own no more,
Of wealth I have a boundless store:
While Mithilā the flames devour,
My goods can all defy their power.' "

²¹⁹ The Commentator explains *brahmā* by *brahmishṭhaḥ*, "Most full of divine knowledge."

²²⁰ Prof. Müller remarks in his article on Caste (Chips from a German Workshop, ii. 338): "That king Janaka of Videha possessed superior knowledge is acknowledged by one of the most learned among the Brahmins, by Yājñavalkya himself; and in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, which is believed to have been the work of Yājñavalkya, it is said that king Janaka became a Brahman."

The same sentiment is ascribed to the same royal rishi in verse 7891 : *Api cha bhavati Maithilena gitaṁ nagaram upāhitam agninā 'bhivikshya* | "na khalu mama hi dahyate 'ttra kinchit" *svayam idam āha sma bhūmi-pālaḥ* | "And these words were repeated by the king of Mithilā when he beheld the city enveloped in fire, 'nothing of mine is burnt here ;' —so said the king himself."

Another "ancient story" of Janaka is related in verses 7882-7983 of the same book. It is there stated that this king was constantly engaged in thinking on matters connected with a future life ; and that he had a hundred religious teachers to instruct him on different points of duty (verse 7884). He was, however, visited by the rishi Panchaśikha²²¹ (verses 7886, 7888), a pupil of Āsuri (verse 7890), who so confounded the king's hundred instructors by his reasoning, that they were abandoned by their pupil, who followed this new teacher (7898. *Upetya śatam āchāryān mohayāmāsa hetubhiḥ* | 7899. *Janakas tv abhisamraktaḥ Kāpileyānudarśanāt* | *utsṛjya śatam āchāryān prishṭhato 'nujagāma tam*). Panchaśikha appears also, at verse 11839, as his instructor. At verse 10699 Janaka is again brought forward as receiving religious information from Parāśara ; in verses 11545-11836 as being taught by the rishi Yājñavalkya the principles of the Yoga and Sāṅkhya philosophies ; and in verses 11854-12043 as holding a conversation with a travelling female mendicant (*bhikṣuki*), named Sulabhā, who sought to prove him, and to whom he declares himself to be a pupil of Panchaśikha (here said to belong to the family of Parāśara, verse 11875), and an adept in the systems just mentioned ; and from whom, in answer to some reproaches he had addressed to her regarding her procedure, he learns that she belongs to the Rājanya class, like himself, of the family of the rājarshi Pradhāna, that she had obtained no suitable husband, and wandered about, following an ascetic life, and seeking final emancipation (verses 12033 ff.).

A further story in illustration of Janaka's indifference to worldly objects is told in the Āśvamedhikaparvan, verses 887 ff.

²²¹ See Prof. Wilson's Sāṅkhya-kārikā, p. 190 ; and Dr. Hall's Preface to his edition of the Sāṅkhya-pravachana-bhāṣya, pp. 9 ff.

SECT. XV.—*Other instances in which Brāhmins are said to have been instructed in divine knowledge by Kshatriyas.*

Two other cases in which Brāhmins are recorded to have received instruction from Kshatriyas are thus stated by Professor Müller:²²²

“For a Kshatriya to teach the law was a crime (*sva-dharmātikrama*), and it is only by a most artificial line of argument that the dogmatic philosophers of the Mīmāṃsā school tried to explain this away. The Brāhmins seem to have forgotten that, according to their own Upanishads, Ajātaśatru, the king of Kāśi, possessed more knowledge than Gārgya, the son of Bālaka, who was renowned as a reader of the Veda, and that Gārgya desired to become his pupil, though it was not right, as the king himself remarked, that a Kshatriya should initiate a Brāhman. They must have forgotten that Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, king of the Panchālas, silenced Svetaketu Āruṇeya and his father, and then communicated to them doctrines which Kshatriyas only, but no Brāhmins, had ever known before.” I subjoin two separate versions of each of these stories. The first is that of Ajātaśatru:

Kaushitaki Brāhmaṇa Upanishad, iv. 1. *Atha ha vai Gārgyo Bālākir anūchūnaḥ saṁspashṭaḥ āsa | so 'vasad Uśinareṣhu savasan Matsyeshu Kuru-panchāleṣhu Kāśi-videḥeshv iti | sa ha Ajātaśatruṁ Kāśyam āvrajya uvācha “brahma te bravāni” iti | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “sahasraṁ dadmaḥ” iti “etasyāṁ vāchi | ‘Janako Janakah’ iti vai u janāḥ dhāvanti” iti | . . . 19. Tataḥ u ha Bālākiś tūshṇīm āsa | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “etāvad nu Bālāke” iti | “etāvad” iti ha uvācha Bālākiḥ | tam ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “mṛishā vai khalu mā saṁvādāyishṭhāḥ “brahma te bravāni” iti | yo vai Bālāke eteshāṁ puruṣhāṇāṁ karttā yasya vai tat karma sa vai veditavyaḥ” iti | tataḥ u ha Bālākiḥ samit-pāṇiḥ pratichakrame “upāyāni” iti | taṁ ha uvācha Ajātaśatruḥ “pratiloma-rūpam eva tad manyo yat kshatriyo brāhmaṇam upanayeta ehi vy eva tvā jñapayishyāmi” iti | taṁ ha pāṇāv abhipadya pravavrāja |*

“Now Gārgya Bālāki was renowned as a man well read in the Veda. He dwelt among the Uśīnaras, Matsyas, Kurus, Panchālas, Kāśis, and Videhas, travelling from place to place. He came to

²²² Chips from a German Workshop, vol. ii. p. 339.

Ajātasatru, the Kāśya, and said, 'Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.' Ajātasatru said, 'We bestow on thee a thousand (cows) for this word.' Men run to us crying, 'Janaka, Janaka.' The learned man accordingly addresses Ajātasatru in a series of statements regarding the object of his own worship, but is silenced by the king's display of superior knowledge on every topic.²²³ The story ends thus: 19. "Then the son of Balāka remained silent. Ajātasatru said to him, 'Dost (thou know only) so much, o Bālāki.' 'Only so much,' he answered. The king rejoined, 'Thou hast vainly proposed to me, let me teach thee divine knowledge.' He, son of Balāka, who is the maker of these souls, whose work that is, — he is the object of knowledge.' Then the son of Balāka approached the king with fuel in his hand, and said, 'Let me attend thee (as thy pupil).' The king replied, 'I regard it as an inversion of the proper rule that a Kshatriya should initiate a Brāhman. (But) come, I will instruct thee. Then, having taken him by the hand, he departed."

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 5, 1, 1 (= Brihadāranyaka Upanishad, ii. 1, 1, p. 334 of Cal. edit.). *Driptaḥbālākir ha anūchāno Gārgyaḥ āsa | sa ha uvācha Ajātasatruṃ Kāśyam "brahma te bravāṇi" iti | sa uvācha Ajātasatruḥ "sahasram etasyāṃ vāchi dadmaḥ 'Janako Janakaḥ' iti vai 'anāḥ dhāvanti" iti | . . . 12. Sa ha tūshṇīm āsa Gārgyaḥ | 13. Sa ha uvācha Ajātasatruḥ "etad nu" iti | "etad hi" iti | "na etāvata viditaṃ bhavati" iti | sa ha uvācha Gārgyaḥ "upa tvā ayāni" iti | 14. Sa ha uvācha Ajātasatruḥ "pratilomaṃ vai tad yad brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyam upeyād 'brahma me vakshyati' iti | vy eva tvā jñāpayishyāmi" iti | tam pūṇāv ādāya uttasthau |*

"Driptaḥbālāki Gārgya was well read in the Veda. He said to Ajātasatru, the Kāśya, 'Let me declare to thee divine knowledge.' Ajātasatru replied, 'We give thee a thousand (cows) for this word. Men run to me calling out, "Janaka, Janaka." At the end of their conversation we are told: 12. "Gārgya remained silent. 13. Then Ajātasatru asked him, '(Dost thou know) so much only?' 'Only so much,' he replied. 'But this,' rejoined Ajātasatru, 'does not comprehend the whole of knowledge.' Then said Gārgya, 'Let me come to thee (as thy disciple).' Ajātasatru answered, 'This is an inversion of the proper rule, that a Brāhman should attend a Kshatriya with the view

²²³ See Prof. Cowell's Translation of the Upanishad, pp. 167 ff.

of being instructed in divine knowledge. (But) I will teach thee.' He took him by the hand, and rose."

The second story is that of Pravāhaṇa Jaivali:

Satapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiv. 9, 1, 1 (= Bṛihadāranyaka Upanishad, vi. 2, 1, p. 1030 of Cal. edit.). *S'vetaketur ha vai Aruṇeyah Panchālānām parishadam ājagāma | sa ājagāma Pravāhaṇam Jaivalim parichārayamānam | tam udīksya abhyvāda "kumāra" iti | sa "bhoḥ" iti pratiśuśrāva | "anūśiṣṭo nv asi pitrā" | "om" iti ha uvācha | 2. "Vettha yathā imāḥ prajāḥ prayatyō vipratipadyante" iti | "na" iti ha uvācha | "vettha yāthā imaṁ lokam punar āpadyante" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha yathā 'sau lokah evam bahubhiḥ punaḥ punaḥ prayadbhir na sampūryyate" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | 3. "Vettha yatitṛyām āhutyām hutāyām āpaḥ puruṣa-vācho bhūtvā samut-thāya vadanti" iti | "na" iti ha eva uvācha | "vettha u devayānasya vā pathaḥ pratipadam pitriyānasya vā yat kṛtvā devayānāṁ vā panthānam pratipadyate pitriyānāṁ vā | 4. Api hi naḥ riṣer vacaḥ śrutam (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vāj. S. 19, 47) 'dvo ṣṛīti aśvināram pitṛiṇām ahaṁ devānām uta marttyānām | tubhyām idam viśvam ejaṁ sameti yad antarā pitaram mātaraṁ cha' iti | "na aham ataḥ ekanachana veda" iti ha uvācha | 5. Atha ha enaṁ vasatyā upamantrayānchakre | anādṛitya vasatiṁ kumāraḥ pradadrāva | sa ājagāma pitaram | tam ha uvācha "iti vācā kila no bhavān purā 'nuśiṣṭān avochaḥ"²²⁴ iti | "katham sumedhaḥ" iti | "pancha mā praśnān rājanyabandhur aprākṣhit tato na ekanachana veda" iti ha uvācha | "katame te" iti | "ime" iti ha pratikāny udājahāra | 6. Sa ha uvācha | "tathā nas tvaṁ tāla jānīthāḥ yathā yad ahaṁ kincha veda sarvam ahaṁ tat tubhyam avocham | prehi tu tattra pratītya brahmacharyyaṁ vatsyāva" iti | bhavān eva gachhatv" iti | 7. Sa ājagāma Gautamo yatra Pravāhaṇasya Jaivaler āsa | tasmai āsanam āhāryya²²⁵ udakam āhārayānchakāra | atha ha asmai argham²²⁶ chākāra | 8. Sa ha uvācha "varam bhavate Gautamāya dadmaḥ" iti | sa ha uvācha "pratijnāto me esha varaḥ | yām tu kumārasya ante vācam abhūshathās tām me brūhi" iti | 9. Sa ha uvācha "daiveshu vai Gautama tad vareshu | mānushānām brūhi" iti | 10. Sa ha uvācha "vijñayate ha asti hiraṇyasya apāttaṁ go-āśvānām dāṣṭānām pravarāṇām paridhānānām | mā no bhavān bahor anantasya*

²²⁴ The text of the Bṛihadāranyaka Up. reads *avochat*.

²²⁵ The Bṛih. Ār. reads *āhṛitya*.

²²⁶ The Bṛih. Ār. reads *arghyam*.

aparyantasya abhy avadānyo bhūd" iti | "sa vai Gautama tīrthēna icchkāsai" iti | "upaīmy aham bhavāntam" iti "vāchā ha sma eva pūrve upayanti" | 11. Sa hu upāyana-kīrttū²²⁷ uvācha | "tathā na tvam Gautama mā 'parādhās tara cha pīlāmahūḥ yathā | iyaṁ vidyā itaḥ pūrvam na kasmīnśchana brāhmaṇe uvāsa | tām to ahaṁ tubhyaṁ cakshyāmi | ko hi teā evam bruvāntam arhati pratyākhyātum" iti |

"Svetaketu Ārṇeya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. He came to Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who was receiving service from his attendants. Seeing Svetaketu, the king said, 'o youth.' 'Sire,' he answered. (King) 'Hast thou been instructed by thy father?' (Svetaketu) 'I have.' 2. (K.) 'Dost thou know how these creatures, when departing, proceed in different directions?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how they return to this world?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled with those numerous beings who are thus constantly departing?' (S.) 'No.' 3. (K.) 'Dost thou know after the offering of what oblation the waters, acquiring human voices, rise and speak?' (S.) 'No.' (K.) 'Dost thou know the means of attaining the path which leads to the gods, or that which leads to the Pitris; by what act the one or the other is gained? 4. And we have heard the words of the rishi: (R.V. x. 88, 15 = Vaj. S. 19, 47) "I have heard of two paths for mortals, one to the pitris, another to the gods. By these proceeds every moving thing that exists between the father and the mother (i.e. between Dyaus and Prithivī, heaven and earth)."' 'I know none of all these things,' answered Svetaketu. 5. The king then invited him to stay. The youth, however, did not accept this invitation, but hastened away, and came to his father, to whom he said, 'Thou didst formerly declare me to be instructed.' 'How now (my) intelligent (son)?' asked his father. 'The Rājanya,' replied the son, 'asked me five questions, of which I know not even one.' 'What were the questions?' 'They were these,' and he told him the initial words of each of them. 6. The father then said, 'Be assured, my son, that I told thee all that I myself know. But come, let us proceed thither, and become (his) pupils. 'Do thou thyself go,' rejoined the son. 7. Gautama accordingly arrived (at the abode) of Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who caused a seat to be brought, and water and the madhuparka mess to be

²²⁷ The text of the Bṛih. Ār. Up. reads *kīrttū uvāsa*.

presented: 8. and said, 'We offer thee a boon, Gautama.' Gautama replied, 'Thou hast promised me this boon: explain to me the questions which thou hast proposed to the youth.' 9. The king replied, 'That is one of the divine boons; ask one of those that are human.' 10. Gautama rejoined, 'Thou knowest that I have received gold, cows, horses, female slaves, attendants, raiment; be not illiberal towards us in respect to that which is immense, infinite, boundless.' 'This, o Gautama,' said the king, 'thou rightly desirest.' 'I approach thee (as thy) disciple,' answered Gautama. The men of old used to approach (their teachers) with words (merely). He (accordingly) attended him by merely intimating his intention to do so.²²⁸ 'Do not,' then said the king, 'attach any blame to me, as your ancestors (did not). This knowledge has never heretofore dwelt in any Brāhman; but I shall declare it to thee. For who should refuse thee when thou so speakest?'"

Chhândogya Upanishad, v. 3, 1. *S'etaketur ha Āruneyaḥ Panchālānām samitīm eyāya | tañ ha Pravāhaṇo Juvalir urācha "kunāra anu tvā 'śishat pitā" iti | "anu hi bhagavaḥ" iti |* 2. *"Vettha yad ito 'dhi pra-jāḥ prayanti" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha yathā punar āvart-tante" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha pathor dera-yānasya pitṛi-gyānasya cha vyāvaritane" iti | "na bhagavaḥ" iti |* 3. *"Vettha yathā 'sau loko na sampūryyate" | "na bhagavaḥ" iti | "vettha yathā pan-chamyām ākulāv āpaḥ puruṣa-vachaso bhavanti" iti | "naiva bhagavaḥ" iti |* 4. *"Atha nu kim anuśiṣṭo 'vochalhāḥ | yo hi imāni na vidyāt ka-thaṁ so 'miśiṣṭo bravīta" iti | sa ha āyastāḥ pitur arddham eyāya | tañ ha urācha "ananuśiṣhya vāva kila mā bhagavān abravīd 'anu tvā 'śisham'" iti |* 5. *"Pancha mā rājanyabandhuḥ praśnān aprakṣhīt teshāṁ na ekanchana āsakaṁ vivaktum" iti | sa ha urācha "yathā mā tvaṁ śadū etān avado yathū 'ham eṣhāṁ na ekanchana veda yady aham imān āvedīshyāṁ kathaṁ te na avaśiṣyam" iti |* 6. *Sa ha Gautamo rājño 'rddham eyāya | tasmai ha prāptāya arhāṁ chakāra | sa ha prātāḥ sabhāgaḥ udeyāya | tañ ha urācha "mānushasya bhagavan Gautama vi-tasya varaṁ vrinithūḥ" iti | sa ha urācha "tava eva rājan mānushaṁ vittam | yām eva kumārasya ante vācham abhāshathās tām eva me brūhi" iti |* 7. *Sa ha kricchhri babhūva | tañ ha "chiraṁ vasa" ity ajñāpayān-*

²²⁸ Or, "by merely intimating, not performing, the respectful mode of approach by touching his feet," according to the Commentator.

chakūra | tañ ha wācha “yathā mā tvañ Gautama avado yathā iyañ na prāk tvattaḥ purā brāhmaṇān gachhati tasmād u sarveshu lokeshu kshattrasya eva praśāsanam abhūd” iti | tasmai ha wācha |

“1. Svetaketu Āruṇeya came to the assembly of the Panchālas. Pravāhaṇa Jaivali asked him, ‘Young man, has thy father instructed thee?’ ‘He has, sire,’ replied Svetaketu. 2. ‘Dost thou know,’ asked the king, ‘whither living creatures proceed when they go hence?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ (King) ‘Dost thou know how they return?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ (K.) ‘Dost thou know the divergences of the two paths whereof one leads to the gods, and the other to the pitris?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ 3. (K.) ‘Dost thou know how it is that the other world is not filled?’ (S.) ‘No, sire.’ (K.) ‘Dost thou know how at the fifth oblation the waters acquire human voices?’ (S.) ‘I do not, sire.’ 4. (K.) ‘And hast thou then said “I have been instructed?” for how can he who does not know these things allege that he has been so?’ The young man, mortified, went to his father, and said, ‘Thou didst tell me, I have instructed thee, when thou hadst not done so. 5. That Rājanya proposed to me five questions, of which I could not solve even one.’ The father replied, ‘As thou didst then say to me regarding these five questions, I know not one of them,—(so I ask thee whether) if I had known them, I would not have told them to thee?’ 6. Gautama went to the king, who received him with honour. In the morning, having received his share (of attention), he presented himself before the king, who said to him, ‘Ask, o reverend Gautama, a present of human riches.’ He replied, ‘To thee, o king, belongs wealth of that description. Declare to me the questions which thou proposedst to the youth.’ 7. The king was perplexed and desired him to make a long stay: and said to him, ‘As thou hast declared to me, o Gautama, that this knowledge has not formerly reached the Brāhmans (who lived) before thee, it has therefore been among all peoples a discipline inculcated by the Kshattriya class alone.’ He then declared it to him.

SECT. XVI.—*Story of King Viśvantara and the Syāparṇa Brāhmans.*

Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, vii. 27. *Viśvantaro ha Saushadmanaḥ S'yāparṇān parichakshūṇo viśyāparṇān yajnam ājahre | tad ha anubudhya S'yāparṇās tañ yajnam ājagmuḥ | te ha tad-antarvedy āsūchakrīre | tān ha dṛishṭvā*

uvācha “pāpasya vai imo karmaṇaḥ karttūraḥ āsate apūṭayai vācho vadīturo yach chhyāparṇāḥ imān utthāpayata ime me 'ntarvedim āsi-shata” iti | “tathā” iti tān utthāpayānchakruḥ | te ha utthāpyamānāḥ ruruvire “ye tebhya Bhūtavirebhyaḥ Asitamṛigāḥ Kāśyapānān soma-pītham abhijigyuḥ Pūrikshitasya Janamejayasya vikaśyape yajne tais te tatra vīravantaḥ āsuh | kaḥ svit so 'smāka asti vīro yaḥ imaṁ somapītham abhijeshyati” iti | “ayam aham asmi vo vīraḥ” iti ha uvācha Rāmo Mār-gaveyaḥ | Rāmo ha āsa Mārgaveyo 'nūchānaḥ Syāparṇīyaḥ | teshān ha uttishṭhatām uvācha “api nu rājann itthaṁvidān veder utthāpayanti” iti | “yas tvaṁ kathaṁ vettha brahmabandho” iti | 28. “Yatra Indrān devatāḥ paryavṛjjan Viśvarūpaṁ Tvāshṭram abhyamaṁsta Vrittram astṛita yatin sālāvrikebhyaḥ prādād Arurmaghān avadhīd Bṛihaspateḥ pratyaradhīd” iti | “tatra Indrah somapīthena vyārdhyata | Indrasya anu vyridhīm kshatram somapīthena vyārdhyata | api Indrah somapīthe 'bhavat ʼtvashtur āmushya somam | tad vyridham eva adyāpi kshatram somapīthena | sa yas tam bhakshaṁ vidyād yaḥ kshatrasya somapīthena vyridhasya yena kshatram samṛidhyate kathaṁ tam veder utthāpayanti” iti | “vettha brāhmaṇa tvaṁ tam bhakshaṁ” | “veda hi” iti | “taṁ vai no brāhmaṇa brūhi” iti | “tasmai vai te rājann” iti ha uvācha | 29. Trayānām bhakshaṇām ekam āharishyanti somaṁ vā dadhi vā apo vā | sa yadi somam brāhmaṇānām sa bhakshaḥ | brāhmaṇāms tena bhakshena jinviśhyasi | brāhmaṇa-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate ādāyī āpāyī āva-sāyī yathā-kāma-prayūpyaḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati brāhmaṇa-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājyate īśvaro ha asmād dvitīyo vā tṛitīyo vā brāhmaṇatām abhyupaitoḥ sa brahmabandhavena jījyūshataḥ | atha yadi dadhi vaiśyānām sa bhakshaḥ | vaiśyāns tena bhakshena jinviśhyasi | vaiśya-kalpas te prajāyām ājanishyate 'nyasya bali-kṛid anyasya ādyo yathā-kāma-jyeyaḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati vaiśya-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājyate īśvaro ha asmād dvitīyo vā tṛitīyo vā vaiśyatām abhyupaitoḥ sa vaiśyatayā jījyūshitaḥ | atha yady apāḥ śūdrānām sa bhakshaḥ | śūdrāns tena bhakshena jinviśhyasi | śūdra-kalpas te prajā-yām ājanishyate 'nyasya pṛeshyaḥ kāmottāpyo yathākāma-vadhyāḥ | yadā vai kshattriyāya pāpam bhavati śūdra-kalpo 'sya prajāyām ājyate | īśvaro ha asmād dvitīyo vā tṛitīyo vā śūdratām abhyupaitoḥ | sa śūdra-tayā jījyūshitaḥ | 30. Ele vai te trayo bhakshāḥ rājann” iti ha uvācha “yeshām āśān na iyaṭ kshattriyo yajamānaḥ atha asya esha svo 'bha-kshaḥ” ityādī |

"Viśvantara, the son of Sushadman, setting aside the Syāparṇas, was performing a sacrifice without their aid. Hearing of this the Syāparṇas came to the ceremony, and sat down within the sacrificial enclosure. Observing them, the king said, 'Remove these Syāparṇas, doers of evil deeds, and speakers of impure language,'²²⁹ who have sat down within my sacrificial enclosure.' Saying, 'So be it,' they removed them. When they were being removed, they exclaimed, 'The Kaśyapas found champions in the Asitamṛigas who conquered for them from the Bhūta-viras the soma-draught at the sacrifice which Janamejaya, the son of Parikshit, was performing without their (the Kaśyapas') aid. Who is the champion who will conquer for us this soma-draught?' 'I am your champion,' cried Rāma Mārgaveya. This Rāma was a learned man, belonging to the Syāparṇa race. When the Syāparṇas were moving away, he said, 'Do they, o king, remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who possesses such knowledge [as I]?' 'How dost thou possess it, Brāhman?' asked the king. 28. (Rāma answered) "When the deities rejected Indra, who had killed Tvāshṭra,²³⁰ prostrated Vṛitra, given over the Yatis to the wolves, slain the Arurmaghas, and contradicted Brihaspati, then he (Indra) forfeited the soma-draught. In consequence of his forfeiture, the Kshāttira (Kshattriya) class lost it

²²⁹ Prof. Weber (Ind. St. i., 215) thinks the words "doers of evil deeds" appear to refer to some variety of ceremonial peculiar to the Syāparṇas, and the words "speakers of impure language" to a difference in their dialect; and he is inclined to derive the patronymic of Rāma, Mārgaveya, from the impure caste of Mārgavas mentioned in Manu, x. 34; by which supposition, he thinks, a ground would be discovered for the reproaches which Viśvantara addresses to the Syāparṇa family. In reference to the story of Janamejaya, alluded to in this passage, Weber remarks (Ind. Stud. i. 204): "The same work (the Aitareya Brahmana, vii., 27) makes mention of a dispute which this king had with the sacerdotal family of the Bhūtaviras, a branch of the Kaśyapas; and which was adjusted by the intervention of the Asitamṛigas, who belonged to the same race." A Syāparṇa is alluded to in Ś. P. Br. x., 4, 1, 10 (quoted by Prof. Weber, Ind. St. i., 215): *Etad ha sma vai tad vidvān Syāparṇaḥ Sāyukāyanaḥ ōha "yat vai me idān karna samīpayaṭa mama eva praṇā Salvānām rūṣiṇo 'bhaviṣhyan mama brāhmaṇāḥ mama vaiśyaḥ | yat tu me tīvat karmanāḥ samīpi tena me ubhayathā Salvān praṇā 'tīrekshyate" iti |* "Knowing this Sāyukāyana, the Syāparṇa, said, 'If this my rite had been completed, my offspring would have become the kings of the Salvās, mine their Brāhmins, mine their Vaiśyas. But as (only) so much of the rite has been completed, my offspring shall, in both respects, excel the Salvās.'" See also Ind. St. x. 18.

²³⁰ See Dr. Haug's note, p. 487, where he states why he cannot follow Sāyana in rendering *abhyamañsta* by "killed." Prof. Weber (Ind. St. ix. 326) defends Sāyana's interpretation.

also. (But Indra recovered a share in the soma-draught, having stolen Tvashṭri's soma.) Hence at present also the Kshattriyas are excluded from the soma-draught. Why do they remove from the sacrificial enclosure a man who knows that (other) draught which (properly belongs) to the Kshattriyas who are excluded from the soma-draught, and by which they are rendered prosperous?' 'Dost thou, o Brāhman, know that draught?' asked the king. 'I know it,' answered Rāma. 'Declare it then to us,' rejoined the prince. 'I declare it to thee, o king, said the other. 29. 'Of the three draughts they shall bring one, either soma, or curds, or water. If he (the priest, bring) the soma, that is the draught of the Brāhmans, and with it thou shalt satisfy the Brāhmans. One like a Brāhman shall be born in thy line, a receiver of gifts, a drinker (of soma), a seeker of food,²³¹ a rover at will.' Whenever the offence (of drinking the Brāhman's draught)²³² is chargeable to a Kshattriya, one like a Brāhman is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Brāhman, and likes to live as a Brāhman. Next, if (the priest bring) curds, that is the Vaiśya's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Vaiśyas. One like a Vaiśya shall be born in thy line, one who is tributary to another, who is to be used (*lit.* eaten) by another, and who may be oppressed at will. Whenever the offence (of consuming the Vaiśya's portion) is chargeable to a Kshattriya, one like a Vaiśya is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Vaiśya, and is desirous of living as a Vaiśya. Next, if (the priest bring) water, that is the Sūdra's draught; with it thou shalt satisfy the Sūdras. One like a Sūdra shall be born in thy line, the servant of another, who may be expelled and slain at pleasure. When the offence (of drinking the Sūdra's draught) is chargeable against a Kshattriya, one like a Sūdra is born in his line, who in the second or third generation from him has the power of becoming a Sūdra, and desires to live like a Sūdra. 30. 'These, o king, are the three draughts, which the Kshattriya when sacrificing should not desire. His own proper draught is as follows: Let him squeeze the descending branches

²³¹ Prof. Weber (Ind. Stud. ix. 326) would prefer to translate *ūvasayī* (überall-) wohnend, "dwelling everywhere."

²³² Dr. Haug translates "when there is any fault on the Kshattriya (who, when sacrificing, eats the Brāhmana portion)," etc. See the beginning of par. 30 below.

of the nyagrodha (Indian fig) tree, with the fruits of the udumbara, the aśvattha, and the plaksha trees, and drink these juices. This is his own proper draught.

The continuation may be read in Dr. Haug's translation, pp. 486 ff. After the priest has given the king a deal of further information the result is told in par. 34, as follows:

Tam evam etam bhakṣam provācha Rāmo Mārgaveya Viśvantarāya Saushadmanāya | tasmīn ha uvācha prokṣte "sahasram u ha brāhmaṇā tubhyaṁ dadmaḥ | saśyūparṇaḥ u me yajnaḥ" iti |

"This draught did Rāma Mārgaveya declare to Viśvantara the son of Sushadman. When it had been declared the king said, 'Brāhman, we give thee a thousand (cows): and my sacrifice (shall be performed) with (the aid of the) Śyāparṇas.'"

SECT. XVII.—*Story of Matanga who tried in vain to raise himself to the position of a Brāhman.*

The legend of Matanga, which is narrated in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 1872 ff., is introduced by a question which Yudhisṭhira addresses to Bhīṣma, verse 1867: *Kṣhattriyo yadi vā vaiśyaḥ śūdro vā rājāsattama | brāhmaṇyam prāpnuyād yena tad me vyākhyātum arhasi | tapasā vā sumahalā karmaṇā vā śruteṇa vā | brāhmaṇyaṁ atha ched ichhet tad me brūhi samāsataḥ | Bhīṣmaḥ uvācha |* 1870. *Brāhmaṇyaṁ tāta dushprāpyaṁ varṇaiḥ kṣattrādibhis tribhīḥ | paraṁ hi sarva-bhūtānāṁ sthānam etad Yudhisṭhira | bahvis tu saṁsaran yonīr jayamānaḥ punaḥ punaḥ | paryāye tāta kasmīnśchid brāhmaṇo nāma jāyate |* "Explain to me the means—whether it be intense austere-fervour, or ceremonies, or Vedic learning—whereby a Kṣhattriya, a Vaiśya, or a Śūdra, if he desire it, can attain to the state of a Brāhman. Bhīṣma replies (1870), The state of a Brāhman is hard to be acquired by men of the other three classes, the Kṣhattriya, etc.; for this Brāhmanhood is the highest rank among all living creatures. It is only after passing through numerous wombs, and being born again and again, that such a man, in some revolution of being, becomes a Brāhman." Bhīṣma proceeds to illustrate this principle by the case of Matanga, who was apparently the son of a Brāhman, was distinguished for his good qualities, and was esteemed to be himself of the same class as his

father (verse 1873: *dvijāteḥ kasyachit tāla tulya-varṇaḥ sutas tv abhūt | Matango nāma nūmnā vai sarvairṇ samudito guṇairṇ |*) He was, however, discovered to be of spurious birth in the following manner: He happened to be sent somewhere by his father to perform sacrifice, and was travelling in a car drawn by asses. On his way he repeatedly pierced on its nose with the goad the colt which was conveying him along with its mother. Feeling for the wound thus inflicted on her offspring, the she-ass said: "Be not distressed, my son, it is a Chanḍāla who is on the car. There is nothing dreadful in a Brāhman; he is declared to be kindly, a teacher who instructs all creatures: how then can he smite any one? This man of wicked disposition shows no pity to a tender colt, and thereby indicates his origin; for it is birth which determines the character" (verse 1876. *Uvācha mā śucaḥ puttra chaṇḍālas tv adhitishṭhati | brāhmaṇe dārunaṁ nāsti maitro brāhmaṇa uchyate | āchāryaḥ sarva-bhūtānāṁ śāstrā kim praharishyati | ayaṁ tu pāpa-prakṛitir bāle na kurute dayāṁ | sva-yonim mānayatī eṣa bhāvo bhūvaṁ niyachhati |*). Overhearing this colloquy, Matanga instantly got down from the car and besought the she-ass, whom he honoured with the epithet of "most intelligent," to tell him how she knew him to be a Chanḍāla and how his mother had been corrupted. The she-ass informs him that his mother when intoxicated had received the embraces of a low-born barber, and that he was the offspring of this connection and consequently no Brāhman (verse 1882. *Brāhmaṇyāṁ vṛishalena tvam matāyāṁ nāpitenā ha | jātā tvam asi chaṇḍālo brāhmaṇyāṁ tena te 'naśat |*). On receiving this unwelcome revelation, Matanga returned home, and being questioned by his reputed father about the cause of his speedy reappearance, he told him what he had heard; and expressed his determination to enter on a course of austerities. He does so accordingly with such effect that he alarms the gods, and receives the offer of a boon from Indra. He asks for Brāhmanhood; but Indra tells him that he must perish if he continues to make that request, as the high position he seeks cannot be obtained by one born as a Chanḍāla (verse 1895). Matanga, however, continues his exercises for a hundred years, when Indra repeats his former determination, and supports it by reasons, explaining (1901 ff.) that a Chanḍāla can only become a Sūdra in a thousand births, a Sūdra a Vaiśya after a period thirty times as long, a Vaiśya a Rājanya after a period sixty times the length, a Rā-

janya a Brāhman after a period of sixty times the duration, and so on, a Brāhman only becoming a Kāṇḍapriṣṭha, a Kāṇḍapriṣṭha a Japa, a Japa a Śrotriya, after immense intervals. Indra therefore advises Matanga to choose some other boon. But the devotee is still dissatisfied with the god's decision, and renews his austerities for a thousand years. At the end of that period he receives still the same answer, and the same advice. But though distressed he did not yet despair; but proceeded to balance himself on his great toe; which, although reduced to skin and bone, he succeeded in doing for a hundred years without falling. At length, when he was on the point of tumbling, Indra ran up and supported him; but continued inexorably to refuse his request; and though further importuned, would only consent to give him the power of moving about like a bird, and changing his shape at will, and of being honoured and renowned (verses 1934 ff.).

The assertion here made of the impossibility of a Kshattriya becoming a Brāhman until he has passed through a long series of births is of course in flagrant contradiction with the stories of Viśvāmitra, Vitahavya, and others.

Matanga (or a Matanga) is mentioned in a passage already quoted in p. 411 as a rājārshi who supported Viśvāmitra's family and for whom that sage sacrificed. He is also named in the Sabhā-parvan, verse 340, as sitting in Yama's assembly along with Agastya, Kāla, and Mṛityu, etc., etc.; in the Vana-parvan, 8079, as a great rishi (*maharshi*); and in the Śānti-parvan, 10875, as one of certain sages who had acquired their position by austerities (see above, p. 132). His disciples, he himself, and his forst are mentioned in the Rāmāyaṇa, iii. 73, 23, 29, 30.

SECT. XVIII.—*Legend of the Brāhman Paraśurāma, the exterminator of the Kshattriyas.*

As Paraśurāma belonged to the race of the Bhṛigus, it may be advisable to premise some particulars regarding that family.

In his Lexicon, *s.v.*, Professor Roth tells us that the Bhṛigus were a class of mythical beings, who, according to the Nirukta, xi. 19, belonged to the middle or aerial class of gods ("*mādhyamiko deva-gaṇaḥ*" *iti Nairuktāḥ*). They were the discoverers of fire and brought it to men

(R.V. x. 46, 2, etc.)²³³ He adds, however, that this race has also a connection with history, as one of the chief Brahmanical families bears this name, and allusions are made to this fact even in the hymns of the Rig-veda (vii. 18, 6; viii. 3, 9, 16; viii. 6, 18; viii. 91, 4). Bhṛigu is also, as Prof. Roth observes, the name of a rishi representing a family, who is mentioned in Atharva-veda, v. 19, 1, as suffering injury at the hands of the Sprinjayas (see above, p. 286). As regards his birth, it is said in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, iii. 34, that first the Sun, and then Bhṛigu arose out of the seed which had issued from Prajāpati,²³⁴ that Bhṛigu was adopted by Varuṇa, and was consequently called Vāruṇi, etc. (*Tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam uladīpyata tad asāv ādityo 'bhavat | yad dvitīyam āsīt tad Bhṛigur abharat | tañ Varuṇo nyagṛihṇita | tas-māt sa Bhṛigur Vāruṇiḥ*). He is accordingly called by this name in the S. P. Br. xi. 6, 1, 1, where he is said to have conceived himself to be superior in knowledge to his father Varuṇa (*Bhṛigur ha vai Vāruṇir Varuṇam pitaram vidyayā 'timene*); and also in the Taittirīya Upaniṣad (Bibl. Ind. p. 123: *Bhṛigur vai Vāruṇir Varuṇaṁ pitaram upa-sasūra*).²³⁵ The preceding story of Bhṛigu's birth is developed and modified in the Anuśāsana-parvan of the Mahābhārata, verse 4104 ff.: *Vaśishṭhaḥ uvācha | api chedam purā Rāma śrutam me Brahma-darśanam | Pitāmahasya yad vṛittam Brahmaṇaḥ paramātmānaḥ | devasya mahatas tāta Vāruṇim bibhratas tanum | aiśvaryye vāruṇe Rāma Rudrasyeśasya vai prabhoḥ |* "Vaśishṭha said, 4104: I have also heard, o Rāma (*i.e.* Paraśurāma), of this vision of Brahmā, of that which occurred regarding Pitāmaha, Brahma, the supreme spirit, the great god (*i.e.* Mahādeva), Rudra, Īśa, the lord, assuming the body of Varuṇa, and invested with the dominion of Varuṇa." After this singular description of Mahādeva as identified with Brahmā, Brahma the supreme spirit, and Varuṇa, the speaker goes on to tell us that the munis, the gods headed by Agni, the embodied portions of the sacrifice, and the Vedas, etc., assembled on the occasion referred to, and then proceeds, verse 4112: *Esha Brahmā Sivo Rudro Varuṇo 'gniḥ Prajā-patiḥ | kirttyate bhagavān devaḥ sarva-bhūta-patiḥ śivaḥ | tasya yajnaḥ*

²³³ See my article on "Manu, the progenitor of the Āryyan Indians" in Journ. R. A. S. for 1863, p. 415 f.; and above, pp. 168 and 170.

²³⁴ The commencement of the story, of which this is part of the sequel, is given above, p. 107 f.

²³⁵ See Ind. Stud. ii. 231, and Journ. of the German Or. Soc. ix. 210.

*Paśupates tapaḥ kratava eva cha | dikṣhā dīpta-vratā devī diśaś cha sa-
digiśvarāḥ | deva-patnyāś cha kanyāś cha devānāṃ chaiva mātaraḥ |
ājagmuḥ sahitās tatra tadā Bhṛigu-kuloḍvaha | 4115. Yajnam Paśu-
pateḥ prītūḥ Varuṇasya mahātmanaḥ | Svayambhūvas tu tāḥ dṛishṭvā
retaḥ samapatad bhuvi | tasya śukrasya viśyandūt pāṃśūn sangrihya
bhūmitaḥ | prāsyat Pūshā kurābhyaṃ vai tasmim eva hutāsane | tatas
tasmin sampravṛitte sattre jvalita-pāvake | Brahmano juhvatas tatra
prādurbhūvo babhūva ha | skanna-mūtraṃ cha tach chhukram śruveṇa
parigrihya saḥ | ājya-vaḍ mantrataś chāpi so 'juhod Bhṛigu-nandana |
talas tu janayāmāsa bhūta-grāmaṃ cha vīryavān | . . . 4121. Sukre
hute 'gnau tasmim tu prādurāsaṃ trayāḥ prabho | puruṣhāḥ vapuṣhā
yuktāḥ svaiḥ svaiḥ prasava-jair-guṇaiḥ | "bhṛig" ity eva Bhṛiguḥ pūr-
vam angārebhyo 'ngirā 'bhavat | angāra-saṃśrayāḥ chaivo Kavir ity
aparo 'bhavat | saha jvalābhīr utpanno Bhṛigus tasmād Bhṛiguḥ smṛitaḥ |
. . . 4140. "Varuṇaś cheśvaro devo labhatām kāmam īpsitam" | nisar-
gād Brahmanaś chāpi Varuṇo yūdasāmpatiḥ | jagrāha vai Bhṛigum pūr-
vam apatyāṃ sūrya-varchusam | Īśvaro 'ngirasaṃ chāgner apatyārtham
akalpayat | Pitāmahas tv apatyāṃ vai Kaviṃ jagrāha tattva-vit | tadā
sa Vāruṇaḥ khyāto Bhṛiguḥ prasava-karma-kṛit | Āgneyas tv Angirāḥ
śrīmān Kavir Brāhmo mahāyasaḥ | Bhārgavāṅgirasau loke loka-san-
tāna-lakṣaṇau | ete hi prasavāḥ sarve prajānām patayas trayāḥ |
sarvam santānam cleshām idam ity upadhāraya | Bhṛigos tu puttṛāḥ
saptāsan sarve tulyāḥ Bhṛigor guṇaiḥ | Chyavano Vajraśirśaś cha
Suchir Aurvas tathaiva cha | Sukro Varennyāś cha Vibhuḥ Savanaś
cheti sapta te | Bhārgavāḥ Vāruṇāḥ sarve yeshām vaṃśo bhavān api |
"4112. This adorable and gracious god, lord of all creatures, is known
as Brahmā, Śiva, Rudra, Varuṇa, Agni, Prajāpati. This Paśupati (had)
a sacrifice.²³⁶ Austere-fervour, Oblations, Consecration, (Dikṣhā) that
goddess with brilliant rites, the Points of the compass, their regents,
the wives, daughters and mothers of the gods came all together with
joy (4115) to this sacrifice of Paśupati the great Varuṇa. When Sva-
yambhū (Brahmā) saw these goddesses his seed fell to the ground.
Pūshan in consequence collected the particles of dust which were thus
moistened, and threw them into the fire. When the sacrifice with its
blazing fires had begun, there was seen an apparition of Brahmā offering
an oblation. Collecting with the sacrificial ladle that which had fallen,*

²³⁶ Such seems to be the construction of this line.

he cast it, like butter, with sacred texts, into the fire. And thence the powerful god generated all beings. . . . 4121. When the seed had been cast into the fire, there arose three men endowed with bodies, and with their own respective qualities derived from their generation. Bhṛigu sprang first from *bhṛik* (the blazing of the fire), Angiras from the cinders, and Kavi²³⁷ from a heap of cinders. Bhṛigu was so named because he was produced together with flames." The god, called Mahādeva, Varuṇa, and Pavana, claimed these three men as his own, and the fruit of his sacrifice (verse 4133 f.). Agni and Brahmā also claimed them (4135 f.). The other gods, however, entreated Brahmā to accede to the wishes of Agni and Varuṇa: "4140. 'And let Varuṇa, the lord, the god, also receive the object of his desire.' By the gift of Brahmā, Varuṇa, lord of sea-monsters, first received for his offspring Bhṛigu brilliant as the sun. And Īśvara (Mahādeva) appointed Angiras to be Agni's son. And Pitāmaha, who knows the reality of things took Kavi as his offspring. Then Bhṛigu, the progenitor of creatures, was named the son of Varuṇa, Angiras the son of Agni, and the glorious Kavi the son of Brahmā. The Bhārgava and the Āngirasa are distinguished in the world as the propagators of mankind. For all these three lords of creatures were propagators. Know the whole of this world to be their offspring. Bhṛigu had seven sons, all equal to their father in good qualities, Chyavana, Vajraśrisha, Suchi, Aurva, Śukra, Varcṇya, Vibhu, and Savana. These were all Bhārgavas, and Vāruṇas, to whose race you (Paraśurāma) yourself also belong."

In another passage of the M. Bh. Ādip. 869, it is similarly said: *Bhṛigur maharshir bhagavān Brahmanā vai Svayambhuvā | Varuṇasya kratau jūtaḥ pāvakād iti naḥ śrutam* | "We have heard that the great and venerable rishi Bhṛigu was produced by Brahmā from fire at the sacrifice of Varuṇa."

The Nirukta, iii. 17, has the following etymology of Bhṛigu: *Archishī Bhṛiguḥ sambabhūva | Bhṛigur bhṛijyamāno na dehe* | "Bhṛigu was produced in the flame; though roasted, he was not consumed."

The Taitt. Br. i. 8, 2, 5, has a different account: *Indrasya sushuvānasya tredhā indryaṁ vīryam parōpatat | Bhṛigus tṛitīyam abhavat* |

²³⁷ In the M. Bh. Ādip. v. 2606, Kavi is said to be Bhṛigu's son (*Bhṛigoh puttrah Kavir vidoṇ S'ukrah*). On the other hand he, or another person of the same name, is said in the Anuśasana-p. 4160, to be, along with Kavi, a son of Kavi.

"While Indra was continuing to pour out Soma, his manly vigour fell in three portions. The third became Bhṛigu."

Bhṛigu is declared in the Vishṇu P. (see above, p. 65) to have been one of the nine Brahmās, mental sons of Brahmā. The Bhāg. P. iii. 12, 23, says he sprang from the skin of the creator (*Bhṛigus tvachi*). The M. Bh. Ādip. 2605, on the contrary declares: *Brahmano hṛidayam bhit-tvā nissṛīto bhagavān Bhṛiguḥ* | "The venerable Bhṛigu, having split Brahmā's heart, issued forth" (Weber, Ind. St. ii. 231). So, too, the Vāyu P. i. 9, 100: *Bhṛigus tu hṛidayāj jājne ṛishih Salilajanmanaḥ* | "Bhṛigu was produced from the heart of the Water-born (Brahmā);" and adds, verse 103: *Ity ete mānasāḥ puttrāḥ vijñeyāḥ Brahmanāḥ sūtāḥ* | *Bhṛigu-ādayas tu ye ṛishīḥ navaite brahma-vādīnāḥ* | 104. *Gṛihamedhināḥ purāṇas dharmas taiḥ prāk pravartitāḥ* | "These were the mind-born sons of Brahmā. Bhṛigu, and the others, nine in all, who were created, were declarers of sacred knowledge and ancient householders; by them was duty of old established." Manu mentions Bhṛigu (i. 35, see above, p. 36) as one of his own ten sons. He also speaks of him (i. 59, 60, above, p. 38) as commissioned by himself (Manu) to promulgate his code. In Manu, v. 1. however, the sage is said to have sprung from fire (*idam ūchur mahātmānam anala-prabhuram Bhṛigum*). As, however, he had been previously declared to be one of Manu's ten sons, and is so called also in the third verse of book v. and the second of book vii., where he is styled *Mānava Bhṛiguḥ*, Kullūka thinks it necessary to explain this other alleged descent from fire by saying that that had been the sage's origin in a previous mundane era (*Kalpa*): *Yadyapi prathamādhyāye daśa-prajāpati-madhye "Bhṛiguḥ Nāradaḥ eva cha" iti Bhṛigu-ṛishīḥ api Manutaḥ eva uktā tathāpi kalpa-bhedena agni-prabhavatvam uchyate | tathā cha śrutiḥ "tasya yad retasaḥ prathamam dedīpyate tad asūv ādityo 'bhavat | yad dvitīyam āsīt Bhṛigur" iti ātaḥ eva bhrashātāḥ retasaḥ utpannatvād Bhṛiguḥ* | "Though the creation of Bhṛigu, as one of the ten Prajāpātis, is declared, in the 35th verse of the first book, to have proceeded from Manu, still he is here said to have been produced from fire, from the difference in the manner of his birth in the different Kalpas. And so the Veda says (in the passage quoted above from the Ait. Br.). Hence he is called Bhṛigu, because he sprang from the seed which fell (*bhrashāt*).²³³

²³³ See Prof. Wilson's note, Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. p. 100 ff., in the course of

Professor Roth (Lit. and History of the Veda, p. 135) says: "The Bhrigus are one of the most important Vedic families, to which Jamadagni, Chyavana, Aurva, Apnavāna, and other rishis are assigned. Many conjectures might be formed in connection with the part which these several Bhrigus play in the later legends; but it seems to me unsafe to draw any conclusions till we are in possession of the intermediate links, and especially till we have learnt more precisely from the Vedic hymns themselves the relations of these families to each other. Nevertheless I will remark that Sunahśepha, the adopted son of Viśvāmītra, is, according to the Purāṇas, a Bhrigu; and consequently the Bhrigus appear in intimate connection with the enemy of Vasishṭha; and further, that Sagara, who was reared by the Bhrigu Aurva, is restrained by Vasishṭha in his war of extermination against the Śakas and other barbarous tribes. His enemies, when hard pressed, had resorted to Vasishṭha as an intercessor." (See above, p. 337, and Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. iii. p. 291.)

The story of Paraśurāma and the Kshattriya is briefly mentioned in the second section of the Ādiparvan of the Mahābhārata (verses 272–280), where the events referred to are said to have occurred in the interval between the Tretā and Dvāpara ages (*Tretā-dvāparayorṇ sandhau Rāmaḥ śāstra-bhrītām varāḥ | asakṛt pāthivāṁ kshattraṁ jaghānāmarsa-chuditaḥ | sa sarvāṁ kshattram utsādyā sa-vīryyeṇānala-dyutiḥ* |). The history is more fully told in other parts of the Mahābhārata. In the 178th–180th sections of the Ādiparvan there is a legend in which no mention is made of Paraśurāma, or the slaughter of the Kshattriya; but in which we have the following particulars: Paraśara was son of Śakti, and grandson of Vasishṭha, as we have seen above, p. 417. When he heard of the way in which his father had met his death, he determined to execute a general slaughter of all creatures (v. 6800);²³⁹ but his grandfather restrained him by narrating the history of the

which he says, "The Vāyu has also another account of their (the Prajāpatis) origin, and states them to have sprung from the fires of a sacrifice offered by Brahmā; an allegorical mode of expressing their probable original—considering them to be in some degree real persons—from the Brahmanical ritual, of which they were the first institutors and observers."

²³⁹ Reference is made in the commencement of the Vishṇu Purāṇa to the same circumstance (Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 7 ff.) Paraśara is the narrator of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (ibid. p. 11).

Bhrigus and Kshattriyas, as follows: There was a king named Kṛita-viryya, by whose liberality the Bhrigus, learned in the Vedas, who officiated as his priests, had been greatly enriched with corn and money (verse 6802. *Yājño veda-vidān loko Bhrigūnām pārthivarsha-bhaḥ | sa tān agra-bhujas tāta dhānyena cha dhanena cha | somānte tar-payāmūsa vipulena viśūmpate* !). After he had gone to heaven, his descendants were in want of money, and came to beg for a supply from the Bhrigus, of whose wealth they were aware. Some of the latter hid their money under ground, others bestowed it on Brāhmanas, being afraid of the Kshattriyas, while others again gave these last what they wanted. It happened, however, that a Kshattriya, while digging the ground, discovered some money buried in the house of a Bhrigu. The Kshattriyas then assembled and saw this treasure, and, being incensed, slew in consequence all the Bhrigus, whom they regarded with contempt, down to the children in the womb (verse 6809. *Avamānya tataḥ krodhād Bhrigūns tān śaraṇāgatān | nijaghnūḥ parameshhrvāsāḥ sarvāns tān nīśitaiḥ śaraiḥ | ā-garbhād avakrintantaś cheruḥ sarvān vasundharām* !). The widows, however, fled to the Himālaya mountains. One of them concealed her unborn child in her thigh. The Kshattriyas, hearing of its existence from a Brāhmaṇī informant, sought to kill it; but it issued forth from its mother's thigh with lustre, and blinded the persecutors. After wandering about bewildered among the mountains for a time, they humbly supplicated the mother of the child for the restoration of their sight; but she referred them to her wonderful infant Aurva into whom the whole Veda, with its six Vedāngas, had entered (verse 6823. *Shad-angas chākhilo vedas imām garbhastham eva ha | viveśa Bhrigu-vaśāsasya bhūyaḥ priya-chikīrshayā* !), as the person who (in retaliation of the slaughter of his relatives) had robbed them of their eyesight, and who alone could restore it. They accordingly had recourse to him, and their eyesight was restored. Aurva, however, meditated the destruction of all living creatures, in revenge for the slaughter of the Bhrigus, and entered on a course of austerities which alarmed both gods, asuras, and men; but his progenitors (Pitris) themselves appeared, and sought to turn him from his purpose by saying that they had no desire to be revenged on the Kshattriyas: 6834. *Nā-nīśair hi tadā tāta Bhrigubhir bhāvitātmabhiḥ | badho hy upekṣitaiḥ sarvaiḥ kshattriyūnām vihmīsatām | āyushā viprakṛiṣṭena yadā nah*

*kheḍa āviśat | tadā 'smābhir badhas tāta kshattriyair īpsitāḥ svayam |
nikhātāṃ yach cha vai vittaṃ kenachid Bhṛigu-veśmani | vairāyaiva tadā
nyastaṃ kshattriyūn kopayishnubhiḥ | kiṃ hi vittaṇa naḥ kūr्याṃ svar-
gepsūnāṃ dvijottama | . . . 6841. Mā badhiḥ kshattriyāṃs tāta na
lokān sapta putraka | dūshayantaṃ tapas-tejaḥ krodham utpatitaṃ jahi |*
“6834. It was not from weakness that the devout Bhṛigus overlooked
the massacre perpetrated by the murderous Kshattriyas. When we
“became distressed by old age, we ourselves desired to be slaughtered by
them. The money which was buried by some one in a Bhṛigu's house
was placed there for the purpose of exciting hatred, by those who
wished to provoke the Kshattriyas. For what had we, who were
desiring heaven, to do with money?” They add that they hit upon
this device because they did not wish to be guilty of suicide, and con-
cluded by calling upon Aurva to restrain his wrath; and abstain from
the sin he was meditating, verse 6841: “Destroy not the Kshattriyas,
o son, nor the seven worlds. Suppress thy kindled anger which nullifies
the power of austere-fervour.” Aurva, however, replies that he cannot
allow his threat to remain unexecuted. His anger, unless wreaked
upon some other object, will, he says, consume himself. And he argues
on grounds of justice, expediency, and duty, against the clemency which
his progenitors recommend. He is, however, persuaded by the Pitṛis
to throw the fire of his anger into the sea, where they say it will find
exercise in assailing the watery element, and in this way his threat
will be fulfilled. “It accordingly became the great Hayaśiras, known
to those who are acquainted with the Veda, which vomits forth that
fire and drinks up the waters” (*Mahad Hayaśiro bhūtva yat tad veda-
vido viduḥ | tam agnim udgiraḥ vaktrāt pibaty āpo mahodadhau*). It is
worthy of remark that in a legend, one object of which, at least, would
seem to be to hold up to abhorrence the impiety of the Kshattriyas in
oppressing the Brāhmans, we should thus find a palliation of the con-
duct of the oppressors, coming from the other world. But here the
principle of the nothingness of mundane existence asserts itself; and
the final superiority of the Brāhmans is vindicated, while their magna-
nimity is exemplified.

The next version of this legend, which I shall quote, is that given
in the 115th-117th sections of the Vanaparvan. Arjuna, son of Kṛiṭa-
vīrya, and king of the Haihāyas, had, we are told, a thousand arms.

He obtained from Dattātreyā an aerial car of gold, the march of which was irresistible. He thus trod down gods, Yākshas, rishis, and oppressed all creatures (10137. *Aryāhata-gatiś chaiva rathas tasya mahāt-manaḥ | rathena tena tu tadā vara-dānena vīryyavān | mamardda devān yakshāṃś cha ṛishīṃś chaiva samantataḥ | bhūtāṃś chaiva sa sarvāṃś tu pīḍayāmāsa sarvataḥ* |). The gods and rishis applied to Viṣṇu, and he along with Indra, who had been insulted by Arjuna, devised the means of destroying the latter. At this time, the story goes on, there lived a king of Kānyakubja, called Gādhi, who had a daughter named Satyavatī. The marriage of this princess to the rishi Ṛichika, and the birth of Jamadagni, are then told in nearly the same way as above narrated in page 350. Jamadagni and Satyavatī had five sons, the youngest of whom was the redoubtable Paraśurāma. By his father's command he kills his mother (who, by the indulgence of impure desire, had fallen from her previous sanctity), after the four elder sons had refused this matricidal office, and had in consequence been deprived of reason by their father's curse. At Paraśurama's desire, however, his mother is restored by his father to life, and his brothers to reason; and he himself is absolved from all the guilt of murder; and obtains the boon of invincibility and long life from his father. His history now begins to be connected with that of king Arjuna (or Kārtavīrya). The latter had come to Jamadagni's hermitage, and had been respectfully received by his wife; but he had requited this honour by carrying away by force the calf of the sage's sacrificial cow, and breaking down his lofty trees. On being informed of this violence, Paraśurāma was filled with indignation, attacked Arjuna, cut off his thousand arms, and slew him. Arjuna's sons, in return, slew the peaceful sage Jamadagni, in the absence of Paraśurāma. The narrative thus proceeds:

10201. *Dadāha pitarāṃ chāgnau Rāmaḥ para-puranjayaḥ | pratijajña badhaṃ chāpi sarva-kṣhatrasya Bhārata | sa krudhō 'tibalaḥ sankhye śastraṃ ādāya vīryyavān | jaghnivān Kārtavīryasya sūtān eko 'ntak-opamaḥ | Teshāṃ chānugatāḥ ye cha kṣhattriyaḥ kṣhattriyaṛṣhabha | tāṃś cha sarvān avāmṛdhnād Rāmaḥ praharatām varaḥ | trisaptakṛitoḥ prithivīm kṛitoḥ nīkṣhattriyaṃ prabhḥ | samantapanchaka pancha chakāra raudhīrān hrādān | 10205. Sa teshu tarpayāmāsa Bhṛigūn Bhṛigu-kulodvahaḥ | sūkṣhād dadarśa charchikāṃ sa cha Rāmāṃ*

*nyavedayat | tato yajna mahatā Jāmadagnyah prātūpavān | tarpayā-
māsa devendram ṛitvighnyaḥ pradadau mahim | vedīm chāpy adadād hai-
mīm Kaśyapāya mahātmane | daśa-vyāmāyatām kṛitvā navotsedhām
viśūmpato | tām Kaśyapasyānumater brāhmanāḥ khaṇḍasas tadā | rya-
bhajaṁs te tadā rājan prakhyātūḥ Khāṇḍavāyanāḥ | sa pradāya mahīm
tasmai Kaśyapāya mahātmane | asmin mahendre śailendre vasaty amita-
vikramaḥ | evaṁ vairam abhūt tasya kshattriyaḥ loka-vāsibhiḥ | prithivī
chāpi vijitā Rāmeṇāmīta-tejasā |*

“Rāma, after performing, on his return, his father’s funeral obsequies, vowed to destroy the whole Kshattriya race; and executed his threat by killing first Arjuna’s sons and their followers. Twenty-one times did he sweep away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, and formed five lakes of blood in Samantapanchaka; (10,205) in which he satiated the mams of the Bhṛigus, and beheld face to face (his grandfather) Rīchika, who addressed himself to Rāma. The latter gratified Indra by offering to him a grand sacrifice, and gave the earth to the officiating priests. He bestowed also a golden altar, ten fathoms long and nine high, on the mighty Kaśyapa. This, by his permission, the Brāhmans divided among themselves, deriving thence the name of Khāṇḍavāyanas. Having given away the earth to Kaśyapa, Paruśurāma himself dwells on the mountain Mahendra. Thus did enmity arise between him and the Kshattriyas, and thus was the earth conquered by Rāma of boundless might.”

The means by which the Kshattriya race was restored are described in the following passage from the Ādiparvan, verses 2459 ff. :

*Trissapta-kṛitvāḥ prithivīm kṛitvā niḥkshattriyām purā | Jāmad-
agnyaś tapas tepe Mahendre parvatottame | 2460. Tadā niḥkshattriye
loke Bhūrgaveṇa kṛite sati | brāhmaṇān kshattriyāḥ rājan sūtārthīnyo
'bhichakramuḥ | tābhiḥ saha samāpetur brāhmaṇāḥ sāmsita-vratāḥ | ṛitāv
ṛitau nara-vyūghra na kūmāḍ nūṇitau tathā | tebhyaś cha lebhire garb-
haṁ kshattriyāś taś sahasraśaḥ | tataḥ sushuvire rājan kshattriyūn
vīryyavattarān | kūmāraṁś cha kūmāriś cha punaḥ kshattrābhivṛd-
dhyaḥ | evaṁ tad brāhmaṇaiḥ kshattram kshattriyāsu tapasvibhiḥ |
jātaṁ vṛiddhaṁ cha dharmena sudīrghenāyushānvitam | chatvāro 'pi tato
varṇāḥ babhūvur brāhmaṇottarāḥ |*

“2459. Having one and twenty times swept away all the Kshattriyas from the earth, the son of Jamadagni engaged in austerities on

Mahendra the most excellent of mountains. 2460. After he had cleared the world of Kshattriyas, their widows came to the Brāhmins, praying for offspring. The religious Brāhmins, free from any impulse of lust, cohabited at the proper seasons with these women, who in consequence became pregnant, and brought forth valiant Kshattriya boys and girls, to continue the Kshattriya stock. Thus was the Kshattriya race virtuously begotten by Brāhmins on Kshattriya women, and became multiplied and long-lived. Thence there arose four castes inferior to the Brāhmins."

This restoration of the Kshattriyas and their rule is said to have been followed by a state of great virtue, happiness, and prosperity. As one exemplification of the religious perfection which prevailed, it is said that "the Brāhmins did not sell their sacred lore, nor recite the Vedas in the vicinity of Śūdras" (verse 2474. *Na cha vikrīṇate brahma brāhmaṇās cha tadā nṛpa | na cha śūdra-samābhyāse vedān ucchhāra-yanty uta*).

Another version of this legend is given in the Śāntiparvan, section 49. The birth of Jamadagni as the son of Richika and Satyavatī is related very much as in the Vishṇu Purāṇa (see above, p. 349 f.); but Richika tells his wife that the whole of her father's race shall become Brāhmanical (verse 1741. *Brahma-bhūtaṁ hi sakalam pituḥ tava kulam bhavet*); and of Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, we are told that he "had the character of a Brāhman, and was possessed of all Brahmanical qualities" (1745. *Viśvāmitraṁ cha dāyādāṁ Gādhiḥ Kūśika-nandanah | yam prāpa brahma-samitaṁ viśvair brahma-guṇair yutam*). Jamadagni was father of the dreadful Paraśurāma, "who became perfect in science, thoroughly versed in archery, and the slayer of the Kshattriyas, himself violent as flaming fire. By propitiating Mahādeva he obtained, among other weapons, the irresistible axe (*paraśu*)" (1747. *Sarva-vidyānta-gaṁ śreṣṭhaṁ dhanur-vedasya pūrṇam | Rāmaṁ kshattriya-hantāram pra-dīptam iva pāvakaṁ | toṣayitvā Mahādevam parvate Gandhamādane | astrāṇi varayāmāsa paraśum chātīlejasam*), from which his name is derived. Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, king of the Haihayas, is here also represented as having a thousand arms, but in opposition to the previous account he is described as a "dutiful and religious monarch, who at an *aśvamedha* (horse-sacrifice) bestowed on the Brāhmins the earth with its seven continents and mountains, which he had conquered by his

arms and weapons" (verse 1751. *Chakravartī mahātejā viprāṇām āśva-medhike | dadau sa prithivīm sarvām sapta-devīpām sa-parvatām | eva-bāhu-asthra-balenājau jītvā parama-dharma-vit |*). He had, however, at the solicitation of Agni permitted that voracious deity to consume his towns, villages, forests, etc.; and as the hermitage of Āpava (Vasishṭha) had been destroyed in the conflagration, Arjuna was doomed by the sage's curse to have his arms cut off by Paraśurāma. The story proceeds:

Verse 1769. *Arjuna tu mahātejā bali nityam samātnekaḥ | brahmanyas cha śaranyas dātā śūras cha Bhārata |* 1760. *Nāchintayat tadā śūpam tena dattam mahātmanā | tasya putrās tu balinaḥ śāpenāsaur pitur badhe | nimittād avaliptāḥ vai nṛśaṁsās chaiva sarvadā | Jama-dagni-dhenvās te vatsam āninyur Bharatarshabha | aynātām Kārtta-viryena Haihayendrena dhīmātā | tannimittam abhūd yuddhaṁ Jāmadagner mahātmanaḥ | tato 'rjunasya bāhuṁ tām chhittvā Rāmo rushā 'nvitāḥ |* . . . 1766. *Tataḥ pitri-badhūmarśhād Rāmāḥ parama-manyumān | nihkshattriyaṁ pratiśrutya mahīm śastram agrikṇata | tataḥ sa Bhṛigu-śārdūlāḥ Kārttavīryasya vīryavān | vikramya vijaghñāśu putrān pautrān cha sarvasaḥ | sa Haihaya-sahasraṇi hatvā parama-manyumān | chakūra Bhārgaro rājan mahīm soṇita-kardamām | sa tathā "śu mahātejūḥ kṛtvā nihkshattriyaṁ mahīm |* 1770. *Kṛipayā parayā" viśhṭo vanam eva jagāma ha | tato varsha-sahasreshu samatīleshu keshuchit | kshepam sam-prāptavāms tatra prakṛityā kopanaḥ prabhuḥ | Viśvāmītrasya pauttras tu Raibhya-puttro mahātapaḥ | Parāvasur mahārāja kshiptūha (kshiptvā "ha?) jana-saṁsadi | "ye te Yayāti-patane yajne santāḥ samāgatāḥ | Pratarddana-prabhṛitayo Rāma kiṁ kshattriyaḥ na te | mithyā-pratijño Rāma tvam katthase jana-saṁsadi | bhayāt kshattriya-vīrāṇām parvataṁ samu-pāśritaḥ | sā punaḥ kshattriya-satāḥ prithivī sarvatas tritā" |* 1775. *Parāvasor vacaḥ śrutvā śastraṁ jagrūha Bhārgavaḥ | tato ye Kshattriyaḥ rājan sataśas tena varjitaḥ | te vividdhāḥ mahāvīryyāḥ prithivī-patayo 'bhavan | sa punas tām jaghñāśu bālān api narādhipa | garbhahais tu mahi vyūptā punar evābhavat tadā | jātām jātām sa garbhān tu punar eva jaghñā ha | arakshaṁs tu sūtān kāmśchit tadā kshattriya-yoshitaḥ | trisapta-kṛitvāḥ prithivīm kṛtvā nihkshattriyaṁ prabhuḥ | dakṣhiṇām āśvamedhānte Kāśyapayādādāt tadā | sa kshattriyaṇām śeshārthaṁ kareṇoddīśya Kāśyapaḥ |* 1780. *Sruk-pragrahavatā rājāms tato vākyam athābravit | "gachha tīraṁ samudrasya dakṣhiṇasya mahāmune | na te mad-vishayo Rāma vastavyam iha karhichit" | tataḥ*

S'arpūrakañ deśaṁ sāgaras tasya nirmame | sahasā Jāmadagnyaśya so
'parānta-mahitalam | Kśyāpas tām mahārāja pratigrihya vasundharām |
kṛtvā brāhmaṇa-saṁsthāṁ vai pravishṭaḥ sumahāvanam | tataḥ śūdrās
cha vaiśyās cha yathā - svaira - prachārīnaḥ | avarttanta dvijāgryānāṁ
dāreshu Bharatarshabha | arājake jīva-loke durbalāḥ balavattaraiḥ |
 1785. *Pidyante na hi vitteshu prabhutvaṁ kasyachit tadā | tataḥ kālena*
prithivī pīḍyamānā durātmabhiḥ | viparyayaṇa tenāśu praviveśa rasāta-
lam | arakshyamānā vidhivat kshattriyair dharma-rakshibhiḥ | tāṁ
drishṭvā dravatiṁ tatra santrāsīt sa mahāmanāḥ | ūruṇā dhārayāmāsa
Kśyāpāḥ prithivīm tataḥ | dhṛitā tenoruṇa yena tenorvīti mahī smṛitā |
rakshaṇārthaṁ samuddīśya yayāche prithivī tadā | prasūḍya Kśyāpāṁ
devī varayāmāsa bhūmipam | prithivy ūcācha | 1790. “*Santi brahman*
mayā guptāḥ strīshu kshattriya-pungavāḥ | Haihayānām kule jātās te
saṁrakshantu mām mune | asti Paurava-dāyādo Vidūratha-sutah prabho |
ṛikshaiḥ saṁvardhito vipra ṛikshavaty atha parvate | tathā 'nukampa-
mānena yajvanā 'py amitaujasā | Parāśareṇa dāyādāḥ Saudāsasyā-
bhirakshitāḥ | sarva-karmāṇi kurute śūdra-vat tasya sa devijaḥ | Sarva-
karmety abhikhyātāḥ sa mām rakshatu pārthivaḥ | . . . 1799. *Ēte*
kshattriya-dāyādās tatra tatra pariśritāḥ | dyokāra-hema-kārādī-jūtiṁ
nityaṁ samāśritāḥ | 1800. *Yadi mām abhirakshanti tadā sthāsyāmi*
nīśchalā | eteshāṁ pīṭarās chaiva tathaiva cha pītāmahāḥ | mad-arthaṁ
nihatāḥ yuddhe Rāmeṇākliṣṭa-karmaṇā | teshāṁ apachitīś chaiva mayā
kāryyā mahāmune | na hy ahaṁ kāmāye nityam atikrāntena rakshaṇam |
varttamānena vartteyaṁ tat kshipraṁ saṁādhiyatām” | tataḥ prithivyā
nirdiṣṭāṁś tān samūniya Kśyāpāḥ | abhyashinchāḥ mahipālān kshat-
triyān vīrya-sammatān |

“Being of a meek, pious, kind, and charitable turn of mind, the valiant Arjuna thought nothing of the curse; but his sons, who were of an arrogant and barbarous disposition, became the cause of its resulting in his death. Without their father's knowledge they took away Jamadagni's calf; and in consequence Paraśurāma attacked Arjuna and cut off his arms.” His sons retaliated by killing Jamadagni. 1766. Paraśurāma incensed at the slaughter of his father, having vowed in consequence to sweep away all Kshattriyas from the earth, seized his weapons; and slaying all the sons and grandsons of Arjuna, with thousands of the Haihayas, he turned the earth into a mass of ensanguined mud. 1770. Having thus cleared the earth of

Kshatriyas, he became penetrated by deep compassion and retired to the forest. After some thousands of years had elapsed, the hero, naturally irascible, was taunted by Parāvasu, the son of Raibhya and grandson of Viśvāmitra, in a public assembly in these words: 'Are not these virtuous men, Pratardana and the others, who are assembled at the sacrifice in the city of Yayāti,—are they not Kshatriyas? Thou hast failed to execute thy threat, and vainly boastest in the assembly. Thou hast withdrawn to the mountain from fear of those valiant Kshatriyas, while the earth has again become overrun by hundreds of their race.' Hearing these words, Rāma seized his weapons. The hundreds of Kshatriyas who had before been spared had now grown powerful kings. These, however, Paraśurāma now slew with their children, and all the numerous infants then unborn as they came into the world. Some, however, were preserved by their mothers. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshatriyas, Rāma gave her as a sacrificial fee to Kaśyapa at the conclusion of an *asvamedha*. 1780. Making a signal with his hand, in which he held the sacrificial ladle, Kaśyapa, in order that the remaining Kshatriyas should be spared, said to Paraśurāma, 'Go, great muni, to the shore of the southern ocean. Thou must not dwell in my territory.' Sāgara (the ocean) created for him a country called Sūrpāraka on the remotest verge of the earth. Having received dominion over the earth, Kaśyapa made it an abode of Brāhmanas, and himself withdrew to the forest. Sūdras and Vaiśyas then began to act lawlessly towards the wives of the Brāhmanas; and, in consequence of there being no government, the weak (1785) were oppressed by the strong, and no one was master of any property. The Earth, being distressed by the wicked, in consequence of that disorder, and unprotected according to rule by the Kshatriyas, the guardians of justice, descended to the lower regions. Perceiving her moving from place to place in terror, Kaśyapa upheld her with his thigh (*ūru*). From this circumstance she derives her name of *urvī*.²⁴⁰ The goddess Earth then propitiated Kaśyapa, and supplicated him for protection, and for a king. 'I have,' she said, 'preserved among females many Kshatriyas who have been born in the race of the Haihayas; let them be my protectors. There is the heir of the Pauravas, the son of Vidūratha, who has been brought up by bears

²⁴⁰ *Urvī* really means "the broad," signifying the same as *grithivī*.

on the mountain Rikshavat: let him protect me. So, too, the heir of Saudāsa has been preserved by the tender-hearted and glorious priest, Parāśara, who has performed, though a Brāhman, all menial offices (*sarvakarmāṇi*) for him, like a Sūdra;—whence the prince's name Sarvakarman." After enumerating other kings who had been rescued, the Earth proceeds: "All these Kshattriyas' descendants have been preserved in different places, abiding continually among the classes of dyokāras and goldsmiths. If they protect me, I shall continue unshaken. Their fathers and grandfathers were slain on my account by Rāma, energetic in action. It is incumbent on me to avenge their cause. For I do not desire to be always protected by an extraordinary person [such as Kaśyapa]; but I will be content with an ordinary ruler. Let this be speedily fulfilled.' Kaśyapa then sent for these Kshattriyas who had been pointed out by the Earth, and installed them in the kingly office."

This reference to the bestowal of the Earth upon Kaśyapa is founded on an older story which occurs both in the Aitareya and the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇas. The passage in the first-named work is as follows, viii. 21. *Etena ha vai Aindreṇa mahābhishhekeṇa Kaśyapo Viśvakarmāṇam Bhauvanam abhishishhecha | tasmād u Viśvakarmā Bhauvanāḥ samantaṁ sarvataḥ pṛithivīm jayan pariyūya āsvena cha medhyena ije | bhūmir ha jagāv ity udāharanti* "na mā marttyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhauvana mān didāsitha | nīmankshye 'hañ salilasya madhye moghas te esha Kaśyapāyāsa sangarah" iti | ॥ With this great inauguration like that of Indra did Kaśyapa consecrate Viśvakarman Bhauvana, who in consequence went round the Earth in all directions, conquering it; and offered an āśvamedha sacrifice. They relate that the Earth then recited this verse:

"Me may no mortal give away; but thou, oh king, dost so essay;
Deep will I plunge beneath the main; thy pledge to Kaśyapa is vain."

The Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xiii. 7, 1. 15, says: *Taṁ ha Kaśyapo yā-jayāṇchakāra | tad api bhūmiḥ slokaṁ jagau* "na mā marttyaḥ kaśchana dātum arhati Viśvakarman Bhauvana mandaḥ āsitha | upamankshyati syā salilasya madhye mṛishaisha te sangarah Kaśyapāya" iti | "Kaśyapa officiated for him at this sacrifice. Wherefore also the Earth recited this verse: 'No mortal may give me away. Viśvakarman, son of

Bhauvana, thou wast foolish (in offering to do so). She will sink into the midst of the waters. Thy promise to Kaśyapa is vain.'"²⁴¹

The story is also related in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa in a similar way. I note the chief points and variations. When Gādhi's daughter was demanded in marriage by the rishi Ṛichika, the king considered that the suitor was not a fit husband for a daughter of his noble race; and said, "Give me a thousand horses white as the moon, each with one black ear, as a marriage gift for the maiden; for we are Kuśikas" (ix. 15, 5. *Varam visadriṣam matvā Gādhir Bhārgavam abravīt | 6. Ekataḥ śyāma-karnānām hayānām chandra-varchasām | sahasraṁ dīyatām śulkaṁ kanyāyāḥ Kuśikāḥ vayam |*). The youngest offspring of their union was, we are told, "Paraśurāma, who is declared to have been a portion of Vāsudeva (Viṣṇu in the form of Kriṣṇa),"²⁴² and who exterminated the Haihaya race. Thrice seven times he swept away from this earth all the Kshattriya, that depraved and impious race, full of passion and darkness, with which she was burthened. He destroyed them, though the offence which they had committed was but insignificant (v. 14. *Yam āhur Vāsudevāṁśam Haihayānaṁ kulāntakam | trissaptakṛito yaḥ imāṁ cakre nibkshattriyaṁ malin | duṣṭāṁ kshattram bhuvo bhāram abrahmanyam anīnaśat | rajas-tamo-vṛitam ahan phalguny api kṛite 'mhasi |*). King Arjuna, who had been endowed with miraculous powers, took Rāvana prisoner, then released him, and afterwards carried away by force Jamadagni's cow and calf. Paraśurāma, in revenge, after a terrible battle, and the defeat of the king's army, cut off Arjuna's arms and head, and recovered the cow and calf. When his father was informed of the king's death, he said to Paraśurāma: "Rāma, Rāma, thou hast committed sin, in that thou hast causelessly slain the lord of men, who is composed of all the deities."²⁴³ It is by longsuffering that we, the Brāhmanas, have acquired respect; the same means whereby the deity, the instructor of all worlds, attained the highest rank of godhead. By

²⁴¹ It will be observed that there are some varieties of reading in the verse, as given in the two Brāhmaṇas. *Manda āsitha* in the S'. P. Br. looks like a corruption of the *mām dīdāsitha* of the Aitareya. The story of Arjuna, Paraśurāma, and the Kshattriya is briefly told again in the Āśvamedhika-parvan, but without any new circumstances of particular interest.

²⁴² See above, p. 350, and note 146. None of the passages I have quoted from the Mahābhārata allude to Paraśurāma being an incarnation of Viṣṇu.

²⁴³ Compare the passages quoted above in p. 300 from the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, and from Manu.

patience the fortune of Brahmā shines like the splendour of the Sun. Hari, the lord, is speedily pleased with those who are patient. The murder of a king who has been formally inaugurated is worse than that of a Brāhman. Go and expiate thy sin by visiting holy places, with thy mind intent upon Achyuta (Vishṇu)" (ix. 15, 38. *Rāma Rāma mahābhūga bhavān pāpam akāraṣhī*²⁴⁴ | *abadhīd nara-devaṁ yat sarva-devamayāṁ vṛthā* | *vayaṁ hi brāhmaṇās tāta kshamayā 'rhanatām gatāḥ* | *yayū loka-gurur devaḥ pārameshṭhyam ayāt padam* | *kshamayā rochaté lakshmī Brāhmī saurī yathā prabhā* | *kshaminām āsu bhagavāns tushyate* | *Harir īśvaraḥ* | *rājno mūrdhābhishiktasya badho brahma-badhād guruḥ* | *tīrtha-saṁsevayā chāṁho jahy angāchyuta-chetanaḥ* |). On his return from this pilgrimage Rāma was desired by his father to kill his mother (on grounds similar to those stated in the account quoted above, p. 450, from the Mahābhārata), as well as his brothers, and executed the order; but at his intercession they were all restored to life. During his absence in the forest, his father Jamadagni was slain, and his head cut off, notwithstanding the entreaties of his wife, by the sons of Arjuna, in revenge for the loss of their own father. Paraśurāma, hearing his mother's outcries, hastened back to the hermitage, and laying hold of his axe, proceeded to avenge this outrage: ix. 16, 17. *gatvā Māhishmatīm Rāmo brahma-gṛha-vihata-śriyam* | *teshām sa śīrshabliḥ rājan madhye chakre mahūgirim* | 18. *tad-raktena nadīm ghorām abrahmanyā-bhayāvahām* | *hetuṁ kṛtvā pitṛi-badhāṁ kshatṛe 'mangala-kīrini* | . . . 20. *Pitūḥ kāyena sandhāya śīraḥ ādāya bārhishi* | *sarva-devamayāṁ devam ātmānam ayajād makhaiḥ* | 21. *Dadau prāchīm diśaṁ hotre brahmaṇo dakṣiṇām diśaṁ* | *adhvaryave pratichīm vai udgātṛe uttarām diśaṁ* | 22. *Anyebhyo 'vāntara-diśaḥ Kāśyapūya cha madhyataḥ* | *āryāvarttam upadrashṭṛe sadasyebhyas tataḥ param* | 23. *Tataś chāvabhṛītha-snāna-vidhūtūśeṣha-kilviṣhaḥ* | *Sarasvatyām brahma-natyām reje vyabhraḥ iṁśūmān* | . . . 26. *Āste 'dyāpi Mahendrādrau nyastadandāḥ praśāntadhīḥ* | *upagīyamāna-charitāḥ siddha-gandharva-chārānāḥ* | 27. *Evam Bhṛigushu viśvātmā bhagavān Harir īśvaraḥ* | *avatīrya param bhāram bhuvo 'han bahuśo nripān* | "17. He went to the city of Māhishmatī, which had been robbed of its glory by those Brāhman-slayers, and raised in the midst of it a great mountain composed of their heads. With their blood he formed a dreadful river, which struck

²⁴⁴ So in the Bombay edition. Burnouf's text has the usual form *akurshī*.

fear into the impious; justifying his action against the oppressive Kshattriyas by their murder of his father. . . . 20. He then united his father's head to his body, laying it on the sacred grass; and offered a sacrifice to the divine Spirit, who is formed of all the deities. On this occasion he gave the eastern region of the earth to the hotṛi priest, the south to the brahman, the west to the adhvaryu, and the north to the udgātṛi. To others he gave the intermediate regions (south-east, south-west, etc.), to Kaśyapa the central; on the upadrashtṛi he bestowed Āryāvartta, and on the Sadasyas what was beyond. Having then cleansed all his impurity by the avabhṛitha ablution in the Sarasvatī, the river of Brahmā, he shone like the sun unobscured by clouds. . . . 26. Having laid aside his weapons, he sits to this day in tranquillity of mind on the mountain Mahendra, whilst his exploits are celebrated by the Siddhas, Gandharvas, and Chāranas. Thus did the universal Spirit, the divine lord, Hari, become incarnate in the Bhṛigus, and destroy numerous kings who were a burden to the earth." It is singular that sin requiring expiation should be, as it is in this narrative, imputed to Paraśurāma, while he is at the same time declared to have been a portion of Viṣṇu, the supreme Spirit.

The story of Paraśurāma is also told in the Dronaparvan of the Mahābhārata, verses 2427 ff., after those of many other kings and warriors, to illustrate the truth that death must sooner or later overtake even the most pious and distinguished personages. The earlier incidents are briefly narrated; but some of the details, as the slaughter of the Kshattriyas, are dwelt on at greater length than in the other accounts. Some of the victims of the hero's vengeance are described as "haters of Brāhmans" (*brahma-dvishām*, verse 2431). The Kshattriyas who were slain are described as of various provinces, viz. Kāsmīras, Daradas, Kuntis, Kshudrakas, Mālavas, Angas, Vāngas, Kalingas, Videhas, Tāmraliptakas, Rakshovāhas, Vitihotras, Trigarttas, Mārttikāvatas, Sīvis, and other Rājanyas (*S'ivin anyāś oha rājanyān*, verse 2437). At verse 2443 the narrative proceeds: *Nirdasyum prithivīm kṛtvā śiṣṭeṣṭa-jana-sankulām | Kaśyapāya dadau Rāmo haya-medhe mahāmakhe | trisapta-vārān prithivīm kṛtvā nīkshattriyām prabhuḥ | iṣṭvā kratu-śatair vīro brāhmaṇebhyo hy amanyata | sapta-dvīpān vasumatīm Mārīcho 'grihṇata dvījah | Rāmam provācha "nirgachha vasudhāto mamājnaya | sa Kaśyapasya*

*vachanāt protsārya saritūmpatim | ishupātair yudhān śreshṭhaḥ kurvan
brāhmaṇa-sāsanam | adhyāvasad giri-śreshṭham Mahendram parvato-
ttamam |* “2443. Having freed the earth from Dasyus (or robbers), and filled her with respectable and desirable inhabitants, he gave her to Kaśyapa at an aśvamedha. Having twenty-one times cleared the earth of Kshattriyas, and offered hundreds of sacrifices, he destined the earth for the Brāhmans. The Brāhman, the son of Marīchi (i.e. Kaśyapa), received the earth, and then said to Rāma, ‘Depart out of her by my’ command.’ Having repelled the ocean by his arrows, and established the rule of the Brāhmans, Rāma dwelt on the mountain Mahendra.”

The Anuśāsanaparvan of the same poem has another “ancient story” about Paraśurāma, which, like the preceding passage from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, adverts to the pollution incurred by that warrior from his numerous deeds of blood. It begins as follows: verse 3960. *Jāmad-
agnyena Rāmeṇa tīvra-roshānvitena vai | trissapta-kṛitvaḥ prithivī kṛitā
niḥkshattriyā purā | tato jitvā mahīm kṛitsnān Rāmo rājiva-lochanaḥ |
ājāhūra kratuṁ vīro brahma-kshattreṇa pūjitam | vāji-medham mahārāja
sarva-kāma-samanvitam | pāvanam sarva-bhūtānām tejo-dyuti-vivarādhā-
nam | vipṛpmū sa cha tejasvī tena kratu-phalena cha | naivātmano 'tha
laghutām Jāmadagnyo 'dhyagachhata | sa tu kratu-vareneshtvā mahātma
dakṣiṇāvataḥ |* 3965. *Paprachhāgama-sampannān rishin devānś cha
Bhārgavaḥ |* “pāvanam yat param nṛiṇām ugre karmanī varttatām |
tad uchyatām mahābhūgāḥ” *iti jāta-gṛiṇo 'bravit | ity uktāḥ veda-
sāstra-jnūs tam ūchus te maharshayaḥ |* “Rāma viprāḥ satkriyāntām
veda-prāmānya-darśanāt | bhūyaścha viprarshi-gaṇāḥ prashṭavyāḥ pāva-
nam prati | *te yad brūyur mahāprājñūs tach chaiva samudāchara |*
“3960. Rāma, son of Jamadagni, having thrice seven times cleared the world of Kshattriyas, and conquered the whole earth, performed the horse-sacrifice, venerated by Brāhmans and Kshattriyas, which confers all objects of desire, which cleanses all creatures, and augments power and lustre; and became thereby sinless and glorious. He did not, however, feel relieved in his mind, but after offering the most excellent of sacrifices, at which presents were bestowed, he (3965) enquired of the rishis skilled in the scriptures, and of the gods, what was that which most perfectly cleansed those men who had committed deeds of violence; for he felt compunction for what he had done. The rishis skilled in the Vedas and Sāstras replied, ‘Let the Brāhmans be

the objects of your liberality, as the authority of the Vedas requires; let the Brāhman-rishis be further consulted in regard to the means of lustration; and do whatever these wise men may enjoin.'” Paraśurāma accordingly consulted Vaśishṭha, Agastya, and Kaśyapa. They replied that a sinner was cleansed by bestowing cows, land, and other property, and especially gold, the purifying power of which was very great. “Those who bestow it, bestow the gods,” a proposition which is thus compendiously proved: “for Agni comprehends all the gods; and gold is of the essence of Agni” (verse 3987. *Devatās te prayachchanti ye suvarṇam dadaty atha | Agnir hi devatāḥ sarvāḥ suvarṇam cha tadātmanakam*). In regard to the origin of this precious metal, Vaśishṭha tells a very long story, which he had heard Prajāpati relate, how it was born by the goddess Gangā to Agni, by whom she had been impregnated, and was thus the son of that god. “Thus was gold born the offspring of Jātavedas (Agni). That which is produced in Jambūnada is the best, and a fit ornament even for the gods. It is called the chief of gems and of ornaments, the most pure of all pure things, the most auspicious of all auspicious objects; and one with the divine Agni, the lord Prajāpati” (verse 4099. *Evam suvarṇam utpannam apatyam Jātavedasaḥ | tatra Jambūnadaṁ śreṣṭhaṁ devānām api bhūṣaṇam | 4001. Ratnānām uttamam ratnam bhūṣaṇānām tathottamam | pavitraṁ cha pavitrānām mangalānām chu mangalam | yat surarṇam sa bhagavān Agnir īśaḥ prajāpatiḥ |*). It must be highly consolatory for those who are disposed to be liberal to the Brāhman, to be assured that the gold which they bestow has such a high mystical, as well as current, exchangeable value. “Paraśurāma,” the story concludes, “after being thus addressed by Vaśishṭha, gave gold to the Brāhmans, and was freed from sin” (verse 4183. *Iti uktaḥ sa Vaśishṭheṇa Jāmadagnyaḥ pratāpavān | dadau suvarṇam viprebhyo vyamuchyata cha kilviśāt*).

It is interesting to remark how the different distinctive principles of Indian religion and sentiment severally assert themselves in turn, and thus, occasionally, come into conflict with each other, as in the story of Paraśurāma. The primary object of this legend is no doubt to illustrate the vengeance which inevitably overtakes all those who violate the sacredness of the Brāhmanical prerogative, and the meritorious character of those who act as its defenders. No sooner, however, is this end ac-

complished, and the impious foes of the priesthood swept away again and again from the face of the earth, than a revulsion of feeling takes place, and the higher principles of the sacredness of life, and of the blessedness of mercy, come forward to claim recognition; and a deep sense of the pollution of bloodshed calls aloud for atonement. In the Bhāgavata, as we have seen, Jamadagni imputes it as a crime to the avenger of the Brāhmins that he had slain a king; and even goes the length of declaring that in doing so he had incurred greater guilt than if he had murdered a Brāhmin.

In the same book of the Mahābhārata, verses 7163 ff., an extravagant description is given of the prerogatives and powers of the Brāhmins; and Arjuna is again brought forward, in verses 7187 ff., as at first scouting their pretensions, but as ultimately conceding their unapproachable superiority: "The magnificent and mighty Kārttavīrya (Arjuna), possessing a thousand arms, was lord of this whole world, living in Māhishmatī. This Haihaya of unquestioned valour ruled over the whole sea-girt earth, with its oceans and continents" (verse 7187. *Sahasra-bhuja-bhṛit śrīmān Kārttavīryo 'bhavat prabhuh | asya lokasya sarvasya Māhishmatyām mahābalaḥ | sa tu ratnā-karavatiṁ sadvīpūṁ sāgarūmbarām | śaśasa prithivīm sarvām Haihayaḥ satya-vikramaḥ*). He obtained boons from the muni Dattātreyā, a thousand arms whenever he should go into battle, power to make the conquest of the whole earth, a disposition to rule it with justice, and the promise of instruction from the virtuous in the event of his going astray. 7196. *Tataḥ sa ratham āsthāya jvalanārka-samadyutim | abravīd vīryyasammohāt "ko nv asti sadṛīṣo mama | dhairyyye vīryye yaśaḥ-sauryye vikrameṇaujasā 'pi vā" | tad-vākyānte 'ntarīkṣhe vai vāg uvāchāsarirīṇi | "na tvam mūḍha vijānīṣhe brāhmaṇaṁ kṣhattriyaḥ varam | sahito brāhmaṇeṇa kṣhattriyaḥ śūśi vai prajāḥ" | Arjuna uvācha | kuryām bhūtāni tushṭo 'haṁ kruddho nāśaṁ tathā naye | karmaṇā manasā vācā na matto 'sti varo dvijaḥ | 7200. Pūrvo brahmottaro vādo dvitīyaḥ kṣhattriyaottaraḥ | trayyoktau hetuyuktau tau viśeṣaḥ tattra dṛīṣyate, | brāhmaṇāḥ saṁśrītāḥ kṣhattraṁ na kṣhattraṁ brāhmaṇāśritam | śrītāḥ brahmopadhāḥ viprāḥ khādanti kṣhattriyaṁ bhuvi | kṣhattriyeṣu āsrito dharmāḥ prajānāṁ paripūṇam | kṣhattrād vṛttir brāhmaṇānāṁ taiḥ katham brāhmaṇo varaḥ | sarva-bhūgradhānāṁ tēn bhāikṣa-vṛttir ahaṁ sadā | ātma-sambhāvitāṁ viprāṇ*

*sthāpayāmy ātmano vaśo | kalhitāṁ hy anayā satyam gāyatrīṁ kanyayā
divi | vijeshyāmy avasān sarvān brāhmaṇāṁś charma-rāsasāḥ |* 7205. *Na
cha māṁ chāvayed rūkṣtrāt triśhu lokeshu kaśchana | devo vā mānuṣho
vā 'pi tasmāj jyeshtho dvijād aham | atha brahmottaraṁ lokaṁ karishye
kshattriyottaram | na hi me saṁyuge kaśchit sōdhum utsahate balam |
Arjunasya vachāḥ śrutvā vitrastā 'bhūd niśāchari | athainam antariksha-
sthas tato Vāyur abhūshata | "tyajaināṁ kaluṣam bhāvam brāhmaṇe-
bhyo namaskuru | eteṣūṁ kurvataḥ pāpaṁ rūkṣtra-kṣobho bhaviṣhyati |
atha vā tvām mahipāla śamayishyanti vai dvijāḥ | nirasishyanti te rūkṣ-
trād hatotsāham mahābalāḥ" |* 7210. *Taṁ rājā "kas tvam" ity āha
tatas tam prāha Mārutaḥ | "Vāyur vai deva-dūto 'smi hitāṁ tvām pra-
bravīmy aham" | Arjunaḥ uvācha | "aho trayā 'dya vipreshu bhakti-
rūgaḥ pradarśitaḥ | yādṛiṣam prithivī-bhūtaṁ tādṛiṣam brāhi vai
dvijam | vāyur vā sadṛiṣam kinchid brāhi tvam bāhmaṇottamam | apāṁ
vai sadṛiṣo vahniḥ sūryasya nabhaso 'pi vā |* "Then ascending his
chariot glorious as the resplendent sun, he exclaimed in the intoxication
of his prowess, 'Who is like me in fortitude, courage, fame, heroism,
energy, and vigour?' At the end of this speech a bodiless voice in the
sky addressed him: 'Thou knowest not, o fool, that a Brāhman is
better than a Kshattriya. It is with the help of the Brāhman that
the Kshattriya rules his subjects.' Arjuna answers: 'If I am pleased,
I can create, or, if displeased, annihilate, living beings; and no Brāh-
man is superior to me in act, thought, or word. The first proposition
is that the Brāhmanas are superior; the second that the Kshattriyas are
superior; both of these thou hast stated with their grounds, but there
is a difference between them (in point of force). The Brāhmanas are
dependant on the Kshattriyas, and not the Kshattriyas on the
Brāhmanas; and the Kshattriyas are eaten up by the Brāhmanas,
who wait upon them, and only make the Vedas a pretence. Justice,
the protection of the people, has its seat in the Kshattriyas. From
them the Brāhmanas derive their livelihood: how then can the
latter be superior? I always keep in subjection to myself those
Brāhmanas, the chief of all beings, who subsist on alms, and who
have a high opinion of themselves. For truth was spoken by
that female the Gāyatrī in the sky. I shall subdue all those
unruly Brāhmanas clad in hides. 7200. No one in the three worlds,
god or man, can hurl me from my royal authority; wherefore I am

superior to any Brāhman. Now shall I turn the world in which Brāhman have the upper hand into a place where Kshatriyas shall have the upper hand : for no one dares to encounter my force in battle.' Hearing this speech of Arjuna, the female roving in the night became alarmed. Then Vāyu, hovering in the air, said to Arjuna : 'Abandon this sinful disposition, and do obeisance to the Brāhman. If thou shalt do them wrong, thy kingdom shall be convulsed. They will subdue thee : those powerful men will humble thee, and expel thee from thy country.' The king asks him, 'Who art thou?' Vāyu replies, 'I am Vāyu, the messenger of the gods, and tell thee what is for thy benefit.' Arjuna rejoins, 'Oh, thou displayest to-day a great warmth of devotion to the Brāhman. But say that a Brāhman is like (any other) earth-born creature. Or say that this most excellent Brāhman is something like the wind. But fire is like the waters, or the sun, or the sky.'"²⁴⁵ Vāyu, however, goes on to answer this spirited banter by adducing various instances in which the superiority or terrible power of the Brāhman had been manifested : 7124. *Tyaktvā mahitram bhūmis tu sparddhayā 'nga-nṛipasya ha | nāsām jagama tāñ vipro ryashtambhayata Kāśyapaḥ* } "The earth, being offended with king Anga, had abandoned her form and become destroyed : but the Brāhman Kāśyapa supported her." This is afterwards told more at length, verso 7232 : *Imām bhūmiñ dvijātibhyo ditsur vai dakshinām purā | Ango nāma nṛipo rūjāñs tatas chintām mahi yayau | "dhūranīñ sarva-bhūtānām ayaṃ prāpya vṛo nṛipaḥ | katham ichhati mām dātum dvijebhyo Brahmanaḥ sutām | sū 'hañ tyaktvā gamishyāmi bhūmitram Brahmanaḥ padam | ayañ sa-rāshṭro nṛipatir mā bhūd "* *iti tato 'gamat* | 7235. *Tatas tām Kāśyapo dṛishtvā vṛajantīm prithiviñ tadā | pravṛeṣa mahiñ sadyo muktā "tmānañ samāhitaḥ | riddhā sū sarvato jājne triṇaushadhi-samancitā | . . .* 7238. *Athāgamyā mahārūga namaskṛitya cha Kāśyapam | prithivi Kāśyapī jājne sūtā tasya mahātmanah | eṣha rūjann īdriṣo vai brāhmanaḥ Kāśyapo 'bhavat | anyam prabrūhi vā tvāñ cha Kāśyapūt kshattriyañ varam* | "King Anga wished to bestow this earth on the Brāhman as a sacrificial fee. The earth then reflected, 'How does this excellent king, after having obtained me, the daughter of Brahmā, and the supporter of all creatures, desire to give

²⁴⁵ The drift of the last line is not very clear, unless it be a reply by anticipation to line 225, which will be found a little further on.

me to the Brāhmins? I shall abandon my earthly form, and depart to the world of Brahmā. Let this king be without any realm.' Accordingly she departed. 7235. Beholding her going away, Kaśyapa, sunk in contemplation, entered into her, leaving his own body. She then became replenished, and covered with grass and plants, etc., etc. . . . 7238. She afterwards came and did obeisance to Kaśyapa, and became his daughter. Such was the Brāhman Kaśyapa: Declare, on your part, any Kshattriya who has been superior to him."

Further illustrations of the tremendous power of the Brāhmins are the following:

7215. *Apībat tejasū hy ūpaḥ svayam evāngirāḥ purā | sa tāḥ pīban kṣīram iva nātripiyata mahāmanūḥ | apūrayad mahaughena mahīm sarvām cha pāṛthiva | tasminn ahaṁ cha kruddhe vai jagat tyaktvā tato gataḥ | vyatishṭham agnihotre cha chiram Angiraso bhayāt | atha saptaś cha bhagavān Gautamena Purandaraḥ | Ahalyām kāmayāno vai dharmaṁrthaṁ cha na hīṁsitaḥ | yathā samudro nripate pūrṇo mṛṣhṭas cha vāriṇā | brāhmaṇair abhiṣaptaḥ san babhūva lavaṇodakāḥ | . . . 7223. Daṇḍakānām mahad rājyaṁ brāhmaṇena vināśitam | Tālajangham mahākshatram Aurvṇaikena nāśitam | . . . 7225. Agniṁ tvāṁ yajase nityaṁ kasmād brāhmaṇam Arjuna | sa hi sarvasya lokasya havya-vāt kiṁ na vetṣi tam | . . . 7241. Bhadrā Somasya duhitā rūpṇa paramā matā | yasyās tulyam patiṁ Soṁaḥ Utathyaṁ samapaśyata | sū cha tivrāṁ tapas tepe mahābhāgā yaśasvinī | Utathyārthe tu chārvāṅgī paramaṁ nyamam āsthitā | tataḥ āhūya sotathyaṁ dadāv Atrir yaśasvinīm | bhāryyārthe sa tu jagrāha vidhivad bhūri-dakṣiṇaḥ | tāṁ tv akūmayata śrīmān Varuṇaḥ pūrvam eva ha | sa chāgamyā vanaprasthāṁ Yamunūyām jahāra tām | 7245. Jaleśvaras tu hṛitvā tām anayat srapuram prati | paramādbhuta-sankāsam shat-sahasra-~~ś~~ hradam | na hi ramyataram kinchit tasmād anyat purottamam | prāsūdair apsarobhīś cha divyaiḥ kāmāś cha śobhitam | tatra devas tayā sārddhaṁ reme rājan jaleśvaraḥ | athākhyūtam Utathyāya tataḥ patny-avamarddanam | tach chkrutvā Nāradaṁ sarvam Utathyo Nāradaṁ tadā | provācha "gachha brāhi tvāṁ Varuṇam parushaṁ vachaḥ | madvākyād muncha me bhāryyam kasmāt tāṁ hṛitavān asi | lokapālo 'si lokānām na lokasya vilumpakaḥ | Somena dattā me bhāryyā tvayā chāpakṛitā 'dya vai" | . . . 7251. Iti śrutvā vachas tasya tatas tāṁ Varuṇo 'bravīt | "mamaishā supriyā bhīrur nainām utsrāṣṭum utsahe" | ity ukto Varuṇenātha Nū-*

*radah prāpya vai munim | Utathyam abravīd vākyaṁ nātikṛishṭu-manāḥ
iva | “gale grīhitrā kshipto ’smi Varuṇena mahāmune | na prayackhāt
te bhāryyāṁ yat te kāryyaṁ kurushva tat” | Nāradasya vachah śrūtṵ
kruddhoḥ prājvalad Angirāḥ | 7255. Apibat tejasū vāri vishtabhya sa
mahālapāḥ | pīyamāne tu sarvasmīns toye vai salilēśvaraḥ | suhriddhīḥ
kshobhyamāno vai naivāmunchata tāṁ tadā | tataḥ kruddho ’bravīd bhū-
mim Utathyo brāhmaṇottamaḥ | darśayasca chhalam bhadre shaṭ-sahasra-
śataṁ hradam | tatas tad īriṇaṁ jātāṁ samudraś chārasarpitaḥ | tasmād
deśān nadīm chvīva provāchāsau dvijottamaḥ | “adrīśyā gachha bhīru
traṁ Sarasvatī marūn prati | apunyaḥ esha bhavatu deśas tyaktas trayā
śubhe” | tasmin saṁśoshite deśe Bhadrām ādāya vāripaḥ | 7260. Adadāt
śaraṇaṁ gatvā bhāryyām Angirasāya vai | pratigrihya tu tāṁ bhāryyām
Utathyah sumanā ’bhavat | mumocha cha jagad duḥkhād Varuṇaṁ chaiva
Itihaya | . . . 7262. Mamaishā tapasū prāptā krośatas te jalādhipa |
7263. . . . esha rājann idrīšo vai Utathyo brāhmaṇottamaḥ | bravīmy
aham brūhi vā tvam Utathyāt kshattriyam varām |*

“Angiras, too, himself formerly drank up the waters by his own might. Drinking them up like milk he was not satisfied: and filled the whole earth with a great flood. When he was thus wroth, I abandoned the world and departed, and dwelt for a long time in the agnihotra. The divine Purandara (Indra), who had a passion for Ahalyā, was cursed by (her husband) Gautama; but, from motives of religion, he was not injured.²⁴⁶ The sea, which is filled and purified by water, being cursed by the Brāhmans, became salt.” 7223. The great king-

²⁴⁶ See above pp. 121 and 310; and also pp. 107-113. In this same Anusāsana Purva, verses 2262 ff., there is found another story (told to illustrate the frailty of the female sex) of Indra being enamoured of Ruchi, the wife of the rishi Devasarmān, and of the method which that sage's disciple, Vipula, (to whose care his preceptor's wife had been entrusted during her husband's absence,) devised to preserve his charge from being corrupted by the licentious immortal who was in the habit of assuming manifold Protean disguises in order to carry out his unworthy designs, and to save the female from being “licked up by the king of the gods, as a mischievous dog licks up the butter deposited at the sacrifice” (*Yathā Ruchiṁ nāvālihed devendro Bhṛigu-sattama | kratūv upakite nyastaṁ haviḥ śveva durūtmavīn*), a respectful comparison, truly, to be applied to the chief of the Indian pantheon! The plan which Vipula adopted to save the virtue of his master's wife against her will was to take possession of her body with his own spirit, and to restrain her movements by the force of Yoga, and compel her to say the contrary of what she desired. The story ends by his re-entering his own body, reproaching Indra with his disgraceful behaviour, and compelling him to retire abashed.

dom of the Danḍakas was overthrown by a Brāhman; and the great Kshattriya family of the Tāla-janghas was destroyed by Aurva alone. 7225. And why dost thou, o Arjuna, worship Agni (who is) a Brāhman? for knowest thou not that he bears the oblations of the whole world?" The story of Utathya, of the race of Angiras, is afterwards told: "7241. Bhadrā was the daughter of Soma, and considered to be a person of great beauty. Soma regarded Utathya as a fitting husband for her. She practised severe austerities in order to gain him. Atri (the father of Soma, according to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Wilson, 1st ed. p. 392) then sent for Utathya, and gave her to him, and he married her in due form, presenting large gifts. 7245. The god Varuṇa, however, who had formerly been enamoured of her, came and carried her off from the abode of the hermit, who was living on the banks of the Yamunā, and took her to his own city, to a very wonderful lake of six hundred thousand (yojanas). No city was more delightful than that, adorned as it was by palaces and apsaras, and rich in celestial objects of enjoyment. There the god enjoyed her society. His wife's dishonour being made known to Utathya by Nārada, he requested the latter to go and deliver a severe message to Varuṇa: 'I command thee to let my wife go, who was given to me by Soma; wherefore hast thou carried her away? Thou art a guardian of the world, not a robber.' . . . 7251. Varuṇa answered, 'She is my beloved; I cannot bear to give her up.' Nārada, in no very gratified humour, reported this answer to Utathya, and said, 'Varuṇa took me by the throat, and cast me out. He will not give up thy wife. Take whatever measures thou esteemest proper.' Utathya was greatly incensed (7255), and stopped up and drank all the sea. Still Varuṇa, though urged by his friends, would not give up the female. Utathya then desired the earth to try some other stratagem; and the lake above described was turned into a salt wilderness, and the ocean swept away. The saint then addressed himself to the countries and to the river: 'Sarasvatī, disappear into the deserts; and let this land, deserted by thee, become impure.' After the country had become dried up, Varuṇa submitted himself to Utathya, and brought back Bhadrā. The sage was pleased to get his wife, and released both the world and Varuṇa from their sufferings. . . . He said to the latter (7262) 'This, my wife, was gained by my austerities in spite of thy remonstrances.' 7263. . . . 'Such, o king, I say, was

the Brāhman Utathya; tell me of any Kshattriya superior to him.”

A story is next told (verses 7265 ff.) of the gods being conquered by the Asuras or Dānavas, deprived of all oblations, and stripped of their dignity, and of their coming to earth, where they saw the sage Agastya, and applied to him for protection. The succour they implored was granted to them by the sage, who scorched the Dānavas, expelled them from heaven and earth, and made them fly to the south. Thus were the gods reinstated in their dominion.

We have then, verses 7280-7290, the following legend of Vaśishṭha: The Ādityas were performing a sacrifice, bearing Vaśishṭha in their remembrance, when they were attacked by the Dānavas, called Khalins, who came in tens of thousands to slay them:

Verse 7284. *Tatas tair ardditāḥ devāḥ śaraṇaṁ Vāsavaṁ yayuḥ | sa cha tair vyathitāḥ Sakro Vaśishṭhaṁ śaraṇaṁ yayau | tato 'bhayaṁ dadau tebhyo Vaśishṭho bhagavān ṛishiḥ | tadā tām duḥkhitān jñatvā āṇṛisāmsya-paro munīḥ | ayatnenādūhat sarvān Khalināḥ svena tejasā |*
 7289. *Evam sendrāḥ Vaśishṭhena rakshitās tridivaukasāḥ | Brahma-datta-varāś chaiva hatāḥ daityāḥ mahātmanā | etat karma Vaśishṭhasya kathitaṁ hi mayā 'nagha | bravīmy aham brāhi vā tvam Vaśishṭhāt kshattriyaṁ varam |*

“The gods being distressed by them, resorted to Indra; and he too, being harassed by them, went to Vaśishṭha for help. This reverend and benevolent sage gave them all his protection; and being aware of their distress, without any exertion, burnt up all the Dānavas 7289. Thus were the gods, including Indra, preserved by Vaśishṭha, and the Daityas, even although they had obtained a boon from Brahmā, were slain. Such was the exploit of Vaśishṭha: can you tell me of any Kshattriya who was superior to him?”

A further tale is told of the prowess of the sage Atri, who interposed to deliver the gods and restore light to the celestial luminaries:

Verse 7292. *Ghore tamasy ayudhyanta sahītūḥ deva-dānavāḥ | avidhyata śarais tattrā Svarbhānuḥ Soma-bhāskarau | atha te tamasā grastūḥ vihanante sma dānavaiḥ | devāḥ nṛipati-śārdūla sahaiva Balibhis tadā | asurair badhyamānās te kṣiṇa-prāṇāḥ divaukasāḥ | apaśyanta tapasyantam Atriṁ vipraṁ tapodhanam |* 7297. *Te 'bruvamāś “chandramāḥ bhava | timira-ghnaś cha savitā dasyu-hantā cha no bhava” | evam uktas tadā 'trir vai tamo-nud abhavat śaśi | apaśyat saumya-bhāvūch cha soma-*

*vat-priya-darśanaḥ | dṛiṣṭvā nūtiprabhāṁ somaṁ tathā sūryaṁ cha pār-
thiva | prakāśam akarod Atris tapasā svena saṁyuge | 7300. Jagad
vitimiraṁ chāpi prakāśam akarot tadā | vyajayat śatru-saṁghānś cha
devānāṁ svena tejasā | . . . 7303. Dvijenāgni-dvitiyena japatā charma-
vāsasā | phala-bhākṣheṇa rājarṣhe paśya karmāttriṇā kṛitam | . . .
7304. . . . brūhi vā tvam Atritaḥ kshattriyaṁ varam |*

"The gods and Dānavas fought together in dreadful darkness; when Svarbhānu pierced with his arrows the sun and moon. Enveloped in gloom the gods were slaughtered by the Dānavas, together with the Balis. Being thus slain and exhausted, the celestials beheld the Brāhman Atri employed in austerities;" and invoked his aid in their extremity. He asked what he should do. They reply, verse 2297: "Become the moon, and the gloom-dispelling sun, the slayer of the Dasyus.' Atri then became the gloom-dispelling moon, and in his character as such looked beautiful as Soma. Perceiving the sun and moon to be shorn of their brightness, Atri threw light upon the conflict, (7300) freed the world from darkness, by the power of his austere-fervour, and vanquished the enemies of the gods. . . . 7303. Behold the deed done by Atri, the Brāhman, attended by Agni, the mutterer of prayers, clad in a skin, and living upon fruits. . . . 7304. 'Tell me of any Kshattriya superior to Atri.'"

This story is founded on some verses of the Rig-veda, v. 40, 5 :

*Yat tvā sūryya Svarbhānus tamasā 'vidhyad āsuraḥ | akshetra-vid yathā
mudgho bhuvanāni adidhayaḥ | 6. Svarbhānor adha yad Indra māyūḥ avo
dico varittamānūḥ avāhan | gūḥṇāṁ sūryyaṁ tamasā 'pavratena turiyena
brahmaṇā 'vindad Atriḥ | 8. Grāvno brahmā yujujānaḥ saparyyan kīrīṇā
devān namasopasikshan | Atriḥ sūryasya divi chakṣur ādhāt Svarbhānor
apa māyāḥ aghukṣat | 9. Yaṁ vai sūryyaṁ Svarbhānus tamasā 'vidhyad
āsuraḥ | Atrayas tam anv avindan nahi anye āśakṣvan |*

"When Svarbhānu of the Asura race pierced thee, o Sun, with darkness, all worlds appeared like a man who is bewildered in a region which he does not know. 6. When, Indra, thou didst sweep away the magical arts of Svarbhānu, which were operating beneath the sky, Atri discovered by the fourth text the Sun, which had been hidden by the hostile darkness. 8. Applying the (soma-crushing) stones, performing worship, serving the gods with reverence and praise, the priest Atri placed the eye of the Sun in the sky, and dispelled the illusions of

Svarbhānu. 9. The Atris discovered the Sun which Svarbhānu had pierced with darkness. No others could."

We have next a curious legend about the sage Chyavana, of the race of Bhṛigu :

7306. *Āśvinoḥ pratisaṁśrutya Chyavanāḥ Pākaśūsanam | provācha sahito devaiḥ "somapāu Āśvinau kuru" | Indrāḥ uvācha | "asmābhir ninditāv etau bhavetām somapau katham | devair na sammitāv etau tasmād mairāṁ vadasva naḥ | Āśvibhyāṁ saha nechhāmaḥ somam pātum mahāvratā | yad anyad vakshyase vipra tat karishyāma te vachāḥ" | Chyavanāḥ uvācha | "pibetām Āśvinau somam bhavadbhiḥ sahitāv ubhau | ubhāv etāv api surau sūryya-puttrau sureśvara | 7310. Kriyatām mad-vacho derāḥ yathū vai samudāhṛitam | etad vaḥ kurvatām śreyo bhared naitad akurvatām" | Indrāḥ uvācha | "Āśvibhyāṁ saha somaṁ vai na pāsyāmi dvijottama | pibanto anye yathākūmaṁ nāham pātum ihotsahe" | Chyavanāḥ uvācha | "na chet karishyasi vacho mayoktam bala-sūdano | mayā pramathitāḥ sadyaḥ somam pāsyasi vai makhe" | tataḥ karma samūrabdhaṁ hitāya sahasā 'śvinoḥ | Chyavanena tato mantrair abhihūatāḥ surā 'bhavan | tat tu karma samūrabdhaṁ dṛishṭrendraḥ krodha-mūrchhitāḥ | udyanya vipulūṁ śailāṁ Chyavanāṁ samupādṛavat | 7315. Tathā vajreṇa bhagavān amarśhūkula-lochanāḥ | tam āpatantaṁ dṛishṭvaiva Chyavanas tapasā 'nvitaḥ | abhiḥ siktvā 'stambhayat taṁ sa-vajraṁ saha-parvatam | athendrasya mahāghoraṁ so 'srījat śatrum eva hi | Mayāṁ nāmāhuti-mayaṁ vyūditāsyam mahāmuniḥ | . . . 7319. Jihvā-mūlāsthītās tasya sarve devāḥ sa-vāsarāḥ | timer āsyam anuprāptāḥ yathā matsyāḥ mahārjave | te sammantrya tato deva Madasyāsya samīpagaḥ | abruvan sahitāḥ Śakram prajānāsmāi dvijātaye | Āśvibhyāṁ saha somaṁ cha pibāma vigata-jvarāḥ | tataḥ sa prajātaḥ Śakraś cakūra Chyavanasya tat | Chyavanāḥ kṛitavān etāv Āśvinau soma-pūyinau | tataḥ pratyāharat karma Madam cha vyabhajād muniḥ |*

"Having given a promise to that effect, Chyavana applied, along with the other gods, to Indra, to allow the Āśvins to partake in the soma juice. Indra answered, 'How can they become drinkers of the soma, seeing they are reviled by us, and are not on an equality with the gods? We do not wish to drink soma in their company; but we shall accede to your wishes in any other respect.' Chyavana repeats his request, and urges that the Āśvins also are gods, and the offspring of the Sun. 7310. He adds that it will be well for the gods if they accede to this

demand, and ill if they do not. Indra rejoins that the other gods may drink with the Ásvins if they please, but he cannot bring himself to do it. Chyavana retorts that if he does not, he shall be chastised by the sage, and made to drink soma (with them) at the sacrifice. A ceremony was then instantly begun by Chyavana for the benefit of the Ásvins; and the gods were vanquished by sacred texts. Indra, seeing this rite commenced, became incensed, uplifted a vast mountain (7315), and rushed with his thunderbolt, and with angry eyes, on Chyavana. The sage, however, sprinkling him with water, arrested him with his mountain and thunderbolt. Chyavana then created a fearful open-mouthed monster, called Mada, formed of the substance of the oblation," who is further described as having teeth and grinders of portentous length, and jaws, one of which enclosed the earth and the other the sky: and the gods, including Indra, are said (7319), "to have been at the root of his tongue [ready to be devoured] like fishes in the mouth of a sea monster. Finding themselves in his predicament, the gods took counsel and said to Indra, 'Make salutation to Chyavana, and let us drink soma along with the Ásvins, and so escape from our sufferings.' Indra then, making obeisance, granted the demand of Chyavana, who was thus the cause of the Ásvins becoming drinkers of the soma. He then performed the ceremony, and clove Mada to pieces."

Does this legend mean that this rishi of the Bhṛigu family was the first to introduce the Ásvins within the circle of the Arian worship?

Compare the passages from the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa iv. 1, 5, 1 ff., and from the Vanaparvan of the M. Bh. verses 10316 ff. quoted in my "Contributions to a knowledge of the Vedic theogony and mythology," No. II., in the Journ. R. A. S., for 1866, pp 11 ff.; Ind. St. i. 188, and the Āśvamedhika-parvan of the M. Bh., verses 249 ff., there referred to. • The Ásvins are, in different passages of the Rig-veda, as iii. 58, 7, 9; viii. 8, 5; viii. 35, 7-10, invited to drink the soma-juice.

Vāyu relates to Arjuna yet one more instance of the irresistible power of the Brāhmans:

7327. *Madasyāsyam anuprāptāḥ yadū sendrāḥ divaukasaḥ | tadaiva Chyavaneneha hṛitā teshāṃ vasundharā | ubhau lokau hṛitau matvā te devāḥ duḥkhitāḥ bhṛīṣam | śokārttāś cha mahātmāno Brahmāṇaṃ śaranāṃ yayuḥ | devāḥ ūchuḥ | Madāsya-vyatisiktānāṃ asmākaṃ loka-pūjita | Chyavanena hṛitā bhūmīḥ Kapaiś chaiva divam prabho | Brahmā uvācha |*

7330. *Gachhadhvañ śaraṇaṃ viprān āśu sendrāḥ divaukasaḥ | prasūdyā tām ubhau lokāo avāpsyatha yathā purā | te yayuḥ śaraṇaṃ viprān ūchuḥ te "kān jayāmahe" | ity uktās te dvijān prāhur "jayateha Kapān" iti | "bhūgatān hi vijetāro vāyam" ity abruvan "dvijāḥ" | tataḥ karma samārabdham brāhmaṇāḥ Kapa-nāśanam | tat śrutvā preshito dūto brāhmaṇebhyo Dhanī Kapaiḥ | bhū-gatān brāhmaṇān āha Dhanī Kapa-vacho yathā | "bhavadbhiḥ sadṛśāḥ sarve Kapāḥ kim iha varttate | sarve veda-vidāḥ prājñāḥ sarve cha kratu-yājinaḥ |* 7335. *Sarve satyavratāḥ chaiva sarve tulyāḥ maharshibhiḥ | śrīś chaiva ramataiteshu dhārayanti śrīyaṃ cha te | . . .* 7339. *Ētaiś chānyaś cha bahubhir guṇair yuktān kathāṃ Kapān |* 7340. *Vijeshyatha nicarttadhvañ nirṛittānām śubhañ hi vaḥ" | Brāhmaṇāḥ ūchuḥ | Kapān vāyaṃ vijeshyāmo ye devās te vāyaṃ smṛitāḥ | tasmād badhyāḥ Kapā 'smākam Dhanin yāhi yathāgatam | Dhanī gatvā Kapān āha "na no viprāḥ priyankarāḥ | grihitvā 'strāṇy atho viprān Kapāḥ sarve samādṛavan | samudagra-dhṛajān dṛishṭvā Kapān sarve dvijātayaḥ | vyaśṛjan jvalitān agnīm Kapānām prāṇa-nāśanān | brahma-śṛiṣṭāḥ havyabhujāḥ Kapān hatvā sanātanaḥ | nabhasīva yathā 'bhrāṇi vyarājanta narādhipa | Itatvā vai dānavān devāḥ sarve sambhūya saṃ-yuge | tenūbhyañjanan hi tadā brāhmaṇair nihatān Kapān | athāgamya mahātējaḥ Nārado 'kathayad vibho | yathā hatvā mahābhāgaś tejasā brāhmaṇāḥ Kapāḥ | Nāradasya vachaḥ śrutvā pritāḥ sarve divaukasaḥ | praśaśaṃsuḥ dvijānś chūpi brāhmaṇānś cha yāśasvināḥ |*

"When the gods, including Indra, were enclosed within the mouth of Mada, the earth was taken from them by Chyavana. The gods then considering that they had lost both worlds, in their distress resorted to Brahmā, and said, 'Since we have been swallowed up in the mouth of Mada, the earth has been taken from us by Chyavana, and the heaven by the Kapas.' Brahmā answered, 'Go speedily, ye gods, with Indra, to the Brāhman for help. After propitiating them ye shall regain both worlds.' They did so, and the Brāhman, after ascertaining that the gods would themselves deal with those of their enemies who were on earth, began a ceremony for the destruction of the Kapas. The Kapas upon this sent a messenger to the Brāhman, to say that they themselves were all, like them, skilled in the Vedas, learned, and offerers of sacrifice, all pure in their observances, and all resembling great rishis, etc., etc. How then should the Brāhman be able to conquer them? It would be more for their interest to desist from the attempt. The Brāhman,

however, would not be persuaded; and when, in consequence, the Kapas assailed them, they hurled forth fires by which the Kapas were destroyed. The gods themselves conquered the Dānavas, and learning from Nārada what the illustrious Brāhmans had effected, they sang their praises."³¹⁷

Hearing of all these testimonies to the terrible might of the Brāhmans, Arjuna at length gives in, saying :

7350. *Jivāmy aham brāhmaṇārthaṁ sarvathā satatam prabho | brahmanyō brāhmaṇebhyaś cha praṇamāmi cha nityaśaḥ | Dattātreya-prasādūch cha mayā prāptam idam balam | loke cha paramā kīrttir dharmaś cha charito mahān | aho brāhmaṇa-karmāṇi mayā Māruta tattvataḥ | teayā proktāni kūrṇasyena śrūtāni prayatena cha | Vāyur uvācha | brāhmaṇān kṣātrīya-dharmena pālayasvendriyāni cha | Bhṛigubhyas te bhayaṁ ghorāṁ tat tu kālād bhaviṣyati |*

"I live altogether and always for the sake of the Brāhmans. I am devoted to the Brāhmans, and do obeisance to them continually. And it is through the favour of Dattātreya (a Brāhman) that I have obtained all this power and high renown, and that I have practised righteousness. Thou hast declared to me truly all the acts of the Brāhmans, and I have listened intently." Vāyu then says to him : "Protect the Brāhmans, fulfilling a Kshattriya's function; and restrain your senses. A dreadful cause of apprehension impends over you from the Bhṛigus, but it will only take effect after some time." This last remark may have been introduced to bring this story into harmony with the other legend about the destruction of Arjuna and the Kshattriyas.

The narrative, which has just been quoted, is, as I have already stated, preceded by a panegyric of some length pronounced by Bhīṣma on the Brāhmans (verses 7163-7184), of which the following are specimens :

7163. *Brāhmaṇānāṁ paribhavaḥ sūdayed api devatāḥ |* 7164. *Te hi lokān imān sarvān dhūrayanti manishinaḥ |* 7175. *Chandane mala-panke cha bhojane'bhøjane samāḥ | vāso yeshāṁ dukūlāṁ cha śāna-kṣaumañjināni cha |* 7177. *Adaivaṁ daivataṁ kuryur daivataṁ vā'py adaivatam | lokān anyān śṛijeyus te lokapālāṁś cha kopitāḥ |* 7179. *Devānāṁ api ye devāḥ kārṇaṁ kārṇasya cha |* 7181. *Avidvān brāhmaṇo devaḥ . . . | vidvān bhūyas tato devaḥ pūrṇa-sūgara-sannibhaḥ |*

"The prowess of the Brāhmans can destroy even the gods. 7164.

³¹⁷ This translation is a good deal condensed.

Those wise beings uphold all these worlds. 7175. To them it is indifferent whether they are perfumed with sandal wood or deformed with mire, whether they eat or fast, whether they are clad in silk, or in sackcloth or skins. 7177. They can turn what is not divine into what is divine, and the converse; and can in their anger create other worlds with their guardians. 7179. They are the gods of the gods; and the cause of the cause. 7181. An ignorant Brāhman is a god, whilst a learned Brāhman is yet more a god, like the full ocean." (Compare the similar eulogies in p. 130, above.)

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, sections 52 ff., we have the story of Paraśurāma, in connection with that of Viśvāmitra, yet once more handled. Yudhishṭhira says he is very curious to know something more about these two personages:

2718. *Katham esha samutpanno Rāmaḥ satya-parākramaḥ | katham brahmarshi-vaṁśo 'yaṁ kshattrā-dharmā vyajāyata | tad asya sambhavaṁ rājan nikhilenānukīrttaya | Kūśikāch cha katham vaṁśāt kshattrūd vai brāhmaṇo 'bhavat | aho prabhūvaḥ sumahān āsīt vai sumahātmanaḥ | Rāmasya cha nara-vyūghra Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hi | katham putirān atikramya teshāṁ napṛiṣṭu athūbhavat | esha doṣhaḥ sūtān hitvā tat tvaṁ vyākhyātum arhasi |*

"How was this valiant Rāma, descended from the family of a Brāhman-rishi, born with the qualities of a Kshattriya? Tell me the whole story: and how did a Brāhman spring from the Kshattriya race of Kūśika? Great was the might of Rāma, and of Viśvāmitra. How did it happen that, passing over the sons [of Rīchika and Kūśika], this defect showed itself in their grandsons?"

Then there follows a long dialogue related by Bhīṣma as having taken place between king Kūśika and the sage Chyavana. The latter, it seems, "foreseeing that this disgrace was about to befall his race [from connection with the Kūśikas], and entertaining, in consequence, after he had weighed all the good and evil, and the strength and weakness (on either side), the desire of burning up that whole family" (verse 2723. *Etaṁ doṣham purā dṛiṣṭvā Bhūrgavaś Chyavanas tadā | āgāminam mahābuddhiḥ sva-vaṁśe muni-sattamaḥ | niśchitya manasā sarvaṁ guṇa-doṣham balūbalaṁ | dagdhu-kāmaḥ kulāṁ sarvaṁ Kūśikānāṁ tapodhanaḥ |*), came to Kūśika. Chyavana is welcomed and treated with great attention, and receives from Kūśika the offer of all his king-

dom, etc. The saint, however, does not requite this honour with corresponding kindness, but makes the king and his wife perform many menial offices, rub his feet, attend while he sleeps, bring him food, and draw him in a chariot, while he lacerates their backs with a goad. All this is submitted to so patiently, that the sage is propitiated, addresses them in kindly tones, and touches their wounded bodies with his godlike hands. After creating a magical golden palace, with all the accompaniments of pleasure (2826 ff.), in order to give them a conception of heaven, (2892 ff.) the sage offers to bestow any boon the king may choose; and to solve any of his doubts. Kuśika asks the reason of the sage's unaccountable procedure. Chyavana answers that he had heard from Brahmā that there would be "a confusion of families in consequence of the hostility of Brāhmans and Kshattriya's, and that a grandson of great glory and heroism would be born to Kuśika" (verse 2878. *Brahma-kshattra-virodhena bhavitā kula-sankarah | pautras te bhavitā rājāns tejo-viryya-samanvitah*); that he had intended in consequence to burn up the race of the Kuśikas, but that the king had come so well out of the severe ordeal to which he had been subjected, that the sage had become thoroughly pacified, and would grant the boon which Kuśika desired :

2897. *Bhaviṣhyaty eṣha te kāmāḥ Kauśikāt Kauśiko dvijaḥ | tritīyaṃ puruṣaṃ tubhyaṃ brāhmaṇatvaṃ gamiṣhyati | vaṃśas te pāṭhiva-śreṣṭha Bhṛigūṇāṃ eva tejasā | pautras te bhavitā vipras tapasvī pāvana-dyutiḥ | yaḥ sa-deva-manuṣhyānāṃ bhayaṃ utpādayiṣhyati |*

"This thy desire shall be fulfilled; from a Kauśika a Kauśika Brāhman shall arise: in the third generation thy race shall attain to Brāhmanhood by the might of the Bhṛigus. Thy son's son shall become a Brāhman, a devotee, splendid as fire, who shall alarm both gods and men." Kuśika being anxious to know how all this was to be brought to pass, Chyavana informs him :

2995. *Bhṛigūṇāṃ kshattriyaḥ yājyāḥ nityaṃ etaj janādhipa | te cha bhedaṃ gamiṣyanti daiva-yuktena hetunā | kshattriyaś cha Bhṛigūṇa sarvān badhiṣhyanti narādhipa | āgarbhād anukṛintanto daiva-daṇḍa nipīḍitāḥ | tataḥ utpatsyate 'smākaṃ kula-gotra-vivardhanaḥ | Ūro nāma mahāteja jvalanārka-sama-dyutiḥ | sa trilokya-vināśāya kopāgniṃ janayishyati | mahiṃ sa-parvata-vanāṃ yaḥ karishyati bhasmasāt | kanchit kalāṃ tu valniṃ cha sa eva śamayishyati | samudre vaduvā-vaktre prak-*

shipya muni-sattamaḥ | 2910. *Puttraṁ tasya mahārāja Rīchikam Bhṛigu-nandanam* | *sākshāt kṛtsno dhanur-vedaḥ samupasthāsyato 'nagha* | *kshattriyāṇām abhāvāya daiva-yuktena hetunā* | *sa tu tam pratigrihyaiva puttraṁ sankrāmayishyati* | *Jamadagnau mahābhūge tapasū bhāvitātmani* | *sa chāpi Bhṛigu-sārdūlas tam vedaṁ dhārayishyati* | *kulāt tu tava dharmātman kanyāṁ so 'dhigamishyati* | *udbhāvanārtham bhavato vaṁśasya Bharatarshabha* | *Gādher duhitaram prāpya pauṭtrīṁ tava mahā-tapāḥ* | *brāhmaṇāṁ kshattria-dharmāṇam puttram utpādayishyati* | 2915. *Kshattriyāṁ vipra-karmāṇam Vṛihaspatim ivaṁjasā* | *Viśvāmitraṁ tava kule Gādheḥ puttraṁ sudharmikam* | *tapasū mahatā yuktam pradāsyati mahādyaute* | *striyaṁ tu kārāṇāṁ tatra parivartte bhaviṣyataḥ* | *Pitū-maha-niyogād vai nānyathaitad bhaviṣyati* | *trīṭhye puruṣe tubhyam brāhmaṇatvam upaishyati* | *bhavitā tvaṁ cha sambandhī Bhṛigūṇām bhāvitātmanām* | . . . 2923. *Elat te kathilaṁ sarvaṁ aśeṣeṇa mayā nrīpa* | *Bhṛigūnaṁ Kuśikānāṁ cha abhisambandha-kārāṇam* | *yathoktam ṛṣiṇā chāpi tadā tad abhavad nrīpa* | *janma Rāmasya cha muner Viśvāmitrasya chaiva hī* |

"The Bhṛigus have always been the priests of the Kshattriyas; but these will become hostile to each other for a fated reason. The Kshattriyas shall slay all the Bhṛigus, even to children in the womb, being oppressed by a divine nemesis. Then shall arise the glorious Ūrva,²⁴³ like the sun in splendour, who shall augment the glory of our race. He shall create a fire of wrath for the destruction of the three worlds, which shall reduce the earth with its mountains and forests to ashes. After a time he will extinguish the fire, throwing it into the ocean into the mouth of Vāḍavā (the submarine fire). Into his son Rīchika shall

²⁴³ Ūrva is here said (verse 2907) to belong to the race of Chyavana, but whether as a near or remote descendant is not stated. In verse 2910 Rīchika is said to be the son of Ūrva. In the Ādiparvan, verses 2610 ff., the matter is somewhat differently stated: *Arushī tu Manoh kanyā tasya patnī yāsavīnī* | *Aurvas tasyaṁ sambhavad ūrum bhittvā mahāyāsūḥ* | *mahātejūḥ mahāvīryyo bālāḥ eva guṇair yutaḥ* | *Rīchikas tasya putras tu Jamadagnis tato 'bhavat* | "Arushī, the daughter of Manu, was the wife of the sage (Chyavana); of her was the illustrious Aurva born, having split his mother's thigh. He was great in glory and might, and from his childhood endowed with eminent qualities. Rīchika was his son, and Rīchika's was Jamadagni." Here Aurva is said to derive his name from having divided his mother's thigh (*ūrva*); and no allusion is made to Ūrva, though the same person appears to be meant. In the passage of the Anuśāsana-parvan, however, we have an Ūrva, the father of Rīchika, whose patronymic will thus be Aurva; as it is, in fact, in the Vishṇu Purāṇa, as quoted above in p. 352.

enter the entire embodied Dhanur-veda (science of archery), for the destined destruction of the Kshattriyas. This science he shall transmit to his great son Jamadagni, whose mind shall be spiritualized by devotion, and who shall possess that Veda. He (Richika) shall obtain [for his wife] a maiden of thy family, to prolong thy race. This great devotee, wedding thy grand-daughter, the daughter of Gādhi, shall beget a Brāhman (*i.e.* Paraśurāma), fulfilling the functions of a Kshattriya; (2915) and shall bestow on thy family a Kshattriya who shall perform the functions of a Brāhman, Viśvāmitra, the son of Gādhi, an austere devotee, and glorious as Vṛihaspati. The two wives shall be the cause of this interchange of characters. According to the decree of Brahmā all this shall so happen. Brāhmanhood shall come to thee in the third generation, and thou shalt become connected with the spiritual-minded Bhṛiguṣa.” 2923. “Thus (concludes Bhīṣma) have I told thee at length the cause of the connection between the Bhṛiguṣa and the Kuśikas. All this was accordingly fulfilled in the births of Paraśurāma and Viśvāmitra.”

Is this legend intended to account for a real fact? Was Paraśurāma of a sacerdotal tribe, and yet by profession a warrior, just as Viśvāmitra was conversely of royal extraction, and yet a priest by profession?

According to the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3 (Wilson, 4to. ed. pp. 416, 417), Arjuna was of the race of Yadu, and the ninth in descent from Haihaya, the great-grandson of that prince. It is there said of him:

Kṛitavīryyūḍ Arjunaḥ sapta-dvīpapatir bāhu-sahasrī jājne yo 'sau bhagavad-aṁśam Atri-kula-prasūtaṁ Dattātrēyākhyam ārādhya bāhu-sahasram adharma-sevā-nivāraṇaṁ dharmena prithivījayaṁ dharmataḥ chānupālanaṁ arātibhyo 'parājayaṁ akhila-jagat-prakhyāta-purushāch cha mṛityum ity etān varān abhilashitavān lebhe cha | tena iyaṁ aśeṣa-dvīpocātī prithivī samyak paripūlītā | daśa-yajna-sahasraṇy asāv ayajat | tasya cha śloko 'dyāpi gīyate “na nūnaṁ kūrtaṭavīryasya gatiṁ yāsyanti pārthivāḥ | yajñair dūnair tapobhir vā praśrayeṇa dāmena cha” | anashta-dravyatā tasya rājye 'bhavat | 4. Evaṁ panchāṣṭī-sahasraṇy abhūn avyāhatārogya-śrī-bala-parākrama rājyam akarot | Mahiṣmatyām dig-vijayā-bhyūgato Narmadā-jalāvagūhana-kṛīḍā-nipāna-madākulena ayatnenaiva tena aśeṣa-deva-dāitya-gaṇikharveṣa-jayodbhūta-madāvalepo 'pi Rāvaṇaḥ paśur iva baddhaḥ svanagaraikānte sthūpitāḥ | 5. Yaḥ panchāṣṭī-varsha-sahasropalakṣaṇa-kālīvasūne bhagavan-nārāyaṇāṁśena Paraśurāmena upasaṁhṛitāḥ |

"From Kṛitavīrya sprang Arjuna, who was lord of the seven dvīpas [circular and concentric continents of which the earth is composed], and had a thousand arms. Having worshipped a portion of the divine Being, called Dattātreyā, sprung from the race of Atri, he sought and obtained these boons, viz. a thousand arms, the power of restraining wrong by justice, the conquest of the earth, and the disposition to rule it righteously, invincibility by enemies, and death at the hands of a man renowned over the whole world. By him this earth, with all its dvīpas, was perfectly governed. He offered ten thousand sacrifices. To this day this verse is repeated respecting him : ' No other king shall ever equal Kārtavīrya in regard to sacrifices, liberality, austerities, courtesy, and self-restraint.' In his reign no property was ever lost. 4. Thus he ruled for eighty-five thousand years with unbroken health, prosperity, strength, and valour. When he was excited by sporting in the Narmadā and by drinking wine, he had no difficulty in binding like a beast Rāvaṇa, who had arrived in Māhishmatī in his career of conquest, and who was filled with arrogance, arising from the pride of victory over all the gods, daityas, and gandharva chiefs, and imprisoning him in a secret place in his capital. At the end of his reign of eighty five thousand years Arjuna was destroyed by Paraśurāma, who was a portion of the divine Nārāyaṇa."

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, ix. 23, 20-27, assigns to him the same descent, and relates of him nearly the same particulars. Verse 23 says : *Arjunaḥ Kṛitavīryasya sapta-dvīpeśvaro 'bhavat | Dattātreyād Hariḥ aṁśāt prāpta-yoga-mahāguṇaḥ* | "Arjuna was the son of Kṛitavīrya, and ruler of the seven dvīpas. He obtained the great attribute of *Yoga* (supernatural powers arising from devotion) from Dattātreyā, who was a portion of Hari," etc.

The legend of Paraśurāma, as related, is of course fabulous. Not to speak of the miraculous powers which are ascribed to this hero, and the incredible number of the exterminations which he is said to have executed, we cannot even suppose it probable that the Brāhmins should in general have been sufficiently powerful and warlike to overcome the Kshatriyas by force of arms. But the legend may have had some small foundation in fact. Before the provinces of the sacerdotal and military classes were accurately defined, there may have been cases in which ambitious men of the former successfully

aspired to kingly dominion, just as scions of royal races became distinguished as priests and sages. But even without this assumption, the existence of such legends is sufficiently explained by the position which the Brāhmans eventually occupied. With the view of maintaining their own ascendancy over the minds of the chiefs on whose good will they were dependent, and of securing for themselves honour and profit, they would have an interest in working upon the superstitious feelings of their contemporaries by fabricating stories of supernatural punishments inflicted by their own forefathers on their royal oppressors, as well as by painting in lively colours the prosperity of those princes who were submissive to the spiritual order.

CHAPTER V.

RELATION OF THE BRAHMANICAL INDIANS TO THE NEIGHBOURING TRIBES, ACCORDING TO MANU AND THE PURANAS.

I now propose to enquire what account the Indian writers give of the origin of those tribes which were not comprehended in their own polity, but with which, as dwelling within, or adjacent to, the boundaries of Hindustan, their countrymen were, in ancient times, brought into continual and familiar contact.

It appears to have been the opinion of Manu, the great authority in all matters regarding the Hindu religion and institutions in their full development, that there was no original race of men except the four castes of Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras; and that all other nations were derived from these. His own words (x. 4) are these: *Brāhmaṇaḥ kshattriyo vaiśyas trayo varṇāḥ dvijātayaḥ | chaturthaḥ ekajātis tu sūdro nāsti tu pañchamaḥ* | “Three castes, the Brāhman, the Kshattriya, and the Vaiśya, are twice-born; the fourth, the Sūdra, is once-born; and there is no fifth.” On the last clause of this verse Kullūka Bhaṭṭa annotates thus: *Pañchamaḥ punar varṇo nāsti sankīrṇa-jātinām tv aśvatara-vad mātā-pitṛi-jāti-vyatikṛta-jāty-antaravād na varṇatvam | ayaṁ cha jāty-antaropadeśaḥ śāstre saṁvya-vaharaṇārthaḥ* | “There is no fifth caste; for caste cannot be predicated of the mixed tribes, from the fact that, like mules, they belong to another species, distinct from that of their father and mother. And this reference, which is made in the Śāstras to castes other than the four, is merely for the sake of convenience and conformity to common usage.”

Accordingly, in the following description which Manu gives in the same chapter of the rise of the inferior castes, they are all, even the

very lowest, such as Nishādas and Chāṇḍālas, derived from the mixture the four so-called original castes. Thus, in verse 8 : *Brāhmaṇād vaiśya-kanyāyām ambashṭho nāma jāyate | nishādaḥ śūdra-kanyāyām yaḥ parāśava uchyate* | "From a Brāhmaṇ father and a Vaiśya mother springs an Ambashṭha: from a Brāhmaṇ father and a Śūdra mother is born a Nishāda, called also Parāśava."¹ Again, in verse 12. *Śūdrād āyogavaḥ kshattā chāṇḍālaś chāḍhamo nṛiṇām | vaiśya-rājanya-viprāsu jāyante varṇa-sankarāḥ* | "From a Śūdra, by women of the Vaiśya, Kshattriya, and Brāhmaṇ castes are born those mixed classes, the Āyogava, the Kshattri, and the Chāṇḍāla, lowest of men." Again, in verse 20 : *Dvijātayaḥ sarvaṇāsu janayanty avratāṁs tu yān | tān sāvitṛi-paribhrashtān vrātyāḥ iti vinirdīśet* | "Persons whom the twice-born beget on women of their own classes, but who omit the prescribed rites, and have abandoned the gāyatrī, are to be designated as Vrātyas."² In the next three verses the inferior tribes, which spring from the Brāhmaṇ Vrātya, the Kshattriya Vrātya, and the Vaiśya Vrātya respectively, are enumerated.

In verses 43 and 44 it is stated : *Sanakais tu kriyā-lopād imāḥ*

¹ It does not appear how the account of the origin of the Nishāda race from king Veṇa, given above in pp. 301 and 303, can be reconciled with this theory of Manu; unless recourse be had to the explanation that that story relates to the Svāyambhuva Manvantara. But Manu's narrative seems to refer to the same period. See above, p. 39. If the Vedic expressions *panchajanāḥ* and the other corresponding phrases signifying "the five tribes" be rightly interpreted of the "four castes, and the Nishādas," we might understand this as intimating that the Nishādas had at one time been regarded as a distinct race. But the phrase is variously understood by the old Vedic commentators; as has been shewn above, p. 177.

² Manu says, ii. 38 f. : *Ā-shoḍaśād brāhmaṇasya sāvitrī nūtiparttate | ā-dvāviṃśat kshattrabhandhor ā-chaturviṃśater viśaḥ | ataḥ ūrddhaṁ trayo'py ete yathā-kūlam asaṁskṛitāḥ | sāvitrī-patitāḥ vrātyāḥ bhavanty āryya-nigarkhitāḥ* | "The gāyatrī should not, in the case of a Brāhmaṇ, be deferred beyond the sixteenth year; nor in the case of a Kshattriya beyond the twenty-second; nor in that of a Vaiśya beyond the twenty-fourth. After these periods youths of the three classes, who have not been invested, become fallen from the gāyatrī, Vrātyas, condemned by respectable men (Āryyas)." In the following verse of the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2621, a different origin is ascribed to the Vrātyas : *Chāṇḍālo vrātya-vaidyau cha brāhmaṇyām kshattriyānu cha | vaiśyāyām chaiva śūdrasya lakshyante pasadīs trayāḥ* | "The three outcaste classes are the Chāṇḍāla, the Vrātya, and the Vaidya, begotten by a Śūdra on females of the Brāhmaṇ, Kshattriya, and Vaiśya castes respectively." A Vrātya, therefore, according to this account, is the son of a Śūdra man and a Kshattriya woman. On the Vrātyas, see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 33, 52, 133, 139, 445, 446, etc.

kshattriya-jātayaḥ | vṛishalatvaṁ gatāḥ loke brāhmaṇādarśanena cha | Paundrakāś chodra-dravidāḥ Kāmbojāḥ Yavanāḥ Sakāḥ | Pāradaḥ Pahlavāś Chīnāḥ Kirātāḥ Daradāḥ Khasāḥ | "The following tribes of Kshattriyas have gradually sunk into the state of Vṛishalas (outcasts), from the extinction of sacred rites, and from having no communication with Brāhmins; viz. Paundrakas, Oḍras, Draviḍas, Kāmbojas, Yavanas, Sakas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Chīnas, Kirātas, Daradas, and Khasas."

The same thing is affirmed in the Mahābhārata, Anuśāsanaparvan, verses 2103 f.: *Sakāḥ Yavana-kāmbojās tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayaḥ | vṛishalatvam parigatāḥ brāhmaṇānām adarśanāt | Drāviḍāś chu Kalindāś cha Pulindāś chāpy Uśīnarāḥ | Kolisarpāḥ Māhishakāś tās tāḥ kshattriya-jātayaḥ ityādi |* "These tribes of Kshattriyas, viz. Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Drāviḍas, Kalindas, Pulindas, Uśīnaras, Kolisarpas, and Māhishakas, have become Vṛishalas from seeing no Brāhmins." This is repeated in verses 2158–9, where the following additional tribes are named: Mekalas, Lāṭas, Konvaśiras, Saundhikas, Darvas, Chauras, Savaras, Barbaras, and Kirātas, and the cause of degradation is, as in verse 2103, restricted to the absence of Brāhmins. (Then follow the lines (2160 ff.) in glorification of the Brāhmins, already quoted in p. 130.)

The Yavanas are said in the Mahābhārata, Ādiparvan, section 85, verse 3533, "to be descended from Turvasu, the Vaibhojas from Druhyu, and the Mlechha tribes from Anu" (*Yados tu Yādavāḥ jātās Turvasor Yavanāḥ smṛitāḥ | Druhyoḥ sūtās tu Vaibhojāḥ Anos tu mlechha-jātayaḥ |*). Is it meant by this that the Yavanas are not to be reckoned among the Mlechhas? Their descent from Turvasu is not however, necessarily in conflict with the assertion of the authorities above quoted, that they are degraded Kshattriyas.

I shall not attempt to determine who the Yavanas, and other tribes mentioned in the text, were.

The verse which succeeds that last quoted from Manu is the following: 45. *Mukha-bāhūru-paṇḍ-jānām yāḥ loke jātayo vahiḥ | mlechha-vāchaś chāryya-vāchaś sarve te dasyavaḥ smṛitāḥ |* "Those tribes which are outside of the classes produced from the mouth, arms, thighs, and feet, [of Brāhmā, i.e. Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras,] whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus." The interpretation to be given to this verse turns

upon the sense which we assign to "outside" (*vāhiḥ*). Does it mean that the Dasyus were of a stock originally distinct from that of the four primeval castes, and therefore altogether separate from those tribes which sprang from the intermixture of those four castes, or which, by the neglect of sacred rites, apostatized from their communion? Or does it merely mean that the Dasyus became eventually excluded from the fellowship of the four castes? If the latter sense be adopted, then Dasyu will be little else than a general term embracing all the tribes enumerated in verses 43 and 44. The commentator Kullūka understands the word in the latter sense. His words are: *Brāhmaṇa-kshattriya-vaiśya-śūdrāṇāṃ kṛiyā-lopādīnā yāḥ jātayo vāhyāḥ jātāḥ mlechha-bhāṣā-yuktāḥ āryya-bhāṣhopetāḥ vā te dasyavaḥ sarve smṛitāḥ* | "All the tribes, which by loss of sacred rites, and so forth, have become outcasts from the pale of the four castes, Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras; whether they speak the language of the Mlechhas or of the Āryas, are called Dasyus." His view is confirmed by a short passage in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, quoted above (p. 358), where Viśvāmitra, speaking to his sons, says: "Let your descendants possess the furthest ends (of the country)," and the author of the Brāhmaṇa adds: "These are the numerous border-tribes, the Andhras, Puṇḍras, Śabaras, Pulindas, Mūtibas. Most of the Dasyus are sprung from Viśvāmitra." Here the writer of this ancient Brāhmaṇa connects together certain tribes named either in Manu, or in the Mahābhārata, as degraded Kshattriyas, with the appellation Dasyu, thus intimating that the latter was a general name embracing all the former. This view is further confirmed by the following lines of the Mahābhārata, book ii. verses 1031-2: *Daradān saha Kāmbojair ajayat Pākāśāsaniḥ | prāgut-tarāṇ diśāṃ ye cha vasanty āśritya Dasyavaḥ* | "The son of Indra conquered the Daradas with the Kāmbojas, and the Dasyus who dwell in the north-east region;" and still more by the annexed verses from the Droṇaparvan, of the same epic poem, 4747: *Kāmbojānām sahasraścheha Sakānām cha viśāmpate | Śavarāṇām Kirātānām Varvaraṇām tathaiva cha | agamya-rūpām pṛithivīm māṃsa-śoṇita-karddamām | kṛitavāṃs tattva Śaineyaḥ kṣhapayaṃś tāvakam balam | Dasyūnām sa-śirastrāṇaiḥ śrobhir lūna-mūrdhajāiḥ | dīrgha-kūrchair mahi kīrṇā vivarhair aṇḍajair iva* | "Saineya, destroying thy host, converted the beautiful earth into a mass of mud with the flesh and blood of thousands of Kāmbojas,

Sakas, Sabaras, Kirātas, and Varvaras. The ground was covered with the shorn and hairless but long-bearded heads of the Dasyus, and their helmets, as if with birds bereft of their plumes." Here the word Dasyu is evidently a general term for the tribes named just before. Some of these same tribes had previously been called Mlechhas in verses 4716, 4723, and 4745. See also Sabhāp. 1198 f.

There is a passage in the Sāntiparvan, section 65, lines 2429 ff., which is worth quoting, as it shows that the Brāhmins of that age regarded the Dasyus as owing allegiance to Brahmanical institutions. King Māndhātṛi had performed a sacrifice in the hope of obtaining a vision of Viṣṇu; who accordingly appeared to him in the form of Indra (verse 2399). The following is a part of their conversation. Māndhātṛi asks :

2429. *Yavanāḥ Kirātāḥ Gāndhārāś Chināḥ Savara-varvarāḥ | Śākās
Tushārāḥ Kaṅkāś cha Pahlavāś chāndhra-madrakāḥ |* 2430. *Paundrāḥ
Pulindāḥ Ramaṣṭhāḥ Kāmbojāś chaiva sarvaśaḥ | brahma-kshattra-prasū-
tāś cha vaiśyāḥ śūdrāś cha mānavāḥ | katham dharmānāḥ charishyanti
sarve vishaya-vāsinaḥ | mad-vidhaiś cha katham sthūpyāḥ sarve vai dasyu-
jīvināḥ | etad ichhāmy ahaṁ śrotum bhagavaṁś tat bravīhi me | tram ba-
ndhu-bhūto hy asmākaṁ kshattriyāṇāṁ sureścara | Indrāḥ uvācha | mātā-
pitror hi śūśrūṣhā karttavyā sarva-dasyubhiḥ | āchāryya-guru-śūśrūṣhā
tathairvāśrama-vāsinaṁ | bhūmipānāṁ cha śūśrūṣhā karttavyā sarva-dasyu-
bhiḥ | veda-dharma-kriyāś chaiva teshāṁ dharmo vidhiyate |* 2435. *Pitri-
yajñāś tathā kūrṇāḥ prapāś cha śayanāni cha | dānāni cha yathā-kālāṁ
dvijebhyo viśrijet sadā | ahimsā satyam akrodho vṛtti-dāyānupālanaṁ |
bharaṇaṁ puttra-dārṇḍyāṁ śaucaṁ adroha eva cha | dakṣiṇā sarva-
yajñānāṁ dātavyā bhūtim ichhatā | pakayajñāḥ mahārṇhāś cha dātavyāḥ
sarva-dasyubhiḥ | etāny evamprakārāṇi vihitāni purā 'nagha | sarva-
lokasya karmāṇi karttavyāṇiḥa pṛthiva | Mandhātā uvācha | dṛṣyante
mūnusho loka sarva-varṇeshu Dasyavaḥ | lingāntare varṭtāmānāḥ āsra-
meshu chaturshv api | Indrāḥ uvācha |* 2440. *Vinashtāyāṁ daṇḍa-nityāṁ
rāja-dharme nirākṛito | sampramukhyanti bhūtāni rāja-daurātmyato 'na-
gha | asankhyatāḥ bhaviṣhyanti bhikṣhavo linginaś tathā | āśramāṇāṁ
vikalpāś cha nivṛtte 'smin kṛite yuge | aśṛīnvantaḥ purāṇānāṁ dharmā-
nāṁ paramāḥ gatīḥ | utpatham pratipatsyante kāma-manyu-samīritāḥ |*

“The Yavanas, Kirātas, Gāndhāras, Chinas, Savaras, Varvaras, Sakas, Tushāras, Kaṅkas, Pahlavas, Andhras, Madras, Paundras, Pu-

lindas, Ramathas, Kāmbojas, men sprung from Brāhmins, and from Kshattriyas, persons of the Vaiśya and Sūdra castes—how shall all these people of different countries practise duty, and what rules shall kings like me prescribe for those who are living as Dasyus? Instruct me on these points; for thou art the friend of our Kshattriya race.’ Indra answers: ‘All the Dasyus should obey their parents, their spiritual directors, persons practising the rules of the four orders, and kings. It is also their duty to perform the ceremonies ordained in the Vedas. They should sacrifice to the Pitṛis, construct wells, buildings for the distribution of water, and resting places for travellers, and should on proper occasions bestow gifts on the Brāhmins. They should practise innocence, veracity, meekness, purity, and inoffensiveness; should maintain their wives and families; and make a just division of their property. Gifts should be distributed at all sacrifices by those who desire to prosper. All the Dasyus should offer costly pāka oblations. Such duties as these, which have been ordained of old, ought to be observed by all people.’ Mādhātṛi observes: ‘In this world of men, Dasyus are to be seen in all castes, living, under other garbs, even among men of the four orders (*āśramas*).’ Indra replies: ‘When criminal justice has perished, and the duties of government are disregarded, mankind become bewildered through the wickedness of their kings. When this Kṛita age has come to a close, innumerable mendicants and hypocrites shall arise, and the four orders become disorganized. Disregarding the excellent paths of ancient duty, and impelled by passion and by anger, men shall fall into wickedness,” etc. In these last lines it is implied that the Brahmanical polity of castes and orders was fully developed in the Kṛita [or golden] age. This idea, however, is opposed to the representations which we find in some though not in all other passages. See above, the various texts adduced in the first chapter.

In the Vishṇu Purāṇa, Bhāratavarsha (India) is said to “have its eastern border occupied by the Kīrātās; and the western by the Yavanas; while the middle is inhabited by Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, engaged in their several fixed occupations of sacrifice, war, trade, etc.” (Vishṇu Purāṇa, ii. 3, 7. *Parve Kīrātāḥ yasyānte paścime Yavanāḥ sthitāḥ | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ madhye sūdrāḥ cha bhāgaśaḥ | ijyā-yuddha-vanijyadyair varttayanto vyavasthītāḥ* |).

Manu's account of the origin of the Yavanas, Sakas, Kāmbojas, etc., corresponds with the tenor of the following story, which we find in the fourth book of the Vishṇu Purāṇa, sect. 3. Bāhu, the seventh king in descent from Hariśchandra (see above, p. 379) was overcome by the Haihāyas and Tūlajanghas,³ and compelled to fly with his queens to the forests, where he died. After his death one of his wives gave birth to a son, who received the name of Sagara. When he had grown up, the youth learnt from his mother all that had befallen his father.

Para. 18. *Tataḥ pitṛi-rājya-haranāmarshito Haihaya-Tūlajanghādi-badhāya pratijnām akarot prāyaśaścha Haihayān jaghāna | Ś'aka-Yavana-Kāmboja-Pārada -Pahlavāḥ hanyamānūs tat-kula-guruṁ Vaśiṣṭham śaraṇaṁ yayuh |* 19. *Atha etān Vaśiṣṭho jīvan-mṛitakān kṛtvā Sagaram āha "vatsa vatsa alam ebhir ati-jīvan-mṛitakair anusṛitaiḥ |* 20. *Ete cha mayā eva tvat-pratijñā-paripālānāya nija-dharma-dviija-sanga-parityāgaṁ kūrītāḥ" |* 21. *Sa "tathā" iti tad guru-vachanam abhinandya teshūṁ veshānyatvam akārayat | Yavanān apamūḍita-śiraśo 'rddhamuṇḍān Śakān pralamba-keśūn Pārādūn Pahlavāṁś cha śmaśru-dharān niḥ-svādhyāya-vāṣaṭkārān etān anyānś cha kṣhatṛiyyān cakāra | te cha nija-dharma-parityāgād brāhmaṇaiś parityāktāḥ mlechhatāṁ yayuh |*

"Being vexed at the loss of his paternal kingdom, he vowed to exterminate the Haihāyas and other enemies who had conquered it. Accordingly he destroyed nearly all the Haihāyas. When the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas were about to undergo a similar fate, they had recourse to Vaśiṣṭha, the king's family-priest, who interposed in their behalf in these words addressed to Sagara, representing them as virtually dead: 'You have done enough, my son, in the way of pursuing these men, who are as good as dead. In order that your vow might be fulfilled, I have compelled them to abandon the duties of their caste, and all association with the twice-born.' Agreeing to his spiritual guide's proposal, Sagara compelled these tribes to alter their costume. He made the Yavanas shave their heads, the Sakas shave half their heads, the Pāradas wear long hair, and the Pahlavas beards. These and other Kṣhatṛiyas he deprived of the

³ See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, 4to. edit., p. 416 and 418 note. In the note to p. 418 the Āvāntyas are mentioned, on the authority of the Vāyu Purāṇa, as being a branch of the Haihāyas. In Manu, x. 21, the Āvāntyas are said to be descended from Brāhmaṇa Vṛātyas.

study of the Vedas, and the vashatkāra. In consequence of their abandonment of their proper duties, and of their desertion by the Brāhmins, they became Mlechhas."

This story is also related in the Harivaṁśa, from which I extract the concluding part of the narrative :

773. *Aurvas tu jātakarmādi tasya kṛitvā mahātmanah | adhyāpya ve-
dān akhilān tato 'stram pratyapūdayat | āgneyaṁ tu mahābāhur amarair
api dussaham | sa tenāstra-balenājanu balena cha samanvitaḥ | Haihayān
nijaghānāsu kruddho Rudraḥ paśūn iwa | ājahūra cha lokeshu kīrtiṁ
kīrtimatām varaḥ | tataḥ Sakān sa-yavanān Kāmbojān Pāradaṁs tathā |
Pahlavāṁś chaiva niśśeshān karttūṁ vyavasitaḥ kila | te badhyamānāḥ
vireṇa Sagarena mahātmanā | Vasishṭhaṁ śaraṇaṁ gatvā praṇipetur manī-
śhiṇam | Vasishṭhas to atha tān dṛishṭvā samayena mahādyutiḥ | Sagaraṁ
vārayāmāsa teshāṁ dattvā 'bhyaṁ tadā | Sagaraḥ svām pratiṇāṁ cha
guror vākyaṁ niśamya cha | dharmāṁ jaghāna teshāṁ vai veśānyatvaṁ
chakūra ha | arddhaṁ Sakānāṁ śīraso munḍayitvā vyasarjayat | Yavan-
ānāṁ śīraḥ sarvaṁ Kāmbojānāṁ tathaiva cha | Pāradaḥ mukta-keśāścha
Pahlavāḥ śmaśru-dhārīṇah | nissvādhyūya-vashatkārāḥ kṛitās tena
mahātmanā | Sakāḥ Yavana-kāmbojāḥ Pāradaḥ Pahlavās tathā | Koli-
sarpāḥ sa-Mahishāḥ Dārvaś Cholāḥ sa-Keralāḥ | sarve te kshattriyās tāta
teshāṁ dharmo nirākṛitaḥ | Vasishṭha-vachanād rājan Sagarena ma-
hātmanā |*

"Aurva having performed Sagara's natal and other rites, and taught him all the Vedas, then provided him with a fiery missile, such as even the gods could not withstand. By the power of this weapon, and accompanied by an army, Sagara, incensed, speedily slew the Haihayas, as Rudra slaughters beasts; and acquired great renown throughout the world. He then set himself to exterminate the Sakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, and Pahlavas. But they, when on the point of being slaughtered by Sagara, had recourse to the sage Vasishṭha, and fell down before him. Vasishṭha beholding them, by a sign restrained Sagara, giving them assurance of protection. Sagara, after considering his own vow, and listening to what his teacher had to say, destroyed their caste (dharma), and made them change their costumes. He released the Sakas, after causing the half of their heads to be shaven;—and the Yavanas and Kāmbojas, after having had their heads entirely shaved. The Pāradas were made to wear

long hair, and the Pahlavas to wear beards. They were all excluded from the study of the Vedas, and from the *vashaṭkāra*. The Śakas, Yavanas, Kāmbojas, Pāradas, Pahlavas, Kolisarpas, Mahishas, Dārvas, Cholas, and Keralas had all been Kshattriyas; but were deprived of their social and religious position by the great Sagara, according to the advice of Vaśiṣṭha." Other tribes are mentioned in the following line who seem to have undergone the same treatment.

It would appear from this legend, as well as from the quotations which preceded it, that the Epic and Puranic writers believed all the surrounding tribes to belong to the same original stock with themselves; though they, at the same time, erroneously imagined that these tribes had fallen away from the Brahmanical institutions; thus assigning to their own polity an antiquity to which it could in reality lay no claim. Any further explanations on these points, however, must be sought in the second volume of this work.

In the passages quoted above, pp. 391, 393, and 398 from the *Mahābhārata* and *Rāmāyaṇa*, it is stated that Śakas, Yavanas, Pahlavas, etc., were created by Vaśiṣṭha's wonder-working cow, in order to repel the aggression of Viśvāmitra. It does not, however, appear that it is the object of that legend to represent this miraculous creation as the origin of those tribes. The narrators, if they had any distinct meaning, may not have intended anything more than that the cow called into existence large armies, of the same stock with particular tribes previously existing.

It is not very easy to say whether it is only the inhabitants of *Bhāratavarsha* (viz. that portion of *Jambudvīpa* which answers to India) whom the Puranic writers intend to represent as deriving their origin from the four primeval Indian castes. Perhaps the writers themselves had no very clear ideas. At all events the conditions of life are different in the two cases. The accounts which these writers give us of the other divisions of *Jambudvīpa*, and of the other *Dvīpas*, or continents, of which they imagined the earth to be composed, and their respective inhabitants, will be considered in the next chapter.

CHAPTER VI.

PURANIC ACCOUNTS OF THE PARTS OF THE EARTH
EXTERIOR TO BHĀRATAVARSHA, OR INDIA.

It will clearly appear from the contents of the present chapter that the authors or compilers of the Purāṇas in reality knew nothing of any part of the world except that immediately around them. Whenever they wander away beyond their own neighbourhood, they at once lose themselves in a misty region of fiction, and give the most unbridled scope to their fantastic imaginations.

The following is the account given in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa regarding the divisions of the earth, and their inhabitants. Priyavrata, son of Svāyambhuva, or the first Manu (see above, pp. 65 and 72) who is separated from the present time by an enormous interval (see pp. 43 ff. and 298, above), "distributed the seven dvīpas,¹ of which the earth is composed, among seven of his sons" (ii. 1, 7. *Priyavrato dadau teshāṃ saptaṇām muni-sattama* [*vibhajya sapta dvīpāni Maitreya sumahāt-manām*]).

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa gives us the following account, v. 1. 30. *Tad anabhinandan sama-javena rathena jyotirmayena rajanīm api dinam kari-
shyāmi iti sapta-kṛitvas taranīm anuparyakramād dvitīyaḥ iva patan-
gaḥ* [*evaṃ kurvānam Priyavratam āgatya Chaturānana* " *tavādlikāro
'yaṃ na bhavati*" *iti nivārayāmāsa*] (The words in brackets are not in the Bombay edition, but are taken from Burnouf's.) 31. *Ye vai u ha
tad-ratha-charaṇa-nemi-kṛta-parikkhātās te sapta sindhavaḥ āsan yataḥ
eva kṛitāḥ sapta bhuvo dvīpāḥ* |² " Priyavrata, being dissatisfied that only

¹ The original division of the earth into seven continents is assigned to Nārāyaṇa in the form of Brahmā; see above, pp. 61 and 76.

² In this passage we find the particles *vai*, *u*, *ha*, occurring all together as they do in the Vedic hymns and Brūhmaṇas. This circumstance might seem to suggest the

half the earth was illuminated at one time by the solar rays, "followed the sun seven times round the earth in his own flaming car of equal velocity, like another celestial orb, resolved to turn night into day. [Brahmā, however, came and stopped him, saying this was not his province.] The ruts which were formed by the motion of his chariot wheels were the seven oceans. In this way the seven continents of the earth were made."

The same circumstance is alluded to at the commencement of the 16th section of the same book, where the king says to the rishi: verse 2. *Tattrāpi Priyavrata-ratha-charaṇa-parikhātaiḥ saptabhiḥ sapta sindhavaḥ upakṛiptāḥ | yataḥ etasyāḥ sapta-dvīpa-viśeṣa-vikalpas tvayā bhagavan khalu sūchitāḥ |* "The seven oceans were formed by the seven ruts of the wheels of Priyavrata's chariot; hence, as you have indicated, the earth has become divided into seven different continents."

It is clear that this account given by the Bhāgavata Purāṇa of the manner in which the seven oceans and continents were formed does not agree with the description in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, as quoted above in p. 51.

These seven continents are called "Jambu dvīpa, Plaksha dvīpa, Śāl-possibility of the passage, or its substance, being derived from some of the Brāhmaṇas (to which, as we have seen, p. 155 note, the compiler of this Purāṇa was in the habit of resorting for his materials); but the style has otherwise nothing of an archaic 'caste, and I am not aware that the dvīpas are mentioned in any of the Brāhmaṇas. It is also remarkable that the words sapta sindhavaḥ are here used for "seven oceans." This phrase occurs several times in the Vedas. For instance, it is to be found in the Vājasaneyi Sanhitā (of the Yajur-veda), 38, 26, *yōvati dyāvā-prithivī yūvach cha sapta sindhavo vitasthīre |* "As wide as are the earth and sky, and as far as the seven oceans extend." The commentator Mahidhara understands the latter in the Puranic sense, as the oceans of milk, etc. (*sapta sindhavaḥ sapta samudrāḥ kshirādyaḥ*). The hemistich I have quoted from the Vāj. Sanhitā occurs somewhat modified, and in a different connexion, in the Atharva-veda, iv. 6, 2. The same phrase, sapta sindhavaḥ, is to be found also in several places in the first Book of the Rig-veda. (See Benfey's Glossary to Sāma-veda, sub voce *saptan*.) In Rig-veda i. 32, 12, it is said to Indra *avāṛjāḥ saritave sapta sindhūn |* "Thou hast let loose the seven rivers to flow." Sāyaṇa understands this of the Ganges and other rivers, seven in number, mentioned in the Rig Veda, x. 75, 5: *imam me Gange Yamunā Sarasvatī S'utudrī stomaiḥ sacchatū Parushnya |* "Receive this my hymn with favour, o Gāṅgā, Yamunā, Sarasvatī, S'utudrī, with the Parushnī, etc.;" but in this distich ten rivers in all are mentioned. (See Wilson's note to Rig-veda, i. 32, 12, vol. i. p. 88, of this translation). See also hymns 34, 8; 35, 8; 71, 7; and 102, 2, of the first, and 58, 12, and 85, 1, of the eighth Books of the Rig-veda. The "seven rivers" of the Veda are, according to Professor Müller (Chips from a German Workshop, vol. i. p. 63), "the Indus, the five rivers of the Punjab and the Sarasvatī."

mali dvīpa, Kuśadvīpa, Kraunchadvīpa, Śākadvīpa, and Pushkara dvīpa. They are surrounded severally by seven great seas, of salt water, sugar-cane juice, wine, clarified butter, curds, milk, and fresh water" (V.P. ii. 2, 4. *Jambū-plakshūhvayau dvīpau Śālmaliś chāparo dvīja | Kuśaḥ Kraunchas tathā Śākaḥ Pushkaraś chaiva saptamaḥ | 5. Ete dvīpāḥ samudrais tu sapta saptabhir āvṛitāḥ | lavaṇśekshu-surū-sarpīr-dadhi-dugdha-jalaih samam |*). Jambu dvīpa is in the centre of all these continents (Wilson, vol. ii. p. 110). It fell to the lot of Agnīdhra, son of Priyavrata, who again divided it among his nine sons (Wilson, ii. 101). In the centre of Jambu dvīpa is the golden mountain Meru, 84,000 yojanas high, and crowned by the great city of Brahmā (ibid. p. 118). There are in this continent six cross-ranges of boundary-mountains, those of Himavat (= Himādri, or Himālaya), Hemakūṭa, and Nishadha lying south of Meru; and those of Nīla, Sveta, and Śṛṅgin, situated to the northward. Of these, Nishadha and Nīla are the nearest to Meru, while Himavat and Śṛṅgin are at the south and north extremities. The nine Varshas or divisions of Jambu dvīpa, separated by these and other ranges, are Bhārata (India), south of the Himavat mountains, and the southernmost of all; then (2) Kimpurusha, (3) Harivarsha, (4) Ilāvṛita, (5) Rāmyaka, (6) Hiraṇyāya, and (7) Uttara Kuru, each to the north of the last; while (8) Bhadrāsva and (9) Ketumāla lie respectively to the east and west of Ilāvṛita, the central region. Bhārata Varsha, and Uttara Kuru, as well as Bhadrāsva and Ketumāla,³ are situated on the exterior of the mountain ranges. (Wilson, ii. pp. 114–116, and 123.) The eight Varshas to the north of Bhārata Varsha (or India) are thus described :

V.P. ii. 1, 11. *Yāni Kimpurushādīni varshāṇy ashtau mahāmune | teshaṃ svābhāviki siddhiḥ sukha-prāyaḥ hy ayanataḥ | 12. Viparyyayo*

³ The Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīṣmaparvan, verses 227–8, in regard to the Varsha of Ketumāla : *āyur daśa sahasrāṇi varshāṇām tatra Bhārata | suvarṇa-varṇas cha narāḥ śṛīyaś chūpaarasopamāḥ | anūmnyāḥ vīta-śokāḥ nityam mudita-mīnasūḥ | jūyante mānavās tatra nishāpta-kanaka-prabhāḥ |* "The people there live ten thousand years. The men are of the colour of gold, and the women fair as celestial nymphs. Men are born there of the colour of burnished gold, live free from sickness and sorrow, and enjoy perpetual happiness." The men by the side of the mountain Gandhamādāna, west of Meru, are said (v. 231) "to be black, of great strength and vigour, while the women are of the colour of blue lotuses, and very beautiful" (*tatra kṛishṇāḥ narāḥ rājās tejo-yuktāḥ mahābātāḥ | śṛīyaś chotpala-varṇābhūḥ sarvāḥ supriya-darśanāḥ*).

*na tattrāsti jarā-mṛityu-bhayaṁ na cha | dharmādharmau na teshv āstūṁ
nottamādharma-madhyamāḥ | na teshv asti yugāvasthā kshettreshv aṣṭasu
sarvadhā |*

"In the eight Varshas, called Kimpurusha and the rest (*i.e.* in all except Bhārata Varsha) the inhabitants enjoy a natural perfection attended with complete happiness obtained without exertion. There is there no vicissitude, nor decrepitude, nor death, nor fear; no distinction of virtue and vice, none of the inequalities denoted by the words best, worst, and intermediate, nor any change resulting from the succession of the four yugas." And again :

ii. 2, 35. *Yāni Kimpurushādyāni varshāny aṣṭau mahāmune | na
teshu śoko nūyāso nodvega-kṣudh-bhayādikam | sūsthāḥ prajāḥ nirātankāḥ
sarva-duḥkha-vivarjitāḥ | 36. Daśa-dvādaśa-varshānām sahasrāṇi sthīra-
yushaḥ | na teshu varshato devo bhaumyāny ambhāṁsi teshu vai | 37.
Kṛita-tretādīkā naiva teshu sthāneshu kalpanā |*

"In those eight Varshas there is neither grief, nor weariness, nor anxiety, nor hunger, nor fear. The people live in perfect health, free from every suffering, for ten or twelve thousand years. Indra does not rain on those Varshas, for they have abundance of springs. There is there no division of time into the Kṛita, Tretā, and other ages."

The Uttara Kurus, it should be remarked, may have been a real people, as they are mentioned in the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, viii. 14: ⁴

*Atha enam udichyām diśi viśve devāḥ śadbhiś chaiva pañchaviṁśair
ahobhir abhyashinchann etena cha trichena etena cha yajushā etābhiś cha
vyāhṛitibhir vairājyāya | tasmād etasyām udichyām diśi ye ke cha pareṇa
Himavantaṁ janapadāḥ "Uttara-Kuravaḥ Uttara-Madrāḥ" iti vairā-
jyāya eva te 'bhishichyante |*

"Then in the northern region during six days on which the Panchaviṁśa stoma was recited, the Viśve-devas inaugurated him (Indra) for glorious dominion with these three ṛik-verses, this yajush-verse, and these mystic monosyllables. Wherefore the several nations who dwell in this northern quarter, beyond the Himavat, the Uttara Kurus and the Uttara Madras, are consecrated to glorious dominion (*vairājya*), and people term them the glorious (*vīraj*)."⁵ See Colebrooke's Misc. Essays, i. 38-43; Dr. Haug's translation of the Ait. Brāhmaṇa; and Prof. Weber's review of this translation in Ind. Studien, ix. pp. 341 f.

⁴ Quoted by Weber in Ind. St. i. 218.

In another passage of the same work,⁵ however, the Uttara Kurus are treated as belonging to the domain of mythology :

Ait. Br. viii. 23. *Etāñ ha vai andram mahūbhishekam Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātahavyo'tyarātaye Jānantapaye provācha | tasmād u Atyarātiṛ Jānantapir arājū sañ vidyayā samantañ sarvataḥ prithivīm jayan pariyāya | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyaḥ "ajaishir vai samantañ sarvataḥ prithivīm mahad mā gamaya" iti | sa ha uvācha Atyarātiṛ Jānantapir "yadū brāhmaṇaḥ uttara-kurūñ jayeyāñ team u ha eva prithiryaī rājā syāḥ senāpatir eva te 'hañ syām" iti | sa ha uvācha Vāsishṭhaḥ Sātyahavyo "deva-kshettrañ vai tad na vai tad marttyo jetum arhaty adruksho me ū 'taḥ idañ dade" iti | tato ha Atyarātiṛ Jānantapim ātta-vīryyam nīśukram amitra-tapanaḥ Sushmināḥ Sāvīyo rājā jaghāna | tasmād evañ-vidushe brāhmaṇīya evañ-chakrushe kshattriyo na druhyed na id rāshṭrād avapadyeyad (?) na id vāma-prāṇo jahad iti |*

"Sātyahavya of the family of Vāsishṭha declared this great inauguration similar to Indra's to Atyarāti, son of Janantapa; and in consequence Atyarāti, though not a king, by his knowledge, went round the earth on every side to its ends, reducing it to subjection. Sātyahavya then said to him, 'Thou hast subdued the earth in all directions to its limits; exalt me now to greatness.' Atyarāti replied, 'When, o Brāhman, I conquer the Uttara Kurus, thou shalt be king of the earth, and I will be only thy general.' Sātyahavya rejoined, 'That is the realm of the gods; no mortal may make the conquest of it: Thou hast wronged me; therefore I take all this away from thee.' In consequence Sushmina, king of the Sivis, vexer of his foes, slew Atyarāti son of Janantapa who had been bereft of his valour and energy. Wherefore let no Kshattriya wrong a Brāhman who possesses such knowledgo and has so acted, lest he should be expelled from his kingdom, be short-lived, and perish."

The Uttara Kurus are also mentioned in the description of the northern region in the Kishkindhā Kāṇḍa of the Rāmāyana, 43, 38, *Uttarāḥ Kuravas tatra kṛita-punya-pratiśrāyaḥ |* "There are the Uttara Kurus, the abodes of those who have performed works of merit." In v. 57 it is said: *na kathanchana gantavyāñ kurūñām uttareṇa vaḥ | anyeshāñ api bhūtānām nanukrāmati vai gatiḥ |* "You must not go to the north of the Kurus: other beings also may not proceed further."

⁵ See Colebrooke's Essays, i. 43; Dr. Haug's translation; and Ind. Stud. ix. 346.

In the same way when Arjuna, in his career of conquest, arrives at the country of the Uttara Kurus in Harivarsha, he is thus addressed by the guards at the gate of the city, M. Bh. Sabhāparvan, 1045 :

Pārtha nedaṁ tvayā śakyam puraṁ jetuṁ kathanchana | upāvarttasva kalyāṇa paryūptam idam Achyuta | idam puram yaḥ pravīḣed dhruvaṁ na sa bhaved naraḥ | . . . na chāttra kinchij jetavyam Arjunāttra pradṛśyate | Uttarāḥ Kuravo hy ete nāttra yuddham pravarttate | pravishṭo 'pi hi Kaunteya neha drakshyasi kinchana | na hi mānuṣa-dehena śakyam attrābhivṛkshītum |

"Thou canst not, son of Prithā, subdue this city. Refrain, fortunate man, for it is completely secure. He who shall enter this city must be certainly more than man. . . . Nor is there anything to be seen here which thou canst conquer. Here are the Uttara Kurus, whom no one attempts to assail. And even if thou shouldst enter, thou couldst behold nothing. For no one can perceive anything here with human senses."⁶

In the Anuśāsanaparvan, line 2841, Kuśika says, on seeing a magic palace formed by Chyavana (see above, p. 475):

Aho saha śarireṇa prāpto 'smi paramāṁ gatim | Uttarāṁ vā Kurāṁ punyāṁ athavā 'py Amarāvatim |

"I have attained, even in my embodied condition, to the heavenly state; or to the holy Northern Kurus, or to Amarāvatī [the city of Indra]!"

"The country to the north of the ocean, and to the south of the Himādri (or snowy range), is Bhārata Varsha, where the descendants of Bharata dwell" (V.P. ii. 3, 1. *Uttaraṁ yad samudrasya Himādreś chaiva dakṣiṇam | varṣam tad Bhārataṁ nāma Bhāratī yatra santatiḥ*). It is divided into nine parts (*bhedāḥ*), Indradvīpa, Kāśerumat, Tāmra-varṇa, Gābhāstimāt, Nāgadvīpa, Saumya, Gāndharva, Vārūṇa; and "this ninth dvīpa," which is not named, is said to be "surrounded by the ocean" *ayaṁ tu navamas teshāṁ dvīpaḥ sūgara-saṁvṛtāḥ*), and to be a thousand yojanaḥ long from north to south. "On the east side of it are the Kirātas, on the west the Yavanas, and in the centre are the Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras, following their respective occupations of sacrifice, arms, trade, etc." (The text of this passage, V.P. ii. 3, 7, has been already quoted in p. 485).

⁶ See the second vol. of this work, pp. 332-337, and vol. iv., p. 375.

The Vishṇu Purāṇa contains a very short list of the tribes inhabiting Bhārata Varsha. (See Wilson, vol. ii. pp. 132 f.) It specifies, as the principal, only the Kurus, Pāṇchālas, the people of Kāmarūpa, the Puṇḍras, Kalingas, Magadhas, Saurāshṭras, Śūras, Bhīras, Arbudas, Kārūshas, Mālavas, Sauvīras, Saindhavas, Hūṇas, Śālvas, Śākālas, Madras, Rāmas, Ambashṭhas, and Pārasīkas.⁷ These tribes seem to be all confined to India and its vicinity.

The praises of Bhārata Varsha are celebrated as follows :

V.P. ii. 3, 11. *Chatvāri Bhārata varshe yugāny atra mahāmune | kṛitān tretā dvāparaś cha kaliś chānyatra na kvachit | 12. Tapas tapyanti yatayo juhvate chāttra yajvinaḥ | dūnāni chāttra dīyante paralokārtham ādarāt | purushair yajna-purusho Jambu-dvīpe sudejyate | yajñair yajnamayo Viṣṇur anyā-dvīpeṣu chānyathā | 13. Attrāpi Bhārataṁ śreṣṭhān Jambu-dvīpe mahāmune | yato hi karma-bhīr eṣā ato 'nyāḥ bhoga-bhūmayāḥ | atra janma-sahasrāṇān sahasrair api sattamam | kadachil labhate jantur mānushyam punya-sanchayam | gāyanti devūḥ kila gītakāni "dhan-yās tu ye Bhārata-bhūmi-bhāge | svargāpavargasya dahe tu bhūte bhavanti bhūyāḥ puruṣhāḥ suratvāt | 14. Karmāny asankalpita-tat-phalāni sannyasya Viṣṇau paramātma-rūpe | avāpya tān karma-mahīm anante tasmīn layaṁ ye tv amalāḥ prayānti | 15. Jānīma naitat kva vayaṁ viṭine svarga-prade karmaṇi deha-bandham | prāpsyāma dhanyāḥ khalu te manushyāḥ ye Bhārata nendriya-viprahīṇāḥ" |*

"In Bhārata Varsha, and nowhere else, do the four Yugas, Kṛita, Tretā, Dvāpara, and Kali exist. 12. Here devotees perform austerities, and priests sacrifice; here gifts are bestowed, to testify honour, for the sake of the future world. In Jambudvīpa Viṣṇu, the sacrificial Man, whose essence is sacrifice, is continually worshipped by men with sacrifices; and in other ways in the other dvīpas.⁸ 13. In this respect Bhārata is the most excellent division of Jambudvīpa; for this is the land of works, while the others are places of enjoyment. Perhaps in a thousand thousand births, a living being obtains here that most excellent condition, humanity, the receptacle of virtue. The gods sing, 'Happy are those beings, who, when the rewards of their merits have

⁷ The list in the Mahābhārata (Bhishmaparvan, 346 ff.), is much longer. See Wilson's Vishṇu Purāṇa, vol. ii. pp. 132 f., and 156 ff.

⁸ "In other ways," i.e. in the form of Soma, Vāyu, Sūrya, etc." (*Anyathā Soma-vāyu-sūryyādi-rūpāḥ* |). Commentator.

been exhausted in heaven, are, after being gods, again born as men in Bhārata Varsha; (14) who, when born in that land of works, resign to the supreme and eternal Vishṇu their works, without regard to their fruits, and attain by purity to absorption in him. 15. We know not where we shall next attain a corporeal condition, when the merit of our works shall have become exhausted; but happy are those men who exist in Bhārata Varsha with perfect senses.’”

To the same effect the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, v. 17, 11 :

Tattrāpi Bhāratam eva varshaṁ karma-kṣhetram anyāny aṣṭa-varshāṇi svargiṇām puṇya-śeṣopabhoga-sthānāni bhaumāni svarga-padāni vyopadiśanti | 12. *Esu puruṣhāṇām ayuta-puruṣhāyur-varshāṇām deva-kalpānām nāgāyuta-prāṇānām vajra-saṁhanana-vayo-moda-pramudita-mahāsaurata-mithuna-vyavāyāpavarga-varsha-dhṛitaika-garbha-kalatṛāṇām tretā-yuga-samāḥ kūlo cartate* |

“Of these, Bhāratavarsha alone is the land of works: the other eight Varshas are places where the celestials enjoy the remaining rewards of their works; they are called terrestrial paradises. 12. In them men pass an existence equal to that of the Tretā age, living for the space of ten thousand ordinary lives, on an equality with gods, having the vitality of ten thousand elephants, and possessed of wives who bear one child after a year’s conception following upon sexual intercourse attended by all the gratification arising from adamantine bodies and from vigorous youth.”

The commentator remarks on verse 11 : *Divya-bhauma-bīla-bhedāt trividhaḥ svargaḥ* | *tattra bhauma-svargasya padāni sthānāni vyopadiśanti* | “Heaven is of three kinds, in the sky, on earth, and in the abyss. Here the other Varshas are called terrestrial heavens.”

It is curious to remark that in the panegyric on Bhārata Varsha it is mentioned as one of the distinguishing advantages of that division of Jambudvīpa that sacrifice is performed there, though, a little further on, it is said to be practised in Sālmali dvīpa also.

It would at first sight appear from the preceding passage (ii. 3, 11) of the Vishṇu Purāṇa (as well as from others which we shall encounter below), to be the intention of the writer to represent the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha as a different race, or, at least as living under quite different conditions, from the inhabitants of the other dvīpas, and even of the other divisions (*varshas*) of Jambu dvīpa itself. From the use

of the word *mānushya* (humanity) here applied to the inhabitants of Bhārata Varsha, viewed in reference to the context, it would seem to be a natural inference that all the people exterior to it were beings of a different race. Yet in the descriptions of Kuśa dvīpa and Pushkara dvīpa (see below) the words *manujāḥ* and *mānarāḥ* "descendants of Manu," or "men," are applied to the dwellers in those continents. In the passage of the Jātimālā, moreover, translated by Mr. Colebrooke (Misc. Essays, ii. 179), we are told that "a chief of the twice-born tribe was brought by Vishṇu's eagle from Sāka dvīpa; thus have Sāka dvīpa Brāhmins become known in Jambu dvīpa." According to this verse, too, there should be an affinity of race between the people of these two dvīpas. It is also to be noted that the descendants of Priyavrata became kings of all the dvīpas, as well as of all the varshas of Jambu dvīpa (see above, pp. 489, 491). And in the passage quoted above, p. 478, from the Vishṇu Purāṇa, iv. 11, 3, it is said of Arjuna, son of Kṛitavīrya, that he was "lord of the seven dvīpas," "that he ruled over the earth with all its dvīpas." If, however, the kings were of the human race, it is natural to infer the same of the people.

But, in a subject of this sort, where the writers were following the suggestions of imagination only, it is to be expected that we should find inconsistencies.

Jambu dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of salt water (Wilson, V.P. ii 109); and that sea again, is bounded on its outer side by the dvīpa or continent of Plaksha running all round it. (V.P. ii. 4, 1. *Āśhārodena yathā dvīpo Jambu-sanjño 'bhiveshṭitāḥ | sañreshṭya kshāram udadhim Plaksha-dvīpas tathā sthītāḥ*). According to this scheme the several continents and seas form concentric circles, Jambu dvīpa being a circular island occupying the centre of the system.

Plaksha dvīpa is of twice the extent of Jambu dvīpa. The character and condition of its inhabitants are described as follows:

V. P. ii. 4, 5. *Nā chaivāsti yugāvasthā teshu sthāneshu saptasū | 6. Tretā-yuga-samāḥ kālāḥ sarvadaivū mahāmato | Plaksha-dvīpādīshu brahmaṇ S'ākadvīpāntākeśu vai | 7. Pancha-varsha-sahasrāṇi janāḥ jīvanty anāmayaḥ | dharmāḥ panchasv athāiteshu varṇāśrama-vibhāga-jāḥ |*

⁹ Purāṇavas is said to have possessed thirteen islands (dvīpas) of the ocean (above p. 307).

*varṇās tattrāpi chatvāras tām nibodha gadāmi te | Aryyakāḥ Kuravaś
chaiva Virāśāḥ Bhāvinaś cha ye | vipra-kshattriya-vaiśyās te śūdrāś cha
muni-sattama |*

"In those seven provinces [which compose Plaksha dvīpa] the division of time into Yugas does not exist: but the character of existence is always that of the Tretā age. In the [five] dvīpas, beginning with Plaksha and ending with Śāka, the people live 5000 years, free from sickness. In those five dvīpas duties arise from the divisions of castes and orders. There are there also four castes, Āryyakas, Kurus, Vivāśas, and Bhāvins, who are the Brāhmanas, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras," and whose worship is thus described:

9. *Ijyate tattra bhagavāns tair varṇair Aryyakādibhiḥ | soma-rūpi
jagat-sraśṭā sarvaḥ sarveśvaro Hariḥ |* "Hari who is All, and the lord of all, and the creator of the world, is adored in the form of Soma by these classes, the Āryyakas, etc."

The inhabitants of this dvīpa receive different names in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, being there called (v. 20, 4) "Hansas, Patangas, Ūrdhvyanas, and Satyāngas, four castes, who, purified from passion and darkness by the touch of the waters of these rivers, live a thousand years, resemble the gods in their appearance and in their manner of procreation, and worship with the triple Veda the divine Soul, the Sun, who is the gate of heaven, and who is co-essential with the Vedas" (*Yāsāṃ jalopasparśana-vidhūta-rajasa-tamaso Hāṃsa-patangorddhvānasyatyānga-sañjñās chatvāro varṇāḥ sahasrāyusho vibudhopama-sandarśana-prajananāḥ svarga-dvārāṇ trayyā vidyayā bhagavantāṃ trayīmayaṃ sūryam ātmānaṃ yajante*).

In regard to Plaksha and the other four following dvīpas, the Bhāgavata Purāṇa says, *ibid.* para. 6, that "their men are all alike in respect of natural perfection as shewn in length of life, senses, vigour, force, strength, intelligence, and courage" (*Plakṣādīṣhu pañchāsu puruṣhānām āyur inriyam ojaḥ saho balaṃ buddhir vikramaḥ itī cha sarveṣhām utpattikiḥ siddhir avīśeṣeṇa varttate* |).

Plaksha dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of sugar-cane juice of the same compass as itself. ii. 4, 9, *Plakṣa - dvīpa - pramāṇena Plakṣa - dvīpaḥ samāvṛtāḥ | tathāivekṣhu-rasodena pariveśānukārīṇā |* Round the outer margin of this sea, and twice as extensive, runs Śālmala dvīpa (verse 11. *Śālmaleṇa samudro 'sau dvīpenekṣhu-rasodakāḥ | vistara-*

dvigūṇātha sarvataḥ saṁvṛitaḥ sthitaḥ |). It is divided into seven Varshas, or divisions. Of their inhabitants it is said :

V. P. ii. 4, 12. *Saptaitāni tu varshāni chāturvarnya-yutāni cha | Sālmale ye tu varṇās cha vasanti te mahāmune | kapilās chāruṇāḥ pitāḥ kṛishṇās chaiva prīthak prīthak | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chaiva yajanti te | bhagavantaṁ samastasya Viṣṇum ātmānam avyayam | Vāyubhūtām makha-śreṣṭhāir yajvino yajna-saṁsthitām | 13. Devānām atra sāmīdhyam atīva sumanoharam |*

“These seven Varshas have a system of four castes. The castes which dwell there are severally the Kapilas, Aruṇas, Pitas, and Kṛishṇas (or the Tawny, the Purple, the Yellow, and the Black). These, the Brāhmans, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Śūdras, worship with excellent sacrifices Viṣṇu, the divine and imperishable Soul of all things, in the form of Vāyu, and abiding in sacrifice. Here the vicinity of the gods is very delightful to the soul.”

The Bhāgavata Purāṇa says of this dvīpa, v. 20, 11 : *Tad-varsha-purushāḥ Śrutadhara-vīryyadhara-vasundhareshundhara-sanjñāḥ bhagavantaṁ vedamayaṁ somam ātmānam vedena yajante* | “The men of the different divisions of this dvīpa, called Śrutadharas, Vīryadharas, Vasundharas, and Ishundharas, worship with the Veda the divine Soul Soma, who is co-essential with the Veda.”

This dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of wine of the same compass as itself (v. 13. *Eṣha dvīpaḥ samudreṇa surodene saṁvṛitaḥ | vistārāc chhālmalasyaiva samena tu samantataḥ*). The exterior shore of this sea is encompassed by Kuśa dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sālmala dvīpa (v. 13. *Surodakaḥ parivṛitaḥ Kuśadvīpeṇa sarvataḥ | S'ālmalasya tu vistārād dvigūṇena samantataḥ*). The inhabitants of Kuśa dvīpa are thus described, V.P. ii 4, 14 :

Daityāṁ vasanti manujāḥ saha Daiteya-dānavaiḥ | tathaiva deva-gandharva - yaksha - kimpurushādayaḥ | varṇās tattrāpi chatvāro nijānush-ṭhāna-tatparāḥ | Daminaḥ Śushkmināḥ Snehāḥ Mundehās cha mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ śūdrās chānukramoditāḥ | 15. Yathokta-karma-karttṛivāt svādhikāra-kṣayāya te | tatra te tu Kuśa-dvīpe Brahma-~~rūpa~~ṇāṁ Janārddanam | yajantaḥ kṣhapayanty ugram adhikāram phala-pradam |

“In this set of Varshas (of Kuśa dvīpa) dwell men with Daityas, Dānavas, Devas, Gandharvas, Yakshas, Kimpurushas, and other beings.

There, too, there are four castes, pursuing their proper observances, Damins, Sushmins, Snehas, and Mandchas, who in the order specified are Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras. In order to destroy their right [to reward] derived from the performance of these works, they worship Janārdana in the form of Brahma, and so neutralize this direful merit which brings rewards."

Of Kuśa dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīṣmaparvan, verses 455-7: *Eteshu deva-gandharvāḥ prajāścha jagatiścara | viharante ramante cha na teshu mriyate janaḥ | na teshu dasyavaḥ santi mlechha-jātyo 'pi vā nṛpa | gaura-prāyo janaḥ sarvaḥ sukumāras cha pārthiva* | "In these (Varshas of Kuśa dvīpa), gods, Gandharvas, and living creatures, amuse and enjoy themselves. No one dies there. There are no Dasyus or Mlechhas there. The people are fair, and of very delicate forms." The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 16, says, "The people of this dvīpa are called Kuśalas, Kovidas, Abhiyuktas, and Kulakas" (*Kuśa-dvīpaukasaḥ Kuśala-kovidābhiyukta-kulaka-sanjñāḥ* |).

Kuśa dvīpa is surrounded by a sea of clarified butter, of the same circumference as itself.

Around this sea runs Krauncha dvīpa which is twice as large as Kuśa dvīpa. The V. P. says, ii. 4, 19: *Sarveshu eteshu ramyeshu varsha-śaila-vareshu cha | nivasanti nirātankāḥ saha deva-gaṇaiḥ prajāḥ | Pushkarāḥ Pushkalāḥ Dhanyās Tishmās chāttra mahāmune | brāhmaṇāḥ kshattriyāḥ vaiśyāḥ sūdrāḥ chānukramoditāḥ* | "In all these pleasant division-mountains of this dvīpa the people dwell, free from fear, in the society of the gods. [These people are] the Pushkaras, Pushkalas, Dhanyas, and Tishmas, who, as enumerated in order, are the Brāhmins, Kshattriyas, Vaiśyas, and Sūdras." The inhabitants of this dvīpa are called in the Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 22, " . . . Purushas, Ṛishabhas, Draviṇas, and Devakas" (*Purusharshabha-draviṇa-devaka-sanjñāḥ*). This dvīpa is encompassed by the sea of curds, which is of the same circumference as itself. The sea again, on its exterior edge, is surrounded by Śāka dvīpa,¹⁰ a continent twice the size of Krauncha dvīpa.

Of Śāka dvīpa it is said in the Viṣṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 23 ff.:

Tattra punyāḥ janapadās chāturvarnya-samanvitāḥ | nadyās chāttra mahāpunyāḥ sarva-pāpa-bhayāpahāḥ | . . . tāḥ pibanti mudā yuktāḥ Jaladādishu ye sthitāḥ | varsheshu te janapadāḥ svargād abhyetya me-

¹⁰ In the M. Bh. (Bhīṣmap. v. 408 ff.) Śākadvīpa comes next after Jambudvīpa.

dinim | 24. *Dharma-hānir na teshv asti na sangharshaḥ parasparam | maryādā-vyutkramo nūpi teshu deśeshu saptaśu* | 25. *Magās cha Māga-dhās chaiva Mānasāḥ Mandagās tathā | Magāḥ brāhmaṇa-bhūyishthāḥ Māgadhāḥ kshattriyās tu te | Vaiśyās tu Mānasāḥ jneyāḥ śūdrās teshāṃ tu Mandagāḥ* | 26. *Sākadvīpe tu tair Viṣṇuḥ sūrya-rūpa-dharaḥ mune | yathoktair ijjate samyak karmabhir niyatātmanabhiḥ* |

“There there are holy countries, peopled by persons belonging to the four castes; and holy rivers which remove all sin and fear. . . . The people who dwell in these divisions, Jalada, etc. [of Sāka dvīpa], drink these rivers with pleasure, even when they have come to earth from Svarga. There is among them no defect of virtue; nor any mutual rivalry; nor any transgression of rectitude in those seven countries. [There dwell] Magas, Māgadhas, Mānasas, and Mandagas, of whom the first are principally Brāhmans; the second are Kshattriyas; the third are Vaiśyas, and the fourth are Śūdras. By them Viṣṇu, in the form of the Sun, is worshipped with the prescribed ceremonies, and with intent minds.”

Of this dvīpa the Mahābhārata tells us, Bhīṣmaparvan, verse 410, that the “people there are holy, and no one dies” (*tattra punyāḥ janapadāḥ na tattra mriyate naraḥ*). One of the mountains there is called Śyāma (black), “whence men have got this black colour” (verse 420. *Tataḥ śyāmatvam āpannāḥ janāḥ janapadeśvara*). Dhṛitarāṣṭra then says to his informant Sanjaya that he has great doubts as to “how living creatures have become black.” Sanjaya promises in the following lines, the sense of which is not very clear, to explain the mystery: 422. *Sarveshva eva mahārāja dvīpeṣu Kuru-nandana | gaurāḥ kṛṣṇas cha pātango yato varṇāntare dvijāḥ | śyāmo yasmāt pravṛitto vai tat te vakshyāmi Bhārata* | But as he proceeds no further, we lose the benefit of his solution of this interesting physiological problem. The Bhāgavata Purāṇa, v. 20, 28, gives the four classes of men in this dvīpa the names of Rītavrata, Satyavrata, Dānavrata, and Anuvrata (*tad-varsha-puruṣāḥ Rītavrata-Satyavrata-Dānavratānūvrata-nāmanāḥ*).

This Sāka dvīpa is surrounded by the ocean of milk as by an armlet. This ocean again is encompassed on its outer side by Pushkara dvīpa, which is twice as extensive as Sāka dvīpa.

Of Pushkara dvīpa it is said, Viṣṇu Purāṇa, ii. 4, 28 ff.:

Dāśa-varsha-sahasrāṇi tattra jīvanti mānavāḥ | nirāmayāḥ viśokāścha

rāga-dresha-vicarijjitāḥ | adhamottamau na teshv āstām na badhya-badhakau dvija | nershyā 'sūyā bhayaṁ rosho dosho lobhādiko na cha |
 29. *Satyānṛite na tattrāstām dvipe Pushkara-sanjñite |* 30.
Tūlya-vesās tu manujāḥ devais tattraika-rūpiṇaḥ | 31. Varnāśramāchārahinam dharmācharaṇa-varjjitam | trayī-vārttā-dandānīti-śusrūshā-rahitaṁ cha yat | 32. Varsha-drayaṁ tu maittreya bhauma-svargo 'yam uttamaḥ | sarvasya sukha-daḥ kālo jarā-rogādi-varjjitaḥ |

"In this dvīpa men live ten thousand years, free from sickness and sorrow, from affection and hatred. There is no distinction among them of highest and lowest, of killer and slain; there is no envy, nor ill-will, nor fear, nor anger, nor defect, nor covetousness, nor other fault; there is there neither truth nor falsehood. Men there are all of the same appearance, of one form with the gods. The two divisions of this dvīpa have no rules of caste or orders, nor any observances of duty; the three Vedas, the Purāṇas (or, trade), the rules of criminal law and service do not exist. This [dvīpa] is a most excellent terrestrial heaven; where time brings happiness to all, and is exempt from decay, sickness, and all other evils."¹¹

Of all the dvīpas together, the Mahābhārata says, Bhīshmaparvan, verses 468 ff. :

Evam dvīpeshu sarveshu prajānām Kuru-nandana | brahmacharyyeṇa satyena prajānām hi damena cha | ārogyāyukḥpramāṇābhyām dviguṇām dviguṇām tataḥ | eko janapado rājan dvīpeshv eteshu Bhārata | uktāḥ

¹¹ In the same way as Pushkara, the remotest dvīpa, is here described to be the scene of the greatest perfection, we find Homer placing the Elysian plains on the furthest verge of the earth :

ἀλλὰ σ' ἐς Ἑλύσιον πεδῖον καὶ πείρατα γαίης
 ἀθάνατοι πέμψουσιν, οἳ ξανθοὺς Ῥαδάμανθους,
 τῇ περ βῆστην βιοτὴ πέλει ἀνθρώποισιν.
 οὐ νικητὸς, οὐτ' ἔρ χειμῶν πολλὸς οὔτε ποτ' ἔμβρος,
 ἀλλ' αἰεὶ Ζεφύροιο λιγὺ πνέοντασ ἀήτας
 Ὀκεανὸς ἀνίσσιν ἀναψύχειν ἀνθρώπους. *Odyssey Δ. 563-568.*

"Thee, favoured man, to earth's remotest end,
 The Elysian plain, the immortal gods shall send,—
 That realm which fair-haired Rhadamanthys sways,
 Where, free from toil, men pass their tranquil days.
 No tempests vex that land, no rain, nor snow;
 But ceaseless Zephyrs from the ocean blow,
 Which sweetly breathe and gently stir the air,
 And to the dwellers grateful coolness bear."

*janapadāḥ yeshu karma chaikam pradṛśyate | īśvaro daṇḍam udyamya
svayam eva Prajāpatiḥ | dvīpānāṃ tu mahārāja rakshaṃś tishṭhati nitya-
yadā | sa rājā sa śivo rājan sa pitā prapitāmahaiḥ | gopāyati nara-
śreṣṭha prajāḥ sa-jada-paṇḍitāḥ | bhojanaṃ chāttra Kauravya prajāḥ
svayam upasthitam | siddham eva mahābāho tad hi bhujanti nityadā |*

“Thus in all these dvīpas each country doubly exceeds the former one in the abstinence, veracity, and self-restraint, in the health and the length of life of its inhabitants. In these dvīpas the people is one, and one sort of action is perceivable. Prajāpati, the lord, wielding his sceptre, himself governs these dvīpas. He, the king, the auspicious one (*śiva*), the father, along with the patriarchs, protects all creatures, ignorant as well as learned.” (So there are differences of intellectual condition in these dvīpas after all!) “All these people eat prepared food, which comes to them of itself.”

Pushkara is surrounded by a sea of fresh water equal to itself in compass. What is beyond is afterwards described :

V.P. ii. 4, 37. *Svādūdakasya parato dṛśyate loka-saṁsthitiḥ | dviguṇā
kāñchanī bhūmiḥ sarva-jantu-vivarjita | 38. Lokālokaḥ tataḥ śailo yojā-
nāyuta-vistṛitaḥ | uchchhkrāyenāpi tāvanti sahasrāṇy aḥalo hi saḥ | tatas
tamaḥ samāvṛitya taṃ śailaṃ sarvataḥ śhilitam | tamaḥ chāṇḍa-kaṭākena
samantāt parisveshṭitam |*

“On the other side of the sea is beheld a golden land of twice its extent, but without inhabitants. Beyond that is the Lokāloka mountain, which is ten thousand yojanas in breadth, and as many thousands in height. It is on all sides invested with darkness. This darkness is encompassed by the shell of the mundane egg.”¹³

In a following chapter, however, (the seventh) of this same book, the

¹³ See Manu, i. verses 9 and 12, quoted above, p. 35. The thirteenth verse is as follows: *Tūbhyāṃ sa śakalābhyāṃ cha divam bhūmim cha nirmame | madhye vyoma
dīśas chūṣṭv apāṃ sthānaṃ cha śśvatam |* “From these two halves of the shell he fashioned the heaven and the earth, and in the middle (he formed) the sky, and the eight quarters, and the eternal abode of the waters.” In regard to the darkness (*tamas*) with which the mountain Lokāloka is said to be enveloped, compare Manu iv. 242, where the spirits of the departed are said to pass by their righteousness through the darkness which is hard to be traversed (*dharmaṇa hi sahāyena tamas tarati dustaram*); and Atharva-veda, ix. 5, 1, “Crossing the darkness, in many directions immense, let the unborn ascend to the third heaven” (*tīrtvā tamānsi bahudhā mahūnti ojo nūkam ā kramatām tṛtīyam*). See Journal Royal Asiatic Society for 1865, pp. 298, note 2, and p. 304.

shell of the mundane egg is said to be outside of the seven spheres of which this system is composed :

V.P. ii. 7, 19. *Ēta sapta mayā lokāḥ Maittreya kathitās tava | pātālāni cha saptaiva brahmāṇḍasyaiśha vistarah | etad anda-kaṭāhena tiryak' chorddhram adhas tathā | kapitthasya yathā vijam sarvalo vai samāvṛitam |*

"These seven spheres have been described by me ; and there are also seven Pātālas : this is the extent of Brahmā's egg. The whole is surrounded by the shell of the egg at the sides, above, and below, just as the seed of the wood-apple (is covered by the rind)."

This system, however, it appears, is but a very small part of the whole of the universe :

Ibid. verse 24. *Āṇḍānām tu sahasrāṇām sahasrāṇy ayutāni cha | īdṛśānām tathā tatra koṭi-koṭi-śatāni cha |*

"There are thousands and ten thousands of thousands of such mundane eggs ; nay hundreds of millions of millions."

Indian mythology, when striving after sublimity, and seeking to excite astonishment, often displays an extravagant and puerile facility in the fabrication of large numbers. But, in the sentence last quoted, its conjectures are substantially in unison with the discoveries of modern astronomy ; or rather, they are inadequate representations of the simple truth, as no figures can express the contents of infinite space.

APPENDIX.

Page 6, line 24.

Professor Wilson's analyses of the Agni, Brahma-vaivartta, Vishnu and Vāyu Purāṇas, were originally published, not in the "Gleanings in Science," but in the Journal of the Asiatic Society of Bengal, vol. i.; and are reprinted in the 3rd vol. of Wilson's Collected Works, edited by Dr. R. Rost.

Page 37, line 1.

"Abodes of gods." Böhtlingk and Roth in their Sanskrit Lexicon, *s.v. nikāya*, shew that in other passages, if not here also, the compound word *deva-nikāya* should be rendered "classes, or assemblages, of gods."

Page 50, line 25.

Compare the passage, quoted below, in the note on p. 115, from the Śāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff.

Pages 90 ff.

The representations of the Kṛita yuga are not always consistent. In the Dronaparvan, verses 2023 ff. a story is told of King Akampana, who lived in that age, and who was yet so far from enjoying the tranquillity generally predicated of that happy time that he was overcome by his enemies in a battle, in which he lost his son, and suffered in consequence severe affliction.

Page 97, note 190.

It is similarly said in the Dronaparvan, verse 2395 : *Kṣhatāḍ nas trāyate sarvān ity evaṁ kṣhattriyo 'bhavat* | "He (Prithu) became a Kṣhattriya by delivering us all from injuries." See also Śāntiparvan, verse 1031.

Page 115, line 13.

The Śāntiparvan of the M. Bh., verses 6130 ff., gives a similar description of the original state of all things, and of the birth of Brahmā. Bhishma is the speaker : *Salilāikārnavaṃ tāta purā sarvaṃ abhūd idam | nishprakampam anākāśam anirdēśya-mahītaṃ | tamasā vṛitam asparśam api gambhīra-darśanam | niśabdaṃ vā 'prameyaṃ cha tatra jāne Pītā-mahaḥ | so 'srijad vātam agniṃ cha bhāskaraṃ chāpi vīryavarān | ākāśam asrijach choddhram adho bhūmiṃ cha nairṛitīm | nabhaḥ sa-chandra-tāraṃ cha nakṣatrarūṇi grahāṃs tathā | saṃvatsarān ṛitūn māsān pak-śhān atha lavān kṣaṇān | tataḥ śariraṃ loka-sthaṃ sthāpayitvā Pītā-mahaḥ | janayāmāsa bhagarān puttrān uttama-tejasaḥ |* 6135. *Marichim ṛishim Attriṃ cha Pulastyam Pulahaṃ Kratuṃ | Vasiṣṭhāngirasaṃ cho-ḥḥ Rudraṃ cha prabhum īśvaram | Prachetasas tathā Dakṣhaḥ kanyāḥ śhasṭīm ajjanat | tāḥ vai brahmarshayaḥ sarvāḥ prajāṛtham prati-pedire | tābhyo viśvāni bhūtāni devāḥ pitṛi-gaṇās tathā | gandharvāp-sarasaś chaiva rakṣhāṃsi vīvidhāni cha | . . .* 6149. *Jāne tāta jagat sarvaṃ tathā sthūvara-jangamam |* 6150. *Bhūta-sargam imaṃ kṛitvā sarva-loka-pitāmahaḥ | śāśvataṃ veda-paṭhitaṃ dharmam prayuyuje tataḥ | tasmīn dharme sthitāḥ devāḥ saḥāchāryya-purohitāḥ | adityāḥ vasavo rudrāḥ sa-sādhyāḥ marud-āsrinaḥ |* "This entire universe was formerly one expanse of water, motionless, without æther, without any distinguishable earth, enveloped in darkness, imperceptible to touch, with an appearance of (vast) depth, silent, and measureless. There Pītāmaha (Brahmā) was born. That mighty god created wind, fire, and the sun, the æther¹ above, and under it the earth belonging to Nirṛiti, the sky, with the moon, stars, constellations, and planets, the years, seasons, months, half-months, and the minute sub-divisions of time. Having established the frame of the universe, the divine Pītāmaha begot sons of eminent splendour, (6135) Marichi, the rishi Attri, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, Vasiṣṭha, Angiras, and the mighty lord Rudra. Daksha, the son of Prachetas, also begot sixty daughters, all of whom were taken by the Brahmarshis² for the purpose of propa-gating offspring. From these females, all beings, gods, pitṛis, gan-dharvas, apsarasas, and various kinds of rākshases, . . . (6149) this

¹ And yet it is elsewhere said (Anusūsanap. 2161, quoted above in p. 130) that the æther (*ākāśa*) cannot be created.

² Here this word must mean "rishis, sons of Brahmā."

entire world, moving and stationary, was produced. 6150. Having formed this creation of living beings, the parent of all worlds established the eternal rule of duty as read in the Veda. To this rule of duty the gods, with their teachers and domestic priests, the Ādityas, Vasus, Rudras, Sādhyas, Maruts, and Aśvins conformed."

Another account of the creation is given in the same book of the M. Bh., verses 7518 ff., where it is ascribed to Viṣṇu in the form of Govinda, or Keśava (Kṛishṇa), who is identified with the supreme and universal Puruṣa. Resting on the waters (7527) he created by his thought Sankarshaṇa, the first-born of all beings. Then (7529) a lotus sprang from his (either Sankarshaṇa's or Viṣṇu's) navel, from which again (7530) Brahmā was produced. Brahmā afterwards created his seven mind-born sons, Marīchi, Attri, Angiras, Pulastya, Pulaha, Kratu, and Dakṣa (7534).

Compare Bhīṣmaparvan, verses 3017 ff.

Page 122, note 223.

Compare the passage quoted in the last note from the Sāntiparvan, verse 6135.

Page 128, line 20.

The Sāntiparvan, verses 7548 ff. ascribes the creation of the four castes to Kṛishṇa: *Tataḥ Kṛishṇo mahābhāgaḥ punar eva Yudhishṭhira | brāhmaṇānāṃ śataṃ śreṣṭham mukhād evāsrijat prabhuḥ | bāhubyāṃ kṣhattriya-śataṃ vaiśyānāṃ ūrutaḥ śataṃ | padbhyāṃ śūdra-śataṃ chaiva Keśavo Bharatarshabha |* "Then again the great Kṛishṇa created a hundred Brāhmans, the most excellent (class), from his mouth, a hundred Kṣhattriya from his arms, a hundred Vaiśyas from his thighs, and a hundred Śūdras from his feet."

Compare Bhīṣmaparvan, verse 3029.

Page 128, note 238.

In another place also, verses 6208 f., the Anuśāsanaparvan ranks purohitas with Śūdras: *Śūdra-karma tu yaḥ kuryād avahāya sva-karma cha | sa vijneyo yathā śūdro na cha bhojyaḥ kathamachana | chikitsakaḥ kāṇḍapriṣṭhaḥ purādhyaḥkṣaḥ purohitaḥ | sāmvaṭsaro vṛithādhyāyī sarve te śūdra-sammitāḥ |* "He, who, abandoning his own work, does the work of a Śūdra, is to be regarded as a Śūdra, and not to be invited to a feast. A physician, a kāṇḍapriṣṭha (see above, p. 442), a

city governor, a purohita, an astrologer, one who studies to no purpose, —all these are on a level with Sūdras."

Pages 144 ff.

See above, note on pp. 90 ff.

Page 150, line 4.

Compare Dronaparvan, verse 2397.

Page 220, line 14.

I am indebted to Professor Max Müller for pointing out to me two passages in Indian commentators in which Manu is spoken of as a Kshattriya. The first is from Madhusūdana Sarasvatī's Commentary on the Bhagavad-gītā, iv. 1. The words of the text are these: *Sri-Bhagavān uvācha | imāṁ Vivasvate yogam proktavān aham avyayam | Vivasvān Manave prāha Manur Ikshvākave 'bravīt | evam paramparā-prāptam imāṁ rājarshayo viduḥ | sa kāleneha mahatā yogo nashṭaḥ parantapa | sa evāyam mayā te 'dya yogaḥ proktaḥ pūrātanaḥ | bhakto 'si me sakhā cheti rahasyam etad uttamam |* "The divine Being (Kṛishṇa) said: I declared to Vivasvat (the Sun) this imperishable Yoga-doctrine. Vivasvat told it to (his son) Manu; and Manu to (his son) Ikshvāku. Thus do royal rishis know it as handed down by tradition. Through lapse of time however it was lost. I have to day therefore revealed to thee (ancw) this ancient system, this most excellent mystery; for thou art devoted to me and my friend."

On this Madhusūdana remarks: "*Vivasvate*" *sarva-kshattriya-vamśa-vija-bhūtāya Ādityāya proktavān* | "'I declared it to Vivasvat' i.e. to Āditya (the Sun) who was the source of the whole Kshattriya race."

The second passage is from Someśvara's *ṭikā* on Kumārila Bhaṭṭa's *Mīmāṃsa-vārttika*. I must, however, first adduce a portion of the text of the latter work which forms the subject of Someśvara's annotation. For a copy of this passage, which is otherwise of interest, I am indebted to Professor Goldstücker, who has been kind enough to copy it for me.² The first extract refers to Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 3; where the question under discussion is, in what circumstances authority can be assigned to

² See Professor Müller's *Anc. Sansk. Lit.* pp. 79 f. where this passage is partly extracted and translated. See also the same author's *Chips from a German Workshop*, vol. ii. pp. 338 ff.

the Smṛiti when the Śruti, or Veda, is silent. After some other remarks Kumāṛila proceeds: *Sākyaḍi-vachanāni tu katipaya-dama-dānāḍi vachana-varjjaṁ sarvāṇy eva samasta-chaturdaśa-vidyā-sthāna-viruddhāni trayī-mārga-vyutthita-viruddhāchāraṇaiḥ cha Buddhādīdhiḥ praṇītāni trayī-bāhyebhyaḥ chaturtha-varṇa-niravasita-prāyebhyo vyāmudhebhyaḥ samarthitāni iti na veda-mūlatvena sambhūvyante | śradharmātikramena cha yena kṣhattriyeṇa satū pravakṛitva-pratigrahaḥ pratipannau sa dharmam aviṣṭutam upadekṣhyati iti kaḥ samāśvāsaḥ | uktāṁ cha “para-loka-viruddhāni kurvāṇaṁ dūratas tyujet | ātmānaṁ yo viśāṁdhatte so ’nyasmai syāt kathaṁ hitaḥ” iti | Buddhādeḥ punar ayam evātikramo ’lan-kāra-buddhaḥ sthito yena evam āha “kālī-kalusha-kṛitāni yāni loke mayi nipatantu | vimuchyatām tu lokāḥ” iti | sa kila loka-hitārtha-kṣhattriya-dharmam atikramya brāhmaṇa-ṛiṭtim pravakṛitvam pratipadya pratishedhātīkramāsamarthair brāhmaṇair ananuśiṣṭāṁ dharmam bāhyajanān anuśāsad dharmā-piḍām apy ātmano ’ngikṛitya parānugrahaṁ kṛitvān ity evaṁvidhair eva guṇaiḥ stūyate | tad-anuśiṣṭānusāriṇaḥ cha sarve eva śruti-smṛiti-vihita-dharmātikramena vyavaharanto viruddhāchāratoḇa jñāyante | tena pratyakṣayaḥ śrūtyā virodhe grantha-kāriṇāṁ grahītrācharitṛiṇāṁ grantha-prāmāṇya-bādhanam | na hy eṣhām pūrvoktena nyāyena śruti-pratibaddhānāṁ eva-mūla-śruty-anumāna-sāmarthyam asti | “ But the precepts of Śākya and others, with the exception of a few enjoining dispassion, liberality, etc., are all contrary to the fourteen classes of scientific treatises, and composed by Buddha and others whose practice was opposed to the law of the three Vedas, as well as calculated for men belonging mostly to the fourth caste who are excluded from the Vedas, debarred from pure observances, and deluded:—consequently they cannot be presumed to be founded on the Veda. And what confidence can we have that one (i.e. Buddha) who being a Kṣhattriya,³ transgressed the obligations of his own order, and assumed the function of teaching and the right to receive presents, would inculcate a pure system of duty? For it has been said: ‘Let everyone avoid a man who practises acts destructive to future happiness. How can he who ruins himself be of any benefit to others?’ And yet this very transgression of Buddha and his followers is conceived as being a feather in his cap; since he spoke thus, ‘Let all the evils resulting from the sin of the Kālī age fall upon me; and let the world be redeemed.’ Thus, abandoning the*

³ Compare Colebrooke’s Misc. Essays, i. 312.

duties of a Kshattriya, which are beneficial to the world, assuming the function of a teacher which belongs only to the Brāhmins, and instructing men who were out of the pale in duty which was not taught by the Brāhmins who could not transgress the prohibition (to give such instruction), he sought to do a kindness to others, while consenting to violate his own obligations; and for such merits as these he is praised! And all who follow his instructions, acting in contravention of the prescriptions of the Sruti and Smṛiti, are notorious for their erroneous practices. Hence from the opposition in which the authors of these books, as well as those who receive and act according to them, stand to manifest injunctions of the Veda, the authority of these works is destroyed.⁴ For since they are by the above reasoning opposed by the Veda, the inference that they rest upon independent Vedic authority of their own possesses no force."

The next passage is from Kumāṛila's Vārttika on Jaimini's Sūtra, i. 3, 7: *Vedenairvābhyanyajñātā yeshām eva pravarakṛitā | nityānāmabhidheyānām manvantara-gugādishu | teshām viparivartteshu kurratām dharmā-saṁhitāḥ | vachanāni pramāṇāni nānyeshām iti nīśchayaḥ | tathā cha Manur ṛichāḥ sāmīdhenyo bhavanti ity asya vidher vākya-śeṣe śrūyate* "Manur vai yat kinchid avadat tad bhashajam bhashajatāyai"⁵ *iti prāyaścittādy-upadeśa-vachanam pāpa-vyādher bhashajam* | "It is certain that the precepts of those persons only whose right to expound the eternal meanings of scripture in the different manvantaras and yugas has been recognized by the Veda, are to be regarded as authoritative, when in the revolutions (of those great mundane periods) they compose codes of law. Accordingly by way of complement to the Vedic passage containing the precept (*vidhi*) beginning 'there are these sāmīdheni verses of Manu' it is declared, 'whatever Manu said is a healing remedy;' i.e. his prescriptions in regard to expiatory rites, etc., are remedies for the malady of sin."

⁴ The Nyāya-mālā-vistara, i. 3, 4, quotes Kumāṛila as raising the question whether the practice of innocence, which Śākya (Buddha) inculcated, was, or was not, a duty from its conformity to the Veda, and as solving it in the negative, since cow's milk put into a dogskin cannot be pure (*Śākyoktāhiṁsanaṁ dharmo na vā dharmāḥ śrūtatataḥ | na dharmo na hi pūtaṁ vyād go-kṣhīraṁ śva-dṛitau dhṛitam*).

⁵ These words are quoted by Böthlingk and Roth, s.v. *bhashajatā*, as taken from the Panchaviṁśa Brāhmaṇa, 23, 16, 7. A similar passage occurs in the Taitt. Saṁh. ii. 2, 10, 2.

From Someśvara's elaborate comment on the former of these two passages I need only extract the following sentences: *Etad abhiyukta-vachanena draḍḥayati "uktañ cha" | Manas tu kshattriyasyāpi prava-kṛitvam "yad vai kinchid Manur aradat tad bleshajam" iti vedānujñāta-tvād aviruddham ity āśayaḥ* | "This he confirms by the words of a learned man which he introduces by the phrase 'for it has been said.' But although Manu was a Kshattriya, his assumption of the office of teacher was not opposed to the Veda, because it is sanctioned by the Vedic text 'whatever Manu said was a remedy:.' Such is the purport."

Page 254, line 12.

Yas tityāja sachi-vidam, etc. This verse is quoted in the Taittirīya Āraṇyaka (pp. 159 f. of Cal. edit.), which, however, reads *sakhi-vidam* instead of *sachi-vidam*. An explanation of the passage is there given by the Commentator.

Page 264, line 14.

Professor Weber considers (Indische Studien, i. 52) that "the yau-dhāḥ and the arhantah were the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmanas." See the whole passage below in the note on p. 366.

Page 268, note 51.

Compare Āśvalāyana's Śrauta-Sūtras, i. 3, 3 and 4, and commentary (p. 22 of Cal. edit.). Prithī Vainya is, as I find from Böhlingk and Roth's Lexicon, *s.v.*, referred to also in the Atharva-veda, viii. 10, 24. The words are these: *Sā udakrāmat sū manushyān āgachhat | tām manushyāḥ upāhvayanta "irāvaty ehi" iti | tasyāḥ Manur Vaivasvato vatsaḥ āśīt prithivī pātram | tām Prithī Vainyo 'dhok tām kṛishīm cha sasyaṁ cha adhok | te kṛishīm cha sasyaṁ cha manushyāḥ upajīranti ityādi* | "She (*i.e.* Virāj) ascended: she came to men. Men called her to them, saying, 'Come, Irāvati.' Manu Vaivasvata was her calf, and the earth her vessel. Prithī Vainya milked her; he milked from her agriculture and grain. Men subsist on agriculture and grain."

See Wilson's Vishnu Purāṇa, vol. i. pp. 183 ff., where Prithu's (this is the Puranic form of the word) reign is described. It is there stated that this king, "taking the lord Manu Svāyambhuva for his calf, milked from the earth into his own hand all kinds of grain from a desire to benefit his subjects" (V.P. i. 13, 54. *Sa kalpayitvā vatsaṁ tu*

Manuñ Ścāyambhuvam prabhūm | sve pānau prithivī-nātho dudoha prithivīm Prithuh | 55. Sasya-jātāni sarrāni prajānām hita-kāmyayā). See also the passage quoted from the Bhāgavata Purāṇa by the editor Dr. Hall in pp. 189 ff. The original germ of these accounts is evidently to be found in the passage of the Atharva-veda, from which the short text I have cited is taken.

Prithu's reign is also described in the Droṇaparvan, 2394 ff., and Śāntiparvan, 1030 ff.

Page 286, line 8 from the foot.

The Srinjayas are mentioned in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, xii. 9, 3, 1 ff. and 13 (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 207), as opposing without effect the celebration of a sacrifice which was proposed to be offered for the restoration of Duṣṭarītu Paunsūyana to his ancestral kingdom.

Page 345, line 24.

Professor Aufrecht has pointed out to me a short passage in the Taittirīya Saṁhitā, iii. 1, 7, 2, in which Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni are mentioned together as contending with Vasishṭha: *Viśvāmitra-Jamadagnī Vasishṭhena asparśdhetām | sa etaj Jamadagnir vihavayam apaśyat | tena vai sa Vasishṭhasya indriyañ vīryyam arṇikta | yad vihavayāñ śasyate indriyam eva tad vīryyañ yajamāno bhrātrīcyasya ṛinkte | yasya bhūyāṁso yajna-kratavaḥ ity āhuḥ sa devatāḥ ṛinkte |* "Viśvāmitra and Jamadagni were contending with Vasishṭha. Jamadagni beheld this vihavaya text, and with it he destroyed the vigour and energy of Vasishṭha. When the vihavaya is recited, then the sacrificer destroys the vigour and energy of his enemy. He whose oblations and all attendant ceremonies are superior destroys the gods (of his opponent)."

Page 366, note 164.

In a notice of Lāṭyāyana's Sūtras, in Indische Studien, i. 50, Professor Weber observes: "At the same time I remark here that the presence of Sūdras at the ceremonies, although on the outside of the sacrificial ground, was permitted—a point which results from the fact that during the dikṣhā they were not to be addressed (iii. 3). Here and there a Sūdra appears as acting, although in a degraded position. Compare iv. 3, 5: *āryo* (i.e. *vaiśyaḥ*), according to the commentator Agnisvāmin) *antarvedi . . . bahirvedi sūdraḥ | āryābhāve yaḥ kaś*

cha āryyo varṇaḥ (brāhmaṇo vā kṣattriyo vā, Agnisvāmin). Thus their position, like that of the Nishādas, was not so wretched as it became afterwards. Toleration was still necessary; indeed the strict Brahmanical principle was not yet generally recognized among the nearest Arian races. This is shown by the following fact. Before entering on the Vṛātya-stomas, Lāṭyāyana treats, viii. 5, of an imprecatory rite called Syena (the falcon), which is not taught in the Panchaviṁśa, but in the Shadviṁśa (iv. 2). The tribes mentioned by Pāṇini, v. 3, 112 ff., are there described: *Vṛātinānām⁶ yandhānām puttrān anūchānān ṛitvijo vṛiṇṭa syenasya* | “*arhatām eva*” *iti S’āṇḍilyaḥ*⁷ | (“Let the learned sons of warriors, who live by the profession of Vṛātas, be chosen as priests for the Syena. ‘The sons of arhats only’ [should be chosen] says S’āṇḍilya”). “Whilst,” proceeds Prof. W., “in the beginning of the Sūtra nine things are required for a ṛitvij (priest), viz. that he should be (1) ārsheyaḥ (*ā dasamāt purushād aryavachhinnam ārshaṁ yasya*, ‘able to trace his unbroken descent for ten generations in the family of a rishi’); (2) anūchānaḥ (*śishyebhyo vidyā-sampradānaṁ yaḥ kṛitavān*, “one who has imparted knowledge to pupils’); (3) sādhu-charaṇaḥ (*ṣaṭsu brāhmaṇa-karmasv avasthitaḥ praśasta-karmā*, ‘one who has practised the six duties of a Brāhman, a man of approved conduct’); (4) vāgmī (eloquent); (5) anyūnāṅgaḥ (without deficiency in his members); (6) anatiriktāṅgaḥ (without superfluous members); (7) dvesataḥ (equal in length above and below the navel); (8) anatikṛiṣṇaḥ; (9) anatisvetgḥ (*na atibālo na atiriddhaḥ*, ‘neither too young nor too old’),—Lāṭyāyana here contents himself with putting forward one only of these requirements, the second (i.e. that the priest should be ‘learned’), as essential. The title Arhat for teacher, which was at a later period used exclusively by the Buddhists, is found in the Saṭopatha Brāhmaṇa, (iii. 4, 3, 6) and the Taittirīya Aranyaka,⁸ and

⁶ *Nanā-jātīyāḥ aniyata-vṛittayaḥ utsedha-jīvināḥ saṅghāḥ vṛātāḥ* | (Pātānjali, quoted by Weber) “Vṛātas are the various classes of people who have no fixed profession, and live by violence.” *Vṛātēna śarīrīyāsena jīvati vṛātīnaḥ* (Comm. on Pāṇini, v. 2, 21) “He who lives by bodily labour is a vṛātīna.” The word means “he who lives by the labour usual among Vṛātas,” according to another comment cited by Weber.

⁷ *Arhatām eva varāṇam kartavyam iti S’āṇḍilyaḥ* | “Arhats only are to be chosen, says S’āṇḍilya” (Agnisvāmin, quoted by Weber).

⁸ It also occurs in Ait. Br. i. 15 (see Būthlingk and Roth, s.v.). To his translation of this passage Dr. Haug appends the following note: “The term is *arhat*, a word

is known in the Gaṇa Brāhmaṇa (Pāṇini, v. 1, 124). The Yaudhāh and Arhantaḥ are the forerunners of the Rājanyas and the Brāhmanas.' According to Professor Weber, Ind. St. i. 207, note, a Sthapati "means, according to Kātyāyana's Śrauta Sūtras, xxii. 11, 11, a Vaiśya, or any other person (according to Kātyāyana, i. 1, 12, he may even be a Nishāda) who has celebrated the Gosava sacrifice, after being chosen by his subjects to be their ruler."

Page 378, lines 1-3.

Compare Droṇaparvan, verse 2149 : *nanv eṣhān niśchitā nishṭhā nishṭhā sapta-padi smṛitā* |

Page 400, line 9 from bottom.

If further proof of this sense of *brahmarshi* be wanted, it may be found in the words *viprarshi* and *drijarshi*, which must be regarded as its synonyms, and which can only mean "Brāhman-rishi."

Page 423, line 12, and foot-note.

The same verse with some variations is repeated in the Anuśāsana-parvan, verse 6262 : *Rāja Mitrasahaś chaiva Vaśiṣṭhāya mahātmane | Madayantiṃ priyāṃ bhāryāṃ datvā cha tridivāṃ gataḥ* | "And king Mitrasaha, having bestowed his dear wife Madayanti on the great Vaśiṣṭha, went to heaven." Here, it will be observed, the name Madayanti is correctly given.

Page 423, line 17.

This stanza is repeated in Anuśāsana-parvan, verse 6250, with the following variation in the second line : *arghyam pradāya vidhivā lobhe lokān anuttamān* |

Page 436, line 5 from the foot.

I find that two other instances of Brāhmanas receiving instruction from Rājanyas are alluded to by Professor Weber, Ind. Stud. x. 117.

well known, chiefly to the students of Buddhism. Sāyana explains it by "a great Brāhman, or a Brāhman (in general)." In reference to another part of the sentence in which this word occurs, Dr. Haug adds : "That cows were killed at the time of receiving a most distinguished guest is stated in the Smṛitis. But as Sāyana observes (which entirely agrees with opinions held now-a-days), this custom belongs to former yugas (periods of the world). Thence the word *goghna*, i.e. 'cowkiller,' means in the more ancient Sanskrit books 'a guest' (see the commentators on Pāṇini, 3, 4, 73) for the reception of a high guest was the death of the cow of the house."

The first is recorded in the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, x. 6, 1, 2 ff.; where it is stated that six Brāhmins, who were at issue with one another regarding Vaiśvānara (Agni), and were aware that king Aśvapati the Kaikeya was well informed on the subject, repaired to him for instruction and requested that he would treat them as his pupils. He first asked them 'if they were not themselves learned in the Veda as well as the sons of learned men, and how they could in that case come to consult him' ("Yan nu bhagavanto 'nūchānāḥ anūchāna-putrāḥ | kim idam" iti). They, however, persisted in their request, when he asked them severally what they considered Vaiśvānara to be, expressed his concurrence in their replies, though all different, as partial solutions of the question, and ended by giving them some further insight into the subject of their enquiry. The second instance is taken from the Chhāndogya Upanishad, i. 8, 1, which commences thus: *Trayo ha udgīthe kuśalāḥ babbhavaḥ Śīlakaḥ Śālāvatyaś Chaikitāyano Dālbyaḥ Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir iti | te ha ūchur "udgīthe kathāṁ vadāma" iti | 2. "Tatha" iti ha samupariviśuḥ | sa ha Pravāhaṇo Jaivalir uvācha "bhagavantū agre vadātū | brāhmaṇayor vadator vāchaṁ śrośhyāmi" iti |* "Three men were skilled in the Udgītha, Śīlaka Śālāvatya, Chaikitāyana Dālbya, and Pravāhaṇa Jaivali. They said, 'We are skilled in the Udgītha; come let us discuss it.' (Saying) 'so be it,' they sat down. Pravāhaṇa Jaivali said, 'Let your reverences speak first; I will listen to the discourse of Brāhmins discussing the question.'" Śīlaka Śālāvatya then asked Chaikitāyana Dālbya a series of questions; but was dissatisfied with his final reply. Being interrogated in his turn by Chaikitāyana, Śīlaka answered; but his answer was disapproved by Pravāhaṇa Jaivali, who finally proceeded to supply the proper solution.

In two other passages the same Upanishad, as quoted above in p. 195, and explained by the commentator, recognizes the fact of sacred science being possessed, and handed down, by Kshattriyas. See also the note on p. 220, above, p. 508. The doctrines held by Rājanyas are not, however, always treated with such respect. In the Śatapatha Brāhmaṇa, viii. 1, 4, 10, an opinion in regard to breath (*prāṇa*) is attributed to Svārijit Nāgnajita, or Nugnajit the Gāndhāra, of which the writer contemptuously remarks that "he said this like a Rājanya" (*Yat sa tad uvācha rājanyabandhur iva tv eva tad uvācha*); and he then proceeds to refute it (see Weber's Indische Studien, i. 218). It appears that the Smṛiti

recognizes the possibility of a Brāhman becoming in certain circumstances the pupil of a Rājanya or a Vaiśya. Thus Manu says, ii. 241 : *Abrahmanād adhyayanam āpat-kāle vidhiyate | anuvrajyā cha śūśrūṣhā yāvād adhyayanam guroḥ |* 242. *Nābrāhmane gurau śiṣhyo vāsam ātyantikaṁ vaset | brāhmane chānanūchāne kankṣhan gatim anuttamām |* 241. "In a time of calamity it is permitted to receive instruction from one who is not a Brāhman; and to wait upon and obey such a teacher during the period of study. 242. But let not a pupil, who aims at the highest future destiny, reside for an excessive period with such a teacher who is not a Brāhman, or with a Brāhman who is not learned in the Veda." Kullūka explains this to mean that when a Brāhman instructor cannot be had a Kshattriya may be resorted to, and in the absence of a Kshattriya, a Vaiśya.

Page 457, note 241.

When I wrote this note, I did not advert to the difficulty presented by the word *didāsithā*, which has at once the form of a desiderative verb, and of the second person of the perfect tense. Böhtlingk and Roth, *s.v. dā*, on a comparison of the two parallel passages, suppose that the present reading of the Aitareya Brāhmaṇa is corrupt as regards this word, which, as they quote it, is *didāsithā*. May not the correct reading be *dādāsithā* from the root *dās*?

Page 461, line 14.

The Taittiriya Brāhmaṇa, ii. 2, 4, 4 f., says of Prajāpati : *So 'surān asṛijata | tad asya apriyam āsit |* 5. *Tad durvarṇaṁ hiraṇyam abhavat | tad durvarṇasya hiraṇyasya janma | . . . sa devān asṛijata tad asya priyam āsit | tat suvarṇasya hiraṇyasya janma |* "He created Asuras. That was displeasing to him. 5. That became the precious metal with the bad colour (silver). This was the origin of silver. . . . He created gods. That was pleasing to him. That became the precious metal with the good colour (gold). That was the origin of gold."



INDEX OF PRINCIPAL NAMES AND MATTERS.

A	Aitareya Brāhmaṇa, 5 quoted—	Andhras, 358, 483 f.
	ii. 33,—180	Anenas, 226
	— 34,—166	Anga, 232, 298, 464
Abhimāna, 201	iii. 31,—177	Angas, 459
Abhishnātās, 353	— 31,—143	Angiras, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 151, 168, 172, 184, 224 f., 226, 279, 286, 330, 341, 445, 466
Abhiyuktas, 500	v. 14,—191	Angirases, 192, 194, 224
Achala, 400	vii. 15,—48	Anila, 234
Achhāvāka, 155	— 17,—365	Anu, 232, 482
Adhipurusha, 111	— 19,—367 f.	Anus, 179
Adharma, 124	— 27,—136	Anugraha-sarga, 58
Adhvaryu, 41, 155, 251,	viii. 14,—492	Anukramanikā, 228, 266,
263, 294, 459	— 21,—325, 456	328, 348
Aditi, 18, 26, 72, 116, 122,	— 23,—369, 493	Anūpā, 116
221	— 24,—367	Anushubh, 16
Ādityas, 19 f., 26, 52, 117,	— 33,—107	Anuvratas, 500
126, 157, 270	Ājagava, 301	Apasya, 279
Ādriśyanti, 417	Ājaka, 349	Āpastamba, 2
Agastya, or Agasti, 309 ff.,	Ājumidha, 234, 267, 279,	Āpava, 453
321, 330, 442, 461	360, 413	Āpayā, 345
Aghamarshaṇa, 279	Ājatusatru, 431	Āpnavāna, 447
Aghamarshaṇas, 353	Ājgurta, 355 ff., 360	Āpratiratha, 234
Agni, 10, 16, 20 f., 33, 52,	Ājita, 279	Āpsasas, 33, 37, 177, 320,
71, 75, 165, 177 f., 180,	Ākampana, 505	419, etc.
270	Akāsa, 115, 130, 506	Āranyakas, 2, 5, 32
— one of the triad of	Akriya, 232	Arhat, 511, 513
deities, 75	Akshamālā, 336	Arishtanemi, 116, 125
Agnidh, 251	Akulī, 169	Arjuna, 449 ff., 497
Agnidhra, 155	Akūti, 65, 73	Arjuna (the Pāṇdu), 494
Agnidhra (king), 491	Alarka, 232	Arka, 241
Agnihotra, 21, 428	Amaravati, 494	Arrian, quoted, 370
Agni Purāṇa, 210	Amāvāsu, 349	Ārshṭishena, 272, 279
Agnisvāmin, 512	Ambaisha, 224, 266, 279,	Ārtavas, 18
Agnivesya, 223	362, 405	Arupas, 32, 449
Agnivesyaṇa, 223	Ambasitha, 481, 495	Arundhati, 336, 389
Āhalyā, 235, 310, 466	Ambhāṃsi, 23, 58, 79, 80	Arurmaghas, 438
— the first woman. 121	Ānśa, 27	Arushī, 124, 476
Āhankāra, 201	Anagha, 335	Ārvāksrotas, 57, 61, 65,
Āhavanīya fire, 428	Ānala, 116	157
Āhi, 250, 340	Ananta, 207	
Āhura Mazda, 293	Ānautā, 114	
Āindra - bārhaspatya obla-	Ānavadyā, 116	
tion, 22		

Ārya, 18
 Āryaman, 27, 158
 Āryyas, 174 ff., 396, 481
 — their language, 141, 482
 Āryakas, 498
 Asat, 46
 Asitamrigas, 438
 Ashtaka, 279, 352, 357
 Asmasarin, 275
 Āsramas, 98
 Asurā, 116
 Asuras, 23, 24, 29, 33, 37, 58, 79, 130, 139, 177, 187, 223, 469, etc., etc.
 — their priests, 189 f.
 Āsuri, 430
 Āśvalāyana's S'rauta Sūtras, 137, 611
 Āsvamedha (proper name), 267
 Āśvatara, 336
 Āsvins, 166, 470, etc.
 Atharvan (the sage), 162, 169
 — his cow, 395
 Atharvas, 293
 Atharva-veda, 2
 quoted—
 iii. 19, 1,—283
 — 24, 2,—179
 iv. 6, 1,—21
 — 6, 2,—490
 — 14, 4,—179
 — 29, 3, 5,—330
 v. 8, 5,—289
 — 11, 1-11,—395
 — 17, 1-18,—280
 — 18, 1-15,—284
 — 19, 1-15,—286
 vi. 120, 3,—385
 — 123, 3 f.—137
 vii. 104,—395
 viii. 2, 21,—46
 — 10, 24,—217, 511
 — 108, 1-5,—254
 ix. 5, 1,—603
 — 5, 27,—282, 385
 x. 8, 7,—9
 xi. 10, 2,—32
 xii. 1, 15,—163
 — 3, 17,—385
 — 5, 4-15,—287
 xiii. 3, 14,—171
 — 4, 29,—9
 xv. 8, 1,—22
 — 9, 1,—22

Atharva-veda *continued*—
 xviii. 3, 15,—330
 — 3, 23,—385
 — 3, 34,—179
 xix. 6, 1 ff.—8, 9
 — 6, 6,—10
 — 9, 12,—288
 — 22, 21,—288
 — 23, 30,—288
 — 43, 8,—289
 — 62, 1,—282
 Atibalā, 116
 Ātmavat, 279
 Atri, 36, 61, 116, 122 f., 171 f., 178, 225, 242, 248, 267, 303, 330, 468
 Atyarāti, 493
 Audumbaras, 353
 Aufrecht, Professor, his Catalogue of Bodleian Sanskrit MSS. referred to, 203
 — information or suggestions from him, 14, 19, 20, 29, 93, 137, 163 f., 210, 247 f., 254 ff., 319, 325 f., 340, 346, 389, 395, 612
 Augha, 217
 Āupamanyava, 177
 Āurva, 279, 445, 447, 448 f., 476
 — Āvantyas, 486
 Āvyakta, 41
 Āyāsva, 355
 Āyodhyā, 115
 Āyu, 170, 171 f., 174, 180
 Āyus, 170
 Āyus (king), 226, 308, 353

B

Bābhavas, 356
 Bābhrus, 353
 Badarī, 199
 Bāhu, 486
 Bahuputra, 116
 Bahvasva, 235
 Bala, 279
 Balā, 116
 Balūhaka, 207
 Balūkiśva, 353
 Balakhilyas, 32, 305, 400
 Bāleya, 232
 Bālī, 232
 Bālīs, 469

Banerjea, Rev. Prof., his Dialogues on Hindu Philosophy referred to, 120
 — his edition of the Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa referred to, 223
 Banga, 232
 Barbaras, 482
 Baresma, 293
 Bauddhas, 305
 Benfey, Prof., his translation of the Sāma-veda quoted, 164
 — his glossary to ditto, 490
 — his translation of the Rīg-veda quoted or referred to, 167, 180, 247, 331, 348
 Bhagavadgītā quoted, 508
 Bhadrā, 389, 467
 Bhadrāsva (a division of Jambudvīpa), 491
 Bhaga, 27
 Bhāgavata Purāṇa—
 i. 3, 15,—213
 — 3, 20,—350
 ii. 1, 37,—156
 — 5, 34,—155
 iii. 6, 23,—156
 — 12, 20,—108
 — 20, 25,—157
 — 22, 2,—156
 iv. 1, 40,—335
 v. 1, 30,—489
 — 16, 2,—490
 — 17, 11,—496
 — 20, 4, 6,—498
 — 20, 11,—499
 — 20, 16, 22,—500
 — 20, 28,—501
 vi. 6, 40,—158
 vii. 11, 24,—366
 viii. 5, 41,—157
 — 24, 7,—208
 ix. 2, 16,—222
 — 2, 17,—223
 — 2, 21,—223
 — 2, 23 ff.—222
 — 6, 2,—224
 — 7,—358
 — 7, 6,—386
 — 13, 3,—316
 — 14, 48,—158
 — 15, 5,—457
 — 16, 17,—458
 — 16, 30,—358

Bhāgavata Purāṇa con-
tinued—

- ix. 17, 2,—227
- 17, 10,—232
- 20, 1,—234
- 21, 19,—237
- 21, 21,—235
- 21, 33,—235
- 22, 14,—275
- x. 33, 27,—113
- Bhalandana, and Bhalanda
a Vais'ya mantra-krit,
279
- Bhayamāna, 266
- Bharadvāja, 141, 279, 330
- Bharata, 168, 234, 242,
354, 360, 413
- Bhārata, 187, 348
- Bharatas, 320, 338, 310,
354
- Bhāratas, 344
- Bhāratavarsha, 491, 494 ff.
- Bhārati, 112
- Bhārga, or Bhārga, 231
- Bhārgabhūmi, 231
- Bhārgava, 228
- Bharmyaśva, 235
- Bhāsi, 116
- Bhāvins, 498
- Bheda, 319, 323
- Bhīma, 133, 142, 308, 349
- Bhīmanāda, 207
- Bhīmasena, 273
- Bhīras, 495
- Bhīshma, 127
- Bhṛigu, 36, 65, 67, 122,
139, 151, 168, 228 f.,
279, 286, 314, 443 ff.
- Bhṛigu Vārūṇi, 443
- Bhṛigubhūmi, 231
- Bhṛigu, 169 f., 228, 442 ff.
- Bhṛitakīla, 279
- Bhumanyu, 360
- Bhūloka, 51, 209, 211
- Bhūtakṛitas, 37, 42, 255
- Bhūtānāpati, 16
- Bhūtapati, 108
- Bhūtas, 59
- Bhūtavīras, 438
- Boar incarnation, 51 ff.,
5i, 76
- Böhtlingk and Roth's Lexi-
con referred to, 47, 108,
144, 178, 180, 184, 253,
340, 348, 395, 400, 442,
505, 511
- Brahma S'vovasyava, 30
- Brahmachārin, 289

- Brāhmān (*masculine*, a
priest), 155, 242 ff., 459
- Brāhmān (*masculine*, the
god), 35, 36, 75, etc.
- his passion for his
daughter, 107
- Brāhmān (*neuter*, prayer,
241
- Brahman (*neuter*, the uni-
versal soul), 20
- Brāhmana, son of a Brāh-
mān, 252, 264
- Brāhmanāchhānsin, 155
- Brāhmanas (the theologi-
cal works), 2, 4 f.
- Brahmanaspati, 16
- Brāhmāṇi, 110
- Brāhmans, 7, and *passim*
- origin of the word,
252, 259, 264
- their intermarriage
with women of other
castes, 282, 481
- their prerogatives
and powers, 128, 130, etc.
- Brahmanya, 155
- Brahmaputra, 252, 259,
264
- Brahmarshi, or Brāhman
rishi, 400, 407, 410
- Brahmās, the nine, 65, 445
- Brahmāsava, 279
- Brahmaudana, 26, 27
- Brahma-yuga, 152
- Bréal, M. Michel, his Her-
cule et Cacus, 246
- Bride's seven steps, 378,
514
- * Brihaddevatā, 321, 326,
311
- Bṛihadishu, 234
- Bṛihaduktha, 279
- Bṛihaspati, 16, 22, 163,
167, 226, 270, 438
- Bṛihat, 16
- Bṛihat-sāman, 286
- Buddha, 509
- Buddhists, 513
- Budha, 221, 226, 307, 336
- Bunsen, Baron, his Philo-
sophy of Universal His-
tory referred to, 8
- Burnouf, M. Eugène, his
Bhāgavata Purāṇa re-
ferred to, 8, 155, 211,
489, etc.
- his views about the
Deluge, 215

C

- Chākshusha, 298
- Chākshusha Manvantara,
207, 213
- Chanda, 207
- Chandāla, 402, 481
- Caste, mythical accounts
of its origin, 7 ff.
- Variety and inco-
sistency of these ac-
counts, 34, 66, 102, 159
- Castes, their future abodes,
63, 98
- their respective co-
lours, 110, 151, 153
- no natural distinction
between, 140
- manner of their rise
according to Prof. Roth,
289
- time of their rise ac-
cording to Dr. Haug, 292
- Chāturvanya, 135
- Charshaṇis, 158
- Chauras, 482
- Chārṇākas, 305
- Chāndas, 4
- Chāndogya, 334
- Chāndogya Brāhmana, 5
- Upanishad, iii. 11,
4,—195, 514
- iv. 1, 4,—49
- v. 3, 1,—435
- viii. 15, 1,—195
- Chinas, 482, 484
- Chirini, a river, 199
- Cholas, 488
- Chunchulus, 353
- Chyavana, 124, 273, 283,
445, 470, 474
- Colebrooke's Miscellaneous
Essays quoted or referred
to, 8, 13 f., 25, 52, 325,
378, 385, 492, 497
- Cowell's, Professor E. B.,
translation of Kaushi-
takī Brāhmana Upani-
shad, 10, 432
- Preface to, quoted, 32
- Creation of man, mythical
accounts of, 7 ff.
- their mutual inco-
sistency, 34, 65, 102
- how explained by
Indian commentators, 66
- Creations, similarity of suc-
cessive, 60, 89

D

Dadhīcha, 279
 Dadhyanch, 162, 169, 172
 Daityas, 41, 139, 499
 Daivavāta, 348
 Daivodāsa, 348
 Daksha, 9, 65, 72, 116, 122, 124 ff., 153, 221, 335
 Dakshāyaṇī, Aditi, 126
 Dama, 222
 Damayanti, 389
 Damayanti, see Madayanti
 Damins, 500
 Dānavas, 139, 144, 209, 468 f., 499
 Dānavaratas, 501
 Danāyū, 123
 Daṇḍakas, 467
 Danu, 116, 123
 Daradas, 459, 482
 Darvas, or Dārvas, 482, 488
 Dāsa, 174, 323, 396
 Dasahotri, 29
 Daśaratha, 362
 Daśārṇa, 222
 Dasyus, 174 ff., 358, 460, 469, 482, 500
 Dattātreyā, 450, 473, 478
 Day of Brahmā, 43, 48, 213
 ——— gods, 43
 Deities, triad of, produced from the three Guṇas, 75
 Deluge, legend of, 183, 199, 203, 209, 211
 ——— was the tradition of it indigenous or not, 215
 ——— comparison of different Indian accounts of, 216
 Devadeva, 351
 Devakas, 500
 Devala, 352
 Devalas, 353
 Devāpi, 269
 Devarāja, 279
 Devarāta, 279, 351 f., 356, 413
 Devarātas, 353
 Devarshi, 400
 Devas, 79, 499
 Devasarman, 466
 Devasravas, 344, 352 f.
 Devavat, 322
 Devavāta, 344
 Dhānājāpyas, 353

Dhananjaya, 279
 Dhanur-veda, 477
 Dhanvantari, 226
 Dhanyas, 500
 Dharma, 20, 122, 124, 385, 400, 412
 Dhārṣṭakas, 223
 Dhātṛi, 18, 27, 124
 Dhī, 241
 Dhṛishnu, 126
 Dhṛiṣṭa, 221, 223
 Dhṛitarāshṭri, 117
 Dhruva, 234, 298
 Dīrghatamas, 226, 232, 247, 268, 279
 Dīrghatapas, 233
 Dīrghasaitra, 300
 Dishṭa, 222
 Diti, 116, 123
 Divolāsa, 229 f., 235, 268, 279, 322, 348
 Dogs, whether they fast from religious motives, 365
 Draupadī, 381, 389
 Dravida, 209
 Draviḍas, or Drāviḍas, 482
 Dravinas, 500
 Dṛiḍhanetra, 400
 Driptaḥalāki Gārgya, 432
 Dṛishadvatī, 344
 Drona, 207
 Druhyu, 232, 482
 Druhyus, 179
 Duḥsima, 305
 Durga, commentator on the Nirukta, quoted, 344, 417
 Durgaha, 267
 Duritakshaya, 237
 Durvāsas, 387, 389
 Dushyanta, 234, 360
 Dvāpara, 39, 43 ff., 119, 146, 149 f., 447
 Dvīpas, 51, 489 ff.
 Dwarf incarnation, 52, 54, 233
 Dyaus (the sky), *feminine*, 108
 ——— *masculine*, 163, 396, 434

E

Earth, the goddess, 51, 163
 Earth fashioned, 51 ff., 76
 ——— milked, 96

Egg, the mundane, 35, 74, 156, 503
 Ekadāsinī, 69
 Ekavimsa, 16
 Elysian fields, 502
 Emūsha, 53

F

Families, hope of their reunion in a future life, 385
 Fathers, see Pitris
 Fish incarnation, 50, 54, 111, 183, 199, 205, 209, 211
 Flood, see Delugo

G

Gabhastimat, 494
 Gabhīra, 232
 Gādhi, 343, 349, and *passim*
 Gālava, 232, 352, 411
 Gālavas, 353
 Gaudhamādana, 491
 Gāndhāras, 484
 Gāndharva, 494
 Gandharvas, 33, 37, 59, 139, 144, 177, 250, 257, 499
 ——— their heaven, 63, 98, 307
 Gangā, 130, 199, 206, 461, 490
 Garga, 227, 236, 279, 305
 Gārgya Bālāki, 431
 Gārgyas, 236
 Gārhapatya-fire, 186
 Gāthins, 348, 358
 Gāthins, 358, 363
 Gātra, 335
 Gautama, 121, 235, 316, 434, 466
 Gavishṭhira, 330
 Gaya, 227
 Gayatri, 16, 110, 114, 137
 Genesis, i. 2,—52
 Gifts to priests, 259
 Gir, 241
 Gods, intercourse of men with, in early ages, 147
 ——— whether they can practise Vedic rites, 365
 Goldstücker, Professor, aid received from, 508

Gopatha Brāhmaṇa, 5
 Gorresio, his edition of the
 • Rāmāyana referred to,
 397, 399, etc.
 Gotama, 330
 Grāvan, 155
 Griffith, Principal, MS. ob-
 tained through him, 279
 Grihya Sūtras, 5
 Gritsa, 279
 Gritsumada, 226
 Gritsumati, 227
 Gubernatis, Signor A. de,
 quoted, xii.
 Guṇas, 66, 75, 145
 Gurudhīra, 279

H

Haihaya, 477
 Haihayas, 449, 486
 Haimavati, 336
 Hala, 121
 Hall's, Dr. Fitzedward,
 edition of Wilson's
 Vishnu Purāṇa, 24,
 268, 512 and *passim*
 — information given
 by, 155
 — Preface to his edition
 of the Sāṅkhya-prava-
 chana-bhāṣya referred
 to, 430
 Hansu, 158
 Hansus, 498
 Hanūmat, 143
 Hari, 51, 62
 Harita, 224
 Hārīta, 352
 Hārītas, 225
 Hārītaka, 351
 Harischandra, 355, 379 ff.,
 413, 486
 Harivaṁśa quoted—
 292,—302
 • 652,—223
 659,—221
 718,—376
 773,—487
 789,—230
 1425,—351
 1456,—351
 1620,—227
 1596,—231
 • 1682,—233
 1732,—227
 1752,—231
 1766,—352

Harivaṁśa continued—

1781,—236
 1819,—273
 8811,—307
 11355,—154
 11802,—153
 11808,—152
 Harivarsha, 491, 494
 Harsha, 124
 Haryasva, 279
 Haug's, Dr. Martin, Aita-
 reya Brāhmaṇa quoted
 or referred to, 4, 5, 48,
 107, 137, 177, 180, 192,
 246, 250, 256, 263, 355,
 369, 438 f., 492 f., 513
 — Origin of Brāhma-
 nism quoted, 11, 14, 292
 Haughton, Sir G. C., his
 note on Manu, vii. 41,—
 296
 Hayagrīva, 207, 212
 Havishyanda, 400
 Hayasiras, 449
 Hema, 232
 Hemakūta, 491
 Hīmavat, or Himālaya,
 130, 183, 200, 229, 311,
 491
 Hiranyamaya, 491
 Hiranyagarbha, 195, 220
 Hiranyāksha, 352
 Hiranyākshas, 353
 Homer's Odyssey quoted,
 602
 Hostility to Vedic wor-
 ship, 259
 Hotri, 155, 251, 263, 271,
 291, 459
 Houses, origin of, 93
 Hrishikesa, 206
 Huhu, 336
 Human sacrifices, 11 f.
 Hūṇas, 495
 Hymns of the Rig-veda, 4,
 318
 — whether they allude
 to castes as already
 existing, 161 ff.

I

Ida, 268, 279, 306
 Idā, daughter of Manu,
 184 ff., see Ilā
 Ikshvāku, 115, 126, 177,
 195, 221, 224, 268, 327,
 355, 362, 401, 405, 508

Ikshvākus, 401, 418
 Ilā, 126, 221, 306, see Idā
 Ilāvrita, 491
 Indra, 3, 10, 18, 20, 33,
 44, 163, 168, 171, 191,
 438
 Indra's heaven, 63, 98
 — wife, 341
 — his adulteries, 121,
 310, 466
 Indra-dvīpa, 494
 Indrāṇi, 310, 389
 Indu (Soma), 124
 Instrumental cause, 51
 Isaiah vi. 9, 10,—255
 Īśāna, 20
 Ishiratha, 348
 Ishundharas, 499
 Īśvara, 75, 221
 Itihāsas, 3, 5, 215

J

Jābāli, 115
 Jahnū, 273, 349, 353, 360,
 413
 Jahnus, 358
 Jaimini's Sūtras, 508
 Jainas, 305
 Jamadagni, 279, 330, 345,
 350, 355, 413, 422, 447,
 450 ff.
 Jamadagnis, 342
 Jambudvīpa, 488, 490 ff.
 Jambūnada, 461
 Janaka, 130, 334, 426 ff.
 Janaloka, 44, 51, 88, 95,
 99
 Janamejaya, 152, 438
 Janantīpa, 493
 Janārdana, 206
 Japa, 442
 Jātāyus, 116
 Jātināla, 497
 Jātukarnya, 223
 Jaya, 352
 Jayakrita, 351
 Jayapīda, 424
 Journal of the Royal Asia-
 tic Society quoted, 3, 6,
 and *passim*
 Jyotsnā, 59

K

Ka, 125
 Kachhapa, 351 f.

- Kadrū, 123
 Kakshivat, 268, 279
 Kala, 62
 Kālā, 123
 Kālākū, 116
 Kalāpa, 277
 Kali, 39, 43 ff., 120, 146, 150, 495
 Kalindas, 482
 Kalinga, 232
 Kalingas, 459, 495
 Kalmashapāda, 414, 423
 Kalpas, 43 ff.
 Kāma, 112, 124
 Kāmarūpa, 495
 Kāmbojas, 482f., 485 ff.
 Kāuchana, 349
 Kānehis, 391
 Kāṇḍapriṣṭha, 442, 507
 Kāndarpa, 408
 Kāṇḍushī, 400
 Kānīna, 223
 Kankas, 484
 Kānyakubja, 390
 Kāṇva, 166, 170, 172, 234, 279
 Kāṇvāyana, 234
 Kapas, 472
 Kapi, 237
 Kapila, 227, 414
 Kapilā, 123
 Kapilas, 499
 Kapileyas, 356
 Kapishṭhala, 344
 Kardama, 116, 123, 400
 Kāishis, 353
 Karmadevas, 46
 Kārtavīrya, 450, 478
 Kārūsha, 221 f.
 Kārūsha, 126
 Kārūshas, 495
 Kāsa, or Kāsaka, 226 f.
 Kas'crumat, 494
 Kāśīrāja, 226
 Kāsis, 431
 Kāsmiras, 459
 Kāsya, 227, 279
 Kāsya, 37, 54, 115 f., 123 f., 126, 195, 330, 400, 451, 455 f., 459
 Kāsya, 438
 Kāthaka Brāhmaṇa quoted, 140, 186, 189, 332 f., 358
 Kati, 352
 Kātyāyanas, 352
 Kātyāyana's S'ruta Sūtras, 19, 136, 365 ff., 369, 514
 Kaumāra-sarga, 58
 Kaushitakī Brāhmaṇa quoted, 328
 — Upanishad, 10, 431
 Kausika, 342, 349
 Kausika (epithet of Indra), 347
 Kausikas, 353, etc.
 Kausikī, 350, 411
 Kavi, 243, 279, 445
 Keralas, 488
 Kesaraprabandhā, 285
 Ketumāla, 491
 Ketus, 32
 Khalins, 468
 Khāṇḍapāṇi, 235
 Khāṇḍavāyanas, 451
 Khasas, 482
 Khyāti, 67
 Kikatas, 342
 Kilāta, 189
 Kimpurusha, 491 f.
 Kimpurushas, 499
 Kināsa, 97
 Kinnaras, 37
 Kinsuka, 229
 Kirātas, 391, 482, 484 f.
 Kolisarpas, 482, 488
 Konvasiras, 482
 Kovidas, 500
 Kratu, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Kramcha-dvīpa, 491, 500
 Kraunchī, 117
 Kṛipa, 279
 Kṛishna, 113
 Kṛishna, 499
 Kṛishṭi, 178
 Kṛita, 39, 43 ff., 88, 90 ff., 119, 144, 148 f., 158, 492, 495, 505
 Kṛitamūlā, 209, 212
 Kṛitavīrya, 449 ff., 478
 Krodha, 123
 Krodhavasā, 116
 Kshattraviddha, 226
 Kshattri, 481
 Kshattiyas, 7, and *passim*
 — etymology of the word, 97, 504
 — how their race was restored, 452
 Kshemaka, 235
 Kshudrakas, 459
 Kuhn, Dr. A., quoted, 179
 Kulakas, 500
 Kullūka quoted, 36, 47, 129, 279, 480, 483
 Kumārila Bhaṭṭa referred to or quoted, 122, 509
 Kuntis, 459
 Kūrma avatāra, see Tor-toise incarnation
 Kurus, 5, 269, 431, 495
 Kurus, 498
 Kusā, 227, 349, 351, 397
 Kusā-dvīpa, 491, 497, 499
 Kusālas, 500
 Kusāmba, 319, 351
 Kusānabha, 351, 397
 Kusika, 338, 340, 346, 400, 474
 Kusikas, 342 f., 346, 355, etc.
 Kusumāyudha (a name of Kāma), 112
 Kutsa, 330 f.
 Kuvera, 140, 279, 400

L

- Lakshmī, 124
 Lalita-vistara, 32
 Langlois, M., translator of the Harivamśa, 151
 — of the Rig-veda, 273, 321
 Lassen's Indian Antiquities quoted, 394, 425
 Lātas, 482
 Latyāyana's Sūtras, 512
 Lecky, Mr., his History of Rationalism, 407
 Lesa, 226
 Life of Brāhmā, 49
 Linga Purāṇa quoted, 225
 Lohita, 279
 Lohitas, 353
 Loiseleur Deslongchamps, M., his note on Manu, vii. 41,—296
 Lokāloka mountain, 503
 Lunar race, 220, 225

M

- Mada, 471 f.
 Maduyanti, 419, 514
 Madhuchhandas, or Madhuyanda, 279, 347, 351 f., 357, 400, 406
 Madhusūdana Sarasvati, his Commentary on the Bhagavad Gītā quoted, 508

Madras, 484, 495

Magadhas, 495

Māgadhas, 501

Magas, 501

Mahābhārata, 5 f.

quoted—

Ādi-parvan—

272,—447

869,—445

2253,—116

2459,—451

2517,—122

2550, 2574,—123

2606,—445

2610,—476

2620-2635,—117

2914,—410

3128,—124

3143,—306

3151,—308

3533,—482

3727,—360

3750,—273

4719,—418

6638,—388

6695,—342

6699,—415

6802,—448

7351,—389

8455,—389

Sabhā-parvan—

469,—379

1031,—483

1045,—494

Vana-parvan—

10137, 10201—450

11234,—143

11248,—40

12460,—308

12469,—133

12619,—147

12747,—196

12820,—48

12952,—35

12962,—10

12981,—145

13090,—40

13436,—129

14160,—178

Udyoga-parvan—

373,—310

3721,—412

3970,—336

5054,—276

Bhishma-parvan—

227,—491

346,—495

389,—148

Mahābhārata continued—

Bhishma-parvan—

410,—501

465,—500

468,—502

Droṇa-parvan—

2149,—414

2395,—505

2443,—459

4747,—483

S'alya-parvan—

2295,—392

2281,—272

2360,—419

S'anti-parvan—

774,—32

1741, 1792,—423, 452

2221,—304

2247,—97

2280,—370

2304,—366

2429,—484

2671,—49, 149

2682 ff.—49

2719,—127

2819,—140

3404, 3406,—150

3408,—49

4499,—388

4507,—209

5330,—376

6130,—506

6640,—429

6930,—138

7523,—125

7548,—507

7569,—122

7573,—125

7882,—430

8550,—60

8591, 8601,—423

10058,—151

10699,—430

10118,—423

10861,—130

11221,—334

11515, 11854,—430

12658,—215

12685,—122

13088,—145

13090,—40

Anuśāsana-parvan—

183,—412

186,—352

201,—354

1867,—440

1944,—229

2103,—492

Mahābhārata continued—

Anuśāsana-parvan—

2158,—482

2160,—130

2262,—466

2718,—474

2841,—494

3732,—374

3960,—460

4104,—443

4527,—128

4579,—128

4745,—314

6208,—507

6262,—514

6250,—514

6570,—132

7187,—462

Asvamedikha-parvan—

1038,—57

Mahābhaya, 124

Mahādeva, 75, 207

— taught by Angiras,

226

Mahākālpa, 213

Maharūka, 156

Maharshi, 400

Mahut, 41, 75, 114

Mahāvīrya, 237

Mahendra, 451

Mahesvara, 74

Mahidharu, 490

Mashishas, or Mūlishakas,

482, 488

Mahishmati, 462, 478

Mahodaya, 402

Mahoragas, 139

Maitrāvaruṇa, 155, 244

Maitravaruṇi, 186

Maitrayana, 230

Maitreya, 56, 58

Maitreyas, 230

Mālavas, 459, 495

Malaya, 205

Mallinātha quoted, 395

Mamatā, 247

Mūna (Agastya?), 321

Mānava-dharma-sāstra

(or Institutes of Manu)—

Quotations from—

i. 8 ff.—35

— 22, 25,—38

— 30,—60

— 31 ff.—35, 446

— 58 ff.—38, 446

— 66 f.—43

— 69 ff.—47

— 79 f., 86,—39

Mānava-dharma-sāstra
continued—

- i. 87, 93, 97,—40
- 88 ff.,—364
- 100,—129
- ii. 29,—137
- 38 f.,—481
- 170,—138
- 225,—138
- 241,—515
- iii. 171,—275
- iv. 239 ff.,—380
- v. 1, 3,—446
- vii. 2,—446
- 3 ff.,—300
- 38 ff.,—296
- viii. 17,—380
- 110,—329
- ix. 22,—336
- 66 f.,—297
- 149 ff.,—282
- 301 f.,—49
- 503,—300
- x. 4,—480
- 7 ff.,—282
- 8,—481
- 12,—481
- 20,—481
- 43 f.,—481
- 45,—482
- 105,—358
- 108,—377
- xi. 234 ff.,—393
- 32,—398
- xii. 39 ff.,—40
- Mānāvī, 186
- Mānāvī, 189
- Mānasas, 501
- Mandagras, 501
- Mandapāla, 336
- Mandhas, 500
- Māndhātṛī, 225, 268, 279, 484
- Mantra, 2, 4 f.
- Manu, progenitor of the Aryan Indians, 161 ff., 183 ff.
- his bull, 188 ff.
- Manu, 119, 122, 297
- Auttami, 38, 111
- Chākshusha, 38, 298
- Raivata, 38
- Samvaranī, 217
- Sūvarnī, 217
- Svārochishia, 38, 111
- Svāyambhuva, 25, 38 f., 44, 65, 72, 106, 111, 114, 298, 489, 511

- Manu Tāmasa, 38
- Vāivasvata, 37 ff., 44, 111, 115, 126, 196, 213, 217, 221, 279, 298, 306, 508, 510
- Vivasvat, 217
- Manu (a female), 116
- Manu (=mind), 23
- Manu's Descent, 183, 217
- Manush (=Manu), 165 ff.
- Manvantaras, 43 ff.
- Mārganapriyā, 116
- Marichī, 36 f., 65, 114 ff., 122 f., 126
- Mārkaṇḍeya, 48, 199, 207
- Mārkaṇḍeya Purāṇa quoted, 75, 81 ff., 221 ff., 379
- Mārtāṇḍa, 126
- Mārtikāvatas, 459
- Maru, 277
- Maruts, 20, 71
- their heaven, 63, 98
- Marutta, 222
- Matanga, 411, 440
- Mātariśvan, 128, 170, 256
- Mati, 241
- Mātrikā, 158
- Matsya-avatāra, see Fish-incarnation
- Matsyas, 431
- Matsya Purāṇa, 1, 12—203, 49, 39,—277, 132, 98,—278, 3, 32 ff.,—108
- Matthew, Gospel of St. xiii. 14 f.,—255
- Maudgalya, 235
- Medhātithi on Manu, 47
- Medhātithi, 234
- Medhyātithi, 170
- Mekalas, 482
- Men, Five races of, 163, 176
- their original condition, 62, 117, 145, 147
- Menakā, 407, 410
- Meru, 417, 491
- Metempsychosis, 385
- Mīmāṃsa-vārtika quoted, 508
- Mithilā, 279, 430
- Mitra, 27, 184, 186, 221, etc.
- Mitrasaha, 337, 414, 423, 514
- Mitravya, 230, 322
- Mlecchas, 41 f., 141, 482, 484

- Mṛikshinī, 271
- Mṛityu, 20, 124, 299, 303
- Muchukunda, 140
- Mudgala, 235, 279, 352
- Mukhya-sarga, 57
- Müller's, Professor Max, Ancient Sanskrit Literature quoted or referred to, 2, 4, 5, 8, 13, 48, 122, 181, 192, 263, 263, 326, 355, 358, 366, 426, 508
- Art. in Journ. Germ. Or. Soc., 365
- Art. in Journ. Roy. As. Soc., 115, 177
- Art. in Oxford Essays, now reprinted in "Chips from a German Workshop," 226, 231
- Chips from a German Workshop, 429, 431, 490
- Preface to Rig-veda, 348, 417
- Results of Turanian Researches, 327
- Mundaka Upanishad, i. 2, 1, quoted, 3, 39
- Muni (a female), 123
- Munis, 153
- Mūtibas, 358, 483

N

- Nābhāga, 224, 268
- Nābhāga, 126, 224
- Nābhāgarishṭa, 126, 223
- Nābhānedishṭha, 221
- Nābhāganedishṭha, 192 ff., 221
- Nāgas, 37, 140
- Nagnajit Gāndhāra, 515
- Nahush, 165, 179, 307
- Nahusha, 133, 226, 232, 297, 307 ff., 393, 410
- Naigeya sākha of Sāmā-Sanhitā, 14
- Naimittika-laya, 45, 209, 219
- Naubandhana, 200
- Nairritas, 124
- Namuchi, 175
- Nara, 35, 76, 353, 400
- Nārada, 36, 119, 126, 400
- Nārāyaṇa, 35, 50, 54, 76, 164, 400
- assumes different colours in different yugas, 145

Nārāyaṇi, 353
 Narishyanta, 126, 221, 223
 Narmadā, 207, 478
 Neshtri, 155, 251
 Nēvc, M., Mythe des Rihavas referred to, 161
 Nīchāsakha, 342
 Nidāna-Sūtras, 136
 Niggards, 259
 Night of Brahmā, 43, 209
 Nīla, a mountain, 491
 Nīla, 235
 Nilakantha on M. Bh., 201
 Nimi, 297, 316, 337
 Nīramitra, 235
 Nirṛiti, 124
 Nirukta, 5
 — quoted or referred to, 3
 i. 8,—256
 — 20,—147
 ii. 10,—269
 — 24,—338
 — 25,—340
 iii. 4,—26
 — 7,—165
 — 8,—177
 — 17,—415
 iv. 19,—154
 v. 11,—253
 — 13,—321
 vi. 30,—322
 — 32,—342
 ix. 6,—253
 — 26,—417
 x. 44,—154
 xi. 19,—442
 — 23,—9
 xii. 10 f.,
 — 34,—162
 xiii. 9,—252
 Nishūdas, 177, 481, 153 f.
 Nishāda, birth of, 301,
 303, 403, 481
 Nishāda-sthapatī, 366
 Nīchadhā, 491
 Nītha, 241
 Nīvid, 241
 Nodhas, 330
 Nṛiga, 221
 Nyāya-mālā-vistara quoted,
 ed, 510

O

Odra, 482
 Ōhu-brahman, 255

P

Pādma-kalpa, 44, 50
 Padma Purāṇa, 379
 Pahlavas, 351, 391, 398,
 482, 484, 486
 Pajjavana, 366
 Pāka-yajna, 187
 Pakshya, 342
 Panchachūdā, 413
 Panchadāsa, 16
 Panchajanyūh and other
 parallel terms, 176
 Panchālas or Panchālas,
 431, 434, 495
 Panchasika, 430
 Panchaviṃśa Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — quoted, 417
 Panchaviṃśa's stoma, 492
 Pāṇḍas, 5, 127, 381
 Pāṇini, 3
 — referred to, 513
 Pāṇins, 353
 Pannagas, 144
 Para, 44
 Pāradas, 482, 486
 Paramarshi, 400
 Parameshthīn, 123
 Parārūdhā, 44
 Parāsura, 56, 58, 130, 322,
 417, 430, 447
 Parāsava, 481
 Pāśāsikas, 495
 Parasurāma, 350, 422, 442,
 447 ff., 474
 Parāvāsu, 455
 Parikshit, 438
 Parivettī, 275
 Parivitti, 275
 Parganya, 20, 270
 Parsis, 293
 Pārthivas, 353
 Paruchhepa, 172
 Parushni, 490
 Parvata, 400
 Pāsadyumna, 319
 Passion, 51, see Rājās
 Paśupati, 108, 444
 Pātālas, 504
 Patangas, 498
 Pātnivata (Agni), 191
 Paundras, or Paundrakas,
 391, 482, 484
 Paurava, 353
 Paurukutsī, 351
 Phena, 233
 Pijavana, 268, 297, 322,
 338

Pisāchas, 33, 37, 140
 Pitas, 499
 Pitris, 23, 37, 46, 58, 79,
 88, 434
 Plaksha-dvīpa, 490, 497
 Plants, origin of, 59, 90,
 95
 Plato quoted, 147
 Potri, 155, 251, 263
 Prachetas, 36, 116, 125,
 279
 Prāchetasā, 125
 Prachetases, 72
 Pradhā, 123
 Pradhāna, 51, 74
 Pradyumna, 279
 Prajāpati, 16 ff., 23 f., 29 ff.,
 52 ff., 68 ff., 180, 181,
 444, and *passim*
 — born on a lotus-leaf,
 32
 — his exhaustion, 68
 — his heaven, 63, 98
 Prajāpati Parameshthīn, 19
 Prakāśa, 58
 Prakṛita-sarga, 58
 Prakṛiti, 74 f.
 Pralaya, 214, 217
 Pramaganda, 342
 Prāṇsu, 221
 Pranava, 158
 Prasūtri, 251, 263
 Praskanya, 330
 Praskanyas, 234
 Prastotri, 41, 155
 Prasūti, 65
 Pratardana, 229, 268, 455
 Pratihartri, 41, 155
 Pratīpa, 273
 Pratiprasthūtri, 136
 Pratisanchura, 44
 Pratisarga, 49
 Pratishthātri, 155
 Pratyūsha, 400
 Pravāhana Jaivali, 433, 515
 Prāyashchitti, 294
 Pretas, 141
 Prishadasva, 224, 279
 Prishadhra, 126, 221
 Pṛithā, 494
 Prithavāna, 305
 Prithi, or Prithu, 268, 279,
 301, 304, 511
 Prithivī, 434
 Prithūdaka, 272
 Priyamedha, 172, 235, 268
 Priyavata, 65, 72, 106,
 114, 489, 491, 497

- Pulaha, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Pulastya, 36, 65, 116, 122 f., 400
 Pulindas, 358, 482 ff.
 Pundra, 232
 Pundras, 358, 483, 495
 Puranas, 3, 5 f.
 Purāṇas va, 279
 Purohitas, 41, 128, 507
 Pūru, 232, 277, 331, 360
 Pūrus, 179
 Purukutsa, 266, 279, 331
 Purukutsant, 267
 Purumilla, 267
 Purūravas, 126, 128, 158, 172, 221, 226, 279, 306, 349, 497
 Purusha, 9 ff., 25, 32, 34 ff., 75 f., 106, 155
 Purusha-sūta, translated and discussed, 7 ff., 34, 155 f., 159, 161
 Purushas, 500
 Purushottama, 51
 Pūshan, 19 f., 33, 71, 270
 Pushkulas, 500
 Pushkara, 405
 Pushkara-dvipa, 491, 501
 Pushkaras, 500
 Pushkarin, 237
 Pushpaka (Rāma's car), 120
- R**
- Rabhasa, 232
 Raibhya, 455
 Rājanya, 10, 258, 264, etc.
 Rājarshi, 269, 400
 Rajas (the Guna) 41, 58, 62, 66, 75, 79, 89, 92, 141, 154
 Rajas (*masculine*) 335
 Rājyasya sacrifice, 20, 225
 Rājatarangini quoted, 424
 Raji, 226
 Rākshasas, 59, 140, 144, etc.
 Rākshases, 33, 37, 59, 136, 177
 Rakshovāhas, 459
 Rāma, 5, 112, 115, 120, 305, 337
 Rāma Mārgaveya, 438
- Rāmas, 495
 Ramathas, 485
 Rāmāyana, 5 f.
 — quoted—
 i. 37, 4,—405
 — 51-65,—397
 — 55, 5,—329
 — 70,—337
 — 70, 41,—362
 ii. 110, 1-7,—115
 — 110, 2,—36
 — 110, 3,—54
 — 110, 6,—337, 400
 — 111, 1,—337
 iii. 14, 5-15, 29-31,—115
 iv. 43, 38,—493
 v. 82, 13,—59
 vii. (or Uttara-kāṇḍa) 30, 19 ff.,—120
 74, 8 ff.,—117
 Rambhā, 226, 232
 Rambhā, 336, 408, 413
 Ranyuka, 491
 Rantibhāra and Rantināra, 234
 Rantideva, 423
 Rasollāsa, 62
 Raspi, 292
 Rathachitra, 336
 Rathakira, 336
 Rathaesthas, 293
 Rathantara, 16
 Rathaviti, 283
 Rathūtra, 224
 Rathwi, 292
 Rati, 106, 114
 Raubhāyana, 72
 Rāvāna, 21, 478
 Re-marriage of Indian women in early times, 282
 Reu, 346, 350, 357
 Renukā, 350
 Renumat, 352
 Ribhukshans, 165
 Ribhus, 255
 Richika, 349, 405, 413, 450, 453, 476
 Rig-veda, 2
 Texts of, translated 1—
 First Mandala—
 10, 1,—246
 10, 11,—347
 13, 4,—167
- Rig-veda *continued*—
 First Mandala—
 14, 11,—167
 15, 5,—253
 31, 4,—172
 32, 12,—490
 33, 9,—246
 36, 10,—167, 170
 — 19,—166, 167
 44, 11,—168
 45, 3,—341
 47, 6,—330
 58, 6,—170
 63, 7,—330
 65, 1,—170
 68, 4,—164
 76, 5,—166
 80, 1,—244
 — 16,—162
 83, 5,—169
 84, 7,—259
 92, 11,—45
 94, 6,—263
 96, 5,—243
 101, 4,—260
 — 5,—246
 102, 2,—322
 106, 5,—167
 108, 7,—216
 — 8,—179
 112, 16,—171
 — 19,—331
 114, 2,—163
 117, 3,—178
 — 21,—171, 174
 122, 9,—260
 124, 2,—45
 125, 7,—260
 130, 5,—173
 — 8,—174
 139, 9,—172
 144, 4,—45
 158, 6,—46, 247
 162, 5-7, 11, 15, 16,
 163, 3,—12 [-12
 164, 15,—362
 — 34, 35,—244
 — 45,—252
 — 50,—11
 167, 7,—173
 175, 3,—174
 177, 5,—183
 182, 3,—260
 185, 9,—331

1 A large number of texts are referred to in pp. 45, 163, 170, 171, 241, 243, 245, 259, 329, etc., but as they have not been translated they are not included in this list.

Rig-veda continued—

Second Mandala—

- 1, 2, 3,—251
- 4 ff.—270
- 2, 10,—178
- 4, 2,—170
- 7, 1, 5,—313
- 12, 6,—244
- 19, 8,—243
- 20, 4,—243
- 6,—174
- 23, 1, 2,—242
- 4,—260
- 27, 1,—72
- 33, 1,—184
- 13,—163
- 36, 5,—253
- 39, 1,—217
- 43, 2,—252

Third Mandala—

- 1, 21,—315
- 3, 6,—165
- 5, 10,—170
- 18, 4,—346
- 23, 2, 4,—345, 348
- 26, 1,—346
- 29, 15,—317, 362
- 30, 20,—347
- 32, 10,—244
- 33, 1-12,—339
- 34, 9,—176, 258
- 42, 9,—347
- 43, 4, 5,—344
- 5,—247
- 49, 1,—176
- 53, 6-16, 21, 24,—310,
- 354, 372
- 9,—362
- 12,—242
- 55, 19,—181

Fourth Mandala—

- 6, 11,—173
- 9, 3, 4,—252
- 16, 9,—242
- 25, 4,—348
- 6, 7,—260
- 26, 7,—175
- 37, 1,—165
- 42, 8, 9,—266
- 44, 6,—268
- 50, 7-9,—247
- 58, 2,—248

Fifth Mandala—

- 2, 12,—173
- 21, 1,—168
- 29, 3,—248
- 31, 4,—248
- 32, 11,—178

Rig-veda continued—

Fifth Mandala—

- 12,—248
- 37, 4,—247
- 40, 5 ff., 6,—242, 469
- 8,—248
- 45, 6,—166
- 53, 2,—331
- 54, 7, 14,—217

Sixth Mandala—

- 11, 4,—177
- 14, 2,—165
- 3,—174
- 16, 1,—167
- 9,—167
- 13, 14,—169
- 19,—349
- 21, 8,—243
- 11,—175
- 44, 11,—261
- 45, 7,—214
- 46, 7,—179
- 48, 8,—165
- 49, 13,—172
- 51, 5,—163
- 61, 12,—176, 178
- 70, 2,—167
- 75, 10,—252, 253
- 19,—242

Seventh Mandala—

- 2, 3,—168
- 5,—339
- 7, 5,—249
- 8, 1,—319
- 15, 2,—178
- 18, 4, 5, 21-24,—321
- 19, 3,—331
- 20, 2,—331
- 22, 9,—243
- 25, 3,—331
- 26, 1, 2,—241
- 28, 2,—243
- 32, 10,—332
- 26,—329
- 33, 1-13,—318
- 3,—242
- 11,—244
- 35, 7,—242
- 42, 1,—249
- 53, 3,—332
- 60, 8,—332
- 64, 3,—372
- 69, 2,—176
- 70, 2,—173
- 3,—184
- 5,—243
- 72, 2,—329
- 83, 1-8,—323

Rig-veda continued—

Seventh Mandala—

- 87, 4,—325
- 88, 3-6,—325
- 91, 1,—172
- 97, 1,—176
- 3,—242
- 100, 4,—172
- 103, 1, 7, 8,—253
- 104, 13,—258
- 12-16,—326

Eighth Mandala—

- 2, 21,—46
- 4, 20,—262
- 7, 20,—249
- 9, 10,—268
- 10, 2,—166
- 15, 5,—171
- 16, 7,—245
- 17, 2,—249
- 18, 22,—173
- 19, 21,—167
- 23, 13,—165
- 27, 7,—168
- 30, 3,—164
- 31, 1,—249
- 32, 16,—249
- 33, 19,—249
- 34, 8,—168
- 36, 7,—263
- 37, 7,—263
- 43, 13, 27,—168
- 45, 39,—249
- 50, 9,—264
- 52, 1,—163
- 7,—176, 178
- 53, 1,—261
- 7,—250
- 64, 6,—341
- 66, 5,—250
- 8,—253
- 81, 30,—250
- 85, 5,—250
- 6,—181
- 87, 5,—175
- 9,—250
- 91, 1,—172
- 92, 2,—318

Ninth Mandala—

- 65, 22, 23,—177
- 66, 20,—178
- 86, 28,—181
- 92, 5,—175
- 96, 6,—250
- 11,—166
- 112, 1, 3,—250
- 113, 6,—251

Rig-veda continued—
Tenth Maṇḍala—

- 14, 1,—217
16, 6,—253
17, 1, 2,—217
21, 5,—169
26, 5,—167
28, 11,—251
33, 4,—262
46, 6,—178
46, 2, 9,—170
49, 7,—175
52, 2,—252
53, 4,—177
54, 3,—181
60, 4,—177
61, 7,—242
62, 5,—341
— 7,—193
63, 7,—166
68, 3, 4, 5,—72
— 8, 11,—217
69, 3,—166
71 and 72,—13
71, 1-11,—254
— 11,—245
72, 2,—46
— 4, 5,—72
— 6,—9
73, 7,—175
75, 5,—490
77, 1,—245
80, 6,—165
81 and 82,—13
81, 2, 3,—181
82, 3,—163, 181
85, 3, 16, 34,—215
— 29,—251
— 39, 40,—257
88, 19,—256
89, 16,—213
— 17,—346
90, 1,—32
— 1-16,—9
91, 9,—173
92, 10,—169
95, 7,—306
97, 1,—46
97, 17, 19, 22,—256
98, 1-12,—270
99, 7,—173
100, 5,—164
105, 8,—241, 242
107, 6,—245
109, 1-7,—256
— 4,—244
117, 7,—246
121,—13

Rig-veda continued—
Tenth Maṇḍala—

- 125, 5,—246
129,—13
— 4,—32
141, 3,—251
148, 5,—268
161, 4,—13
167, 4,—345
Rijrās'va, 266
Riksha, 235, 274, 360
Rikshavat, 456
Ripu, 298
Rishabha, 279, 357
Rishabhas, 500
Rishi, 243
Rishis, 36, 44, 88, etc.
Rishṭishena, 269
Ritabādha, 279
Ritayn, 234
Ritavratas, 501
Rituparna, 322
Roe, Dr. E., his translations of the Upanishads referred to, 25
Rohidas'va, 268
Rohini, 389
Rohita, 355
Rohitās'va, 382
Roth, Dr. R., his Literature and History of the Veda referred to, 289, 318, 324, 331, 339, 342, 360, 364, 372
— articles in Journ. of Germ. Or. Society, 8, 192, 194, 217, 248, 289
— article in Indisch Studien, 48, 355, 376
— Dissertation on the Atharva-veda, 395
— Illustrations of Nirukta, 177, 253, 256, 321, 339
Rosen, Dr. F., remarks on the story of S'unaś'upa, 359
Ruchi (*mase.*), 65
Ruchi (*fem.*), 466
Rudra, 3, 20, 65, 163, 194, 225
Rudras, 19 f., 52, 117
Rūpin, 360

S

- S'abaras, or S'avaras, 391, 393, 483 f.

- Sacrifices of no avail to the depraved, 98
Sadasyas, 459
Sādhyas, 10 f., 26 f., 38, 41
Sagara, 337, 486
Sahadeva, 266
Sahajanyā, 336
Saindhavas, 495
Saindhavāyanas, 353
S'aineya, 483
S'ainyas, 236
S'aivyā, wife of Haris'chandra, 380 f.
S'akadvīpa, 491, 500
S'akalus, 495
S'ākha, 401
S'akus, 391, 398, 482, 484, 486
S'akti, or S'akti, 315, 322, 328, 342
S'akuntalā, 410
S'akvaris, 255, 320
S'ākya (Buddha) 509
Sāṅkākāyana, 279
Sāṅkākāyanas, 353
S'alāvati, 352
S'alāvatas, 353
S'alimali-dvīpa, 490, 498
Salvas, 438
S'alvas, 495
S'ama, 124
Samantapanchaka, 451
Sāma-veda, 2
— quoted—
i, 262,—180
— 355,—163
Samprakshālana-kāla, 217
Sāmśraya, 116
Sāmśvarana, 360
Sāmśvartta, 207
Sanaka, 51
Sanandana, 51, 65
Sanatkumāra, 114, 307
S'andilya, 513
Sanhitā, 2, 4
Sanjaya, 148
S'ankara on the Brahma-Sūtras, 147
— Chhāndogya Upanishad, 195
Sankursiṇya, 207, 507
S'āṅkhāyana Brāhmaṇa, 5
Sankhya, 126, 210, 334, 430
— Kūrīkū, 158
— Pravachana, 158
Sankirtti, a Vaiśya author of Vedic hymns, 279

Sankṛiti, 237
 Sankṛiti, 352
 Sankṛityas, 353
 S'antanu, 269
 S'aphari (fish), 205, 209
 Saptadāsa, 16
 Sapta sindhavah, 489 ff.
 S'arabhas, 391
 S'aradvat, 279
 S'aradvata, 279
 S'arangī, 336
 Sarasvatī, 71, 110, 141,
 178, 315, 343, 421, 490
 Sārasvatīyas, 305
 Sarga, 49
 Sarvakūma, 322
 Sarvakarman, 422, 456
 Sarvasūtra Upanishad, 361
 S'aryāta, 221
 S'aryāti, 126, 221
 Sasarpārī, 348
 Sat, 46
 Sātadru, 417
 Sātānanda, 235
 S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — Kāva S'ākhā, i, 6,
 —167, 382
 — Mādhyandina S'ākhā,
 Texts from, translated or
 referred to—
 i. 1, 4, 12,—366
 — 1, 4, 14,—188
 — 3, 2, 21,—136
 — 4, 2, 2,—348
 — 4, 2, 5,—166
 — 5, 1, 7,—168
 — 5, 2, 16,—137
 — 5, 3, 2,—163
 — 7, 4, 1,—35, 107
 — 8, 1, 1,—181
 ii. 1, 4, 11,—17
 — 2, 2, 6,—262
 — 3, 4, 4,—147
 — 4, 2, 1,—96
 — 4, 4, 1,—125
 — 5, 1, 1,—69
 — 5, 2, 20,—136
 iii. 2, 1, 39,—369
 — 2, 1, 40,—136
 — 3, 6,—613
 — 6, 2, 26,—147
 — 9, 1, 1,—68
 iv. 1, 5, 1,—221
 — 3, 4, 4,—262
 — 5, 4, 1,—9
 v. 3, 5, 4,—268
 — 5, 4, 9,—367
 vi. 1, 2, 11,—30

S'atapatha Brāhmaṇa con-
 tinued—
 Mādhyandina S'ākhā—
 vi. 6, 1, 19,—188
 — 8, 1, 14,—349
 vii. 4, 1, 19,—125
 — 5, 1, 5,—54
 — 5, 2, 6,—24
 viii. 1, 4, 10,—515
 — 4, 2, 11,—19
 — 4, 3, 1,—19
 x. 4, 1, 10,—438
 — 4, 2, 2,—69
 — 4, 4, 1,—69
 xi. 1, 3, 1,—31
 — 1, 6, 1,—35
 — 1, 6, 7,—30
 — 1, 6, 8,—29
 — 5, 1, 1,—226
 — 6, 1, 1,—443
 — 6, 2, 1,—426
 xii. 1, 6, 38,—333
 xiii. 4, 1, 3,—369
 — 4, 3, 3,—217
 — 5, 4, 14,—168
 — 6, 1, 1,—9
 — 7, 1, 15,—456
 xiv. 1, 2, 11,—53
 — 4, 2, 1,—21, 36
 — 4, 2, 23,—19
 — 5, 1, 1,—432
 — 7, 1, 33,—46
 — 9, 1, 1,—433
 S'atarūpā, 25, 65, 72, 106,
 110, 114
 S'atayātu, 322
 S'atendriyā, 114
 Sattva, 41, 62, 66, 75 f.,
 79, 89, 92
 Sāttvika, 42
 Sāttvabhāva, 493
 Sātyaketu, 231
 Sātyāngas, 498
 Sātyavati, 349, 405, 450,
 453
 Sātyavrata, 207, 375
 Sātyavratas, 501
 S'ūtyāyana Brāhmaṇa
 quoted, 320, 328
 Saudāsa, 343, 414
 Saudāsas, 328, 337
 Saumya, 494
 S'aunaka, 226, 279
 S'aundikās, 482
 Saurāśtras, 495
 Sauvīras, 495
 Sausrutās, 353
 Savana, 335, 445

Sāvārya and Sāvargi, 217
 Savitṛi, 71, 181
 Sūvitṛi, 110
 Sāyakūyana, 438
 Sāyana quoted, 2, 164 and
passim
 S'ayu, 171
 Schlegel, A. W. von, his
 edition of the Rāmāyana
 referred to, 397, 399,
 etc.
 Semitic source, was the
 Indian legend of the
 deluge derived from a,
 216
 S'esha, 44, 116
 Seven rishis, 200, 400, 404
 Seven seas surrounding the
 continents of the earth,
 491
 Sexes, their primitive re-
 lations, 418
 Shaḍgurusishya quoted,
 343
 Shaḍvīmśa Brāhmaṇa
 quoted or referred to,
 344, 513
 Simhika, 123
 Sindhudvīpa, 268, 272, 353
 Sindhuksit, 268
 Sinhalas, 391
 S'ini, 326
 S'iva, 389
 S'ivis, 459, 493
 S'lishti, 298
 Smṛiti, 5, 139
 Snehas, 500
 Solar race, 220
 Soma, 10, 19 f., 30, 71 f.,
 124, 153, 166, 175, 181,
 221, 225, 467, 469
 Soma Maitrāyana, 230
 Somasushma Sātyayajni,
 428
 Someśvara quoted, 511
 Sons, may be begotten by
 third parties, 418
 Sogaṃbu, 207
 Sṛāddhādeva, 207
 Sṛāddhādeva, 207, 335
 S'ranta-sūtras, 5
 S'ravanasya, 279
 Sri, 67
 Sṛidhara, Commentator or
 Bhāgavata Purāṇa,
 quoted, 210 f., 317
 Sṛiṅgi, 491
 Sṛiṅjayas, 283, 512

S'rotriya, 442
 S'rutadharas, 409
 S'rutarshis, 279, 400
 Sthānu, 116, 122
 Sthānūtīrtha, 420
 Sthapati, 514
 Stoma, 241
 Streiter, Dr., his Dissertation de Sunahsepho, 48, 355
 Subhagā, 116
 S'uchi, 445
 Sudās, 242, 268, 297, 319, 321 ff., 338, 366, 371 ff.
 Sudāsa,
 Sudeshnā, 233,
 Sūdras, 7 and *passim*
 — etymology of the word, 97
 Sudyumna, 221
 Suhma, 232
 Suhotra, 227, 267, 349, 353, 360
 Suhotri, 227
 Sukanyā, 283
 Sukt, 117
 S'ukra, 305, 335, 445
 Sūkta, 241
 Sukumāra, 231
 Sulabhā, 430
 Sumantu, 349
 Sumati, 234
 Sumera, 96
 Sumitra, 167
 Sumukha, 297
 Sunahotra, or S'unahotra, 226, 228
 S'unasēpa, 350, 353
 355 ff., 376, 405, 413
 Sunīthā, 299, 303
 S'unahpuchha, 352
 Surādhas, 266
 S'ūras, 495
 S'ūrpāraka, 455
 Sūrya, 245, 251
 Sūryavarchas, 336
 Sushmins, 600
 Sushmīra, 493
 Sūta, 207
 Sutapas, 232, 235
 Sūtras, 5
 S'utudri, 338, 400
 Sushadman, 438
 Suvarchas, 279
 Suvitta, 279
 Suyayasa, 355
 Svahā, 369
 Svarbhānu, 249, 469

Svarjit Nāgnajita, 515
 Svayambhū, 33
 Svayambhū, 96, 111, 122
 S'veta, 491
 S'vetaketu Aruṇeya, 428, 434
 S'yāparnas, 438
 S'yūvās'va, 283
 S'yena, 513
 S'yūmaras mi, 171

T

Taittirīya-āranyaka quoted, 31
 Taittirīya Brāhmaṇa, 5
 — quoted—
 i. 1, 2, 6,—68
 — 1, 3, 5,—53
 — 1, 4, 4,—186
 — 1, 9, 10,—26
 — 1, 10, 1,—68
 — 2, 6, 1,—68
 — 2, 6, 7,—21
 — 6, 2, 1,—70
 — 6, 4, 1,—71
 — 8, 8, 1,—26
 — 8, 2, 5,—445
 ii. 2, 1, 1,—72
 — 2, 4, 4,—515
 — 2, 9, 1,—27
 — 3, 6, 1,—68
 — 3, 8, 1,—23
 — 7, 9, 1,—71
 iii. 2, 3, 9,—21
 — 2, 6, 9,—189
 — 3, 3, 1,—25
 — 3, 3, 5,—25
 — 3, 10, 4,—26
 — 4, 1, 16,—49
 — 8, 18, 1,—24
 — 9, 22, 1,—43, 46,
 — 10, 9, 1,—71 [163
 — 12, 9, 2,—41
 Taittirīya Saṁhitā, 2
 — quoted—
 i. 5, 4, 1,—29
 — 7, 1, 8,—187
 — 7, 3, 1,—262
 — 8, 16, 1,—20
 — 16, 11, 1,—137
 ii. 2, 10, 2,—188, 510
 — 3, 5, 1,—124,
 — 4, 13, 1,—21
 — 5, 9, 1,—187
 — 6, 7, 1,—186
 iii. 1, 7, 2,—512

Taittirīya Saṁhitā continued—
 iii. 1, 5, 4,—193
 — 5, 2, 2,—332
 iv. 3, 10, 1,—16
 v. 1, 6, 6,—184
 — 6, 8, 3,—136
 vi. 2, 5, 2,—187
 — 3, 10, 4,—32
 — 5, 6, 1,—26
 — 6, 6, 1,—191
 — 6, 8, 2,—26
 — 6, 10, 3,—26
 vii. 1, 1, 4,—15
 — 1, 5, 1,—52
 — 5, 15, 3,—187
 — p. 47 of MS., 328
 — Commentator on, quoted, 3
 Taittirīya Upanishad quoted, 443
 Taittirīya Yajurveda, 12
 Takshapa, 279
 Tālaśanghas, 467, 486
 Tamas, 41, 57, 58, 62, 66, 75, 80, 89, 92, 141
 Tāmāsa, 42
 Tāmra, 116
 Tāmraliptakas, 459
 Tāmravarṇa, 494
 Tāndya Brāhmaṇa, 5, 329
 Tansa, 234
 Tapas, 119, 141
 — its great power, 394, 410
 Tapoloka, 88
 Tārā, 225
 Tārakūyaṇas, 353
 Tīryak-srotas, 57
 Tishmas, 500
 Tishya (= Kali) age, 148
 Tortoise incarnation, 51, 64
 Trasadasya, 263, 266, 331
 Trayyaruna, 237, 267
 Tretā, 39, 43 ff., 92 ff., 119, 145, 149 f., 158, 447, 495 f.
 Triad of deities, see Deities
 Trigarttas, 459
 Trisanku, 362, 375, 401, 413
 Trishtha, 190
 Trishubh, 16
 Trisīras, 268
 Trivṛishna, 267
 Trivrit, 16
 Tritsus, 320, 324

Troyer, Captain, his edition
of the Rājataranginī, 424
Tukhāras, 303
Tumburas, 303
Turvasas, 179
Turvasu, 232, 482
Tushāras, 484
Tvāshtra, 438
Tvashtrī, 181

U

Uddālaka Āruni, 195
— S'vetaketu, 419
Udgātṛi, 41, 155, 251, 294
Unnetri, 155
Upadrashtrī, 4, 459
Upanishads, 2, 5
Upastuti (a goddess), 311
Upastuta, 170
Uru, 298
Ūrdhvvabāhu, 335
Ūrdhvasrotas, 57
Ūrjja, 335
Ūrjū, 335
Urukshaya, 237
Urunjirā, 417
Ūrva, 351, 476
Urvasī, 226, 244, 306, 316,
320, 337
Usamas, 226
Ushas, 108
Usīnara, 268
Usīnāras, 431, 482
Utathya, 279, 467
Uttānapad, 72
Uttānapada, 65, 72, 106,
114, 298
Uttara Kurus, 491 ff.
Uttara Madras, 492

V

Vāch, 241, 246, 325
Vachas, 241
Vāhika, 273
Vaibhojas, 482
Vaidya, 481
Vaikhānasas, 32
Vaikṛita-sarga, 58
Vaina, Vainya, 268, 279
Vairāja, 16, 111
Vairūpa, 16
Vaisampāyana, 122, 153 f.
Vaisanta, 319

Vaisasa, 97
Vaisyas, 7, and *passim*
— etymology of the
word, 97
Vaivasvata Manvantara,
112, 214
Vājas, 165
Vājasaneyi Sanhitā quoted
or referred to—
xi. 32,—169
xii. 34,—349
xiv. 28,—16
xxx. 18,—49
xxxi. 1,—9
— 1-16,—8
— 13,—10
xxxviii. 26,—490
Vājasravas,
Vajrasirsha, 445
Valākūśva, 319
Vālakhilya, iii. 1,—217
— iv. 1,—217
Valmīki, 5
Vāmadeva, 114, 279, 330
Vāmana-avatāra, see
Dwarf incarnation
Vandya, a Vaisya composer
of Vedic hymns, 279
Vanga, 233, see Banga
Vangas, 459
Vansū, 116
Vapushmat, 222
Varāha-avatāra, 53, see
Boar incarnation
Vārāha-kalpa, 44, 50, 67
Varenya, 445
Varna (colour or caste),
140, 153, 176
Vārshagiras, 266
Varuna, 18, 20, 27, 71,
136, 168, etc.
— his adultery, 467
Vāruna, 494
Varuna-praghāsa, 136
Varūtri, 190
Varvaras, 484
Vasas, 391
Vashatkūra, 487
Vashkalas, 353
Vasishtha, or Vasishtha,
36, 65, 110, 115, 122,
211, 244, 316 ff., 468,
486
— begets a son to king
Kalmashapad, 418
Vasishthas, 242, 319 ff.,
402
Vasṭrya fshuyans 293
Vasudeva, 206

Vasumanas, 268
Vasundharas, 499
Vasus, 19 f., 52, 117, 124,
184, 186, 221, 444
Vātaraśanas, 32
Vatsa, 231
Vatsabhūmi, 231
Vayata, 319
Vāyu, 10, 19, 33, 76, 128,
172, 464
Vāyu Purāna quoted, 225,
227, 232
i. 5, 11 ff,—74
— 6, 1 ff,—75
— 7, 22 ff,—81
— 9, 1 ff,—77
— 9, 100,—446
Vedāngas, 5, 126
Vedānta, 223
Vedas, 63
— antiquity of, 2
— undivided in the
Kṛita age, 144
Vedasravas, 279
Vedhas, 65
Vedhas, a sage, 243
Vedhasa, 279
Vena, 126
Vēṇa, 297 ff., 481
Venuhotra, 231
Venya, 268
Vibhu, 445
Videha, 426
Vidēhas, 431, 459
Vidhātṛi, 124
Vidūratha, 455
Vidyutpatāka, 207
Vijnāna Bhikshu, 158
Vikṛita, 123
Vinatā, 123
Vipās, or Vipāsū, 338, 417
Vipra, 243
Vipula, 466
Virāj (masc.), 9, 36 f., 106,
111, 195
— (fem.), 217, 333, 511
Viranchi, 112
Viriṇi, 125
Virochana, 233
Virūpa, 224
Virūpas, 311
Viryadharas, 499
Viś, 157
Vishnu, 3, 10, 51, 54, 62,
67, 75, 153, 172, 211,
495, etc.
— assumes different co-
lours in different yugas,
145

Vishnu Purāṇa quoted—
 Book i.—
 3, 10 ff., and 14 f.,—43
 3, 16 ff.,—44
 5, 1 ff.,—65
 6, 1 ff.,—60
 7, 1 ff.,—64
 8, 12,—66
 9, 15,—389
 10, 10,—335
 13, 7,—298
 13, 54,—511
 15, 52,—72
 Book ii.—
 4, 1, and 5 ff.,—497
 4, 9,—498
 4, 12 ff.,—499
 4, 19 ff.,—500
 4, 23 ff.,—500
 4, 28 ff.,—501
 4, 37 f.,—503
 7, 19, 24,—504
 10, 8,—336
 Book iii.—
 1, 3,—44
 1, 6, and 9,—335
 1, 14,—335
 3, 9,—336
 6, 21,—400
 Book iv.—
 1, 4,—220
 1, 5,—72
 1, 12,—221
 1, 13, 14,—222
 2, 2,—223
 3, 5,—224
 3, 13,—375
 3, 18,—337
 4, 25,—337
 6, 2,—225
 6, 19,—226
 7, 1,—226
 7, 4, and 14 ff.,—349
 8, 6,—232
 10, 12,—232
 18, 1,—232
 19, 9,—236
 19, 10,—234
 19, 16,—235
 21, 4,—236
 24, 44,—277
 Book vi.—
 1, 4,—43
 Viśiṣṭa, 166
 Viśvajit, 352
 Viśvakarman, 52, 76, 173,
 181
 — Bhauvana, 456
 Viśvakrit, 352

Viśvāmītra, 128, 232, 242,
 247, 265, 272, 279, 329
 ff., 337 ff., 474, 483
 Viśvāmītras, 342, 345 f.
 Viśvantara, 438
 Viśvaratha, 352
 Viśvasrijah, 37
 Viśvedevas, 16, 20, 71,
 380
 Vitahavya, 228, 268, 279,
 285, 297
 Vitatha, 227
 Vitihotras, 459
 Vivāśas, 498
 Vivasvat, 26 f., 37, 115 f.,
 122, 126, 169, 195, 199,
 201
 Vrajana, 360
 Vratya, 22, 481
 Vratya-stomas, 513
 Vrihaspati, 310, see Bri-
 haspati
 Vrishagiri, 266
 Vrishala, 482
 Vrishan, 170
 Vritra, 174, 310
 Vyāsa, 6
 Vyāśva, 268

W

Weber's Indische Litera-
 turgeschichte referred to,
 2, 5
 — Indische Studien
 quoted or referred to,
 8, 9, 14, 32, 39, 48, 49,
 108, 136, 141, 147, 155,
 181, 186, 189, 216, 252,
 272 f., 332 ff., 357, 367,
 369, 373, 395, 438 f.,
 443, 446, 492 f., 511 f.
 — articles in Journal
 Germ. Or. Soc., 189,
 366, 385, 443
 — his opinion on the
 origin of the Indian tra-
 dition of the Deluge, 216
 — Vajra-sūchī, 140
 Williams's, Prof. Monier,
 Indian Epic poetry re-
 ferred to, 6, 34
 Wilson's, Prof. H. H.,
 Analyses of the Vishnu,
 Vāyu, and other Pu-
 rāṇas, 6, 505
 — translation of the
 Rig-veda referred to,
 360, 372, 490

Wilson's Sāṅkhya-Kārikā
 referred to, 430
 — Vishnu Purāṇa re-
 ferred to, 6, 49, 353,
 446, and *passim*
 — article on Human
 Sacrifices in India in
 Journ. R. As. Soc., 355
 Women, estimation in
 which the ancient In-
 dians held them, 26,
 136

Y

Yādavas, 112
 Yadu, 232, 477
 Yadus, 179
 Yajna-paribhāṣā-sūtras,
 2, 365, 367
 Yajñāpeta, 356
 Yajñavalkya, 25, 136, 428
 Yajñavalkyas, 353
 Yajur-veda, 2
 Yaksas, 37, 139, 144, 499
 Yama, 20, 122, 126, 129,
 171, 217, 320
 Yamadūtas, 353
 Yamunā, 467
 Yaska, 3, 5, see Nirukta
 Yātudhāna, 326 f.
 Yaudhāh (warriors), 511,
 514
 Yavanas, 391, 398, 482,
 485 ff.
 Yayāti, 232, 455
 Year of Brahmā, 44
 Year of gods, 43
 Yoga 210, 334, 466, 478
 — philosophy, 430, 508
 Yogin, 153
 Yudhājit, 279
 Yudhishtira, 127, 133, 309
 Yudhyamadhi, 322
 Yugas, 39, 43 ff.
 — system of, not men-
 tioned in the hymns of
 the Rig-veda, 45
 — their several charac-
 teristics, 39, 90 ff., 144
 Yuga of the Kshattriyas
 152
 Yuvauśva, 225, 268, 279

Z

Zendavesta, 293
 Zota, 294



